

Gerontological SEVENTH EDITION Nursing

Charlotte Eliopoulos



Wolters Kluwer
Health

Lippincott
Williams & Wilkins

thePoint

BRIEF CONTENTS

UNIT 1

Understanding the Aging Experience

- 1 The Aging Population 3
- 2 Theories of Aging 13
- 3 Diversity 23
- 4 Life Transitions and Story 33
- 5 Common Aging Changes 49

UNIT 2

Foundations of Gerontological Nursing

- 6 The Specialty of Gerontological Nursing 69
- 7 Holistic Model for Gerontological Nursing 82
- 8 Legal Aspects of Gerontological Nursing 95
- 9 Ethical Aspects of Gerontological Nursing 107
- 10 Continuum of Care in Gerontological Nursing 114
- 11 Self-Care for the Gerontological Nurse 126

UNIT 3

Fostering Connection and Gratification

- 12 Sexuality and Intimacy 135
- 13 Spirituality 150

UNIT 4

General Care Concerns

- 14 Nutrition and Hydration 161
- 15 Rest and Sleep 173
- 16 Comfort and Pain Management 182

- 17 Safety 191

- 18 Safe Medication Use 209

UNIT 5

Facilitating Physiological Balance

- 19 Respiration 235
- 20 Circulation 248
- 21 Digestion and Bowel Elimination 269
- 22 Urinary Elimination 282
- 23 Reproductive System Health 291
- 24 Movement 299
- 25 Neurologic Function 322
- 26 Sensation 332
- 27 Endocrine Function 346
- 28 Integumentary Function 358
- 29 Immune Function 367

UNIT 6

Multisystemic Disorders

- 30 Infections 375
- 31 Cancer 385
- 32 Mental Health Disorders 396
- 33 Delirium and Dementia 411

UNIT 7

Gerontological Care Issues

- 34 Living in Harmony With Chronic Conditions 425
- 35 Rehabilitative Care 436
- 36 Acute Care 451
- 37 Long-Term Care 464
- 38 Family Caregiving 476
- 39 End-of-Life Care 485
- Index 499

Gerontological Nursing

SEVENTH EDITION

Charlotte Eliopoulos, PhD, MPH, RNC

*Specialist in Holistic Gerontological Care
Executive Director, American Association for
Long-Term-Care Nursing*



Wolters Kluwer | Lippincott Williams & Wilkins

Health

Philadelphia • Baltimore • New York • London
Buenos Aires • Hong Kong • Sydney • Tokyo

Executive Acquisitions Editor: Elizabeth Nieginski
Development Editor: Betsy Gentzler
Editorial Assistant: Laura Scott
Director of Nursing Production: Helen Ewan
Senior Managing Editor / Production: Erika Kors
Senior Production Editor: Tom Gibbons
Art Director, Design: Holly McLaughlin
Art Director, Illustration: Brett MacNaughton
Manufacturing Coordinator: Karin Duffield
Production Services / Compositor: Aptara, Inc.

7th Edition

Copyright © 2010 Wolters Kluwer Health | Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

Copyright © 2005, 2001 by Lippincott Williams & Wilkins. Copyright © 1997 by Lippincott-Raven Publishers. Copyright © 1993, 1987 by J.B. Lippincott Company. Copyright © 1979 by Charlotte Eliopoulos. All rights reserved. This book is protected by copyright. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, including as photocopies or scanned-in or other electronic copies, or utilized by any information storage and retrieval system without written permission from the copyright owner, except for brief quotations embodied in critical articles and reviews. Materials appearing in this book prepared by individuals as part of their official duties as U.S. government employees are not covered by the above-mentioned copyright. To request permission, please contact Lippincott Williams & Wilkins at 530 Walnut Street, Philadelphia PA 19106, via email at permissions@lww.com or via website at lww.com (products and services).

9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Printed in China

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Eliopoulos, Charlotte.

Gerontological nursing / Charlotte Eliopoulos. — 7th ed.

p. ; cm.

Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN-13: 978-0-7817-5344-9

ISBN-10: 0-7817-5344-9

1. Geriatric nursing. I. Title.

[DNLN: 1. Geriatric Nursing. WY 152 E42g 2010]

RC954.E44 2010

618.97' 0231—dc22

2008046749

Care has been taken to confirm the accuracy of the information presented and to describe generally accepted practices. However, the authors, editors, and publisher are not responsible for errors or omissions or for any consequences from application of the information in this book and make no warranty, expressed or implied, with respect to the currency, completeness, or accuracy of the contents of the publication. Application of this information in a particular situation remains the professional responsibility of the practitioner; the clinical treatments described and recommended may not be considered absolute and universal recommendations.

The authors, editors, and publisher have exerted every effort to ensure that drug selection and dosage set forth in this text are in accordance with the current recommendations and practice at the time of publication. However, in view of ongoing research, changes in government regulations, and the constant flow of information relating to drug therapy and drug reactions, the reader is urged to check the package insert for each drug for any change in indications and dosage and for added warnings and precautions. This is particularly important when the recommended agent is a new or infrequently employed drug.

Some drugs and medical devices presented in this publication have Food and Drug Administration (FDA) clearance for limited use in restricted research settings. It is the responsibility of the health care provider to ascertain the FDA status of each drug or device planned for use in his or her clinical practice.

LWW.COM

*This book is dedicated to my husband,
George Considine, for his continuing
encouragement, support, and love.*

REVIEWERS

Marsha Atkins, MSN

Lakeview College of Nursing
Danville, Illinois

Heidi Bakerman, MSN

Nursing Instructor
Vaneir College
St. Laurent, Quebec

Linda Boyd, MSN, MSA, RN, BC

Assistant Professor
Southeast Hospital College of Nursing and
Health Sciences
Cape Girardeau, Missouri

Diane Breckenridge, PhD, RN

Associate Professor, Nursing
La Salle University
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Alice Brnicky, MSN, BSN, RN

Assistant Clinical Professor
Texas Woman's University, Dallas Parkland
Campus
Dallas, Texas

Nathania Bush, MSN, APRN, BC

Assistant Professor of Nursing
Morehead State University
Clay City, Kentucky

Argelia Clifford, MSN, MHA, RN

Nursing Faculty
Moorpark College
Moorpark, California

Gina DeFalco, MSN, RN

Chairperson for Basic Nursing
St. Margaret School of Nursing
Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania

Laura Dower, MSN, FNP-BC, APRN

Assistant Professor
Hawaii Pacific University
Kaneohe, Hawaii

Kimberly Dudas, MSN, MS, ANP-BC

Associate Professor
New Jersey City University
Jersey City, New Jersey

Alice Dupler, MN, JD

Assistant Dean and Clinical Associate Professor
Washington State University
Spokane, Washington

Nancy Edwards, PhD, ANP

Associate Professor, Director of Graduate Nursing
Program
Purdue University West Lafayette
West Lafayette, Indiana

Julie Eggert, PhD, MN, BSN

Associate Professor, Doctoral Program
Coordinator
Clemson University
Clemson, South Carolina

Arline El-Ashkar, MSN

Former Director of Practical Nursing Program
First Choice Training Institute
Salem, New Hampshire

Carol Gillis, RN

Princeton Information Technology Center
Glenside, Pennsylvania

Earl Goldberg, EdD, APRN, BC

Associate Professor of Nursing and Health
Sciences, Track Director, MSN-MBA,
Nursing Administration Track
La Salle University
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Cathy Horinouchi, MSN

Assistant Professor, Gerontological Nursing
Course Coordinator
Loma Linda University
Loma Linda, California

Shahnaz N. Khavidi, ND

Clinical Instructor
University of Illinois Chicago
Skokie, Illinois

Katherine Leigh, MSN

Instructor
Chipola College
Marianna, Florida

Gloria McInnis-Perry, PhD, MSN, BSN

Associate Professor
University of Prince Edward Island
Prince Edward Island, Canada

Marie Messier, MEd, MSN, BSN

Associate Professor
Germanna Community College
Locust Grove, Virginia

Darlene O'Leary, MSN

Instructor
Akron Institute
Akron, Ohio

Rebecca Otten, EdD

Assistant Professor, Assistant Director of
Pre-licensure Programs
California State University Fullerton
Fullerton, California

Catherine Page, MSN, RN

Professor, Health Science
Rio Hondo College
Whittier, California

Vonnie Pattison, MSN, BSN, RN-BC

Assistant Professor
Montana State University Northern
Havre, Montana

Kristine Pfenndt, MSN

Assistant Professor of Nursing
Northern Kentucky University
Highland Heights, Kentucky

Sue Polito, MSN

Specialist Professor
Marjorie K. Unterberg School of Nursing and
Health Studies
West Long Branch, New Jersey

Desma Reno, MSN, APRN, BC, GCNS

Assistant Professor in Nursing
Southeast Missouri State University
Cape Girardeau, Missouri

Scott Saccomano, MSN, APN Geriatrics

Assistant Professor
The State University of New York
New Paltz, New York

Donna Sachse, PhD, RN, CNS-BC

Chair and Professor
Union University
Germantown, Tennessee

Debra Sheets, PhD, RN

Associate Professor
California State University Northridge
Northridge, California

Cathleen Shultz, PhD, RN, CNE, FAAN

Professor and Dean
Harding University
Searcy, Arkansas

Mary Sizemore, EdD, MSN, BSN, RN

Associate Professor
New Mexico State University
Las Cruces, New Mexico

Siobhan Sundel, MSN

Instructor of ANP/GNP
New York University
New York, New York

Jeanine Tweedie, MSN

Assistant Professor of Nursing
Hawaii Pacific University
Kaneohe, Hawaii

Nicole Welding, DNPc, MSN, RN

Instructor
Carlow College
Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania

Mary Ellen Hill Yonushonis, MSN

Instructor in Nursing
Pennsylvania State University
University Park, Pennsylvania

Peter Zografos, PhD, RN

Assistant Director of the Vocational Nursing
Program
Mt. San Jacinto College San Jacinto
Menifee, California

It is difficult to believe that three decades have passed since the first edition of *Gerontological Nursing* was published. In 1979, the specialty of gerontological nursing was in its adolescence: youthful as a result of recently being born into the ranks of nursing specialties, exuberant at the potential to discover and develop, yet quite immature with a limited knowledge base. Often with excitement and sometimes with trepidation, those with the label of “gerontological nurse” ventured down uncharted paths and laid the groundwork for those who would later advance the specialty. The challenge at that time was to bring core knowledge concerning basic care of older adults to nurses who cared for this population. The specialty has advanced considerably since then as a result of impressive research and experience.

While the first edition of *Gerontological Nursing* attempted to provide basic knowledge to form a foundation for specialty practice, this seventh edition integrates holistic concepts, Best Practices, and information to address the unique challenges of an aging Baby Boomer population. Content is offered to support the nurse’s unique role in coordinating and providing care to address physical, emotional, social, and spiritual needs of older adults. In addition, heightened attention is given to the important, although frequently overlooked, areas of self-care and nurturing of the gerontological nurse with the recognition that this work must be done in order for nurses to truly be healers. Integrative care approaches are offered with discussions of the responsible and effective use of complementary and alternative therapies.

Reorganization of chapters, new special features, and updated illustrations and photographs are additional highlights of this edition.

Text Organization

This seventh edition consists of 39 chapters, divided into seven units.

Unit I, Understanding the Aging Experience, provides basic facts about the aging population and

presents theories about aging. It also discusses the increasing diversity of the older population, the life transitions older adults experience, and the physical changes that occur with age.

Unit II, Foundations of Gerontological Nursing, includes chapters on the growth of the specialty, a holistic model for gerontological care, legal aspects, ethical issues, and the continuum of care services for older adults. A chapter on self-care for the gerontological nurse honors nurses’ role as healers and discusses self-care practices that enable nurses to maximize their healing presence.

Unit III, Fostering Connection and Gratification, provides a broad perspective on sexuality and intimacy in older adulthood and discusses the significance of spirituality and support of spiritual needs.

Unit IV, General Care Concerns, includes updated content on basic physical needs, including nutrition and hydration, rest and sleep, comfort and pain management, and safety. The unit also includes expanded coverage of the safe use of medications.

Unit V, Facilitating Physiological Balance, includes content that has been reorganized in this edition to present—for each body system—a review of the effects of aging, interventions to promote health, the unique presentation and treatment of illnesses in older adults, and integrative approaches that foster holistic care. Chapters in this unit follow a consistent organization to offer improved readability.

Unit VI, Multisystemic Disorders, reviews special conditions that are highly prevalent in late life and that affect multiple body systems, such as infections, cancer, mental health disorders, delirium, and dementia.

Unit VII, Gerontological Care Issues, discusses issues gerontological nurses face in practice, including helping people live effectively with chronic conditions, rehabilitative care, acute care, nursing in long-term care facilities, family caregiving, and end-of-life care.

Features

The book is intended to be practical and user-friendly, with plentiful tables, boxes, line drawings, and updated, full-color photographs. Popular recurring features from previous editions have been retained, and several new features have been added.

Popular Recurring Features

- **Chapter Outlines and Learning Objectives** introduce each chapter and direct readers' attention to important chapter content.
- **Key Concepts** underscore crucial information contained within the text.
- **Points to Ponder** challenge readers to reflect on their own views, experiences, and behaviors and to consider the older adult's experience.
- **Nursing Diagnosis Highlights** provide an overview of selected nursing diagnoses common in older patients, discussing causative or contributing factors, care goals, and interventions.
- **Nursing Diagnosis Tables** alert the reader to potential nursing diagnoses for older adults and list causes or contributing factors.
- **Critical Thinking Exercises**, at the end of each chapter, challenge readers to apply the chapter content to help them grow in their depth and breadth as healers.
- **Resources** listed at chapter endings direct readers to helpful organizations and online sources of information.

New to the Seventh Edition

- **Consider This Case** presents short case scenarios and asks students to think critically to answer relevant questions.
- **Assessment Guides** outline nursing assessment of specific body systems and areas of functioning in older adults. The newly designed displays outline components of general observations, the interview, and physical examination.
- **Nursing Care Plans** are now highlighted with a special format and design. These sample care plans for selected health conditions outline nursing diagnoses, goals, and specific nursing actions.
- **New illustrations and updated photographs** appeal to visual learners and illustrate key concepts.

Teaching and Learning Package

Resources for Instructors

Upon adoption of this text, the following resources are available to instructors on the Instructor Resource CD-ROM and on [thePoint](http://thePoint.lww.com/eliopoulos7e) at <http://thePoint.lww.com/eliopoulos7e>:

- The Test Generator lets you create new tests from a bank of NCLEX-style questions to help you assess your students' understanding of the course material.
- PowerPoint Presentations provide an easy way to integrate the textbook with your students' classroom experience, either via slide shows or handouts. Multiple-choice and True/False questions are integrated into the presentations to promote class participation and allow you to use i-clicker technology.
- An Image Bank contains illustrations from the book in formats suitable for printing and incorporating into PowerPoint presentations and Internet sites.
- Journal Articles offer access to current research available in Lippincott Williams & Wilkins journals.

Resources for Students

Students can visit [thePoint](http://thePoint.lww.com/eliopoulos7e) at <http://thePoint.lww.com/eliopoulos7e> to access student resources using the codes printed in the front of their textbooks. Resources include the following:

- **WATCH & LEARN** Video clips on How to Assist a Person Who is Falling, Alternatives to Restraints, and the Five Stages of Grief. (Icons appear in the textbook to direct readers to relevant videos.)
- Journal Articles
- NCLEX Alternate-Item Format Tutorial
- Spanish–English Audio Glossary
- Learning Objectives from the book

Author's Note

I maintain that if done properly, gerontological nursing is among the most complex, dynamic specialties nurses could select. To practice this specialty effectively, nurses need to have a sound knowledge

base in gerontology and geriatric care, an appreciation for the richness of unique life experiences, and the wisdom to understand that true healing comes from sources that exceed medications and procedures. May this book serve as a tool to help nurses

provide high quality, holistic care to older adults in a variety of clinical settings and to discover new facets to this maturing gem of a specialty.

Peace and Blessings,
Charlotte Eliopoulos

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

From the time a Lippincott editor by the name of Bill Burgower encouraged me to write the first edition of *Gerontological Nursing* to the present, numerous people have played important roles in the growth and refinement of this book. Some were experienced editors who guided me through the hurdles of manuscript preparation; others were clinical nurses who offered feedback on their experiences of putting the book into practice. Friends and colleagues who possessed integrity and cared enough about me to offer honest criticism also played a role.

I am deeply indebted to the team at Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, including Elizabeth Nieginski, Laura Scott, Jennifer Clements, Jodi Bukowski, and Betsy Gentzler, among others. They shared and committed to visions for expanding features to enhance the usefulness of the book. I am especially

appreciative of the efforts of Betsy Gentzler, Associate Development Editor, for her skillful assistance that improved the quality of the content and presentation of material. Her professionalism, patience, and guidance made the process of writing this revision a smooth and painless one. For the many people who assisted behind the scenes—reviewers who gave helpful suggestions, the Art Department who added visual appeal, the Sales Department who provided feedback from the field, the technological gurus who developed the CD-ROMs and website for this text—special thanks is offered.

I continue to be significantly grateful to the many older adults who have touched my life and taught me the wisdom and beauty associated with growing older, and for God who makes all things possible.

Charlotte Eliopoulos

CONTENTS

UNIT I

Understanding the Aging Experience

- 1 The Aging Population 3**
 - Views of Older Adults Through History 4
 - Characteristics of the Older Adult
 - Population 4
 - Population Growth and Increasing Life Expectancy* 5
 - Marital Status and Living Arrangements* 7
 - Geographic Distribution* 7
 - Income and Employment* 7
 - Education* 9
 - Health Status* 9
 - Implications of an Aging Population 9
 - Impact of the Baby Boomers* 10
 - Provision of and Payment for Services* 11
- 2 Theories of Aging 13**
 - Biological Theories of Aging 14
 - Genetic Theories* 15
 - Cross-Linking Theory* 15
 - Evolutionary Theories* 15
 - Free Radicals and Lipofuscin Theories* 16
 - Autoimmune Reactions* 16
 - Wear and Tear Theories* 16
 - Stress* 16
 - Biogerontology* 17
 - Neuroendocrine and Neurochemical Theories* 17
 - Radiation Theories* 17
 - Nutrition Theories* 17
 - Environmental Theories* 17
 - Implications of Biological Theories for Nursing* 17
 - Psychosocial Theories of Aging 17
 - Disengagement Theory* 18
 - Activity Theory* 18
 - Continuity Theory* 18
 - Developmental Tasks* 19
 - Gerotranscendence* 19
 - Implications of Psychosocial Theories for Nursing* 19
- 3 Diversity 23**
 - Increasing Diversity of the Older Adult Population 23
 - Overview of Diverse Groups of Older Adults in the United States 24
 - Hispanic Americans* 24
 - Black Americans* 25
 - Asian Americans* 26
 - Jewish Americans* 28
 - Native Americans* 29
 - Older Prisoners* 30
 - Nursing Considerations for Culturally Sensitive Care of Older Adults 30
- 4 Life Transitions and Story 33**
 - Ageism 34
 - Changes in Family Roles and Relationships 34
 - Parenting* 35
 - Grandparenting* 35
 - Loss of Spouse 36
 - Retirement 37
 - Loss of the Work Role* 37
 - Reduced Income* 39
 - Changes in Health and Functioning 39
 - Cumulative Effects of Life Transitions 41
 - Shrinking Social World* 41
 - Awareness of Mortality* 42
 - Responding to Life Transitions 42
 - Life Review and Life Story* 42
 - Self-Reflection* 44
 - Strengthening Inner Resources* 46

5 Common Aging Changes 49

- Changes to the Body 50
 - Cells* 50
 - Physical Appearance* 50
 - Respiratory System* 51
 - Cardiovascular System* 51
 - Gastrointestinal System* 53
 - Urinary System* 54
 - Reproductive System* 54
 - Musculoskeletal System* 55
 - Nervous System* 56
 - Sensory Organs* 56
 - Endocrine System* 59
 - Integumentary System* 60
 - Immune System* 60
 - Thermoregulation* 61
- Changes to the Mind 61
 - Personality* 61
 - Memory* 61
 - Intelligence* 61
 - Learning* 61
 - Attention Span* 62
- Nursing Implications of Age-Related Changes 62

UNIT 2

Foundations of Gerontological Nursing

6 The Specialty of Gerontological Nursing 69

- Development of Gerontological Nursing 70
- Core Elements of Gerontological Nursing Practice 71
 - Evidence-Based Practice* 72
 - Standards* 72
 - Principles* 72
- Gerontological Nursing Roles 75
 - Healer* 75
 - Caregiver* 76
 - Educator* 76
 - Advocate* 76
 - Innovator* 76
- Advanced Practice Nursing Roles 76
- The Future of Gerontological Nursing 77
 - Lessons From the Past* 77
 - Challenges for the Future* 77

7 Holistic Model for Gerontological Nursing 82

- Holistic Gerontological Care 83
- Holistic Assessment of Needs 83
 - Health Promotion-Related Needs* 83

- Health Challenges-Related Needs* 84
- Requisites to Meet Needs* 85
- Gerontological Nursing Interventions 85
- Examples of Application 86
 - Assessing Needs: The Case of Mr. R* 87
 - Applying the Holistic Model: The Case of Mrs. D* 87

8 Legal Aspects of Gerontological Nursing 95

- Laws Governing Gerontological Nursing Practice 96
- Legal Risks in Gerontological Nursing 96
 - Malpractice* 96
 - Confidentiality* 99
 - Patient Consent* 99
 - Patient Competency* 100
 - Staff Supervision* 101
 - Medications* 101
 - Restraints* 102
 - Telephone Orders* 102
 - No-Code Orders* 103
 - Advance Directives and Issues Related to Death and Dying* 103
 - Elder Abuse* 104
- Legal Safeguards for Nurses 104

9 Ethical Aspects of Gerontological Nursing 107

- Philosophies Guiding Ethical Thinking 107
- Ethics in Nursing 108
 - External and Internal Ethical Standards* 108
 - Ethical Principles* 109
- Ethical Dilemmas Facing Gerontological Nurses 110
 - Changes Increasing Ethical Dilemmas for Nurses* 110
 - Measures to Help Nurses Make Ethical Decisions* 112

10 Continuum of Care in Gerontological Nursing 114

- Services in the Continuum of Care for Older Adults 115
 - Preventive Services* 115
 - Partial and Intermittent Care Services* 118
 - Complete and Continuous Care Services* 120
 - Complementary and Alternative Services* 121
- Matching Services to Needs 122
- Settings and Roles for Gerontological Nurses 123

11 Self-Care for the Gerontological Nurse 126

- Characteristics of Nurse Healers 127
 - Presence* 127
 - Availability* 127
 - Connections* 127
 - Models of Holism* 127
- Self-Care and Nurturing 128
 - Following Positive Health Care Practices* 128
 - Strengthening and Building Connections* 128
 - Committing to a Dynamic Process* 131

**UNIT 3
Fostering Connection and Gratification**

12 Sexuality and Intimacy 135

- Attitudes Toward Sex and Older Adults 135
- Menopause as a Journey to Inner Connection 137
 - Symptom Management and Patient Education* 137
 - Self-Acceptance* 138
- Realities of Sex in Older Adulthood 139
 - Sexual Behavior and Roles* 139
 - Intimacy* 140
 - Age-Related Changes and Sexual Response* 140
- Identifying Barriers to Sexual Activity 141
 - Unavailability of a Partner* 141
 - Psychological Barriers* 141
 - Medical Conditions* 145
 - Erectile Dysfunction* 145
 - Medication Adverse Effects* 145
 - Cognitive Impairment* 147
- Promoting Healthy Sexual Function 147

13 Spirituality 150

- Spiritual Needs 151
 - Love* 151
 - Meaning and Purpose* 151
 - Hope* 151
 - Dignity* 151
 - Forgiveness* 151
 - Gratitude* 151
 - Transcendence* 151
 - Expression of Faith* 152
- Assessing Spiritual Needs 152
- Addressing Spiritual Needs 152
 - Being Available* 152
 - Honoring Beliefs and Practices* 152
 - Providing Opportunities for Solitude* 152
 - Promoting Hope* 156

- Assisting in Discovering Meaning in Challenging Situations* 156
- Facilitating Religious Practices* 156
- Praying With and For* 156
- Summary: The Importance of Spiritual Care 157

**UNIT 4
General Care Concerns**

14 Nutrition and Hydration 161

- Nutritional Needs of Older Adults 162
 - Quantity and Quality of Caloric Needs* 162
 - Nutritional Supplements* 164
 - Special Needs of Women* 165
- Hydration Needs of Older Adults 166
- Promotion of Oral Health 167
- Threats to Good Nutrition 167
 - Indigestion and Food Intolerance* 167
 - Anorexia* 168
 - Dysphagia* 168
 - Constipation* 168
 - Malnutrition* 168
- Addressing Nutritional Status and Hydration in Older Adults 171

15 Rest and Sleep 173

- Age-Related Changes in Sleep 174
 - Circadian Sleep–Wake Cycles* 174
 - Sleep Stages* 174
 - Sleep Efficiency and Quality* 174
- Sleep Disturbances 174
 - Insomnia* 174
 - Nocturnal Myoclonus and Restless Leg Syndrome* 175
 - Sleep Apnea* 175
 - Medical Conditions That Affect Sleep* 176
 - Drugs That Affect Sleep* 176
- Promoting Rest and Sleep in Older Adults 176
 - Pharmacologic Measures to Promote Sleep* 176
 - Nonpharmacologic Measures to Promote Sleep* 178
 - Pain Control* 180

16 Comfort and Pain Management 182

- Comfort 182
- Pain: A Complex Phenomenon 183
 - Prevalence of Pain in Older Adults* 183
 - Types of Pain* 183
 - Pain Perception* 183
 - Effects of Unrelieved Pain* 184

Pain Assessment 184
 An Integrative Approach to Pain Management 185
 Complementary Therapies 186
 Dietary Changes 187
 Medication 188
 Comforting 188

17 Safety 191

Aging and Risks to Safety 192
 Importance of the Environment to Health and Wellness 192
 Impact of Aging on Environmental Safety and Function 194
 Lighting 195
 Temperature 196
 Colors 197
 Scents 197
 Floor Coverings 197
 Furniture 198
 Sensory Stimulation 198
 Noise Control 199
 Bathroom Hazards 199
 Psychosocial Considerations 199
 The Problem of Falls 200
 Risks and Prevention 201
 Risks Associated With Restraints 203
 Interventions to Reduce Intrinsic Risks to Safety 203
 Reducing Hydration and Nutrition Risks 203
 Addressing Risks Associated With Sensory Deficits 204
 Addressing Risks Associated With Mobility Limitations 205
 Monitoring Body Temperature 205
 Preventing Infection 205
 Suggesting Sensible Clothing 205
 Using Medications Cautiously 205
 Avoiding Crime 205
 Promoting Safe Driving 206
 Promoting Early Detection of Problems 206
 Addressing Risks Associated With Functional Impairment 206

18 Safe Medication Use 209

Effects of Aging on Medication Use 210
 Polypharmacy and Interactions 210
 Altered Pharmacokinetics 210
 Altered Pharmacodynamics 214
 Increased Risk of Adverse Reactions 214
 Promoting the Safe Use of Drugs 215
 Avoiding Potentially Inappropriate Drugs: Beers' Criteria 215

Reviewing Necessity and Effectiveness of Prescribed Drugs 216
Promoting Safe and Effective Administration 217
Providing Patient Teaching 218
 Alternatives to Drugs 218
 Review of Selected Drugs 219
 Analgesics 219
 Antacids 220
 Antianxiety Drugs (Anxiolytics) 221
 Antibiotics 222
 Anticoagulants 222
 Anticonvulsants 223
 Antidepressants 224
 Antidiabetic Drugs 224
 Antihypertensive Drugs 225
 Anti-inflammatory Drugs, Nonsteroidal (NSAIDs) 226
 Antipsychotics 226
 Cholesterol-Lowering Drugs 227
 Cognitive Enhancing Drugs 228
 Digoxin 229
 Diuretics 229
 Laxatives 230
 Sedatives/Hypnotics 230

UNIT 5
Facilitating Physiological Balance

19 Respiration 235

Effects of Aging on Respiratory Health 236
 Respiratory Health Promotion 238
 Selected Respiratory Conditions 239
 Asthma 239
 Chronic Bronchitis 240
 Emphysema 240
 Lung Cancer 241
 Lung Abscess 241
 General Nursing Considerations for Respiratory Conditions 243
 Recognizing Symptoms 243
 Preventing Complications 243
 Ensuring Safe Oxygen Administration 243
 Performing Postural Drainage 244
 Promoting Productive Coughing 244
 Using Complementary Therapies 245
 Promoting Self-Care 245
 Providing Encouragement 246

20 Circulation 248

Effects of Aging on Cardiovascular Health 249
 Cardiovascular Health Promotion 249

- Proper Nutrition* 249
- Adequate Exercise* 251
- Cigarette Smoke Avoidance* 251
- Stress Management* 251
- Proactive Interventions* 252
- Selected Cardiovascular Conditions 252
 - Hypertension* 252
 - Hypotension* 255
 - Congestive Heart Failure* 257
 - Pulmonary Emboli* 257
 - Coronary Artery Disease* 257
 - Arrhythmias* 260
 - Peripheral Vascular Disease* 261
- General Nursing Considerations for Cardiovascular Conditions 263
 - Prevention* 263
 - Keeping the Patient Informed* 263
 - Preventing Complications* 263
 - Promoting Circulation* 265
 - Providing Foot Care* 265
 - Managing Problems Associated With Peripheral Vascular Disease* 266
 - Promoting Normality* 266
 - Integrating Complementary Therapies* 266
- 21** Digestion and Bowel Elimination 269
 - Effects of Aging on Gastrointestinal Health 270
 - Gastrointestinal Health Promotion 270
 - Selected Gastrointestinal Conditions and Related Nursing Considerations 271
 - Dry Mouth (Xerostomia)* 271
 - Dental Problems* 271
 - Dysphagia* 273
 - Hiatal Hernia* 274
 - Esophageal Cancer* 275
 - Peptic Ulcer* 276
 - Cancer of the Stomach* 276
 - Diverticular Disease* 276
 - Cancer of the Colon* 277
 - Chronic Constipation* 277
 - Flatulence* 279
 - Intestinal Obstruction* 279
 - Fecal Impaction* 279
 - Bowel Incontinence* 279
 - Acute Appendicitis* 280
 - Cancer of the Pancreas* 280
 - Biliary Tract Disease* 280
 - Summary 280
- 22** Urinary Elimination 282
 - Effects of Aging on Urinary Elimination 283
 - Urinary System Health Promotion 283
 - Selected Urinary Conditions 284
 - Urinary Incontinence* 284
 - Bladder Cancer* 288
 - Renal Calculi* 289
 - Glomerulonephritis* 289
 - General Nursing Considerations for Urinary Conditions 289
- 23** Reproductive System Health 291
 - Effects of Aging on the Reproductive System 292
 - Reproductive System Health Promotion 292
 - Selected Reproductive System Conditions 293
 - Problems of the Female Reproductive System* 293
 - Problems of the Male Reproductive System* 295
 - Summary 297
- 24** Movement 299
 - Effects of Aging on Musculoskeletal Function 300
 - Musculoskeletal Health Promotion 300
 - Promotion of Physical Exercise in all Age Groups* 300
 - Exercise Programs Tailored for Older Adults* 301
 - The Mind–Body Connection* 306
 - Prevention of Inactivity* 306
 - Nutrition* 308
 - Selected Musculoskeletal Conditions 308
 - Fractures* 308
 - Osteoarthritis* 312
 - Rheumatoid Arthritis* 314
 - Osteoporosis* 315
 - Gout* 316
 - Podiatric Conditions* 316
 - General Nursing Considerations for Musculoskeletal Conditions 318
 - Managing Pain* 318
 - Preventing Injury* 318
 - Promoting Independence* 319
- 25** Neurologic Function 322
 - Effects of Aging on the Nervous System 323
 - Neurologic Health Promotion 323
 - Selected Neurologic Conditions 326
 - Parkinson's Disease* 326
 - Transient Ischemic Attacks* 327
 - Cerebrovascular Accidents* 327
 - General Nursing Considerations for Neurologic Conditions 328
 - Promoting Independence* 328
 - Preventing Injury* 330

26 Sensation 332

- Effects of Aging on Sensory Function 333
- Sensory Health Promotion 333
 - Promoting Vision* 333
 - Promoting Hearing* 334
 - Assessing Problems* 335
- Selected Sensory Conditions and Related Nursing Interventions 335
 - Visual Deficits* 335
 - Hearing Deficits* 342
- General Nursing Considerations for Sensory Deficits 344

27 Endocrine Function 346

- Effects of Aging on Endocrine Function 347
- Selected Endocrine Conditions and Related Nursing Considerations 347
 - Diabetes Mellitus* 347
 - Hypothyroidism* 354
 - Hyperthyroidism* 354
 - Hyperlipidemia* 355

28 Integumentary Function 358

- Effects of Aging on the Integument 359
- Integumentary Health Promotion 359
- Selected Integumentary Conditions 360
 - Pruritus* 360
 - Keratosis* 360
 - Seborrheic Keratosis* 360
 - Skin Cancer* 361
 - Vascular Lesions* 363
 - Pressure Ulcers* 363
- General Nursing Considerations for Integumentary Conditions 365
 - Promoting Normalcy* 365
 - Using Alternative Therapies* 365

29 Immune Function 367

- Effects of Aging on Immune Function 368
- Immunologic Health Promotion 368
 - Diet* 368
 - Exercise* 369
 - Immunization* 369
 - Stress Management* 370
 - Mind–Body Connection* 370
 - Careful Use of Antibiotics* 370

UNIT 6**Multisystemic Disorders****30 Infections 375**

- Unique Manifestations of Infection in Older Adults 376

Common Infections 376

- Urinary Tract Infection* 376
- Prostatitis* 377
- Pneumonia* 377
- Influenza* 378
- Tuberculosis* 379
- Vaginitis* 379
- Herpes Zoster* 380
- Scabies* 380
- HIV and AIDS* 380
- Clostridium difficile Infection* 382
- Antibiotic-Resistant Microorganisms* 383

31 Cancer 385

- Aging and Cancer 387
 - Unique Challenges for Older Persons With Cancer* 387
 - Explanations for Increased Incidence in Old Age* 387
- Cancer Risk Factors 387
 - Heredity* 387
 - Diet* 387
 - Drinking Water* 388
 - Tobacco* 388
 - Alcohol* 388
 - Radiation* 388
 - Ultraviolet Radiation* 388
 - Occupational Exposure to Carcinogens* 388
 - Radon* 388
 - Special Risks for Women* 389
 - Other Contributing Factors* 389
- Prevention and Screening 389
- Treatment 390
 - Conventional Treatment* 390
 - Complementary and Alternative Medicine* 390
- Nursing Considerations for Older Adults With Cancer 391
 - Providing Patient Education* 391
 - Promoting Optimum Care* 392
 - Providing Support to Patients and Families* 392

32 Mental Health Disorders 396

- Aging and Mental Health 397
- Promoting Mental Health in Older Adults 397
- Selected Mental Health Conditions 398
 - Depression* 398
 - Anxiety* 402
 - Alcohol Abuse* 404
 - Paranoia* 405
 - Hypochondriasis* 406

Nursing Considerations for Mental Health Conditions 406
Monitoring Medications 406
Promoting a Positive Self-Concept 406
Managing Behavioral Problems 407

33 Delirium and Dementia 411

Delirium 412
 Dementia 413
Alzheimer's Disease 413
Other Dementias 415
Caring for Persons With Dementia 416

UNIT 7
Gerontological Care Issues

34 Living in Harmony With Chronic Conditions 425

Chronic Conditions and Older Adults 426
 Goals for Chronic Care 426
 Assessment of Chronic Care Needs 429
 Maximizing the Benefits of Chronic Care 430
Selecting an Appropriate Physician 430
Using a Chronic Care Coach 430
Increasing Knowledge 431
Locating a Support Group 431
Making Smart Lifestyle Choices 432
Using Complementary and Alternative Therapies 432
 Factors Affecting the Course of Chronic Care 432
Defense Mechanisms and Implications 433
Impact of Ongoing Care on the Family 433
The Need for Institutional Care 434
 Chronic Care: A Nursing Challenge 434

35 Rehabilitative Care 436

The Need for Rehabilitation 437
 Living With Disability 438
Importance of Attitude and Coping Capacity 438
Losses Accompanying Disability 438
 Principles of Rehabilitative Nursing 438
 Functional Assessment 439
 Interventions to Facilitate and Improve Functioning 439
Facilitating Proper Positioning 439
Assisting With Range-of-Motion Exercises 441
Teaching About Mobility Aids 444

Teaching About Bowel and Bladder Training 448
Maintaining and Promoting Mental Function 448
 Using Community Resources 449

36 Acute Care 451

Risks Associated With Hospitalization of Older Adults 452
 Surgical Care 452
Special Risks for Older Adults 452
Preoperative Care Considerations 452
Operative and Postoperative Care Considerations 455
 Emergency Care 456
 Infections 459
 Discharge Planning for Older Adults 462

37 Long-Term Care 464

Development of Long-Term Institutional Care 465
Before the 20th Century 465
During the 20th Century 466
Lessons to Be Learned From History 467
 Long-Term Institutional Care Today 468
Nursing Facility Standards 468
Facility Residents 468
Nursing Roles and Responsibilities 468
Assisted Living Facilities 471
 Looking Forward: A New Model of Long-Term Care 472

38 Family Caregiving 476

The Older Adult's Family 477
Identification of Family Members 477
Family Member Roles 477
Family Dynamics and Relationships 478
 Scope of Family Caregiving 479
 Protecting the Health of the Older Adult and Caregiver 479
 Family Dysfunction and Abuse 481
 Rewards of Family Caregiving 483

39 End-of-Life Care 485

Definitions of Death 486
 Family Experience With the Dying Process 486
 Supporting the Dying Individual 487
Stages of the Dying Process and Related Nursing Interventions 488
Physical Care Needs 491
Spiritual Care Needs 493

<i>Signs of Imminent Death</i>	493	<i>Helping Family and Friends After a</i>	
<i>Advance Directives</i>	494	<i>Death</i>	495
Supporting Family and Friends	494	Supporting Nursing Staff	495
<i>Supporting Through the Stages of</i>		Index	499
<i>the Dying Process</i>	494		

INDEX OF SELECTED FEATURES

ASSESSMENT GUIDES

- Assessment Guide 12-1 Sexual Health, p. 144
- Assessment Guide 13-1 Spiritual Needs, p. 153
- Assessment Guide 14-1 Nutritional Status, p. 170
- Assessment Guide 16-1 Pain, p. 184
- Assessment Guide 19-1 Respiratory Function, p. 237
- Assessment Guide 20-1 Cardiovascular Function, p. 253
- Assessment Guide 21-1 Gastrointestinal Function, p. 272
- Assessment Guide 22-1 Urinary Function, p. 284
- Assessment Guide 23-1 Reproductive System Health, p. 293
- Assessment Guide 24-1 Musculoskeletal Function, p. 310
- Assessment Guide 25-1 Neurologic Function, p. 324
- Assessment Guide 26-1 Sensory Function, p. 335
- Assessment Guide 28-1 Skin Status, p. 361
- Assessment Guide 32-1 Mental Health, p. 399

NURSING CARE PLANS

- Nursing Care Plan 7-1 Holistic Care for Mrs. D, p. 88
- Nursing Care Plan 19-1 The Older Adult With Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease, p. 242
- Nursing Care Plan 20-1 The Older Adult With Heart Failure, p. 258
- Nursing Care Plan 21-1 The Older Adult With Hiatal Hernia, p. 275
- Nursing Care Plan 21-2 The Older Adult With Bowel Incontinence, p. 280
- Nursing Care Plan 22-1 The Older Adult With Urinary Incontinence, p. 287
- Nursing Care Plan 23-1 The Older Adult Recovering From Prostate Surgery, p. 296
- Nursing Care Plan 24-1 The Older Adult With Osteoarthritis, p. 313
- Nursing Care Plan 25-1 The Older Adult With a Cerebrovascular Accident: Convalescence Period, p. 329
- Nursing Care Plan 26-1 The Older Adult With Open-Angle Glaucoma, p. 340
- Nursing Care Plan 33-1 The Older Adult With Alzheimer's Disease, p. 419



UNIT I

Understanding the Aging Experience

- 1 THE AGING POPULATION
- 2 THEORIES OF AGING
- 3 DIVERSITY
- 4 LIFE TRANSITIONS AND STORY
- 5 COMMON AGING CHANGES

The Aging Population

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Views of Older Adults Through History

Characteristics of the Older Adult Population

- Population Growth and Increasing Life Expectancy
- Marital Status and Living Arrangements
- Geographic Distribution
- Income and Employment
- Education
- Health Status

Implications of an Aging Population

- Impact of the Baby Boomers
- Provision of and Payment for Services

“Families forget their older relatives . . . most people become senile in old age . . . Social Security provides every older person with a decent retirement income . . . a majority of older people reside in nursing homes . . . Medicare covers all health care-related costs for older people.” These and other myths continue to be perpetuated about older people. Misinformation about the older population is an injustice not only to this age group but also to persons of all ages who need accurate information to prepare realistically for their own senior years. Gerontological nurses must know the facts about the older population to effectively deliver services and educate the general public.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 Explain the different ways in which older adults have been viewed throughout history.
- 2 Describe characteristics of today's older population in regard to:
 - life expectancy
 - marital status
 - living arrangements
 - geographic distribution
 - income and employment
 - education
 - health status
- 3 Discuss projected changes in future generations of older people and the implications for health care.

Views of Older Adults Through History

The members of the current older population in the United States have offered the sacrifice, strength, and spirit that made this country great. They were the proud GIs in world wars, the brave immigrants who ventured into an unknown land, the bold entrepreneurs who took risks that created wealth and opportunities for employment, and the unselfish parents who struggled to give their children a better life. They have witnessed and participated in profound informational, technological, and social growth and change. They have earned respect, admiration, and dignity. Today older adults are viewed with positivism rather than prejudice, knowledge rather than myth, and concern rather than neglect. A brief reflection of the view of older adults in past societies demonstrates that this positive view was not always the norm, however.

Historically, societies have viewed their aged members in a variety of ways. In the time of Confucius, there was a direct correlation between a person's age and the degree of respect to which he or she was entitled. Taoism viewed old age as the epitome of life, and the ancient Chinese believed that attaining old age was a wonderful accomplishment that deserved great honor. On the other hand, the early Egyptians dreaded growing old and experimented with a variety of potions and schemes to maintain their youth. Opinions were divided among the early Greeks; myths portray many struggles between old and young. Plato promoted older adults as society's best leaders, whereas Aristotle denied older people any role in governmental matters. Ancient Romans had limited respect for their elders; in the nations that Rome conquered, the sick and aged were customarily the first to be killed. Woven throughout the Bible is God's concern for the well-being of the family and desire for people to respect elders (*Honor your father and your mother . . . Exodus 20:12*). Many key biblical figures, such as Moses and Abraham, made significant contributions in their advanced years. Yet, the honor bestowed on older adults was not sustained.

The Dark Ages were especially bleak for older persons; the Middle Ages did not bring considerable improvement. The medieval times gave rise to strong feelings regarding the superiority of youth; these feelings were expressed in uprisings of sons against fathers. The art of this period, depicting figures such as Father Time, also portrayed an uncomplimentary image of older adults. Older people were among the first to be affected by famine and poverty and the last to benefit from better times. In the early 17th century, England

developed Poor Laws that provided care for the destitute and enabled older persons without family resources to have some modest safety net. However, many of the gains in the treatment of older adults during the 18th and 19th centuries were lost during the Industrial Revolution. Although child labor laws were developed during that time to guard minors, persons of advanced age were left unprotected. Those unable to meet the demands of industrial work settings were placed at the mercy of their offspring or forced to beg on the streets for sustenance.

Although Dr. I. L. Nascher, known as the father of geriatrics, wrote the first geriatric textbook in 1914, American literature during the first half of the 20th century reflects little improvement in the status of older adults. The first significant step in improving the lives of older Americans was the passage of the Federal Old Age Insurance Law under the Social Security Act in 1935, which provided some financial security for older persons. The profound "graying" of the population started to be realized in the 1960s, and the United States responded with the formation of the Administration on Aging, enactment of the Older Americans Act, and the introduction of Medicaid and Medicare, all in 1965. Since that time, society has demonstrated a growing concern for its older members (Box 1-1).

The past few decades have brought a profound awakening of interest in older persons as their numbers in society have grown. A more humanistic attitude toward all members of society has benefited older adults, and improvements in health care and general living conditions ensure that more people have the opportunity to attain old age and live longer, more fruitful years in later adulthood than previous generations (Fig. 1-1).

Characteristics of the Older Adult Population

Older adults are generally defined as individuals age 65 years and older. At one time all persons over age 65 years were grouped together under the category of "old." Now it is recognized that much diversity exists among different age groups in late life, and older individuals can be further categorized as follows:

- young-old: 60 to 74 years
- old-old: 75 to 100 years
- centenarians: over 100 years

Some also include a fourth category of middle-old, comprising ages 75 to 84 years, shortening the old-old group to 85 to 100 years. The profile, interests, and health care challenges of each of these sub-

BOX 1-1 Publicly Supported Programs of Benefit to Older Americans

1900	Pension laws passed in some states	Medicaid (Title 19 of Social Security Act)	
1935	Social Security Act	for poor and disabled of any age	
1961	First White House Conference on Aging	1972	Supplemental Security Income (SSI) enacted
1965	Older Americans Act: nutrition, senior employment, and transportation programs	1991	Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act (nursing home reform law) implemented
	Administration on Aging		
	Medicare (Title 18 of Social Security Act)		

sets can be vastly different. For example, a 66-year-old may desire cosmetic surgery to stay competitive in the executive job market; a 74-year-old may have recently remarried and want to do something about her dry vaginal canal; an 82-year-old may be concerned that his arthritic knees are limiting his ability to play a round of golf; and a 101-year-old may be desperate to find a way to correct her impaired vision so that she can enjoy television. Any stereotypes held about older people must be discarded; if anything, greater diversity rather than homogeneity will be evident.



FIGURE 1-1 • It is important for gerontological nurses to be as concerned with adding quality to the lives of older adults, as they are with increasing the quantity of years.

Population Growth and Increasing Life Expectancy

Persons older than 65 years of age represent more than 12% of the population in the United States. It is predicted that growing numbers of persons will reach their senior years, with an anticipated 17% of the population being older than 65 years of age by the year 2020. This growth of the older adult population is due in part to increasing life expectancy. Advancements in disease control and health technology, lower infant and child mortality rates, improved sanitation, and better living conditions have increased life expectancy for most Americans. More people are surviving to their senior years than ever before. In 1930, slightly more than 6 million persons were aged 65 years or older, and the average life expectancy was 59.7 years. The life expectancy in 1965 was 70.2 years, and the number of older adults exceeded 20 million. Life expectancy has now reached 77.8 years, with over 34 million persons exceeding age 65 years (Table 1-1). Not only are more people reaching old age, but they are living longer once they do; the number of people in their seventies and eighties has been steadily increasing and is expected to continue to increase (Fig. 1-2). The population over age 85 represents approximately 40% of the older population, and the number of centenarians is steadily growing.



KEY CONCEPT

More people are achieving and spending longer periods of time in old age than ever before in history.

Although life expectancy has increased, it still differs by race and gender (Table 1-2). From the late 1980s to the present, the gap in life expectancy between white people and black people has widened because the life expectancy of

TABLE I-1 Life Expectancy at Birth From 1920–2000 With Projections to 2010

Year	Total U.S. Population	White Population			Black Population		
		Total	Men	Women	Total	Men	Women
1920	54.1	54.9	54.4	55.6	45.3	45.5	45.2
1930	59.7	61.4	59.7	63.5	48.1	47.3	49.2
1940	62.9	64.2	62.1	66.6	53.1	51.5	54.9
1950	68.2	69.1	66.5	72.2	60.8	59.1	62.9
1955	69.6	70.5	67.4	73.7	63.7	61.4	66.1
1960	69.7	70.6	67.4	74.1	63.6	61.1	66.3
1965	70.2	71.0	67.6	74.7	64.1	61.1	67.4
1970	70.9	71.7	68.0	75.6	65.3	61.3	69.4
1975	72.6	73.4	69.5	77.3	68.0	63.7	72.4
1980	73.7	74.4	70.7	78.1	69.5	65.3	73.6
1985	74.7	75.3	71.8	78.7	69.3	65.0	73.4
1990	75.4	76.1	72.7	79.4	69.1	64.5	73.6
1995	75.8	76.5	73.4	79.6	69.6	65.2	73.9
2000	77.1	77.7	74.8	80.4	72.4	68.9	75.6
2004	77.8	78.3	75.7	80.8	73.1	69.5	76.3
2010	78.5	79.0	76.1	81.8	74.5	70.9	77.8

(projected)

From Center for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Health Statistics, National Vital Statistics System, Table 27, Life expectancy at birth, at 65 years of age, and at 75 years of age, by race and sex, United States selected years, 1900–2004. United States Health Statistics, Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 2006.

the black population has declined. The U.S. Department of Health and Human Services attributes the declining life expectancy of black people to an increase in deaths from homicide and acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. This reality underscores the need for nurses to be con-

cerned with health and social issues of persons of all ages because these impact a population’s aging process.

While the gap in life expectancy has widened among the races, the gap is narrowing between the sexes. Throughout the 20th century, the ratio of

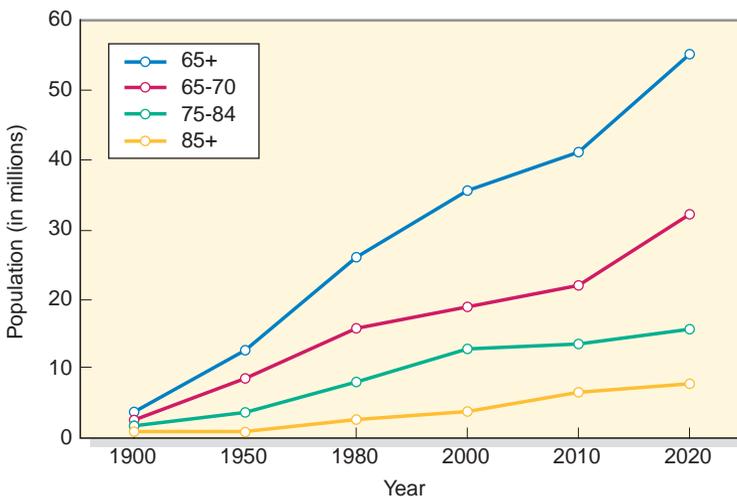


FIGURE I-2 • The older population from 1900 to 2020 (in millions). (From U.S. Bureau of the Census. General Population Characteristics. Tables 42 and 45; projections for 2010 and 2020 from Census Bureau International Data Base. http://www.aoa.gov/prof/Statistics/online_stat_data/AgePop2050.asp)

TABLE 1-2 Race and Gender Differences in Life Expectancy (in Years)

Year	Total Population	Men		Women	
		White	Black	White	Black
2003	77.4	75.3	68.9	80.4	75.9
2010 (projected)	78.5	76.1	70.9	81.8	77.8

From Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Table A: Expectation of life by age, race, and sex: United States, 2003. *National Vital Statistics Reports*, 54(14). Hyattsville, MD: National Center for Health Statistics, 2006.

men to women had steadily declined to the point where there are fewer than 7 older men for every 10 older women (Table 1-3). The ratio declined with each advanced decade. However, in the 21st century this trend is changing, and the ratio of men to women is increasing.



POINT TO PONDER

A higher proportion of older adults in our society means that younger age groups will be carrying a greater tax burden to support the older population. Should young families sacrifice to support services for older adults? Why or why not? ●

Marital Status and Living Arrangements

The higher survival rates of women, along with the practice of women marrying men older than them-

selves, make it no surprise that more than half of women older than 65 years of age are widowed, and a majority of their male contemporaries are married (Fig. 1-3).

Most older adults live in a household with a spouse or other family member, although more than twice the number of women than men live alone in later life. The likelihood of living alone increases with age for both sexes (Fig. 1-4). Most older people have contact with their families and are not forgotten or neglected. Realities of the aging family are discussed in greater detail in Chapter 38.



KEY CONCEPT

Women are more likely to be widowed and living alone in old age than their male counterparts.

TABLE 1-3 Gender Ratio in the Population 65 years of Age and Older

Year	Number of Men Per 100 Women
1910	101.1
1920	101.3
1930	100.5
1940	95.5
1950	89.6
1960	82.8
1970	72.1
1980	67.6
1985	67.9
1990	67.2
1995	69.1
2000	70.4
2025 (projected)	82.9

From U.S. Department of Commerce (2001). *Statistical abstract of the United States* (121st ed., p. 16). Washington, DC: Bureau of the Census.

Geographic Distribution

Older adults live in a variety of settings throughout the United States, with the greatest numbers found in California, Florida, New York, Texas, and Pennsylvania. In terms of the percentage of a state's population older than 65 years of age, Florida takes the lead, followed by Pennsylvania, West Virginia, Iowa, and North Dakota. In the past decade, the most dramatic increases in the percentage of older residents have occurred in Nevada, Alaska, Hawaii, and Arizona. States with the lowest percentage of total population over age 65 years are Alaska, Utah, and Georgia.

Income and Employment

The percentage of older people living below the poverty level has been declining, with about 10% now falling into this category. However, older adults still do possess financial problems. Most older people depend on Social Security for more than half of their income (Box 1-2). Women and minority groups have considerably less income than white men. Although the median net worth of older households is nearly twice the national average because of the high prevalence of home ownership by elders, many older adults are "asset rich and

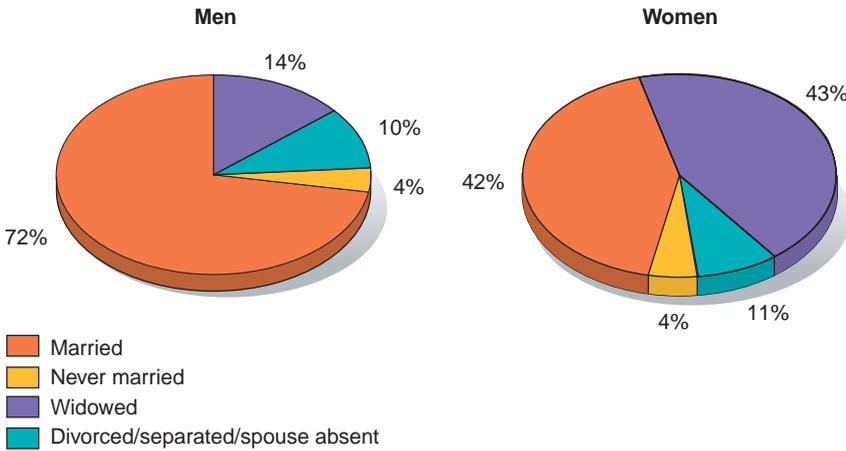


FIGURE I-3 • Marital status of the population 65 years of age and older (%). (From U.S. Department of Commerce. [2005]. Current Population Survey, Annual Social and Economic Supplement of the U.S. Bureau of the Census. Washington, DC: Bureau of the Census.)

cash poor.” That is, they may live in a house that has appreciated in value over the years, but they barely have sufficient monthly income to meet basic expenses.

While the percentage of the total population that older adults represent is growing, they constitute a steadily declining percentage of workers in the labor force. The withdrawal of men from the workforce at earlier ages has been one of the most significant labor force trends since World War II.

On the other hand, there has been a significant rise in the percentage of middle-aged women who are employed, although there has been little change in the labor force participation of women 65 years of age and older. Most Baby Boomers—those individuals born between 1946 and 1964—are expressing a desire to continue working as they enter retirement age (AARP, 2000).

KEY CONCEPT

Although Social Security was intended to be a supplement to other sources of income for older adults, it is the main source of income for more than half of all these individuals.

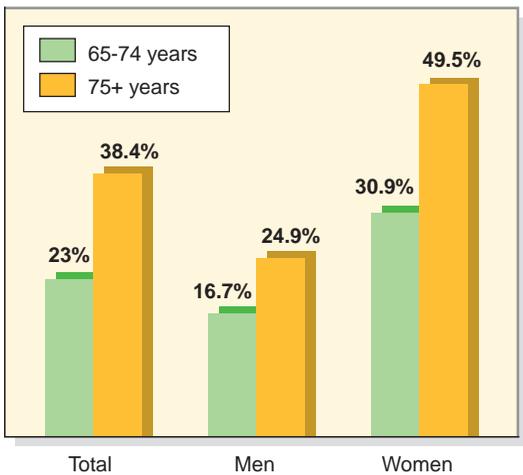


FIGURE I-4 • Percentage of people 65 years of age and older living alone. (From U.S. Department of Commerce. [2001]. Statistical abstract of the United States [121st ed., p. 42]. Washington, DC: Bureau of the Census.)

BOX I-2 Social Security and Supplemental Security Income

Social Security: a benefit check paid to retired workers of specific minimum age (e.g., 65 years), disabled workers of any age, and spouses and minor children of those workers. Benefits are not dependent on financial need. It is intended to serve as supplement to other sources of income in retirement.

Supplemental Security Income (SSI): a benefit check paid to persons over age 65 and/or persons with disabilities based on financial need.

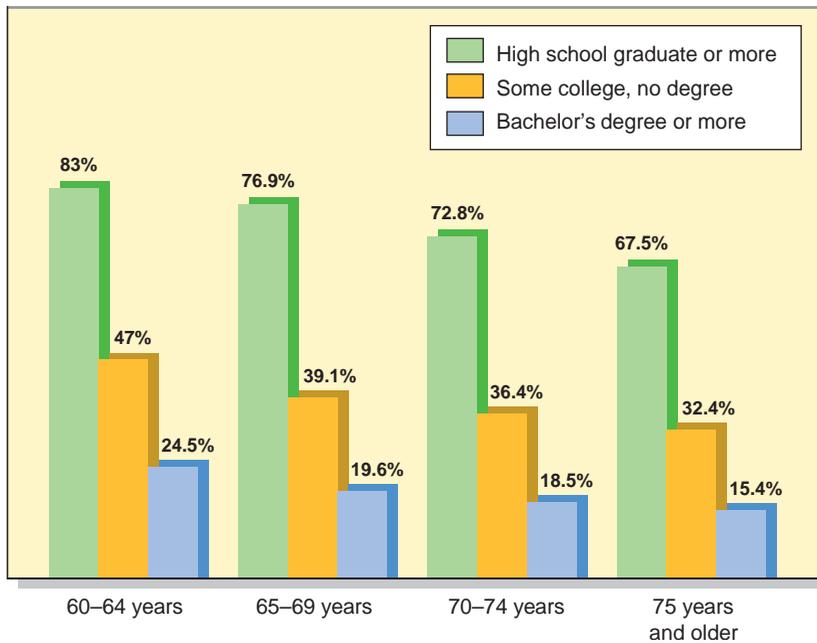


FIGURE 1-5 • Education level attained by age (in percentages). (From U.S. Census Bureau, [2004]. Current Population Survey, Annual Social and Economic Supplement, Washington, DC: Bureau of the Census.)

Education

The United States continues to witness a trend toward a more educated senior citizen group because of the significant increase in the number of persons completing high school during and since the 1940s (Fig. 1-5). Older people with advanced degrees are and will continue to be more prevalent than in the past. As is true for other age groups, older adults with advanced degrees have higher incomes.



KEY CONCEPT

Future generations of older people will have achieved higher levels of formal education than today's older population and will be more informed health care consumers.

Health Status

The older population experiences fewer acute illnesses than younger age groups and a lower death rate from these problems (Fig. 1-6). However, older people who do develop acute illnesses usually require longer periods of recovery and have more complications from these conditions.

Chronic illness is a major problem for the older population. Most older adults have at least one chronic disease, and typically they have several

chronic conditions that must be managed simultaneously (Box 1-3). Chronic conditions result in some limitations in activities of daily living (ADLs) and instrumental activities of daily living (IADLs) for many individuals. The older the person is, the greater the likelihood of difficulty with self-care activities and independent living.



KEY CONCEPT

The chronic disorders most prevalent in the older population are ones that can have a significant impact on independence and the quality of daily life.

Chronic diseases are not only major sources of disability, but they are also the leading causes of death (Table 1-4). A shift in death rates from various causes of death has occurred over the past three decades; deaths from heart disease have declined, whereas those from cancer have increased.

Implications of an Aging Population

The growing number of persons older than 65 years of age impacts the health and social service agencies and health care providers—including gerontological

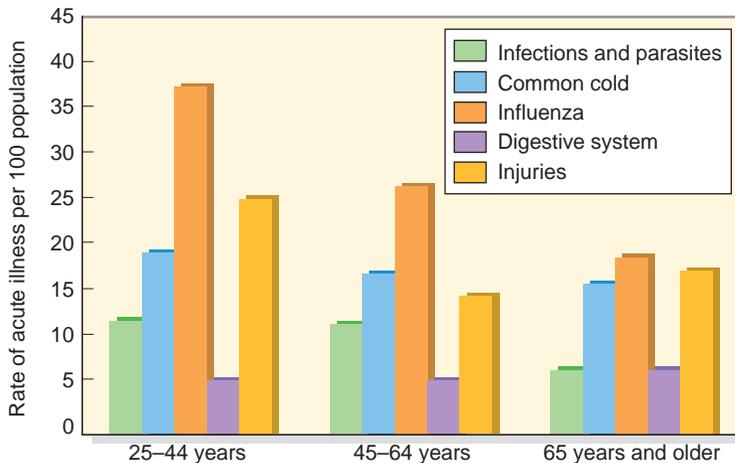


FIGURE 1-6 • Rates of acute illness in adults by age (per 100 population). (From U.S. National Center for Health Statistics. [2003]. Vital health statistics [Series 10, No. 200].)

nurses—that serve this group. As the older adult population grows, these agencies and providers must anticipate future needs of services and payment for these services.

Impact of the Baby Boomers

In anticipating needs and services for future generations of older adults, gerontological nurses must consider the realities of the baby boomers who will be the next wave of senior citizens. Baby boomers will be entering their senior years between 2008 and 2030 (Fig. 1-7). Although they are a highly diverse group, representing people as different as Bill Clinton, Bill Gates, and Cher, they do have some clearly defined characteristics that set them apart from other groups:

- Most have children, but this generation's low birth rate means that they will have fewer biologic children available to assist them in old age.
- They are better educated than preceding generations.

- Their household incomes tend to be higher than other groups, partly due to two incomes (three out of four baby boomer women are in the labor force).
- They favor a more casual dress code than previous generations of older adults.
- They are enamored with “high-tech” products and are likely to own and use a home computer.
- Their leisure time is scarcer than other adults, and they are more likely to report feeling stressed at the end of the day.
- As inventors of the fitness movement, they exercise more frequently than other adults.

Some predictions can be made concerning the baby boomer population when they enter older adulthood. They will be informed consumers of health care and will desire a highly active role in their care; their ability to access information may enable them to have as much knowledge as their health care providers on some health issues. They will not be satisfied with the conditions of today's

BOX 1-3 Ten Leading Chronic Conditions Affecting Population Age 65 and Older

1. Arthritis
2. High blood pressure
3. Hearing impairments
4. Heart conditions
5. Visual impairments (including cataracts)
6. Deformities or orthopedic impairments
7. Diabetes
8. Chronic sinusitis
9. Hay fever, allergic rhinitis (without asthma)
10. Varicose veins

TABLE 1-4 Leading Causes of Death for Persons 65 Years of Age and Older

Cause of Death	Percentage
All causes	100
Heart disease	33.0
Malignant neoplasms (cancer)	21.8
Cerebrovascular (stroke)	8.2
Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease	5.9
Pneumonia and influenza	3.3
Diabetes	2.4
Alzheimer's disease	2.7
Nephritis, nephrotic syndrome, nephrosis	1.7
Accidents	1.7
Septicemia	1.4

From National Center for Health Statistics, (2003). Table 33, Health, United States. Trend Tables on 65 and Older Population. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Department of Health and Human Services, Pub. No. 03-1030.

nursing homes and will demand that their long-term care facilities be equipped with computer stations, gymnasiums, juice bars, pools, and alternative therapies. Their blended families may need special assistance because of the potential caregiving



FIGURE 1-7 • The first wave of the 76 million baby boomers turns 65 years of age in 2011.

TABLE 1-5 Average Length of Hospital Stay

Age (Years)	<15	15-44	45-64	65+
Days of Stay	4.5	3.7	5.0	5.6

National Center for Health Statistics, Advance Data No. 371, (2006). Number, rate, and average length of stay for short-stay hospitals by age, region, and sex.

demands of several sets of step-parents and step-grandparents. Plans for services and architectural designs must take these factors into consideration.

Provision of and Payment for Services

The growing number of persons older than age 65 years also impacts the government that is the source of payment for many of the services older adults need. The older population has higher rates of hospitalization, surgery, and physician visits than other age groups (Table 1-5), and this care is more likely to be paid by federal dollars than private insurers or older adults themselves (Fig. 1-8).

Less than 5% of the older population is in a nursing home, assisted living community, or other institutional setting at any given time. Approximately one in four older adults will spend some time in a nursing home during the last years of their lives. Most people

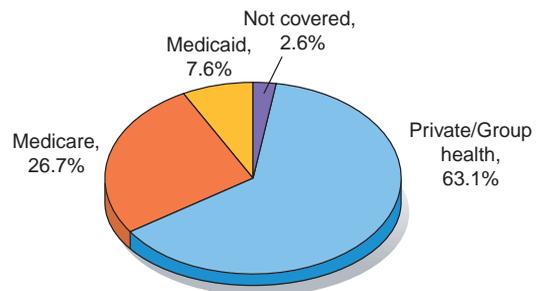


FIGURE 1-8 • Health insurance coverage for persons aged 65 years and older (percentages). Note: Some older adults with Medicare coverage also carry private supplemental health insurance. (Data from U.S. Department of Commerce. [2003]. Statistical abstract of the United States [122nd ed., Table 130]. Washington, DC: Bureau of the Census.)

who enter nursing homes as private-pay residents spend their assets by the end of 1 year and require government support for their care; most of the Medicaid budget is spent on long-term care.

As the percentage of the advanced-age population grows, society will face an increasing demand for the provision of and payment for services to this group. In this era of budget deficits, shrinking revenue, and increased competition for funding of other special interests, questions may arise about the ongoing ability of the government to provide a wide range of services for older adults. There may be concern that the older population is using a disproportionate amount of tax dollars and that limits should be set.

Gerontological nurses must be actively involved in discussions and decisions pertaining to the rationing of services so that the rights of older adults are expressed and protected. Likewise, gerontological nurses must assume leadership in developing cost-effective methods of care delivery that do not compromise the quality of services to older adults.



KEY CONCEPT

Gerontological nurses need to be advocates in ensuring that cost-containment efforts do not jeopardize the welfare of older adults.

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. What factors influence a society's willingness to provide assistance to and display a positive attitude toward older individuals (e.g., general economic conditions for all age groups)?
2. List the anticipated changes in the characteristics of the older population of the future and describe the implications for nursing.
3. What problems may older women experience as a result of gender differences in life expectancy and income?
4. What are some of the differences between older white and black Americans?

Resource

National Center for Health Statistics
<http://www.cdc.gov/nchs>

Reference

American Association of Retired Persons. (2000). *Boomers look toward retirement*. Washington, DC: Author.

Recommended Readings

Adler, J. (2006). What's next, boomers? As the older population grows, planners figure out how to meet the housing challenge. *Planning*, 72(11):34–38.

American Association of Homes and Services for the Aging and Decision Strategies International. (2006). *The long and winding road. Histories of aging and aging services in America, 2006–2016*. Washington, DC: American Association of Homes and Services for the Aging and Decision Strategies International.

American Journal of Nursing Continuing Education. (2006). *A new look at the old: A continuing education activity focused on healthcare for our aging population*. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

Billig, M. (2004). Supportive communities: An optimum arrangement for the older population? *Journal of Sociology and Social Welfare*, 31(3):131–152.

Gruber, J., & Wise, D. A. (1999). *Social security and retirement around the world*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.

Jackson, W. A. (1998). *The political economy of population aging*. Northampton, MA: Elgar.

Kassner, E., & Bectel, R. (1998). *Midlife and older Americans with disabilities: Who gets help? A chartbook*. Washington, DC: American Association of Retired Persons.

Kovner, A. R., & Knickman, J. R. (2005). *Jonas and Kovner's health care delivery in the United States*. (8th ed.). New York: Springer.

National Center for Health Statistics. (2005). *Health, United States, 2005, with chartbook on trends in the health of Americans*. Hyattsville, MD: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, available at <http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/data/hus/05.pdf>

Peter D. Hart Research Associates. (2002). *The new face of retirement: An ongoing survey of American attitudes on aging*. San Francisco: Civic Ventures.

CHAPTER 2

Theories of Aging

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Biological Theories of Aging

- Genetic Theories
- Cross-Linking Theory
- Evolutionary Theories
- Free Radicals and Lipofuscin Theories
- Autoimmune Reactions
- Wear and Tear Theories
- Stress
- Biogerontology
- Neuroendocrine and Neurochemical Theories
- Radiation Theories
- Nutrition Theories
- Environmental Theories
- Implications of Biological Theories for Nursing

Psychosocial Theories of Aging

- Disengagement Theory
- Activity Theory
- Continuity Theory
- Developmental Tasks
- Gerotranscendence
- Implications of Psychosocial Theories for Nursing

Applying Theories of Aging to Nursing Practice

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 Discuss the change in focus regarding learning about factors influencing aging.
- 2 List the major biological theories of aging.
- 3 Describe the major psychosocial theories of aging.
- 4 Identify factors that promote a healthy aging process.

For centuries, people have been intrigued by the mystery of aging and have sought to understand it, some in hopes of achieving everlasting youth, others seeking the key to immortality. Throughout history there have been numerous searches for a fountain of youth, the most famous being that of Ponce de León. Ancient Egyptian and Chinese relics show evidence of concoctions designed to prolong life or achieve immortality, and various other cultures have proposed specific dietary regimens, herbal mixtures, and rituals for similar ends. Ancient life expanders, such as extracts prepared from tiger testicles, may seem ludicrous until they are compared with more modern measures such as injections of embryonic tissue and Botox. Even persons who would not condone such peculiar practices may indulge in nutritional supplements, cosmetic creams, and exotic spas that promise to maintain youth and delay the onset or appearance of old age.

No single known factor causes or prevents aging; therefore, it is unrealistic to think that one theory can explain the complexities of this process. Explorations into biological, psychological, and social aging continue, and although some of this interest focuses on achieving eternal youth, most sound research

efforts aim toward a better understanding of the aging process so that people can age in a healthier fashion and postpone some of the negative consequences associated with growing old. In fact, recent research has concentrated on learning about keeping people healthy and active for a longer period of time, rather than on extending their lives in a state of long-term disability (Hubert, Bloch, Oehlert, & Fries, 2002). Recognizing that theories of aging offer varying degrees of universality, validity, and reliability, nurses can use this information to better understand the factors that may positively and negatively influence the health and well-being of persons of all ages.

Biological Theories of Aging

The process of biological aging differs not only from species to species but also from one human being to another. Some general statements can be made concerning anticipated organ changes, as described in Chapter 5; however, no two individuals age identically (Fig. 2-1). Varying degrees of physiologic changes, capacities, and limitations will be found among peers of a given age group. Further, the rate of aging among different body systems within one individual may vary, with one system



FIGURE 2-1 • Aging is a highly individualized process, demonstrated by the differences between persons of similar ages.

showing marked decline while another demonstrates no significant change.



KEY CONCEPT

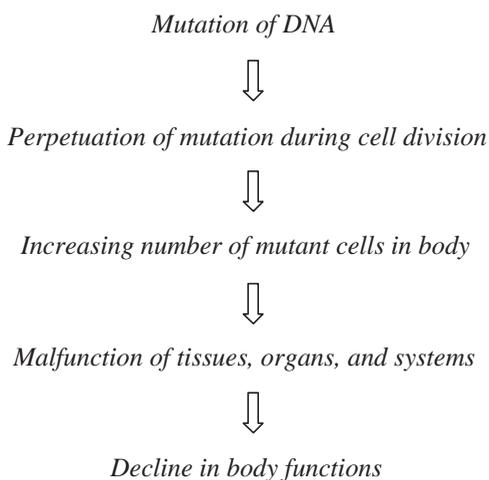
The aging process varies not only among individuals, but also within different body systems of the same person.

To explain biological aging, theorists have explored many factors, both internal and external to the human body.

Genetic Theories

Some theorists believe that people inherit a genetic program that determines their specific life expectancy. In the 1960s, the program theory of aging proposed that animals and humans are born with a genetic program or biological clock that predetermines life span (Hayflick, 1965). Various studies support this idea of a predetermined genetic program for life span. For example, studies have shown a positive relationship between parental age and filial life span. Additionally, studies of in-vitro cell proliferation have demonstrated that various species have a finite number of cell divisions. Fibroblasts from embryonic tissue experience a greater number of cell divisions than those derived from adult tissue, and among various species, the longer the life span, the greater the number of cell divisions. These studies support the theory that senescence—the process of becoming old—is under genetic control and occurs at the cellular level (Harvard Gazette Archives, 2001; University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign, 2002).

The error theory also proposes a genetic determination for aging. This theory holds that genetic mutations are responsible for aging by causing organ decline as a result of self-perpetuating cellular mutations:



Other theorists think that aging results when a growth substance fails to be produced, leading to the cessation of cell growth and reproduction. Others hypothesize that an aging factor responsible for development and cellular maturity throughout life is excessively produced, thereby hastening aging. Some hypothesize that the cell's ability to function and divide is impaired. Although minimal research has been done to support the theory, aging may be a result of a decreased ability of RNA to synthesize and translate messages.



POINT TO PONDER

What patterns of aging are apparent in your biological family? What can you do to influence these? ●

Cross-Linking Theory

The cross-linking theory proposes that cellular division is threatened as a result of radiation or a chemical reaction in which a cross-linking agent attaches itself to a DNA strand and prevents normal parting of the strands during mitosis. Over time, as these cross-linking agents accumulate, they form dense aggregates that impede intracellular transport; ultimately, the body's organs and systems fail. An effect of cross-linking on collagen (an important connective tissue in the lungs, heart, blood vessels, and muscle) is the reduction in tissue elasticity associated with many age-related changes.

Evolutionary Theories

Evolutionary theories of aging are related to genetics and hypothesize that the differences in the aging process and longevity of various species occur due to an interplay between the processes of mutation and natural selection. Attributing aging to the process of natural selection links these theories to those that support evolution.

There are several general groups of theories that relate aging to evolution. The *mutation accumulation theory* suggests that aging occurs due to a declining force of natural selection with age. In other words, genetic mutations that affect children will eventually be eliminated because the victims will not have lived long enough to reproduce and pass this to future generations. On the other hand, genetic mutations that appear late in life will accumulate because the older individuals they affect will have already passed these mutations to their offspring.

The *antagonistic pleiotropy theory* suggests that accumulated mutant genes that have negative effects in late life may have had beneficial effects in early life. This is assumed to occur either because the effects of the mutant genes occur in opposite

ways in late life as compared to their effects in early life, or because a particular gene can have multiple effects—some positive and some negative.

The *disposable soma theory* differs from other evolutionary theories by proposing that aging is related to the use of the body's energy rather than to genetics. It claims that the body must use energy for metabolism, reproduction, maintenance of functions and repair, and with a finite supply of energy from food to perform these functions, some compromise occurs. Through evolution, organisms have learned to give priority of energy expenditure to reproductive functions over those functions that could maintain the body indefinitely; thus, decline and death ultimately occur.



KEY CONCEPT

Evolutionary theories suggest that aging “is fundamentally a product of evolutionary forces, not biochemical or cellular quirks . . . a Darwinian phenomenon, not a biochemical one” (Rose, 1998).

Free Radicals and Lipofuscin Theories

Free radicals are highly reactive molecules containing an extra electrical charge that are generated from oxygen metabolism. They can result from normal metabolism, reactions with other free radicals, or oxidation of ozone, pesticides, and other pollutants. These molecules can damage proteins, enzymes, and DNA by replacing molecules that contain useful biological information with faulty molecules that create genetic disorder. It is believed that these free radicals are self-perpetuating; that is, they generate other free radicals. Physical decline of the body occurs as the damage from these molecules accumulates over time. However, the body has natural antioxidants that can counteract the effects of free radicals to an extent. Also, beta-carotene and vitamins C and E are antioxidants that can offer protection against free radicals.

There has been considerable interest in the role of lipofuscin “age pigments,” a lipoprotein by-product of oxidation that can be seen only under a fluorescent microscope, in the aging process. Because lipofuscin is associated with the oxidation of unsaturated lipids, it is believed to have a role similar to that of free radicals in the aging process. As lipofuscin accumulates, it interferes with the diffusion and transport of essential metabolites and information-bearing molecules in the cells. A positive relationship exists between an individual's age and the amount of lipofuscin in the body. Investigators have discovered the presence of lipofuscin in other species in amounts proportionate to the life span of the species (e.g., an animal with one-tenth the life

span of a human being accumulates lipofuscin at a rate approximately 10 times greater than human beings).

Autoimmune Reactions

The primary organs of the immune system, the thymus and bone marrow, are believed to be affected by the aging process. The immune response declines after young adulthood. The weight of the thymus decreases throughout adulthood, as does the ability to produce T-cell differentiation. The level of thymus hormone declines after age 30 and is undetectable in the blood of persons older than age 60 years (Goya Console, Herenu, Brown, & Rimoldi, 2002; Williams, 1995). Related to this is a decline in the humoral immune response, a delay in the skin allograft rejection time, reduction in intensity of delayed hypersensitivity, and a decrease in the resistance to tumor cell challenge. The bone marrow stem cells perform less efficiently. The reduction in immunologic functions is evidenced by an increase in the incidence of infections and many cancers with age.

Some theorists believe that the reduction in immunologic activities also leads to an increase in autoimmune response with age. One hypothesis regarding the role of autoimmune reactions in the aging process is that the cells undergo changes with age, and the body misidentifies these aged, irregular cells as foreign agents and develops antibodies to attack them. An alternate explanation for this reaction could be that cells are normal in old age, but a breakdown of the body's immunochemical memory system causes it to misinterpret normal cells as foreign substances. Antibodies are formed to attack and rid the body of these “foreign” substances, and cells die.

Wear and Tear Theories

Wear and tear theories attribute aging to the repeated use and injury of the body over time as it performs its highly specialized functions. Like any complicated machine, the body will function less efficiently with prolonged use and numerous insults.

Stress

In recent years, the effects of stress on physical and psychological health have been widely discussed. Stresses to the body can have adverse effects and lead to conditions such as gastric ulcers, heart attacks, thyroiditis, and inflammatory dermatoses. However, this theory is limited in its universality because individuals react differently to life's stresses—one person may be overwhelmed by a moderately busy

schedule, whereas another may become frustrated when faced with a slow, dull pace.

Biogerontology

The study of the connection between aging and disease processes has been termed *biogerontology* (Miller, 1997). Bacteria, fungi, viruses, and other organisms are thought to be responsible for certain physiologic changes during the aging process. In some cases, these pathogens may be present in the body for decades before they begin to affect body systems. Although no conclusive evidence exists to link these pathogens with the body's decline, interest in this theory has been stimulated by the fact that human beings and animals have enjoyed longer life expectancies with the control or elimination of certain pathogens through immunization and the use of antimicrobial drugs.

Neuroendocrine and Neurochemical Theories

Neuroendocrine and neurochemical theories suggest that aging is the result of changes in the brain and endocrine glands. Some theorists claim that specific anterior pituitary hormones promote aging. Others believe that an imbalance of chemicals in the brain impairs healthy cell division throughout the body.

Radiation Theories

The relationship of radiation and age continues to be explored. Research using rats, mice, and dogs has shown that a decreased life span results from non-lethal doses of radiation. In human beings, repeated exposure to ultraviolet light is known to cause solar elastosis, the “old age” type of skin wrinkling that results from the replacement of collagen by elastin. Ultraviolet light is also a factor in the development of skin cancer. Radiation may induce cellular mutations that promote aging.

Nutrition Theories

The importance of good nutrition throughout life is a theme hard to escape in our nutrition-conscious society. It is no mystery that diet impacts health and aging. Obesity is shown to increase the risk of many diseases and shorten life (NIDDK, 2001; Taylor & Ostbye, 2001; Preston, 2005; NIH Consensus Development Program, 2007).

The quality of diet is as important as the quantity. Deficiencies of vitamins and other nutrients and excesses of nutrients such as cholesterol may cause various disease processes. Recently, increased attention has been given to the influence of nutritional supplements on the aging process; vitamin E, bee pollen, ginseng, gotu kola, peppermint, and

help are among the nutrients believed to promote a healthy, long life (Margolis, 2000; Smeeding, 2001). Although the complete relationship between diet and aging is not well understood, enough is known to suggest that a good diet may minimize or eliminate some of the ill effects of the aging process.



KEY CONCEPT

It is beneficial for nurses to advise aging persons to scrutinize products that claim to cause, stop, or reverse the aging process.

Environmental Theories

Several environmental factors are known to threaten health and are thought to be associated with the aging process. The ingestion of mercury, lead, arsenic, radioactive isotopes, certain pesticides, and other substances can produce pathologic changes in human beings. Smoking and breathing tobacco smoke and other air pollutants also have adverse effects. Finally, crowded living conditions, high noise levels, and other factors are thought to influence how we age.



POINT TO PONDER

Do you believe nurses have a responsibility to protect and improve the environment? Why or why not? ●

Implications of Biological Theories for Nursing

The number, diversity, and complexity of factors that potentially influence the aging process show that no one biological theory can adequately explain the cause of this phenomenon. Even when studies have been done with populations known to have a long life expectancy, such as the people of the Caucasus region in southern Russia, longevity has not been attributable to any single factor. These theories are significant to nursing. Nurses can adapt these theories by identifying elements known to influence aging and using them as a foundation to promote positive practices.

Psychosocial Theories of Aging

Psychological theories of aging explore the mental processes, behavior, and feelings of persons throughout the life span, along with some of the mechanisms people use to meet the challenges they face in old age. Sociologic theories address the impact of society on older adults and vice versa.

Disengagement Theory

Developed by Elaine Cumming and William Henry, the disengagement theory (Cumming, 1964; Cumming & Henry, 1961) has been one of the earliest, most controversial, and most widely discussed theories of aging. It views aging as a process in which society and the individual gradually withdraw, or disengage, from each other, to the mutual satisfaction and benefit of both. The benefit to individuals is that they can reflect and be centered on themselves, having been freed from societal roles. The value of disengagement to society is that some orderly means is established for the transfer of power from the old to the young, making it possible for society to continue functioning after its individual members die. The theory does not indicate whether society or the individual initiates the disengagement process.

Several difficulties with this concept are obvious. Many older persons desire to remain engaged and do not want their primary satisfaction to be derived from reflection on younger years. Senators, Supreme Court justices, college professors, and many senior volunteers are among those who commonly derive satisfaction and provide a valuable service to society by not disengaging. Because the health of the individual, cultural practices, societal norms, and other factors influence the degree to which a person will participate in society during his or her later years, some critics of this theory claim that disengagement would not be necessary if society improved the health care and financial means of older adults and increased the acceptance, opportunities, and respect afforded them.

A careful examination of the population studied in the development of the disengagement theory hints at its limitations. The disengagement pattern that Cumming and Henry described was based on a study of 172 middle-class persons between 48 and 68 years of age. This group was wealthier, better educated, and of higher occupational and residential prestige than the general aged population. No black people or chronically ill people were involved in the study. Caution is advisable in generalizing findings for the entire aged population based on fewer than 200 persons who are generally not representative of the average aged person. (This study exemplifies some of the limitations of gerontological research before the 1970s.) Although nurses should appreciate that some older individuals may wish to disengage from the mainstream of society, this is not necessarily a process to be expected from all aged persons.

Activity Theory

At the opposite pole from the disengagement theory, the activity theory asserts that an older person

should continue a middle-aged lifestyle, denying the existence of old age as long as possible, and that society should apply the same norms to old age as it does to middle age and not advocate diminishing activity, interest, and involvement as its members grow old (Havighurst, 1963). This theory suggests ways of maintaining activity in the presence of multiple losses associated with the aging process, including substituting intellectual activities for physical activities when physical capacity is reduced, replacing the work role with other roles when retirement occurs, and establishing new friendships when old ones are lost. Declining health, loss of roles, reduced income, a shrinking circle of friends, and other obstacles to maintaining an active life are to be resisted and overcome instead of being accepted.

This theory has some merit. Activity is generally assumed to be more desirable than inactivity because it facilitates physical, mental, and social well-being. Like a self-fulfilling prophecy, the expectation of a continued active state during old age may be realized to the benefit of older adults and society. Because of society's negative view of inactivity, encouraging an active lifestyle among the aged is consistent with societal values. Also supportive of the activity theory is the reluctance of many older persons to accept themselves as old.

A problem with the activity theory is its assumption that most older people desire and are able to maintain a middle-aged lifestyle. Some aging persons want their world to shrink to accommodate their decreasing capacities or their preference for less active roles. Many older adults lack the physical, emotional, social, or economic resources to maintain active roles in society. Aged people who are expected to maintain an active middle-aged lifestyle on an income of less than half that of middle-aged people may wonder if society is giving them conflicting messages. More research and insights are needed regarding the effects on the older adults of not being able to fulfill expectations to remain active.

Continuity Theory

The continuity theory of aging, also referred to as the developmental theory, relates personality and predisposition toward certain actions in old age to similar factors during other phases of the life cycle (Neugarten, 1964). Personality and basic patterns of behavior are said to remain unchanged as the individual ages. For instance, activists at 20 years of age will most likely be activists at 70 years of age, whereas young recluses will probably not be active in the mainstream of society when they age. Patterns developed over a lifetime will determine whether individuals remain engaged and active or become disengaged and inactive.

The recognition that the unique features of each individual allow for multiple adaptations to aging and that the potential exists for a variety of reactions give this theory validity and support. Aging is a complex process, and the continuity theory considers these complexities to a greater extent than most other theories. Although the full implications and impact of this promising theory are at the stage of research, it offers a reasonable perspective. Also, it encourages the young to consider that their current activities are laying a foundation for their own future old age.



KEY CONCEPT

Basic psychological patterns are consistent throughout the life span.

Developmental Tasks

Some theorists have described the process of healthy psychological aging as the result of the successful fulfillment of developmental tasks. Developmental tasks are the challenges that must be met and adjustments that must be made in response to life experiences that are part of an adult's continued growth through the life span.

Erik Erikson (1963) described eight stages through which human beings progress from infancy to old age and the challenges, or tasks, that confront individuals during each of these stages (Table 2-1). The challenge of old age is to accept and find meaning in the life the person has lived; this gives the individual ego integrity that aids in adjusting and coping with the reality of aging and mortality. Feelings of anger, bitterness, depression, and inadequacy can result in inadequate ego integrity (e.g., despair).

Refining Erikson's description of old age tasks in the eighth stage of development, Robert Peck

(1968) detailed three specific challenges facing the older adults that influence the outcome of ego integrity or despair:

- *ego differentiation versus role preoccupation*: to develop satisfactions from oneself as a person rather than through parental or occupational roles
- *body transcendence versus body preoccupation*: to find psychological pleasures rather than become absorbed with health problems or physical limitations imposed by aging
- *ego transcendence versus ego preoccupation*: to achieve satisfaction through reflection on one's past life and accomplishments rather than be preoccupied with the finite number of years left to live

Robert Butler and Myrna Lewis (1982) outlined additional developmental tasks of later life:

- adjusting to one's infirmities
- developing a sense of satisfaction with the life that has been lived
- preparing for death

Gerotranscendence

Gerotranscendence is a recent theory that suggests aging entails a transition from a rational, materialistic metaperspective to a cosmic and transcendent vision (Tornstam, 2005). As people age, they are less concerned with material possessions, meaningless relationships, and self-interests and instead desire a life of more significance and a greater connection with others.



POINT TO PONDER

How do you see examples of gerotranscendence in the lives of others and yourself? ●

Implications of Psychosocial Theories for Nursing

Gerontological nurses play a significant role in helping aging persons experience health, fulfillment, and a sense of well-being. In addition to specific measures that can assist the older adults in meeting their psychosocial challenges (Box 2-1), nurses must be sensitive to the tremendous impact their own attitudes toward aging can have on patients. Nurses who consider aging as a progressive decline ending in death may view old age as a depressing, useless period and foster hopelessness and helplessness in older patients. On the other hand, nurses who view aging as a process of continued development may appreciate old age as an opportunity to gain new satisfaction and understanding, thereby promoting joy and a sense of purpose in patients.

TABLE 2-1 Erikson's Developmental Tasks

Stage	Satisfactorily Fulfilled	Unsatisfactorily Fulfilled
Infancy	Trust	Mistrust
Toddler	Autonomy	Shame
Early childhood	Initiative	Guilt
Middle childhood	Industry	Inferiority
Adolescence	Identity	Identity diffusion
Adulthood	Intimacy	Isolation
Middle age	Generativity	Self-absorption
Old age	Integrity	Despair

BOX 2-1 Assisting Individuals in Meeting the Psychosocial Challenges of Aging

OVERVIEW

As individuals progress through their life span they face challenges and adjustments in response to life experiences called developmental tasks. These developmental tasks can be described as:

- coping with losses and changes
- establishing meaningful roles
- exercising independence and control
- finding purpose and meaning in life

Satisfaction with oneself and the life one has lived is gained by successfully meeting these tasks; unhappiness, bitterness, and fear of one's future can result from not adjusting to and rejecting the realities of aging.

GOAL

Aging persons will express a sense of ego integrity and psychosocial well-being.

ACTIONS

- Learn about patients' life stories; ask about family backgrounds, faith, work histories, hobbies, achieve-

ments, and life experiences. Encourage patients to discuss these topics, and listen with sincere interest.

- Build on lifelong interests and offer opportunities for patients to experience new pleasures and interests.
- Accept patients' discussions of their regrets and dissatisfactions. Help them to put these in perspective of their total lives and accomplishments.
- Encourage reminiscence activities between patients and their families. Help families and staff to understand the therapeutic value of reminiscence.
- Respect patients' faith and assist them in the fulfillment of spiritual needs (e.g., help them locate a church of their religious affiliation, request visits from clergy, pray with or for them, obtain a Bible or other religious book).
- Use humor therapeutically.
- If patients reside in an institutional setting, personalize the environment to the maximum degree possible.
- Recognize the unique assets and characteristics of each patient.



KEY CONCEPT

Nurses can promote joy and a sense of purpose in the older adults by viewing old age as an opportunity for continued development and satisfaction rather than a depressing, useless period of life.

Applying Theories of Aging to Nursing Practice

The biological, psychological, and social processes of aging are interrelated and interdependent. Frequently, loss of a social role affects an individual's sense of purpose and speeds physical decline. Poor health may force retirement from work, promoting social isolation and the development of a weakened self-concept. Although certain changes occur independently as separate events, most are closely associated with other age-related factors. It is impractical, therefore, to subscribe solely to one theory of aging. Wise nurses will be open-minded in choosing the aging theories they use in the care of older adults; they will also be cognizant of the limitations of these theories. Box 2-2 highlights some factors to consider in promoting a healthy aging process.



POINT TO PONDER

How would you evaluate the quality of the factors that promote longevity in your own life? ●

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. What disease processes are caused by or related to factors believed to influence aging?
2. You are asked to speak to a community group regarding environmental issues. What recommendations could you make for promoting a healthy environment?
3. Think about everyday life in your community. What examples do you see of opportunities to engage and disengage older adults?
4. What specific methods could you use to assist an older adult in achieving ego integrity?

References

- Butler, R. N., & Lewis, M. I. (1982). *Aging and mental health* (3rd ed., pp. 142, 376). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Cumming, E. (1964). New thoughts on the theory of disengagement. In R. Kastenbaum (Ed.). *New thoughts on old age*. New York: Springer-Verlag.

BOX 2-2 Factors Contributing to a Long and Healthy Life

Diet. A positive health state that can contribute to longevity is supported by reducing saturated fats in the diet, limiting daily fat consumption to less than 30% of caloric intake, avoiding obesity, decreasing the amount of animal foods eaten, substituting natural complex carbohydrates for refined sugars, and increasing the consumption of whole grains, vegetables, and fruits.

Activity. Exercise is an important ingredient to good health. It increases strength and endurance, promotes cardiopulmonary function, and has other beneficial effects that can affect a healthy aging process.

Play and laughter. Laughter causes a release of endorphins, stimulates the immune system, and reduces stress. Finding humor in daily routines and experiencing joy despite problems contributes to good health. It has been suggested since the time of Solomon that “a cheerful heart is good medicine,

but a crushed spirit dries up the bones” (Proverbs 17:22).

Faith. A strong faith, church attendance, and prayer are directly related to lower rates of physical and mental illness. Religion and spirituality can have a positive effect on the length and quality of life.

Empowerment. Losing control over one’s life can threaten self-confidence and diminish self-care independence. Maximum control and decision-making can have a positive effect on morbidity and mortality.

Stress management. It is the rare individual who is unaware of the negative consequences of stress. The unique stresses that may accompany aging, such as the onset of chronic conditions, retirement, deaths of significant others, and change in body appearance, can have significantly detrimental effects. Minimizing stress when possible and using effective stress management techniques are useful interventions.

- Cumming, E., & Henry, E. (1961). *Growing old: The process of disengagement*. New York: Basic Books.
- Erikson, E. (1963). *Childhood and society* (2nd ed.). New York: Norton.
- Goya, R.G., Console, G. M., Herenu, C. B., Brown, O. A., & Rimoldi, O. J. (2002). Thymus and aging: Potential of gene therapy for restoration of endocrine thymic function in thymus-deficient animal models. *Gerontology*, 48(5), 325–328.
- Harvard Gazette Archives. (2001). Scientists identify chromosome location of genes associated with long life. *Harvard University Gazette*. Retrieved August 28, 2001, from <http://www.news.harvard.edu/gazette/2001/08.16/chromosomes.html>.
- Havighurst, J. (1963). Successful aging. In R. H. Williams, C. Tibbitts, & W. Donahue (Eds.). *Processes of aging* (Vol. 1, p. 299). New York: Atherton Press.
- Hayflick, L. (1965). The limited in vitro lifetime of human diploid cell strains. *Experimental Cell Research*, 37, 614–636.
- Hubert, H. B., Bloch, D. A., Oehlert, J. W., & Fries, J. F. (2002). Lifestyle habits and compression of morbidity. *Journals of Gerontology. Series A, Biological Sciences and Medical Sciences*, 57(6), M347–M351.
- Margolis, S. (Ed.). (2000). Vitamin E recommendations. The Johns Hopkins Medical Letter: *Health After 50*, 12(1), 8.
- Miller, R. A. (1997). When will the biology of aging become useful? Future landmarks in biomedical gerontology. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*, 45, 1258–1267.
- National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Diseases of the National Institutes of Health. (2001). *Understanding adult obesity*. Bethesda, MD: Author, NIH Publication No. 01-3680.
- Nation Institute of Health, Consensus Development Program. (2007). What is the evidence that obesity affects longevity? NIH Consensus Development Conference Reports and State of Science Statements. Retrieved July 1, 2007, from <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/bv.fcgi?rid=hstat4.section.1107>.
- Neugarten, L. (1964). *Personality in middle and late life*. New York: Atherton Press.
- Peck, R. (1968). Psychological developments in the second half of life. In B. Neugarten (Ed.). *Middle age and aging* (p. 88). Chicago: University of Chicago.
- Preston, S. H. (2005). Deadweight? The influence of obesity on longevity. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 352(11), 1135–1137.
- Rose, M. R. (1998). Darwinian anti-aging medicine. *Journal of Anti-Aging Medicine*, 1, 106.
- Smeeding, S. J. W. (2001). Nutrition, supplements, and aging. *Geriatric Nursing* 22(4), 219–224.
- Taylor, D. H., & Ostbye, T. (2001). The effect of middle- and old-age body mass index on short-term mortality in older people. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*, 49(10), 1319–1326.
- Tornstam, L. (2005). *Gerotranscendence: A developmental theory of positive aging*. New York: Springer.
- University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign. (2002). Study backs theory that accumulating mutations of “quiet” genes foster aging. *Science News Daily*. Retrieved October 15, 2002, from <http://www.sciencedaily.com/releases/2002/10/021015073143.htm>
- Williams, M. E. (1995). *The American Geriatrics Society’s complete guide to aging and health* (p. 13). New York: Harmony Books.

Recommended Readings

- Arking, R. (2006). *Biology of aging: Observations and principles*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Austad, S. N. (2004). Is aging programmed? *Aging Cell*, 3(5), 249–251.
- Berzlanovich, A. M., Keil, W., Waldhoer, T., Sim, E., Fasching, P., & Fazyen-Dorner, B. (2005). Do centenarians die healthy? An autopsy study. *The Journals of Gerontology. Series A, Biological Sciences and Medical Sciences*, 60(7), 862–865.
- Birren, J. E., & Schaie, K. W. (2006). *Handbook of the psychology of aging* (6th ed.). Burlington, MA: Elsevier Academic Press.
- Charlesworth, B. (2001). Patterns of age-specific means and genetic variances of mortality rates predicted by the mutation-accumulation theory of aging. *Journal of Theoretical Biology*, 210, 47–65.
- de Grey, A. D. (2005). The unfortunate influence of the weather on the rate of ageing: Why human caloric restriction or its emulation may only extend life expectancy by 2–3 years. *Gerontology*, 51(2), 73–82.
- Gavrilov, L. A. & Gavrilov, N. S. (2002). Evolutionary theories of aging and longevity. *The Scientific World Journal*, 2, 339–356.
- Goldsmith, T. C. (2006). Aging theories and their implication for medicine. http://www.azinet.com/aging/anti-aging_medicine.pdf, accessed 6/20/07.
- Goldsmith, T. C. (2006). *The evolution of aging* (2nd ed.). Crownsville, MD: Azinet Press.
- Hayflick, L. (2004). “Anti-aging” is an oxymoron. *The Journals of Gerontology. Series A, Biological Sciences and Medical Sciences*, 59(6), B573–B578.
- Hillman, J. (2002). *The force of character and the lasting life*. New York: Random House.
- Hughes, K. A., Alipaz, J. A., Drnevich, J. M., & Reynolds, R. M. (2002). A test of evolutionary theories of aging. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States*, October 29, 99(22), 14286–14291.
- Human Research Center on Nutrition and Aging at Tufts University. <http://www.hnrc.tufts.edu/>
- Kirkwood, T. B. (2005). Understanding the odd science of aging. *Cell*, 120(4), 437–447.
- LeBourg, E. (2001). A mini-review of the evolutionary theories of aging. Is it time to accept them? *Demographic Research*, 4(1). Retrieved June 16, 2007, from <http://www.demographic-research.org/volumes/vol4/1/>.
- Mendes de Leon, C. F., Seeman, T. E., Baker, D. I., Richardson, E. D., & Tinetti, M. E. (1996). Self-efficacy, physical decline, and change in functioning in community-living elders: A prospective study. *Journal of Gerontology: Social Sciences*, 51B(4), S183–S190.
- Miller, R. A. (2005). Genetic approaches to the study of aging. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*, 53(9 Supplement), S284–S286.
- Mitteldorf, J. (2006). Chaotic population dynamics and the evolution of aging: Proposing a demographic theory of senescence. *Evolution and Ecology Research*, 8, 561–574.
- Office of Dietary Supplements, National Institutes of Health. (2005). *Annual Bibliography of Significant Advances in Dietary Supplement Research*. Bethesda, MD: National Resource Center on Nutrition, Physical Activity, and Aging.
- Olshansky, S. J., & Carnes, B. A. (2003). *The quest for immortality: Science at the frontiers of aging*. New York: W. W. Norton & Co.
- Rose, M. R. (2005). *The long tomorrow: How advances in evolutionary biology can help us postpone aging*. London: Oxford University Press.
- Snyder, E. Y., & Loring, J. F. (2005). A role for stem cell biology in the physiological and pathological aspects of aging. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*, 53(9 Supplement), S287–S291.
- Whitbourne, S. K. (2002). *The aging individual: Physical and psychological perspectives*. New York: Springer.

CHAPTER 3

Diversity

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Increasing Diversity of the Older Adult Population

Overview of Diverse Groups of Older Adults in the United States

- Hispanic Americans
- Black Americans
- Asian Americans
- Jewish Americans
- Native Americans
- Older Prisoners

Nursing Considerations for Culturally Sensitive Care of Older Adults

Increasing Diversity of the Older Adult Population

Population projections support that the older population in the United States is becoming more ethnically and racially diverse. Whereas in 2000, approximately 84% of older Americans were non-Hispanic white, it is projected that this population will decrease to 64% by 2050. During this same period, there will be dramatic growth among Hispanic older adults, who will represent 16% of the older population. Black individuals will grow from 8% to 12% of the older population during this time. By 2020, one-quarter of America's older population will belong to a minority racial or ethnic group (Scommegna, 2004).

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 Describe projected changes in the diversity of the older population in the United States.
- 2 Describe unique views of health and healing among major ethnic groups.
- 3 Identify ways in which nursing care may need to be modified to accommodate persons of diverse ethnic backgrounds.

**KEY CONCEPT**

In the future, the percentage of white older adults will decrease as society experiences a growth in minority seniors.

The growing diversity of the older population presents challenges for gerontological nursing in providing culturally competent care. Essential to the provision of culturally competent care is an understanding of:

- the experiences of individuals of similar ethnic or racial backgrounds
- beliefs, values, traditions, and practices of various ethnic and racial groups
- unique health-related needs, experiences, and risks of various ethnic and racial groups
- one's own attitudes and beliefs toward people of various ethnic and racial groups, as well as those attitudes of co-practitioners
- language barriers that can affect the ability of patients to communicate health-related information, understand instructions, provide informed consent, and fully participate in their care

An understanding of cultural and ethnic differences can help to erase the stereotypes and biases that can interfere with effective care and demonstrate an appreciation for the unique characteristics of each individual.

Overview of Diverse Groups of Older Adults in the United States

People from a variety of countries have ventured to America to seek a better life in a new land. To an extent, they assimilated and adopted the American way of life; however, the values and customs instilled in them by their native cultures are often deeply ingrained, along with their language and biological differences. The unique backgrounds of these newcomers to America influence the way they react to the world around them and the manner in which that world reacts to them. To understand the uniqueness of each older adult encountered, consideration must be given to the influences of ethnic origin.

Members of an ethnic or cultural group share similar history, language, customs, and characteristics; they also hold distinct beliefs about aging and older adults. Ethnic norms can influence diet, response to pain, compliance with self-care activities and medical treatments, trust in health care providers, and other factors. The traditional respon-

sibilities assigned to the aged of some ethnic groups can afford them opportunities for meaningful roles and high status.

Studies of cultural influences on aging and effects on older adults have been sparse but are growing. Experiences and observations can provide insight into the unique characteristics of specific ethnic groups. Although individual differences within a given ethnic group exist and stereotypes should not be made, an understanding of the general characteristics of various ethnic groups can assist nurses in providing more individualized and culturally sensitive care.

**KEY CONCEPT**

Although ethnic origin is important, the nurse needs to remember that not all individuals conform to the beliefs, values, roles, and traditions of the group of which they are a part. Stereotyping individuals who belong to the same cultural or ethnic group runs contrary to individualized care.

Hispanic Americans

The term *Hispanic* encompasses a variety of Spanish-speaking persons in America, including those from Spain, Mexico, Cuba, and Puerto Rico. Hispanic people now represent approximately 6% of the older population in the United States, but this percentage is expected to increase. The peak immigration periods for each Hispanic subgroup differ. In 1513, Ponce de León discovered and claimed Florida for the King of Spain; in 1565, the Spanish founded the first permanent European colony in America in St. Augustine, Florida. The Spanish held claim to Florida for nearly two centuries, until they traded it for Cuba and the Philippines. Most Spanish immigrants settled in Florida and the southwest. Today, there are approximately 250,000 Hispanic Americans living in the United States.

Although Mexican people inhabited the Southwest United States for decades before the arrival of the Pilgrims, most Mexican immigration occurred during the 20th century as a result of the Mexican Revolution and the poor economic conditions in Mexico. Poor economic conditions continue to cause Mexicans to immigrate to the United States. The Mexican population in this country totals more than 8 million, plus an estimated 3 to 5 million illegal immigrants; the majority resides in California and Texas.

Most Puerto Rican immigration occurred after the United States granted citizenship to all Puerto Ricans. After World War II, nearly one-third of all Puerto Rico's inhabitants immigrated to America; in the 1970s "reverse immigration" began as growing

numbers of Puerto Rican people left the United States to return to their home island. An estimated 1 million Puerto Ricans live in New York City, where most of them have settled.

Most Cuban immigrants are recent newcomers to America; the majority of the greater than 1 million Cuban Americans fled Cuba after Castro seized power. More than 25% of the Cuban American population resides in Florida, with other large groups in New York and New Jersey. Among all Hispanics, Cuban people are the most highly educated and have the highest earnings.



KEY CONCEPT

Cancer deaths are disproportionately high among Hispanic Americans and African Americans (National Center for Cultural Competence, 2007).

Many Hispanic people view states of health and illness as the actions of God; by treating one's body with respect, living a good life, and praying, one will be rewarded by God with good health. Illness results when one has violated good practices of living or is being punished by God. Medals and crosses may be worn at all times to facilitate well-being, and prayer plays an important part in the healing process. Illness may be viewed as a family affair, with multiple family members involved with the care of the sick individual. Rather than using practitioners of Western medicine to treat their health problems, some Hispanic persons may prefer traditional practitioners, such as:

- *Curranderos*: women who have special knowledge and charismatic qualities
- *Sobadoras*: persons who give massages and manipulate bones and muscles
- *Espiritualistas*: persons who analyze dreams, cards, and premonitions
- *Brujos*: women who control witchcraft
- *Senoras*: older women who have learned special healing measures

The Hispanic population holds older relatives in high esteem. Old age is viewed as a positive time in which the aged person can reap the harvest of his or her life. Hispanic people may expect that children will take care of their aging parents, and families may try to avoid institutionalization at all costs. Indeed, this group has a lower rate of nursing home use than the general population; about 4% of nursing home residents are Hispanic.

Nurses may find that English is a second language for some Hispanic people, which becomes particularly apparent during periods of illness when stress causes a retreat to the native tongue.



KEY CONCEPT

Nearly one in eight people in the United States speak a language other than English at home, with one-third of these people speaking Spanish (Wan et al., 2005).

Black Americans

Although 13% of the entire U.S. population is black, they represent only 8% of the older population. Most of this group is of African descent. It is believed that a free black man, Pedro Alonso Nino, accompanied Christopher Columbus on his 1492 voyage to America; however, most of the early experiences of black people in this country occurred in the form of slavery. Displacement from families and tribes as they were sold into slavery, insults suffered through discrimination, and strong religious beliefs were major factors influencing the black population's deep commitment to the family and aged relatives. The family could be depended on to aid and comfort its members in the face of the prejudices and hardships of society.

Historically, black Americans have experienced a lower standard of living and less access to health care than their white counterparts. This is reflected in the lower life expectancy of black Americans (see demographics in Chapter 1). However, once a black individual reaches the seventh decade of life, survival begins to equal that of similarly aged white people.



KEY CONCEPT

After reaching their seventh decade of life, black older adults can hope to enjoy a life expectancy equal to their white counterparts.

To survive to old age is considered a major accomplishment that reflects strength, resourcefulness, and faith for this ethnic group; thus, old age may be considered a personal triumph to black people, not a dreaded curse. Considering their history, it should not be surprising to find that many black older adults:

- possess many health problems that have accumulated over a lifetime due to a poor standard of living and limited access to health care services
- hold health beliefs and practices that may be unconventional to stay healthy and treat illness
- look to family members for decision-making and care rather than using formal service agencies
- may have a degree of caution in interacting with and using health services, as a defense against prejudice (Egede, 2006)

Diverse subgroups within the black population, such as Africans, Haitians, and Jamaicans,



FIGURE 3-1 • Blood pressure monitoring is an important intervention for populations at higher risk of hypertension.

each possess their own unique customs and beliefs. Differences can be apparent even among black Americans from various regions of the United States. Nurses should be sensitive to the fact that the lack of awareness and respect for these differences can be interpreted as a demeaning or prejudicial sign.

Black skin color is the result of high melanin content and can complicate the use of skin color for the assessment of health problems. To diagnose cyanosis effectively, for instance, examine the nailbeds, palms, soles, gums, and under the tongue. The absence of a red tone or glow to the skin can indicate pallor. Petechiae are best detected on the conjunctiva, abdomen, and buccal mucosa.

Hypertension is a prevalent health problem among black Americans and occurs at a higher rate than in the white population. One of the factors responsible for this problem is blunted nocturnal response. Only a minor decline in blood pressure occurs during sleep, which increases the strain on the heart and vessels; this is found to occur in the black population more than any other group. Blood pressure monitoring is an important preventive measure for black clients (Fig. 3-1).

In addition to hypertension, other health conditions are more prevalent in the black population than in the white population. For instance, as compared with the white population (National Center for Health Statistics, 2008), the black population has a higher prevalence of heart disease, cancer, and diabetes, and a higher death rate from these diseases (Office of Minority Health, 2007a).

In recent years, HIV and AIDS have become the third leading cause of death among African American males (U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2002; Office of Minority Health, 2007a). The high prevalence of these diseases among African American males suggests the need for education and counseling of younger adults in order to promote a healthy lifestyle and longevity.

Many causes of morbidity and mortality among black Americans can be prevented and effectively controlled by lifestyle changes (e.g., good nutrition, regular exercise, effective stress management) and regular health screening. These are important considerations in planning health services to communities.

Despite the health problems of aged black Americans, their rate of institutionalization is lower than that of the white population: about 13% of older black people experience institutional health care in their lifetimes compared with 23% of older white people (National Center for Health Statistics, 2007).

Asian Americans

More than 10 million Asian Americans reside in the United States, representing approximately 4% of the population. Asian Americans are a diverse group comprised of individuals from countries such as China, Japan, the Philippines, Korea, Vietnam, and Cambodia.

Chinese Americans

Although Chinese laborers probably lived in America for centuries before the mid-1800s, it was not until then that large-scale Chinese immigration occurred. During that time, more than 40,000 Chinese people left their homes to escape the horrible drought that China was experiencing and to become part of the gold rush. They were welcomed as cheap laborers for the transcontinental railroad construction; at that time 9 of every 10 railroad laborers were from China. Most of these Chinese laborers planned to earn large sums of money and then return home or send for their families to join them. Few were able to attain this goal, and the poor economic conditions toward the end of the 19th century made them easy targets for prejudice by persons afraid that these “foreigners” were stealing their jobs; they were left in their new land alone and poor. This immigration pattern explains why older Chinese men in America outnumbered older Chinese women. Prejudice and cultural differences promoted the development of “Chinatowns,” which were a comfortable refuge for Chinese people in this country. The largest American Chinese populations are in San Francisco, New York, Los Angeles, Honolulu, and Chicago.

Care of the body and health are of utmost importance in traditional Chinese culture, but their approach may be vastly different from that of conventional Western medicine (Box 3-1). Chinese medicine is based on the belief of the balance of yin and yang; yin is the female negative energy that protects the inner body and yang is the male positive energy that protects the body from external forces. Traditionally, Chinese people have used the senses for assessing medical problems (touching,

BOX 3-1 Chinese Medicine

For thousands of years, the Chinese have practiced a form of medicine that appears very different from medicine in the Western world. It is based on a system of balance; illness is seen as an imbalance and disharmony of the body. One of the theories that explains this balance is that of *yin* and *yang*. *Yin* is the negative, female energy that is represented by that which is soft, dark, cold, and wet. Organs associated with *yin* qualities include the lungs, kidneys, liver, heart, and spleen. *Yang* is the positive, male energy that is represented by that which is hard, bright, hot, and dry. The gallbladder, small intestine, stomach, colon, and bladder are *yang* organs. Daytime activity is considered more of a *yang* state, whereas sleep is more of a *yin* state.

Chinese medicine also considers the body's balance in relation to the five elements or phases: wood

(spring), fire (summer), earth (long summer), metal (autumn), and water (winter).

Qi is the life force that circulates throughout the body in invisible pathways called meridians. A deficiency or blockage of *qi* can cause symptoms of illnesses. Acupuncture and acupressure can be applied to various points along the meridians to stimulate the flow of *qi*.

In addition to acupuncture and acupressure, traditional Chinese medicine uses herbs, massage, and therapeutic exercises (such as *t'ai chi*) to promote a free flow of *chi* and achieve balance and harmony. These modalities are gaining increasing acceptance in the United States, and research supporting their effectiveness is rapidly increasing.

listening to sounds, detecting odors) rather than machinery or invasive procedures. Herbs, acupuncture, acupressure, and other treatment modalities, which are just being recognized by the Western world, continue to be treatments of choice for many Chinese individuals. These traditional treatments may be selected as alternatives or adjuncts to the use of modern treatment modalities. Ivory figurines of reclining women, now collectors' items, were used by female patients to point to the area of their problems because it was inappropriate for the male physician to touch a woman; although

modern Chinese women may have forfeited this practice, they still may be embarrassed to receive a physical examination or care from a man. Typically, disagreement or discomfort is not aggressively or openly displayed by Chinese persons. Nurses may need to observe more closely and ask specific questions (e.g., Can you describe your pain? How do you feel about the procedure you are planning to have done? Do you have any questions?) to ensure that the quiet nature of the patient is not misinterpreted to imply that no problems exist.

Consider This Case

Mrs. C is a very traditional Chinese woman who began living with her son and daughter-in-law three years ago, after her husband's death. Mrs. C and her husband had lived in a "Chinatown" part of the city where they could freely communicate in Chinese and interact with other Chinese individuals. She never developed fluency in English and had experienced considerable difficulty communicating with neighbors since moving into her son's suburban community. Mrs. C's son has assimilated American values and practices and has been critical of his mother for her traditional ways; he would not acknowledge her when she spoke in Chinese and refused to allow her to cook Chinese foods. His wife is not Chinese but has been sympathetic to the elder Mrs. C.

Last week Mrs. C suffered a stroke that left her with weakness and some aphasia. She will require care and supervision. Mrs. C's son states that he does not want his mother in a nursing home, but that he is not sure he can manage her; his wife says she is willing to take a leave of absence from work and help care for her mother-in-law, if that is what her husband wants.

THINK CRITICALLY

- What problems do you anticipate for each of the C family members?
- What can be arranged to assist the family?
- How could you assist Mrs. C in preserving her ethnic practices?

**KEY CONCEPT**

Traditional Chinese medicine is based on the belief that the female negative energy (yin) and male positive energy (yang) must be in balance.

In Chinese culture, achieving old age is a blessing, and older adults are held in high esteem. They are respected and sought for advice. The family unit is expected to take care of its elder members; thus, there may be a reluctance to use service agencies for older adults.

Japanese Americans

Like the Chinese, Japanese immigration significantly began in the mid-1800s. By the 1890s, more than 25,000 Japanese immigrants lived in America, and American workers' fear of losing their jobs to these newcomers resulted in prejudicial treatment and a restrictive immigration quota at the turn of the last century. The prejudice continued with laws that forbade Japanese Americans to own property and discouraged the marriage of Japanese people to native-born Americans. Perhaps the worst indignity suffered by this group occurred during World War II, when more than 70,000 American-born Japanese people were confined to "relocation camps;" during this time Japanese people were barred from entering the United States (a restriction that was lifted in 1950). Despite this treatment, Japanese Americans patiently struggled to improve their lives in this country. In the past when they first immigrated to the United States, many Japanese Americans held jobs as gardeners and farmers. Today they, like Chinese Americans, have a lower unemployment rate and higher percentage of professionals than the national average. Today, there are approximately 750,000 Japanese Americans, most of whom live in California and Hawaii.

Although Japanese Americans have not tended to live in separate sub-communities to the same extent as Chinese Americans, they have preserved many of their traditions. They are bonded by their common heritage, and their culture places a high value on the family. The following terms describe each generation of Japanese American: *Issei*, first generation (immigrant to America); *Nisei*, second generation (first American born); *Sansei*, third generation; and *Yonsei*, fourth generation. It is expected that families will take care of their elder members. As in the Chinese culture, the aged are viewed with respect.

Similar to the Chinese, Japanese Americans may subscribe to traditional health practices either to supplement or replace modern Western technology. They may not express their feelings openly or challenge the health professional; therefore, nursing sensitivity to covert needs is crucial.

Other Asian Groups

In the early 1700s, Filipino people began immigrating to America, but most Filipino immigrants arrived in the early 1900s to work as farm laborers. In 1934, an annual immigration quota of 50 was enacted; this quota stayed in place until 1965.

In the early 1900s, Korean people immigrated to America to work on plantations. Many of these individuals settled in Hawaii. Another large influx of Koreans, many of whom were wives of American servicemen, immigrated after the Korean War.

The most recent Asian American immigrants have been from Vietnam and Cambodia. Most of these individuals came to the United States to seek political refuge after the Vietnam War.

Although differences among various Asian American groups exist, some similarities are strong family networks and the expectation that family members will care for their older relatives at home. Asian Americans represent about 2% of the total nursing home population.

**POINT TO PONDER**

What attitudes toward people of different cultures were you exposed to as a child, and how has this molded your current attitudes? ●

Jewish Americans

In the sense that they come from a variety of nations, with different customs and cultures, Jewish people are not an ethnic group per se. However, the strength of the Jewish faith forms a bond that crosses national origin and gives this group a strong sense of identity and shared beliefs.

Luis de Torres, a Jewish man, accompanied Columbus on his voyage to America; however, it was not until 1654 that a group of Sephardic Jews settled in New Amsterdam to formally develop the first Jewish community in America. Immigration continued after that time, with large numbers of German Jews entering America after the revolution of 1848, followed by even greater numbers of Yiddish-speaking Eastern European Jews arriving after the pogroms of 1881. Early life in America was not easy for these Jewish immigrants. They often were faced with employment in factories and homes in tenements, as well as prejudice from several quarters. Despite these rough beginnings, Jewish Americans have demonstrated profound leadership in business, arts, and sciences and have made positive contributions to American life. Scholarship is important in the Jewish culture; more than 80% of all Jewish Americans have attended college. Approximately 6 million Jewish people reside in the United States, representing 2.2% of the total



FIGURE 3-2 • Celebrating religious holidays may be important for certain groups, such as Jewish older adults.

population, with most living in urban areas of the Middle Atlantic states. It is estimated that half of the world's Jewish population resides in America.

Religious traditions are important in the Jewish faith (Fig. 3-2). Sundown Friday to sundown Saturday is the Sabbath, and medical procedures may be opposed during that time (exceptions may be made for seriously ill individuals). Because of a belief that the head and feet should always be covered, some Jewish people may desire to wear a skull-cap and socks at all times. Orthodox Jews may oppose shaving. The Kosher diet (e.g., exclusion of pork and shellfish, prohibition of serving milk and meat products at the same meal or from the same dishes) is a significant aspect of Jewish religion and may be strictly adhered to by some. Fasting on holy days, such as Yom Kippur and Tisha Bav, and the replacement of matzo for leavened bread during Passover may occur.

Modern medical care is encouraged. Rabbinical consultation may be desired for decisions involving organ transplantation or life-sustaining measures. Certain rituals may be practiced at death, such as members of the religious group washing the body and sitting with it until burial. Autopsy is usually opposed.

Family bonds are strong in Jewish American culture; they have strong and positive feelings for older adults. Illness often draws Jewish families together. Jewish communities throughout the country have shown leadership in developing a network of community and institutional services for their aged, geared toward providing service while preserving Jewish tradition.

Native Americans

Native Americans inhabited North America for centuries before Columbus explored the New World. An estimated 1 to 1.5 million Native Americans populated America at the time of the arrival of Columbus; however, many battles with the new settlers during the next four centuries reduced the Native American population to a quarter million. The Native American population has been steadily increasing, with the U.S. Census Bureau now showing approximately 2.4 million Native American people who belong to more than 500 recognized tribes, nations, and villages in the United States. Less than half of all Native American people live on reservations, with the highest populations found in Arizona, Oklahoma, California, New Mexico, and Alaska. The Indian Health Service, a division of the United States Public Health Service, provides free, universal access to health care to American Indians who reside on reservations. More than half live in urban areas where access to health care is inferior to that on reservations. An estimated 250 different Native American languages are spoken, although most Native American people speak English as their first language. Less than 7% of the Native American population is older than 65 years of age, representing less than 1% of all older adults.

Native American culture emphasizes a strong reverence for the Great Creator. A person's state of health may be linked to good or evil forces or to punishment for their acts. Native American medicine promotes the belief that a person must be balanced with nature for good health and that illness results from imbalance. Spiritual rituals, medicine men, herbs, homemade drugs, and mechanical interventions such as suction cups may be used for the treatment of illness.



KEY CONCEPT

Spiritual rituals, medicine men, herbs, homemade drugs, and mechanical interventions can be used by Native American people to treat illness.

Close family bonds are typical among the Native American population. Family members may address each other by their family relationship rather than by name (e.g., cousin, son, uncle, grandfather). The

term *elder* is used to denote social or physical status, not just age. Elders are respected and viewed as leaders, teachers, and advisors to the young, although younger and more “Americanized” members are starting to feel that the advice of their elders is not as relevant in today’s world and are breaking with this tradition. Native American people strongly believe that individuals have the right to make decisions affecting their lives. The typical nursing assessment process may be offensive to the Native American patient, who may view probing questions, validation of findings, and documentation of responses as inappropriate and disrespectful behaviors during the verbal exchange. A Native American patient may be ambivalent about accepting services from agencies and professionals. Such assistance has provided many social, health, and economic benefits to improve the life of Native Americans, but it also conflicts with Native American beliefs of being useful, doing for oneself, and relying on spiritual powers to chart the course of life. Native American patients often remain calm and controlled, even in the most difficult circumstances; it is important that providers not mistake this behavior for the absence of feeling, caring, or discomfort.

Various tribes may have specific rituals that are performed at death, such as burying certain personal possessions with the individual. Consulting with members of the specific tribe to gain insight into special rituals during sickness and at death would be advantageous for nurses working with Native American populations.

The last part of the 20th century saw a rise in certain preventable diseases among Native Americans, attributable to their exposure to new risks, such as a poor diet, insufficient exercise, and unhealthy lifestyle choices. For example, diabetes, a disease uncommon among Native Americans at the start of the 20th century, now affects Native Americans 2.3 times as much as white Americans (Office of Minority Health, 2007b). Native Americans are more likely than the white non-Hispanic population to be obese and hypertensive, and to suffer a stroke. The relatively recent high prevalence of rheumatoid diseases among Native Americans as compared to white older adults may be related to a genetic predisposition to autoimmune rheumatic disease. The cancer survival rate among Native Americans is the lowest of any U.S. population. Nurses must promote health education and early screening to aid this population in reducing risks and identifying health conditions early.



POINT TO PONDER

In what ways do you honor and celebrate your unique heritage? ●

Older Prisoners

In addition to belonging to various ethnic groups, older adults can be part of unique subcultures that set them apart from society, as is the case with prison inmates. It is estimated that inmates age 50 and older make up 11% of the prison population (Pfeffer, 2002; Aday, 2003). Prison inmates in general tend to have poorer health status than their cohorts in the community, attributable to poor socioeconomic status and inaccessibility to health care. The stress of imprisonment adds to their poor health status. These realities, combined with the increased prevalence of chronic conditions with advanced age, result in significant health challenges for older prisoners. Unfortunately, the quality of diet, physical environment, and medical care within prisons is not the same as that found in the community. Professionals with expertise in geriatrics and health care settings to address the unique needs of disabled older adults are lacking within the prison setting.

Gerontological nurses are challenged to address the growing needs of nursing care of imprisoned older adults. Proactive actions could include offering expertise to local prison health units in the form of educational programs and consultation, mobilization of nurse and other types of volunteers to assist older prisoners, and advocacy for adequate standards of gerontological nursing care in these settings.



KEY CONCEPT

Culture adds to the mosaic of the older adult’s life.

Nursing Considerations for Culturally Sensitive Care of Older Adults

Numerous ethnic or cultural groups that have not been mentioned also possess unique histories, beliefs, and practices. Rather than viewing differences as odd and forcing patients to conform to “American” traditions, nurses should respect the beauty of this diversity and make every effort to preserve it. The beliefs, values, relationships, roles, and traditions associated with cultural and ethnic identity add a special significance to life.

Dietary preferences should be accommodated, adaptations made for special practices, and unique ways of managing illness understood. Consideration should be given to differences in the expression of pain, fear, and other feelings. Reactions to illness and care can vary. For example, one person may view illness as punishment for wrongdoing while another sees it as part of the normal human experience. Some

individuals may desire the active participation of family members or traditional healers in their care, whereas others, even those whose ethnic or cultural group traditionally do desire these things, do not.

If nurses are unfamiliar with a particular group, they should invite the patient and their family members to educate them or contact churches or ethnic associations (e.g., Polish American Alliance, Celtic League, Jewish Family and Children's Society, Slovak League of America) for interpreters or persons who can serve as cultural resources. One powerful means to learn about cultural influences for individual patients is to ask them to describe their life stories (see Chapter 4). Nurses convey sensitivity and caring when they try to recognize and support patients' ethnic and cultural backgrounds. Nurses also will become enriched by gaining an appreciation and understanding of the many various interesting ethnic groups.

The U.S. Department of Health and Human Services has developed standards for culturally and linguistically appropriate services that can guide clinical settings in working with diverse populations; access their website at <http://www.omhrc.gov/CLAS/indexfinal.htm>.

The increasing diversity of future aged populations will affect services in a variety of ways. Among the needs that could present are:

- institutional meal planning that incorporates ethnic foods
- multilingual health education literature
- readily available translators
- provisions for celebration of holidays (e.g., Chinese New Year, St. Patrick's Day, Black History Month, Greek Orthodox Easter)
- special-interest groups for residents of long-term care facilities and assisted living communities

Nurses need to ensure that cultural differences of older adults are understood, appreciated, and respected. Demonstrating this cultural sensitivity honors the older adult's unique history and preserves the familiar and important. Of the losses that do accompany the aging experience, the loss of ethnic or cultural significance should not be one.

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. What are some reasons for older adults of minority groups to be suspicious or distrustful of health care services in this country?
2. What would you do if faced with a situation in which an older client refused to allow you to provide nursing care for him because you are of a different ethnic or racial group?
3. You are working in a hospital that serves a large population of immigrants who have not entered

the country legally. These individuals frequently have had poor health care and present with multiple chronic conditions. The hospital is concerned that the care offered to these immigrants is placing a significant strain on its budget and may threaten its survival. The local community does not want to lose their hospital and have voiced opposition to providing free care for this group of immigrants. What do you see as concerns for all parties involved? What are the implications of either continuing or discontinuing free care to this group of immigrants? What solutions could you recommend?

Resources

Bureau of Indian Affairs

<http://www.doi.gov/bureau-indian-affairs.html>

National Asian Pacific Center on Aging

<http://www.napca.org>

National Association for Hispanic Elderly

<http://www.anppm.org>

National Center on Black Aged

<http://www.ncba-aged.org>

National Hispanic Council on Aging

<http://www.nhcoa.org>

National Indian Council on Aging

<http://www.nicoa.org>

National Resource Center on Native American Aging

<http://www.med.und.nodak.edu/depts/rural/nrcnaa/>

Office of Minority Health Resource Center

<http://www.omhrc.gov>

Organization of Chinese Americans

<http://www.ocanatl.org>

References

- Aday, R. (2003). *Aging prisoners: Crisis in American corrections*. Westport, CT: Praeger Publishers.
- Egede, L. (2006). Race, ethnicity, culture, and disparities in health care. *Journal of General Internal Medicine*, 21(6), 667–669.
- National Center for Cultural Competence. (2007). Rationale for cultural competence in primary care. Retrieved September 21, 2007, from <http://www11.georgetown.edu/research/gucchd/nccc/resources/cultural6.html>.
- National Center for Health Statistics. (2008). Rates of illness by age, sex, and race. Data Warehouse on Trends in Aging. Retrieved September 20, 2008, from <http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/agingact.htm>.
- National Center for Health Statistics. (2007). NCHS data on aging. Centers for Disease Control. Retrieved September 21, 2007, from <http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/data/factsheets/agingfactsheet.pdf>.
- Office of Minority Health. (2007a). African-American Profiles. Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office.

- Office of Minority Health. (2007b). *American Indians/Alaska Natives Profiles*. Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office.
- Pfeffer, S. (2002). *One strike against the elderly: Growing old in prison*. Medill News Service, August 2002. Retrieved May 25, 2003, from <http://www.journalism.medill.northwestern.edu/docket/01-1127aging.html>.
- Scommegna, P. (2004). U.S. growing bigger, older, and more diverse. Population Reference Bureau. Retrieved September 21, 2007, from <http://www.prb.org/Articles/2004/USGrowingBiggerOlderandMoreDiverse.aspx>.
- U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2002). Table No. 176, AIDS cases reported by patient characteristics, 1981–2001. HIV/AIDS Surveillance Report, Volume 13, No. 2.
- Wan, H., Sengupta, M., Velkoff, V. A., & DeBarros, K. A. (2005). U.S. Census Bureau, Current Population Reports, 60+ in the United States: 2005. Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office, p. 16.
- ## Recommended Readings
- Aging. (1995). Diversity outlook. *Currents*, 10(9), A–D.
- Andrews, M. M., & Boyle, J. S. (2008). *Transcultural concepts in nursing care* (5th ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Armer, J. M., & Conn, S. C. (2001). Exploration of spirituality and health among diverse rural elderly individuals. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 27(6), 28–37.
- Baker, D. P. (1999). Virginia opens special prison for aging inmates (web page). Retrieved August 8, 2000, from <http://www.dallasnews.com/national/0703nat4prison.htm>.
- Barsa, B. R. N. (1998). *The independence of urban Hispanic elderly: The growing need for social support networks*. New York: Garland.
- Brewer, C. (2004). *Doorway thoughts: Cross-cultural health care for older adults*. Sudbury, MA: Jones and Bartlett Publishers.
- Burggraf, V. (2000). The older woman: Witchnicity and health. *Geriatric Nursing*, 21(4), 183–187.
- Burlingame, V. S. (1999). *Ethnogerocounseling: Counseling ethnic elders and their families*. New York: Springer.
- Chinn, S. L. (2000). Culturally competent health care. *Public Health Reports*, 115, 25–33.
- Chow, R. K. (2002). Initiating a long-term care nursing service for aging inmates. *Geriatric Nursing*, 23(1), 24–27.
- Cox, R. P. (2003). *Health related counseling with families of diverse cultures: Family, health, and cultural competencies*. Westport, CT: Greenwood Press.
- Crist, J. D. (2005). *Cafecitos and Telenovelas: Culturally competent interventions to facilitate Mexican American families' decisions to use home care services*. *Geriatric Nursing*, 26(2), 229–232.
- Cromwell, S. L., & Berg, J. A. (2006). Lifelong physical activity patterns of sedentary Mexican-American women. *Geriatric Nursing*, 27(2), 209–213.
- Delgado, M. (1998). *Latino elders and the twenty-first century: Issues and challenges for culturally competent research and practice*. New York: Haworth Press.
- Enslein, J., Tripp-Reimer, T., Kelley, L. S., & McCarty, L. (2002). Evidence-based protocol. Interpreter facilitation for individuals with limited English proficiency. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 28(7), 5–13.
- Evans, B. C., & Crogan, N. L. (2006). Building a scientific base for nutrition care of Hispanic nursing home residents. *Geriatric Nursing*, 27(2), 273–279.
- Galanti, G. A. (2004). *Caring for patients from different cultures* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press.
- Good, M., Picot, B. L., & Salem, S. G., et al. (2000). Cultural differences in music chosen for pain relief. *Journal of Holistic Nursing*, 18(3), 245–260.
- Healy, J., & McKee, M. (Eds.). (2004). *Accessing health care: Responding to diversity*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Johnson, C. M., & Sullivan-Marx, E. M. (2006). Art therapy: Using the creative process for healing and hope among African-American older adults. *Geriatric Nursing*, 27(2), 309–316.
- Johnson, R. A., & Tripp-Reimer, T. (2001a). Aging, ethnicity, and social support: A review. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 27(6), 15–21.
- Johnson, R. A., & Tripp-Reimer, T. (2001b). Relocation among ethnic elders: A review. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 27(6), 22–27.
- Keegan, L. (2000). A comparison of the use of alternative therapies among Mexican Americans and Anglo-Americans in the Texas Rio Grande Valley. *Journal of Holistic Nursing*, 18(3), 280–293.
- Kemp, C. (Ed.). (2004). *Refugee and immigrant health. A handbook for health professionals*. New York: Cambridge University Press.
- Leininger, M. (2002). *Transcultural nursing: Concepts, theories, research and practices*. New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Lipson, J. G., Dibble, S. L., & Minarik, P. A. (1996). *Culture and nursing care: A pocket guide*. San Francisco: UCSF Nursing Press.
- Litwin, H. (Ed.). (1996). *Social networks of older people: A cross-national analysis*. Westport, CT: Praeger.
- Munoz, C. C., Luckmann, J., and Luckmann, J. (2005). *Transcultural communication in nursing* (2nd ed.). Clifton Park, NY: Thomson/Delmar Learning.
- Purnell, L. D., & Paulanka, B. J. (2005). *Guide to culturally competent health care*. Philadelphia: F.A. Davis Company.
- Satcher, D., & Pamies, R. J. (Eds.) (2006). *Multicultural medicine and health disparities*. New York: McGraw-Hill Professional.
- Spector, R. E. (2004). *Cultural diversity in health and illness* (6th ed.). Upper Saddle River, NJ: Pearson/Prentice Hall.
- Spector, R. E. (2004). *Culture care: Guide to heritage assessment and health traditions* (3rd ed.). Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall.
- St. Clair, A., & McKenry, L. (1999). Preparing culturally competent practitioners. *Journal of Nursing Education*, 38(5), 228–234.
- Sterritt, P. F., & Pokorny, M. E. (1998). African-American caregiving for a relative with Alzheimer's disease. *Geriatric Nursing*, 19, 127–134.
- Stone, J. H. (2005). *Culture and disability: Providing culturally competent services*. Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage Publications.

CHAPTER 4

Life Transitions and Story

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Ageism

Changes in Family Roles and Relationships

- Parenting
- Grandparenting

Loss of Spouse

Retirement

- Loss of the Work Role
- Reduced Income

Changes in Health and Functioning

Cumulative Effects of Life Transitions

- Shrinking Social World
- Awareness of Mortality

Responding to Life Transitions

- Life Review and Life Story
- Self-Reflection
- Strengthening Inner Resources

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 Discuss ageism and its consequences.
- 2 Discuss changes that occur in aging families.
- 3 Describe challenges faced by widows.
- 4 Outline the phases and challenges of retirement.
- 5 Discuss the impact of age-related changes in health and functioning on roles.
- 6 Describe cumulative effects of life transitions.
- 7 List nursing measures to assist individuals in adjusting to the challenges and changes of aging.

Growing old is not easy. Various changes during the aging process demand multiple adjustments that require stamina, ability, and flexibility. Frequently, more simultaneous changes are experienced in old age than during any other period of life. Many young adults find it exhausting to keep pace with technological advances, societal changes, cost-of-living fluctuations, and labor market trends. Imagine how complex and complicated life can be for older individuals, who must also face retirement, reduced income, possible housing changes, frequent losses through deaths of significant persons, and a declining ability to function. Further, each of these life events can be accompanied by role changes that can influence behavior, attitudes, status, and psychological integrity. To promote awareness and appreciation of the complex and arduous adjustments involved in aging, this chapter considers some of the factors that affect older adults' ability to cope with multiple changes associated with aging and their achievement of satisfaction and well-being during the later years.

Ageism

Ageism is a concept introduced several decades ago and defined as “the prejudices and stereotypes that are applied to older people sheerly on the basis of their age . . .” (Butler, Lewis, & Sutherland, 1991). It is not difficult to detect overt ageism in our society. Rather than showing appreciation for the vast contributions of older adults and their wealth of resources, society is beset with prejudices and lacks adequate provisions for them, thus derogating their dignity. The same members of society who object to providing sufficient income and health care benefits for the older population enjoy an affluence and standard of living that was the result of the efforts of those older persons.

Although older adults constitute the most diverse and individualized age group in the population, they continue to be stereotyped by the following misconceptions:

- Old people are sick and disabled.
- Most old people are in nursing homes.
- Senility comes with old age.
- People either get very tranquil or very cranky as they age.
- Old people have lower intelligence and are resistant to change.
- Old people are not able to have sexual intercourse and are not interested in sex.
- There are few satisfactions in old age.

For a majority of older persons, the above statements are not true. Increased efforts are necessary to

heighten societal awareness of the realities of aging. Groups such as the Gray Panthers have done an outstanding job of informing the public about the facts regarding aging and the problems and rights of older adults. More advocates for older persons are needed.

Ageism carries several consequences. By separating people of advanced age from themselves, younger people are less likely to see the similarities between themselves and older adults. This not only leads to a lack of understanding of older people, but also reduces the opportunities for the young to gain realistic insights into aging. Furthermore, separating older individuals from the rest of society makes it easier for younger individuals to minimize the socioeconomic challenges of the older population. However, systematically stereotyping and discriminating against older persons will not prevent individuals from growing old themselves and experiencing the challenges of old age.

Chapter 2 outlines Erikson's (1963) stages of life in which he describes the last stage of the life cycle as concerned with achieving integrity versus despair. Integrity results when the older individual derives satisfaction from an evaluation of his or her life. Disappointment with life and the lack of opportunities to alter the past bring despair. Ageism, unfortunately, can predispose aging persons to disappointment because they may believe stereotypical views that old age is a time of purposelessness and decline. The experiences of our entire lifetime determine whether our old age will be an opportunity for freedom, growth, and contentment or a miserable imprisonment of our human potential.

Changes in Family Roles and Relationships

The emergence of today's nuclear family units changed the roles and functions of the individuals in a family. Older parents are expected to have limited input into the lives of their adult children. Children are not required to meet the needs of their aging parents for financial support, health services, or housing. Parents increasingly do not depend on their children for their needs, and the belief that children are the best insurance for old age is fading. In addition, grandparenting, although satisfying, is not usually as active a role as in the past, especially because grandchildren may be scattered throughout the country. These changes in family structure and function are not necessarily negative. Older adults may enjoy the independence and freedom from responsibilities that nuclear family life offers. Adjusting to changes in responsibilities and roles over time, though, is an important challenge of aging.

Parenting

The dynamic parental role frequently changes to meet the growth and development needs of both parent and child. During middle and later life, parents must adjust to the independence of their children as they become responsible adult citizens and leave home. The first child usually leaves home and establishes an independent unit 22 to 25 years after the parents married. For persons who have invested most of their adult lives nurturing and providing for their offspring, a child's independence may have significant impact. Although parents who are freed from the responsibilities and worries of rearing children have more time to pursue their own interests, they are also freed from the meaningful, purposeful, and satisfying activities associated with childrearing, and this frequently results in a profound sense of loss.

Today's older woman has been influenced by a historical period that emphasized the role of wife and mother. For instance, to provide job opportunities for men returning from World War II, women were encouraged to focus their interests on raising a family and to forfeit the scarce jobs to men. Unlike many of today's younger women, who pursue and may equally value both a career and motherhood, these older women centered their lives on their families, from which they derived their sense of fulfillment. Having developed few roles from which to achieve satisfaction other than those of wife and mother, many of these older women feel a void when their children are grown and gone. Compounding this problem, the highly mobile lifestyle of many young persons limits the degree of direct contact an older woman has with her adult children and grandchildren.

The older man shares many of the same feelings as his wife. Throughout the years, he may have felt that he has performed useful functions that made him a valuable member of the family. Most likely, he worked hard to support his wife and children, and his masculinity was reinforced with proof of his ability to beget and provide for offspring. Now, with his children grown, he is no longer required to provide—a mixed blessing in which he may find both relief and purposelessness. In addition, he learns that the rules have changed—his ability to support a family without the need for his wife to work is now viewed by some as oppressive, his efforts to replenish the earth are scorned by zero-population proponents, and his attempt to fill the masculine role for which he was socialized is considered oppressive or inane by today's standards.

However, this lessening of the parenting role and the changes in family function are not necessarily negative. Most children do not abandon or neglect their aging parents; they maintain regular

contact. Separate family units may help the parent-child relationship develop on a more adult-to-adult basis, to the mutual satisfaction of young and old. If older adults adjust to their new role as parents of independent, adult children, they may enjoy the freedom from previous responsibilities and the new developments in their family relationships.

POINT TO PONDER

List at least three ways that your life is different from the lives of your parents and grandparents.

Grandparenting

In addition to experiencing changes in the parenting role that come with age, many older adults enter a new role as grandparents. Americans' extended life expectancy enables more people to experience the role of grandparent and spend more years in that role than previous generations. More than 56 million Americans is a grandparent (U.S. Census Bureau, 2007).

Grandchildren can bring considerable joy and meaning to the lives of older adults (Fig. 4-1). In turn, grandparents who are not burdened with the same daily childrearing responsibilities of parents can offer love, guidance, and enjoyment to the



FIGURE 4-1 • Grandparenting offers new roles and joys for many older adults.

family's young. They can share lessons learned from their life experiences and family history and traditions that help the young understand their roots. There can be as many grandparenting styles as there are personalities; there is no single model of grandparenthood.

Changes in family structure and activities present new challenges to today's grandparents. Most mothers are employed outside of the home. This is compounded by the fact that approximately one-third of children are being raised by one parent. As a result, grandparents may assume childcare responsibilities to a greater extent than previous generations did. Grandparents may even provide for or share a home with their children and grandchildren. Family structures may differ from older adults' experience, with an increase in remarriage and blended families as well as homosexual households. More than one-third of children under 18 years of age live in blended households, and an estimated 8 to 10 million children have gay or lesbian parents (Gates, Badgett, Macomber, & Chambers, 2007). As a result of an adult child's marriage or relationship, older adults may find themselves becoming step-grandparents, a role for which few are prepared. Conscious choices will be needed to love and accept these new family members.

In addition to older adults having to adapt to new family lifestyles and structures, children and grandchildren may need to adapt to grandparents who have different lifestyles from previous generations. Rather than the stay-at-home grandma who cooked elaborate family dinners and welcomed grandchildren whenever they needed a sitter, today's grandmother may have an active career and social calendar and not want to be burdened with frequent babysitting responsibilities or hosting family functions. Grandparents may be divorced, causing their children and grandchildren to face issues such as grandmother's weekend trips with her new male friend or grandpop's new, much younger wife. The family may need to be referred for counseling to help them address these issues.

Grandparenthood is a learned role and some older individuals may need guidance to become effective grandparents. Older adults may need to be guided in thinking through issues such as:

- respecting their children as parents and not interfering in the parent–child relationship
- calling before visiting
- establishing rules for babysitting
- allowing their children to establish their own traditions within their family and not expecting them to adhere to the grandparent's traditions

Nurses can help families locate resources that can assist in meeting the challenges of grandparenting. Also, nurses can suggest activities that can help

grandparents be connected with their grandchildren, particularly if they are not geographically close; these can include audio- and videotapes, e-mails, faxes, and handwritten letters. (In addition to offering a means of communication, these can provide lasting memories that can be passed from one generation to another.) Older adults can be encouraged to keep diaries, scrapbooks, and notebooks of family recipes and customs that can help their grandchildren and future generations have special insights into their ancestors.

In addition to fulfilling the grandparenting role, many older adults may assume primary childrearing responsibilities for their grandchildren. More than 4.5 million children are being raised by their grandparents (U.S. Census Bureau, 2007), and many more live with their grandparents off and on; a grandparent is providing care for nearly one-fourth of children under age 5 (AARP, 2007). Full-time caregiving often arises out of crises with the child's parents, such as substance abuse, teen pregnancy, or incarceration. Older persons may need help thinking through the implications of deciding to raise a grandchild; some questions that nurses can raise with grandparents contemplating this decision include:

- How will raising this child affect your own health, marriage, and lifestyle?
- Have you any health conditions that could interfere with this responsibility?
- What is your back-up plan in the event that you become ill or disabled?
- Do you have the energy and physical health required to care for an active child?
- Can you afford to care for the child, pay medical and educational expenses, and the like?
- What rights and responsibilities will the child's parent(s) have?
- Do you have the legal right to serve as a surrogate parent (e.g., to give consent for medical procedures)? Have you consulted with an attorney?

Organizations exist to assist grandparents who are raising grandchildren; some are listed at the end of this chapter.

Loss of Spouse

The death of a spouse is a common event that alters family life for many older persons. The loss of that individual with whom one has shared more love and life experiences and more joys and sorrows than anyone else may be intolerable. How, after many decades of living with another person, does one adjust to his or her sudden absence? How does one adjust to setting the table for one, to coming home to an empty house, or to not touching that warm,



FIGURE 4-2 • For an older adult, the loss of a spouse means the loss of one's closest companion of many years.

familiar body in bed? Adjustment to this significant loss is coupled with the demand to learn the new task of living alone (Fig. 4-2).

The death of a spouse affects more women than men because women tend to have a longer life expectancy than men. In fact, most women will be widowed by the time they reach their eighth decade of life. Unlike many of today's younger women, who have greater independence through careers and changed norms, most of today's older women have led family-oriented lives and have been dependent on their husbands. Their age, limited education, lack of skills, and long period of unemployment while raising their families are limitations in a competitive job market. If these women can find employment, adjusting to the new demands of work may be difficult and stressful. On the other hand, the unemployed widow may learn that pensions or other sources of income may be reduced or discontinued when the husband dies, necessitating an adjustment to an extremely limited budget. In addition to financial dependence, the woman may have depended on her husband's achievements to provide her with gratification and identity. Frequently, the achievements of children serve this same purpose. Sexual desires may be unfulfilled because of lack of opportunity, religious beliefs regarding sex outside

marriage, fear of repercussion from children and society, or residual attitudes from early teachings about sexual mores. If a woman's marriage promoted friendships with other married couples and only inactive relationships with single friends, the new widow may find that her number of single female friends is small.

For the most part, when the initial grief of the husband's death passes, most widows adjust quite well. The high proportion of older women who are widowed provides an availability of friends who share similar problems and lifestyles, especially in urban areas. Old friendships may be revived to provide sources of activity and enjoyment. Some widows may discover that the loss of certain responsibilities, such as cooking and laundering for their husbands, brings them a new, pleasant freedom. With alternative roles to develop, sufficient income, and choice over lifestyle, many women are able to make a successful adjustment to widowhood. Nurses may facilitate this adjustment by identifying sources of friendships and activities such as clubs, volunteer organizations, or groups of widows in the community, and by helping the widow understand and obtain all the benefits to which she is entitled. This may require reassuring the widow that enjoying her new freedom and desiring relationships with other men is no reason to feel guilty and may help her to adjust to the loss of her husband and the new role of widow. (See Chapter 39 for more information on death and dying.)



KEY CONCEPT

The high prevalence of widows provides opportunities for friendships between women who share similar challenges and lifestyles.

Retirement

Retirement is another of the major adjustments of an aging individual. This transition brings the loss of a work role and is often an individual's first experience of the impact of aging. In addition, retirement can require adjusting to a reduced income.

Loss of the Work Role

Retirement is especially difficult in Western society, in which worth is commonly measured by an individual's productivity. Work is also often viewed as the dues required for active membership in a productive society. Many of today's older persons, raised to value a strong work ethic, hold the attitude that unemployment, for whatever reason, is an undesirable state.

KEY CONCEPT

Older adults often view work as the dues required for active membership in a productive society.

Occupational identity largely determines an individual's social position and social role. Although individuals function differently in similar roles, some behaviors continue to be associated with certain roles, which promote stereotypes. Certain stereotypes continue to be heard frequently—the tough construction worker, the wild exotic dancer, the fair judge, the righteous clergyman, the learned lawyer, and the eccentric artist. The realization that these associations are not consistently valid does not prevent their propagation. Too frequently, individuals are described in terms of their work role rather than their personal characteristics, for example, “the nurse who lives down the road” or “my son the doctor.” Considering the extent to which social identity and behavioral expectations are derived from the work role, it is not surprising that retirement threatens an individual's sense of identity (Fig. 4-3). During childhood and adolescence, we are guided toward an independent, responsible adult role, and in academic settings we are prepared for our professional roles, but where and when are we prepared for the role of retiree?

POINT TO PONDER

What do you derive, or think you will derive, from being a nurse in terms of purpose, identity, values, relationships, activities, and so on? What similar gains are you achieving from other roles in your life? ●



FIGURE 4-3 ● People who defined self by their work role may have difficulty adjusting to retirement.

When one's work is one's primary interest, activity, and source of social contacts, separation from work leaves a significant void in one's life. Aging individuals should be urged to develop interests unrelated to work. Retirement is facilitated by learning how to use, appreciate, and gain satisfaction from leisure time throughout an employed lifetime. In addition, enjoying leisure time is a therapeutic outlet for life stresses throughout the aging process.

KEY CONCEPT

When work is one's primary interest, activity, and source of social contacts, separation from work leaves a significant void in one's life.

Gerontological nurses must understand the realities and reactions encountered when working with retired persons. Although the experience of retirement is unique for each individual, some reactions and experiences tend to be fairly common. The phases of retirement described by Robert Atchley decades ago continue to offer insight into this complicated process (Atchley, 1975):

- *Remote phase.* Early in the occupational career, future retirement is anticipated, but rational preparation is seldom done.
- *Near phase.* When the reality of retirement is evident, preparation for leaving one's job begins, as does fantasy regarding the retirement role.
- *Honeymoon phase.* Following the retirement event, a somewhat euphoric period begins, in which fantasies from the pre-retirement phase are tested. Retirees attempt to do everything they never had time for simultaneously. A variety of factors (e.g., finances, health) limit this, leading to the development of a stable lifestyle.
- *Disenchantment phase.* As life begins to stabilize, a letdown, sometimes a depression, is experienced. The more unrealistic the pre-retirement fantasy, the greater the degree of disenchantment.
- *Reorientation phase.* As realistic choices and alternative sources of satisfaction are considered, the disenchantment with the new retirement routine can be replaced by developing a lifestyle that provides some satisfaction.
- *Stability phase.* An understanding of the retirement role is achieved, and this provides a framework for concern, involvement, and action in the older person's life. Some enter this phase directly after the honeymoon phase, and some never reach it at all.
- *Termination phase.* The retirement role is lost as a result of either the resumption of a work role or dependency due to illness or disability.

Different nursing interventions may be required during each phase of retirement. Assisting aging individuals with their retirement preparations during the remote phase is a preventive intervention that enhances the potential for health and well-being in late life. As a part of such intervention, nurses can encourage aging individuals to establish and practice good health habits such as following a proper diet; avoiding alcohol, drug, and tobacco abuse; and having regular physical examinations. Counseling regarding the realities of retirement may be part of the near phase, whereas helping retirees place their newfound freedom into proper perspective may be warranted during the honeymoon phase. Being supportive of retirees during the disenchantment phase without fostering self-pity and helping them identify new sources of satisfaction may facilitate the reorientation process. Appreciating and promoting the strengths of the stability phase may reinforce an adjustment to retirement. When the retirement phase is terminated due to disease or disability, the tactful management of dependency and the respectful appreciation of losses are extremely important.

As they have done with other life events, baby boomers are changing the thinking about work and retirement. Increasingly, they are replacing the model of a person being defined by his or her work with one that defines a person's work based on the totality of his or her life. Life coaches and retirement planners are helping individuals to see that the retirement stage is more meaningful when individuals create a balance of work, learning, leisure, family time, service to others, and interests and desires postponed during the active career years (Corbett, 2007). Rather than forfeit working altogether, it is suggested that people stay in the workforce, but in a different style—i.e., one that leaves time for the enjoyment of other interests and a high quality of life.

Nurses' evaluations of their own attitudes toward retirement are beneficial. Does the nurse see retirement as a period of freedom, opportunity, and growth or as one of loneliness, dependency, and meaninglessness? Is the nurse intelligently planning for her own retirement or denying it by avoiding encounters with retirement realities? Nurses' views of retirement affect the retiree–nurse relationship. Gerontological nurses can provide especially good models of constructive retirement practices and attitudes.

Reduced Income

In addition to the adjustment in work role, retirement often requires older adults to live on a reduced income. Financial resources are important at any age because they affect our diet, health, housing, safety, and independence, and influence many

of our choices in life. Retirement income is less than half the income earned while fully employed. For a majority of older Americans, Social Security income, originally intended as a supplement, is actually the primary source of retirement income—and even it has not kept pace with inflation. As a result, the economic profile of many older persons is poor.

Only a minority of the older population has income from a private pension plan, and those who do often discover that the fixed benefits established when the plan was subscribed are meager by today's standards because of inflation. Of the workers who are currently active in the labor force, more than half will not have pension plans when they retire. More than one in six of all older adults live in poverty; only a minority are fully employed or financially comfortable. Few older persons have accumulated enough assets during their lifetime to provide financial security in old age.

A reduction in income is a significant adjustment for many older persons because it triggers other adjustments. For instance, an active social life and leisure pursuits may have to be markedly reduced or eliminated. Relocation to less expensive housing may be necessary, possibly forcing the aged to break many family and community ties. Dietary practices may be severely altered, and health care may be viewed as a luxury over which other basic expenses, such as food and rent, take priority. If the older parent has to depend on children for supplemental income, an additional adjustment may be necessary.

Making financial preparations for old age many years before retirement is important. Nurses should encourage aging working people to determine whether their retirement income plans are keeping pace with inflation (Table 4-1). Also, older individuals need assistance in obtaining all the benefits they are entitled to and in learning how to manage their income wisely. Nurses should be aware of the impact of economic welfare on health status and should actively involve themselves in political issues that promote adequate income for all individuals.



POINT TO PONDER

What are you doing to prepare for your own retirement? ●

Changes in Health and Functioning

The changes in appearance and bodily function that occur during the aging process make it necessary for the aging individual to adjust to a new body image. Colorful soft hair turns gray and dry, flexible

TABLE 4-1 Retirement Budget

Income Sources	Current Monthly Income	Income After Retirement
Salary		
Pension		
Second job		
Social Security		
Spouses income		
Other (e.g., savings, rents, IRAs, investments)		
Total		
Living Requirements	Current Monthly Expenses	Expenses After Retirement
Living accommodations		
Mortgages or rent		
Utilities (e.g., gas, electricity, water)		
Taxes		
Maintenance		
Telephone		
Food and other necessities		
Clothing		
Medical (e.g., doctor, dentist, medicine)		
Prescriptions		
Insurance		
Life		
Health		
Automobile		
Automobile maintenance (e.g., gas, oil, repairs)		
Loans and other credit		
Entertainment		
Donations		
Subtotal		
Other expenses (10% of subtotal)		
Total		
Net (income minus expenses)	_____	_____
	Current	After retirement

straight fingers become bent and painful, body contours are altered, and height decreases. Stairs once climbed several times daily demand more time and energy to negotiate as the years accumulate. As subtle, gradual, and natural as these changes may be, they are noticeable and, consequently, they affect body image and self-concept.

The manner in which individuals perceive themselves and their functional abilities can determine the roles they play. A construction worker who has reduced strength and energy may forfeit his work role; a club member who cannot hear conversations may cease attending meetings; fashion models may stop seeking jobs when they perceive themselves as old. Interestingly, some persons well into their seventh and eighth decades refuse to join a senior citizen club because they do not perceive themselves as being “like those old people.” The nurse will gain

insight into the self-concept of older persons by evaluating what roles they are willing to accept and what roles they reject. Refer to the Nursing Diagnosis Highlight for a discussion of the possible nursing diagnosis of Ineffective Role Performance.



KEY CONCEPT

Insights into an older adult’s self-concept can be gained by examining the roles that are accepted and rejected.

It is sometimes difficult for the aging person to accept the body’s declining efficiency. Poor memory, slow response, easy fatigue, and altered appearance are among the many frustrating results of declining function, and they are dealt with in various ways.

NURSING DIAGNOSIS HIGHLIGHT

INEFFECTIVE ROLE PERFORMANCE

Overview

Ineffectiveness in role performance exists when there is a change in the perception or performance of a role. This can be associated with a physical, emotional, intellectual, motivational, educational, or socioeconomic limitation in the ability to fill the role, or restrictions in role performance imposed by others. There can be considerable distress, depression, or anger at not fulfilling the accustomed role and its associated responsibilities.

Causative or Contributing Factors

Illness, fatigue, pain, declining function, altered cognition, depression, anxiety, knowledge deficit, limited finances, retirement, lack of transportation, loss of significant other, ageism, restrictions imposed by others

Goals

The client realistically appraises role performance, adjusts to changes in role performance, and learns to perform responsibilities associated with roles.

Interventions

- Assess client's roles and responsibilities; identify deficits in role performance and reasons for deficits; review client's perception of role and feelings associated with altered role performance
- Assist client in realistically evaluating cause of altered role performance and potential for improvement in role performance
- Identify specific strategies to improve role performance (e.g., instructing, negotiating with family members to allow client to perform role, counseling client to accept real limitations, referring to community resources, improving health problem, encouraging client to seek help with responsibilities, advising for stress management)
- Encourage client to discuss concerns with family members; assist client in arranging family conference
- Refer client to assistive resources, as appropriate, such as support groups, occupational therapist, financial counselor; Over-60 Employment Service, visiting nurse, and social services.

Some older people deny them and often demonstrate poor judgment in an attempt to make the same demands on their bodies as they did when younger. Others try to resist these changes by investing in cosmetic surgery, beauty treatments, miracle drugs, and other expensive endeavors that diminish the budget but not the normal aging process. Still others exaggerate these effects and impose an unnecessarily restricted lifestyle on themselves. Societal expectations frequently determine the adjustment individuals make to declining function.

Common results of declining function are illness and disability. As described in Chapter 1, most older people have one or more chronic diseases, and more than one third have a serious disability that limits major activities such as work and housekeeping. Older adults often fear that illness or disability may cause them to lose their independence. Becoming a burden to their family, being unable to meet the demands of daily living, and having to enter a nursing facility are some of the fears associated with dependency. Children and parents may have difficulty exchanging dependent—independent roles. The physical pain arising from an illness may not be as intolerable as the dependency it causes.

Nurses should help aging persons understand and face the common changes associated with advanced age. Factors that promote optimum func-

tion should be encouraged, including proper diet; paced activity; regular physical examination; early correction of health problems; effective stress management; and avoidance of alcohol, tobacco, and drug abuse. Nurses should offer assistance, with attention to preserving as much of the individual's independence and dignity as possible.

Cumulative Effects of Life Transitions

Shrinking Social World

Many of the changes associated with aging result in loss of social connections and increasing risk for loneliness. Children are grown and gone, friends and spouse may be deceased, and others who could allay the loneliness may avoid the older individual because they find it difficult to accept the changes they see or to face the fact that they too will be old some day. Living in a sparsely populated rural area can geographically isolate older persons, and fears of crime when living in an urban area may prevent older adults from venturing outside their homes.

Hearing and speech deficits and language differences can also foster loneliness. Even if in the company of others, these functional limitations can socially isolate an older person. In addition, insecurity resulting from multiple losses in communication

abilities can lead to suspiciousness of others and a self-imposed isolation.

At a time of many losses and adjustments, personal contact, love, extra support, and attention—not isolation—are needed. These are essential human needs. It is likely that a failure to thrive will occur in adults who feel unwanted and unloved just as it does in infants, who display anxiety, depression, anorexia, and behavioral and other difficulties when they perceive love and attention to be inadequate.

Nurses should attempt to intervene when they detect isolation and loneliness in an older person. Various programs provide telephone reassurance or home visits as a source of daily human contact. The person's faith community may also provide assistance. Nurses can help the older adult locate and join social groups and perhaps even accompany the individual to the first meeting. A change in housing may be necessary to provide a safe environment conducive to social interaction. If the older person speaks a foreign language, relocation to an area in which members of the same ethnic group live can often remedy loneliness. Frequently, pets serve as significant and effective companions for older adults.

Using common sense in nursing care will facilitate social activity. The nurse can review and perhaps readjust the person's schedule to conserve energy and maximize opportunities for socialization. Medication administration should be planned so that during periods of social activity analgesics will provide relief, tranquilizers will not sedate, diuretics will not reach their peak, and laxatives will not begin working. Likewise, fluid intake and bathroom visits before activities begin should be planned to reduce the fear or actual occurrence of incontinence; activities for older adults should include frequent break periods for bathroom visits. The control of these minor obstacles can often facilitate social interaction.

Nurses should also understand that being alone is not synonymous with being lonely. Periods of solitude are essential at all ages and provide the opportunity to reflect, analyze, and better understand the dynamics of one's life. Older individuals may want periods of solitude to reminisce and review their lives. Some individuals, young and old, prefer and choose to be alone and do not feel isolated or lonely in any way. Of course, nurses should always be alert to hearing, vision, and other health problems that may be the cause of social isolation.



KEY CONCEPT

Periods of solitude are essential to reflect, analyze, and better understand the dynamics of life.

Awareness of Mortality

Widowhood, the death of friends, and the recognition of declining functions heighten older persons' awareness of the reality of their own deaths. During their early years, individuals intellectually understand they will not live forever, but their behaviors often deny this reality. The lack of a will and burial plans may be indications of this denial. As the reality of mortality becomes acute with advancing age, interest in fulfilling dreams, deepening religious convictions, strengthening family ties, providing for the ongoing welfare of family, and leaving a legacy are often apparent signs.

The thought of impending death may be more tolerable if people understand that their life has had depth and meaning. Unresolved guilt, unachieved aspirations, perceived failures, and other multitudinous aspects of "unfinished business" may be better understood and perhaps resolved. Although the state of old age may provide limited opportunities for excitement and achievement, satisfaction may be gained in knowing that there were achievements and excitements in other periods of life. The old woman may be frail and wrinkled, but she can still delight in remembering how she once drove young men wild. The retired old man may feel that he is useless to society now, but he realizes his worth through the memory of wars he fought to protect his country and the pride he feels in knowing he supported his family through the Great Depression. Nurses can help older adults gain this perspective on their lives through some of the interventions discussed in the following sections.

Responding to Life Transitions

When faced with ageism and numerous changes affecting relationships, roles, and health, older adults may respond in a variety of ways. The older adult's ability to cope and adjust to life changes determines whether they reach a stage of integrity or fall to despair. Nurses can help older adults respond to life transitions by facilitating life review and eliciting a life story, promoting self-reflection, and strengthening older adults' inner resources.

Life Review and Life Story

Life review is the process of intentionally reflecting on past experiences in an effort to resolve troublesome or traumatic life events and assess one's life in totality. The significance of a life review in interpreting and refining our past experiences as they relate to our self-concept and help us understand and accept our life history has been well discussed (Butler & Lewis, 1982; Webster & Haight, 2002).



FIGURE 4-4 • Reminiscing is a culturally universal phenomenon of aging. It is a way for the older adult to reassess life experiences and further develop a sense of accomplishment, fulfillment, and reward in life.

In gerontological care, life review has long been recognized as an important process to facilitate integrity in old age (i.e., to help older people appreciate that their lives have had meaning).

Rather than being a pathologic behavior, discussing the past is therapeutic and important for older individuals (Fig. 4-4). Life review can be a positive experience because older adults can reflect on the obstacles they have overcome and accomplishments they have made. It can provide the incentive to heal fractured relationships and complete unfinished business. On the other hand, life review can be a painful experience for older adults who realize the mistakes they've made and the lives they've hurt. Rather than conceal and avoid these negative feelings, older adults can benefit by discussing them openly and working through them; referrals to therapists and counselors may be indicated to assist with unresolved grief, depression, or anxiety.

The young can also benefit from the reminiscences of older adults by gaining a new perspective on life as they learn about their ancestry. Imagine the impact of hearing about slavery, immigration, epidemics, industrialization, or wars from an older

relative who has been part of that history. What history book's description of the Great Depression can compare with hearing a grandparent describe events one's own family experienced, such as going to bed hungry at night? In addition to their place in the future, the young can fully realize their link with the past when the desire of older people to reminisce is appreciated and fostered.



KEY CONCEPT

Reminiscence is not only therapeutic for older adults, but connects the young listener with the past.

The nurse can facilitate life review by eliciting the older adult's life story. Rich threads of life experience are accumulated with aging that create the unique fabric of one's life. When seen in isolation, some of these threads may seem to have little value or make little sense, much like a network of threads on the undersurface of a tapestry. However, when the threads are woven together and the tapestry can be viewed as a whole, a person can see the special purpose of individual life experiences—good and bad. Weaving the threads of life experiences into the tapestry of a life story can be highly beneficial to the older person and others. Successes can be appreciated and the value of trials and failures can be realized. Others are able to gain insight into the person's life in totality rather than have their understanding limited by what may be an unrepresentative segment of life that now presents. Customs, knowledge, and wisdom can be recognized, preserved, and passed to younger generations.



POINT TO PONDER

What are the major threads that have woven your life tapestry thus far? ●

Eliciting life stories from older persons is not a difficult process; in fact, many older adults welcome opportunities to share their life histories and life lessons to interested listeners. Nurses can encourage older adults to discuss and analyze the dynamics of their lives, and they can be receptive and accepting listeners. Box 4-1 outlines some of the variety of approaches nurses can use to elicit life stories.

For older adults who may require some facilitation, creative activities, such as compiling a scrapbook or dictating a family history, can stimulate the process. These creative efforts, as unsophisticated as they may be, should be recognized as significant legacies from the old to the young. For example, one 75-year-old man started a family scrapbook for

BOX 4-1 Eliciting Life Stories

Older adults possess rich life histories that have accrued during the many years they have lived. These unique histories contribute to each person's identity and individuality. Learning about life histories aids nurses in understanding older adults' preferences and activities, facilitating self-actualization, and preserving identity and continuity of life experiences. Knowledge of life histories also enables caregivers to see their patients in a larger context, connected to a past full of varied roles and experiences.

A basic requisite to eliciting life stories is a willingness to listen. Often, a direct request will be sufficient to open the door to a life history. Activities to facilitate this process include the following:

- **Tree of Life.** Ask the older adult to write significant events (graduation, first job, relocations, mar-

riages, deaths, childbirths, etc.) from the past on each branch and then discuss each.

- **Time Line.** Ask the older person to write significant events on or near the year when they occurred and then discuss each.
- **Life Map.** Ask the older adult to write significant events on the map and discuss each.
- **Oral History.** Ask the older adult to start with his or her earliest memory and tell the story of his or her life into a tape recorder. (Suggest that the older person make this recording as a gift for younger family members.) If the person needs guidance in telling their history, offer a written outline or questions, or have a volunteer function as an interviewer.

each of his children. Any photograph, newspaper article, or announcement pertaining to any family member was reproduced and included in every album. The family patiently tolerated this activity and sent him copies of graduation programs and photographs for every scrapbook. The family viewed the main value of this activity as providing something benign to keep him occupied. It was not until years after his death that the significance of this great task was appreciated as a priceless gift. Such tangible items may serve as an assurance to both young and old that the impact of an aged relative's life will not cease at death. Guiding older adults through this experience of compiling a life story provides not only a therapeutic exercise for them and an invaluable legacy for loved ones, but also, offers the gerontological nurse the gift of sharing and honoring the unique life journeys of older adults.

Self-Reflection

One of the hallmarks of successful aging is knowledge of self—that is, an awareness of the realities of who one is and one's place in the world. From infancy on, we engage in dynamic experiences that mold the unique individuals we are. By adulthood, we have formed the skeleton of our identities. Continued interactions and life experiences as we journey through life further add to the development of our identities.

The self, the personal identity an individual possesses, has several dimensions that basically can be described as body, mind, and spirit. The body

includes physical characteristics and functioning; the mind encompasses cognition, perception, and emotions; and the spirit consists of meaning and purpose derived from a relationship with God or other higher power. A variety of factors affect the development of body, mind, and spirit, such as genetic makeup, family composition and dynamics, roles, ethnicity, environment, education, religious experiences, relationships, culture, lifestyle, and health practices (Fig. 4-5).

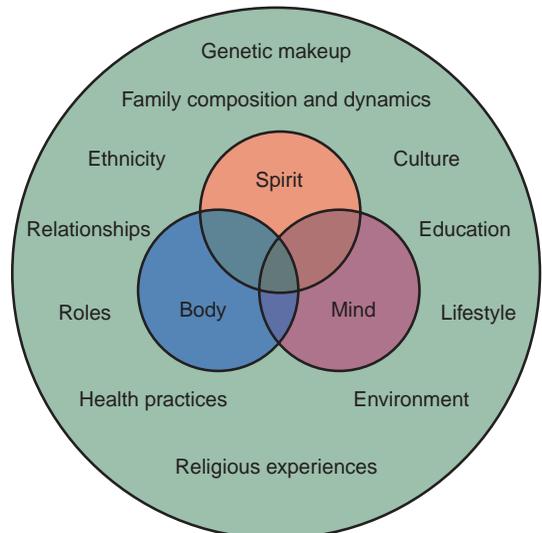


FIGURE 4-5 • The holistic self.



POINT TO PONDER

What are the significant factors of your background that influenced your unique body, mind, and spirit? ●

Although a realistic appraisal of one's identity and place in the world fosters healthy aging, not all persons complete this task successfully. Some people may live with unrealistic expectations or views of themselves, going through life playing parts that are ill-suited for them and wasting time in fruitless or unfulfilling activities. Harry is an example of this:

Harry, the eldest of five children, was raised in an inner-city community in which poverty was the norm. His father was an auto mechanic who had difficulty holding jobs. His mother didn't miss an opportunity to voice her dissatisfaction with her husband's meager income nor to emphasize to Harry that he needed to be sure to "make it big and not be like his father."

The message instilled by his mother and his desire for a better life than he enjoyed as a child fueled Harry to be a high achiever. By age 30, Harry owned a small chain of convenience stores, a large home in the suburbs, several luxury cars, and most of the possessions that reflected an upper middle-class lifestyle. Harry was proud that he could provide a comfortable life for his wife and expensive education for his children—quite the opposite of what his father achieved. Yet, something was missing. His business demanded most of his time and energy; therefore, he had little left of himself to offer his family. He also rarely had the time for his passion, restoring classic cars. His life seemed to consist of managing his businesses and sleeping, with an occasional social event with his family. Time for relaxation and reflection had no place in Harry's busy life.

In his late 50s, with children grown and his business worth enough to provide a comfortable retirement income, Harry was in a position where he didn't have to work the long days—or at all for that matter. His wife encouraged him to consider selling his business and spend his time "tinkering with cars and taking it easy." Although he was tempted, Harry felt that he just couldn't do this. Unfortunately, the script to "make it big," programmed into Harry's mind as a child, held him prisoner to a role that brought him little joy and fulfillment. Furthermore, he had no idea of what his purpose and identity was other than being an entrepreneur.

Like Harry, many individuals may reach their senior years without having evaluated who they really are, what drives them to behave as they do, or what their true purposes and pleasures are.



KEY CONCEPT

Some adults may have not invested the time and effort in self-evaluation and, consequently, reach old age with a lack of clarity of their identity.

Exploring and learning about one's true self are significant to holistic health in late life. Examining and coming to terms with thoughts, feelings, beliefs, and behaviors foster older adults' reaching a state of integrity rather than feeling despair over the lives they've lived. However, as important a process as it is, self-reflection does not come easily or naturally for some individuals. They may require interventions to facilitate this process; therefore, guiding aging people through self-reflective activities is an important therapeutic measure that gerontological nurses may need to offer. Life review and telling one's life story can function as self-reflective activities. In addition, other activities that facilitate self-reflection include journaling, writing letters and e-mails, and reflecting through art. These certainly do not exhaust the strategies that can be used to foster self-reflection. Nurses are bound only by their creativity in the approaches used for promoting self-reflection.

Journaling

Whether it is done with pencil and paper or a word-processing program, the process of writing often facilitates self-reflection. There is no one right way to keep a journal or diary; individuals should develop styles that are comfortable for them. Some people may make daily entries that include details about their communications, sleep patterns, mood, and activities, whereas others make periodic entries that address major emotional and spiritual issues. Nurses can assist individuals who have not kept journals and diaries by guiding them in the selection of a blank book and writing instrument. This is an important step, not only because these tools will be used often, but also because the book will be a tangible compilation of significant thoughts and feelings that could have meaning to others in years to come. Novices to journaling can be encouraged to start by reflecting on their lives and beginning their journals/diaries with a summary of the past. Suggesting that feelings and thoughts be written, in addition to the events of the day, can contribute to the process being one that fosters self-reflection.

Writing Letters and E-mails

Letters or e-mails are another means to reflect and express feelings. Often thoughts and feelings can be expressed in writing that individuals may not feel comfortable verbalizing. For some older adults,

BOX 4-2 Characteristics Reflective of Survivor Competencies of Aging Individuals

- Assumption of responsibility for self-care
- Mobilization of internal and external resources to solve problems and manage crises
- Development of support system via network of family, friends, and professional individuals and groups (e.g., social clubs, churches, physicians, volunteers)
- Sense of control over life events
- Adaptation to change
- Perseverance in the face of obstacles and difficulties
- Recovery from trauma
- Realization and acceptance of reality that life includes positive and negative events
- Discovery of meaning in life events
- Determination to fulfill personal, family, community, and work expectations despite difficulties and distractions
- Recognition of limitations and competencies
- Ability to trust, love, and forgive, and to accept trust, love, and forgiveness

letters of explanation and apology to friends and family with whom there have been strained relationships can be a healing exercise. Older people can be encouraged to locate friends and family in other parts of the country (or world) with whom they have not had contact for a while and to initiate communication concerning what has transpired in their lives and current events. Letters to grandchildren and other younger members of the family can provide a means to share relevant family history and offer special attention (many children love to receive their own mail!). Older adults may enjoy communicating by e-mail because of the ease and relatively low cost. If older adults do not own their own computers, nurses can refer them to local senior centers or libraries that offer free or nominal cost access to the Internet.

Reflecting Through Art

Many people find that painting, sculpting, weaving, and other forms of creative expression facilitate self-reflection and expression. It is important that the process, not the finished product, be emphasized. Arts and crafts classes and groups often are offered by local organizations dedicated to specific activities (e.g., weavers' guild, arts' council), schools, and senior centers. Nurses can assist older adults in locating such groups in their communities.



KEY CONCEPT

Producing a work of art, discussing literature, and sharing one's life story are among the many interventions that can be used to foster self-reflection.

Strengthening Inner Resources

The declines and dependencies that increasingly are present in late life can cause us to view older adults as

being fragile and incapable. However, most older individuals possess significant inner resources—physical, emotional, and spiritual—that have enabled them to survive to old age. Behaviors that exemplify their survivor capabilities are described in Box 4-2.



KEY CONCEPT

By considering the strengths displayed by older adults as they navigated the aging process, nurses and others can develop an enlightened perspective of the older population.

Against the backdrop of threats to independence and self-esteem, nurses best serve older adults by maintaining and bolstering their inner strengths. Basic to this effort is ensuring physical health and well-being. It is quite challenging for persons of any age to optimally meet intellectual, emotional, socioeconomic, and spiritual challenges when their basic physical needs are not fully satisfied or they are experiencing the symptoms associated with deviations from health. Comprehensive and regular assessment of health status and interventions to promote health provide a solid base from which inner strengths can be nurtured.



POINT TO PONDER

How would you judge your “survivor competencies?” What experiences have contributed to this? ●

By being empowerment facilitators, nurses can support older adults' inner strengths. Nurses must begin this process by examining and strengthening their own level of empowerment. When nurses develop a mindset of seeing possibilities despite fiscal and other constraints, they are better able to

help older adults see possibilities despite potential constraints imposed by age and illness. In addition to being role models, nurses can facilitate empowerment by:

- including older adults in care planning and caregiving activities to the maximum extent possible
- providing a variety of options to older people and freedom to choose among them
- equipping older adults for maximum self-care and self-direction by educating, relating, coaching, sharing, and supporting them
- advocating for older adults as they seek information, make decisions, and execute their own selected self-care strategies
- offering feedback, positive reinforcement, encouragement, and support

A sense of hope fosters empowerment and is a thread that reinforces the fabric of inner strengths. Hope is an expectation—that a problem will be resolved, relief will be obtained, and something desired will be obtained. Hope enables people to see beyond the present and make sense of the senseless. It empowers them to take action. Nurses foster hope in older people by honoring the value of their lives despite infirmities and limitations, assisting in establishing goals, supporting the use of coping strategies, building on capabilities, and displaying an optimistic, caring attitude. Spiritual beliefs and practices also provide inner strength that enable older adults to cope with current challenges and maintain hope and optimism for the future (see Chapter 13); nurses need to support older individuals in their prayers, devotional readings, church attendance, and other expressions of spirituality.

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. What examples of ageism can be found in television programs, advertisements, and other vehicles of communication?
2. How will the life experiences of today's 30-year-old woman affect her ability to adapt to old age? What factors will enable her to cope more or less as well than her grandmother's generation of women?
3. Describe actions nurses can take to help aging individuals prepare for retirement.
4. How can you determine if an older individual's time alone is reflective of needed solitude or social isolation?
5. How can the gerontological nurse elicit life stories from older adults in the midst of caregiving demands during a busy shift?
6. In what ways will today's young generation be in a better or worse position than today's older population in developing survivor competencies?

Resources

AARP Grandparent Information Center

<http://www.aarp.org/families/grandparents/gic/>

AARP Retirement Calculator

http://www.sites.stockpoint.com/aarp_rc/wm/Retirement/Retirement.asp?act=LOGIN

Grandparents Raising Grandchildren

<http://www.uwex.edu/ces/gprg/gprg.html>

International Institute for Reminiscence and Life Review

<http://www2.uwsuper.edu/cee/III/IIRLR/Welcome.htm>

References

- AARP. (2007). When Grandparents Provide Care. [On-line]. Available: http://www.aarp.org/families/grandparents/childcare/when_grandparents_provide_childcare.html
- Atchley, R. C. (1975). *The sociology of retirement*. Cambridge, MA: Schenkman.
- Butler, R. H., & Lewis, M. I. (1982). *Aging and mental health* (3rd ed., p. 58). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Butler, R. H., Lewis, M. I., & Sutherland, T. (1991). *Aging and mental health* (4th ed.). New York: Merrill/MacMillan.
- Corbett, D. (2007). *Portfolio life. The new path to work, purpose, and passion after 50*. San Francisco: John Wiley and Sons.
- Erikson, E. (1963). *Childhood and society* (2nd ed.). New York: Norton.
- Gates, G., Badgett, L. M., Macomber, J. E., & Chambers, K. (2007). Adoption and foster care by lesbian and gay parents in the United States. *Urban Institute*, retrieved 10/17/07, <http://www.urban.org/url.cfm?ID=411437>.
- U.S. Census Bureau. (2007). Facts for Features: Grandparents Day. [On-line]. Available: http://www.census.gov/Press-Release/www/releases/archives/facts_for_features_special_editions/007130.html
- Webster, J. D., & Haight, B. K. (2002). *Critical advances in reminiscence work: From theory to application*. New York: Springer.

Recommended Readings

- Anderson, M., & Burggraf, V. (2007). Passing the torch: Transcendence. *Geriatric Nursing*, 28(1), 37–38.
- Bender, M., Bauchham, P., & Norris, A. (1999). *The therapeutic purpose of reminiscence*. Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage.
- Bertsch, D. K. (2005). A nurse goes shopping for a continuing care retirement community. *Geriatric Nursing*, 26(2), 89–93.
- Bouvard, M. G. (1998). *Grandmothers: Granddaughters remember*. Syracuse, NY: Syracuse University Press.
- Browne, C. V. (1998). *Women, feminism, and aging*. New York: Springer.
- Butler, R. (2002). *Why survive? Being old in America*. Baltimore, MD: Johns Hopkins Press.
- Cadidhizar, R., Bechtel, G. A., & Woodring, B. C. (2000). The changing role of grandparenthood. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 26(1), 24–29.
- Carroll, M. (2004). *Awake at work*. Boston: Shambhala.

- Carson, L. (1999). *The essential grandparent: A guide to making a difference*. Deerfield Beach, FL: Health Communications.
- Clarfield, A. M. (2001). "Of a certain age": Wisdom through the eyes of fascinating older people. *Clinical Geriatrics*, 9(9), 15–16.
- Costa, D. L. (2000). *Evolution of retirement: An American economic history, 1880–1990*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
- Davidhizar, R., Bechtel, G. A., Woodring, B. C. (2000). The changing role of grandparenthood. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 26(1), 24–29.
- Ebersole, P. (2000). Ageism is a women's issue. *Geriatric Nursing*, 21(4), 174.
- Eisenberg, L. (2006). *The number: A completely different way to think about the rest of your life*. Waterville, ME: Thorndike Press.
- Freudenheim, E. (2004). *Looking forward: An optimist's guide to retirement*. New York: Stewart, Tabori, and Chang.
- Guse, L., Inglis, J., Chicoine, J., et al. (2000). Life albums in long-term care: Residents, family, and staff perceptions. *Geriatric Nursing*, 21(1), 34–37.
- Hartt, W., & Hartt, M. (1998). *The complete idiot's guide to grandparenting*. New York: Alpha Books.
- Hegge, M., & Fischer, C. (2000). Grief responses of senior and elderly widows: Practice implications. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 26(2), 35–43.
- Hertz, J. E. (2005). Perceived autonomy, social support, psychosocial developmental strengths, and health in older adults. *Geriatric Nursing* 26(1), 47.
- Heston, C. (2000). *To be a man: Letters to my grandson*. New York: Simon and Schuster.
- Hillman, J. (2000). *The force of character and the lasting life*. New York: Random House.
- Hirst, S. P., & Raffin, S. (2001). "I hate those darn chickens . . .": The power in stories for older adults and nurses. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 27(9), 24–29.
- Johnson, C. M., & Sullivan-Marx, E. M. (2006). Art therapy: Using the creative process for healing and hope among African American older adults. *Geriatric Nursing*, 27(5), 309–316.
- Korte, J. N., & Hall, E. (1997). *Seasons of life: The dramatic journey from birth to death*. Ann Arbor, MI: University of Michigan Press.
- Lemme, B. H. (2006). *Development in adulthood* (3rd ed.). Boston: Allyn & Bacon.
- Levine, S. B. (2005). *Inventing the rest of our lives: Women in second adulthood*. New York: Viking Penguin.
- Mackinley, E. (2006). *Spiritual growth and care in the fourth age of life*. Philadelphia: Jessica Kingsley Publishers.
- Moore, S. L. (2000). Aging and meaning in life: Examining the concept. *Geriatric Nursing*, 21(1), 2729.
- Morse, S., & Robbins, D. Q. (1998). *Moving mom and dad: Why, where, how, and when to help parents relocate* (2nd ed.). Berkeley, CA: Lanier Publishing.
- Newborg, M. L. (2006). Transcendence: Adventures in aging. *Geriatric Nursing*, 27(1), 26–27.
- Palmore, E. B., Branch, L., & Harris, D. K. (Eds.). (2005). *Encyclopedia of ageism*. Binghamton, NY: Haworth Press.
- Plastow, N. A. (2006). Libraries of life: Using life history books with depressed care home residents. *Geriatric Nursing*, 27(3), 217–221.
- Puentes, W. J. (2000). Using social reminiscence to teach therapeutic communication skills. *Geriatric Nursing*, 21(3), 318–320.
- Quadagno, J. S. (2007). *Aging and the life course: An introduction to social gerontology*. Boston: McGraw-Hill College.
- Redburn, D. E. (Ed.). (1998). *Social gerontology*. New York: Auburn House.
- Ruffenach, G., & Greene, K. (2007). *The Wall Street Journal complete retirement guidebook: How to plan it, live it and enjoy it*. New York: Three Rivers Press.
- Rybarczyk, B., & Bell, A. (1997). *Listening to life stories: A new approach to stress intervention in health care*. New York: Springer.
- Szinovacz, M. E. (1998). *Handbook on grandparenthood*. Westport, CT: Greenwood Press.
- Trafford, A. (2004). *My time: Making the most of the rest of your life*. New York: Basic Books.
- Weil, A. (2005). *Healthy aging: A lifelong guide to your physical and spiritual well-being*. New York: Knopf.
- Westheimer, R. K., & Kaplan, S. (2000). *Grandparenthood*. New York: Routledge.
- Williams, G. (2005). *The baby boomers guide to caring for your aging parents*. Fontana, CA: Taylor Trade Publications.
- Yeaworth, R. C. (2002). Long-term care and insurance. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 28(11), 45–51.

Common Aging Changes

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Changes to the Body

- Cells
- Physical Appearance
- Respiratory System
- Cardiovascular System
- Gastrointestinal System
- Urinary System
- Reproductive System
- Musculoskeletal System
- Nervous System
- Sensory Organs
- Endocrine System
- Integumentary System
- Immune System
- Thermoregulation

Changes to the Mind

- Personality
- Memory
- Intelligence
- Learning
- Attention Span

Nursing Implications of Age-Related Changes

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 List common age-related changes at the cellular level; in physical appearance; and to the respiratory, cardiovascular, gastrointestinal, urinary, reproductive, musculoskeletal, nervous, endocrine, integumentary, and immune systems, the sensory organs, and thermoregulation.
- 2 Describe psychological changes experienced with age.
- 3 Discuss risks and nursing considerations associated with age-related changes.

Living is a process of continual change. Infants become toddlers, pubescent children blossom into young men and women, and dependent adolescents develop into responsible adults. The continuation of change into later life is natural and expected.

The type, rate, and degree of physical, emotional, psychological, and social changes experienced during life are highly individualized; such changes are influenced by genetic factors, environment, diet, health, stress, lifestyle choices, and numerous other elements. The result is not only individual variations among older persons, but also differences in the pattern of aging of various body systems within the same individual. Although some similarities exist in the patterns of aging among individuals, the pattern of aging is unique in each person.

Changes to the Body

Cells

Organ and system changes can be traced to changes at the basic cellular level. The number of cells is gradually reduced, leaving fewer functional cells in the body. Lean body mass is reduced, whereas fat tissue increases until the sixth decade of life. Total body fat as a proportion of the body's composition

increases (Harris, Visser, Everhart, Tylavsky, Fuerst, et al., 2000; Woo, Leung, & Kwok, 2007). Cellular solids and bone mass are decreased. Extracellular fluid remains fairly constant, whereas intracellular fluid is decreased, resulting in less total body fluid. This decrease makes dehydration a significant risk to older adults.

Physical Appearance

Many physical changes of aging affect a person's appearance (Fig. 5-1). Some of the more noticeable effects of the aging process begin to appear after the fourth decade of life. It is then that men experience hair loss, and both sexes develop gray hair and wrinkles. As body fat atrophies, the body's contours gain a bony appearance along with a deepening of the hollows of the intercostal and supraclavicular spaces, orbits, and axillae. Elongated ears, a double chin, and baggy eyelids are among the more obvious manifestations of the loss of tissue elasticity throughout the body. Skin-fold thickness is significantly reduced in the forearm and on the back of the hands. The loss of subcutaneous fat content, responsible for the decrease in skin-fold thickness, also is responsible for a decline in the body's natural insulation, making older adults more sensitive to cold temperatures.

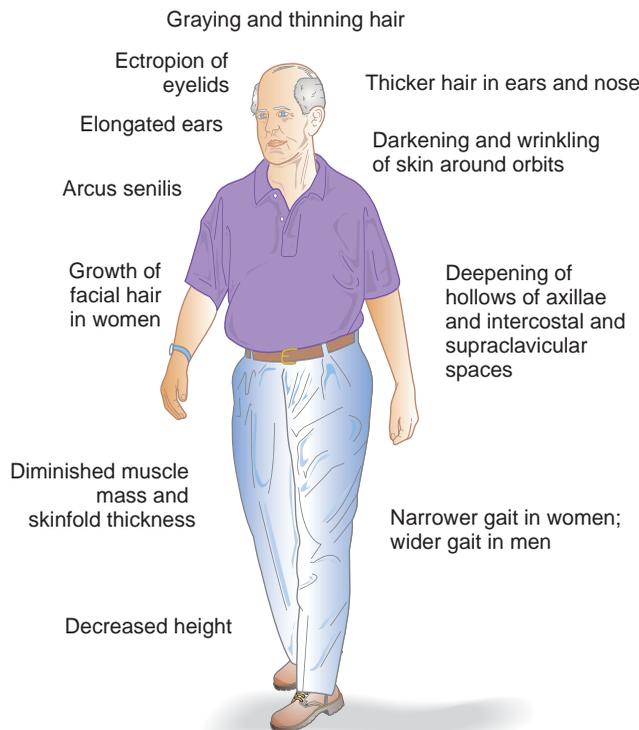


FIGURE 5-1 • Age-related changes noticeable on inspection.

Stature decreases, resulting in a loss of approximately 2 inches in height by 80 years of age. Body shrinkage is due to reduced hydration, loss of cartilage, and thinning of the vertebrae. The decrease in stature causes the long bones of the body, which do not shrink, to appear disproportionately long. Any curvature of the spine, hips, and knees that may be present can further reduce height.

These changes in physical appearance are gradual and subtle. Further differences in physiologic structure and function can arise from changes to specific body systems.

Respiratory System

Various structural changes occur in the chest with age that reduce respiratory activity (Fig. 5-2). The calcification of costal cartilage makes the trachea and rib cage more rigid; the anterior–posterior chest diameter increases, often demonstrated by kyphosis; and thoracic inspiratory and expiratory muscles are weaker. There is a blunting of the cough and laryngeal reflexes. In the lungs, cilia reduce in number and there is hypertrophy of the bronchial mucous gland, further complicating the ability to expel mucus and debris. Alveoli reduce in number and stretch due to a progressive loss of elasticity—a process that begins

by the sixth decade of life. The lungs become smaller and more rigid and have less recoil.

The sum of these changes causes less lung expansion, insufficient basilar inflation, and decreased ability to expel foreign or accumulated matter. The lungs exhale less effectively, thereby increasing the residual volume. As the residual volume increases, the vital capacity is reduced; maximum breathing capacity also decreases. Immobility can further reduce respiratory activity. With less effective gas exchange and lack of basilar inflation, older adults are at high risk for developing respiratory infections. Endurance training can produce a significant increase in lung capacity of older adults.



KEY CONCEPT

The reduced respiratory activity associated with advanced age puts older adults at increased risk for developing pneumonia easily, especially when they are immobile.

Cardiovascular System

Some cardiovascular changes commonly attributed to age actually result from pathological conditions. Heart size does not change significantly due to age;

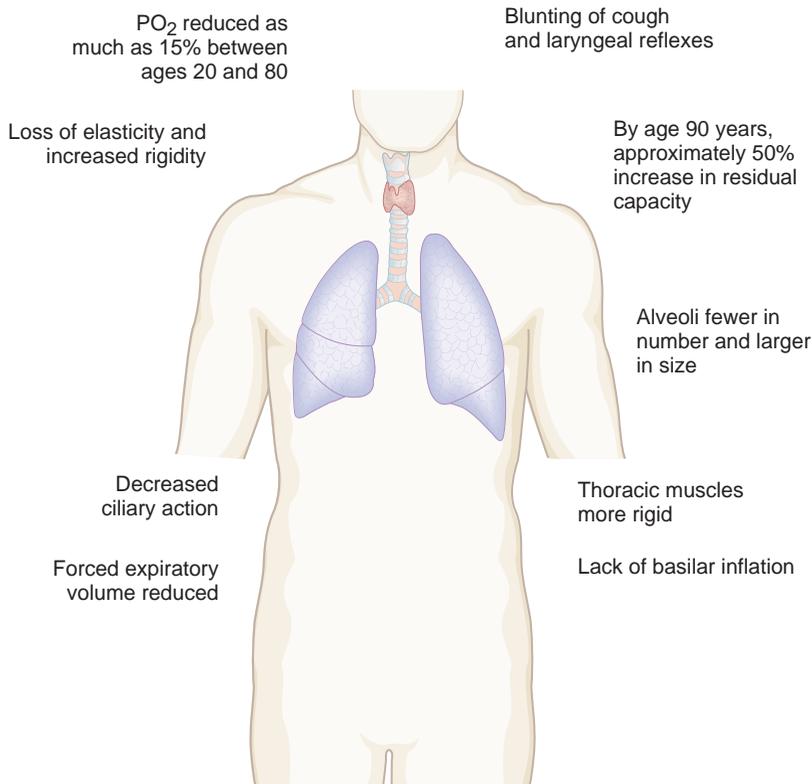


FIGURE 5-2 • Respiratory changes that occur with aging.

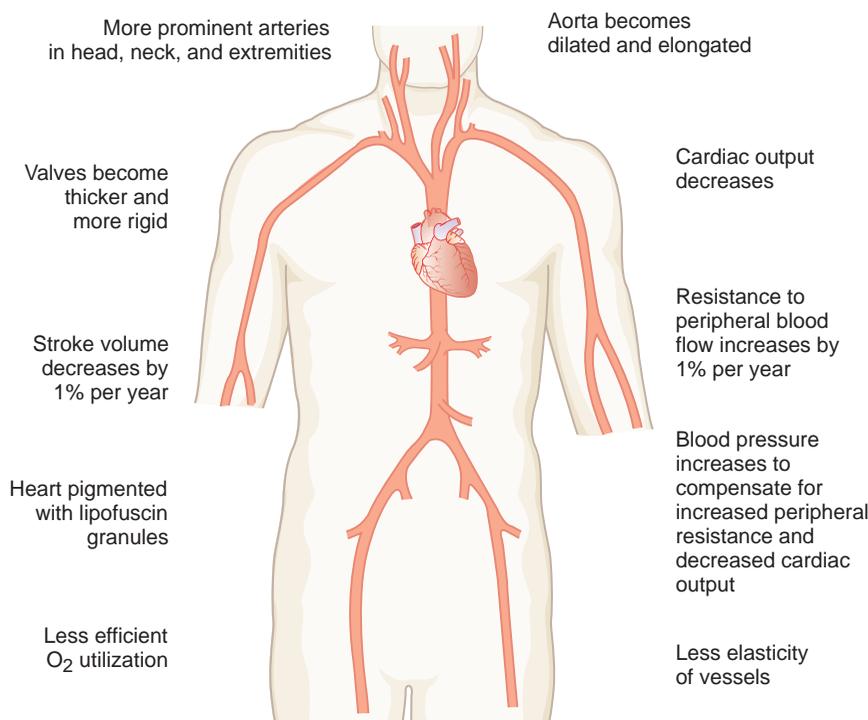


FIGURE 5-3 • Cardiovascular changes that occur with aging.

rather, enlarged hearts are associated with cardiac disease, and marked inactivity can cause cardiac atrophy. There is a slight left ventricular hypertrophy with age, and the aorta becomes dilated and elongated. Atrioventricular valves become thick and rigid as a result of sclerosis and fibrosis, compounding the dysfunction associated with any cardiac disease that may be present. There may be incomplete valve closure resulting in systolic and diastolic murmurs. Extra systolic sinus bradycardia and sinus arrhythmia can occur in relation to irritability of the myocardium.

Age-related physiologic changes in the cardiovascular system appear in a variety of ways (Fig. 5-3). Throughout the adult years, the heart muscle loses its efficiency and contractile strength, resulting in reduced cardiac output under conditions of physiologic stress. Pacemaker cells become increasingly irregular and decrease in number, and the shell surrounding the sinus node thickens. The isometric contraction phase and relaxation time of the left ventricle are prolonged; the cycle of diastolic filling and systolic emptying requires more time to be completed.

Usually, adults adjust to changes in the cardiovascular system quite well; they learn that it is easier and more comfortable for them to take an elevator rather than the stairs, to drive instead of walking a long distance, and to pace their activities. When unusual demands are placed on the heart (e.g., show-

ing snow for the first time of the season, receiving bad news, running to catch a bus), the person feels the effects. The same holds true for older individuals, who are not severely affected by less cardiac efficiency under non-stressful conditions. When older persons are faced with an added demand on their hearts, however, they note the difference. Although the peak rate of the stressed heart may not reach the levels experienced by younger persons, tachycardia in older people will last for a longer time. Stroke volume may increase to compensate for this situation, which results in elevated blood pressure, although the blood pressure can remain stable as tachycardia progresses to heart failure in older adults. The resting heart rate is unchanged.



KEY CONCEPT

Age-related cardiovascular changes are most apparent when unusual demands are placed on the heart.

Maximum exercise capacity and maximum oxygen consumption vary among older people. Older adults in good physical condition have comparable cardiac function to younger persons who are in poor condition.

Blood vessels consist of three layers, each of which is affected differently by the aging process.

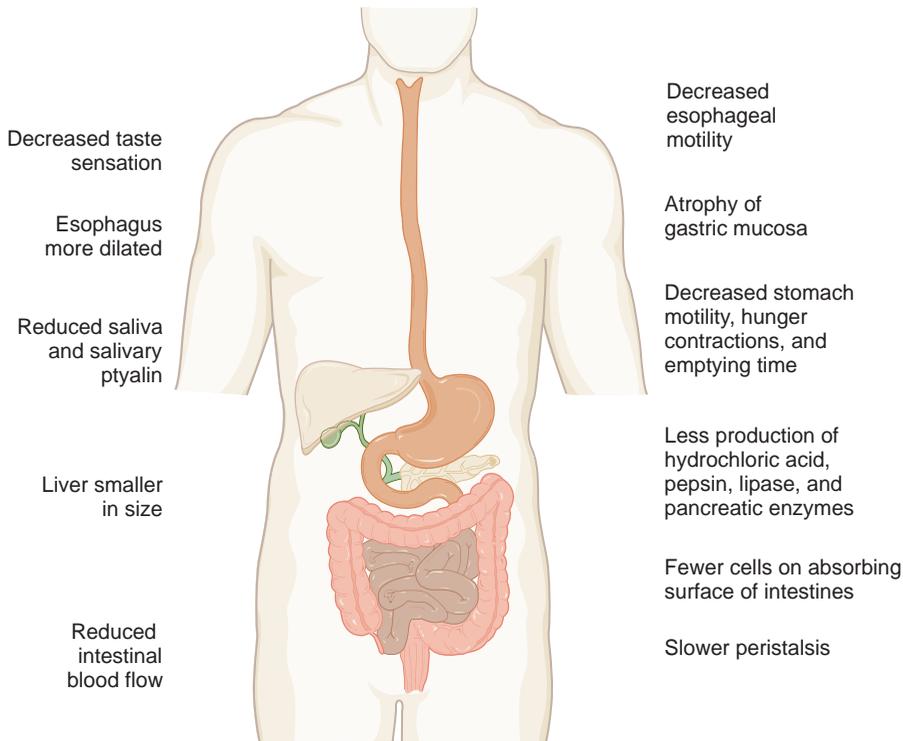


FIGURE 5-4 • Gastrointestinal changes that occur with aging.

The tunica intima, the innermost layer, experiences the most direct changes, including fibrosis, calcium and lipid accumulation, and cellular proliferation. These changes contribute to the development of atherosclerosis. The middle layer, the tunica media, undergoes a thinning and calcification of elastin fibers and an increase in collagen, which cause a stiffening of the vessels. Impaired baroreceptor function and increased peripheral resistance, leading to a rise in systolic blood pressure, result. The outermost layer, the tunica adventitia, is not affected by the aging process. Decreased elasticity of the arteries is responsible for vascular changes to the heart, kidney, and pituitary gland. Reduced sensitivity of the blood pressure-regulating baroreceptors increases problems with postural hypotension and postprandial hypotension (blood pressure reduction of at least 20 mm Hg within 1 hour of eating). The reduced elasticity of the vessels, coupled with thinner skin and less subcutaneous fat, causes the vessels in the head, neck, and extremities to become more prominent.

Gastrointestinal System

Although not as life-threatening as respiratory or cardiovascular problems, gastrointestinal symptoms may be of more bother and concern to older persons. This system is altered by the aging process at all points. Changes in the teeth and mouth and

accessory structures such as the liver also affect gastrointestinal function. Figure 5-4 summarizes gastrointestinal system changes.

Tooth enamel becomes harder and more brittle with age. Dentin, the layer beneath the enamel, becomes more fibrous and its production is decreased. The root pulp experiences shrinkage and fibrosis, the gingiva retracts, and bone density in the alveolar ridge is lost. Increasing numbers of root cavities and cavities around existing dental work occur. Flattening of the chewing cusps is common. The bones that support the teeth decrease in density and height, contributing to tooth loss. Tooth loss is not a normal consequence of growing old, but poor dental care, diet, and environmental influences have contributed to many of today's older population being edentulous. After 30 years of age, periodontal disease is the major reason for tooth loss. More than half of all older adults must rely on partial or full dentures, which may not be worn regularly because of discomfort or poor fit. If natural teeth are present, they often are in poor condition, having flatter surfaces, stains, and varying degrees of erosion and abrasion of the crown and root structure. The tooth brittleness of some older people creates the possibility of aspiration of tooth fragments.

Taste sensations become less acute with age because the tongue atrophies, affecting the taste buds; chronic irritation (as from pipe smoking) can

reduce taste efficiency to a greater degree than that experienced through aging alone. The sweet sensations on the tip of the tongue tend to suffer a greater loss than the sensations for sour, salt, and bitter flavors. Excessive seasoning of foods may be used to compensate for taste alterations and could lead to health problems for older individuals. Loss of papillae and sublingual varicosities on the tongue are common findings.

Older adults produce approximately one third of the amount of saliva they produced in younger years (Gupta, Epstein, & Sroussi, 2006). Saliva often is diminished in quantity and is of increased viscosity as a result of some of the medications commonly used to treat geriatric conditions. Salivary ptyalin is decreased, interfering with the breakdown of starches. Because of subtle changes in the swallowing mechanism, swallowing can take twice as long (Shaker, Ren, Bardan, Easterling, Dua, Xie, et al., 2003).

Esophageal motility is affected by age. Presbyesophagus occurs, a condition characterized by a decreased intensity of propulsive waves and an increased frequency of non-propulsive waves. The esophagus tends to become slightly dilated, and esophageal emptying is slower, which can cause discomfort because food remains in the esophagus for a longer time. Relaxation of the lower esophageal sphincter may occur; when combined with the older person's weaker gag reflex and delayed esophageal emptying, aspiration becomes a risk.

The stomach is believed to have reduced motility in old age, along with decreases in hunger contractions. Studies regarding changes in gastric emptying time have been inconclusive, with some claiming delayed gastric emptying to occur with normal aging and others attributing it to other factors. The gastric mucosa atrophies. Hydrochloric acid and pepsin decline with age; the higher pH of the stomach contributes to an increased incidence of gastric irritation in the older population.

Some atrophy occurs throughout the small and large intestines, and fewer cells are present on the absorbing surface of intestinal walls. Functionally, there is no significant change in mean small bowel transit time with age. Fat absorption is slower, and dextrose and xylose are more difficult to absorb. Absorption of vitamin B, vitamin B12, vitamin D, calcium, and iron is faulty. The large intestine has reductions in mucous secretions and elasticity of the rectal wall. Normal aging does not interfere with the motility of feces through the bowel, although other factors that are highly prevalent in late life do contribute to constipation. An age-related loss of tone of the internal sphincter can affect bowel elimination. Slower transmission of neural impulses to the lower bowel reduces awareness of the need to evacuate the bowels.

With advancing age, the liver has reduced weight and volume but this seems to produce no ill effects. The older liver is less able to regenerate damaged cells. Liver function tests remain within a normal range. Less efficient cholesterol stabilization and absorption cause an increased incidence of gallstones. The pancreatic ducts become dilated and distended, and often the entire gland prolapses.

Urinary System

The urinary system is affected by changes in the kidneys, ureters, and bladder (Fig. 5-5). The renal mass becomes smaller with age, which is attributable to a cortical loss rather than a loss of the renal medulla. Renal tissue growth declines, and atherosclerosis may promote atrophy of the kidney. These changes can have a profound effect on renal function, reducing renal blood flow and the glomerular filtration rate by approximately one-half between the ages of 20 and 90 years (Kielstein, Body-Boger, Frolich, Ritz, Haller, et al., 2003).

Tubular function decreases. There is less efficient tubular exchange of substances, conservation of water and sodium, and suppression of antidiuretic hormone secretion in the presence of hypo-osmolality. Although these changes can contribute to hyponatremia and nocturia, they do not affect specific gravity to any significant extent. The decrease in tubular function also causes decreased reabsorption of glucose from the filtrate, which can cause 1+ proteinurias and glycosurias not to be of major diagnostic significance.

Urinary frequency, urgency, and nocturia accompany bladder changes with age. Bladder muscles weaken and bladder capacity decreases. Emptying of the bladder is more difficult; retention of large volumes of urine may result. The micturition reflex is delayed. Although urinary incontinence is not a normal outcome of aging, some stress incontinence may occur because of a weakening of the pelvic diaphragm, particularly in multiparous women.

Reproductive System

As men age, the seminal vesicles are affected by a smoothing of the mucosa, thinning of the epithelium, replacement of muscle tissue with connective tissue, and reduction of fluid-retaining capacity. The seminiferous tubules experience increased fibrosis, thinning of the epithelium, thickening of the basement membrane, and narrowing of the lumen. The structural changes can cause a reduction in sperm count in some men. Venous and arterial sclerosis and fibroelastosis of the corpus spongiosum can affect the penis with age. The older man does not lose the physical capacity to achieve erections or ejaculations (Sampson, Untergasser, Plas, & Berger, 2007). There is some atrophy of the testes.

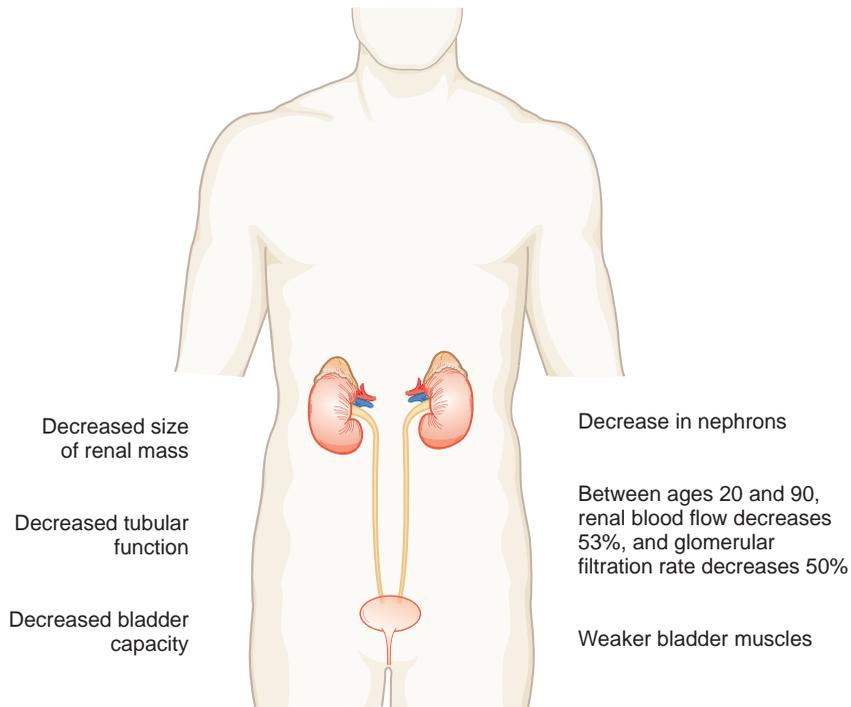


FIGURE 5-5 • Urinary tract changes that occur with aging.

Prostatic enlargement occurs in most older men (Marks, Roehrborn, & Andiole, 2006). The rate and type vary among individuals. Three fourths of men aged 65 years and older have some degree of prostatism, which causes problems with urinary frequency. Although most prostatic enlargement is benign, it does pose a greater risk of malignancy and requires regular evaluation.

The female genitalia demonstrate many changes with age, including atrophy of the vulva from hormonal changes, accompanied by the loss of subcutaneous fat and hair and a flattening of the labia. The vagina of the older woman appears pink and dry with a smooth, shiny canal because of the loss of elastic tissue and rugae. The vaginal epithelium becomes thin and avascular. The vaginal environment is more alkaline in older women and is accompanied by a change in the type of flora and a reduction in secretions. The cervix atrophies and becomes smaller; the endocervical epithelium also atrophies. The uterus shrinks and the endometrium atrophies; however, the endometrium continues to respond to hormonal stimulation, which can be responsible for incidents of postmenopausal bleeding in older women on estrogen therapy. The fallopian tubes atrophy and shorten with age, and the ovaries atrophy and become thicker and smaller. Despite these changes, the older woman does not lose the ability to engage in and enjoy intercourse or other forms of sexual pleasure. Estrogen depletion also causes a weakening

of pelvic floor muscles, which can lead to an involuntary release of urine when there is an increase in intra-abdominal pressure.

Figure 5-6 summarizes age-related changes in male and female reproductive systems.

Musculoskeletal System

The kyphosis, enlarged joints, flabby muscles, and decreased height of many older persons result from the variety of musculoskeletal changes occurring with age (Fig. 5-7). Along with other body tissue, muscle fibers atrophy and decrease in number, with fibrous tissue gradually replacing muscle tissue. Overall muscle mass, muscle strength, and muscle movements are decreased; the arm and leg muscles, which become particularly flabby and weak, display these changes well. Because the variability in the rate of these changes could suggest they result from inactivity rather than aging, the importance of exercise to minimize the loss of muscle tone and strength cannot be emphasized enough. Muscle tremors may be present and are believed to be associated with degeneration of the extrapyramidal system. The tendons shrink and harden, which causes a decrease in tendon jerks. Reflexes are lessened in the arms, are nearly totally lost in the abdomen, but are maintained in the knee. For various reasons, muscle cramping frequently occurs.

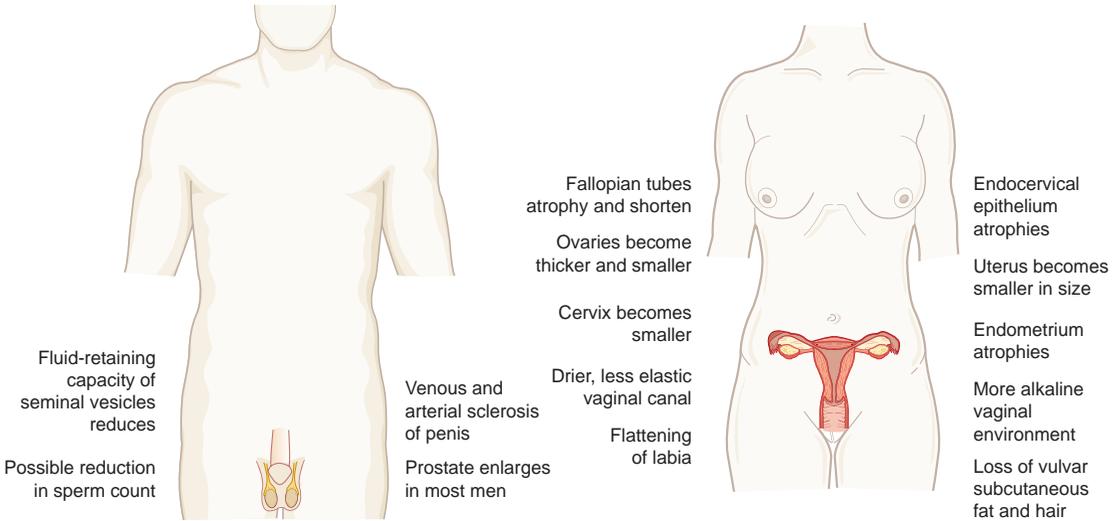


FIGURE 5-6 • Changes in the male and female reproductive structures that occur with aging.



KEY CONCEPT

Regular exercise helps maintain muscle strength and tone and reduces some of the negative functional consequences of aging.

Bone mineral and mass are reduced, contributing to the brittleness of the bones of older people, especially older women. There is diminished calcium absorption, a gradual resorption of the interior surface of the long bones, and a slower production of new bone on the outside surface. These changes make fractures a serious risk to the older adults. Although long bones do not significantly shorten with age, thinning disks and shortening vertebrae reduce the length of the spinal column, causing a reduction in height with age. Height may be further shortened because of varying degrees of kyphosis, a backward tilting of the head, and some flexion at the hips and knees. A deterioration of the cartilage surface of joints and the formation of points and spurs may limit joint activity and motion.

Nervous System

It is difficult to identify with accuracy the exact impact of aging on the nervous system because of the dependence of this system's function on other body systems. For instance, cardiovascular problems can reduce cerebral circulation and be responsible for cerebral dysfunction. There is a decline in brain weight and a reduction in blood flow to the brain; however, these structural changes do not appear to affect thinking and behavior (Rabbitt et al., 2007). Declining nervous system function may

be unnoticed because changes are often nonspecific and slowly progressing.

A reduction in neurons, nerve fibers, and cerebral blood flow and metabolism are known to occur. The nerve conduction velocity is lower (Fig. 5-8). These changes are manifested by slower reflexes and delayed response to multiple stimuli. Kinesthetic sense lessens. There is a slower response to changes in balance, a factor contributing to falls.

The hypothalamus regulates temperature less effectively. Brain cells decline by 1% yearly, the cerebral cortex undergoes approximately a 20% loss of neurons, and there is some decrease in brain size. Because the brain affects the sleep-wake cycle, and circadian and homeostatic factors of sleep regulation are altered with aging, changes in the sleep pattern occur, with stages III and IV of sleep becoming less prominent (Munch, Knoblauch, Blatter, Wirz-Justice, & Cajochen, 2007). Frequent awakening during sleep is not unusual, although only a minimal amount of sleep is actually lost.

Sensory Organs

Each of the five senses becomes less efficient with advanced age, interfering in varying degrees with safety, normal activities of daily living, and general well-being (Fig. 5-9).

Vision

Perhaps the sensory changes having the greatest impact are changes in vision. Presbyopia, the inability to focus or accommodate properly due to reduced elasticity of the lens, is characteristic of

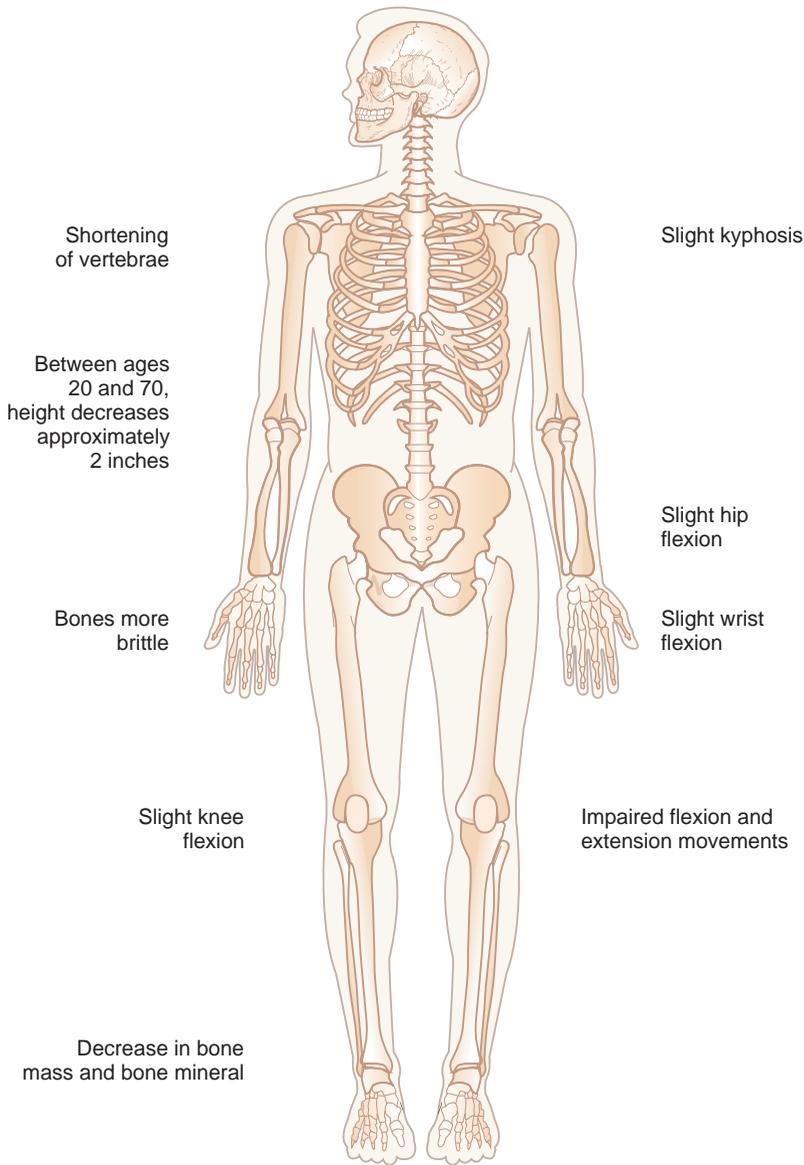


FIGURE 5-7 • Skeletal changes that occur with aging.

older eyes and begins in the fourth decade of life. This vision problem causes most middle-aged and older adults to need corrective lenses to accommodate close and detailed work. The visual field narrows, making peripheral vision more difficult. There is difficulty maintaining convergence and gazing upward. The pupil is less responsive to light because the pupil sphincter hardens, the pupil size decreases, and rhodopsin content in the rods decreases. As a result, the light perception threshold increases and vision in dim areas or at night is difficult; older individuals require more light than younger persons to see adequately.

Alterations in blood supply of the retina and retinal pigmented epithelium can cause macular degeneration, a condition in which there is a loss in central vision. Changes in the retina and retinal pathway interfere with critical flicker fusion (the point at which a flickering light is perceived as continuous rather than intermittent).

The density and size of the lens increases, causing the lens to become stiffer and more opaque. Opacification of the lens leads to the development of cataracts, which increases sensitivity to glare, blurs vision, and interferes with night vision. Exposure to the ultraviolet rays of the sun contribute to

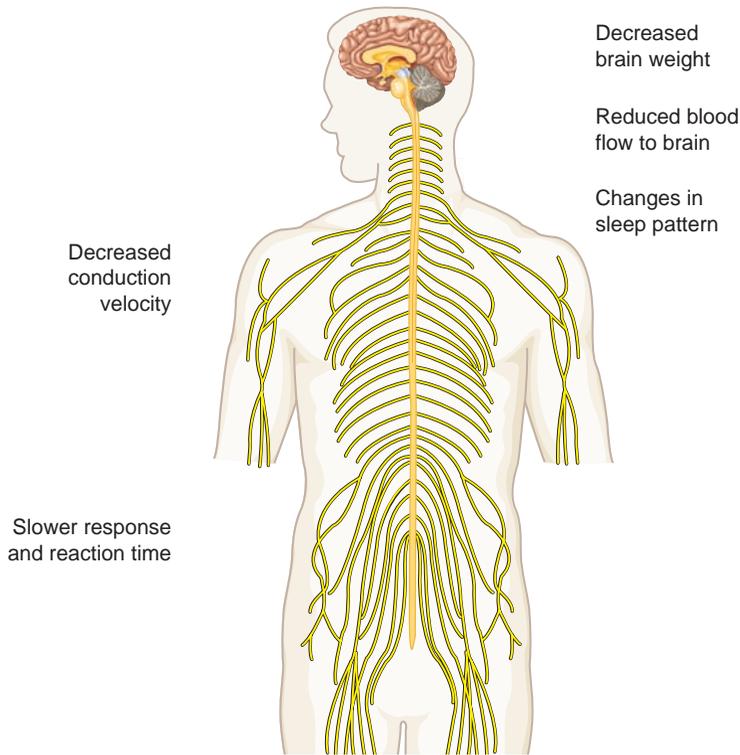


FIGURE 5-8 • Neurologic changes that occur with aging.

cataract development. Yellowing of the lens (possibly related to a chemical reaction involving sunlight with amino acids) and alterations in the retina that affect color perception make the older people less able to differentiate the low tone colors of the blues, greens, and violets.

Depth perception becomes distorted, causing problems in correctly judging the height of curbs and steps. Dark and light adaptation takes longer, as does the processing of visual information. Less efficient reabsorption of intraocular fluid increases the older person's risk for developing glaucoma. The ciliary muscle gradually atrophies and is replaced with connective tissue.

The appearance of the eye may be altered; reduced lacrimal secretions can cause the eyes to look dry and dull, and fat deposits can cause a partial or complete glossy white circle to develop around the periphery of the cornea (arcus senilis). Corneal sensitivity is diminished, which can increase the risk of injury to the cornea. The accumulation of lipid deposits in the cornea can cause a scattering of light rays, which blurs vision. In the posterior cavity, bits of debris and condensation become visible and may float across the visual field; these are commonly called floaters. Vitreous decreases and the proportion of liquid increases, causing the vitreous body to pull away from the retina; blurred vision, distorted

images, and floaters may result. Visual acuity progressively declines with age due to decreased pupil size, scatter in the cornea and lens, opacification of the lens and vitreous, and loss of photoreceptor cells in the retina.

Hearing

Presbycusis is progressive hearing loss that occurs as a result of age-related changes to the inner ear, including loss of hair cells, decreased blood supply, reduced flexibility of basilar membrane, degeneration of spiral ganglion cells, and reduced production of endolymph. This degenerative hearing impairment is the most serious problem affecting the inner ear and retrocochlea. High-frequency sounds of 2000 Hz and above are the first to be lost; middle and low frequencies also may be lost as the condition progresses. A variety of factors, including continued exposure to loud noise, may contribute to the occurrence of presbycusis. This problem causes speech to sound distorted as some of the high-pitched sounds (s, sh, f, ph, ch) are filtered from normal speech and consonants are less able to be discerned. This change is so gradual and subtle that affected persons may not realize the extent of their hearing impairment. Hearing can be further jeopardized by an accumulation of cerumen in the middle ear; the higher keratin content of cerumen as one

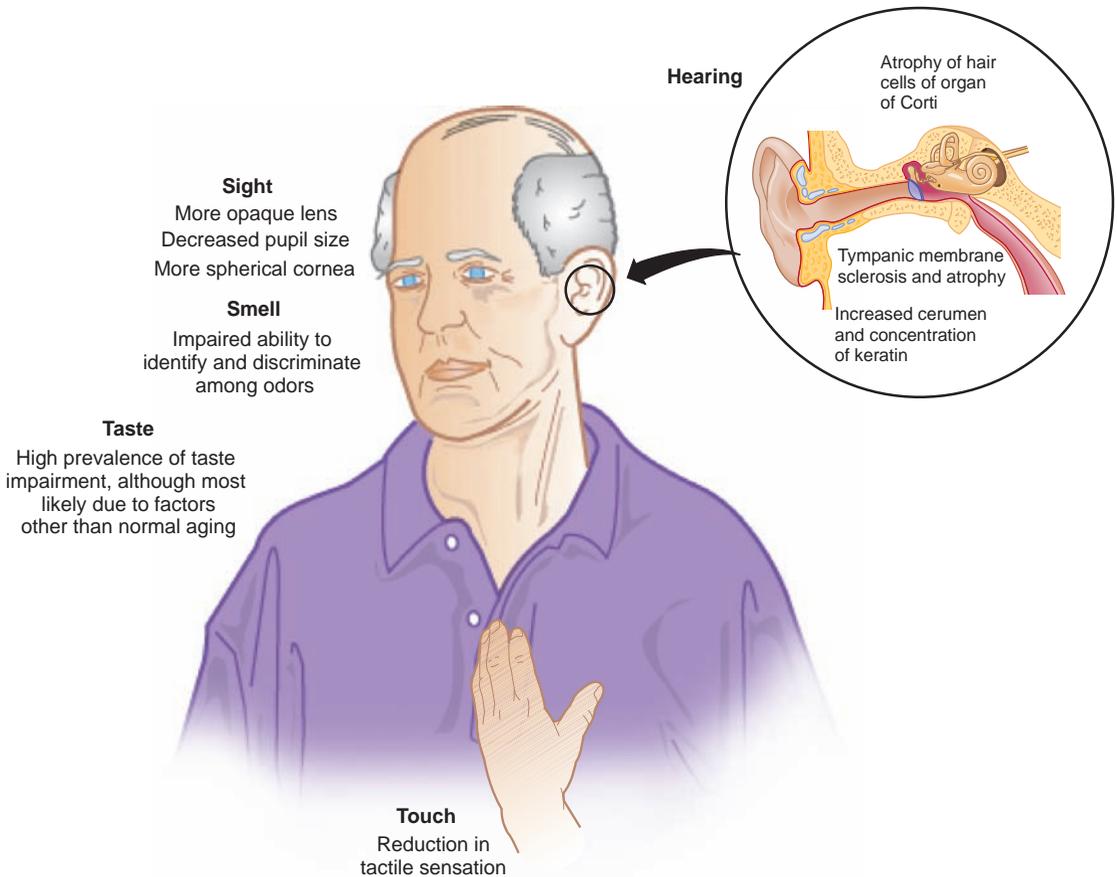


FIGURE 5-9 • Effects of sensory changes that occur with aging.

ages contributes to this problem. The acoustic reflex, which protects the inner ear and filters auditory distractions from sounds made by one's own body and voice, is diminished due to a weakening and stiffening of the middle ear muscles and ligaments. In addition to hearing problems, equilibrium can be altered because of degeneration of the vestibular structures and atrophy of the cochlea, organ of Corti, and stria vascularis.

Taste and Smell

Approximately half of all older persons experience some loss of their ability to smell. The sense of smell reduces with age because of a decrease in the number of sensory cells in the nasal lining and fewer cells in the olfactory bulb of the brain. By age 80, detection of scent is almost half as sensitive as it was at its peak.

As most of taste acuity is dependent on smell, the reduction in the sense of smell alters the sense of taste. Atrophy of the tongue with age can diminish taste sensations, although there is not conclusive evidence that the number or responsiveness of taste

buds decreases. A decrease in taste perception of food is thought to be related to a perceptual loss of taste (Gupta, Epstein, & Sroussi, 2006). Reduced saliva production, poor oral hygiene, medications, and conditions such as sinusitis can also affect taste.

Touch

Tactile sensation is reduced, as observed in the reduced ability of older persons to sense pressure and pain and differentiate temperatures. These sensory changes can cause misperceptions of the environment and, as a result, profound safety risks.

Endocrine System

With age, the thyroid gland undergoes fibrosis, cellular infiltration, and increased nodularity. The resulting decreased thyroid gland activity causes a lower basal metabolic rate, reduced radioactive iodine uptake, and less thyrotropin secretion and release. Protein-bound iodine levels in the blood do not change, although total serum iodide is reduced. The release of thyroidal iodide decreases with age,

and excretion of the 17-ketosteroids declines. The thyroid gland progressively atrophies, and the loss of adrenal function can further decrease thyroid activity. Secretion of thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) and the serum concentration of thyroxine (T₄) do not change, although there is a significant reduction in triiodothyronine (T₃), believed to be a result of the reduced conversion of T₄ to T₃. Overall, thyroid function remains adequate.

Much of the secretory activity of the adrenal cortex is regulated by adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), a pituitary hormone. As ACTH secretion decreases with age, secretory activity of the adrenal gland decreases also. Although the secretion of ACTH does not affect aldosterone secretion, it has been shown that less aldosterone is produced and excreted in the urine of older persons. The secretion of glucocorticoids, 17-ketosteroids, progesterone, androgen, and estrogen, also influenced by the adrenal gland, are reduced as well.

The pituitary gland decreases in volume by approximately 20% in older persons. Somatotrophic growth hormone remains present in similar amounts, although the blood level may be reduced with age. Decreases are seen in ACTH, TSH, follicle-stimulating hormone, luteinizing hormone, and luteotropic hormone to varying degrees. Gonadal secretion declines with age, including gradual decreases in testosterone, estrogen, and progesterone. With the exception of alterations associated with changes in plasma calcium level or dysfunction of other glands, the parathyroid glands maintain their function throughout life.

There is a delayed and insufficient release of insulin by the beta cells of the pancreas in older people, and there is believed to be a decreased tissue sensitivity to circulating insulin. The older person's ability to metabolize glucose is reduced, and sudden concentrations of glucose cause higher and more prolonged hyperglycemia levels; therefore, it is not unusual to detect higher blood glucose levels in nondiabetic older persons.



KEY CONCEPT

Higher blood glucose levels than are normal in the general adult population are not unusual in non-diabetic older people.

Integumentary System

Diet, general health, activity, exposure, and hereditary factors influence the normal course of aging of the skin. This system's changes are often the most bothersome because they are obvious and clearly reflect advancing years. Flattening of the dermal-epidermal junction, reduced thickness and vascular-

ity of the dermis, slowing of epidermal proliferation, and an increased quantity and degeneration of elastin fibers occur. Collagen fibers become coarser and more random, reducing skin elasticity. The dermis becomes more avascular and thinner. As the skin becomes less elastic and more dry and fragile, and as subcutaneous fat is lost, lines, wrinkles, and sagging become evident. Skin becomes irritated and breaks down more easily. There is a reduction in the number of melanocytes, and those present cluster, causing skin pigmentation, commonly referred to as age spots; these are more prevalent in areas of the body exposed to the sun. The reduction in melanocytes cause older adults to tan more slowly and less deeply. Skin immune response declines, causing older people to be more prone to skin infections. Benign and malignant skin neoplasms occur more with age.

Scalp, pubic, and axillary hair thins and grays due to a progressive loss of pigment cells and atrophy and fibrosis of hair bulbs; hair in the nose and ears becomes thicker. By age 50, most white men have some degree of baldness and about half of all people have evidence of gray hair. Growth rate of scalp, pubic, and axillary hair declines; the growth of facial hair may occur in older women. An increased growth of eyebrow, ear, and nostril hair occurs in older men. Fingernails grow more slowly, are fragile and brittle, develop longitudinal striations, and experience a decrease in lunula size. Perspiration is slightly reduced because the number and function of the sweat glands are lessened.

Immune System

The depressed immune response of older adults causes infections to be a significant risk for this age group. After midlife, thymic mass decreases steadily, to the point that serum activity of thymic hormones is almost undetectable in the aged. T-cell activity declines, and more immature T cells are present in the thymus. A significant decline in cell-mediated immunity occurs, and T lymphocytes are less able to proliferate in response to mitogens. Changes in the T cells contribute to the reactivation of varicella-zoster and *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, infections that are witnessed in many older individuals. Serum immunoglobulin concentration is not significantly altered; the concentration of IgM is lower, whereas the concentrations of IgA and IgG are higher. Responses to influenza, parainfluenza, pneumococcus, and tetanus vaccines are less effective (although vaccination is recommended because of the serious potential consequences of infections for older adults). Inflammatory defenses decline and, often, inflammation presents atypically in older individuals (e.g., low-grade fever, minimal pain).

Thermoregulation

Normal body temperatures are lower in later life than in younger years. Mean body temperature ranges from 96.9°F to 98.3°F orally and 98°F to 99°F rectally. Rectal and auditory canal temperatures are the most accurate and reliable indicators of body temperature in older adults.

There is a reduced ability to respond to cold temperatures due to inefficient vasoconstriction, decreased cardiac output, diminished shivering, and reduced muscle mass and subcutaneous tissue. At the other extreme, differences in response to heat are related to impaired sweating mechanisms and decreased cardiac output.

Changes to the Mind

Psychological changes can be influenced by general health status, genetic factors, educational achievement, activity, and physical and social changes. Sensory organ impairment can impede interaction with the environment and other people, thus influencing psychological status. Feeling depressed and socially isolated may obstruct optimum psychological function. Recognizing the variety of factors potentially affecting psychological status and the range of individual responses to those factors, some generalizations can be discussed.

Personality

Drastic changes in basic personality normally do not occur as one ages. The kind and gentle old person was most likely that way when young; likewise, the cantankerous old person probably was not mild and meek in earlier years. Excluding pathologic processes, the personality will be consistent with that of earlier years; possibly, it will be more openly and honestly expressed. The alleged rigidity of older persons is more a result of physical and mental limitations than a personality change. For example, an older person's insistence that her furniture not be rearranged may be interpreted as rigidity, but it may be a sound safety practice for someone coping with poor memory and visual deficits. Changes in personality traits may occur in response to events that alter self-attitude, such as retirement, death of a spouse, loss of independence, income reduction, and disability. No personality type describes all older adults. Morale, attitude, and self-esteem tend to be stable throughout the life span.



KEY CONCEPT

Personality in late life is a reflection of lifelong personality.

Memory

The three types of memory are short-term, lasting from 30 seconds to 30 minutes; long-term, involving that learned long ago; and sensory, which is obtained through the sensory organs and lasts only a few seconds. Retrieval of information from long-term memory can be slowed, particularly if the information is not used or needed on a daily basis. The ability to retain information in the consciousness while manipulating other information—working memory function—is reduced. Older adults can improve some age-related forgetfulness by using memory aids (mnemonic devices) such as associating a name with an image, making notes or lists, and placing objects in consistent location. Memory deficits can result from a variety of factors other than normal aging.

Intelligence

In general, it is wise to interpret the findings related to intelligence and the older population with much caution because results may be biased from the measurement tool or method of evaluation used. Early gerontological research on intelligence and aging was guilty of such biases. Sick old people cannot be compared with healthy persons; people with different educational or cultural backgrounds cannot be compared; and one group of individuals who are skilled and capable of taking an IQ test cannot be compared with those who have sensory deficits and may not have ever taken this type of test. Longitudinal studies that measure changes in a specific generation as it ages and that compensate for sensory, health, and educational deficits are relatively recent, and they serve as the most accurate way of determining intellectual changes with age.

Basic intelligence is maintained; one does not become more or less intelligent with age. The abilities for verbal comprehension and arithmetic operations are unchanged. Crystallized intelligence, which arises from the dominant hemisphere of the brain, is maintained through the adult years; this form of intelligence enables the individual to use past learning and experiences for problem-solving. Fluid intelligence, emanating from the non-dominant hemisphere, controls emotions, retention of non-intellectual information, creative capacities, spatial perceptions, and aesthetic appreciation; this type of intelligence is believed to decline in later life. Some decline in intellectual function occurs in the moments preceding death. High levels of chronic psychological stress have been found to be associated with an increased incidence of mild cognitive impairment (Wilson et al., 2007).

Learning

Although learning ability is not seriously altered with age, other factors can interfere with the older person's

Consider This Case

Mr. G is a 72-year-old retired truck driver admitted to the hospital for treatment of acute glomerulonephritis. His height is 5 feet 11 inches and his weight is 180 pounds. You note from the record that he weighed 220 pounds last year and has experienced a reduction in weight at each of his monthly physician's visits. Although he has a moderate degree of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, he continues to smoke one pack of cigarettes daily. He has varicosities on both lower extremities and hemorrhoids. Mr. G is coherent and responds appropriately. His wife comments that he always has had a sharp mind, although in the past few years he has become considerably quieter and less gregarious. As you observe Mr. G throughout the day, you note that he:

- becomes short of breath with minimal exertion
- develops edema
- has urinary hesitancy and scanty urine output
- adds considerable salt to his food before tasting it
- has difficulty hearing normal conversation
- moves very little when in bed

THINK CRITICALLY

- Which signs and observations are related to normal aging and which can you attribute to pathology?
- What factors contributed to the health conditions possessed by Mr. G?
- Describe the risks that are high for Mr. G and list nursing measures that could minimize them.

ability to learn, including motivation, attention span, delayed transmission of information to the brain, perceptual deficits, and illness. Older persons may display less readiness to learn and depend on previous experience for solutions to problems rather than experiment with new problem-solving techniques. Differences in the intensity and duration of the older person's physiologic arousal may make it more difficult to extinguish previous responses and acquire new material. The early phases of the learning process tend to be more difficult for older persons than younger individuals; however, after a longer early phase, they are then able to keep equal pace. Learning occurs best when the new information is related to previously learned information. Although little difference is apparent between the old and young in verbal or abstract ability, older persons do show some difficulty with perceptual motor tasks. Some evidence indicates a tendency toward simple association rather than analysis. Because it is generally a greater problem to learn new habits when old habits exist and must be unlearned, relearned, or modified, older persons with many years of history may have difficulty in this area.



KEY CONCEPT

Older adults maintain the capacity to learn, although a variety of factors can easily interfere with the learning process.

Attention Span

Older adults demonstrate a decrease in vigilance performance (i.e., the ability to retain attention longer than 45 minutes). They are more easily distracted by irrelevant information and stimuli and are less able to perform tasks that are complicated or require simultaneous performance.



POINT TO PONDER

In the past 10 years, what changes have you experienced in regard to appearance, behaviors, and attitudes? How do you feel about these changes? ●

Nursing Implications of Age-Related Changes

An understanding of common aging changes is essential to ensure competent gerontological nursing practice. Such knowledge can aid in promoting practices that enhance wellness, reducing risks to health and well-being, and identifying pathology in a timely manner. Table 5-1 lists some nursing actions related to age-related changes.



KEY CONCEPT

By promoting positive practices in persons of all ages, nurses can help greater numbers of individuals enter late life with high levels of health and function.

TABLE 5-1 Nursing Actions Related to Age-Related Changes

Age-related Change	Nursing Action
Reduction in intracellular fluid	Prevent dehydration by ensuring fluid intake of at least 1,500 mL daily
Decrease in subcutaneous fat content, decline in natural insulation	Ensure adequate clothing is worn to maintain body warmth; maintain room temperatures between 70°F (21°C) and 75°F (24°C)
Lower oral temperatures	Use thermometers that register low temperatures; assess baseline norm for body temperature when patient is well to be able to identify unique manifestations of fever
Decreased cardiac output and stroke volume; increased peripheral resistance	Allow rest between activities, procedures; recognize the longer time period required for heart rate to return to normal following a stress on the heart, and evaluate presence of tachycardia accordingly; ensure blood pressure level is adequate to meet circulatory demands by assessing physical and mental function at various blood-pressure levels
Decreased lung expansion, activity, and recoil; lack of basilar inflation; increased rigidity of lungs and thoracic cage; less effective gas exchange and cough response	Encourage respiratory activity; recognize that atypical symptoms and signs can accompany respiratory infection; monitor oxygen administration closely, keep oxygen infusion rate under 4 mL, unless otherwise prescribed
Brittleness of teeth; retraction of gingiva	Encourage daily flossing and brushing; ensure patient visits dentist annually; inspect oral cavity for periodontal disease, jagged-edged teeth, other pathologies
Reduced acuity of taste sensations	Observe for overconsumption of sweets and salt; be sure foods are served attractively; season food healthfully
Drier oral cavity	Offer fluids during meals; have patient drink before swallowing tablets and capsules, and examine oral cavity after administration to ensure drugs have been swallowed
Decreased esophageal and gastric motility; decreased gastric acid	Assess for indigestion; encourage 5–6 small meals rather than 3 large ones; advise patient not to lie down for at least 1 hour following meals
Decreased colonic peristalsis; duller neural impulses to lower bowel	Encourage toileting schedule to provide adequate time for bowel elimination; monitor frequency, consistency, and amount of bowel movements
Decreased size of renal mass, number of nephrons, renal blood flow, glomerular filtration rate, tubular function	Ensure age-adjusted drug dosages are prescribed; observe for adverse responses to drugs; recognize that urine testing for glucose can be unreliable, urinary creatinine excretion and creatinine clearance are decreased, and blood urea nitrogen level is higher
Decreased bladder capacity	Assist patient with need for frequent toileting; ensure safety for visits to bathroom during the night
Weaker bladder muscles	Observe for signs of urinary tract infection; assist patient to void in upright position
Enlargement of prostate gland	Ensure patient has prostate examined annually
Drier, more fragile vagina	Advise patient in safe use of lubricants for comfort during intercourse
Increased alkalinity of vaginal canal	Observe for signs of vaginitis
Atrophy of muscle; reduction in muscle strength and mass	Encourage regular exercise; advise patient to avoid straining or overusing muscles
Decreased bone mass and mineral content	Instruct patient in safety measures to prevent falls and fractures; encourage good calcium intake and exercise

(continued)

TABLE 5-1 Nursing Actions Related to Age-Related Changes (Continued)

Age-related Change	Nursing Action
Less prominent stages III and IV of sleep	Avoid interruptions at night; assess quantity and quality of sleep
Decreased visual accommodation; reduced peripheral vision; less effective vision in dark and dimly lit areas	Ensure patient has ophthalmologic exam annually; use night lights; avoid drastic changes in level of lighting; ensure objects used by patient are within visual field
Yellowing of lens	Avoid using shades of greens, blues, and violets together
Decreased corneal sensitivity	Advise patient to protect eyes
Presbycusis	Ensure patient has audiometric exam if problem exists; speak to patient in loud, low-pitched voice
Reduced capacity to sense pain and pressure	Ensure patient changes positions before tissue reddens; inspect body for problems that patient may not sense; recognize unique responses to pain
Reduced immunity	Prevent persons who have infectious diseases from infection early; recommend pneumococcal, tetanus, and annual influenza vaccinations; promote good nutritional status to improve host defenses
Slower metabolic rate	Advise patient to avoid excess calorie consumption
Altered secretion of insulin and metabolism of glucose	Advise patient to avoid high carbohydrate intake; observe for unique manifestations of hyper- or hypoglycemia
Flattening of dermal–epidermal junction; reduced thickness and vascularity of dermis; degeneration of elastin fibers	Use principles of pressure ulcer prevention
Skin drier	Recognize need for less frequent bathing; avoid use of harsh soaps; use skin softeners
Slower response and reaction time	Allow adequate time for patient to respond, process information, perform tasks

Nurses caring for older adults must realize that, despite the numerous changes commonly experienced with age, most older adults function admirably well and live normal, satisfying lives. Although nurses need to acknowledge factors that can alter function with aging, they should also emphasize the capabilities and assets possessed by older adults and assist persons of all ages in achieving a healthy aging process.

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. What efforts do you see to educate persons of all ages in practices that will foster a healthy aging experience?
2. What age-related changes can you identify in yourself and in your parents?
3. Consider recommendations that you would give young adults for promotion of a healthy aging process.

References

- Fukunaga, A., Uematsu, H., & Sugimoto, K. (2005). Influences of aging on taste perception and oral somatic sensation. *Journal of Gerontology, Series A, Biological Sciences*, 60(1), 109–113.
- Gupta, A., Epstein, J. B., & Sroussi, H. (2006). Hyposalivation in elderly patients. *Journal of the Canadian Dental Association*, 72(9), 841–846.
- Harris, T. B., Visser, M., Everhart, J., Tykavsky, F., Fuerst, T., et al. (2000). Waist circumference and sagittal diameter reflect total body fat better than visceral fat in older men and women. *The Health, Aging, and Body Composition Study Research Group, Annals of New York Academy of Science*, 904(1), 462–473.
- Kielstein, J. T., Body-Boger, S. M., Frolich, J. C., Ritz, E., Haller, H., & Fliser, D. (2003). Asymmetric dimethylarginine, blood pressure, and renal perfusion in elderly subjects. *Circulation*, 107(14), 1891–1895.
- Marks, L. S., Roehrborn, C. G., & Andiole, G. L. (2006). Prevention of benign prostatic hyperplasia disease. *Journal of Urology*, 176(4), 1299–1406.
- Munch, M., Knoblauch, V., Blatter, K., Wirz-Justice, A., & Cajochen, C. (2007). Is homeostatic sleep regulation under low sleep pressure modified by age? *Sleep*, 30(6), 781–792.
- Rabbitt, P., Scott, M., Lunn, M., Thacker, N., Lowe, C., et al. (2007). White matter lesions account for all age-related declines in speed but not in intelligence. *Neuropsychology*, 21(3), 363–370.
- Sampson, N., Untergasser, G., Plas, E., & Berger, P. (2007). The aging male reproductive tract. *Journal of Pathology*, 211(2), 206–218.
- Shaker, R., Ren, J., Bardan, E., Easterling, C., Dua, K., Xie, P., & Kern, M. (2003). Pharyngoglottal closure reflex: Charac-

terization in healthy young, elderly and dysphagic patients with redegutitive aspiration. *Gerontology*, 49(1), 12–20.

Wilson, R. S., Schneider, J. A., Boyle, P. A., Arnold, S. E., Tang, Y., & Bennett, D. A. (2007). Chronic distress and incidence of mild cognitive impairment. *Neurology*, 68(24), 2085–2092.

Woo, J., Leung, J., & Kwok, T. (2007). BMI, body composition, and physical functioning in older adults. *Obesity*, 15(7), 1886–1894.

Recommended Readings

Arking, R. (2006). *Biology of aging: Observations and principles* (3rd ed.). New York: Oxford University Press.

Atsumi, T., & Tonosaki, K. (2007). Smelling lavender and rosemary increases free radical scavenging activity and decreases cortisol level in saliva. *Psychiatry Research*, 150(1), 89–96.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, (2007). The state of aging and health in America: 2007. Washington, DC: Department of Health and Human Services. Retrieved September 20, 2008, from <http://www.cdc.gov/aging/saha.htm>.

Delmonico, M. J., Harris, T. B., Lee, J. S., Visser, M., Nevitt, M., et al. (2007). Alternative definitions of sarcopenia, lower extremity performance, and functional impairment with aging in older men and women. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*, 55(5), 769–774.

Feinsilver, S. H. (2003). Sleep in the elderly. What is normal? *Clinical Geriatric Medicine*, 19(1), 177–188.

Fontana, L., & Klein, S. (2007). Aging, adiposity, and calorie restriction. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 297(9), 986–994.

Gary, P. J., Wayne, S. J., & Vellas, B. (2007). The New Mexico aging process study (1979–2003). A longitudinal study of nutrition, health and aging. *Journal of Nutritional Health and Aging*, 11(2), 125–130.

Guallar-Castillon, P., Sagardui-Villamar, J., Banegas, J. R., Graciani, A., Fornes, N. S., et al. (2007). Waist circumference as a predictor of disability among older adults. *Obesity*, 15(1), 233–244.

Howieson, D. B., Camicioli, R., Quinn, J., Silbert, L. C., Care, B., Moore, M. M., Dame, A., Sexton, G., & Kaye, J. A. (2003). Natural history of cognitive decline in the old old. *Neurology*, 60(9), 1489–1494.

Kohn, F. M. (2006). Testosterone and body functions. *Aging Male*, 9(4), 183–188.

Lautenschlager, N. T., & Forstl, H. (2007). Personality change in old age. *Current Opinion in Psychiatry*, 20(1), 62–66.

Leggett, D. (2007). The aging work force—Helping employees navigate midlife. *AAOHN Journal*, 55(4), 169–175.

Mayo Clinic. (2006). *Mayo Clinic on healthy aging*. Rochester, MN: Mayo Clinic.

Mobbs, C. V., & Hof, P. R. (1998). *Functional endocrinology of aging*. Basel: Karger.

Salerno, J. A. (2002). Living longer, living better: The promise of aging research. *Caring*, 21(8), 8–10.

Sowers, M., Zheng, H., Tomey K., Karvonen-Gutierrez, C., Jannausch, M., et al. (2007). Changes in body composition in women over six years at midlife: Ovarian and chronological aging. *Journal of Clinical Endocrinology and Metabolism*, 92(3), 895–901.

Wilmoth, J. M., & Ferraro, K. F. (Eds.). (2007). *Gerontology: Perspectives and issues* (3rd ed.). New York: Springer Publishing Company.

Wrights, C. I., Feczko, E., Dicerson, B., & Williamsn, D. (2007). Neuroanatomical correlates of personality in the elderly. *Neuroimage*, 35(1), 263–272.

Yasuda, M., & Horie, S. (2007). DHEA and testosterone in the elderly. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 356(6), 635–636.

Zelevnik, J. (2003). Normative aging of the respiratory system. *Clinical Geriatric Medicine*, 19(1), 1–18.

UNIT 2



Foundations of Gerontological Nursing

- 6 THE SPECIALTY OF GERONTOLOGICAL NURSING
- 7 HOLISTIC MODEL FOR GERONTOLOGICAL NURSING
- 8 LEGAL ASPECTS OF GERONTOLOGICAL NURSING
- 9 ETHICAL ASPECTS OF GERONTOLOGICAL NURSING
- 10 CONTINUUM OF CARE IN GERONTOLOGICAL NURSING
- 11 SELF-CARE FOR THE GERONTOLOGICAL NURSE

The Specialty of Gerontological Nursing

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Development of Gerontological Nursing Core Elements of Gerontological Nursing

Practice

- Evidence-Based Practice
- Standards
- Principles

Gerontological Nursing Roles

- Healer
- Caregiver
- Educator
- Advocate
- Innovator

Advanced Practice Nursing Roles

The Future of Gerontological Nursing

- Lessons From the Past
- Challenges for the Future

The specialty of gerontological nursing was not always a popular or well-respected area of practice. However, over the past few decades, the specialty has experienced profound growth and has benefited from societal recognition of the importance of the older segment of the population. Nurses, long involved in the care of older adults, have many opportunities to play significant roles in the care of older persons today and to shape the future of gerontological nursing.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 List landmarks that affected the development of gerontological nursing.
- 2 Describe the importance of evidence-based practice in gerontological nursing.
- 3 Identify standards used in gerontological nursing practice.
- 4 List principles guiding gerontological nursing practice.
- 5 Discuss major roles for gerontological nurses.
- 6 Discuss future challenges for gerontological nursing.

Development of Gerontological Nursing

Nurses, long interested in the care of older adults, seem to have assumed more responsibility than other professional disciplines for this segment of the population. In 1904, the *American Journal of Nursing* printed the first nursing article on the care of the aged, presenting many principles that continue to guide gerontological nursing practice today (Bishop, 1904): “You must not treat a young child as you would a grown person, nor must you treat an old person as you would one in the prime of life.” Interestingly, this same journal featured an article entitled “The Old Nurse,” which emphasized the value of the aging nurse’s years of experience (DeWitt, 1904).

After the Federal Old Age Insurance Law (better known as Social Security) was passed in 1935, many older persons had an alternative to alms houses and could independently purchase room and board. Because many of the homes that offered these services for the aged were operated by women who called themselves nurses, such residences later became known as nursing homes.

For many years, care of older adults was an unpopular branch of nursing practice. Geriatric nurses—those nurses who care for ill older adults—were thought to be somewhat inferior in capabilities, neither good enough for acute care settings nor ready to retire. Geriatric facilities may have further discouraged many competent nurses from working in these settings by paying low salaries. Little existed to counter the negativism in educational programs, where experiences with older persons were inadequate in both quantity and quality and attention focused on the sick rather than the well, who were more representative of the older population. Although nurses were among the few professionals involved with older adults, gerontology was missing from most nursing curriculums until recently.

Frustration over the lack of value placed on geriatric nursing led to an appeal to the American Nurses Association (ANA) for assistance in promoting the status of this area of practice. After years of study, in 1961 the ANA recommended that a specialty group for geriatric nurses be formed. In 1962, the ANA’s Conference Group on Geriatric Nursing Practice held its first national meeting. This group became the Division of Geriatric Nursing in 1966, gaining full recognition as a nursing specialty. An important contribution by this group was the development in 1969 of *Standards for Geriatric Nursing Practice*, first published in 1970. Certification of nurses for excellence in geriatric nursing practice followed, with the first 74 nurses achieving this recognition in 1975. The birth of the *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, the first professional jour-

nal to meet the specific needs and interests of gerontological nurses, also occurred in 1975.

Through the 1970s, nurses became increasingly aware of their role in promoting a healthy aging experience for all individuals and ensuring the wellness of older adults. As a result, they expressed interest in changing the name of the specialty from geriatric to gerontological nursing to reflect a broader scope than the care of the ill aged. In 1976, the Geriatric Nursing Division became the Gerontological Nursing Division. Box 6-1 lists landmarks in the development and growth of gerontological nursing.



KEY CONCEPT

Gerontological nursing involves the care of aging people and emphasizes the promotion of the highest possible quality of life and wellness throughout the lifespan. Geriatric nursing focuses on the care of sick older persons.

In the past few decades, the specialty of gerontological nursing has experienced profound growth. Whereas only 32 articles on the topic of the nursing care of older adults were listed in the *Cumulative Index to Nursing Literature* in 1956, and only twice that number appeared a decade later, the number of articles published has grown considerably since. Gerontological nursing texts grew from a few in the 1960s to dozens currently, and the quantity and quality of this literature has been rising since. Growing numbers of nursing schools are including gerontological nursing courses in their undergraduate programs and offering advanced degrees with a major in this area. To date, thousands of nurses have become certified in various aspects of gerontological practice. (For information on certification, see the Resource listing for the American Nurses’ Credentialing Center at the end of this chapter.) Nursing administration in long-term care, geropsychiatric nursing, geriatric rehabilitation, and other areas of sub-specialization have evolved; many nursing specialty associations have developed position papers related to the integration of geriatric nursing into their unique specialty practice (these often are posted on the association websites). The Hartford Institute for Geriatric Nursing has significantly contributed to the advancement of the specialty by identifying and developing best practices, and facilitating the implementation of these practices (for more information, visit <http://www.hartfordign.org>). Gerontological nursing has indeed advanced rapidly, and all indications are that this growth will continue.

Along with the growth of the specialty there has been a heightened awareness of the complexity of gerontological nursing. Older people exhibit great

BOX 6-1 Landmarks in the Growth of Gerontological Nursing

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>1902 First article on care of aged in <i>American Journal of Nursing</i> written by a physician</p> <p>1904 First article on care of aged in <i>American Journal of Nursing</i> written by a nurse</p> <p>1950 First gerontological nursing text published (<i>Geriatric Nursing</i>, K. Newton)</p> <p>First master's thesis on care of aged (Eleanor Pingrey)</p> <p>Geriatrics recognized as an area of specialization in nursing</p> <p>1952 First nursing study on care of aged published in <i>Nursing Research</i></p> <p>1961 American Nurses Association recommends specialty group for geriatric nurses</p> <p>1962 First national meeting of American Nurses Association Conference on Geriatric Nursing Practice</p> <p>1966 Formation of Geriatric Nursing Division of American Nurses Association</p> <p>First gerontological nursing clinical specialist nursing program (Duke University)</p> <p>1968 First nurse makes presentation at International Congress of Gerontology (Laurie Gunter)</p> <p>1969 Development of standards for geriatric nursing practice</p> <p>1970 First publication of <i>ANA Standards of Gerontological Nursing Practice</i></p> <p>1975 First offering of ANA Certification in Gerontological Nursing (74 nurses certified)</p> <p>First specialty publication for gerontological nurses, <i>Journal of Gerontological Nursing</i></p> <p>First nursing conference at International Congress of Gerontology</p> <p>1976 ANA changes name from Geriatric Nursing Division to Gerontological Nursing Division</p> <p>1976 Publication of <i>ANA Standards of Gerontological Nursing</i></p> <p>ANA Certification of Geriatric Nurse Practitioners initiated</p> | <p>1980 <i>Geriatric Nursing</i> journal launched by <i>American Journal of Nursing Company</i></p> <p>1981 First International Conference on Gerontological Nursing</p> <p>ANA Division of Gerontological Nursing develops statement on scope of practice</p> <p>1982 Development of Robert Wood Johnson Teaching Home Nursing Program</p> <p>1983 First university chair in gerontological nursing in the United States (Case Western Reserve)</p> <p>1984 National Gerontological Nursing Association (NGNA) formed</p> <p>ANA Division of Gerontological Nursing Practice becomes Council on Gerontological Nursing</p> <p>1986 National Association for Directors of Nursing Administration in Long-Term Care (NADONA/LTC) formed</p> <p>1989 ANA Certification of Gerontological Clinical Specialists first offered</p> <p>1990 Division of Long-Term Care established within ANA Council of Gerontological Nursing</p> <p>1996 Hartford Gerontological Nursing Initiatives funding launched by John A. Hartford Foundation</p> <p>2001 ANA publishes revised <i>Standards and Scope of Gerontological Nursing Practice</i></p> <p>2002 Nurse Competence in Aging initiative to provide gerontological education and activities within specialty nursing associations</p> <p>2004 American Association of Colleges of Nursing publishes competencies for advanced practice programs in gerontological nursing</p> <p>2007 American Association for Long Term Care Nursing formed</p> |
|---|--|

diversity in terms of health status, cultural background, lifestyle, living arrangement, socioeconomic status, and other variables. Most have chronic conditions that uniquely affect acute illnesses, reactions to treatments, and quality of life. Symptoms of illness can be atypical. Multiple health conditions can coexist and muddle the ability to chart the course of a single disease or identify the underlying cause of symptoms. The conditions that older adults experience can cut across many clinical specialties, thereby challenging gerontological nurses to have a broad knowledge base. The risk for complications is high. Other factors, such

as limited finances or social isolation, affect the state of health and well-being. Also, the elective status of geriatrics in many medical and nursing schools can limit the pool of colleagues who are knowledgeable about the unique aspects of caring for older adults.

Core Elements of Gerontological Nursing Practice

With the formalization and growth of the gerontological nursing specialty, nurses and nursing

organizations have developed informal and formal guidelines for clinical practice. Some of these core elements include evidence-based practice and standards and principles of gerontological nursing.

Evidence-Based Practice

There was a time when nursing care was guided more by trial and error than sound research and knowledge. Fortunately, that has changed, and nursing now follows a systematic approach that uses existing research for clinical decision-making—a process known as evidence-based practice.

Evidence-based practice relies on the synthesis and analysis of available information from research. Among the more popular ways to report this information are the meta-analysis and cost-analysis (Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality, 2008). *Meta-analysis* is a process of analyzing and compiling the results of published research studies on a specific topic. This process combines the results of many small studies to allow more significant conclusions to be made. With *cost-analysis* reporting, data is gathered on outcomes to make comparisons. For instance, the rate of pressure ulcers in one facility may be compared to another facility that has similar characteristics. (This process is called benchmarking.) The data can be used to stimulate improvements.



KEY CONCEPT

Best practices are evidence-based and are built on the expertise of the nurse.

Standards

Professional nursing practice is guided by standards. Standards reflect the level and expectations of care that are desired and serve as a model against which practice can be judged. Thus, standards serve to both guide and evaluate nursing practice.

Standards arise from a variety of sources. State and federal regulations outline minimum standards of practice for various health care workers (e.g., nurse practice acts) and agencies (e.g., nursing homes). The Joint Commission has developed standards for various clinical settings that strive to describe the maximum attainable performance levels. The ANA Standards of the Gerontological Nurse, as listed in Box 6-2, are unique in that they are the only standards developed by and for gerontological nurses. Nurses must regularly evaluate their actual practices against all standards governing their practice areas to ensure their actions reflect the highest quality care possible.

Principles

Scientific data regarding theories, life adjustments, normal aging, and pathophysiology of aging are

combined with selected information from psychology, sociology, biology, and other physical and social sciences (Fig. 6-1) to develop nursing principles. Nursing principles are those proven facts or widely accepted theories that guide nursing actions. Professional nurses are responsible for using these principles as the foundation for nursing practice and ensuring through educational and managerial means that other caregivers use a sound knowledge base.

In addition to the basic principles that direct the delivery of care to persons in general, specific and unique principles guide care for individuals of certain age groups or those who possess particular health problems. Some of the principles guiding gerontological nursing practice are listed in Box 6-3 and are discussed below.

Aging: A Natural Process

Every living organism begins aging from the time of conception. The process of maturing or aging helps the individual achieve the level of cellular, organ, and system function necessary for the accomplishment of life tasks. Constantly and continuously, every cell of every organism ages. Despite the normality and naturalness of this experience, many people approach aging as though it were a pathologic experience. For example, commonly heard comments associate aging with:

- “looking gray and wrinkled”
- “losing one’s mind”
- “becoming sick and frail”
- “obtaining little satisfaction from life”
- “returning to childlike behavior”
- “being useless”

These are hardly valid descriptions of the outcomes of aging for most people. Aging is not a crippling disease; even with limitations that could be imposed by pathologies of late life, opportunities for usefulness, fulfillment, and joy are readily present. A realistic understanding of the aging process can promote a positive attitude toward old age.



KEY CONCEPT

Aging is a natural experience, not a pathologic process.

Factors Influencing the Aging Process

Heredity, nutrition, health status, life experiences, environment, activity, and stress produce unique effects in each individual. Among the variety of factors either known or hypothesized to affect the usual pattern of aging, inherited factors are believed by some researchers to determine the rate of aging. Malnourishment can hasten the ill effects of the

BOX 6-2 ANA Standards of Gerontological Nursing Practice**STANDARDS OF CLINICAL GERONTOLOGICAL NURSING CARE****Standard I. Assessment**

The gerontological nurse collects patient health data.

Standard II. Diagnosis

The gerontological nurse analyzes the assessment data in determining diagnoses.

Standard III. Outcome Identification

The gerontological nurse identifies expected outcomes individualized to the older adult.

Standard IV. Planning

The gerontological nurse develops a plan of care that prescribes interventions to attain expected outcomes.

Standard V. Implementation

The gerontological nurse implements the interventions identified in the plan of care.

Standard VI. Evaluation

The gerontological nurse evaluates the older adult's progress toward attainment of expected outcomes.

STANDARDS OF PROFESSIONAL GERONTOLOGICAL NURSING PERFORMANCE**Standard I. Quality of Care**

The gerontological nurse systematically evaluates the quality of care and effectiveness of nursing practice.

Standard II. Performance Appraisal

The gerontological nurse evaluates his or her own nursing practice in relation to professional practice standards and relevant statutes and regulations.

Standard III. Education

The gerontological nurse acquires and maintains current knowledge in nursing practice.

Standard IV. Collegiality

The gerontological nurse contributes to the professional development of peers, colleagues, and others.

Standard V. Ethics

The gerontological nurse's decisions and actions on behalf of older adults are determined in an ethical manner.

Standard VI. Collaboration

The gerontological nurse collaborates with the older adult, the older adult's caregivers, and all members of the interdisciplinary team to provide comprehensive care.

Standard VII. Research

The gerontological nurse interprets, applies, and evaluates research findings to inform and improve gerontological nursing practice.

Standard VIII. Resource Utilization

The gerontological nurse considers the factors related to safety, effectiveness, and cost in planning and delivering patient care.

From American Nurses Association. (2001). *Scope and standards of gerontological nursing practice* (2nd ed.) Washington, DC: American Nurses Association. (A full copy of the standards including the accompanying rationale and measurement criteria can be obtained from American Nurses Publishing, 600 Maryland Avenue, SW, Suite 100 West, Washington, DC 20024, <http://www.nursingworld.com>.)

aging process, as can exposure to environmental toxins, diseases, and stress. On the other hand, mental, physical, and social activity can reduce the rate and degree of declining function with age. These factors are examined in more detail in Chapter 2.

Every person ages in an individualized manner, although some general characteristics are evident among most people in a given age category. Just as one would not assume that all 30-year-old people are identical but would evaluate, approach, and communicate with each person in an individualized manner, nurses must recognize that no two persons 60, 70, or 80 years of age are alike. Nurses must understand the multitude of factors that influence

the aging process and recognize the unique outcomes for each individual.

The Nursing Process Framework

Scientific data related to normal aging and the unique psychological, biological, social, and spiritual characteristics of the older person must be integrated with a general knowledge of nursing. The nursing process provides a systematic approach to the delivery of nursing care and integrates a wide range of knowledge and skills. The scope of nursing includes more than following a medical order or performing an isolated task; the nursing process involves a holistic approach to individuals and the care they require.

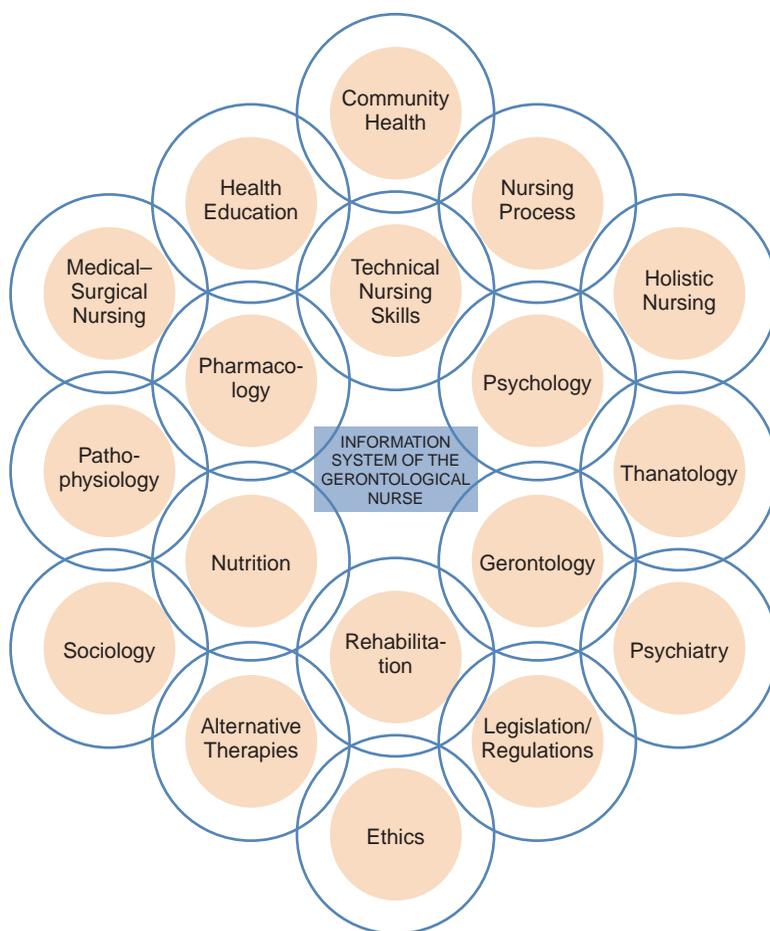


FIGURE 6-1 • Information system of the gerontological nurse.

The unique physiologic, psychological, social, and spiritual challenges of older adults are considered in every phase of the nursing process.

Common Needs

Core needs that promote health and optimum quality of life for all patients are:

- *Physiological balance*: respiration, circulation, nutrition, hydration, elimination, movement, rest, comfort, immunity, and risk reduction
- *Connection*: familial, societal, cultural, environmental, spiritual, and to self
- *Gratification*: purpose, pleasure, dignity

Through self-care practices, people usually perform activities independently and voluntarily to meet these life requirements. When an unusual circumstance interferes with an individual's ability to meet these demands, nursing intervention could be warranted. The requirements for these needs and specific

BOX 6-3 Principles of Gerontological Nursing Practice

- Aging is a natural process common to all living organisms.
- Various factors influence the aging process.
- Unique data and knowledge are used in applying the nursing process to the older population.
- Older adults share similar self-care and human needs with all other human beings.
- Gerontological nursing strives to help older adults achieve wholeness by reaching optimum levels of physical, psychological, social, and spiritual health.

problems that older persons may experience in fulfilling them are discussed in Units III through V.

Optimal Health and Wholeness

One can view aging as the process of realizing one's humanness, wholeness, and unique identity in an ever-changing world. In late life, people achieve a sense of personhood that allows them to demonstrate individuality and move toward self-actualization. By doing so, they are able to experience harmony with their inner and external environment, realize their self-worth, enjoy full and deep social relationships, achieve a sense of purpose, and develop the many facets of their being. Gerontological nurses play an important role in promoting health and helping people achieve wholeness. Within the framework of the self-care theory, nursing actions toward this goal are:

- strengthening the individual's self-care capacity
- eliminating or minimizing self-care limitations
- providing direct services by acting for, doing for, or assisting the individual when demands cannot be met independently

The thread woven throughout the above nursing actions is the promotion of maximum independence. Although it may be more time-consuming and difficult, allowing older persons to do as much for themselves as possible produces many positive outcomes for their biopsychosocial health.

POINT TO PONDER

What self-care practices are a routine part of your life? What is lacking? ●

Gerontological Nursing Roles

In their activities with older adults, nurses function in a variety of roles, most of which fall under the categories of healer, caregiver, educator, advocate, and innovator (Fig. 6-2).

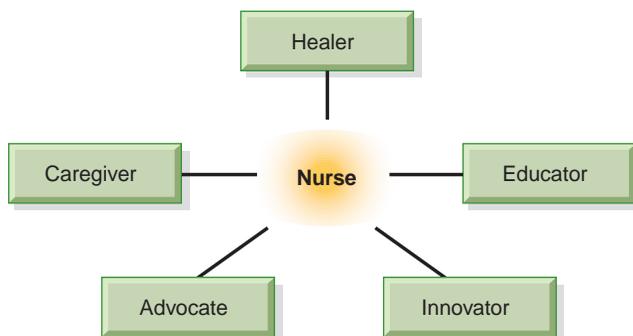


FIGURE 6-2 ● Gerontological nursing roles.

Healer

Early nursing practice was based on the Christian concept of the intertwining of the flesh and spirit. In the mid-1800s, nursing's role as a healing art was recognized; this is apparent through Florence Nightingale's writings that nursing "put the patient in the best condition for nature to act upon him" (Nightingale, 1946). As medical knowledge and technology grew more sophisticated and the nursing profession became grounded more in science than in healing arts, the early emphasis on nurturance, comfort, empathy, and intuition was replaced by detachment, objectivity, and scientific approaches. However, the revival of the holistic approach to health care has enabled nurses to again recognize the interdependency of body, mind, and spirit in health and healing.

Nursing plays a significant role in helping individuals stay well, overcome or cope with disease, restore function, find meaning and purpose in life, and mobilize internal and external resources. In the healer role, the gerontological nurse recognizes that most human beings value health, are responsible and active participants in their health maintenance and illness management, and desire harmony and wholeness with their environment. A holistic approach is essential, recognizing that older individuals must be viewed in the context of their biological, emotional, social, cultural, and spiritual elements. (Information on holistic nursing can be obtained from the American Holistic Nurses' Association, listed under Resources at the end of this chapter.)

POINT TO PONDER

Henri Nouwen (1990) spoke of the "wounded healer" who uses his or her own wounds as a means to assist in the healing of others. What life experiences or "wounds" do you possess that enable you to assist others in their healing journeys? ●

For healing to be a dynamic process, nurses need to identify their own weaknesses, vulnerabilities, and need for continued self-healing. This belief is consistent with the concept of the wounded healer and suggests that by recognizing the wounds of all human beings, including themselves, nurses can provide services within a loving, compassionate framework.

Caregiver

The major role filled by nurses is that of caregiver. In this role, gerontological nurses use gerontological theory in the conscientious application of the nursing process to the care of older adults. Inherent in this role is the active participation of older adults and their significant others and promotion of the highest degree of self-care. This is especially significant in that older adults who are ill and disabled are at risk for having decisions made and actions taken for them—in the interest of “providing care,” “efficiency,” and “best interest”—that rob them of their existing independence.

Although the body of knowledge of geriatrics and gerontological care has grown considerably, many practitioners lack this information. Gerontological nurses are challenged to ensure that the care of older adults is based on sound knowledge that reflects the unique characteristics, needs, and responses of older persons by disseminating gerontological principles and practices. Nurses working in this specialty area are challenged to gain the knowledge and skills that will enable them to meet the unique needs of older adults and to assure evidence-based practices are utilized.

Educator

Gerontological nurses must be prepared to take advantage of formal and informal opportunities to share knowledge and skills related to the care of older adults. This education extends beyond professionals to the general public. Areas in which gerontological nurses can educate others include normal aging, pathophysiology, geriatric pharmacology, health promotion, and available resources. With the diversity and complexities of health insurance plans, an important area for consumer education is teaching older adults how to interpret and compare various plans to enable them to make informed decisions. Essential to the educator role is effective communication involving listening, interacting, clarifying, coaching, validating, and evaluating.

Advocate

The gerontological nurse can function as an advocate in several ways. First and foremost, advocacy for individual clients is essential and can include

aiding older adults in asserting their rights and obtaining required services. In addition, nurses can advocate to facilitate a community’s or other group’s efforts to affect change and achieve benefits for older adults, and to promote gerontological nursing, including new and expanded roles of nurses in this specialty.

Innovator

Gerontological nursing continues to be an evolving specialty; therefore, nurses have opportunities to develop new technologies and different modalities of care delivery. As an innovator, the gerontological nurse assumes an inquisitive style, making conscious decisions and efforts to experiment for an end result of improved gerontological practice. This requires the nurse to be willing to think “out of the box” and take risks associated with traveling down new roads, transforming visions into reality.

These roles can be actualized in a variety of practice settings, discussed in Chapter 10, and offer opportunities for gerontological nurses to demonstrate significant creativity and leadership.

Advanced Practice Nursing Roles

To competently and effectively care for the clinical complexities of older adults, nurses need preparation in the unique principles and best practices of geriatric care. This requires the broad knowledge base, capacity for independent practice and leadership, and complex clinical problem-solving ability that is possible by nurses prepared for advanced practice roles. Advance practice roles include geriatric nurse practitioners, geriatric nurse clinical specialists, and geropsychiatric nurse clinicians. Most of these roles require the completion of a master’s degree at minimum.

There is strong evidence that nurses in advanced practice roles make a significant difference to the care of older adults. Geriatric nurse practitioners have been shown to improve the quality and reduce the cost of care for older persons in hospitals, nursing homes, and ambulatory care settings (Paier & Strumpf, 1999; Bagley, Chan-Tack, Hicks, Rayburn, Nasir, Willems, Kim, Poplin, et al., 2000; Lambing, Adams, Fox, & Divine, 2004). Gerontological clinical nurse specialists in acute hospitals have been found to reduce complications, shorten length of stay, and reduce the need for readmission post-discharge (Paier & Strumpf, 1999). The clear positive impact on the health and well-being of older adults should encourage gerontological nurses to pursue these types of advanced practice roles and to encourage the employment of these advanced practitioners in their clinical settings.

The Future of Gerontological Nursing

Lessons From the Past

As nurses look toward the future of gerontological nursing, much can be learned from history. As discussed earlier, nursing has always carried a significant responsibility for gerontological care. Long before it was popular or profitable for other disciplines to become involved in this specialty, nursing personnel were the major caregivers to older adults. However, the power and leadership of the nursing profession in the gerontological care arena did not equal the responsibility and workload assumed. Not only did health professionals other than nurses influence the course of this specialty, but also persons with no health background whatsoever influenced services to the aging. The tales are many: entrepreneurs who became millionaires by operating substandard nursing homes, bureaucrats who developed policies with no understanding of their clinical impact, and reimbursement programs that favored highly technical acute services over the chronic and rehabilitative ones that were most needed.

Additional problems lay within the nursing community itself. Rather than aggressively lobbying to effect changes that could have made gerontological care settings more attractive to nurses, the nursing community harbored sentiments that nurses who were employed in institutional settings such as long-term care facilities were inferior to the rest. Schools of nursing not only omitted gerontological nursing courses in their programs but also did little to bridge the severe gap between the significant educational and research needs of gerontological care settings and academic resources.

One must wonder why gerontological nurses were not entrepreneurial enough to own and control nursing homes and other service agencies, why they allowed others to mandate practices that diluted quality nursing care, and why they were not assertive enough to demand that their colleagues be constructive problem-solvers rather than critics of the status of gerontological care. Whatever the reasons, one thing is certain: Gerontological nurses must now strive to protect both the care of older adults and the specialty of gerontological nursing.

Challenges for the Future

Since gerontological nurses have started advocating for advancement of the specialty, tremendous strides have been made. Dynamic professionals are selecting gerontological nursing as a specialty that offers a multitude of opportunities to use a wide range of knowledge and skills and one that presents many



FIGURE 6-3 • The specialty of gerontological nursing offers multiple opportunities to use a wide range of knowledge and skills in a variety of settings. (Photo by Rick Brady.)

challenges that can be independently addressed within the realm of nursing practice. Excellent research for and by nurses is growing to provide a strong scientific foundation for practice. Increasing numbers of nursing schools are adding specialization in gerontological nursing. New opportunities for gerontological nurses to develop practice models are emerging in acute hospitals, assisted-living settings, health maintenance organizations, life-care communities, adult day treatment centers, and other settings (Fig. 6-3). The future of gerontological nursing appears dynamic and exciting. Nevertheless, more challenges exist.

KEY CONCEPT

Increasing numbers of nurses are finding gerontological nursing to be a dynamic specialty that affords significant opportunities for independence and creativity.

Advance Research

The growing complexity of and demand for gerontological nursing services is exciting and challenging but is accompanied by the need for a strong knowledge base on which these services can be built. There is no room for the trial and error that flavored nursing actions in the past: older adults' delicately balanced health status, increased consumer expectations, ever-present risk of litigation, and the requisites of professionalism demand scientific foundations for nursing practice. Fine nursing research is being conducted on a variety of issues, and gerontological nurses must encourage and support these efforts through various actions.

One way for nurses to advance research is to network with nurse researchers. Researchers can be important resources. Combining their research skills

with the abilities of those in practice settings can help to solve clinical problems. Local academic institutions, teaching hospitals, and nursing homes may be conducting research that can be relevant to various gerontological settings or in which a service agency can participate.

Nurses can also help to support research efforts in a variety of ways. As funding is sought for research projects, nurses can write letters of support and testimony to help funding agencies understand the full benefit of the research effort. Regular contact with leaders who influence the allocation of funds can provide opportunities to educate these persons on the value of supporting research. No less significant to the support of research efforts is the assurance that protocols be followed, because the efforts of researchers can be facilitated or thwarted by colleagues in clinical settings.

Finally, nurses must keep abreast of new findings. Gerontological nursing knowledge is continuously expanding, disproving past beliefs and offering new insights. Nurses can engage in independent study, formal courses, and continuing education programs to keep current. Equally important to acquiring knowledge is implementing evidence-based practice to improve the care of older adults.



KEY CONCEPT

Older adults' delicately balanced health status and high risk for complications, along with rising consumer expectations and a highly litigious society, reinforce the importance of evidence-based practice.

Promote Integrative Care

In the United States, conventional medicine, with an emphasis on the diagnosis and treatment of diseases, has set the tone for health care practice. Current managed care and reimbursement priorities reinforce the medical model and disease-focused care. Unfortunately, the care of medical conditions is just one aspect of the services older adults need to be healthy and experience a high quality of life. In fact, older persons' wellness practices; adjustments to life changes; sense of purpose, hopefulness, joy, connections to others; and ability to manage stress can be equally if not more significant to their health and quality of life than medical care.

Nurses must ensure that gerontological care is holistic, meaning that the physical, emotional, social, and spiritual facets of individuals are considered (see Chapter 7). This implies that nurses not only practice in a holistic manner themselves but also advocate for other disciplines to do so.

Alternative and complementary therapies play a role in holistic care. These therapies tend to be more comforting, safe, and less invasive than conventional treatments and empower older adults and their caregivers in self-care. Many people who use these therapies report positive experiences with their alternative therapists, who frequently spend more time getting to understand and address the needs of the total person than do staff in the typical medical office or hospital. However, the use of alternative therapies does not equate with holistic care. An alternative therapist with tunnel vision, believing that every malady can be corrected with the one modality he or she practices and excluding effective conventional treatments, is no different from the physician who prescribes an analgesic but does not consider imagery, massage, relaxation exercises, and other nonconventional forms of pain relief. Integrating the best of conventional and alternative/complementary therapy supports holistic care.

Part of a holistic approach to care includes care of the caregivers as well. Professional and family caregivers who are in poor health, struggling with psychosocial issues, feeling spiritually empty and disconnected, or managing stress poorly need to heal themselves before they can be effective caregivers. Nurses can assist these caregivers in identifying their needs and finding the help needed for their healing.



POINT TO PONDER

Many nurses are in poor physical condition, smoke, regularly eat junk foods, take little time for themselves, and demonstrate other unhealthy habits. What do you think are some of the reasons for this? What can be done to improve nurses' health habits? ●

Educate Caregivers

Be it the nursing director, a family member who cares for an older relative, a health aide who has more frequent contact with the patient than the professional nurse, or the physician who only occasionally has an older person in the caseload, caregivers at every level require competency in providing services to the older population. Gerontological nurses can influence the education of caregivers by:

- helping nursing schools identify relevant issues for inclusion in the curricula
- participating in the classroom and field experiences of students
- evaluating educational deficits of personnel and planning educational experiences to eliminate deficits
- promoting interdisciplinary team conferences

- attending and participating in continuing education programs
- reading current nursing literature and sharing information with colleagues
- serving as a role model by demonstrating current practices

With increasing numbers of family members providing more complex care in the home setting than ever before, it is essential that the education of this group not be overlooked. It should not be assumed that because the family has had contact with other providers or has been providing care that they are knowledgeable in correct care techniques. The nurse must periodically evaluate and reinforce the family's knowledge and skills.

Develop New Roles

As gerontological subspecialties and settings for care grow, so will the opportunities for nurses to carve new roles for themselves. Nurses can demonstrate creativity and leadership as they break from traditional roles and settings and develop new models of practice, which may include the following:

- geropsychiatric nurse specialist in the assisted-living setting
- independent case manager for community-based chronically ill patients
- columnist for local newspaper on issues pertaining to health and aging
- owner or director of mature women's health care center, geriatric day-care program, respite agency, or caregiver training center
- pre-retirement counselor and educator for private industry
- faith community nurse
- consultant, educator, and case manager for geriatric surgical patients



KEY CONCEPT

Opportunities exist for nurses to develop new practice models in gerontological care.

This list only begins to describe opportunities awaiting gerontological nurses. It will be important for gerontological nurses to identify nontraditional roles, approach them creatively, test innovative practice models, and share their successes and failures with colleagues to aid them in their development of new roles. Nurses must recognize that their biopsychosocial sciences knowledge, clinical competencies, and human relations skills give them a strong competitive edge over other disciplines in affecting a wide range of services.



POINT TO PONDER

Based on changes in the health care system and society at large, what unique services could gerontological nurses offer in the future within your community? ●

Balance Quality Care and Health Care Costs

The increasing number of older adults is placing increasing demands for diverse health care services than ever before. At the same time, third-party insurers are trying to control the constantly escalating cost of services. Earlier hospital discharges, limited home health visits, increased complexity of nursing home residents, and greater out-of-pocket payment for services by patients demonstrate some of the effects of changes in reimbursement policy. There is concern that, as a result of these changes, patients are discharged from hospitals prematurely and suffer greater adverse consequences, nursing homes are confronting residents with complex problems for whom they are not adequately prepared or staffed, families are being strained by considerable caregiving burdens, and patients are being deprived of needed but unaffordable services.

Such changes are disconcerting and may cause nurses to feel overwhelmed, frustrated, or dissatisfied. Unfortunately, more cost cutting is likely to occur. Rather than experience burnout or consider a change of occupation, nurses should become involved in cost-containment efforts so that a balance between quality services and budgetary concerns can be achieved. Efforts toward this goal can include the following:

- *Test creative staffing patterns.* Perhaps six nurses can be more productive than three nurses and three unlicensed caregivers. On the other hand, perhaps some of the high nonproductive time costs associated with unlicensed personnel is related to poor hiring and supervision practices; improved management techniques may increase the cost effectiveness of these workers.
- *Use lay caregivers.* Neighbors assisting each other, a family member rooming-in during hospitalizations, and other methods to increase the resources available for service provision can be explored.
- *Abolish unnecessary practices.* Why must nurses spend time administering medications to patients who have successfully administered them before admission and who will continue to administer them after discharge, take vital signs every 4 hours on patients who have shown no abnormalities, bathe all patients on the same schedule regardless of skin condition or state of cleanliness, or rewrite assessments and care plans at specified intervals regardless of a patient's changes

or stability? Often regulations and policies are developed under the assumption that, without them, vital signs would never be taken, baths would not be given, and other facets of care would not be completed. Perhaps the time has come for nurses to aggressively convince others that they have the professional judgment to determine the need for and frequency of assessment, care planning, and care delivery.

- *Ensure safe care.* The implementation of cost-containment efforts should be accompanied by concurrent studies of the efforts' impact on rates of complications, readmissions, incidents, consumer satisfaction, and staff turnover, absenteeism, and morale. Specific numbers and documented cases carry more weight than broad criticisms or complaints that care is suffering.
- *Advocate for older adults.* The priorities of society and professions change. History shows us that at different times the spotlight has focused on various underserved groups, such as children, pregnant women, the mentally ill, the disabled, substance abusers, and, most recently, older adults. As interests and priorities shift to new groups, gerontological nurses must make certain that the needs of older individuals are not forgotten or shortchanged.

As gerontological nursing continues to shed its image of a less-than-challenging specialty for less-than-competent nurses and fully emerges as the dynamic, multifaceted, and opportunity-filled area of nursing that it is, it will be recognized as a specialty for the finest talent the profession has to offer. Gerontological nursing has just begun to show its true potential.

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. What were some of the reasons for the poor status of gerontological nursing in the past?
2. Why is the nursing role of healer particularly meaningful to gerontological practice?
3. What theme regarding the involvement of the older adult is apparent in the ANA Standards of the Gerontological Nurse?
4. Describe several issues that could warrant gerontological nursing research activities.
5. Describe how the increased use of holistic practices could have a positive effect on cost and consumer satisfaction.
6. Outline functions that could be performed by a gerontological nurse in the roles of:
 - (a) assisted-living community preadmission health screener;
 - (b) health counselor in a retirement community;
 - (c) caregiver trainer;
 - (d) industrial preretirement health educator; and
 - (e) faith community nurse.

Resources

American Holistic Nurses Association

<http://www.ahna.org>

American Nurses' Credentialing Center

<http://www.nursingworld.org/ancc>

Hartford Institute for Geriatric Nursing

<http://www.hardfordign.org>

References

- Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality. (2008). Evidence-based practice centers. Rockville, MD: Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality. Retrieved September 20, 2008, from <http://www.ahrq.gov>.
- Bagley, B., Chan-Tack, K. M., Hicks, P., Rayburn, K., Nasir, L., Willems, J. P., Kim, C., Poplin, C. M., et al. (2000). Health outcomes among patients treated by nurse practitioners or physicians. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, *283*(1), 2521–2524.
- Bishop, L. F. (1904). Relation of old age to disease with illustrative cases. *American Journal of Nursing*, *4*(4), 674.
- DeWitt, K. (1904). The old nurse. *American Journal of Nursing*, *4*(4), 177.
- Lambing, A. Y., Adams, D. L., Fox, D. H., & Divine, G. (2004). Nurse practitioners' and physicians' care activities and clinical outcomes with an inpatient geriatric population. *Journal of the American Academy of Nursing Practitioners*, *16*(8), 343–352.
- Nightingale, F. (1946). *Notes on nursing: What it is, and what it is not*. Philadelphia: Lippincott.
- Nouwen, H. J. M. (1990). *The wounded healer*. New York: Doubleday.
- Paier, G. S., & Strumpf, N. E. (1999). Meeting the needs of older adults for primary health care. In M. Mezey & D.O. McGivern (Eds.), *Nurses, nurse practitioners: Evolution to practice* (3rd ed., pp. 300–315). New York: Springer Publishing Company.

Recommended Readings

- Algate, D. L., Souder, E., Roberts, B., & Beattie, E. (2006). Enriching geropsychiatric nursing in advanced practice nursing programs. *Journal of Professional Nursing*, *22*(2), 129–136.
- Blackburn, J. A., & Dulmus, C. N. (2007). *Handbook of gerontology: Evidence-based approaches to theory, practice, and policy*. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley and Sons.
- Byrd, L. (2007). Encouraging nurses to participate in geriatric research. *Geriatric Nursing*, *28*(2), 101–102.
- Dossey, B. M., Keegan, L., & Guzzetta, C. E. (2005). *Holistic nursing: A handbook for practice*. Sudbury, MA: Jones & Bartlett Publishers.
- Eliopoulos, C. (Ed.). (2005). *Invitation to holistic health*. Sudbury, MA: Jones & Bartlett.
- Eliopoulos, C. (1999). *Integrating conventional and alternative therapies. Holistic care of chronic conditions*. St Louis: Mosby.
- Gilje, F., Lacey, L., & Moore, C. (2007). Gerontology and geriatric issues and trends in U.S. nursing programs: A national survey. *Journal of Professional Nursing*, *23*(1), 21–29.

- Gulick, G., & Jett, K. (2006). Applying evidence-based findings to practice: Caring for older adults in subacute care. *Geriatric Nursing, 27*(5), 280–281, 283.
- Kohlenburg, E., Kennedy-Malone, L., Crane, P., & Letvak, S. (2007). Infusing gerontological nursing content into advanced practice nursing education. *Nursing Outlook, 55*(1), 38–43.
- Limerick, M. (2006). “So why should I become one?” Lessons on becoming a holistic nurse. *Journal of Holistic Nursing, 24*(1), 63–69.
- Luggen, A. S., & Travis, S. S. (1998). *NGNA core curriculum for gerontological advanced practice nurses*. Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage Publishing Co.

Holistic Model for Gerontological Nursing

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Holistic Gerontological Care Holistic Assessment of Needs

- Health Promotion-Related Needs
- Health Challenges-Related Needs
- Requisites to Meet Needs

Gerontological Nursing Interventions Examples of Application

- Assessing Needs: The Case of Mr. R
- Applying the Holistic Model: The Case of Mrs. D

Surviving to old age is a tremendous accomplishment. Basic life requirements such as obtaining adequate nutrition, keeping oneself relatively safe, and maintaining the body's normal functions have been met with some success to survive to this time. Older adults have confronted and overcome to varying degrees the hurdles of coping with crises, adjusting to change, and learning new skills. Throughout their lives, older individuals have faced many important decisions, such as should they:

- leave the “old country” to make a fresh start in America?
- stay in the family business or seek a job in the local factory?
- risk their lives to fight for a cause in which they believe?
- encourage their children to fight in an unpopular war?
- invest their entire savings in launching a business of their own?
- allow their children to continue their education when the children's employment would ease a serious financial hardship?

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 Explain holistic gerontological nursing care.
- 2 Describe needs of older adults pertaining to the promotion of health and the management of health challenges.
- 3 List the requisites that influence older persons' abilities to meet self-care needs.
- 4 Describe the general types of nursing interventions that are employed when older adults present self-care deficits.

Too often, nurses seek external resources to meet the needs of older persons rather than recognizing that older adults have considerable inner resources for self-care and empowering them to use these strengths. Older adults then become passive recipients of care rather than active participants. This seems unreasonable because most older adults have had a lifetime of taking care of themselves and others, making their own decisions, and meeting life's most trying challenges. They may become angry or depressed at being forced to forfeit their decision-making functions to others. They may unnecessarily develop feelings of dependency, uselessness, and powerlessness. Gerontological nurses must recognize and mobilize the strengths and capabilities of older people so that they can be responsible and active participants in, rather than objects of care. Tapping the resources of older individuals in their own care promotes normalcy, independence, and individuality; it aids in reducing risks of secondary problems related to the reactions of older adults to an unnecessarily imposed dependent role; and it honors their wisdom, experience, and capabilities.



KEY CONCEPT

Older individuals have had to be strong and resourceful to navigate the stormy waters of life. Nurses should not overlook these strengths when planning care for older adults.

Holistic Gerontological Care

Holism refers to the integration of the biologic, psychological, social, and spiritual dimensions of an individual to form a sum that is greater than its parts; within this framework, healing the whole person is the goal of nursing (Dossey, Keegan, & Guzzetta, 2005). Holistic gerontological care incorporates knowledge and skills from a variety of disciplines to address the physical, mental, social, and spiritual health of individuals. Holistic gerontological care is concerned with:

- facilitating growth toward wholeness
- promoting recovery and learning from an illness
- maximizing quality of life when one possesses an incurable illness or disability
- providing peace, comfort, and dignity as death is approached

In holistic care, the goal is not to treat diseases but to serve the needs of the total person through the healing of the body, mind, and spirit.



KEY CONCEPT

Gerontological nurses help older individuals achieve a sense of wholeness by guiding them in understanding and finding meaning and purpose in life; facilitating harmony of the mind, body, and spirit; mobilizing their internal and external resources; and promoting self-care behaviors.

Health promotion and healing through a balance of the body, mind, and spirit of individuals are at the core of holistic care and have particular relevance for gerontological care. The impact of age-related changes and the effects of highly prevalent chronic conditions easily can threaten the well-being of the body, mind, and spirit; therefore, nursing interventions to reduce such threats are essential. Because chronic diseases and the effects of advanced age cannot be eliminated, healing rather than curative efforts will be most beneficial in gerontological nursing practice. Equally significant is assisting older adults toward self-discovery in their final phase of life so that they find meaning, connectedness with others, and an understanding of their place in the universe.

Holistic Assessment of Needs

Holistic assessment identifies patient needs related to health promotion and health challenges and also identifies the older adult's requisites to meet these needs.

Health Promotion-Related Needs

The concept of health seems simple, yet it is quite complex. Viewing health as the *absence of disease* offers little more clarity than defining cold as the absence of hot, and creates an image that begs for a more positive, broad understanding. In regard to older adults, most of whom are living with chronic conditions, this definition would relegate a majority of them to the ranks of the unhealthy.

When asked to describe the factors that contribute to health, most people would be likely to list the basic life-sustaining needs such as breathing, eating, eliminating, resting, being active, and protecting oneself from risks. These are essential to maintaining the physiological balance that sustains life. However, the reality that we can have all of our physiological needs satisfied, yet still not feel well, demonstrates that physiological balance is but one component of overall health. Connection with ourselves, others, a higher being, and nature are important factors influencing health. The fulfillment of physiological needs and a sense of being connected promote well-being of the body, mind, and spirit

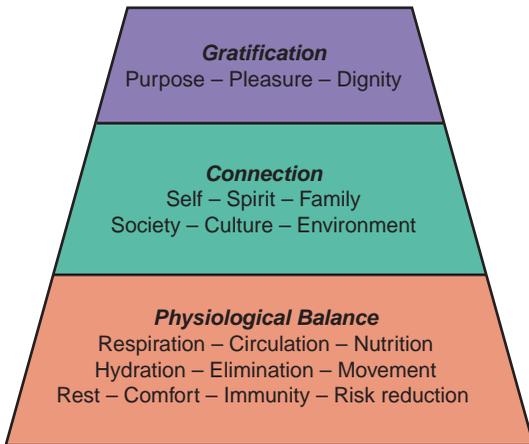


FIGURE 7-1 • Health promotion-related needs.

that enables us to experience gratification through achieving purpose, pleasure, and dignity. This holistic model demonstrates that optimal health includes those activities that not only enable us to exist, but also help us to realize effective, enriched lives (Fig. 7-1).

POINT TO PONDER

What does it mean to you to be healthy and whole? ●

An improved definition of health includes consideration of the root meaning of the word health: whole. Using this foundation, health is understood as *a state of wholeness . . . an integration of body, mind, and spirit to achieve the highest possible quality of life each day* (Fig. 7-2). For some individuals, this can mean exercising at the gym, engaging in challenging work, and having a personal relationship with God; for others, it can represent propelling oneself in a wheelchair to a porch, enjoying the beauty of nature, and connecting with a universal energy.

Views of health differ not only from individual to individual, but also within the same individual from one time to another. Health priorities and expectations in a 70-year-old person may not resemble what they were when that individual was half that age. Cultural and religious influences can also affect one's view of health.

Optimal health of older adults rests on the degree to which the needs for physiological balance, connection, and gratification are satisfied. There is the risk that in busy clinical settings, the less tangible needs of gratification and connection can be overlooked; as advocates for older adults, gerontological nurses must assure that comprehensive care is provided by not omitting these important needs.



FIGURE 7-2 • Rather than being limited to meaning the absence of disease, health implies a wholeness and harmony of body, mind, and spirit.

Health Challenges-Related Needs

An unfortunate reality is that most older adults live with at least one chronic condition that challenges their health status. In fact, most involvement that nurses have with older adults typically involves assisting them with the demands imposed by health challenges. Older adults with acute or chronic conditions have the same basic health promotion needs as healthy individuals (i.e., physiological balance, connection, gratification); however, their conditions may create new needs such as:

- **Education:** As individuals face a new diagnosis, they need to understand the condition and its care.
- **Counseling:** A health condition can trigger a variety of feelings and impose lifestyle adjustments.
- **Coaching:** Just as athletes and musicians require the skills of a professional who can bring out the best in them, patients, too, can benefit from efforts to improve compliance and motivation.
- **Monitoring:** The complexities of health care and the changing status of aging people warrant oversight from the nurse who can track progress and needs.
- **Coordination:** Older adults with a health condition often visit several health care providers; assistance with scheduling appointments, following

multiple instructions, keeping all members of the team informed, and preventing conflicting treatments often is needed.

- **Therapies:** Often, health conditions are accompanied by the need for medications, exercises, special diets, and procedures. These therapies can include conventional ones that are commonly used in mainstream practice or complementary ones, such as biofeedback, herbal remedies, acupuncture, and yoga. Patients may need partial or total assistance as they implement these treatments.

Requisites to Meet Needs

As straightforward and clear as the health promotion and health challenges-related needs may seem, these needs are met with varying degrees of success because they are dependent on several factors unique to the patient. Nurses assess older adults' requisites to meet needs to determine areas for intervention.

Physical, Mental, and Socioeconomic Abilities

An individual relies on several factors to meet even the most basic life demands. For example, to normally fulfill nutritional needs, a person must have the ability to experience hunger sensations; proper cognition to adequately select, prepare, and consume food; good dental status to chew food; a functional digestive tract to utilize ingested food; energy to shop and prepare food; and the funds to purchase food. Deficits in any of these areas can create risks to nutritional status. A variety of nursing interventions can be used to reduce or eliminate physical, mental, and socioeconomic deficits.

Knowledge, Experience, and Skills

Limitations exist when the knowledge, experience, or skills required for a given self-care action are inadequate or nonexistent. An individual with a wealth of social skills is capable of a normal, active life that includes friendships and other social interaction. People who have knowledge of the hazards of cigarette smoking will be more capable of protecting themselves from health risks associated with this habit. On the other hand, an older man who is widowed may not be able to cook and provide an adequate diet for himself, having always depended on his wife for meal preparation. The person who has diabetes and cannot self-inject the necessary insulin may not be able to meet the therapeutic demand for insulin administration. Specific nursing considerations for enhancing self-care capacities are offered in other chapters.

Desire and Decision to Take Action

The value a person sees in performing the action, as well as the person's knowledge, attitudes, beliefs,

and degree of motivation, influences the desire and decision for action. Limitations result if a person lacks desire or decides against action. If an individual is not interested in preparing and eating meals because of social isolation and loneliness, a dietary deficiency may develop. A hypertensive individual's lack of desire and decision to forfeit potato chips and pork products in the diet because of an attitude that it is not worth the trade-off may create a real health threat. The person who is not informed of the importance of physical activity may not realize the need to arise from bed during an illness and consequently may develop complications. The dying individual who views death as a natural process may decide against medical intervention to sustain life and may not comply with prescribed therapies.

Values, attitudes, and beliefs are deeply established and not easily altered. Although the nurse should respect the right of individuals to make decisions affecting their lives, if limitations restrict their ability to meet self-care demands, the nurse can help by explaining the benefit of a particular action, providing information, and motivating. In some circumstances, as with an emotionally ill or mentally incompetent person, desires and decisions may have to be superseded by professional judgments.



KEY CONCEPT

There can be vastly different reasons for older adults to have a deficit in meeting a similar need. This challenges the gerontological nurse to explore the unique and sometimes subtle dynamics of each older person's life.

Gerontological Nursing Interventions

The assessment process considers patients' effectiveness in meeting needs related to health promotion and health challenges. If the individual is successful in fulfilling needs, there is no need for nursing intervention except to reinforce the capability for self-care. When the older adult does not have the requisites to meet needs independently, however, nursing interventions are needed. Nursing interventions are directed toward empowering the older individual by strengthening self-care capacities, eliminating or minimizing self-care limitations, and providing direct services by acting for, doing for, or assisting the individual when requirements cannot be independently fulfilled (Fig. 7-3).

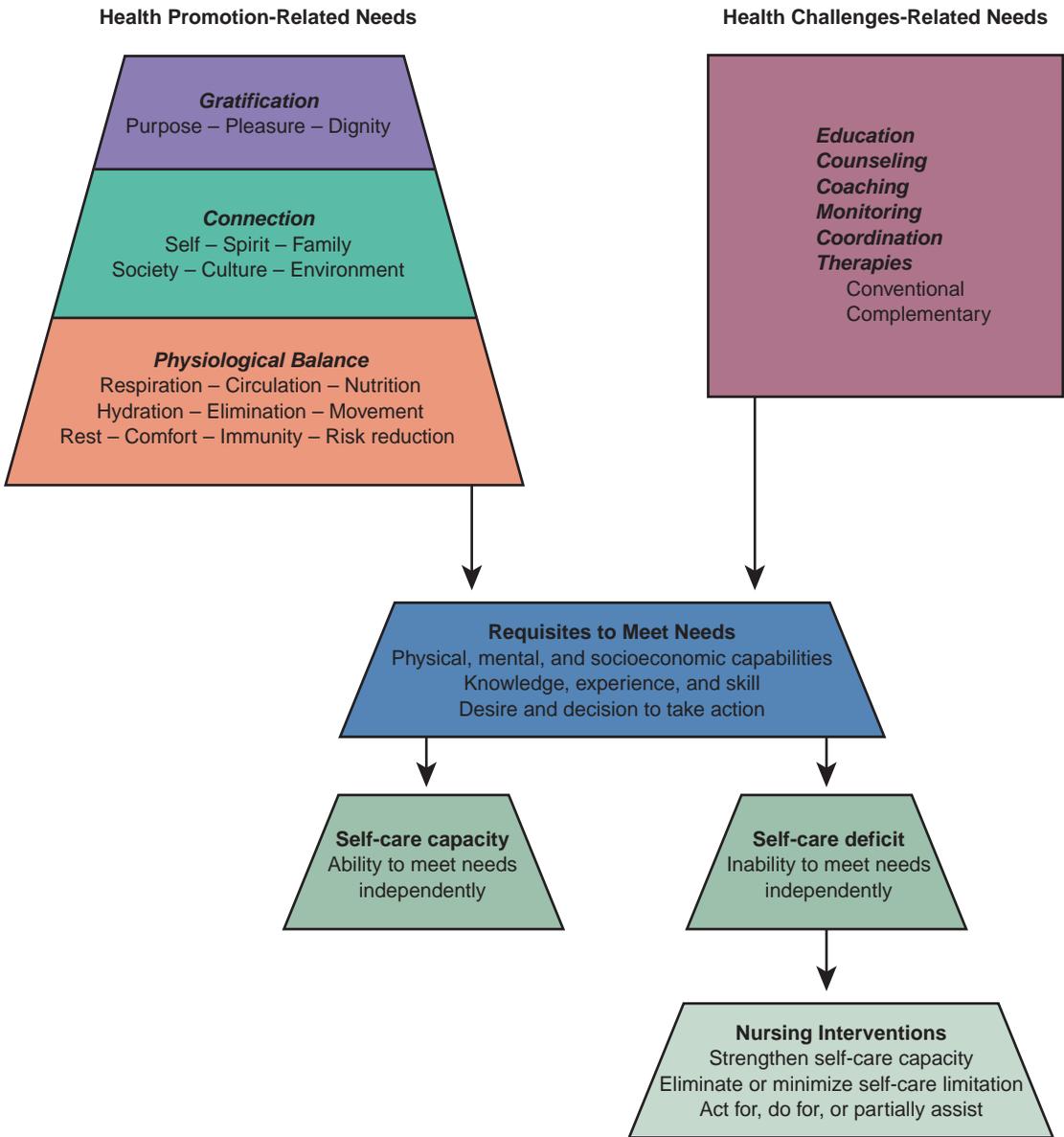


FIGURE 7-3 • If the nurse identifies self-care deficits in the older adult for meeting health promotion- and health challenges-related needs, nursing interventions are needed.

Examples of Application

Nursing care for older persons is often associated with intervening when health conditions exist. When individuals face health challenges, new needs frequently arise, such as administering medications, observing for specific symptoms, and performing special treatments; these needs exceed and may affect the needs related to health promotion. In geriatric nursing, consideration must be given to assessing the impact of the health challenge on the individual’s self-care capacity and identifying appropriate nursing interventions to ensure that the needs

related to both health promotion and the management of health challenges are adequately met. During the assessment, the nurse identifies the specific health challenges-related needs that are present and the requisites (e.g., physical capability, knowledge, desire) that need to be addressed to strengthen self-care capacity.

It is significant that interventions include those actions that can empower the older individual to achieve maximum self-care in regard to health challenges-related needs. Figure 7-3 demonstrates how the holistic self-care model becomes operational in geriatric

nursing practice. The cases that follow demonstrate the application of this model.



KEY CONCEPT

More effort may be needed to instruct and coach an older person to perform a self-care task independently, and more time may be taken for the person to perform the task independently than would be necessary if a caregiver did the task; however, the benefits of independence to the older person's body, mind, and spirit are worth the investment.

Assessing Needs: The Case of Mr. R

Mr. R, who has lived with diabetes for a long time, administers insulin daily and follows a diabetic diet. Because of a recent urologic problem, he may now need to take antibiotics daily and perform intermittent self-catheterization. During the assessment, the nurse identifies the presence of these illness-imposed needs.

After the primary assessment has revealed the presence of needs related to health challenges, the nurse will evaluate how well these needs are met.

The nurse finds that Mr. R performs self-catheterization according to procedure and is administering his antibiotics as prescribed, but is not adhering to his diabetic diet and alters his insulin dosage based on "how he feels that day."

The next level of assessment must seek the reasons for deficits in meeting the health challenges-related needs.

Mr. R has knowledge of the diabetic diet and wants to comply; however, he had depended on his wife to prepare meals, and now that she is deceased, he has difficulty cooking nutritious meals independently. He denies ever being informed of the need for regular doses of his insulin and states that he has relied on the advice of his brother-in-law, also a diabetic, who told him to "take an extra shot of insulin when he eats a lot of sweets."

Once the shortcomings in skills and knowledge behind the patient's deficits in meeting these health

challenges-related needs are identified, specific nursing care plan actions can be developed.

Applying the Holistic Model: The Case of Mrs. D

The following case demonstrates how this model can work.

Mrs. D, 78 years old, was admitted to a hospital service for acute conditions with the identified problems of a fractured neck of the femur, malnutrition, and a need for a different living arrangement. Initial observation revealed a small-framed, frail-looking lady, with obvious signs of malnutrition and dehydration. She was well oriented to person, place, and time and was able to converse and answer questions coherently. Although her memory for recent events was poor, she seldom forgot to inform anyone who was interested that she neither liked nor wanted to be in the hospital. Her previous and only other hospitalization was 55 years earlier.

Mrs. D had been living with her husband and an unmarried sister for more than 50 years when her husband died. For the 5 years following his death, she depended heavily on her sister for emotional support and guidance. Then her sister died, which promoted feelings of anxiety, insecurity, loneliness, and depression. For the year since her sister's death she has lived alone, caring for her six-room home in the country with no assistance other than that from a neighbor who did the marketing for Mrs. D and occasionally provided her with transportation.

On the day of her admission to the hospital, Mrs. D had fallen on her kitchen floor, weak from her malnourished state. Discovering her hours later, her neighbor called an ambulance, which transported Mrs. D to the hospital. Once the diagnosis of fractured femur was established, plans were made to perform a nailing procedure, to correct her malnourished state, and to find a new living arrangement because her home demanded more energy and attention than she was capable of providing.

Nursing Care Plan 7-1 illustrates how Mrs. D's holistic needs directed nursing diagnoses and related nursing actions.

NURSING CARE PLAN 7-1

Holistic Care for Mrs. D

NEEDS: RESPIRATION AND CIRCULATION

Nursing Diagnoses: (1) Impaired Physical Mobility related to fracture; (2) Impaired Gas Exchange related to immobility

Goals: The patient demonstrates signs of adequate respiration; is free from respiratory distress and infection; and is free from signs of impaired circulation.

Nursing Actions

Type of Intervention

Maintain normal respirations.

- Prevent blockage of airway or any other interference with normal breathing. Partially assisting
- Observe for and detect respiratory problems early. Partially assisting

Promote active and passive exercises.

- Teach and encourage turning, coughing, and deep-breathing exercises. Strengthening self-care capacity
- Encourage active exercises, such as using incentive spirometers and deep breathing. Strengthening self-care capacity
- Perform passive range-of-motion exercises. Doing for

Avoid external interferences with respiration.

- Provide good room ventilation. Doing for
- Avoid restrictive clothing, linens, or equipment. Doing for
- Position in manner conducive to best respiration. Partially assisting
- Prevent anxiety-producing situations, such as delays in answering bell call. Doing for

NEEDS: NUTRITION AND HYDRATION

Nursing Diagnosis: Imbalanced Nutrition: Less than Body Requirements related to depression and loneliness

Goals: The patient consumes at least 1500 mL of fluids and 1800 calories of nutrients daily; increases weight to 125 lb.

Nursing Actions

Type of Intervention

Stimulate appetite.

- Plan diet according to person's preferences, consistent with therapeutic requirements. Partially assisting
- Provide a quiet, pleasant environment that allows for socialization with others. Doing for
- Stimulate appetite through appearance and seasoning of foods. Minimizing self-care limitation

Plan meals.

- Read menu selection to patient. Partially assisting
- Guide choice of high-protein, carbohydrate, and vitamin- and mineral-rich foods. Minimizing self-care limitation
- Access food preferences and include them in menu selections. Acting for

Assist with feeding.

- Conserve energy and promote adequate intake by preparing food tray, encouraging rest periods, and feeding when necessary. Strengthening self-care capacity, doing for, and partially assisting

(continued)

NURSING CARE PLAN 7-1 (CONTINUED)

Nursing Actions

Type of Intervention

Prevent complications.

- | | |
|---|--|
| ● Do not leave solutions, medications, or harmful agents in location where they may be mistakenly ingested (especially when assessment indicates visual limitations). | Acting for |
| ● Check temperature of foods and drinks to prevent burns (especially when assessment indicates decreased cutaneous sensation). | Acting for |
| ● Assist in the selection of foods conducive to bone healing and correction of malnutrition. | Partially assisting |
| ● Observe fluid intake and output for early detection of imbalances. | Minimizing self-care limitation |
| ● Assess general health status frequently to detect new problems or improvements resulting from changes in nutritional status (e.g., weight changes, skin turgor, mental status, strength). | Acting for and minimizing self-care limitation |

NEED: ELIMINATION

Nursing Diagnoses: (1) Constipation related to immobility; (2) Risk for Infection related to malnutrition and interferences with normal bathing

Goals: The patient is free from infection; establishes a regular bowel elimination schedule; is free from constipation; is clean and odor free.

Nursing Actions

Type of Intervention

Promote regular elimination of bladder and bowels.

- | | |
|---|--|
| ● Guide the selection of a diet high in roughage and fluids. | Partially assisting |
| ● Observe and record elimination pattern. | Acting for and minimizing self-care limitation |
| ● Assist with exercises to promote peristalsis and urination. | Partially assisting |
| ● Arrange schedule to provide regular time periods for elimination. | Acting for |
| ● Assist with hygienic care of body surfaces. | Partially assisting |
| ● Provide privacy when bedpan is used. | Acting for and minimizing self-care limitation |

Develop good hygienic practices.

- | | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| ● Teach importance and method of cleansing perineal region after elimination. | Strengthening self-care capacity |
|---|----------------------------------|

Prevent social isolation.

- | | |
|--|--|
| ● Prevent, detect, and correct body odors. | Acting for and minimizing self-care limitation |
|--|--|

NEED: MOVEMENT

Nursing Diagnoses: (1) Activity Intolerance related to malnutrition and fracture; (2) Impaired Physical Mobility related to fracture

Goals: The patient maintains/achieves sufficient range of joint motion to engage in activities of daily living (ADL); is free from complications secondary to immobility.

Nursing Actions

Type of Intervention

Adjust hospital routines to individual's pace.

- | | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| ● Space procedures and other activities. | Acting for |
| ● Allow longer periods for self-care activities. | Strengthening self-care capacity |

(continued)

NURSING CARE PLAN 7-1 (CONTINUED)

Nursing Actions

Provide for energy conservation.

- Promote security and relaxation through the avoidance of frequent changes of personnel.
- Prevent complications associated with immobility (e.g., decubiti, constipation, renal calculi, contractures, hypostatic pneumonia, thrombi, edema, and lethargy).
- Encourage frequent change of position.
- Motivate and reward activity.
- Teach simple exercises to prevent complications and improve motor dexterity.
- Plan activities to increase independence progressively.

Type of Intervention

- Acting for
- Minimizing self-care limitation
- Minimizing self-care limitation
- Strengthening self-care capacity
- Strengthening self-care capacity
- Acting for and strengthening self-care capacity

NEED: REST

Nursing Diagnosis: Disturbed Sleep Pattern related to hospital environment and movement limitations associated with fracture

Goals: The patient obtains sufficient sleep to be free from fatigue; learns measures to facilitate sleep and rest.

Nursing Actions

Control environmental stimuli.

- Schedule rest periods between procedures.

Instruct in progressive relaxation.

Type of Intervention

- Acting for
- Strengthening self-care capacity

NEED: COMFORT

Nursing Diagnosis: Acute Pain related to fracture

Goals: The patient is free from pain; is able to participate in ADLs without pain-related restrictions.

Nursing Actions

- Monitor for signs of pain.
- Assist with positioning and exercises to reduce discomfort.
- Plan analgesic administration in collaboration with health care team.

Type of Intervention

- Minimizing self-care limitation
- Strengthening self-care capacity
- Minimizing self-care limitation

NEED: IMMUNITY

Nursing Diagnoses: (1) Ineffective Health Maintenance; (2) Risk for Infection

Goals: The patient is free from infection.

Nursing Actions

- Encourage good food and fluid intake.
- Teach client to include foods in diet that positively affect immune system, such as milk, yogurt, nonfat cottage cheese, eggs, fresh fruits and vegetables, and garlic.
- Instruct in and assist with immune-enhancing exercises such as yoga and t'ai chi.
- Review immunization history and arrange for immunizations as needed.
- Instruct in stress management techniques.

Type of Intervention

- Strengthening self-care capacity

(continued)

NURSING CARE PLAN 7-1 (CONTINUED)

NEED: RISK REDUCTION

Nursing Diagnoses: (1) Disturbed Sensory Perception (visual, auditory, olfactory, tactile) related to advanced age; (2) Risk for Injury related to sensory deficits; (3) Risk for Impaired Skin Integrity related to immobility, malnutrition, and decreased sensations; (4) Impaired Home Maintenance related to altered health state, convalescence

Goals: The patient is free from injury; possesses intact skin; effectively and correctly uses assistive devices, eyeglasses, hearing aids (as prescribed) to compensate for sensory deficits; has safe, acceptable living arrangements after discharge.

Nursing Actions

Type of Intervention

Compensate for poor vision.

- Read to person.
- Write information and label with large letters and color coding when possible.
- Remove obstacles that could cause accidents such as foreign objects in bed, clutter on floor, and solutions that could be mistaken for water.
- Communicate this problem to other personnel.
- Initiate an ophthalmology referral.

Doing for and minimizing self-care limitation

Minimizing self-care limitation

Minimizing self-care limitation and acting for

Acting for

Acting for

Compensate for decreased ability to smell.

- Prevent and correct odors resulting from poor hygienic practices.
- Detect unusual odors early (may be symptomatic of infection).

Partially assisting and minimizing self-care limitation

Acting for

Compensate for hearing loss.

- Speak clearly and loudly while facing person.
- Use feedback techniques to make sure person has heard and understood.
- Initiate referral to ear, nose, and throat clinic.

Minimizing self-care limitation

Minimizing self-care limitation

Acting for

Maintain good skin condition.

- Inspect for rashes, reddened areas, and sores.
- Assist with hygienic practices.
- Give back rubs, change person's position frequently, and keep person's skin soft and dry.

Doing for

Partially assisting

Doing for, partially assisting, and minimizing self-care limitation

Prevent falls.

- Support person who is ambulating or being transported.
- Teach and encourage exercises to assist in maintaining muscle tone.
- Keep bed rails up and support person in wheelchair.
- Provide rest periods between activities.
- Place frequently used objects within easy reach.

Partially assisting

Strengthening self-care capacity

Doing for

Strengthening self-care capacity and minimizing self-care limitation

Partially assisting

Maintain proper body alignment.

- Use sandbags, trochanter rolls, and pillows.
- Support person's affected limb when it is lifted or moved.

Minimizing self-care limitation and partially assisting

Partially assisting and minimizing self-care limitation

Seek safe living arrangements in preparation for person's discharge.

- Evaluate patient's preferences, capacities, and limitation to suggest appropriate arrangements.
- Initiate referral to social worker.

Acting for and partially assisting

Acting for

(continued)

NURSING CARE PLAN 7-1 (CONTINUED)

NEED: CONNECTION

Nursing Diagnoses: (1) Spiritual Distress, Hopelessness, and Powerlessness related to hospitalization, health state, and lifestyle changes; (2) Impaired Social Interaction related to hospitalization and health state

Goals: The patient expresses satisfaction with the amount of social interaction; identifies means for fulfilling spiritual needs; is free from signs of emotional distress.

Nursing Actions

Type of Intervention

Control environmental stimuli.

- Schedule the same personnel for caregiving.
- Maintain a regular daily schedule.
- Arrange for a roommate with similar interests and background.

Acting for
Strengthening self-care capacity
Acting for and strengthening self-care capacity

Promote meaningful social interactions.

- Instruct others to speak clearly and sufficiently loud while facing the person.
- Plan meaningful activities.
- Promote and maintain an oriented state.
- Display interest in person's social interactions and encourage their continuation.
- Initiate contacts with community agencies to develop relationships that can continue after discharge.
- Assist with grooming and dressing.

Strengthening self-care capacity
Strengthening self-care capacity
Strengthening self-care capacity and minimizing self-care limitation
Strengthening self-care capacity
Acting for and minimizing self-care limitation
Partially assisting and minimizing self-care limitation

Learn about patient's spirituality and religious beliefs and incorporate this into care.

- Arrange for pastoral/spiritual counseling.
- Encourage verbalization of feelings concerning meaning of health state and life changes.
- Provide opportunities for prayer.

Strengthening self-care capacity
Acting for and strengthening self-care capacity
Strengthening self-care capacity
Strengthening self-care capacity

NEED: GRATIFICATION

Nursing Diagnoses: (1) Anxiety, Fear, Hopelessness, and Powerlessness related to hospitalization and health state; (2) Impaired Social Interaction related to hospitalization; (3) Chronic Low Self-Esteem related to health problems and life situation

Goals: The patient demonstrates pre-injury level of physical activity; performs self-care activities to maximum level of independence; expresses satisfaction with the amount of solitude; is free from signs of emotional distress.

Nursing Actions

Type of Intervention

Control environmental stimuli.

- Respect privacy.

Acting for
Strengthening self-care capacity

Provide opportunities for solitude.

- Provide several preplanned time periods during the day in which person can be alone.
- Provide privacy by pulling curtains around bed and making use of facilities such as chapel.

Acting for and strengthening self-care capacity
Minimizing self-care limitation

Improve physical limitations where possible.

- Assist with re-education for ambulation.
- Exercise body parts to maintain function.

Partially assisting and strengthening self-care capacity
Partially assisting and minimizing self-care limitation

(continued)

NURSING CARE PLAN 7-1 (CONTINUED)

Nursing Actions

- Encourage patient to consume an adequate diet.
- Initiate referral for audiometric examination to explore utility of hearing aid.
- Initiate ophthalmology referral to explore utility of corrective lenses.

Maintain familiar components of lifestyle.

- Adjust hospital routine to person's home routine as much as possible.
- Encourage person to wear own clothing.
- Provide person with personal items from home, pillow, blanket, photographs, and tea cup.
- Provide leisure activities to which person is accustomed.

Promote active participation.

- Provide person with opportunities to make own decisions whenever possible.
- Involve person in care.
- Stimulate and encourage communication.

Type of Intervention

- Strengthening self-care capacity
Acting for and minimizing self-care limitation
- Acting for and minimizing self-care limitation
- Acting for and minimizing self-care limitation
- Minimizing self-care limitation
Minimizing self-care limitation
- Minimizing self-care limitation and strengthening self-care capacity
- Strengthening self-care capacity
- Strengthening self-care capacity
Strengthening self-care capacity

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. Identify life experiences that have been unique to today's older population and that have prepared them to cope with some of the challenges of old age.
2. List age-related changes that could affect each of the health promotion-related needs.
3. What are some reasons for older adults not wanting to function independently in self-care activities?
4. Why is it important to identify actions that strengthen self-care capacity rather than acting or doing for the patient?
5. Describe some situations in which older adults are at risk of losing independence as a result of nurses doing for them rather than promoting independence.

Resources

American Holistic Health Association

<http://www.ahha.org>

American Holistic Medical Association

<http://www.holisticmedicine.org>

American Holistic Nurses Association

<http://www.ahna.org>

Reference

Dossey, B. M., Keegan, L., & Guzzetta, C. E. (2005). *Holistic nursing: A handbook for practice*. Sudbury, MA: Jones & Bartlett Publishers.

Recommended Readings

- Aminbzadeh, F., Amos, S., Byszewski, A., & Dalziel, W. B. (2002). Comprehensive geriatric assessment: Exploring clients' and caregivers' perceptions of the assessment process and outcomes. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 28*(6), 6–13.
- Budgen, V. (2005). Providing older patients with holistic health promotion. *Nursing Times, 101*(9), 28–29.
- Dunbar-Jacob, J. (2007). Models for changing patient behavior. *American Journal of Nursing, 107*(6 Supplement), 20–25.
- Eason, L. E. (2003). Concepts in health promotion: Perceived self-efficacy and barriers in older adults. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 29*(5), 11–19.
- Eliopoulos, C. (1999). *Manual of gerontologic nursing* (2nd ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Eliopoulos, C. (Ed.). (2005). *Invitation to holistic health*. Sudbury, MA: Jones & Bartlett Publishers.
- Felten, B. S., & Hall, J. M. (2001). Conceptualizing resilience in women older than 85: Overcoming adversity from illness or loss. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 27*(11), 35–42.

- Grando, V. T., Mehr, D., Popejoy, L., Maas, M., Rantz, M., et al. (2002). Why older adults with light care needs enter and remain in nursing homes. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 28*(7), 47–53.
- Hertz, J. E., & Anschutz, C. A. (2002). Relationships among perceived enactment of autonomy, self-care, and holistic health in community-dwelling older adults. *Journal of Holistic Nursing, 20*(2), 166–186.
- Lewis, M., Hepburn, K., Corcoran-Perry, S., Narayan, S., & Lally, R. M. (1999). Options, outcomes, values, likelihoods. Decision-making guide for patients and their families. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 25*(12), 19–25.
- Lindgren, C. L., & Murphy, A. M. (2002). Nurses' and family members' perceptions of nursing home residents' needs. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 28*(4), 45–53.
- Maddox, M. (1999). Older women and the meaning of health. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 25*(12), 26–33.
- Mayo Clinic. (2006). *Mayo Clinic on healthy aging*. Rochester, MN: Mayo Clinic.
- Moore, S. L., Metcalf, B., & Schow, E. (2000). Aging and meaning in life: Examining the concept. *Geriatric Nursing, 21*(1), 27–29.
- Powers, P. H., Goldstein, C., Plank, G., Thomas, K., & Conkright, L. (2000). The value of patient- and family-centered care. *American Journal of Nursing, 100*(5), 84–89.
- Resnick, B., & Fleishell, A. (2002). Developing a restorative care program. 3. *American Journal of Nursing, 102*(7), 91–99.
- Smy, J. (2006). Holistic care for older inpatients. *Nursing Times, 102*(20):16–17.
- Weinger, K. (2007). Psychosocial issues and self-care. *American Journal of Nursing, 107*(6 Supplement), 34–38.
- Wu, A. W., Young, Y., Dawson, N. V., Brant, L., Galanos, A. N., et al. (2002). Estimates of future physical functioning by seriously ill hospitalized patients, their families, and their physicians. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society, 50*(2), 230–237.

Legal Aspects of Gerontological Nursing

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Laws Governing Gerontological Nursing Practice

Legal Risks in Gerontological Nursing

- Malpractice
- Confidentiality
- Patient Consent
- Patient Competency
- Staff Supervision
- Medications
- Restraints
- Telephone Orders
- No-Code Orders
- Advance Directives and Issues Related to Death and Dying
- Elder Abuse

Legal Safeguards for Nurses

Nurses in every specialty must be cognizant of the legal aspects of their practice, and gerontological nurses are no exception. In fact, legal risks can intensify and legal questions can arise when working in geriatric care settings. Frequently, gerontological nurses are in highly independent and responsible positions in which they must make decisions without an abundance of professionals with whom to confer. They are also often responsible for supervising unlicensed staff and ultimately are accountable for the actions of those they supervise. In addition, gerontological nurses are likely to face difficult situations in which their advice or guidance may be requested by patients and

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 Discuss laws governing gerontological nursing practice.
- 2 Describe legal issues in gerontological nursing practice and ways to minimize risks.
- 3 List legal safeguards for nurses.

families; they may be asked questions regarding how to protect the assets of the wife of a patient with Alzheimer's disease, how to write a will, what can be done to cease life-sustaining measures, and who can give consent for a patient. Also, the multiple problems faced by older adults, their high prevalence of frailty, and their lack of familiarity with laws and regulations, may make them easy victims of unscrupulous practices. Advocacy is an integral part of gerontological nursing, reinforcing the need for nurses to be concerned about protecting the rights of their older patients. To fully protect themselves, their patients, and their employers, nurses must have knowledge of basic laws and ensure that their practice falls within legally sound boundaries.

Laws Governing Gerontological Nursing Practice

Laws are generated from several sources (Box 8-1). Because many laws are developed at the state and local levels, variation exists among the states. This variation necessitates nurses' familiarity with the unique laws within their specific states, particularly those governing professional practice, labor relations, and regulation of health care agencies.

There are both public and private laws. Public law governs relationships between private parties and the government and includes criminal law and regulation of organizations and individuals engaged in certain practices. The scope of nursing practice and the requirements for being licensed as a home health agency fall under the enforcement of public law. Private law governs relationships between individuals and organizations and involves contracts and torts (i.e., wrongful acts against another party, including assault, battery, false imprisonment, and

invasion of privacy). These laws protect individual rights and also set standards of conduct, which, if violated, can result in liability of the wrongdoer.

Legal Risks in Gerontological Nursing

Most nurses do not commit wrongful acts intentionally; however, certain situations can increase the nurse's risk of liability. Such situations include working without sufficient resources, not checking agency policy or procedure, bending a rule, giving someone a break, taking shortcuts, or trying to work when physically or emotionally exhausted. Not only repeated episodes of carelessness, but also the one-time deviation from standards can result in serious legal problems. Box 8-2 reviews some of the general acts that could make nurses liable for violating the law. Nurses must be alert to all the potential legal risks in their practice and make a conscious effort to minimize them. Some of the issues that could present legal risks for nurses are presented below.

KEY CONCEPT

Situations that increase the risk of liability include working with insufficient resources, failing to follow policy and procedures, taking shortcuts, or working when feeling highly stressed.

Malpractice

Nurses are expected to provide services to patients in a careful, competent manner according to a standard of care. The standard of care is considered the norm for what a reasonable individual in a similar circumstance would do. When performance deviates

BOX 8-1 Sources of Laws

CONSTITUTIONS

State basic rights, grant powers, and place limits on government agencies that guide laws development by those agencies (e.g., the right to freedom of speech)

COURT DECISIONS

Establish precedents from cases heard in state or federal courts (e.g., the right to discontinue life-support measures)

STATUTES

Laws established by local, state, and federal legislation (e.g., nurse practice acts)

REGULATIONS

Laws enacted by state and federal administrative agencies that specifically define the methods to achieve goals and objectives of statutes (e.g., conditions of participation for agencies to receive reimbursement from Medicare or Medicaid)

ATTORNEY GENERAL OPINIONS

Laws derived from the opinions of the chief attorney for the state or federal government (e.g., decisions regarding whether a case reflects a violation of law prior to filing a lawsuit for that case)

BOX 8-2

Acts That Could Result in Legal Liability for Nurses

ASSAULT

A deliberate threat or attempt to harm another person that the person believes could be carried through (e.g., telling a patient that he will be locked in a room without food for the entire day if he does not stop being disruptive).

BATTERY

Unconsented touching of another person in a socially impermissible manner or carrying through an assault. Even a touching act done to help a person can be interpreted as battery (e.g., performing a procedure without consent).

DEFAMATION OF CHARACTER

An oral or written communication to a third party that damages a person's reputation. Libel is the written form of defamation; slander is the spoken form. With slander, actual damage must be proven, except when:

- accusing someone of a crime
- accusing someone of having a loathsome disease
- making a statement that affects a person's professional or business activity
- calling a woman unchaste

Defamation does not exist if the statement is true and made in good faith to persons with a legitimate reason to receive the information. Stating on a reference that an employee was fired from your agency for physically abusing patients is not defamation if, in fact, the employee was found guilty of those charges. On the other hand, stating on a reference that an employee was a thief because narcotics were missing every time she was on duty can be considered defamation if the employee was never proved guilty of those charges.

FALSE IMPRISONMENT

Unlawful restraint or detention of a person. Preventing a patient from leaving a facility is an example of false imprisonment, unless it is shown that the patient has a contagious disease or could harm himself or herself or others. Actual physical restraint need not be used for false imprisonment to occur: telling a patient that he will be tied to his bed if he tries to leave can be considered false imprisonment.

FRAUD

Willful and intentional misrepresentation that could cause harm or cause a loss to a person or property (e.g., selling a patient a ring with the claim that memory will be improved when it is worn).

INVASION OF PRIVACY

Invading the right of an individual to personal privacy. Can include unwanted publicity, releasing a medical record to unauthorized persons, giving patient information to an improper source, or having one's private affairs made public. (The only exceptions are reporting communicable diseases, gunshot wounds, and abuse.) Allowing a visiting student to look at a patient's pressure ulcers without permission can be an invasion of privacy.

LARCENY

Unlawful taking of another person's possession (e.g., assuming that a patient will not be using her personally owned wheelchair anymore and giving it away to another patient without permission).

NEGLIGENCE

Omission or commission of an act that departs from acceptable and reasonable standards, which can take several forms:

- *Malfeasance*: committing an unlawful or improper act (e.g., a nurse performing a surgical procedure)
- *Misfeasance*: performing an act improperly (e.g., including the patient in a research project without obtaining consent)
- *Nonfeasance*: failure to take proper action (e.g., not notifying the physician of a serious change in the patient's status)
- *Malpractice*: failure to abide by the standards of one's profession (e.g., not checking that a nasogastric tube is in the stomach before administering a tube feeding)
- *Criminal negligence*: disregard to protecting the safety of another person (e.g., allowing a confused patient, known to have a history of starting fires, to have matches in an unsupervised situation)

from the standard of care, nurses can be liable for malpractice. Examples of situations that could lead to malpractice include:

- administering the incorrect dosage of a medication to a patient, thereby causing the patient to experience an adverse reaction
- identifying respiratory distress in a patient, but not informing the physician in a timely manner
- leaving an irrigating solution at the bedside of a confused patient, who then drinks that solution
- forgetting to turn an immobile patient during the entire shift, resulting in the patient developing a pressure ulcer
- having a patient fall because one staff member attempted to lift the patient when two were needed

The fact that a negligent act occurred in itself does not warrant that damages be recovered; instead, it must be demonstrated that the following conditions were present:

- **Duty:** a relationship between the nurse and the patient in which the nurse has assumed responsibility for the care of the patient

- **Negligence:** failure to conform to the standard of care (i.e., malpractice)
- **Injury:** physical or mental harm to the patient, or violation of the patient's rights resulting from the negligent act



KEY CONCEPT

Duty, negligence, and injury must be present for malpractice to exist.

The complexities involved in caring for older adults, the need to delegate responsibilities to others, and the many competing demands on the nurse contribute to the risk of malpractice. As the responsibilities assumed by nurses increase, so will the risk of malpractice. Nurses should be aware of the risks in their practice and be proactive in preventing malpractice (Box 8-3). Also, it is advisable for nurses to carry their own malpractice insurance and not rely only on the insurance provided by their employers. Employers may refuse to cover nurses under their policy if it is believed they acted outside of their job descriptions; further, jury awards can exceed the limits of employers' policies.

BOX 8-3 Recommendations for Reducing the Risk of Malpractice

- Be familiar with and follow the nurse practice act that governs nursing practice in the specific state.
- Keep current of and adhere to policies and procedures of the employing agency.
- Ensure that policies and procedures are revised as necessary.
- Do not discuss a patient's condition, share patient information, or allow access to a patient's medical record to anyone unless the patient has provided written consent.
- Consult with the physician when an order is unclear or inappropriate.
- Know the patients' normal status and promptly report changes in status.
- Assess patients carefully and develop realistic care plans.
- Read patients' care plans and relevant nursing documentation before giving care.
- Identify patients before administering medications or treatments.
- Document observations about patients' status, care given, and significant occurrences.
- Assure that documentation by self and subordinates is accurate and that documentation reflects care that actually was provided.
- Know the credentials and assure competency of all subordinate staff.
- Discuss with supervisory staff assignments that cannot be completed due to insufficient staff or supplies.
- Do not accept responsibilities that are beyond your capabilities to perform and do not delegate assignments to others unless you are certain that they are competent to perform the delegated tasks.
- Report broken equipment and other safety hazards.
- Report or file an incident report when unusual situations occur.
- Promptly report all actual or suspected abuse to the appropriate state and local agencies.
- Attend continuing education programs and keep current of knowledge and skills pertaining to your practice.

(Adapted from Eliopoulos, C. [2002]. *Legal risks management guidelines and principles for long-term care facilities* [p. 28]. Glen Arm, MD: Health Education Network.)

POINT TO PONDER

In addition to the time and money involved in defending a lawsuit, what are some consequences of being accused of malpractice? ●

Other situations can cause nurses to be liable for negligence, if not malpractice, including the following:

- failing to take action (e.g., not reporting a change in the patient's condition or not notifying the administration of a physician's incompetent acts)
- contributing to patient injury (e.g., not providing appropriate supervision of confused patients or failing to lock the wheelchair during a transfer)
- failing to report a hazardous situation (e.g., not letting anyone know that the fire alarm system is inoperable or not informing anyone that a physician is performing procedures under the influence of alcohol)
- handling patient's possessions irresponsibly
- failing to follow established policies and procedures

POINT TO PONDER

Are you familiar with your state's nurse practice act and the regulations governing the area in which you practice or will practice? ●

Confidentiality

It is the rare patient who is seen by only one health care provider. More often the patient visits a variety of medical specialists, therapists, diagnostic facilities, pharmacies, and institutions. These providers often need to communicate information about the patient to ensure coordinated, quality care. However, with the potentially high number of individuals who have access to patients' personal medical information and the ease with which information is able to be transferred, there are increased opportunities for confidential information to fall into unintended hands. In an effort to protect the security and confidentiality of patients' health information, the federal government developed the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA). HIPAA provides patients with access to their medical records and control over how their personal health information is used and disclosed. Key provisions of HIPAA include the following:

- Patients can review and obtain copies of their medical records and request corrections if errors are found. (Providers may charge patients for the cost of copying and mailing records.)

- Providers must notify patients as to how personal medical information may be used and what patients' rights are under HIPAA.
- There are limits to how providers and health plans can use individually identifiable information. Providers and caregivers are not restricted in sharing information essential to treating patients, however. Patients must sign a specific authorization before information can be released to banks, businesses, or other individuals or entities not involved in the patients' care.
- There are restrictions on the use of patient information for use in marketing.
- States can enact additional privacy protections. When state law requires reporting of infectious diseases and other disclosures, HIPAA does not preempt the state law.
- Patients can request that their providers and health plans communicate with them in a manner that assures confidentiality (e.g., calling the person at his or her office rather than at home).
- Patients may file a formal complaint regarding the privacy practices of a covered health plan or provider. Such complaints can be made directly to the covered provider or health plan or to the Health and Human Services' Office for Civil Rights (OCR), which is charged with investigating complaints and enforcing the privacy regulation. Information about filing complaints should be included in each covered entity's notice of privacy practices. Patients can find out more information about filing a complaint at <http://www.hhs.gov/ocr/hipaa> or by calling (866) 627-7748.

Congress authorized civil and criminal penalties for covered entities that misuse personal health information.

There can be variation in the procedures providers and facilities use to review HIPAA-related facts with patients, protect patients' information, and communicate information related to patients. It is important that nurses be familiar with and adhere to policies and procedures related to the protection of patients' privacy.

Patient Consent

Patients are entitled to know the full implications of procedures and make an independent decision as to whether they choose to have them performed. This may sound simple enough, but it is easy for consent to be overlooked or improperly obtained by health care providers. For instance, certain procedures may become so routine to staff that they fail to realize patient permission must be granted, or a staff member may obtain a signature from a patient who has a fluctuating level of mental competency and who does not fully understand what he or she is

signing. In the interest of helping patients and delivering care efficiently, or from a lack of knowledge concerning consent, staff members can subject themselves to considerable legal liability.



KEY CONCEPT

Patients who do not fully comprehend or who have fluctuating levels of mental function are incapable of granting legally sound consent.

Consent must be obtained before performing any medical or surgical procedure; performing procedures without consent can be considered battery. Usually when patients enter a health care facility they sign consent forms that authorize the staff to perform certain routine measures (e.g., bathing, examination, care-related treatments, and emergency interventions). These forms, however, do not qualify as *carte blanche* consent for all procedures. Even blanket consent forms that patients may sign, authorizing staff to do anything required for treatment and care, are not valid safeguards and may not be upheld in a court of law. Consent should be obtained for anything that exceeds basic, routine care measures. Particular procedures for which consent definitely should be sought include any entry into the body, either by incision or through natural body openings; any use of anesthesia, cobalt or radiation therapy, electroshock therapy, or experimental procedures; any type of research participation, invasive or not; and any procedure, diagnostic or treatment, that carries more than a slight risk. Whenever there is doubt regarding whether consent is necessary, it is best to err on the safe side.

Consent must be *informed*. It is unfair to the patient and legally unsound to obtain the patient's signature for a myelogram without telling the patient what that procedure entails. Ideally, a written consent that describes the procedure, its purpose, alternatives to the procedure, expected consequences, and risks should be signed by the patient, witnessed, and dated (Fig. 8-1). It is best that the person performing the procedure (e.g., the physician or researcher) be the one to explain the procedure and obtain the consent. Nurses or other staff members should not be in the position of obtaining consent for the physician because it is illegal and because they may not be able to answer some of the medical questions posed by the patient. Nurses can play an important role in the consent process by ensuring that it is properly obtained, answering questions, reinforcing information, and making the physician aware of any misunderstanding or change in the desire of the patient. Finally, nurses should not influence the patient's decision in any way.



FIGURE 8-1 • It is important for the patient to give informed consent before any medical or surgical procedure. Written consent forms should describe the procedure, its purpose, alternatives to the procedure, expected consequences, and risks.

Every conscious and mentally competent adult has the right to refuse consent for a procedure. To protect the agency and staff, it is useful to have the patient sign a release stating that consent is denied and that the patient understands the risks associated with refusing consent. If the patient refuses to sign the release, this should be witnessed, and both the professional seeking consent and the witness should sign a statement that documents the patient's refusal for the medical record.

Patient Competency

Increasingly, particularly in long-term care facilities, nurses are caring for patients who are confused, demented, or otherwise mentally impaired. Persons who are mentally incompetent are unable to give legal consent. Often in these circumstances, staff will turn to the next of kin to obtain consent for procedures; however, the appointment of a guardian to grant consent for the incompetent individual is the responsibility of the court. When the patient's competency is questionable, staff should encourage family members to seek legal guardianship of the patient or request the assistance of the state agency on aging in petitioning the court for appointment of a guardian.

Various forms of guardianship can be granted (Box 8-4), each with its own restrictions. The guardian is monitored by the court to ensure that he or she is acting in the best interests of the incompetent individual. In the case of a guardian of property, the guardian must file financial reports with the court.

Guardianship differs from power of attorney in that the latter is a mechanism used by competent individuals to appoint someone to make decisions for them. Usually, a power of attorney becomes invalid if

BOX 8-4 Kinds of Decision-Making Authority That Individuals Can Legally Possess Over Patients

GUARDIANSHIP

Court appointment of an individual or organization to have the authority to make decisions for an incompetent person. Guardians can be granted decision-making authority for specific types of issues:

- Guardian of property (conservatorship): this limited guardianship allows the guardian to take care of financial matters but not make decisions concerning medical treatment.
- Guardian of person: decisions pertaining to the consent or refusal for care and treatments can be made by persons granted this type of guardianship.
- Plenary guardianship (committeeship): all types of decisions pertaining to person and property can be made by guardians under this form.

POWER OF ATTORNEY

Legal mechanism by which competent individuals appoint parties to make decisions for them; this can take the form of:

- Limited power of attorney: decisions are limited to certain matters (e.g., financial affairs) and power of attorney becomes invalid if the individual becomes incompetent.
- Durable power of attorney: provides a mechanism for continuing or initiating power of attorney in the event the individual becomes incompetent.

the individual granting it becomes incompetent, except in the case of a durable power of attorney. A durable power of attorney allows competent individuals to appoint someone to make decisions on their behalf in the event that they become incompetent; this is a recommended procedure for individuals with dementias and other disorders in which competency can be anticipated to decline.

To ensure protection of patients' rights, nurses should recommend that patients and their families seek legal counsel for guardianship and power of attorney issues, and when such appointment has been made, clarify the type of decision-making authority that the appointed parties possess.



KEY CONCEPT

A durable power of attorney can be useful for patients with Alzheimer's disease because they can appoint someone to make decisions on their behalf at a time when they may be incompetent to do so.

Staff Supervision

In many settings, gerontological nurses are responsible for supervising other staff, many of whom may be unlicensed personnel. In these situations, nurses are responsible not only for their own actions but also for the actions of the staff they are supervising. This falls under the doctrine of *respondeat superior* ("let the master answer"). Nurses must understand that if a patient is injured by an employee they supervise while the employee is working within the

scope of the applicable job description, nurses can be liable. Various types of situations can create risks for nurses:

- permitting unqualified or incompetent persons to deliver care
- failing to follow up on delegated tasks
- assigning tasks to staff members for which they are not qualified or competent
- allowing staff to work under conditions with known risks (e.g., being short staffed, improperly functioning equipment)

These are considerations that nurses need to keep in mind when they accept responsibility for covering the house, sending an aide into a home to deliver care without knowing the aide's competency, or allowing registry or other employees to work without fully orienting them to agency policies and procedures.



KEY CONCEPT

A nurse needs to ensure that those caregivers to whom tasks are delegated are competent to perform the tasks and carry out their assignments properly.

Medications

Nurses are responsible for the safe administration of prescribed medications. Preparing, compounding, dispensing, and retailing medications fall within the practice of pharmacy, not nursing, and, when performed by nurses, can be interpreted as functioning

outside their licensed scope of practice. An act as seemingly benign as going into the agency's pharmacy after hours, pouring some tablets into a container, labeling that container, and taking it to the unit so that a patient can receive the drug that is urgently needed is illegal.

Restraints

The Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act (OBRA) heightened awareness of the serious impact of restraints by imposing strict standards on their use in long-term care facilities. This increased concern regarding and sensitivity to the use of chemical and physical restraints has had a ripple effect on other practice settings.

Anything that restricts a patient's movement (e.g., protective vests, trays on wheelchairs, safety belts, geriatric chairs, side rails) can be considered a restraint. Improperly used restraining devices can not only violate regulations concerning their use, but can also result in litigation for false imprisonment and negligence.

Alternatives to restraints should be used whenever possible. Measures to help manage behavioral problems and protect the patient include alarmed doors, wristband alarms, bed alarm pads, beds and chairs close to the floor level, and increased staff supervision and contact. Specific patient behavior that creates risks to the patient and others should be documented. Assessment of the risk posed by the patient not being restrained and the effectiveness of alternatives should be included.

When restraints are deemed absolutely necessary, a physician's order for the restraints must be

obtained, stating the specific conditions for which the restraints are to be used, the type of restraints, and the duration of use. Agency policies should exist for the use of restraints and should be followed strictly. Detailed documentation should include the times for initiation and release of the restraints, their effectiveness, and the patient's response. The patient requires close observation while restrained.



KEY CONCEPT

At no time should restraints be used for the convenience of staff.

At times, staff may assess that restraint use is required, but the patient or family objects and refuses to have a restraint used. If counseling does not help the patient and family understand the risks involved in not using the restraint, the agency may wish to have the patient and family sign a release of liability that states the risks of not using a restraint and the patient's or family's opposition. Although this may not free the nurse or agency from all responsibility, some limited protection may be afforded and, by signing the release, the patient and family may realize the severity of the situation.

Telephone Orders

In home health and long-term care settings, nurses often do not have the benefit of an on-site physician. Changes in the patient's condition and requests for new or altered treatments may be communicated over the telephone, and, in response, physicians may prescribe orders accordingly. Accepting telephone

Consider This Case

You are working in a nursing home that supports a restraint-free environment. In the past month, one of the residents has slipped once from her wheelchair and once off the edge of her bed; she fell onto the floor both times. Although the resident was not injured in either of these incidents, the resident's daughter is concerned that her mother has the potential to seriously hurt herself during a fall and requests that her mother be restrained while in bed and in her wheelchair. The resident has not expressed any preference but says she'll do whatever her daughter wants. You explain the rationale for not using restraints, but the daughter is insistent that her mother be restrained. "You know my mother has the tendency to slip to the floor," the daughter says, "so if you don't tie her in the chair and keep her rails up when she is in bed and she falls, I'll have my lawyers here before you can say boo!"

THINK CRITICALLY

- How do you decide if the resident's freedom to be unrestrained is worth the risk of her injuring herself during a fall?
- What dilemmas could you present for the resident if you ask her for her preference without consideration of the daughter's desires?
- How much should a facility be influenced by the threat of litigation?
- What can you do to safeguard the resident and the facility?

orders predisposes nurses to considerable risks because the order can be heard or written incorrectly or the physician can deny that the order was given. It may not be realistic or advantageous to patient care to totally eliminate telephone orders, but nurses should minimize their risks in every way possible by taking the following precautions:

- Try to have the physician immediately fax the written order, if possible.
- Do not involve third parties in the order (e.g., do not have the order communicated by a secretary or other staff member for the nurse or the physician).
- Communicate all relevant information to the physician, such as vital signs, general status, and medications administered.
- Do not offer diagnostic interpretations or a medical diagnosis of the patient's problem.
- Write down the order as it is given and immediately read it back to the physician in its entirety.
- Place the order on the physician's order sheet, indicating it was a telephone order, the physician who gave it, time, date, and the nurse's signature.
- Obtain the physician's signature within 24 hours.

Tape-recorded telephone orders may be a helpful way for nurses to validate what they have heard, but they may not offer much protection in the event of a lawsuit unless the physician is informed that the conversation is being recorded or unless special equipment with a 15-second tone sound is used.

No-Code Orders

The caseloads of many gerontological nurses contain a high prevalence of terminally ill patients. It may be understood by all parties involved that these patients are going to die and that resuscitation attempts would be inappropriate; however, unless an order specifically states that the patient should not be resuscitated, failure to attempt to save that person's life could be viewed as negligence. Nurses must ensure that no-code orders are legally sound, remembering several points. First, no-code orders are medical orders and must be written and signed on the physician's order sheet to be valid. DNR (do not resuscitate) placed on the care plan or a special symbol at the patient's bedside is not legal without the medical order. Next, unless it is detrimental to the patient's well-being or the patient is incompetent, consent for the no-code decision should be obtained; if the patient is unable to consent, family consent should be sought. Finally, every agency should develop a no-code policy to guide staff in these situations; this could be an excellent item for an ethics committee to review.

Advance Directives and Issues Related to Death and Dying

A variety of issues surrounding patients' deaths pose legal concern for nurses. Some of these issues arise long before death occurs, when patients choose to execute an advance directive or a living will. Advance directives express the desires of competent adults regarding terminal care, life-sustaining measures, and other issues pertaining to their dying and death. In 1990, Congress passed the Patient Self-Determination Act (which went into effect December 1, 1991), which requires all health care institutions receiving Medicare or Medicaid funds to ask patients on admission if they possess a living will or durable power of attorney for health care. The patient's response must be recorded in the medical record. States vary in their acceptance of living wills; there may even be variation among agencies regarding the conditions under which this document will be entered into the medical record. Nurses can aid by making physicians and other staff aware of the presence of a patient's living will, informing patients of any special measures they must take to have the document be accepted into the medical record, and, unless contraindicated, following the patient's wishes (Fig. 8-2). Nurses are advised to check the status of living will legislation in their individual states.



KEY CONCEPT

An advance directive protects the patient's right to make decisions about terminal care.

Other issues arise when patients are terminally ill and dying; one such issue involves wills. Wills are statements of individuals' desires for the management of their affairs after their death. For a will to be valid, the person making it must be of sound mind, legal age, and not coerced or influenced into making



FIGURE 8-2 • Gerontological nurses guide older adults as they consider advance directives.

it. The will should be written—although under certain conditions, some states recognize oral, or nuncupative, wills—signed, dated, and witnessed by persons not named in the will. The required number of witnesses may vary among the states.

To avoid problems, such as family accusations that the patient was influenced by the nurse because of his dependency on her, nurses should avoid witnessing a will. Nurses should, however, help patients obtain legal counsel when they wish to execute or change a will. Legal aid agencies and local schools of law are also sources of assistance for older adults wishing to write their wills. If a patient is dying and wishes to dictate a will to the nurse, the nurse may write it exactly as stated, sign and date it, have the patient sign it if possible, and forward it to the agency's administrative offices for handling. It is useful for gerontological nurses to encourage persons of all ages to develop a will to avoid having the state determine how their property will be distributed in the event of their deaths.

The pronouncement of death is another area of concern. Nurses often are placed in the position and are capable of determining when a patient has died and notifying the family and funeral home. The physician is then notified of the death by telephone and signs the death certificate at a later time. This rather common and benign procedure actually may be illegal for nurses because in some states the act of pronouncing a patient dead falls within the scope of medical practice, not nursing. Nurses should safeguard their licenses by either holding physicians responsible for the pronouncement of death if they are required to do so or lobbying to have the law changed so that they are protected in these situations.

Postmortem examinations of deceased persons are useful in learning more about the cause of death. They also contribute to medical education. In some circumstances, such as when the cause of death is suspected to be associated with a criminal act, malpractice, or an occupational disease, the death may be considered a medical examiner's case and an autopsy may be mandatory. Unless it is a medical examiner's case, consent for autopsy must be obtained from the next of kin, usually in the order of spouse, children, parents, siblings, grandparents, aunts, uncles, and cousins.

Elder Abuse

Elder abuse can occur in patients' homes or in health care facilities by loved ones, caregivers, or strangers. Particularly in long-term caregiving relationships, in which family members or staff "burn out," abuse may be an unfortunate consequence. Factors contributing to abuse by family caregivers are discussed in Chapter 38.



KEY CONCEPT

Caregiver stress can lead to abuse of older adults.

Abuse can assume many forms, including inflicting pain or injury; stealing; mismanaging funds; misusing medications; causing psychological distress; withholding food or care; or sexually abusing, exploiting, or confining a person. Even threatening to commit any of these acts is considered abuse. Nurses can assess for abuse using a tool such as the Elder Assessment Instrument (EAI) developed by Fulmer et al. (1984) and currently recommended by the Hartford Institute for Geriatric Nursing. Gerontological nurses must also be alert to indications of possible abuse or neglect during routine interactions with older adults; signs could include:

- delay in seeking necessary medical care
- malnutrition
- dehydration
- unexplained bruises
- poor hygiene and grooming
- urine odor, urine-stained clothing/linens
- excoriation or abrasions of genitalia
- inappropriate administration of medications
- repeated infections, injuries, or preventable complications from existing diseases
- evasiveness in describing condition, symptoms, problems, home life
- unsafe living environment
- social isolation
- anxiety, suspiciousness, depression

Nurses have a legal responsibility to report all cases of known or suspected abuse. States vary regarding reporting mechanisms; nurses should thus consult specific state laws. The Resources listing includes organizations that can provide information on elder abuse and guidance on finding attorneys to assist a person who is the victim of abuse.

Legal Safeguards for Nurses

Common sense can be the best ally of sound nursing practice. Never forget that patients, visitors, and employees do not forfeit their legal rights or responsibilities when they are within the health care environment. Laws and regulations impose additional rights and responsibilities in patient-provider and employee-employer relationships. Nurses can and should protect themselves in the following ways:

- familiarize themselves with the laws and rules governing their specific care agency/facility, their state's nurse practice act, and labor relations

- become knowledgeable about their agency's policies and procedures and adhere to them strictly
- function within the scope of nursing practice
- determine for themselves the competency of employees for whom they are responsible
- check the work of employees under their supervision
- obtain administrative or legal guidance when in doubt about the legal ramifications of a situation
- report and document any unusual occurrence
- refuse to work under circumstances that create a risk to safe patient care
- carry liability insurance

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. Discuss the reasons why gerontological nursing is a high-risk specialty for legal liability.
2. Identify the process you would follow in your community to obtain guardianship for an incompetent older adult who has no family.
3. Describe the approach you would use to discuss the development of an advanced directive with an older adult.
4. Discuss the actions you would take if faced with the following situations:
 - A nurse whom you supervise makes repeated errors and does not seem competent to do his job.
 - You begin documenting your observations but are told by your immediate supervisor to “just bite your tongue and live with it because he is the administrator’s son.”
 - A patient confides in you that her son is forging her name on checks and gradually emptying out her bank accounts.

Resources

American Association of Retired Persons (AARP) Elder Law Forum

<http://www.aarp.org/research/legal-advocacy/>

American Bar Association Senior Lawyers Division

<http://www.abanet.org/srlawyers/home.html>

Hartford Institute for Geriatric Nursing

Try This: Best Practices in Nursing Care to Older Adults Issue Number 15 (Revised 2007), Elder Mistreatment and Abuse Assessment
<http://www.hartfordign.org/resources/education/tryThis.html>

National Academy of Elder Law Attorneys

<http://www.naela.com>

National Center on Elder Abuse

<http://www.elderabusecenter.org>

National Senior Citizens Law Center

<http://www.nslc.org>

Nursing Home Abuse/Elder Abuse Attorneys Referral Network

<http://www.nursing-home-abuse-elderly-abuse-attorneys.com>

Reference

Fulmer, T., Street, S., & Carr, K. (1984). Abuse of the elderly: Screening and detection. *Journal of Emergency Nursing, 10*(3), 131–140.

Recommended Readings

- Alford, D. M. (2006). Legal issues in gerontological nursing. Part 1: Abuse and neglect of older adults. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 32*(1), 10–12.
- Alford, D. M. (2006). Legal issues in gerontological nursing. Part 2: Responsible parties and guardianships. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 32*(2), 15–18.
- Alford, D. M. (2006). Legal issues in gerontological nursing. Part 3: Standards of care. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 32*(3), 9–12.
- Alford, D. M., (2006). Legal issues in gerontological nursing. Part 4: Other significant issues. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 32*(4), 9–11.
- American Bar Association. (2007). Factbook on the law and the elderly, <http://www.abanet.org/media/factbooks/eldtoc.html>.
- Brown, G. (2006). Wound documentation: Managing risk. *Advances in Wound Care, 19*(3), 155–165.
- Carlson, A. L. (2007). Death in the nursing home: Resident, family, and staff perspectives. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 33*(4), 32–41.
- Darr, K. (2007). Physician-assisted suicide: Legal and ethical considerations. *Journal of Health Law, 40*(1), 29–63.
- Eliopoulos, C. (2002). *Legal risks management guidelines and principles for long-term care facilities*. Glen Arm, MD: Health Education Network.
- Heeschen, S. J. (2000). Making the most of quality indicator information. *Geriatric Nursing, 21*(4), 206–209.
- Hill, J. M. (2005). Hospice utilization: Political, cultural, and legal issues. *Journal of Nursing Law, 10*(4), 216–224.
- Hirst, S. P. (2000). Resident abuse: An insider's perspective. *Geriatric Nursing, 21*(1), 38–42.
- Karlawish, J. H. T., & Pearlman, R. A. (2003). Determination of decision-making capacity. In C. K. Cassel, R. Leipzig, J. Cohen, E. B. Larson, D. E. Meier, et al. (Eds.), *Geriatric medicine* (4th ed., pp. 1233–1242). New York: Springer.
- Lessner, J. F. (2006). HIPAA checkups for compliance. *Geriatric Nursing, 27*(2), 83–84.
- Liao, S., & Mosqueda, L. (2007). Physical abuse of the elderly: The medical director's response. *Journal of the American Medical Directors Association, 8*(3), 61–64.
- McDonald, F. E. (2007). Elder abuse—A family experience. *Journal of Neuroscience Nursing, 39*(2), 124–126.
- Mitty, E., & Flores, S. (2007). Assisted living nursing practice: Medication management: Part 2, supervision and monitoring of medication administration by unlicensed assistive personnel. *Geriatric Nursing, 28*(3), 153–160.
- Monarch, K. (2002). *Nursing and the law*. Washington, DC: American Nurses Publishing.

- Muehbauer, M., & Crane, P. A. (2006). Elder abuse and neglect. *Journal of Psychosocial Nursing and Mental Health Services, 44*(11), 43–48.
- Ostwald, S. K. (2007). Preserving patient autonomy and privacy in the era of genetic discoveries. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 33*(5), 3.
- Peterson, A. M. (2002). Overview of the nursing home litigation process. *Geriatric Nursing, 23*(1), 37–42.
- Quinn, M. J. (2002). Undue influence and elder abuse: Recognition and intervention strategies. *Geriatric Nursing, 23*(1), 11–16.
- Reinhard, S. C., Young, H. M., Kane, R. A., & Quinn, W. V. (2006). Nurse delegation of medication administration for older adults in assisted living. *Nursing Outlook, 54*(2), 74–80.
- Rempusheski, V. F., & Hurley, A. C. (2000). Advance directives and dementia. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 26*(10), 27–34.
- Slaughter, S., Cole, D., Jennings, E., & Reimber, M. A. (2007). Consent and assent to participate in research from people with dementia. *Nursing Ethics, 14*(1), 27–40.
- Sollins, H. L. (2007). Handling difficult family situations: Practical approaches. *Geriatric Nursing, 28*(2), 80–82.
- Stiegel, L., & the American Bar Association Working Group (2006). Recommendations for the elder abuse, health, and justice fields about medical forensic issues related to elder abuse and neglect. *Journal of Elder Abuse and Neglect, 18*(1), 41–81.
- Valente, S. M. (2001). End-of-life issues. *Geriatric Nursing, 22*(6), 294–297.
- Voelker, R. (2002). Elder abuse and neglect: A new research topic. *Journal of the American Medical Association, 288*, 2254–2256.
- Walker, W. (2007). Ethical considerations in phenomenological research. *Nurse Researcher, 14*(3), 36–45.

Ethical Aspects of Gerontological Nursing

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Philosophies Guiding Ethical Thinking Ethics in Nursing

External and Internal Ethical Standards
Ethical Principles

Ethical Dilemmas Facing Gerontological Nurses

Changes Increasing Ethical Dilemmas for Nurses
Measures to Help Nurses Make Ethical Decisions

Although the concept of principles guiding right and wrong conduct is not new to nursing, professional ethics has received increasing attention in nursing circles. Gerontological nurses commonly face ethical questions regarding the provision, scope, or cost of care for older adults. Many of these questions arise in nurses' daily practice. It is important for nurses to understand both the ethics of the nursing profession and their own personal ethics, and to be aware of the ethical dilemmas facing gerontological nurses today.

Philosophies Guiding Ethical Thinking

The word *ethics* originated in ancient Greece—*ethos* means those beliefs that guide life. Most current definitions of ethics revolve around the concept of accepted standards of conduct and moral judgment. Basically, ethics help determine right and wrong courses of action. As simple as this

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 Discuss various philosophies regarding right and wrong.
- 2 Describe ethical standards and principles guiding nursing practice.
- 3 List factors that have increased ethical dilemmas for nurses.
- 4 Identify measures to help nurses make ethical decisions.

sounds, different philosophies disagree about what constitutes right and wrong; for example:

- *Utilitarianism*. This philosophy holds that good acts are those from which the greatest number of people will benefit and gain happiness.
- *Egoism*. At the opposite pole from utilitarianism, egoism proposes that an act is morally acceptable if it is of the greatest benefit to oneself and that there is no reason to perform an act that benefits others unless one will personally benefit from it as well.
- *Relativism*. This philosophy can be referred to as situational ethics, in that right and wrong are relative to the situation. Within relativism are several subgroups of thinking. Some relativists believe that there can be individual variation in what is ethically correct, whereas others feel that the individual's beliefs should conform to the overall beliefs of society for the given time and situation.
- *Absolutism*. Under the theory of absolutism, there are specific truths to guide actions. The truths can vary depending on a person's beliefs; for example, a Christian's view may differ from an atheist's view on certain moral behaviors, and a person who supports a political view of democracy may believe in different truths from those of a communist.

To illustrate the application of these four different philosophies, consider the hypothetical situation of four poor old men who share a household. One day, one of these men finds a lottery ticket in the mailbox while checking the household's mail. The ticket holds the winning number for a million dollars. Ethically, does he owe his housemates any of the winnings? A *utilitarian* would propose that he split the winnings with his housemates because that would bring good to the greatest number of people. An *egoist* would encourage him to keep the winnings because that would do him the most good personally. A *relativist* might say that normally he should keep the winnings, but because in this situation he will have more money than he will need, he should share the winnings. An *absolutist* who happens to be Christian may say that keeping the ticket is morally wrong and an effort should be made to find the rightful owner.

Now consider the application of the philosophical approaches to the issue of federal subsidies to older adults. A *utilitarian* could say that 12% of the population should not use one third of the gross national product and that the money instead should be equally allocated on a per capita basis. An *egoist* would say that the individual old person should take whatever he feels he needs, regardless of the impact on others. A *relativist* could say that older people can use this proportion of the budget unless more is needed for dependent children or defense, at which point it would no longer be

right to do so. *Absolutists* could hold various views depending on their belief systems, ranging from giving the older population whatever they need because of a moral responsibility to care for the sick and aged, to withholding funds from the older population so that finances are available to build the military and meet specific political goals.

Other philosophies guiding ethics exist, but the few that have been briefly described demonstrate the diversity of approaches to ethical thinking and reinforce the fact that determining right and wrong actions can be a complicated endeavor.



KEY CONCEPT

Individuals can be guided by a wide range of ethical philosophies that cause them to view the same situations in vastly different ways.

Ethics in Nursing

External and Internal Ethical Standards

Professions such as nursing require a code of ethics on which practice can be based and evaluated. A professional code of ethics is accepted by those who practice the profession as the formal guidelines for their actions. The American Nurses Association (ANA) Code of Ethics for Nurses (Box 9-1) outlines the broad values of the profession. The American Holistic Nurses' Association has developed the *Code of Ethics for Holistic Nursing* that provides guidance for nurses' actions and responsibilities for self, others, and the environment (the full document is available at <http://www.ahna.org>).

Nurses are also subject to ethical standards created outside of the nursing profession. Federal, state, and local standards, in the form of regulations, guide nursing practice. In addition, various organizations such as The Joint Commission and the American Healthcare Association develop standards for specific practitioners and care settings. Individual agencies, too, have philosophies, goals, and objectives that support a specific level of nursing practice.

Most importantly, individual nurses possess values that they have developed throughout their lives that will largely influence ethical thinking. Ideally, a nurse's individual value system meshes with that of the profession, society, and employer; conflict can arise when value systems are incompatible.



KEY CONCEPT

The American Nurses Association (ANA) Code of Ethics for Holistic Nursing and various standards of practice supplement the nurse's personal value system to influence ethical decision making.

BOX 9-1 Code of Ethics for Nurses

1. The nurse, in all professional relationships, practices with compassion and respect for the inherent dignity, worth, and uniqueness of every individual, unrestricted by considerations of social or economic status, personal attributes, or the nature of health problems.
2. The nurse's primary commitment is to the patient, whether an individual, family, group, or community.
3. The nurse promotes, advocates for, and strives to protect the health, safety, and rights of the patient.
4. The nurse is responsible and accountable for individual nursing practice and determines the appropriate delegation of tasks consistent with the nurse's obligation to provide optimum patient care.
5. The nurse owes the same duties to self as to others, including the responsibility to preserve integrity and safety, to maintain competence, and to continue personal and professional growth.
6. The nurse participates in establishing, maintaining, and improving health care environments and conditions of employment conducive to the provision of quality health care and consistent with the values of the profession through individual and collective action.
7. The nurse participates in the advancement of the profession through contributions to practice, education, administration, and knowledge development.
8. The nurse collaborates with other health professionals and the public in promoting community, national, and international efforts to meet health needs.
9. The profession of nursing, as represented by associations and their members, is responsible for articulating nursing values, for maintaining the integrity of the profession and its practice, and for shaping social policy.

(Courtesy of American Nurses Association, Washington, DC. Developed and published by the American Nurses Association, 2001.)

Ethical Principles

Several ethical principles are used to guide health care, including the following:

- **Beneficence:** to do good for patients. This principle is based on the belief that the education and experience of nurses enable them to make sound decisions that serve patients' best interests. Nurses are challenged to take actions that are good for patients while not ignoring patients' desires. To override patients' decisions and invoke professional authority to take actions that nurses view as in patients' best interests is viewed as paternalism and interferes with the freedom and rights of patients.
- **Nonmaleficence:** to prevent harm to patients. This principle could be viewed as a subset of beneficence because the intent is ultimately to take action that is good for patients.
- **Justice:** to be fair, treat people equally, and give patients the service they need. At the foundation of this principle is the belief that patients are entitled to services based on need, regardless of ability to pay. Scarce resources have challenged this concept of unrestricted access and use of health care services.
- **Fidelity and veracity:** fidelity means to respect our words and duty to patients; veracity is truthfulness. This principle is central to all nurse–patient interactions because the quality of this relationship depends on trust and integrity. Older

patients may have higher degrees of vulnerability than younger adults and may be particularly dependent on the truthfulness of their caregivers.

- **Autonomy:** to respect patients' freedoms, preferences, and rights. Ensuring and protecting older patients' right to provide informed consent are consistent with this principle.

Few nurses would argue with the value of these principles (Fig. 9-1). In fact, practices that reinforce these principles are widely promoted, such as ensuring that patients receive the care they need, respecting the rights of patients to consent to or deny consent for treatment, preventing incompetent staff from caring for patients, and following acceptable standards of practice. Actual nursing practice is seldom simple, however, and situations emerge that add new considerations to the application of moral principles to patient care. Ethical dilemmas can emerge when other circumstances interfere with the clear, basic application of ethical principles.

POINT TO PONDER

How do you respond to and try to solve ethical dilemmas? If you are in practice, do you accept different standards in practice from what you would accept in your personal life? If so, why? ●



FIGURE 9-1 • Nurses follow the principles of doing good, treating people equally, honoring their word, and respecting older adults' rights.

Ethical Dilemmas Facing Gerontological Nurses

Nursing practice involves many situations that could produce conflicts—conflicts between nurses' values and external systems affecting their decisions and conflicts between the rights of patients and nurses' responsibilities to those patients. Box 9-2 presents examples of such dilemmas. These examples are typical of the decisions facing nurses every day and for which there are no simple answers.

It is easy to say that nurses should always follow the regulations, adhere to principles, and do what is best for the patient. But can nurses realistically be expected to follow these guidelines 100% of the time? What if following the rules means they may lose the income on which their families depend, violate the rights of individuals to decide their own destinies, create problems for coworkers or their employers, or cause them to be labeled troublemakers? Is it alright to knowingly violate a regulation or law if no real harm will result? Do nurses need to limit how much of an advocacy role they can assume? Should nurses base their decisions on what is right for themselves, their patients, or their employers? To whom are nurses really most responsible and accountable?

KEY CONCEPT

Most clinical situations do not lend themselves to simple, clear-cut ethical decisions.

Changes Increasing Ethical Dilemmas for Nurses

Questions of ethics are not new to nursing. However, changes within the profession and the entire health care delivery system have introduced new areas of ethical dilemmas to nursing practice.

Expanded Role of Nurses

Nurses have gone beyond the confines of simply following doctors' orders and providing basic comfort and care. They now perform sophisticated assessments, diagnose nursing problems, monitor and give complicated treatments, use alternative modalities of care, and particularly in geriatric care settings, increasingly make independent judgments about patients' clinical conditions. This wider scope of functions, combined with higher salaries and greater status, has increased the accountability and responsibility of nurses for the care of patients.

Medical Technology

Artificial organs, genetic screening, new drugs, computers, lasers, ultrasound, and other innovations have increased the medical community's ability to diagnose and treat problems and to save lives that once would have been given no hope. However, new problems have accompanied these advances, such as determining on whom, when, and how this technology should be used.

New Fiscal Constraints

In the past, the major concern of health care providers and agencies was to provide quality services to help people maintain and restore health. Now, competing and sometimes overriding concerns include being cost effective, minimizing bad debts, and developing alternate sources of revenue. Patients' needs are weighed against economic survival, resulting in some difficult decisions. Further, in this era of rationed care and scarce resources, questions are raised regarding the right of older adults to expect a high quality and quantity of health and social services while other groups lack basic assistance.

KEY CONCEPT

Increasingly, questions are raised regarding the right of older adults to expect greater benefits than other members of society.

BOX 9-2 Examples of Ethical Dilemmas in Gerontological Nursing Practice

While working in an outreach program to bring services to community-based older adults, you meet Mr. Brooks, a 68-year-old homeless man. Mr. Brooks asks your opinion about respiratory symptoms that he has been experiencing over the past several months. He reports a chronic cough, hemoptysis, and dyspnea. He appears thin and admits to having lost weight. He states he has smoked at least one pack of cigarettes daily for over 50 years and has no intention of changing his smoking habit. Although he is not cognitively impaired, he strongly resists efforts to find him housing and arrange for medical evaluation and treatment. You are convinced that without intervention, Mr. Brooks will not survive much longer.

Do you respect Mr. Brooks' right to make his own decisions about his life, even if those decisions run contrary to what is best for his health and well-being?

You are the new director of nursing for a nursing home and were pleased to get the job because yours has become the sole source of income for your family. Ten cases of diarrhea develop among the residents and you know that the regulations require that you report five cases or more. You bring this to the attention of the medical director and administrator, who direct you not to "cause trouble by putting the health department on their backs." The medical director assures you that the problem is not serious and will pass in a few days. You know you should notify the health department, but you also know that the administrator fired the last nursing director for opposing him on a similar issue.

Do you allow a regulation to be violated or risk losing a job that you may badly need?

Insurance coverage expires tomorrow for 76-year-old Mrs. Brady, and the physician has written an order for her discharge. Because Mrs. Brady continued to be weak and slightly confused, she was not able to be instructed in the safe use of home oxygen and medication administration during her hospitalization. Her 80-year-old husband, who is expected to be her primary caregiver, is weak and in poor health himself. The social worker tells you that arrangements have been made for a nurse to visit the home daily but that the

couple does not qualify for 24-hour home care assistance. You and other nursing staff members firmly believe that Mrs. Brady's health will be in jeopardy if she is discharged tomorrow. The physician tells you that you are probably right, but "the hospital cannot be expected to eat the bills that Medicare does not want to pay."

Do you increase the hospital's financial risks by insisting that nonreimbursed care be provided?

Seventy-nine-year-old Mr. Adams lies in his bed in a fetal position, unresponsive except to deep painful stimuli. He has multiple pressure ulcers, recurrent infections, and must be fed with a nasogastric tube. His wife and children express concern over the quality of his life and state that Mr. Adams would never have wanted to survive in this state. The children privately tell the multidisciplinary team that if their father's care expenses continue, their mother will be destitute, and they beg the staff to remove the tube. The family expresses that they do not have the emotional or financial resources to take the issue to court. The physician is sympathetic, but states he feels compelled to continue the feedings and antibiotics because he does not condone euthanasia; however, privately, the physician tells you that he will close his eyes and keep quiet if you want to pull the tube without anyone knowing.

Do you exceed your authority and discontinue a life-sustaining measure to grant the family's request?

Mrs. Smith is dying of cancer and being cared for at home by her husband. The couple has been married for 63 years and has never been apart during that time. They are highly interdependent and each one's world revolves around the other's. During your home nursing visit, the couple openly discusses their plans with you. They tell you that they have agreed that when Mrs. Smith's pain becomes too severe to tolerate, they will both ingest sufficient medication, which they have accumulated, to kill themselves, and die peacefully in each other's arms.

Do you ignore your responsibility to report suicidal intent to respect a couple's wish to end their lives together?

Greater Numbers of Older Adults

Entitlement programs and services for older persons had less impact when only a small portion of the population was old, but with growing numbers of people spending more years in old age and the

increasing ratio of dependent individuals to productive workers, society is beginning to feel burdened. Although older adults' problems and needs are more evident, the ability and responsibility of society to support these needs are in question.

Consider This Case

Seventy-nine-year-old Mr. J has been diagnosed with a rare liver cancer. The oncologist informs Mr. J that although he is willing to attempt a round of chemotherapy, no treatment has been effective in extending life for more than a few months for this aggressive type of cancer. Mr. J and his 66-year-old wife are devastated with this information and look to the Internet for help. They read testimonials of patients who have had similar liver cancers whose lives allegedly were extended for several years with an alternative treatment offered by a hospital in Germany. They make contact with the hospital and learn that Mr. J qualifies for their treatment, which consists of a two-week-long stay at the hospital in Germany, every two months. Each of the hospitalizations costs \$25,000 plus the couple's travel expenses. The couple has no savings but owns a very modest house; they have no children. The couple discusses this option with the oncologist, who discourages the alternative treatment, stating, "Your time and money would be better spent in enjoying the remaining time you have together and making preparations for Mr. J's declining health and ultimate death." Despite the physician's discouraging remarks, Mr. J wants to mortgage the house to pay for the alternative treatment. Mrs. J wants to help her husband extend his life but is concerned that she will face losing the house or paying off the mortgage on her limited Social Security check long after Mr. J dies. She is not comfortable with the idea, but feels that if she voices her concerns, her husband, friends, and family will consider her uncaring.

THINK CRITICALLY

- Does Mr. J have the right to deplete the couple's resources for a questionable treatment that may only extend his life for a few months?
- Does Mrs. J have the right to oppose this plan?
- Does Mr. J's physician have the right to dash Mr. J's hopes?
- How could you assist the couple?



POINT TO PONDER

Do you believe that gerontological nurses have an ethical responsibility to advocate for older individuals by objecting to and bringing public attention to policy and reimbursement decisions that are not in older persons' best interests? ●

Measures to Help Nurses Make Ethical Decisions

Although guidelines exist, no solid answers can solve all of the ethical dilemmas that nurses face. Nurses should, however, minimize their struggles in making ethical decisions by using critical thinking and employing the following measures:

- *Encourage patients to express their desires.* Advise patients to express their desires in advance directives, wills, and other legally binding documents and advocate compliance with patients' wishes.
- *Identify significant others who impact and are impacted.* Consider family members, friends, and caregivers who are involved with the patient and the situation, and their concerns and preferences.
- *Know yourself.* The nurse should review his or her personal value system. The influences of religion, cultural beliefs, and personal experiences should be explored to understand one's unique comfort zone with specific ethical issues.
- *Read.* Review the medical literature for discussions and case experiences of other nurses to gain a wider perspective into the types of ethical problems confronted within nursing and strategies for managing them. Literature outside the field of nursing can help add new facets to one's thinking.
- *Discuss.* In formal education programs or informal coffee breaks, talk about issues with other health team members. Members of the clergy, attorneys, ethicists, and others also can provide interesting perspectives.
- *Form an ethics committee.* Bring together various members of the health team, clergy, attorneys, and lay persons to study ethical problems within the specific care setting, clarify legal and regulatory boundaries, develop policies, discuss ethical problems that surface, and investigate charges of ethical misconduct.
- *Consult.* Clinical ethics consultation takes the form of an ethics committee, or consultation provided by expert individuals or groups (e.g., lawyers, philosophers, or clinicians who specialize in bioethics). Clinical ethics consultants provide education, mediate moral conflict, facilitate moral reflection, and advocate for patients (American Society for Bioethics and the Humanities, 2007). (For information on the competencies and practice of Health Care Ethics Consultants, visit <http://www.asbh.org/papers>.)

- *Share.* When faced with a difficult ethical decision, talk with others and seek guidance and support.
- *Evaluate decisions.* Assess the outcomes of the actions and whether the same courses of action would be chosen in a similar situation in the future. Even the worst decision holds some lessons.



KEY CONCEPT

When facing ethical decisions, it is beneficial to be clear about one's own value system.

Gerontological nursing holds its share of ethical questions. Should resources be spent for a heart transplant for an octogenarian? Should an affluent child rather than public funds pay for a parent's care? How much sacrifice must a family endure to care for a relative at home? How much compromise in care can nurses accept to keep an agency's budget healthy? Nurses must be active participants in the process of developing ethically sound policies and practices affecting the care of older adults. The choice between being a leader or an ostrich in this arena can significantly determine the future status of gerontological nursing practice.

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. What factors have influenced your personal ethics?
2. Discuss the dilemmas arising from the following situations:
 - Having a terminally ill patient confide plans to commit suicide
 - Being instructed to discharge a patient whose care is no longer being reimbursed while knowing that the patient is not ready for discharge
 - Having to terminate a nursing assistant for attendance problems, knowing that she is the sole wage earner in her family
 - Being asked by a senior citizen group to support their position of converting a local playground into a senior citizen center
 - Learning of an insurer's proposed policy of not reimbursing for dialysis and organ transplants for persons over 75 years of age

Resource

American Nurses Association, Center for Ethics and Human Rights

<http://www.nursingworld.org/ethics>

Reference

American Society for Bioethics and the Humanities. (2007). *Core competencies for health care ethics consultation*. Glenview,

IL: American Society for Bioethics and the Humanities. (Also accessible via website: <http://www.asbh.org>)

Recommended Readings

- Ankrom, M., Zelesnick, L., Barofsky, I., Georas, S., Finucane, T. E., & Greenough, W. B. (2001). Elective discontinuation of life-sustaining mechanical ventilation on a chronic ventilator unit. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society, 49*(11), 1549–1554.
- Baggs, J. G., & Mick, D. J. (2000). Collaboration: A tool addressing ethical issues for elderly patients near the end of life in intensive care units. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 26*(9), 41–47.
- Burkhardt, M. A., & Nathaniel, A. (2007). *Ethics and issues in contemporary nursing* (3rd ed.). Clifton Park, NY: Delmar.
- Coventry, M. L. (2006). Care with dignity: A concept analysis. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 32*(5), 42–48.
- Davies, A. J. (2007). An ethical voice for nurses—is anybody listening? *Nursing Ethics, 14*(2), 264.
- Dudzinski, D. M., & Shannon, S. E. (2006). Competent patients' refusal of nursing care. *Nursing Ethics, 13*(6), 608–621.
- Erlan, J. A. (2007). Patient safety, error reduction, and ethical practice. *Orthopedic Nursing, 26*(2), 130–133.
- Ferrell, B.R. (2006). Understanding the moral distress of nurses witnessing medically futile care. *Oncology Nursing Forum, 33*(5), 922–930.
- Gordon, M. (2001). When swallowing is dangerous, who decides? *Annals of Long-Term Care, 9*(6), 76–79.
- Gordon, M. (2001). Whose life is it and who decides? A dilemma in long-term care. *Annals of Long-Term Care, 9*(11), 32–36.
- Kayser-Jones, J. (2000). A case study of the death of an older woman in a nursing home: Are nursing care practices in compliance with ethical guidelines? *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 26*(9), 48–50.
- Lipman, H.I. (2007). Informed consent. *American Journal of Geriatric Cardiology, 16*(1), 42–43.
- MacDonald, H. (2007). Relational ethics and advocacy in nursing: Literature review. *Journal of Advanced Nursing, 57*(2), 119–126.
- McBrien, B. (2007). Exercising restraint: Clinical, legal and ethical considerations for the patient with Alzheimer's disease. *Accident and Emergency Nursing, 15*(2), 94–100.
- Milton, C. L. (2007). Evidence-based practice: Ethical questions for nursing. *Nursing Science Quarterly, 20*(2), 123–126.
- Mullins, L. C., & Hartley, T. M. (2002). Residents' autonomy: Nursing home personnel's perceptions. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 28*(2), 35–44.
- Nusbaum, N. J. (2001). Feeding tubes: Ethical decision making in theory and practice. *Annals of Long-Term Care, 9*(11), 20.
- Nusbaum, N. J. (2001). The refusal of medically indicated therapy. *Annals of Long-Term Care, 9*(1), 63–64.
- Ostwald, S.K. (2007). Preserving patient autonomy and privacy in the era of genetic discoveries. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 33*(5), 3.
- Sieger, C. E., Arnold, J. F., & Ahronheim, J. C. (2002). Refusing artificial nutrition and hydration: Does statutory law send the wrong message? *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society, 50*(3), 544–550.
- Valente, S. M. (2001). End-of-life issues. *Geriatric Nursing, 22*(6), 294–298.

Continuum of Care in Gerontological Nursing

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Services in the Continuum of Care for Older Adults

- Preventive Services
- Partial and Intermittent Care Services
- Complete and Continuous Care Services
- Complementary and Alternative Services

Matching Services to Needs Settings and Roles for Gerontological Nurses

The effects of a graying population are all around us. The media report the spiraling costs of Medicare and Social Security. Banks advertise reverse annuity mortgage programs aimed at helping aging persons remain in their homes. A new retirement community is constructed. A major corporation initiates an adult day-care program. A family leave law is passed. The local hospital issues a circular informing the community of new services for senior citizens. A nearby church sponsors a caregiver support group.

Even if we were not nurses and nursing students, we could not help noticing the impact of older adults on all segments of society. As nurses and nursing students, we are increasingly aware that older adults are major consumers of virtually all health care services. Consider the following:

- Growing numbers of Americans are interested in wellness programs that help them stay youthful, active, and healthy.
- More than one third of all surgical patients are over 65 years of age (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2006).

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 Describe the continuum of services available to older adults.
- 2 Discuss factors that influence service selection for older adults.
- 3 Describe various practice settings for gerontological nurses.
- 4 List major functions of gerontological nurses.

- The prevalence of mental health problems increases with age.
- Chronic diseases occur at a rate four times greater in old age than at other ages (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2005).
- Approximately 40% of all older persons will spend some time in a nursing home during their lives (Center for Medicare and Medicaid Services, 2007).
- Most beds in acute medical hospitals are filled by older patients.
- Older adults are the most significant users of home health services.

Whether working in nursing homes, health maintenance organizations (HMOs), outpatient surgical centers, hospice programs, rehabilitation units, or private practice, nurses are likely to be involved in gerontological nursing.

The diversity of the aging population and the complexity of needs it presents demands a wide range of nursing services. A continuum of care, including services for older adults who are the most independent and well at one end and the most dependent and ill at the other, is essential to meet the complex and changing needs presented by the older population.

Services in the Continuum of Care for Older Adults

The continuum of care consists of preventive services, partial and intermittent care services, and complete and continuous care services (Fig. 10-1). This continuum includes opportunities for community-based services, institutionally-based services, or a combination of both. Complementary and alternative services may also be included in the continuum.

To plan care for older adults effectively, nurses must be familiar with the various forms of care

available. In fact, visiting various agencies to learn about their services firsthand can prove beneficial for the gerontological nurse. Although services can vary from one area to another, some general examples are described in the sections that follow.

Preventive Services

Most older adults reside in the community and function with minimal or no formal assistance. Many of them adjust their lives to accommodate changes commonly experienced with aging; some manage complex care demands. Nurses are challenged to help older adults maintain independence, prevent risks to health and well-being, establish meaningful lifestyles, and develop self-care strategies for health and medical needs.

Preventive services support independent individuals in maintaining their self-care capacity so that they can avoid physical, emotional, social, and spiritual problems. In this category of services, nurses most likely will be involved with the following:

- identifying service needs
- referring older adults to appropriate services
- supporting and coordinating services

Local offices on aging, commissions on retirement education, libraries, and health departments usually provide assistance to older persons in learning about available services. Nurses should encourage older persons to use these resources for any questions and assistance needed. The Silver Pages telephone directory for older adults is also a useful resource. In addition, the Administration on Aging hosts a website that is a gateway to a wide range of information and services for older adults and their families; this can be accessed through <http://www.aoa.gov/eldfam/eldfam.asp>. Examples of preventive services for community-based older adults are described below.

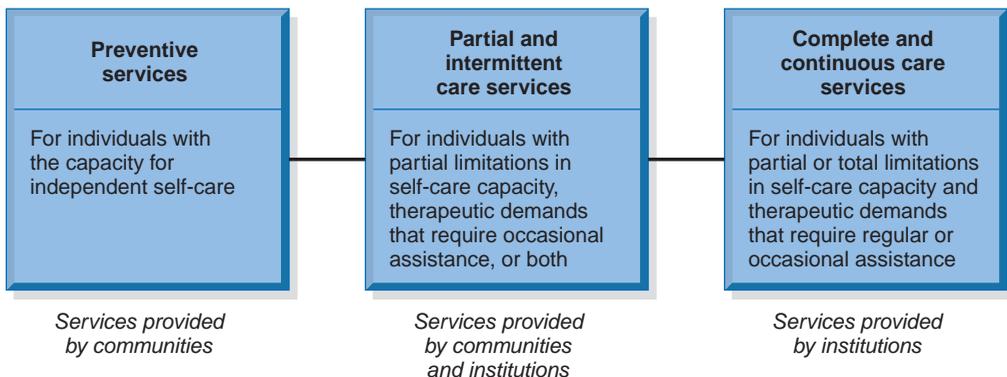


FIGURE 10-1 • Continuum of care services for older adults.

**KEY CONCEPT**

When working with community-based older adults, nurses focus on maintaining independence, preventing risks to health and well-being, establishing meaningful lifestyles, and developing self-care strategies for health and medical needs.

Financial Services

The Social Security Administration may be able to help older persons obtain retirement income, disability benefits, supplemental security income, and Medicare or other health insurances. The district office of the Social Security Administration can provide direct assistance and information. The Veterans Administration (VA) can provide financial aid to older veterans and their families; interested persons should be directed to the local VA office. Various communities offer discounts to senior citizens at department stores, pharmacies, theaters, concerts, restaurants, and transportation services. Lists of discounts may be obtained from local offices on aging.

Many banks offer free checking accounts and other special services to senior citizens. By completing a direct deposit form at their bank, older adults can have the Social Security Administration deposit Social Security and Supplemental Security Income checks directly to the bank; likewise, pension checks can be deposited directly into checking accounts. This service saves older adults from having to travel to the bank and serves as a protection from crime. Reverse annuity mortgages can be arranged through banking institutions to allow older homeowners to use the equity in their homes to remain in the community. It is advisable for older persons to explore details of such services with their individual financial institution.

Financial assistance is also available for burial and funeral expenses. For instance, wartime veterans are eligible for some assistance from the VA. Also, the Social Security Administration provides a small payment for burial expenses to those who have been insured by that program. Local offices of these administrations can be contacted for information; funeral directors are also a good source of information about these benefits. Finally, social service agencies and religious organizations often provide assistance for persons with insufficient funds to pay for burial expenses.

Employment

If older adults are still able to work, nurses can refer them to employment services. State employment services and the Over-60 Employment Counseling Service conduct programs that provide employment

counseling and job placement. Various states also have foster grandparent programs, older businessperson associations, and senior aide projects. Local offices on aging can direct older persons to employment programs and opportunities in their community.

Food

Departments of social services can supply information about and applications for food stamps to help older persons purchase food within the constraints of their budget. These departments may also provide grocery shopping services and nutrition classes. Many senior citizen clubs and religious organizations offer lunch programs that combine socialization with nutritious meals. The local office or department on aging or the health department can direct persons to the sites of such programs.

Housing

Local social service agencies and departments of housing and community development can assist older persons in locating adequate housing at an affordable cost. These agencies also may be able to direct the older homeowner to resources to assist in home repairs and provide information regarding property tax discounts. A variety of life-care communities, villages, mobile home parks, and apartment complexes, specifically designed for older persons, are available throughout the United States. Some of these housing complexes include special security patrols, transportation services, health programs, recreational activities, and architectural adjustments (e.g., low cabinets, grab bars in bathrooms, tinted windows, slopes instead of stairs, and emergency call bells). Some of these housing options require a “buy-in fee” or purchase price, a monthly fee, or both. The older person exploring retirement housing should be advised that sound facts are more important to decision-making than exciting promises. Visits to the housing complex and a full investigation of benefits and costs before making a contractual commitment are essential.

Health Care

Nurses can encourage older adults to engage in preventive health practices to avoid illness and detect health problems at an early stage. Health services for older adults are provided by health departments, HMOs, private practitioners, and hospital outpatient services. In addition to health services, these providers may help older adults obtain transportation and financial assistance for their health care. Older individuals should inquire about such services at their nearest health care office.

Social Support and Activities

Churches, synagogues, and mosques offer not only a place of worship, but also a community that can provide tremendous fellowship, support, and assistance to persons of all ages. Many religious groups offer health and social services such as congregate eating programs, nursing homes, home visitation, and chore assistance. In many circumstances, recipients of services need not be members of the religious group. Increasing numbers of faith communities employ nurses to assist with members' health and social needs, and Faith Community Nursing is a blossoming specialty. Individual churches and synagogues or the mother organization (e.g., Associated Jewish Charities, Catholic Charities) should be contacted for information.

Bureaus of recreation and other groups may also sponsor clubs and activities expressly for senior citizens. Local commissions or offices on aging can provide information related to the availability of such programs, their activities, schedules, and persons to contact for details. Local chapters of the American Association of Retired Persons (AARP) can provide valuable information on services that keep older persons active and independent, ranging from creative leisure endeavors at home to discount travel opportunities. Information about leisure pursuits is just one of the many services the AARP provides. Finally, art museums, libraries, theaters, concert halls, restaurants, and travel agencies should be contacted for special programs offered to senior citizens.

Volunteer Work

Nurses can also encourage older adults to participate in volunteer activities. The wealth of knowledge and experience possessed by older persons makes them especially suited for volunteer work. Not only do older volunteers provide valuable services to others, but they may also achieve a sense of self-worth from their contributions to society. Communities offer numerous opportunities for senior volunteers in hospitals, nursing homes, organizations, schools, and other sites. Older persons should be encouraged to inquire about volunteer opportunities at the agency in which they are interested in serving. Frequently, agencies without a formal volunteer program are able to use a volunteer's service if contacted. National programs also provide meaningful volunteer services in which older persons can participate. The American National Red Cross, Service Corps of Retired Executives, and Retired Senior Volunteer Program are a few such programs. Local offices of these programs should be consulted for details.

Education

Some public schools offer literacy, high school equivalency, vocational, and personal interest courses for

older adults. Many colleges have free tuition for older persons. Individual schools should be contacted for more details.

Counseling

Financial problems, the need to locate new housing, strained family relationships, widowhood, adjustment to a chronic illness, and retirement are among the situations that may necessitate professional counseling. Local social service agencies, religious organizations, and private therapists are among the resources that offer assistance.

Consumer Affairs

Senior adults are frequent victims of unscrupulous people who profit by making convincing but invalid promises. It is important for older adults to investigate cure-alls, vacation programs, and get-rich-quick schemes before investing their funds. Local offices of the Better Business Bureau and consumer protection agencies provide useful information to prevent fraud and deception and offer counseling if problems do arise.

Legal and Tax Services

Local legal aid bureaus and lawyer referral services of the Bar Association may help older adults obtain competent legal assistance at a nominal cost. The Internal Revenue Service can help older people prepare federal tax returns, and the state comptroller's office can assist with state tax returns; local offices should be contacted for additional information. Various colleges and law schools should be investigated for free legal and tax services offered to senior citizens.

Transportation

Older persons often receive discounts for bus, taxicab, subway, and train services; individual agencies should be contacted for more information. Commissions or offices on aging, health and social services departments, and local chapters of the American Red Cross may be able to direct persons to services accommodating wheelchairs and other special needs. Various health and medical facilities provide transportation for persons using their services; individual facilities should be explored for specific details.

Shopping at Home

Persons who are homebound, geographically isolated from services, or who have busy schedules may find it useful to shop at home through mail-order catalogs, home-shopping services on television, and the Internet. Shopping by mail has a long tradition and reduces the inconveniences and risks associated with traveling to a shopping district,

maneuvering in stores, handling large sums of money in public, and carrying packages. The shipping and handling charges may be no greater than transportation costs, not to mention the energy expended in direct shopping.

Additionally, many libraries have a service in which books and tapes can be borrowed by mail; older persons should be encouraged to inquire about such services at their local branch. The U.S. Postal Service provides a service for a nominal fee in which stamps can be ordered by mail; order blanks for stamps by mail can be obtained by contacting the local postal station or postal carrier.

Partial and Intermittent Care Services

Partial and intermittent care services provide assistance to individuals with a partial limitation in self-care capacity or a therapeutic demand that requires occasional assistance. Either because of the degree of the self-care limitation or the complexity of the therapeutic action required, the individual could be at risk for new or a worsening of existing physical, emotional, and social problems if some assistance were not provided at periodic intervals. These services can be provided in community or institutional settings.

Assistance with Chores

Social service agencies, health departments, private homemaker agencies, and faith communities have services for older persons that help them remain in their homes and maintain independence. These services include light housekeeping, minor repairs, errands, and shopping. Local agencies and programs should be contacted for specific information.

Home-Delivered Meals

Persons unable to shop and prepare meals independently may benefit from having meals delivered to their homes. Such a service not only facilitates good nutrition but also provides an opportunity for social contact. Meals on Wheels is the most popularly known program for home delivery of meals, although various community groups provide a similar service. If a local Meals on Wheels is unavailable, departments of social services, health departments, and commissions or offices on aging should be consulted for alternative programs.

Home Monitoring

Some hospitals, nursing homes, and commercial agencies provide home monitoring systems, whereby the older adult wears a small remote alarm that can be pressed in the event of a fall or other emergency. The alarm triggers a central monitoring station to call designated contact persons or the police to assist the individual. This type of service

can be located by calling the local agency on aging or looking in the telephone directory under listings such as Medical Alarms.

A growing array of telemanagement technologies is affording the opportunity for patients to have vital signs, blood glucose levels, and other physiological measurements communicated from the home to providers. Tracking systems and sensors can enable family members or caregivers to monitor patients' activity in their homes from a distance. Two-way audio and video devices allow patients to interact with their providers from their homes. Devices can be used to signal patients when to take medications and perform other tasks. Medication administration systems exist whereby family members and caregivers in another location can be informed if a patient has not taken drugs as scheduled. An Internet search of home care and patient care technology vendors will yield many suppliers of technological aids for home care.

Telephone Reassurance

Older adults who are homebound, disabled, or lonely may benefit from a telephone reassurance program. Those who participate in the program receive a daily telephone call—usually at a mutually agreed on time—to provide them with social contact and ensure that they are safe and well. Local chapters of the American Red Cross and other health or social service agencies should be consulted for telephone reassurance programs that they may conduct.

Home Health Care

Home health care provides nursing and other therapies in individuals' homes. Visiting nurse associations have a long reputation of providing care in the home and are able to help many older persons remain in their homes rather than enter an institution. Programs vary, and services can include bedside nursing, home health aides, physical therapy, health education, family counseling, and medical services. The Department of Veterans Affairs, Medicare, Medicaid, and private insurers, provide reimbursement for home health services, although the conditions and length of coverage vary; specific coverage should be reviewed with the insurer. These programs can be found through health departments, in telephone directories, or through social workers who assist with discharge planning.

Foster Care and Group Homes

Adult foster care and group home programs offer services to individuals who are capable of self-care but who require supervision to protect them from harm.

Older persons placed in these homes may need someone to direct their self-care activities (e.g., remind them to bathe and dress, encourage and provide good nutrition); they may also need someone to oversee their judgments (e.g., financial management). Foster care and group living can serve as short- or long-term alternatives to institutionalization for older persons unable to manage independently in the community. The local department of social services can supply details about these programs.

Adult Day Care

Adult day-care programs have been a growing component of community-based, long-term care, currently numbering over 3500 centers in the United States (National Adult Day Services Association, 2007). These centers provide health and social services to persons with moderate physical or mental disabilities and give respite to their caregivers. Participants attend the program for a portion of the day and enjoy a safe, pleasant, therapeutic environment under the supervision of qualified personnel (Fig. 10-2). The programs attempt to maximize the existing self-care capacity of participants while preventing further limitations. Although the primary focus is social and recreational, there usually is some health component to these programs, such as health screening, supervision of medication administration, and monitoring of health conditions. Rest periods and meals accompany the planned therapeutic activities. Transportation to the site is provided, usually by vehicles equipped to accommodate wheelchairs and persons with other special needs.



FIGURE 10-2 • Adult day care centers provide opportunities for a variety of recreational activities.

In addition to helping older persons avoid further limitations and institutionalization, day-care programs are extremely beneficial to the families of participants. Families interested in caring for their older relatives may be able to continue their routine lifestyle (e.g., maintaining a job, raising small children), knowing that they can have respite from their caregiving responsibilities for a portion of the day while the older person is cared for and safe.

Adult day-care programs are sponsored by public agencies, religious organizations, and private groups, with one-third being freestanding and the remaining ones affiliated with a larger parent organization; each varies in schedule, activities, costs, and program focus. The local telephone directory or information and referral service, as well as the National Adult Day Services Association, can provide information on programs in specific communities.

Day Treatment and Day Hospital Programs

Day treatment and day hospital programs offer social and health services with a primary focus on the latter. Assistance is provided with self-care activities (e.g., bathing, feeding) and therapeutic needs (e.g., medication administration, wound dressing, physical therapy). Physicians, nurses, occupational therapists, and physical therapists are among the care providers affiliated with programs for day treatment. Like adult day-care programs, geriatric day treatment or day hospital programs usually provide transportation to and from the program. Sponsored by hospitals, nursing homes, or other agencies, these programs can be used as alternatives to hospitalization and nursing home admission and can facilitate earlier discharge from these care settings. The local commission or office on aging can guide persons to programs for day treatment or day hospitals in their community.

Assisted Living

Assisted living supplements independent living with special services that maximize an individual's capacity for self-care. Terminology used to describe assisted living can fall under the categories of residential care facilities, personal care, and boarding homes; different states use different regulatory designations. The housing unit is adjusted to meet the needs of older or disabled persons (e.g., wide doorways, low cabinets, grab bars in bathroom, call-for-help light). A guard, hostess, or resident screens and greets visitors in the lobby. Various degrees of personal care assistance may be provided. Residents are encouraged to develop mutual support systems; one example is a system in which residents check on one another every morning to see if anyone needs help. Tenant councils may determine policies

for the facility. Some facilities have a health professional on call or on duty during certain hours; recognizing the unique health care needs in this setting that can be appropriately addressed by nurses, nursing in assisted living communities is a developing specialty. Social programs and communal meals may also be available. State health department regulatory agencies and the local office of the Department of Housing and Urban Development may be able to direct interested persons to such facilities.

Care and Case Management

The identification of needs, location and coordination of services, and maintenance of an independent lifestyle can be tremendous challenges for older persons with chronic health problems. In response to these challenges, the field of geriatric care and case management has developed.

Care and case managers most often are registered nurses or social workers who assess an individual's needs, identify appropriate services, and help the person obtain and coordinate these services. Such services include medical care, home health services, socialization programs, financial planning and management, and housing. By coordinating care and services, geriatric care and case managers assist older persons in remaining independent in the community for as long as possible. The services of care and case managers often provide peace of mind to family members who are unable to be involved with their older family members on a daily basis.

As a system of credentials within this field has surfaced, there is greater distinction between care management and case management. Both of these disciplines perform some type of assessment, develop plans, help people implement and coordinate services, and evaluate care. A distinguishing difference between the two, however, is that care management is a long-term relationship that could endure through multiple episodes of care (e.g., when a family contracts with a care manager to oversee the care of a relative on a long-term basis), whereas case management usually focuses on needs during a specific episode of care (e.g., from hospitalization through rehabilitation for a hip fracture). Case management is viewed as a means to control health care costs and may emphasize services for cost containment; care management may include case management in addition to services unrelated to health care.

Social workers, local information and referral services, and the National Association of Professional Geriatric Care Managers (<http://www.caremanager.org>) can provide assistance in locating care and case managers.



KEY CONCEPT

The American Nurses Association has found professional nurses to be excellent case managers because of their knowledge and skills training, their ability to deliver care that includes both physical and sociocultural components, their familiarity with the process of services referral, and the parallels between the nursing process and the process of case management.

Hospice

Although hospice care is listed here under partial and intermittent care services, it can also be included under complete and continuous care services. This is because the nature of the patient's needs determines the level at which this service is provided.

Rather than a site of care, hospice is a philosophy of caring for dying individuals. Hospice provides support and palliative care to patients and their families. Typically, an interdisciplinary team helps patients and families meet physical, emotional, social, and spiritual needs. The focus is on the quality of remaining life rather than life extension. Survivor support is also an important component of hospice care. Although hospice programs can exist within an institutional setting, most hospice care is provided in the home. Insurers vary in the conditions that must be met for reimbursement of hospice services; individual insurers should be consulted for specific information. Health care and social service agencies can be consulted for information about hospice programs in specific communities.

Complete and Continuous Care Services

At the far end of the continuum of care are services that provide regular or continuous assistance to individuals with some limitation in self-care capacity whose therapeutic needs require 24-hour supervision by a health care professional.

Hospital Care

Hospital care for older persons may be required when diagnostic procedures and therapeutic actions indicate a need for specialized technologies or frequent monitoring. Older adults can be patients of virtually all acute hospital services, except, of course, pediatrics and obstetrics (and here they may be encountered as relatives of the primary patients). Although the procedure or diagnostic problem for which they are hospitalized will dictate many of their service needs, there are some basic measures that can enhance the quality of the hospital experience, as described in Box 10-1.

Increasingly, hospitals are establishing special services for older adults, such as geriatric assessment

BOX 10-1 Measures That Enhance the Quality of Hospital Care for Older Adults

Perform a comprehensive assessment. It is not uncommon for the patient's diagnostic problem to be the primary and sometimes only concern during the hospitalization. However, the patient being treated for a myocardial infarction or hernia also may suffer from depression, caregiver stress, hearing deficit, or other problems that significantly affect health status. By capitalizing on the contact with the patient during the hospitalization and conducting a comprehensive evaluation, nurses can reveal risks and problems that affect health status and that have not been detected before. Broader problems, other than those for which the patient was admitted to the hospital, should be explored.

Recognize differences. Older patients should not be considered in the same way as younger patients: different norms may be used to interpret laboratory tests and clinical findings, the signs and symptoms of disease can appear atypically, more time is needed for care activities, drug dosages must be age-adjusted. The priorities of older patients can differ from those of younger patients. Nurses must be able to differentiate normal pathology from pathology in older adults and understand the modifications that must be made in caring for this population.

Reduce risks. The hospital experience can be traumatic for older patients if special protection is not afforded. The elderly require more time to recover from stress; therefore, procedures and activities must be

planned to provide rest. Altered function of major systems and decreased immunity make it easy for infections to develop. Reduced ability of the heart to manage major shifts in fluid load demand close monitoring of intravenous infusion rates. Lower normal body temperature, the lack of shivering, and reduced capacity to adapt to severe changes in environmental temperature require that older patients receive special protection against hypothermia. Differences in pharmacodynamics and pharmacokinetics in older adults alter their response to medications and heighten the need for close monitoring of drug therapy. The strange environment, sensory deficits, and effects of illness and medications cause falls to occur more easily and make injury prevention a priority. Confusion often emerges as a primary sign of a complication, challenging staff to detect this disorder promptly and identify its cause. Nurses should ensure that measures are taken to reduce patients' risks and recognize complications promptly when they do occur.

Maintain and promote function. Priorities addressing the primary reason for admission usually take the forefront during a patient's hospitalization. For example, the arrhythmia must be corrected, the infection controlled, the fracture realigned. In the midst of diagnostic procedures and treatment activities, there must be consideration of factors that will ensure the older patient's optimal function and independence.

centers, telephone hot lines, and long-term care units. Local medical societies and state hospital associations can answer inquiries about specific hospitals.

Two issues that gerontological nurses need to consider regarding the hospital care of older adults are abbreviated stays and the move toward same-day, outpatient services for procedures that once would have required hospitalization. Although shortening hospital stays can be effective in lowering costs and perhaps reducing or eliminating a patient's hospital-induced complications, many older patients require a longer recovery time than younger adults and may not have adequate assistance in the home. Nurses must assess older patients' capacity to care for themselves—the ability to obtain and prepare food and manage their households—before discharge and arrange assistance as necessary. A telephone call after discharge to check on the patient's status is also useful. (Additional information on hospital care of older adults is provided in Chapter 36.)

Long-Term Care Facilities

Long-term care facilities, commonly called nursing homes, provide 24-hour supervision and nursing care to persons who are unable to be cared for in the community. Chapter 37 discusses these facilities and related nursing responsibilities.

Complementary and Alternative Services

As the emphasis on holistic health and public awareness of and desire for complementary and alternative therapies grow, older adults may seek new or non-conventional types of services (Fig. 10-3). Examples of complementary and alternative services include:

- wellness and renewal centers
- education, counseling, and case management from alternative practitioners
- acupuncture, acupressure
- t'ai chi, yoga, and meditation classes



FIGURE 10-3 • Increasingly, older adults are turning to yoga, meditation, and other complementary health practices.

- therapeutic touch
- medicinal herbal prescriptions
- herbal and homeopathic remedies
- guided imagery sessions
- sound, light, and aromatherapy

Nurses possess a wide range of knowledge and skills that, when combined with additional preparation in complementary and alternative therapies, makes them ideal providers of some of these nonconventional services. Even if they are not direct providers of alternative therapies, nurses can advocate for older adults' rights to make informed choices about using such therapies; educate them about the benefits, risks, and limitations of therapies; and help them find reputable providers. Ideally, these therapies are used in concert with conventional ones in an integrative care model to enable patients to use the best of both worlds.

POINT TO PONDER

Increasing numbers of nurses are offering complementary therapies in independent practices. What types of factors must be considered when establishing a private practice? What do you think prevents more nurses from becoming self-employed nurse entrepreneurs? ●

Matching Services to Needs

The needs of the aging population are diverse and multitudinous. In addition, the needs of an individual older adult are dynamic; in other words, needs fluctuate as capacities and life demands change. These conditions require gerontological nursing services to be planned with consideration of several factors:

- *Services must address physical, emotional, social, and spiritual factors.* Services must be available to meet the unique needs of the older population in a holistic manner. These services should be planned to address whatever problems or needs older adults are likely to develop and should be implemented in a manner relevant to the unique characteristics of this group. For instance, a local health department interested in meeting the special needs of older adults could add screening programs for hearing, vision, hypertension, and cancer to their existing services. Likewise, a social service agency with an abundance of programs for younger families may decide that a widow's support group and retirement counseling services are relevant additions. The consideration of physical, emotional, social, and spiritual factors is essential to providing holistic nursing care.
- *Services must consider unique and changing needs.* Physical, emotional, social, and spiritual services are based on the individual's needs at a given time, recognizing that priorities are not fixed. An older adult could be seen in an outpatient medical service for hypertension control and during that visit express concern regarding a recent rent increase. Unless assistance is obtained to provide additional income or lower-cost housing, the potential effects of this social problem, such as stress and dietary sacrifices, may exacerbate the individual's hypertension. Ignoring this individual's need for particular social services, then, can minimize the effectiveness of the health services provided.
- *Care and services must be flexible.* Opportunities must exist for the older individual to move along the continuum of care, depending on his or her capacities and limitations at different times. Perhaps an older woman lives with her children and attends a senior citizen recreational program during the day. If this woman fractures her hip, she may move along the continuum to hospitalization for acute care and then to a nursing home for convalescence. As her condition improves and she becomes more independent, she moves along the continuum to home care and then possibly adult day care until she regains full independence.
- *Services must be tailored to needs.* Individualization must be practiced to match the unique needs of the individual with specific services.

Just as it is inappropriate to assume that all persons over 65 years of age require nursing home placement, it is equally inappropriate to assume that all older persons would benefit from counseling, sheltered housing, home-delivered meals, adult day care, or any other service. Older individuals' unique capacities and limitations and, most importantly, their preferences should be assessed to identify the most appropriate services for them.

The listing of resources at the end of the chapter can help gerontological nurses and nursing students locate and perhaps stimulate services for older adults. Nurses are encouraged to contact their local agencies on aging and information and referral services for the location of services within specific communities.

Settings and Roles for Gerontological Nurses

Because the continuum of care includes community-based services, institutionally based services, or a combination of both, gerontological nurses have an exciting opportunity to practice in a variety of settings. Some of these settings, such as long-term care facilities and home health agencies, have a long history of nursing participation. Others, such as senior housing complexes and adult day-care centers, offer new opportunities for nurses to demonstrate creativity and leadership.

Although nurses' specific roles and responsibilities can differ vastly in different settings, gerontological nurses in any setting may serve similar functions (Box 10-2). These functions are varied and multifaceted and address the following goals:

- Educate persons of all ages in practices that promote a positive aging experience.
- Assess and provide interventions related to nursing diagnoses.
- Identify and reduce risks.
- Promote self-care capacity and independence.
- Collaborate with other health care providers in the delivery of services.
- Maintain health and integrity of the aging family.
- Advocate for and protect the rights of older adults.
- Promote the use of ethics and standards in the care of older adults.
- Help older persons face the transition to death with peace, comfort, and dignity.

As the presence of older adults in diverse health care settings continues to increase, there will be a crucial need in such settings for nurses with gerontological nursing expertise. These nurses must under-

BOX 10-2 Functions of the Gerontological Nurse

- G**uide persons of all ages toward a healthy aging process.
- E**liminate ageism.
- R**espect the rights of older adults and ensure others do the same.
- O**versee and promote the quality of service delivery.
- N**otice and reduce risks to health and well-being.
- T**each and support caregivers.
- O**pen channels for continued growth.
- L**isten and support.
- O**ffer optimism, encouragement, and hope.
- G**enerate, support, use, and participate in research.
- I**mplement restorative and rehabilitative measures.
- C**oordinate and manage care.
- A**ssess, plan, implement, and evaluate care in an individualized, holistic manner.
- L**ink services with needs.
- N**urture future gerontological nurses for advancement of the specialty.
- U**nderstand the unique physical, emotional, social, and spiritual aspects of each older adult.
- R**ecognize and encourage the appropriate management of ethical concerns.
- S**upport and comfort through the dying process.
- E**ducate to promote self-care and optimal independence.

stand normal aging, unique presentations and management of geriatric health problems, pharmacodynamics and pharmacokinetics in later life, psychological challenges, socioeconomic issues, spirituality, family dynamics, unique risks to health and well-being, and available resources. By possessing gerontological nursing knowledge and skills, nurses can promote efficient, effective, and appropriate health care services to older adults in a variety of settings.

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. How would you defend the position that nurses are ideal geriatric care managers?
2. Mrs. Johns is a 79-year-old woman who has been admitted to an acute medical hospital for a fractured femur. The orthopedic surgeon anticipates no problem in Mrs. Johns ambulating and eventually returning to the community, provided she is successful in her rehabilitation program. You learn that she lives with her son's family in a large metropolitan area. She has a dementia that requires close supervision and reminders to toilet, dress, and eat;

however, with these reminders, she is physically capable of performing activities of daily living. Based on this information, what are the various types of services that can help Mrs. Johns and her family throughout the course of her recovery?

3. What could you do to stimulate the development of services for aging persons in your community? What resources could you mobilize to assist you in this effort?

Resources

General

Administration on Aging Elder Page

http://www.aoa.gov/eldfam/Elder_Rights/Elder_Rights.asp

American Association of Retired Persons

<http://www.aarp.org>

American Geriatrics Society

<http://www.americangeriatrics.org>

American Health Care Association

<http://www.ahca.org>

American Holistic Nurses Association

<http://www.ahna.org>

American Nurses Association Council on Gerontological Nursing

<http://www.nursingworld.org>

American Society on Aging

<http://www.asaging.org>

Children of Aging Parents

<http://www.caps4caregivers.org>

Design for Aging, American Institute of Architects

<http://www.aia.org/dfa>

Gerontological Society of America

<http://www.geron.org>

Gray Panthers

<http://www.graypanthers.org>

Hispanic Federation

<http://www.hispanicfederation.org>

National Association of Area Agencies on Aging

<http://www.n4a.org>

National Association of Professional Geriatric Care Managers

<http://www.caremanager.org>

National Caucus and Center on Black Aged

<http://www.ncba-aged.org>

National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine

<http://www.nccam.gov>

National Council on the Aging, Inc.

<http://www.ncoa.org>

National Eldercare Locator

<http://www.eldercare.gov>

National Gerontological Nursing Association

<http://www.ngna.org>

National Hospice and Palliative Care Organization

<http://www.nho.org>

National Institute on Aging

<http://www.aoa.dhhs.gov>

Nursing Homes

American Association of Homes and Services for the Aging

<http://www.aahsa.org>

American Association for Long Term Care Nursing

<http://www.aaltcn.org>

American Nurses Association Council on Nursing Home Nurses

<http://www.nursingworld.org>

American Public Health Association, Section on Gerontological Health

<http://www.ph.ucla.edu/ghsnet/>

National Association of Directors of Nursing Administration in Long-Term Care

<http://www.nadona.org>

National Association of Home Care

<http://www.nahc.org>

National Citizens Coalition for Nursing Home Reform

<http://www.nccnhr.org>

Visiting Nurse Associations of America

<http://www.vnaa.org>

Adult Day Care

National Adult Day Services Association

<http://www.nadsa.org>

Support Groups

Please refer to resource listings throughout the book under the specific condition.

References

- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2005). Chronic disease overview. Retrieved July 30, 2007, from <http://www.cdc.gov/nccdphp/overview.htm>
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2006). Table 99. Discharges with at least one procedure in non-federal, short-stay hospitals, by sex, age, and selected procedure, United States, 2003-2004 (p. 348). Health, United States, 2006. Hyattsville, MD: National Center for Health Statistics.
- Center for Medicare and Medicaid Services. (2007). Guide to choosing a nursing home. Rockville, MD: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services; also available online at <http://www.medicare.gov/Publications/Pubs/pdf/nhguide.pdf>
- National Adult Day Services Association. (2007). Website <http://www.nadsa.org/findcenter.htm>, accessed July 25, 2007.

Recommended Readings

- American Association of Homes and Services for the Aging & Decision Strategies International (2006). *"The long and winding road." Histories of aging and aging services in America, 2006–2016*. Washington, DC: American Association of Homes and Services for the Aging.
- Benjamin, M. R., & Finlayson, M. (2007). Using religious services to improve health: Findings from a sample of middle-aged and older adults with multiple sclerosis. *Journal of Aging and Health, 19*(3), 537–553.
- Bottrell, M. M., O'Sullivan, J. F., Robbins, M. A., Mitty, E. L., & Mezey, M. D. (2001). Transferring dying nursing home residents to the hospital: DON perspectives on the nurse's role in transfer decisions. *Geriatric Nursing, 22*(6), 310–317.
- Burton, L. C., Weiner, J. P., Stevens, G. D., & Kasper, J. (2002). Health outcomes and Medicaid costs for frail older individuals: A case study of a managed care organization versus fee-for-service care. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society, 50*(2), 382–388.
- Copeland, M. (2002). E-Community health nursing. *Journal of Holistic Nursing, 20*(2), 152–164.
- Donovan, C., & Dupuis, M. (2000). Specialized care unit: Family and staff's perceptions of significant elements. *Geriatric Nursing, 21*(1), 30–33.
- Eliopoulos, C. (1999). *Integrating alternative and conventional therapies: Holistic care for chronic conditions*. St. Louis: Mosby.
- Eliopoulos, C. (2006). *Nursing administration manual for long-term care facilities* (6th ed.). Glen Arm, MD: Health Education Network.
- Eloniemi-Sulkava, U., Notkola, I. L., Hentinen, M., Kivela, S. L., Sivenius, J., & Sulkava, R. (2001). Effects of supporting community-living demented patients and their caregivers: A randomized trial. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society, 49*(10), 1282–1286.
- Garrett, N., & Martini, E. M. (2007). The boomers are coming: A total cost of care model of the impact of population aging on the cost of chronic conditions in the United States. *Disease Management, 10*(2), 51–60.
- Gelfand, D. E. (2006). *The aging network: Programs and services*. New York: Springer.
- Grando, V. T., Mehr, D., Popejoy, L., Maas, M., Rantz, M., et al. (2002). Why older adults with light care needs enter and remain in nursing homes. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 28*(7), 47–52.
- Hagen, B. (2001). Nursing home placement: Factors affecting caregivers' decisions to place family members with dementia. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 27*(2), 44–47.
- Hammer, B. J. (2001). Community-based case management for positive outcomes. *Geriatric Nursing, 22*(5), 271–275.
- Hayes, J. M. (1999). Respite for caregivers: A community-based model in a rural setting. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 25*(1), 22–26.
- Hertz, J. E., & Anschutz, C. A. (2002). Relationships among perceived enactment of autonomy, self-care, and holistic health in community-dwelling older adults. *Journal of Holistic Nursing, 20*(2), 166–186.
- Hollander, M. J., Chappell, N. L., Prince, M. J., & Shapiro, E. (2007). Providing care and support for an aging population: Briefing notes on key policy issues. *Healthcare Quarterly, 10*(3), 34–45.
- Horttana, B. M., Ahlstrom, G., & Fahlstrom, G. (2007). Patterns of and reasons for relocation in dementia care. *Geriatric Nursing, 28*(3), 193–200.
- Johnson, R. A., & Tripp-Reimer, T. (2001). Relocation among ethnic elders: A review. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 27*(6), 22–26.
- Leggett, D. (2007). The aging work force—helping employees navigate midlife. *American Association of Occupational Health Nurses Journal, 55*(4), 169–175.
- Lewis, M., Hepburn, K., Corcoran-Perry, S., Narayan, S., & Lally, R. M. (1999). Options, outcomes, values, likelihoods. Decision-making guide for patients and their families. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 25*(12), 19–25.
- Mezey, M., Boltz, M., Esterson, J., & Mitty, E. (2005). Evolving models of geriatric nursing care. *Geriatric Nursing, 26*(1), 11–15.
- Mitty, E., & Flores, S. (2007). Assisted living nursing practice: Admission assessment. *Geriatric Nursing, 28*(1), 27–30.
- Mitty, E., & Flores, S. (2007). Assisted living nursing practice: Medication management: Part 1, assessing the resident for self-medication ability. *Geriatric Nursing, 28*(2), 83–89.
- National Center for Health Statistics. (2005). National Hospital Discharge Survey. Advance data from Vital and Health Statistics; no. 359. Hyattsville, MD: US Department of Health and Human Services, CDC, National Center for Health Statistics. Available at <http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/data/ad/ad359.pdf>
- Novartis. (2006). *The senior care source: Facts, figures & forecasts*. Volume 4. East Hanover, NJ: Novartis Pharmaceuticals Corporation.
- Penrod, J., & Dellasega, C. (2001). Caregivers' perspectives of placement: Implications for practice. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 27*(11), 28–36.
- Racher, F. E. (2002). Synergism of frail rural elderly couples: Influencing interdependent independence. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 28*(6), 32–39.
- Rice, R. (2000). Telecaring in home care: Making a telephone visit. *Geriatric Nursing, 21*(1), 56.
- Rosswurm, M. S., Larrabee, J. H., & Zhang, J. (2002). Training family caregivers of dependent elderly adults through on-site and telecommunications programs. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 28*(7), 27–38.
- Siegler, E. L., Glick, D., & Lee, J. (2002). Optimal staffing for acute care of the elderly (ACE) units. *Geriatric Nursing, 23*(3), 152–154.
- Stoesz, D. (2007). Age concerns: Innovation through care management. *Journal of Aging and Social Policy, 14*(304), 245–260.
- Tichawa, U. (2002). Creating a continuum of care for elderly individuals. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 28*(1), 46–51.
- Young, H. M., Sikma, S. K., Johnson Trippett, L. S., Shannon, J., & Blachly, B. (2006). Linking theory and gerontological nursing practice in senior housing. *Geriatric Nursing, 27*(6), 346–354.

Self-Care for the Gerontological Nurse

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Characteristics of Nurse Healers

- Presence
- Availability
- Connections
- Models of Holism

Self-Care and Nurturing

- Following Positive Health Care Practices
- Strengthening and Building Connections
- Committing to a Dynamic Process

Gerontological nursing is a unique specialty within the wide range of knowledge and skills required for providing services to aging adults. However, providing expert gerontological nursing care demands more than possessing knowledge and clinical skills. Nurses bring life experiences, unique personalities, and their very *being* to their relationships with older persons as they:

- guide older individuals with common yet challenging life transitions
- assist individuals in exploring the deeper meaning of the experiences they face
- soothe the physical, emotional, and spiritual pain that frequently invade fragile territory
- provide care that facilitates individuals in becoming integrated, restored, and balanced

Offering this level of nursing care demands that nurses establish heart-to-heart connections—the kind that differentiate doing a job from authentically caring for another

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 Describe the attributes of a nurse healer.
- 2 Identify strategies that can be used for self-care and nurturing.

human being. Because of the level of personal investment and engagement required, gerontological nurses must practice self-care to optimally engage in healing relationships with patients.

Characteristics of Nurse Healers

Nurses are not merely task-doers but important instruments of their patients' healing process. If completion of tasks was all that constituted nursing care, robots could easily replace nurses. After all, technology exists that could enable a machine to administer a medication, reposition a patient, monitor vital signs, record significant events, and perform other common tasks. Yet, the nursing profession emerged as a *healing art* characterized by its practitioners offering comfort, compassion, support, and caring that were equally (and perhaps sometimes more) important to patients' healing as the procedural tasks of caregiving. The nurse serves as a healer whose interactions assist the patient in returning to wholeness (i.e., optimal function and harmony among body, mind, and spirit).

Nurses who support holism and healing do not sit on the sidelines as observers; they actively engage in patients' healing processes. This level of engagement is similar to that of the dance instructor who takes the student by the hand and demonstrates the correct steps instead of merely offering directions from the sidelines.



KEY CONCEPT

Nurses actively engage in the patient's dance of healing—teaching, guiding, modeling, coaching, encouraging, and helping the patient through the various steps.

Characteristics that enable nurses to engage as healers for older adults include presence, availability, willingness to form connections, and being models of holism.

Presence

The ability to be present in the moment also characterizes nurse healers. Despite the many real activities that nurses typically must complete, the “busyness” of the average clinical setting, and the unending “to do” list lingering over them, nurse healers are able to protect their interactions with patients from distractions. When with patients, they are *with* them, giving their full, undivided attention. They actively listen; hear what patients are saying—and not saying—; and use their senses to detect subtle clues about needs. Even if the time

spent with individual patients is brief, the time fully belongs to their patients.



POINT TO PONDER

Reflect on an interaction in which the person with whom you were speaking seemed distracted and hurried. How did that influence your communication? ●

Availability

Nurse healers display availability of body, mind, and spirit. They provide the time and space for patients to express, explore, and experience. “That’s not my job” are words seldom heard from nurse healers. For example, a nurse may be monitoring a patient who is recovering from cataract surgery in an outpatient surgical unit when the patient confides to the nurse that he is distressed at learning that his grandchild was arrested for possession of illegal drugs. A response from the nurse along the lines of, “You shouldn’t worry about that now,” gives the message that the nurse is not available to discuss the patient’s concern and most likely will close the door to further discussion. By contrast, responding, “This must be very difficult for you,” could be more helpful in conveying openness and interest. Although the nurse in the latter example may not be able to provide all the possible assistance that the patient may require, he or she can allow the patient the safe space to unload this burden on his mind and offer suggestions for follow-up help.

Connections

Nurse healers make connections with their patients. They engage with patients in meaningful ways that require openness, respect, acceptance, and a non-judgmental attitude. They commit to learning about what makes each patient a unique individual—the life journey that has been traveled, the story that has formed. At times, this may require that nurses offer insights from their own journeys and share some of the chapters from their lives.



KEY CONCEPT

Exploring the unique threads that have been woven into the tapestry of a patient’s life facilitates connection.

Models of Holism

Effective nurse healers are models of holism, which begins with good self-care practices. They not only eat a proper diet, exercise, obtain adequate rest, and follow other positive health practices, but they also

are attentive to their emotional and spiritual well-being. Integrity demands that nurses know what they want others to know and behave as they want others to behave. Self-care also is essential to performing any other role as a nurse healer.

Self-Care and Nurturing

The depth and intensity of the nurse–patient relationship that results when nurses function as healers creates a highly therapeutic and meaningful experience that reflects the essence of professional nursing. Although the formal educational preparation of nurses offers the foundation for this level of healing relationship, the nurse’s self-care influences the potential height and depth that can be realized (Fig. 11-1). Some strategies for self-care include following positive health care practices and strengthening and building connections.

Following Positive Health Care Practices

Like all human beings, nurses have basic physiological needs that include:

- respiration
- circulation
- nutrition
- hydration
- elimination
- movement
- rest
- comfort
- immunity
- safety



FIGURE 11-1 • Nurses compromise their ability to care for others when they do not care for themselves.

Most nurses are familiar with the requirements necessary to meet each of these needs (e.g., proper diet, exercise plans) but may not be applying this knowledge to their personal lives. Self-care can suffer as a result.

A periodic “check-up” of physical status can prove useful in disclosing problems that could not only minimize the ability to provide optimal services to patients, but also threaten personal health and well-being. Table 11-1 provides a form that can be used to guide this self-evaluation. It could prove useful for nurses to allocate a few hours, find a quiet place, and critically review their health status.

After identifying problems, nurses can plan realistic actions to improve health. Writing the actions on an index card and placing that card in an area that is regularly seen (e.g., dresser, desk, or dashboard) can provide regular reminders of intended corrective actions.

KEY CONCEPT

Efforts to improve self-care practices can be facilitated by partnering with a “buddy” who can offer support, encouragement, and a means for accountability.

Strengthening and Building Connections

Humans are relational beings who are intended to live in community with others. The richness of nurses’ connections in their personal lives provides fertile soil to grow meaningful connections with patients. Yet, as basic and common as relationships can be, they can be quite challenging. Among the major challenges nurses may face are finding and protecting the time and energy to connect with others in meaningful ways. Like many other professionals in helping professions, nurses may find that the physical, emotional, and mental energies exerted in a typical workday leave little in reserve to invest in nurturing relationships with friends and family. The reactions to work-related stress can be displaced to significant others, thereby interfering with positive personal relationships. To compound the problems, concern for patients’ welfare or employer pressure can lead to excessive overtime work, leaving precious little time and energy for nurses to do anything more in their off hours than attend to basics. Strained personal connections are the weeds of untended relationship gardens.

POINT TO PONDER

List five significant individuals in your life. Reflect on the amount of quality time you have with each of them and determine if this time is conducive to a strong relationship. ●

TABLE 11-1 Taking Stock of Unhealthy Practices

Need	Sign/Symptom/ Unhealthy Habit	Cause(s)/ Contributing Factor(s)	Corrective Action
Respiration/ circulation			
Nutrition/ hydration			
Elimination			
Movement			
Rest			
Solitude			
Comfort			
Immunity			
Safety			

Relationships

The allocation of time and energy requires the same planning as the allocation of any finite resource. Ignoring this reality risks suffering the consequences of poor relationships. Recognizing that there always will be activities to vie for time and energy, nurses need to take control and develop practices that reflect the value of personal relationships. This can involve limiting the amount of overtime worked to no more than “x” hours each week, dedicating every Thursday evening to dining out with the family, or blocking out Sunday afternoons to visit or telephone friends. Expressing intentions through understood “personal policies” (e.g., informing a supervisor that you will work no more than one double shift per month) and committing time on your calendar (e.g., blocking off every Sunday afternoon for “friends’ time”) increase the likelihood that significant relationships will receive the attention they require.

Spirituality

Time and energy also must be protected to afford ample time for connecting with God or another

higher power. The spiritual grounding resulting from this connection enables nurses to better understand and serve the spiritual needs of patients. Nurses can enhance spiritual connection through prayer, fasting, attending church or temple, engaging in Bible or other holy book studies, taking periodic retreats, and practicing days of solitude and silence.

Connection With Self

Connection with self is essential to nurses’ self-care, and this begins with a realistic self-appraisal. Examples of strategies to facilitate this process include sharing life stories, journaling, meditating, and taking retreats.



POINT TO PONDER

What does it mean to you to be connected to self? ●

Sharing Life Stories Every adult has a unique and rich storehouse of experiences that have been cemented into the life in which he or she dwells. Oral sharing of life stories with others helps people

BOX 11-1 Possible Topics for Nurses to Include in Their Life Stories

FAMILY PROFILE

- Description of parents, siblings, and extended family
- Relationship with family members
- Religious, cultural, and ethnic beliefs and practices

CHILDHOOD

- Birth: where, when, unusual events
- Reason you were given your name
- Schools attended and significant memories related to them
- Friends; roles you played in relationships
- Family dynamics
- Family health beliefs, attitudes, and practices
- Experiences with illness, hospitals, and health care professionals
- Special experiences
- Unpleasant experiences
- Religious activities; spirituality

ADOLESCENCE

- Favorite activities
- Schools attended and significant memories related to them
- Friends: role/position in peer group

- Special experiences
- Unpleasant experiences
- Religious activities; spirituality
- Experiences with illness, hospitals, and health care professionals
- Factors stimulating interest in nursing

ADULTHOOD

- Reasons for selecting nursing over other careers
- Various jobs held
- Education
- Spouse: when, how, and where you met
- Feelings about marriage
- Places you've lived
- Family dynamics
- Friends; your role in friendships
- Favorite activities, interests
- Special experiences
- Unpleasant experiences
- Spiritual growth; religious activities
- Impressions, disillusionment with nursing profession
- Goals
- Legacy you'd like to leave

gain self-insight and put experiences into a perspective that affords meaning. As people share stories, they begin to see that theirs are not the only lives that have been less than ideal, sprinkled with pain, or have unfolded in unintended ways. Writing one's life story is a powerful means of reflection that affords a permanent record that can be revisited and reconsidered as one gains deeper wisdom about self and others. Box 11-1 provides some ideas for topics to be included in a life story. The process of sharing life stories can be particularly meaningful for gerontological nurses in their work with older adults who often have interesting life histories that they are eager to share—and that frequently can offer rich life lessons.

Journaling Writing personal notes in a journal or diary can facilitate reflection on one's life. These writings differ from written life stories in that they record current activities and thoughts rather than past ones. An honest written account of feelings, thoughts, conflicts, and behaviors can help people learn about themselves and work through issues.

Meditating The ancient practice of meditation has helped people sort out thoughts and gain clarity of direction for ages. Many nurses find meditation challenging because the nature of their work consists of *doing*—and multitask doing, at that! However, periods of *being still* enable nurses to offer an optimum healing presence to their patients.

There are several techniques that can be used for meditating (see Chapter 13, Box 13-2); individuals vary in their preference for the different forms of meditation. Some people may focus on a word or prayer, whereas others may choose to have no intentional thought and to be open to whatever thoughts drift into their minds. Essential elements to any form of meditation are a quiet environment, comfortable position, and calm and passive attitude. The physiological responses associated with the deep relaxation achieved during meditation have many health benefits (e.g., improved immunity, reduced blood pressure, and increased peripheral blood flow). Often, issues a person has been struggling with can be clarified through meditation.

Taking Retreats To many nurses, particularly women, taking a few days off “to do nothing” seems like a luxury that cannot be afforded. After all, there is the house to get in order, shopping that must be done, and overtime that can be worked to gather a few extra dollars for vacation. In addition to the tasks that compete for attention and time, there may be the mental script that insidiously gives the message that it is selfish to forfeit tangibly productive activities to spend time thinking, reflecting, and experiencing. Yet, unless nurses want their interactions with patients to be solely mechanical (i.e., task oriented), they must treat themselves as more than machines. Their bodies, minds, and spirits must be restored and refreshed periodically to offer holistic care—and retreats offer an ideal means to achieve that.

A retreat is a withdrawal from normal activities. It can be structured or unstructured, guided by a leader or self-directed, and taken with a group or alone. Although retreats are offered in exotic locations that offer lavish provisions, they need not be luxurious or expensive. Whatever the location or structure, key elements of the retreat experience include a respite from routine responsibilities; freedom from distractions (telephones, children, and doorbells); no one to care for and worry about other than self; and a quiet place. During the retreat, one can spend time on activities that can aid in achieving peace and clarity, such as meditating, journaling, expressing oneself creatively through art, and praying. If life circumstances prevent a multi-day or even a full-day retreat, a partial-day retreat can be planned within one’s home by establishing peace and privacy (e.g., sending children off; asking roommates to stay away for the morning; unplugging telephones; turning off the computer; or placing an out-of-order sign on the doorbell) and allocating time in retreat-type activities. The charge that a retreat provides to one’s physical, emotional, and spiritual batteries will more than compensate for the tasks that were postponed.



KEY CONCEPT

When nurses have strong, grounded connections to themselves, they are in a better position to have meaningful connections with patients.

Committing to a Dynamic Process

Self-care is an ongoing process that demands active attention. However, knowing the actions that support self-care is only the beginning. Committing to engaging in one’s self-care completes the picture. This may mean that limits are set on the amount of overtime worked to adhere to an exercise schedule or

that one is willing to face the uncomfortable feelings experienced during the process of reflecting on less than pleasant life experiences. Sacrifices, unpopular decisions, and discomfort can result when one chooses to “work on oneself.” Yet, it is this inner work that contributes to nurses being effective healers and models of healthy aging practices.



KEY CONCEPT

Life changes, as does the attention it requires; therefore, self-care is dynamic. Areas that seemed to be under control may spring leaks and demand new attention. Strategies that proved successful in the past may become less effective and need replacement.

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. Mindful care of one’s body, mind, and spirit is essential to providing holistic gerontological nursing care. What does *mindful care* mean to you?
2. What would hinder you from engaging in self-care practices? What could you do to reduce obstacles to your self-care?
3. What signs, symptoms, or unhealthy habits exist in your life? What types of corrective actions could you commit to improve them?
4. How could you incorporate elements of self-care described in this chapter in an employee health program to aid people in aging well?

Resource

American Holistic Nurses’ Association

<http://www.ahna.org>

Recommended Readings

- Barnum, B. S. (2006). *Spirituality in nursing: From traditional to new age*. New York: Springer Publishing Co.
- Cox, A. M., & Albert, D. H. (Eds.). (2003). *The healing heart: Communities*. British Columbia, Canada: New Society Publishers.
- Dossey, B. M., Keegan, L., & Guzzetta, C. E. (2005). *Holistic nursing: A handbook for practice*. Sudbury, MA: Jones & Bartlett Publishers.
- Downey, M. (2007). Effects of holistic nursing course: A paradigm shift for holistic health practices. *Journal of Holistic Nursing*, 25(2), 119–125.
- Eliopoulos, C. (Ed.) (2005). *Invitation to holistic health*. Sudbury, MA: Jones & Bartlett.
- Hall, B. A. (2005). *The art of becoming a nurse healer*. Orlando, FL: Bandido Books.
- Hieb, M. (2006). *Inner journaling through art journaling. Learning to see and record your life as a work of art*. Philadelphia: Jessica Kingsley Publishers.

- Kane, J., & Warner, C. G. (1999). *Touched by a nurse: Special moments that transform lives*. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Kosowski, M. M., & Roberts, V. W. (2003). When protocols are not enough: Intuitive decision making by novice nurse practitioners. *Journal of Holistic Nursing*, 21(1), 52–72.
- Sappington, J. Y. (2003). The spirit of holistic nursing. *Journal of Holistic Nursing*, 21(1), 8–19.
- Schneider, M. A. (2007). Extinguish burnout. *Nursing Management*, 38(3), 44–48.
- Watson, J. (1999). *Postmodern nursing and beyond*. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone.
- Weinger, K. (2007). Psychosocial issues and self-care. *American Journal of Nursing*, 107(6 Supplement), 34–38.
- Zuzelo, P. R. (2007). Exploring the moral distress of registered nurses. *Nursing Ethics*, 14(3), 344–359.

UNIT 3



Fostering Connection and Gratification

12 SEXUALITY AND INTIMACY

13 SPIRITUALITY

Sexuality and Intimacy

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Attitudes Toward Sex and Older Adults Menopause as a Journey to Inner Connection

Symptom Management and Patient Education
Self-Acceptance

Realities of Sex in Older Adulthood

Sexual Behavior and Roles
Intimacy
Age-Related Changes and Sexual Response

Identifying Barriers to Sexual Activity

Unavailability of a Partner
Psychological Barriers
Medical Conditions
Erectile Dysfunction
Medication Adverse Effects
Cognitive Impairment

Promoting Healthy Sexual Function

Attitudes Toward Sex and Older Adults

For many years, sex was a major conversational taboo in the United States. Discussion and education concerning this natural, normal process were discouraged and avoided in most circles. Literature on the subject was minimal and usually secured under lock and key. An interest in sex was considered sinful and highly improper. Although people were aware that sexual intercourse had more than a procreative function, the other benefits of this activity were seldom openly shared; society viewed sexual expression

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 Discuss the effects of societal attitudes toward sex and older adults.
- 2 Identify measures to manage menopausal symptoms.
- 3 Explain the effects of aging on sexuality and sexual function.
- 4 Describe factors that can contribute to sexual dysfunction.
- 5 Describe ways nurses can promote healthy sexual function in older adults.

outside of wedlock as disgraceful and indecent. The reluctance to accept and intelligently confront human sexuality led to the propagation of numerous myths, the persistence of ignorance and prejudice, and the relegation of sex to a vulgar status.

Fortunately, attitudes have changed over the years, and sexuality has come to be increasingly understood and appreciated. Education has helped erase the mysteries of sex for both adults and children, and magazines, books, television shows, and websites on the topic flourish. Sex courses, workshops, and counselors throughout the country are helping people gain greater insight about and enjoyment of sex. Not only has the stigma attached to premarital sex been greatly reduced, but also increasing numbers of unmarried couples are living together with society's acceptance. Sex is now viewed as a natural, good, and beautiful shared experience.

However, "natural," "good," and "beautiful" are terms seldom used to describe the sexual experiences of older individuals. When the topic of sex and older adults is confronted, much ignorance and prejudice concerning sex reappear. Education about the sexuality of old age is minimal; literature abounds on the sexuality of all individuals in society with minimal attention to older individuals. Any signs of interest in sex or open discussions of sex by older persons often are mocked, discouraged, or viewed suspiciously. The same criteria that make a man a "playboy" at 30 years of age make him a "dirty old man" at 70 years of age. Unmarried young and middle-aged adults who engage in pleasurable sexual experiences are accepted, but widowed grandparents seeking the same enjoyment frequently elicit disbelief and ridicule.

POINT TO PONDER

How comfortable are you acknowledging that your older relatives could be sexually active? ●

Myths about older adults and sex run rampant. How many times do we hear that women lose all desire for sex after menopause, that older men cannot achieve an erection, and that older people are not interested in sex? Respect for older adults as vital, sexual beings is minimized by the lack of privacy afforded them; by the lack of credence given to their sexuality; and by the lack of acceptance, respect, and dignity granted to their continued sexual expression. The myths, ignorance, and vulgar status previously associated with sex in general have been conferred on the sexuality of the older population. Such misconceptions and prejudices are an injustice to persons of all ages. They reinforce any fears and aversion the young have to growing old. They impose conformity on older adults, requiring that they either forfeit warm and

meaningful sexual experiences or suffer feelings of guilt and abnormality.



KEY CONCEPT

Often, society conveys the same attitudes regarding sex among older adults as it has in the past concerning sex in general.

One consequence of myths about sex in older adulthood is that older adults may not receive respect as sexual beings. Nurses may witness subtle or blatant violations of respect to older adults' sexual identity such as the following:

- belittling older adults' interest in clothing, cosmetics, and hairstyles
- dressing men and women residents of an institution in similar asexual clothing
- denying a woman's request for a female aide to bathe her
- forgetting to button, zip, or fasten clothing when dressing older persons
- unnecessarily exposing older individuals during examination or care activities
- discussing incontinent episodes when the involved individual's peers are present
- ignoring a man's desire to be cleaned and shaved before his female friend visits
- ignoring attempts by older adults to look attractive
- joking about two senior citizens' interest in and flirtation with each other

These examples demonstrate a lack of understanding that it is important to recognize and respect the sexual identity of any individual, regardless of age. It is not unusual for a 30-year-old to be interested in the latest fashions; for two 35-year-olds to be dating; or for a 20-year-old woman to prefer a female gynecologist. Almost any young woman would not want a new date to see her before she had time to adjust her cosmetics, hair, and clothing. No care provider would walk into the room of a 25-year-old in traction and undress and bathe him in full view of other people in the room. Older adults are entitled to the same dignity and respect as sexual human beings that are afforded to persons of other ages.

POINT TO PONDER

What attitudes toward sex and older adults do you hold? What contributed to the formation of these attitudes? ●

An additional consequence of stereotypical views toward sex in late life is that issues pertaining to safe

sex among senior adults are often ignored. The incidence of AIDS has increased more than twice as quickly in people over age 50 than in younger adults, and this older population accounts for as many as 17% of the AIDS cases in the United States (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2007). Sexually active older persons who have sex with new or multiple partners may not consider using a condom because pregnancy is no longer a risk; they also may have misconceptions about sexually-transmitted diseases, believing that these diseases only affect younger persons. If they do become symptomatic or learn that a sexual partner is HIV-positive, older adults may be embarrassed to seek medical attention; if they do present with symptoms to a provider, the provider may not associate the symptoms with HIV simply because the person is old (e.g., HIV-related dementia can be misdiagnosed as Alzheimer's disease). These factors contribute to HIV usually being diagnosed in a later stage in older persons. It is important for nurses to reinforce safe sex practices to older persons and to ask about safe sex practices and risk factors for HIV during the assessment.

Nurses can play a significant role in educating and counseling about sexuality in late life; they can encourage attitude changes by their own examples.

Menopause as a Journey to Inner Connection

Menopause, the permanent cessation of menses for at least one year, occurs for most women around the fifth decade of life. Some individuals view menopause as a time of experiencing and managing hormonal changes. In fact, to some extent, menopause has been “medicalized” because it is considered a problem or condition that must be treated. Although there are real physiological concerns to consider, menopause is broader in scope than merely a physiological experience. It is a time of important transition in a woman's life that can result in an awakening of a new wholeness of body, mind, and spirit. By the time the average woman reaches menopause, she has considerable life experience that has afforded her a special wisdom. Many cultures honor the wisdom gleaned from years of living and seek the guidance of older adults. Unfortunately, Western society tends to prize the physical beauty of youth over the inner beauty of age. Women in their fifties, sixties, and beyond can feel unattractive, unappreciated, and underused as a result.



KEY CONCEPT

Menopause marks the entry into a new season of life, characterized by wisdom and groundedness.

As a generation of baby boomers—who are redefining the norms for aging—experiences menopause, an enlightened view of menopause is emerging. This generation of assertive, proactive women will not be confined to limited roles based on physical characteristics. They will desire and demand that their talents be used and that they have opportunities for continued growth. The wonder and wisdom of age may receive a long-deserved place of importance.

Symptom Management and Patient Education

Effective management of the physical aspects of menopause can enable women to experience this season of life as a positive passage rather than a distressing detour. Gerontological nurses can serve aging women well by being knowledgeable about menopause and helping them separate myths from realities about this life transition.

Menopause occurs when estrogen levels fall and the reduced number of ovarian follicles lose their ability to respond to gonadotropic hormone stimulation. Before menopause, the main source of estrogen is estradiol, which is produced by the ovaries. When the ovaries decline in function, most estrogen is obtained through the conversion of androstenedione to estrone in the skin and adipose tissue. A variety of factors can cause estrogen levels to vary among postmenopausal women. Box 12-1 lists symptoms that may be associated with estrogen loss.

It has long been known that hormone therapy can reduce symptoms associated with menopause; however, less certain have been the issues of risks and benefits for various women. In 1991 the National Institutes of Health (NIH) launched the Women's Health Initiative, which studied the effects of hormones in more than 27,000 women. In 2002, NIH stopped the part of the study in which women received estrogen and progestin due to findings that these women experienced higher heart risks; the portion of the study in which women received only estrogen continued. Concerned for their risks, many women discontinued hormone replacement therapy (HRT) when the study results were announced. Shortly thereafter, however, additional research findings suggested that women who started HRT within 10 years of menopause appeared to have a lower risk of heart attack and breast cancer, whereas women who began taking hormones 10 or more years past menopause had a significantly higher risk of heart problems; these findings suggest that the age at which therapy is initiated is relevant to risks (Rossouw et al., 2007). Although this recent study showed that estrogen may protect younger women's

BOX 12-1 Symptoms Associated With Menopause**PHYSICAL SYMPTOMS**

- Hot flashes
- Fatigue
- New onset of migraines
- Symptoms of arthritis, fibromyalgia
- Heart palpitations, atypical angina
- Restless leg syndrome
- Vaginal dryness, itchiness
- Loss of subcutaneous fat in labia
- Insomnia
- Decreased metabolic rate, weight gain
- Increased fat on stomach and hips
- Lower urinary tract symptoms (urinary frequency, stress incontinence, urgency, nighttime voiding)
- Bladder and vaginal infections

- Increased risks of osteoporosis, heart disease, colon cancer

EMOTIONAL/COGNITIVE SYMPTOMS

- Moodiness
- Depression
- Memory problems
- Fuzzy thinking
- Lack of concentration
- Lower tolerance for annoyance
- Quick to anger
- Greater impatience
- Anxiety, restlessness, new onset of panic disorder
- Paranoia, psychotic symptoms

hearts and may reduce the risks of hip fracture, diabetes, and colon cancer, it also revealed that the hormones increase the risk of other problems, such as blood clots and stroke. Although women can feel reassured that they are not increasing their risk for cardiovascular disease by using hormones to treat symptoms as they go through menopause, it is not wise to extrapolate from the data that women should take hormones for the prevention of heart disease.


KEY CONCEPT

The benefits and risks associated with hormone replacement therapy depends on the age at which a woman starts therapy.

Whether to begin HRT is an individual decision that a woman needs to make after careful review of risk factors and discussion with her health care provider. Contraindications to HRT include endometriosis, thrombophlebitis, migraines, neuro-ophthalmologic disease, liver disease, and estrogen-dependent or endometrial cancer. If HRT is chosen, it should begin with the lowest possible dose that will control symptoms and be reviewed annually, particularly as research continues to yield new findings. Some of the potential side effects of HRT include fluid retention, changes in body weight, irregular bleeding, breast tenderness or swelling, nausea, vomiting, anorexia, skin irritation, gingival bleeding and tenderness, depression, and insomnia.

In addition to HRT, natural and alternative therapies for managing symptoms are available.

Box 12-2 describes some natural and alternative ways to control menopausal symptoms.

Aging women can benefit from basic education about menopause and methods for managing symptoms. Box 12-3 outlines some of the major topics that could be included in a menopausal educational program.

Self-Acceptance

Nurses can help women appreciate menopause as a time to take stock and rechart their life course. Emotions and symptoms can be used as teachers that show areas of one's self that beg for expression. Women can unleash creative energies and discover new interests. They can realize the significance of caring for and nurturing self. Whether it is their maturation or a desire to not waste the precious limited time one has remaining in life, older adults tend to understand themselves and their lives. Impossible expectations and pretense can be let go, unleashing more meaningful and creative aspects of later life. Older individuals can live in truth and love as who they truly are. This self-acceptance can provide the security to broaden their perspectives and purposes and deepen their connections with others and a higher power.


POINT TO PONDER

Do you view menopause as a time marking the loss of youthfulness and beauty or the beginning of a journey into new creativity and wisdom? What has influenced your opinion? ●

BOX 12-2 Complementary and Alternative Approaches to Controlling Menopausal Symptoms

- Acupuncture
- Diet
 - Foods rich in plant estrogens: apples, beans, carrots, celery, nuts, seeds, soy products (approximately 100–160 mg/day of soy is needed to obtain significant relief), wheat, and whole grains
 - Foods rich in boron to increase estrogen retention: asparagus, beans, broccoli, cabbage, peaches, prunes, strawberries, and tomatoes
 - Avoidance of adrenal-stimulating foods: alcohol, caffeine, refined carbohydrates, salt, and sugar
- Exercise
- Imagery
- Herbs such as American ginseng, black cohosh, chickweed, dong quai, motherwort, sage, licorice root
- Meditation
- Homeopathic remedies
 - Vaginal lubrication: bryonia
 - General symptoms: amyli nitrosium, natrum muriaticum, sepia, and sulphur
- Regular, adequate sleep
- Stress management practices
- T'ai chi
- Vaginal moisturizing agents
 - Commercial vaginal moisturizing creams (e.g., Replens), water-based gels
 - Herbal salves made with marshmallow root, calendula blossom, comfrey, licorice root, and wild yam
 - St. John's wort oil
- Vitamins and minerals such as calcium; chromium; magnesium; selenium; and vitamins C, D, and E
- Yoga

Realities of Sex in Older Adulthood

Until the work by Kinsey (1948) and Masters and Johnson (1966), there had been minimal exploration into the realities of sex in old age. Several possible factors have contributed to this lack of research and information. First, the acceptance and expansion of sexology has occurred within the past few decades. Second, impropriety was formerly associated with open discussions of sex. Furthermore, there was a misconception on the part of many professionals, the aged, and the general public that older individuals are neither interested in nor capable of sex. Finally, practitioners lacked experience in and did not have an inclination toward discussing sex with any age group. Even today, medical and nursing assessments frequently do not reflect inquiry into sexual history and activity.

Nurses should be aware of recent interest and research in the area of sex in old age and communicate these research findings to colleagues and clients to promote a more realistic understanding of the older population's sexuality.

Sexual Behavior and Roles

Research, reinforced by creative advertisements for erectile dysfunction drugs, has disproved the belief that older persons are not interested in or capable of engaging in sex; older adults can and do enjoy the pleasures of sexual foreplay and intercourse. Because

the general pattern of sexual behavior is basically consistent throughout life, individuals who were disinterested in sex and had infrequent intercourse throughout their lifetime will not usually develop a sudden insatiable desire for sex in old age. On the other hand, a couple who has maintained an interest in sex and continued regular coitus throughout their adult life will most likely not forfeit this activity at any particular age. Homosexuality, masturbation, a desire for a variety of sexual partners, and other sexual patterns also continue into old age. Sexual styles, interests, and expression must be viewed in the context of the individual's total life experience.

The same is true for identification with sexual roles. Part of sexual identity is expressing oneself as and being perceived as a man or a woman. Today's older population was socialized to accept certain masculine and feminine roles—older individuals have had a lifetime of experience with the expectation that men are to be aggressive, independent, and strong and that women are to be pretty, gentle, and dependent on their male counterparts. Society's emphasis over the past several decades on eliminating masculine and feminine stereotypes may be confusing or insignificant to older adults. It is as difficult and unfair to try to alter the roles of older persons as it is to try to convince today's liberated woman that she is limited to the roles of wife and mother. Nurses need to recognize and respect the sex-specific roles with which today's older adults identify.

BOX 12-3 Topics for Inclusion in a Menopause Education Program

- Menopause is a naturally occurring process, not a disease. It is characterized by the absence of menstrual periods for at least 12 consecutive months.
- Menopause is a gradual process. Most women experience *perimenopause* about 3–6 years before menopause when menstrual periods permanently cease. By age 40, most women begin having irregular periods.
- Menopause is a multihormone process. In addition to estrogen, progesterone declines although not in a direct proportion. In fact, some of the symptoms associated with menopause can be the result of declining progesterone with an estrogen dominance. One outcome of estrogen dominance over progesterone is the blocking of the action of thyroid hormone. Although it does not occur in all menopausal women, some can have declines in testosterone, which affects libido and sexual pleasure. Factors such as stress and obesity affect hormonal secretion.
- Estrogen affects functions beyond those of reproduction. Estrogen:
 - increases the chemical enzyme choline acetyltransferase needed to synthesize the neurotransmitter acetylcholine (which is critical for memory)
 - promotes the growth of dendritic spines on neurons
 - enhances the availability of the neurotransmitters serotonin, norepinephrine, and dopamine
 - acts like an antioxidant to protect nerve cells from free radical damage
- Many physical, cognitive, and emotional symptoms can be associated with low estrogen levels (see Box 12-1).
- Diagnostic blood tests should be done to properly assess menopausal state; these include FSH, LH, estradiol (estrogen), testosterone, and free testosterone levels. If sexual dysfunction or low libido is present, evaluate thyroid function (T₃, T₄, free T₄, TSH), platelet MAO, and prolactin.
- Hormonal replacement therapy (HRT) carries risks and benefits that must be weighed for each individual. HRT can control unpleasant symptoms thus fostering a good quality of life, reduce the risk of colon cancer and heart disease, and, possibly, offer protection against Alzheimer's disease and stroke. Negative aspects of HRT include an increased risk of ovarian, lung, and certain breast cancers; blood clots; and gallbladder disease.
- A variety of estrogens are available, including:
 - Premarin, derived from *pregnant mares urine*
 - Estradiol
 - Estrone
 - Combinations (usually not advised because the dose of each component is too low to be effective)
- Progesterone usually is added to estrogen to prevent hyperplasia of the uterine lining.
- Complementary therapies and practices can assist in controlling symptoms in some women (see Box 12-2).

FSH, follicle-stimulating hormone; LH, luteinizing hormone; TSH, thyroid-stimulating hormone; MAO, monoamine oxidase.

KEY CONCEPT

Sexuality and sexual interest in late life reflect lifelong patterns.

Intimacy

Sexuality also encompasses much more than physical acts. It includes love, warmth, caring, and sharing between individuals; seeing beyond gray hair, wrinkles, and other manifestations of aging; and the intimate exchange of words and touches by sexual human beings. Feeling important to and wanted by another person promotes security, comfort, and emotional well-being (Fig. 12-1). With the multiple losses that older adults experience, the comfort and satisfaction derived from a meaningful relationship are especially significant.

KEY CONCEPT

Sexuality includes love, warmth, caring, and sharing between people and identification with a sexual role.

Age-Related Changes and Sexual Response

Despite the physical ability to remain sexually active in old age, various factors and age-related changes do impact the older person's sexual function. Although clinical data are minimal and additional research is necessary, some general statements can be made about sex and the older person:

- There is a decrease in sexual responsiveness and a reduction in the frequency of orgasm (Greenberg,



FIGURE 12-1 • In addition to physical means of expression, older adults express their sexuality emotionally in intimate relationships.

2001; Masters & Johnson, 1981; Sand & Fisher, 2007).

- Older men are slower to erect, mount, and ejaculate.
- Older women may experience dyspareunia (painful intercourse) as a result of less lubrication, decreased distensibility, and thinning of the vaginal walls.
- Many older women gain a new interest in sex, possibly because they no longer have to fear an unwanted pregnancy or because they have more time and privacy with their children grown and gone.

Although individual differences occur in the intensity and duration of sexual response in older people, regular sexual expression for both sexes is important in promoting sexual capacity and maintaining sexual function. With good health and the availability of a partner, sexual activity can continue well into the seventh decade and beyond.

The work of Masters and Johnson (1966) provided the first major insight into the sexual responses of older persons. Table 12-1 summarizes their findings.

Identifying Barriers to Sexual Activity

In addition to the impact of age-related changes, various physical, emotional, and social variables can threaten the older person's ability to remain sexually active (Nursing Diagnosis Table 12-2 and Nursing Diagnosis Highlight: Sexual Dysfunction). A comprehensive nursing assessment includes a sexual history, which can reveal these problems. Assessment Guide 12-1 offers sample questions that can be incorporated into the assessment to identify issues pertaining to sexual function. Sensitive attention to the maintenance of sexual function and identity is significant in promoting wellness.



KEY CONCEPT

The unavailability of a partner; ageism, changes in body image, boredom, misconceptions, physical conditions, medications, and cognitive impairments are among the factors that can interfere with sexual function in later life.

Unavailability of a Partner

A practical interference with sexual function in later life is the lack of a partner, particularly for older women. By 65 years of age, there are only 7 men to every 10 women; by 85 years of age, the ratio becomes 1:5. Furthermore, there is a tendency for men to marry women who are younger than themselves; one third of men older than 65 years of age have wives younger than 65 years of age. Therefore, most older men are married, and most older women are widowed.

Even when an older person has a spouse or partner, that person may be too infirm to remain sexually active and, in some cases, may be institutionalized.

Psychological Barriers

Sometimes, sexual dysfunction can have psychological causes. Negative attitudes from society, fear of losing sexual abilities, concerns about body image, relationship issues, and misconceptions held by older adults themselves can impair sexual function.

Older adults are not immune to the attitudes around them. As they hear comments about the inappropriateness of older people engaging in sex and watch television shows that portray sex among older individuals in a condescending or ridiculing manner, they may feel foolish or unnatural in having sexual desires and activity. If they happen to have sexual partners who are disinterested in sex and negatively label their advances, the problem is

TABLE 12-1 Human Sexual Response Cycle in Late Life

Phase	Older Women	Older Men
Excitement: results from stimulation from any source	Same clitoral response and nipple erection as younger women; sex flush (vasocongestive skin response) occurs less frequently; less muscle tension elevation in response to sexual stimuli; unlike in younger women, labia majora does not separate, flatten, and elevate; reduced reactions of labia minora; less secretory activity of Bartholin's gland; less vaginal lubrication and wall expansion	Takes two to three times longer for erection to be achieved; less firm erection; increased difficulty regaining erection if lost; less sex flush
Plateau: sexual tensions intensified; if they reach an extreme, orgasm will be achieved; if tension level drops, resolution phase will be entered	Reduced intensity; less degree of engorgement of areolae; decreased vasocongestion of labia; less uterine elevation	Slower; full erection may not occur until just prior to ejaculation; less intense muscle tension; delayed and diminished testicular elevation
Orgasm: lasts a few seconds; sexual stimuli released; although entire body is involved to varying degrees, primarily concentrated in genitalia	Same vaginal contractions as younger woman but of decreased intensity and duration; similar slight degree of involuntary distention of external urinary meatus	Similar response as younger man only slower; during ejaculation, more of a seepage of semen rather than a forceful emission; orgasm may not occur with every intercourse, especially if it is frequent
Resolution: sexual tensions subside	Nipple erection can continue for hours; urinary symptoms may be present	Longer duration; rapid penile detumescence

intensified. As older adults internalize others' reactions, they may become reluctant or unable to engage in sexual activity and unnecessarily forfeit sexual function. Nurses can advocate for older adults by educating persons of all ages in the realities and importance of sexual function in later life

and ensuring that nursing care does not reinforce negative attitudes about sex.

Problems may also occur when the older man believes he is losing his sexual capability, even when he is not. It is not unusual for older men occasionally to have difficulty achieving an erection; erections also

NURSING DIAGNOSIS

TABLE 12-2 Aging and Risks to Sexuality

Causes or Contributing Factors	Nursing Diagnosis
Wrinkling and sagging of tissues; age spots; graying and loss of hair; arthritic joints; loss of muscle tone; high prevalence of tooth loss; increased incidence of disabling disease	Disturbed Body Image and Sexual Dysfunction related to altered appearance
Increased physical stimulation required to achieve erection and lubricate vagina	Sexual Dysfunction related to inadequate preparation for intercourse
Increased prevalence of chronic disabling conditions	Sexual Dysfunction related to discomfort, diseases, preoccupation with health, or positional restrictions
Higher ratio of women to men in advanced years	Sexual Dysfunction related to unavailability of a sexual partner
Ageism	Sexual Dysfunction related to belief that sex in old age is inappropriate

NURSING DIAGNOSIS HIGHLIGHT

SEXUAL DYSFUNCTION

Overview

Sexual dysfunction implies a problem in the ability to derive sexual satisfaction. This condition can be identified through the patient's history (e.g., complaints of impotence, dyspareunia, lack of interest in sex, changes in relationship with partner), physical findings (e.g., genital infection, prolapsed uterus, diabetes mellitus), or behavior (e.g., depression, anxiety, self-deprecation). Sometimes changes in the older person's life can give clues to the presence of sexual dysfunction problems, such as recent widowhood, onset of a new health problem, or moving to a child's home.

Causative or contributing factors

Age-related dryness and fragility of vaginal canal, vaginal infection, venereal disease, neurological disease, cardiovascular disease, diabetes mellitus, decreased hormone production, pulmonary disease, arthritis, pain, prostatitis, prolapsed uterus, cystocele, rectocele, medications, overeating, obesity, fatigue, alcohol consumption, fear of worsening health problem, lack of partner, unwilling or unable partner, boredom with partner, fear of failure, guilt, anxiety, depression, stress, negative self-concept, lack of privacy, religious conflict, altered appearance.

Goal

The patient expresses satisfaction with sexual function.

Interventions

- Obtain a sexual history from the older adult. Note availability and quality of relationship with partner; life-

long pattern of sexual function, recent changes to sexual function, signs and symptoms of sexual dysfunction, knowledge and attitudes about sex, medical problems, drugs used, mental status, myths and misinformation, feelings about sexual dysfunction.

- If the cause of sexual dysfunction is not readily available through the history, refer older person for comprehensive physical examination.
- Identify causative or contributing factors to sexual dysfunction and plan interventions to correct them.
- Refer to sexual counselor or therapist as needed.
- Clarify misconceptions (e.g., a person cannot have sex after a heart attack).
- Provide education as to normal sexual function, measures to promote sexual function, how to minimize impact of health problems on sexual function (Heart Association, Arthritis Foundation, and other disease-specific organizations provide literature on promoting sexual function in presence of disease).
- Assist older adult in having good appearance and improving self-concept as needed.
- Advise in health practices that will promote sexual function, such as regular gynecologic examinations, alcohol use in moderation, good diet, exercise.
- Ensure staff are nonjudgmental about the older adult's unique means of sexual expression.
- If older adult is hospitalized or institutionalized, provide privacy for sexual expression.

may be easily lost if there is an interruption (e.g., a ringing telephone or a partner who leaves the bed to use the bathroom). These occurrences can trigger a cycle of problems, whereby an episode of impotence causes anxiety over the potential loss of sexual function permanently, and this anxiety interferes with the ability to become erect, which further heightens anxiety. Aging persons need realistic explanations—preferably before the situation arises—that occasional impotence is neither unusual nor an indication that one is “too old for sex.” Open discussions and reassurance are beneficial. The partner needs to be included in this process and made aware of the importance of patience and sensitivity in helping the man deal with this problem. The couple should be encouraged to continue their efforts and, if erection is occasionally a problem, compensate with other forms of sexual gratification. Of course, chronic impotence can indicate a variety of disorders and deserves a thorough evaluation.

Body image and self-concept affect sexual activity. In a society in which beauty is youthful, older persons may believe that their wrinkles, gray hair, and sagging torsos make them physically unappealing. This can be particularly difficult for single older people who must deal with baring their bodies to new partners. The fear of being unattractive and rejected may cause older adults to avoid encountering such situations and assume a sexually inactive role.

Additional factors make developing a sexual relationship difficult for single older people. Older women were socialized during a period when sex was considered appropriate only in wedlock and, to some persons, only for the purpose of procreation. The thought of seeking sexual gratification with a partner to whom one is not married creates anxiety and guilt in many older women. The older man, who was socialized in the aggressor role, may not have had to practice his courtship skills for years if he has been monogamous for a long period,



ASSESSMENT GUIDE 12-1

Sexual Health

INTERVIEW

Begin this component of the overall assessment by explaining to the older adult that you are going to ask questions pertaining to his or her sex life to identify problems that could be improved and to learn about possible underlying conditions that could be revealed through sexual problems. Ask the older adult if he or she has your permission to ask these questions:

Are you sexually active?

If the answer is *no*, ask for reasons (e.g., no partner, not enough energy, erectile dysfunction). Based on the reason, inquire about the older adult's interest in changing the situation to become sexually active and recommend plans accordingly (e.g., offer location of senior centers, evaluate possible causes of low energy, refer to sexual dysfunction clinic).

If the answer is *yes*, proceed with the following questions:

- How frequently do you have sex? Is this a satisfying frequency to you? If not, how would you change the frequency of sex?
- Do you have sex with a single or multiple partners? Male or female partner?
- If you have sex with new partners, do you use a condom?

- Do you obtain pleasure from sex? If not, why not?
- Have you or your partner(s) ever been treated for a sexually transmitted infection? If yes, for what disease and when?
- Do you or your partner(s) have risk factors for HIV/AIDS, such as a history of blood transfusions, IV drug use, or sex with prostitutes?
- *Male*: Are you able to get an erection when you want to engage in sex? Do you have orgasms and ejaculate when you have sex? If not, describe what happens. Do you have any sores on your penis or any discharge?
- *Female*: Is sex comfortable for you? If not, describe. Do you have orgasms? Do you have any vaginal discharge or bleeding?
- Is your partner satisfied with your sex life? If not, why not?
- Have you ever been or are you currently being sexually abused? Raped? If yes, describe.
- *If health conditions or disabilities are present*: How has your condition affected your ability to enjoy sex?
- What concerns do you have regarding your sex life?
- Do you have any questions about your sexual function that you'd like me to answer?

and he may feel insecure in his ability to seduce a partner or find one who understands his individual preferences. He, too, may be emotionally uncomfortable in establishing a sexual relationship. Financial considerations can affect sexual activity also when the single older adult has concern that

commitment to a relationship and marriage could reduce Social Security income or create problems in sharing assets. The hurdle of building new sexual relationships can be so great that many older people may find it easier to repress their sexual needs.

Consider This Case

Seventy-two-year-old Mrs. W has been widowed for eight months. She is an attractive, active woman and desired to break up her lonely days by joining a local senior center, where she met Mr. R, a handsome 75-year-old widower. In short time, they began dating, and recently Mr. R has asked Mrs. W to join him for a long weekend at a romantic vacation spot. Mr. R has openly shared that he has had frequent sexual partners and that he envisions initiating a sexual relationship with Mrs. W during their weekend. Mrs. W is interested in taking the relationship to this new level but is nervous about the fact that she and her husband hadn't had intercourse during the last eight years of his life due to his poor health, and she now wonders how much discomfort she will experience. She discusses this with a nurse friend, and expresses concerns about having a new sexual partner for the first time in over 50 years, Mr. R's possible reactions to seeing her "naked old body," and what her children and grandchildren would think if they found out about her weekend.

THINK CRITICALLY

- What advice would be helpful for the nurse friend to offer?
- What are some of the challenges and risks that Mrs. W could face?



KEY CONCEPT

Some older adults may repress sexual needs rather than confront the stresses associated with establishing new sexual relationships.

Married older people also may experience problems with sex. Not all marriages enjoy fulfilling sex. Some women conceded to sex because it was a “wife’s duty,” yet they never achieved satisfaction from this intimate experience. Some spouses may have become bored with the same partner or form of sex. Perhaps physical changes or an inattention to appearance causes dissatisfaction with the partner. Love and caring may have been lost from the marriage. Sexual interest may be diminished if one is the caregiver for a partner or if a disability causes the partner to be perceived as sexually undesirable. Older couples experience sexual problems for many of the same reasons that younger couples do.

Misconceptions are often responsible for creating obstacles to a fulfilling sex life in old age and can include the following:

- erections are not possible after prostatectomy
- penile penetration can be harmful to a woman after a hysterectomy
- menopause eliminates sexual desire
- sex is bad for a heart condition
- after a hip fracture, intercourse can re-fracture the bone
- sexual ability and interest are lost with age

Straightforward explanations and public education can help correct these misconceptions, as can realistic descriptions of how illness, surgery, and drugs do and do not affect sexual function.

Medical Conditions

A variety of physical conditions, many of which respond to treatment (Table 12-3), can affect sexual function in later life. Thorough evaluation is crucial in determining a realistic approach to aiding older adults with these problems. Interventions of value to younger people also can benefit older people, including medications, penile prostheses, lubricants, surgery, and sex counseling. Nurses should communicate their understanding of the importance of sexual functioning to older adults and a willingness to assist them in preserving sexual capabilities.

Erectile Dysfunction

Erectile dysfunction, commonly referred to as impotence, is a condition in which a man is unable to attain and maintain an erection of the penis sufficient to allow him to engage in sexual intercourse.

An estimated 10 to 20 million American men are believed to suffer from erectile dysfunction, and the prevalence increases with age, affecting as many as 25% of men at age 65 years (Kubin, Wagner, & Fugl-Meyer, 2003; Wessells et al., 2007). Erectile dysfunction can have multiple causes, including atherosclerosis, diabetes, hypertension, multiple sclerosis, thyroid dysfunction, alcoholism, renal failure, structure abnormalities (e.g., Peyronie’s disease), medications, and psychological factors. With the range and complexity of potential causes, a thorough physical examination is essential. (Even if the older man is not interested in being sexually active, he should be encouraged to have this dysfunction evaluated to identify underlying conditions that warrant medical attention.)

In 1998, a major breakthrough occurred in the treatment of erectile dysfunction with the Food and Drug Administration approval of sildenafil citrate (Viagra). Within its first year on the market, nearly 4 million prescriptions were written for Viagra, demonstrating the scope of erectile dysfunction and the desire of men to correct this problem. Since then, other drugs, such as tadalafil (Cialis) and vardenafil (Levitra) have become available to treat this condition. There are other options to treat erectile dysfunction, such as alprostadil (a drug that is injected into the penis to increase blood flow), vacuum pumps, and penile implants. Men need to discuss with their physicians the options that are best for them.

Medication Adverse Effects

Frequently, medications prescribed to older people affect potency, libido, orgasm, and ejaculation. Some of these drugs include the following:

- anticholinergics
- benzotropine
- clonidine
- cytotoxic agents
- digoxin
- diphenhydramine
- guanethidine
- haloperidol
- phenothiazines
- reserpine
- sedatives
- thiazide diuretics
- tranquilizers
- trihexyphenidyl
- tricyclic antidepressants

It is important to prepare older people for the potential changes in sexual function that drugs can produce. Imagine what it does to a patient with newly diagnosed hypertension when he experiences

TABLE 12-3 Medical Conditions Interfering With Sexual Function

Condition	Problem Created	Intervention
Men		
Prostatitis	Discomfort, interference with ejaculation	Treat infection; prostatic massage
“Open” type prostatectomy	Disturbed function of internal sphincter, causing impotency	Penile prosthesis
Peyronie’s disease	Painful, dorsal bending of penis from fibrous scarring associated with inflammatory process	Local injections of corticosteroids Surgery
Infections of genitalia	Pain, inhibition of erection, scarring that narrows urethral outlet	Treat infection Surgical dilation of narrow outlet
Arteriosclerosis	Testicular cellular function disturbed, leading to decline in male sex hormone	Testosterone therapy
Parkinsonism	Decrease in sexual interest secondary to loss of potency	Levodopa therapy
Cord compression from arthritic changes	Impotency	Surgery may not restore potency if reflex arc is permanently broken Penile prosthesis
Women		
Decreased level of estrogen	Excessive vaginal dryness	Local estrogens
Virginity	Thick or large hymen	Surgery Dilation
Infection of genitalia	Discomfort, itching	Treat infection and underlying cause (poor hygiene, hyperglycemia)
Prolapsed uterus	Pain, difficulty with penile penetration	Pessary Surgery
Cystocele	Discomfort, dribbling urine	Surgery
Both Sexes		
Cardiovascular; respiratory disease	Shortness of breath, coughing, discomfort, fear of heart attack or death during sex, decreased libido	Counseling on realistic restrictions necessary Instruction in alternative positions to avoid strain Advise to avoid large meals for several hours before, relax, plan medications for peak effectiveness during sex
Arthritis	Limited movement	Instruction on alternative positions
Diabetes mellitus	Local genital infection Failure of erection due to inhibition of parasympathetic nervous system Absence of or difficulty achieving orgasm	Treat infection Penile prosthesis Instruction in alternative positions and forms of sexual expression
Stroke	Delayed and decreased vaginal lubrication Decreased libido Fear	Counseling Instruction in alternative positions
Alcoholism	Decreased potency Delayed orgasm (women)	Counseling and treatment for alcoholism

drug-related impotency and begins to feel anxious about the sudden changes in both health and sexual function. Drugs should be reviewed when new sexual dysfunction occurs and, whenever possible, non-drug treatment modalities should be used to manage health problems.

Cognitive Impairment

The sexual behavior of individuals with dementia tends to be more difficult for those around them than for the affected persons. Inappropriate behavior, such as undressing and masturbating in public areas and grabbing and making sexual comments to strangers, can occur. The cognitively impaired person may accuse his or her spouse of being a stranger improperly trying to share the bed and may misunderstand care procedures (e.g., baths and catheterization) as sexual advances. Sometimes touching and statements such as “How’s my sweetheart?” or “Are you going to give me a big hug?” can be misinterpreted as invitations to become sexually intimate. Family members and caregivers need to understand that this is a normal feature of the illness. Rather than become upset or embarrassed, they need to learn to respond simply, for example, by taking the individual to a private area when masturbating, or stating “I’m not a stranger, I’m Mary, your wife.”



KEY CONCEPT

Unintentionally, caregivers can make comments to the cognitively impaired person that can be misinterpreted as flirtatious and trigger inappropriate sexual behaviors.

Promoting Healthy Sexual Function

The nurse can foster sexuality and intimacy in older persons in various ways, some of which have already been discussed. Basic education can help older adults and persons of all ages understand the effects of the aging process on sexuality by providing a realistic framework for sexual functioning. The nurse can teach about sexual functioning during routine health assessments, as part of structured health education classes, and during discharge planning when reviewing capabilities and activity restrictions.

A willingness on the nurse’s part to discuss sex openly with older people demonstrates recognition, acceptance, and respect for their sexuality. A sexual history as part of the nursing assessment provides an excellent framework for launching such discussions. The nurse identifies physical, emotional, and social threats to older adults’ sexuality and intimacy and seeks solutions for problems—whether caused

by the disfigurement of surgery, obesity, depression, poor self-concept, fatigue, or lack of privacy. The nurse can also promote practices that can enhance sexual function, including regular exercise, good nutrition, limited alcohol intake, ample rest, stress management, good hygiene and grooming practices, and enjoyable foreplay.



KEY CONCEPT

The nurse’s willingness to discuss sex openly with older adults demonstrates recognition, acceptance, and respect for their sexuality.

Consideration must be given to the sexual needs of older persons in institutional settings. Too often, couples admitted to the same facility are not able to share a double bed, and frequently they are not even able to share the same room if they require different levels of care. It is unnatural and unfair to force a person to travel to another wing of a building to visit a spouse who has intimately shared 40, 50, or 60 years of his or her life. There are few or no places in most institutional settings where two such individuals can find a place to share intimacy where they will not be interrupted or be in full view of others. Older people in institutional settings have a right to privacy that goes beyond lip service. They should be able to close and lock a door, feeling secure that this action will be honored. They should not be made to feel guilty or foolish by their expressions of love and sexuality. Their sexuality should not be sanctioned, screened, or severed by any other person.

Masturbation often is beneficial for releasing sexual tensions and maintaining continued function of the genitalia. Nurses can convey their acceptance and understanding of the value of this activity by providing privacy and a nonjudgmental attitude. Conveying such an attitude can prevent older individuals from developing feelings of guilt or abnormality related to masturbation.

On the other hand, nurses must appreciate that sexual satisfaction can have different meaning to older people than to the young. To some older men and women, holding, caressing, and exchanging loving words can be as meaningful as intercourse or sexually explicit conversation.

For older adults in any setting, nurses can facilitate connections, which are essential for sexual relationships. Unfortunately, relationships can be more challenging to create and sustain in late life. The circle of friends and family gradually diminishes with each passing year; health and economic limitations decrease one’s participation in social activities; and preoccupation with health conditions of self and significant others narrows one’s sphere of interests. The risks resulting in a shrinking of older

BOX 12-4 Strategies to Facilitate Connections

- *Assist patients in evaluating current relationships.* Guide them in examining relationship patterns that are effective and those that could be improved. Discuss impact of relationships on health and quality of life.
- *Guide patients in becoming aware of their behaviors and responses that impact relationships.* Help them to gain insight into roles and dynamics and impact of responses.
- *Teach strategies that promote effective expression of inner feelings.* Offer suggestions and role plays that support feeling-based communication, such as making statements that reflect how they feel rather than impersonal generalities (e.g., "I feel angry when you make my decisions for me"). Help patients to respect others' expressions of feelings.
- *Provide information on sources of social activities.* Obtain address and contact information for local senior centers, clubs, and social groups. Suggest measures that patients can use to facilitate a comfortable entry into new groups, such as asking a friend to accompany them, taking the lead in introductions, and finding a common interest that can be used as a stimulus for conversation.
- *Refer patients for hearing and/or vision examinations as needed.* Initiate audiology and ophthalmology referrals if problems are identified during the nursing assessment. Assist patients in locating financial aid if costs for examinations, glasses, or aids cannot be afforded.
- *Respect patients' interest and efforts to be sexually active.* Support efforts to enhance appearance. Listen without judgment as patients describe feelings about their sexual interests and function. Provide privacy for patients' interactions with significant others.
- *Assist patients in improving sexual function.* Refer to appropriate specialists for treatment of conditions that affect sexual function. Support efforts to correct sexual dysfunction. Counsel patients in measures to preserve and facilitate sexual function (e.g., use of lubricating creams to compensate for vaginal dryness, alternative positions to accommodate joint pain, and timing of medication administration to maximize energy during sex).
- *Provide positive feedback for efforts patients have taken to improve the quantity and quality of connections with others.* Remember that an action that may seem minor, such as attending a community social event, could have required tremendous effort and risk on the part of patients. Recognize and encourage these efforts.

adults' social world are real and often significant; however, nurses can offer interventions that can minimize and compensate for them. Box 12-4 offers suggestions for helping older adults to maintain satisfying, healthy relationships.

Nurses must recognize, respect, and encourage sexuality in older adults. Nurses, as role models, can foster positive attitudes. Improved understanding, increased sensitivity, and humane attitudes can help the older population of today and tomorrow realize the full potential of sexuality in their later years.

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. What attitudes and actions of health care providers can have a negative effect on the sexuality of older adults? What can have a positive effect?
2. List the age-related changes that occur for men and women in the following sexual phases: excitement, plateau, orgasm, and resolution.
3. List at least six factors that can interfere with sexual function in late life.

Resources

American Association of Sex Educators, Counselors, and Therapists

<http://www.aasect.org>

Sexuality Information and Education Council of the United States

<http://www.siecus.org>

References

- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2007). Cases of HIV and AIDS infection in the United States and dependent areas. HIV/AIDS Surveillance Report, Volume 17, Revised Edition, June 2007. Atlanta, GA: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.
- Gandy, S. (2003). Estrogen and neurodegeneration. *Neurochemical Research*, 28(7), 1003–1008.
- Greenberg, S. A. (2001). Sexual health. In M. B. Mezey. *The encyclopedia of elder care: The comprehensive resource on geriatric and social care* (pp. 589–592). New York: Springer Publishing Company.
- Kinsey, A. (1948). *Sexual behavior in the human male*. Philadelphia: Saunders.

- Kubin, M., Wagner, G., & Fugl-Meyer, A. R. (2003). Epidemiology of erectile dysfunction. *International Journal of Impotency Research*, 15(1), 63–71.
- Masters, W., & Johnson, V. (1966). *Human sexual response*. Boston: Little Brown.
- Masters, W., & Johnson, V. (1981). Sex and the aging process. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*, 9, 385.
- Rossouw, J. E., Prentice, R. L., Manson, J. E., Wu, L., Barad, D., et al. (2007). Postmenopausal hormone therapy and risk of cardiovascular disease by age and years since menopause. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 297(13), 1465–1477.
- Sand, M., & Fisher, W. A. (2007). Women's endorsement of models of female sexual response: The nurses' sexuality study. *Journal of Sexual Medicine*, 4(3), 708–719.
- ## Recommended Readings
- Barba, B. E., Tesh, A. S., & Courts, N. F. (2002). Promoting thriving in nursing homes: The Eden alternative. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 28(3), 7–13.
- Bauer, M. (1999). Their only privacy is between their sheets: Privacy and sexuality of elderly nursing home residents. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 25(8), 37–41.
- Carbone, D. J., & Seftel, A. D. (2002). Erectile dysfunction. *Geriatrics*, 57(9), 18–24.
- Crooks, R. L., & Baur, K. (2007). *Our sexuality*. New York: Wadsworth Publishing.
- Esposito, N. (2005). Agenda dissonance: Immigrant Hispanic women's and providers' assumptions and expectations for menopause healthcare. *Clinical Nursing Research*, 14(1), 32–56.
- Gershick, Z. Z. (1998). *Gay old girls*. Los Angeles: Alyson Publications.
- Hall, L., Callister, L. C., & Matsumura, G. (2007). Meanings of menopause: Cultural influences on perception and management of menopause. *Journal of Holistic Nursing*, 25(2), 106–118.
- Hertz, J. E., & Anschutz, C. A. (2002). Relationships among perceived enactment of autonomy, self-care, and holistic health in community-dwelling older adults. *Journal of Holistic Nursing*, 20, 166–186.
- Hicks, T. J. (2000). What is your life like now? Loneliness and elderly individuals residing in nursing homes. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 26(8), 15–19.
- Hill, J., Bird, B., & Thorpe, R. (2003). Effects of rheumatoid arthritis on sexual activity and relationships. *Rheumatology*, 42(2), 280–286.
- Hillman, J. (2000). *The force of character and the lasting life*. New York: Random House.
- Jones, M. L., Eichenwald, T., & Hall, N. W. (2007). *Menopause for dummies*. Hoboken, NJ: Wiley Publishing.
- Kaiser, F. E. (2002). Disorders of sexual function. *Clinical Geriatrics*, 10(3), 38–46.
- Kamel, H. K. (2001). Sexuality in aging: Focus on institutionalized elderly. *Annals of Long-Term Care*, 9(5), 64–72.
- Kautz, D. D. (2007). Hope for love: practical advice for intimacy and sex after stroke. *Rehabilitation Nursing*, 32(3):95–103.
- Klaiber, E. L. (2001). *Hormones and the mind. A woman's guide to enhancing mood, memory, and sexual vitality*. New York: HarperCollins Publisher.
- Klingman, L. (1999). Assessing the male genitalia. *American Journal of Nursing*, 99(7), 47–50.
- Klingman, L. (1999). Assessing the female reproductive system. *American Journal of Nursing*, 99(8), 37–42.
- Lesser, J., Hughes, S., & Kumar, S. (2007). Sexual dysfunction in the older woman: Complex medical, psychiatric illnesses should be considered in evaluation and management. *Geriatrics*, 60(8), 18–21.
- Lock, M. (2005). Cross-cultural vasomotor symptom reporting: Conceptual and methodological issues. *Menopause: The Journal of the North American Menopause Society*, 12, 239–241.
- McCall, K., & Meston, C. (2007). Differences between pre- and postmenopausal women in cues for sexual desire. *Journal of Sexual Medicine*, 4(2), 364–371.
- McCorkle, R., Siefert, M. L., Dowd, M. F., Robinson, J. P., & Pickett, M. (2007). Effects of advanced practice nursing on patient and spouse depressive symptoms, sexual function, and marital interaction after radical prostatectomy. *Urologic Nursing*, 27(1), 65–77.
- Mosley, R., & Jett, K. F. (2007). Advance practice nursing and sexual functioning in late life. *Geriatric Nursing*, 28(1), 41.
- Northrup, C. (2006). *The wisdom of menopause. Creating physical and emotional health and healing during the change*. New York: Bantam Books.
- Puentes, W. J. (2000). Using social reminiscence to teach therapeutic communication skills. *Geriatric Nursing*, 21(6), 311–317.
- Robinson, J. G., & Molzhan, A. E. (2007). Sexuality and quality of life. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 33(3), 19–27.
- Sand, M., & Fisher, W. A. (2007). Women's endorsement of models of female sexual response: The nurses' sexuality study. *Journal of Sexual Medicine*, 4(3), 708–719.
- Smith, K. B., Tripp, D., Pukall, C., & Nickel, J. C. (2007). Predictors of sexual and relationship functioning in couples with chronic prostatitis and chronic pelvic pain syndrome. *Journal of Sexual Medicine*, 4(3), 734–744.
- Tremethick, M. J. (2001). Alone in a crowd: A study of social networks in home health and assisted living. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 27(5), 42–47.
- Wallace, M. (2001). Sexuality: Try this. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 27(2), 10–11.
- Wessells, H., Joyce, G. F., Wise, M., & Wilt, T.J. (2007). Erectile dysfunction. *Journal of Urology*, 177(5), 1675–1681.
- Writing Group for the Women's Health Initiative Investigators. (2002). Risks and benefits of estrogen plus progestin in healthy postmenopausal women. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 288, 321–333.

CHAPTER 13

Spirituality

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Spiritual Needs

- Love
- Meaning and Purpose
- Hope
- Dignity
- Forgiveness
- Gratitude
- Transcendence
- Expression of Faith

Assessing Spiritual Needs

Addressing Spiritual Needs

- Being Available
- Honoring Beliefs and Practices
- Providing Opportunities for Solitude
- Promoting Hope
- Assisting in Discovering Meaning in Challenging Situations
- Facilitating Religious Practices
- Praying With and For

Summary: The Importance of Spiritual Care

Most people are comforted with the knowledge that they have a connection with a power that is greater than themselves. A positive, harmonious relationship with God or other higher power (the Divine) helps individuals to feel unified with other people, nature, and

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 Describe basic spiritual needs.
- 2 List questions that could be used for spiritual assessment.
- 3 Discuss measures to support spiritual needs.

the environment. It offers them love and a sense of having value, despite their imperfections or errors. People derive joy, hope, peace, and purpose when they transcend beyond themselves. Suffering and hardship can have meaning and be faced with added strength.

Spirituality is the essence of our being that transcends and connects us to the Divine and other living organisms. It involves relationships and feelings. Spirituality differs from religion, which consists of human-created structures, rituals, symbolism, and rules for relating to the Divine. Religion is a significant expression of spirituality, but highly spiritual individuals may not identify with a specific religion.



KEY CONCEPT

Spirituality and religion are not synonymous.

Spiritual Needs

All humans have spiritual needs, regardless of whether they realize or acknowledge them. Some of these needs become particularly relevant in late life when the high prevalence of chronic illness and reality of death are evident; these needs can include love, purpose, hope, dignity, forgiveness, gratitude, transcendence, and faith.

Love

Love is probably the most important spiritual need of all. People need to feel that they are cared for and can offer caring feelings. Spiritual love is not *quid pro quo* in which it is offered to obtain something in return. Rather, spiritual love is unconditional—offered unselfishly, completely. In the Judeo-Christian tradition, this type of love is exemplified by the type God has for people. People need to feel loved regardless of their physical or mental condition, social position, material possessions, or productivity.

Meaning and Purpose

According to Erikson's description of the final developmental task (see Chapter 2), healthy psychological aging for the older adult involves achieving a sense of integrity. This integrity, or wholeness, is supported by the belief that life experiences—both good and bad—make sense and have served a purpose. Some individuals may believe, based on their faith, that suffering and sorrow have eternal purposes or allow God to be glorified. With this perspective, nothing is in vain and one's significance in the world is better understood.

Hope

Hope is the expectation for something in the future. For some people, hope consists of the anticipation that opportunities for new adventures, pleasures, and relationships will unfold with each tomorrow. For others, hope propels them to face the future in the presence of pain and suffering, because they believe relief and eternal reward are possible.

Dignity

In Western society, self-worth often is judged by one's appearance, function, and productivity. Yet, every human being has intrinsic worth. When older people lack the attributes that command dignity for most of secular society, they can derive a sense of value and worth through their connection with God or other higher power.

Forgiveness

It is human nature to err and sin. Carrying the burden of the wrongs committed by or to oneself is significantly stressful and can detrimentally affect health. Furthermore, being unforgiving can rob people of the love and fulfillment derived through relationships. Forgiving and accepting forgiveness are healing. For older adults, forgiveness can facilitate the important process of putting things in order and achieving closure to unfinished business.

Gratitude

The abundance that is so prevalent in Western society sometimes causes much to be taken for granted. Rather than appreciate that they are not hungry or homeless, people may complain that they have not dined at certain restaurants or that their home lacks a pool. They focus on having undesirably large thighs rather than giving thanks for being able to walk. Instead of being appreciative that their children are healthy, they are distressed that they are not the parents of an honor roll student. It is easy to fall into the trap of focusing on the negatives. However, an attitude of thankfulness nourishes the spirit and strengthens the ability to cope with any situation. At a time when losses may be many, older individuals may benefit from a guided review of the positive aspects of their lives. The life review process is a good approach to use in this effort (see Chapter 4).

Transcendence

People need to feel that there is a reality beyond themselves, that they are connected to a greater power that surpasses logical thinking, and that they have a source that empowers them to achieve that which they cannot achieve independently.



FIGURE 13-1 • Transcendence helps people make sense of the difficult circumstances they face.

Transcendence affords people life beyond material existence and equips them to make sense of the difficult circumstances they face (Fig. 13-1).

Expression of Faith

Faith encompasses religious/spiritual beliefs and is expressed through religious/spiritual practices. These practices can include prayer, worship, scripture reading, rituals (e.g., fasting on certain days or wearing special articles of clothing), and celebration of specific holy days. Disruption in the ability to express one's faith because of illness or disability can lead to spiritual distress. Likewise, spiritual distress can arise during illness from a person feeling resentful that God has seemingly abandoned him, guilty that the illness may be a means of punishment for sin, or regretful that he lacks a strong faith to support him through the situation.

POINT TO PONDER

Which spiritual need is most difficult for you to fulfill personally? Why? ●

Assessing Spiritual Needs

Asking about spiritual matters as part of the initial and ongoing assessment fosters holistic care. Although various clinical settings have assessment tools preferred for use, elements a spiritual assessment should address include faith beliefs and practices; affiliation with a faith community; and the extent to which spiritual needs (e.g., love, meaning, purpose, hope, dignity, forgiveness, gratitude, transcendence, and expression of faith) are satisfied.

The nurse has several sources for gathering information about a person's spiritual needs. The person's response to spiritual/religious preference on routine admission forms can give some indication of the patient's spirituality and provide a lead for a

discussion of other issues pertaining to spirituality. Visible cues, such as the wearing of a religious article or presence of religious symbols, Bible, Koran, and inspirational books, can provide insights useful in spiritual assessment. A person's comments (e.g., "All I can do now is pray" or "I can't understand why God would allow this to happen") may offer clues about spiritual needs. Depression, a flat affect, crying, and other observable signs can be a red flag for spiritual distress. In addition, the nurse can ask specific questions to explore spiritual needs. Assessment Guide 13-1 outlines questions the nurse can ask to assess a patient's spirituality.

Addressing Spiritual Needs

Evidence suggests that strong spiritual beliefs facilitate health and healing; therefore, it is therapeutically beneficial to support patients' spirituality and assist them in fulfilling spiritual needs. When assessment reveals specific spiritual needs or signs of spiritual distress (see Nursing Diagnosis Highlight), nurses plan strategies to address these specific needs. In addition, nurses can use a variety of interventions to assist patients and support their spirituality; these interventions are discussed in the following sections.

Being Available

The closeness and trust that patients feel toward nurses facilitate their sharing deep feelings with nurses more than with other members of the health care team. Nurses need to honor this trust and be available for patients to express their feelings. This means not only being physically available but also being fully present with patients without being distracted or thinking about other activities. There may be times when nurses may not know how to respond to spiritual needs or hear expressions of beliefs that differ from their own; in these situations, attentive listening and encouraging communication remain important.

Honoring Beliefs and Practices

A good spiritual assessment should reveal specific beliefs and practices that the nurse may need to facilitate. These practices can include following special diets, refusing to participate in certain care activities on one's Sabbath, wearing of specific articles of clothing, and praying at specific times of the day. Box 13-1 outlines some common religious beliefs and practices nurses may encounter.

Providing Opportunities for Solitude

Solitude can be an important aspect of the expression of spirituality. Uninterrupted time allows personal



ASSESSMENT GUIDE 13-1

Spiritual Needs

INTERVIEW

As part of a holistic assessment, ask questions that directly address the person's spirituality and spiritual needs. Questions may include the following:

- What is your faith or religion?
- Are you involved with a church, temple, or faith community? What is it? Would you like to have them involved with your care?
- Do you believe in God or a higher power? Could you please describe what that belief means to you?
- Do you read the Bible or other religious text? Are you able to do this reading now?
- What do you think God's role is in your illness and healing?
- Is there anything about your faith or spiritual beliefs that is causing you distress, discomfort, or conflict?
- What is most meaningful to you?
- What gives your life purpose?
- What is your source of strength or support?
- From whom do you receive love?
- Who are the most significant recipients of your love?
- Do you feel like you have unfinished business? Things you need to say to someone? Forgiveness you wish to seek or offer?
- What are your fears?
- How can I(we) best support your spiritual beliefs and practices at this time?

communication with one's God or other higher power. One can offer prayers, reflect, meditate, and listen for answers from the divine source (Box 13-2). Nurses must respect and protect periods of solitude for their patients.



POINT TO PONDER

Choosing solitude differs from being socially isolated. How much time do you build into your typical week for private time or solitude? ●

NURSING DIAGNOSIS HIGHLIGHT

SPIRITUAL DISTRESS

Overview

Spiritual distress is a state in which one's relationship to God or other higher power is disrupted or at risk of being disrupted and/or spiritual needs cannot be fulfilled. Illness or declining health of self or significant others, losses, awareness of mortality, and conflicts between beliefs and medical treatments are factors that could promote spiritual distress. Signs of spiritual distress could include anger, anxiety, complaints, crying, cynicism, depression, guilt, hopelessness, isolation, low self-esteem, powerlessness, refusal to make plans, sarcasm, suicidal thoughts or plans, and physical symptoms (fatigue, poor appetite, sleep disturbances, sighing). The person may question his or her faith and beliefs.

Causative or contributing factors

Serious illness, losses, added burdens, inability to engage in religious practices, association of current health problems with past sinful behavior or lack of faith.

Goal

The patient maintains religious practices to maximum degree possible; discusses issues pertaining to spiritual distress; develops support systems to promote spiritual well-being.

Interventions

- Assist patient in identifying factors contributing to spiritual distress.
- Support patient's religious practices: learn about patient's religious practices and implications for care; provide Bible or other religious text, religious articles, and inspirational music; respect periods of solitude; respect and assist with practice of rituals; read scripture or arrange for volunteer to do so
- Pray with or for patient if this does not violate the patient's or your own faith
- Provide patient with privacy and time for prayer, meditation, and solitude
- Refer to clergy, native healer, support group, or other resources
- Contact patient's church or temple for visitation and follow-up (e.g., via parish nurse); link patient with community health ministry if patient desires
- Respect patient's desire not to be visited by clergy or participate in religious activities
- Do not challenge patient's religious beliefs or attempt to change them

BOX 13-1 Religious Beliefs and Practices Relevant to Gerontological Nursing Practice

PROTESTANTISM

- *Assemblies of God (Pentecostal)*: Encourage abstinence from tobacco, alcohol, and illegal drugs; believe in divine healing through prayer and laying on of hands; communion provided by clergy; believe in Jesus Christ as Savior
- *Baptist*: Encourage abstinence from alcohol; communion provided by clergy; Scripture reading important as Bible viewed as word of God; believe in Jesus Christ as Savior (more than two dozen different groups in United States)
- *Christian Church (Disciples of Christ)*: Communion part of regular Sunday worship, provided by clergy; clergy and church elders can provide spiritual support; believe in Jesus Christ as Savior
- *Church of the Brethren*: Clergy provides anointing of sick for physical healing and spiritual well-being; communion provided by clergy
- *Church of the Nazarene*: Abstinence from tobacco and alcohol; believe in divine healing but accept medical treatment; communion provided by clergy
- *Episcopal (Anglican)*: Fasting not required, although some Episcopalians may abstain from meat on Fridays; communion provided by clergy; anointing of sick may be offered although not required; believe in Jesus Christ as Savior
- *Lutheran*: Communion provided by clergy; anointing of sick by clergy; provide service of Commendation of the Dying; believe in Jesus Christ as Savior (10 different branches)
- *Mennonite*: Abstain from alcohol; prayer has important role during crisis or illness, as well as anointing with oil; may oppose medications; women may desire to wear head covering during hospitalization; simple and plain lifestyle and dress style; communion provided twice a year with foot washing part of ceremony (12 different groups)
- *Methodist*: Communion provided by clergy; anointing of sick; praying and reading Bible important during illness; organ donation encouraged; believe in Jesus Christ as Savior (more than 20 different groups)
- *Presbyterian*: Communion provided by clergy; clergy or elders can provide prayer for the dying; believe in Jesus Christ as Savior (10 different groups)
- *Quaker (Friends)*: Believe God is personal and real, and that any believer can achieve communion with Jesus Christ without use of clergy or church rituals; no special death ceremony because of belief that present life is part of God's kingdom; abstain from alcohol; may oppose use of medications

- *Salvation Army*: Follow Bible as foundation for faith; Scripture reading important; no special ceremonies; offers social welfare programs and centers; open to medical treatment; officer of local Army can be called for visitation and assistance
- *Seventh-Day Adventist*: Healthy lifestyle practices are promoted as the body is seen as a temple of the Holy Spirit; alcohol, tobacco, coffee, tea, and recreational drugs are prohibited; pork and shellfish are avoided by most, and many are vegetarians; Sabbath is observed on Saturday; treatment may be opposed on Sabbath; communion provided by clergy; Bible reading important

ROMAN CATHOLICISM

Believe in Pope as head of the church on earth; express faith mainly in formulated creeds, such as Apostle's Creed; fasting during Lent and on Fridays optional, although older Catholics may adhere to practice; priest provides communion, Sacrament of the Sick, and hears confession; rosary beads, medals, statues, and other religious objects important

EASTERN ORTHODOXY

Includes Greek, Serbian, Russian, and other orthodox churches; believe Holy Spirit proceeds from Father (rather than Father and Son), therefore, reject authority of Pope; fast from meat and dairy products on Wednesdays and Fridays during Lent and on other holy days; follow different calendar for religious celebrations; fast during Lent and before communion; holy unction administered to sick but not necessarily as last rites; last rites must be provided by ordained priest

OTHER CHRISTIAN RELIGIONS

- *Christian Science*: Religion based on use of faith for healing; may decline drugs, psychotherapy, hypnosis, vaccination, and some treatments; use Christian Science nurses and other practitioners and may desire that they be active participants in care
- *Jehovah's Witnesses*: Discourage use of alcohol and tobacco; blood transfusions not accepted although alternative methods can be used
- *Mormons (Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints)*: No professional clergy; communion and anointing of sick/laying on of hands can be provided by member of church priesthood; abstain from alcohol; discourage use of caffeine, alcohol, and other substances that are considered unhealthy and harmful; a sacred

undergarment may be worn at all times that is only removed in absolute emergencies; prayer and reading sacred writings important; may oppose some medical treatments and use divine healing through laying on of hands

- *Unitarian*: Highly liberal branch of Christianity; belief in God as single being rather than doctrine of the Trinity; believe individuals are responsible for their own health state; advocate donation of body organs

JUDAISM

Believe in one universal God and that Jews were specially chosen to receive God's laws; observe Sabbath from sundown Friday to nightfall Saturday; three branches:

- *Orthodox (observant)*: Strictly adhere to traditions of Judaism; believe in divinely inspired five Books of Moses (Torah); follow Kosher diet (not mixing of milk and meat at a meal, no pork or shellfish, no consumption of meat not slaughtered in accordance with Jewish law, use of separate cooking utensils for meat and milk products); strict restrictions during Sabbath (no riding in car, smoking, turning lights on/off, handling money, using telephone or television; medical treatments may be postponed until after Sabbath); men do not shave with razor but may use scissors or electric razor so that blade does not come in contact with skin, men wear skullcaps at all times; beard is considered sign of piety; Orthodox man will not touch any woman other than those in his family; married women cover hair; family and friends visit and may remain with dying person; witness needs to be present when person prays for health so that if death occurs family will be protected by God; after death body should not be left alone and only Orthodox person should touch or wash body; if death occurs on Sabbath, Orthodox persons cannot handle corpse but nursing staff can care for body wearing gloves; body must be buried within 24 hours; autopsy not allowed; any removed body parts must be returned for burial with the remaining body as they believe all parts of the body need to be returned to earth; prayer and quiet time important
- *Conservative*: Follow same basic laws as Orthodox; may only cover heads during worship and prayer; some may approve of autopsy

- *Reform*: Less stringent adherence to laws; do not strictly follow Kosher diet; do not wear skullcaps; attend temples on Fridays for worship but do not follow restrictions during Sabbath; men can touch women

ISLAM (MUSLIM)

Second largest monotheistic (belief in one God) religion; founded by prophet Mohammed who was a human messenger or prophet used by God to communicate His word; Koran is scripture; Koran cannot be touched by anyone ritually unclean and nothing should be placed on Koran; may pray five times a day facing Mecca; privacy during prayer important; abstain from pork and alcohol; all permissible meat must be blessed and killed in special way; cleanliness important; at prayer time, washing is required, even by the sick; accept medical practices if these do not violate religious practices; women are very modest and not allowed to sign consent or make decisions without husband; may wear a *taviz* (black string with words of Koran attached); family or any practicing Muslim can pray with dying person; prefer for family to wash and prepare body of deceased (if necessary, nurses can care for deceased body wearing gloves); autopsy prohibited except when legally mandated; organ donation not allowed

HINDUISM

Considered world's oldest religion; religion of most of India's residents; no scriptures, fixed doctrine, or common worship; belief in karma (every person born into position based on deeds of previous life) and reincarnation; illness may be viewed as result of sin from past life; mostly vegetarian; abstain from alcohol and tobacco

BUDDHISM

Offshoot of Hinduism with most followers in Japan, Thailand, and Myanmar; believe enlightenment found in individual meditation rather than communal worship; follow moral code known as Eightfold Path that leads to nirvana (form of liberation and enlightenment); vegetarian; abstain from alcohol and tobacco; may oppose medications and refuse treatments on holy days; private, uninterrupted time for meditation important

BOX 13-2 Meditation

Solitude provides an opportunity for meditation, an activity that calms the mind and assists on focusing thoughts to the present. It can take the form of:

- *concentrative meditation*—attention is focused on breathing, a sound, or an image; this calms and promotes mental clarity and acuity
- *mindfulness meditation*—attention is paid to sensations being experienced, such as sounds or thoughts; this promotes a calm, nonreactive mental state

- *transcendental meditation*—introduced by Maharishi Mahesh Yogi, this form involves guiding the body to a level of profound relaxation while the mind becomes more alert;

Meditation has many health benefits, including stress reduction, stimulation of immune function, and pain control. Older adults may benefit from the improved self-esteem and higher levels of mental function that are allegedly achieved.

Promoting Hope

Hope is important to human beings. When people believe in the future and believe that something positive is possible, they are likely to commit to goals and actions. For older adults, especially those with serious health conditions or disabilities, maintaining hope can be challenging. The risk of feeling hopeless and depressed is real. Hopelessness can interfere with self-care and healing and drain energies that are needed to face life's challenges.

Promoting hope begins with establishing a trusting relationship with the patient so that he or she will be comfortable expressing feelings openly. A careful assessment can assist in identifying factors that contribute to hopelessness, such as strained family relationships, unrelieved pain, and growing financial problems; interventions should be planned to address specific factors. Other beneficial actions include:

- assisting the patient in developing realistic short-term goals and acknowledging the achievement of goals
- guiding the patient in life review to highlight past successes in meeting life challenges that can be linked to current situations
- helping the patient to find pleasure and enjoyment in current life activities
- encouraging a relaxing, uplifting environment (e.g., flowers, fresh air, sunlight, pleasant scents, pets, stimulating colors)
- facilitating the patient's spiritual practices; referring to clergy as needed
- assisting the patient in participating in religious services
- developing affirmations (positive statements, such as "I am a unique and special individual" or "I am loved by God") for the patient to use and recommending they be repeated daily
- suggesting that the patient maintain a personal journal to promote self-understanding and personal growth

- using music therapeutically; consulting with music therapist for selections that promote optimism and hope
- referring to a support group
- using humor therapeutically; conveying hope and optimism

Assisting in Discovering Meaning in Challenging Situations

Patients may question the purpose of the difficulties they face or believe that God has abandoned them. Persons of faith may want to discuss their perspective on how their current situation fits into a larger plan. An open, nonjudgmental attitude when encouraging the expression of feelings can prove useful.

KEY CONCEPT

Some people's faith can enable them to be comforted in believing that their current challenges serve a positive purpose for God.

Facilitating Religious Practices

Patients may have a desire for communion, confession, and other religious sacraments. Nurses may contact clergy as needed. Nurses also can assist patients in wearing or displaying religious articles and ensure the safe care of these articles during nursing activities.

Praying With and For

People of faith have long understood the value of prayer, and now growing research evidence supports the positive relationship between prayer and health and healing (Butler et al., 2003; Duffin, 2007; Larson et al., 1998; Moberg, 2005). One need not be an ordained clergy to hold a patient's hand and offer a prayer. Prayers can be specific, for example,

that the medication just administered will relieve the pain soon. The use of flowery or “religious” vocabulary is less important than having the heart to ask a higher power to intervene on the patient’s behalf. Intercessory prayers can be offered for patients. Nurses who are not comfortable offering prayers themselves can ask coworkers to pray with and for their patients who so desire.



POINT TO PONDER

What would it mean to you to have someone pray for your needs or struggles? ●

Summary: The Importance of Spiritual Care

People are spiritual beings; therefore, spiritual care must be an integral component of comprehensive, holistic care. Realizing their connection to something greater than themselves—other people, nature, the universe, and the Divine—empowers older persons to rise above their physical, intellectual, emotional, and social challenges and discover the peace and harmony that facilitates healing and well-being. Self-worth and hope can be achieved, thereby imprinting the last segment of life with integrity and joy.

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. Why may spirituality become increasingly important to people as they age?
2. Describe the ways in which spiritual needs can be difficult for older adults to meet.
3. What questions could you ask an older adult to assess his or her spiritual beliefs and needs?
4. Consider the older adult who is a patient in a hospital or a resident of a long-term care facility. What opportunities exist for that person to have periods of solitude? What could you do to facilitate periods of solitude?
5. How can the mystery inherent in life events foster spirituality?

Resources

BeliefNet

<http://www.beliefnet.com>

Duke Center for Spirituality, Theology, and Health

<http://www.dukespiritualityandhealth.org>

George Washington Institute for Spirituality and Health

<http://www.gwish.org>

Health Ministries Association

<http://www.hmassoc.org>

Nurses Christian Fellowship International

<http://www.ncfi.org>

References

- Butler, S. M., Koenig, H. G., Puchalski, C., Cohen, C., & Sloan, R. (2003). Is Prayer Good for Your Health? A Critique of the Scientific Research. *Heritage Lecture #816*, December 22, 2003. Accessed January 2, 2008, <http://www.heritage.org/Research/Religion/HL816.cfm>.
- Duffin, J. (2007). The doctor was surprised; or, how to diagnose a miracle. *Bulletin of the History of Medicine*, 81(4), 699–729.
- Larson, D. B., Sawyers, J. P., & McCullough, M. E. (Eds.) (1998). *Scientific research on spirituality and health: A consensus report*. Rockville, MD: National Institute for Healthcare Research.
- Moberg, D. O. (2005). Research in spirituality, religion and aging. *Journal of Gerontological Social Work*, 45(1–2), 11–40.

Recommended Readings

- Anderson, M., & Burggraf, V. (2007). Passing the torch: Transcendence. *Geriatric Nursing*, 28(1), 37–38.
- Autry, J. A. (2002). *The spirit of retirement. Creating a life of meaning and personal growth*. New York: Prima Press.
- Barnum, B. S. (2006). *Spirituality in nursing* (2nd ed.). New York: Springer Publishing Company.
- Craig, C., Weinert, C., Walton, J., & Derwinski-Robinson, B. (2006). Spirituality, chronic illness, and rural life. *Journal of Holistic Nursing*, 24(1), 27–35.
- Disch, R., & Dobrof, R. (1998). *Dignity and old age*. Binghamton, NY: Haworth Press.
- Dossey, L. (1997). *Prayer is good medicine*. New York: HarperCollins.
- Hicks, T. J. (1999). Spirituality and the elderly: Nursing implications with nursing home residents. *Geriatric Nursing*, 20(3), 144–146.
- Hillman, J. (2000). *The force of character and the lasting life*. New York: Random House.
- Kellemen, R. W., & Edwards, K. A. (2007). *Beyond suffering: Embracing the legacy of African American soul care and spiritual direction*. Grand Rapids, MI: Baker Books.
- Kimble, M. A., McFadden, S. H., Ellor, J. W., & Seeber, J. J. (Eds.). (2004). *Aging, spirituality, and religion*. Minneapolis: Fortress Press.
- Kirkland, K. H., & McIlveen, H. (2000). *Full circle: Spiritual therapy for the elderly*. Binghamton, NY: Haworth Press.
- Koenig, H. G. (1994). *Aging and God. Spiritual pathways to mental health in midlife and later years*. New York: Haworth Pastoral Press.
- Koenig, H. G. (2003). *Purpose and power in retirement*. New York: Templeton Foundation.
- Lindberg, D. A. (2005). Integrative review of research related to meditation, spirituality, and the elderly. *Geriatric Nursing* 26(6), 372–377.
- Lowry, L. E., & Conco, D. (2002). Exploring the meaning of spirituality with aging adults in Appalachia. *Journal for Holistic Nursing*, 20(4), 388–402.
- McSherry, W. (2006). *Making sense of spirituality in nursing and health care* (2nd ed.). Philadelphia: Jessica Kingley Publishers.
- O’Brien, M. E. (2007). *Spirituality in nursing: Standing on holy ground* (3rd ed.). Sudbury, MA: Jones & Bartlett.

- Pargament, K. I. (2001). *The psychology of religion and coping*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Schweitzer, R., Norberg, M., & Larson, L. (2002). The parish nurse coordinator: A bridge to spiritual health care leadership for the future. *Journal of Holistic Nursing, 20*, 212–231.
- Smith, S. D. (2003). *Parish nursing: A handbook for the new millennium*. Binghamton, NY: Haworth Pastoral Press.
- Spurlock, W. R. (2005). Spiritual well-being and caregiver burden in Alzheimer's caregivers. *Geriatric Nursing, 25*(3), 154–161.
- Stanley, C. (1997). *The blessings of brokenness*. Grand Rapids, MI: Zondervan Publishing House.
- Thomas, E. L., & Eisenhandler, S. A. (1999). *Religion, belief, and spirituality in late life*. New York: Springer.
- VandeCreek, L. (1998). *Scientific and pastoral perspectives on intercessory prayer*. New York: Harrington Park Press.
- Wallace, S. (2000). Rx RN: A spiritual approach to aging. *Alternative and Complementary Therapies, 6*(1), 47–48.
- Weaver, A. J., Flannelly, L. T., & Flannelly, K. J. (2001). Review of research on religious and spiritual variables in two primary gerontological nursing journals: 1991 to 1997. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 27*(9), 47–54.
- Weaver, A. J., & Koenig, H. G. (1998). *Reflections on aging and spiritual growth*. Nashville, TN: Abingdon Press.
- Wilt, D. L., & Smucker, C. J. (2001). *Nursing the spirit*. Washington, DC: American Nurses Publishing.

UNIT 4



General Care Concerns

- 14** NUTRITION AND HYDRATION
- 15** REST AND SLEEP
- 16** COMFORT AND PAIN MANAGEMENT
- 17** SAFETY
- 18** SAFE MEDICATION USE

Nutrition and Hydration

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Nutritional Needs of Older Adults

- Quantity and Quality of Caloric Needs
- Nutritional Supplements
- Special Needs of Women

Hydration Needs of Older Adults

Promotion of Oral Health

Threats to Good Nutrition

- Indigestion and Food Intolerance
- Anorexia
- Dysphagia
- Constipation
- Malnutrition

Addressing Nutritional Status and Hydration in Older Adults

Nutrition has a profound impact on health and functional capacity. Nutritional status influences one's ability to defend the body against disease, maintain anatomic and structural normality, think clearly, and possess the energy and desire to engage in social activity. Numerous age-related changes, which are often subtle and gradual, can progressively jeopardize the ability of older persons to maintain good nutritional status; these changes demand special nursing attention (Nursing Diagnosis Table 14-1).

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 List age-related factors that affect dietary requirements in late life.
- 2 Identify risks associated with the use of nutritional supplements.
- 3 List the special nutritional needs of aging women.
- 4 Describe age-related changes affecting hydration in older adults.
- 5 Identify causative factors and signs of dehydration.
- 6 Describe oral health problems that could influence nutritional status and recommended oral hygiene for older adults.
- 7 Outline threats to good nutrition in late life and ways to minimize them.

NURSING DIAGNOSIS

TABLE 14-1 Aging and Risks to Nutritional Status

Causes or Contributing Factors	Nursing Diagnosis
Teeth have various degrees of erosion; abrasions of crown and root structure; high prevalence of tooth loss	Imbalanced Nutrition: Less Than Body Requirements related to limited ability to chew foods Pain related to poor condition of teeth
Reduction in saliva to approximately one-third the volume of earlier years	Imbalanced Nutrition: Less Than Body Requirements related to less efficient mixing of foods
Inefficient digestion of starch due to decreased salivary ptyalin	Imbalanced Nutrition: Less Than Body Requirements related to reduced breakdown of starches
Atrophy of epithelial covering in oral mucosa	Impaired Oral Mucous Membrane
Increased taste threshold; approximately one-third the number of functioning taste buds per papilla of earlier years	Disturbed Sensory Perception: gustatory Imbalanced Nutrition: More Than Body Requirements related to excessive intake of salts and sweets to compensate for taste alterations
Decreased thirst sensations; reduced hunger contractions	Imbalanced Nutrition: Less Than Body Requirements related to reduced ability to sense hunger sensations Deficient Fluid Volume related to decreased thirst
Weaker gag reflex; decreased esophageal peristalsis; relaxation of lower esophageal sphincter; reduced stomach motility	Risk for Injury from aspiration Imbalanced Nutrition: Less Than Body Requirements related to self-imposed restrictions to avoid discomfort
Less hydrochloric acid, pepsin, and pancreatic acid produced	Imbalanced Nutrition: Less Than Body Requirements related to ineffective breakdown of food
Lower fat tolerance	Pain related to indigestion
Decreased colonic peristalsis; reduced sensation for signal to defecate	Imbalanced Nutrition: Less Than Body Requirements related to reduced appetite and self-imposed restrictions related to constipation
Less efficient cholesterol stabilization and absorption	Risk for Infection related to risk of gallstone formation
Increased fat content of pancreas; decreased pancreatic enzymes	Imbalanced Nutrition: Less Than Body Requirements related to problems in normal digestion

Nutritional Needs of Older Adults

Quantity and Quality of Caloric Needs

Although the body's needs for basic nutrients are consistent throughout life, the required amount of specific nutrients may vary. One of the most significant differences in nutrient requirements among people of different ages involves caloric intake. Several factors contribute to the older person's reduced need for calories:

- The older body has less lean body mass and a relative increase in adipose tissue. Adipose tissue metabolizes more slowly than lean tissue and does not burn calories as quickly.
- Basal metabolic rate declines 2% for each decade of life, which contributes to weight increase when the same caloric intake of younger years is consumed.
- The activity level for most older adults is usually lower than it was during their younger years.

Although each person has a unique caloric need based on individual body size, metabolism, health status, and activity level, some generalizations can be made. Quantity and quality of caloric intake must be monitored. One useful way to determine resting caloric needs that considers age, among other factors, is the Harris-Benedict equation, also called the Resting Energy Expenditure:

$$\text{Males: } 66 + [13.7 \times \text{weight (kg)}] + [5 \times \text{height (cm)}] - [6.8 \times \text{age}] = \text{kcal/day}$$

$$\text{Females: } 655 + [9.7 \times \text{weight (kg)}] + [1.8 \times \text{height (cm)}] - [4.7 \times \text{age}] = \text{kcal/day}$$

In addition to monitoring quantity, it is important to monitor the quality of calories consumed. Because caloric requirements and intake are often reduced in later life, the ingested calories need to be of higher quality to ensure an adequate intake of other nutrients (Fig. 14-1). Limiting dietary fat intake to less than 30% of total calories consumed is a good practice for older adults. Table 14-2 lists



FIGURE 14-1 • Although they usually need to ingest fewer calories than younger persons, older adults' diets must include a high quality of nutrients.

the recommended daily allowances (RDAs) for older adults.

Fiber is particularly important in the older adult's diet. Soluble fibers, found in foods such as oats and pectin, help to lower serum cholesterol and improve glucose tolerance in diabetics. Insoluble fibers promote good bowel activity and can be found in grains and many vegetables and fruits.

TABLE 14-2 Recommended Dietary Allowances for People Over 50 Years of Age

	Men	Women
Protein (g)	68	48
Carbohydrates (g)	130	130
Vitamin A (mg)	1000	800
Vitamin D (mg)	15	15
Vitamin E (IU)	12	12
Vitamin C (mg)	90	75
Thiamin (mg)	1.2	1
Riboflavin (mg)	1.4	1.2
Niacin (mg)	16	14
Vitamin B6 (mg)	1.7	1.5
Folate (mg)	400	400
Vitamin B12 (mg)	3	3
Calcium (mg)	1200	1200
Sodium (g/d)	1.3	1.3
Phosphorus (mg)	700	700
Magnesium (mg)	420	320
Iron (mg)	8	8
Zinc (mg)	11	8
Iodine (mg)	150	150
Potassium (g)	4.7	4.7

Dietary Reference Intakes. National Academy of Sciences, 2004.

Carbohydrates provide important sources of energy and fiber. However, because of a decreased ability to maintain a regular blood glucose level, older adults need a reduced carbohydrate intake. A high-carbohydrate diet can stimulate an abnormally high release of insulin in older adults. This can cause hypoglycemia, which can first present in older adults as a confused state.

At least 1 g protein per kilogram of body weight is necessary to renew body protein and protoplasm and to maintain enzyme systems. If 15% of daily caloric intake is derived from protein, protein requirements should be met. Several protein supplements are available commercially and may be useful additives to the older person's diet.

Although the ability to absorb calcium decreases with age, calcium is still required in the diet to maintain a healthy musculoskeletal system, as well as to promote the proper functioning of the body's blood-clotting mechanisms. Older adults may benefit from calcium supplements, but they should discuss their use with their physicians to ensure that other medical problems do not contraindicate them. In addition, caution is needed to avoid excess calcium consumption (see discussion under *Nutritional Supplements*). A good intake of vitamin D and magnesium facilitates calcium absorption.

It is recommended that older adults eat at least five servings of fruits and vegetables daily. Unfortunately, only about one third of older adults consume the recommended amounts (Walker, 2003; Baker, 2007). The nurse can discuss with older adults the importance of consuming adequate fruits and vegetables and make suggestions on the variety of ways that they can be consumed (e.g., in smoothies or mixed in yogurt or gelatin).

Researchers at Tufts University have offered a modification to the U.S. Department of Agriculture's MyPyramid to more accurately reflect the dietary needs of persons over age 70 (Fig. 14-2; Lichtenstein et al., 2008). Two base layers added to the pyramid represent exercise and water, emphasizing the importance of physical activity and advising that older adults drink at least eight glasses of fluids daily. A flag added to the top of the pyramid represents the need for dietary supplements, particularly calcium, vitamin D, and vitamin B12, which have decreased absorption with age. To ensure sufficient essential nutrients in light of reduced calorie intake, "nutrient-dense" choices in each food category are outlined, emphasizing whole grains; bright-colored vegetables; deep-colored fruits; low- and non-fat dairy products; and lean meats, fish, poultry, eggs, dry beans, and nuts. This modified MyPyramid for people over age 70 has merit and may affect changes in future models of MyPyramid.

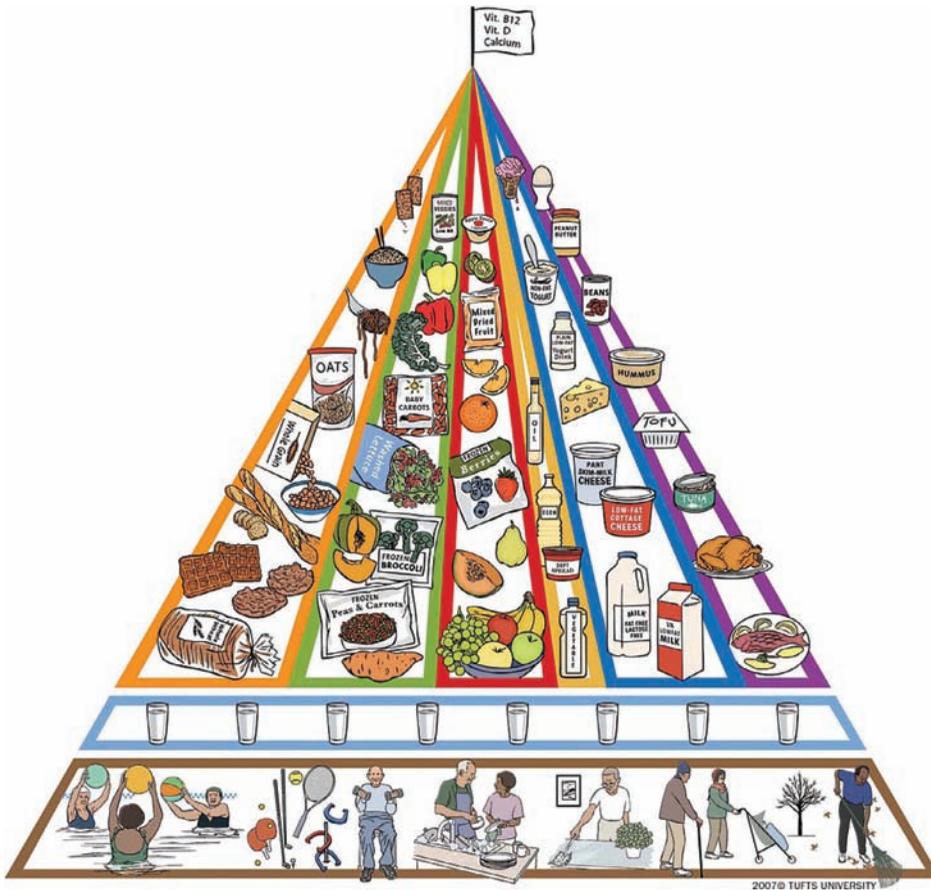


FIGURE 14-2 • Modified MyPyramid for Older Adults. (Available at <http://www.nutrition.tufts.edu>.)

POINT TO PONDER

How do you see your diet affecting your body, mind, and spirit and vice versa? Are there patterns that need to be changed, and, if so, how? ●

herbs, particularly in high doses, can produce adverse effects (Tables 14-3 and 14-4) and interact with many medications (Table 14-5).

Nutritional Supplements

Today, approximately half of all adults take nutritional supplements on a daily basis. Vitamin and mineral requirements for older adults are undetermined and, presently, the recommended dietary allowances (RDAs) for the general adult population need to be applied to the older age group. Although not a panacea, nutritional supplements can compensate for inadequate intake of nutrients and deficiencies resulting from diseases and medication effects. Niacin, riboflavin, thiamine, and vitamins B6, C, and D are the most common nutrients found to be deficient in older adults. However, caution is needed because vitamins, minerals, and

TABLE 14-3 Risks Associated With Excess Intake of Selected Vitamins and Minerals

Vitamin/Mineral	Possible Effects With High Doses
Vitamin D	Calcium deposits in kidneys and arteries
Vitamin K	Blood clots
Folic acid	Masking of vitamin B12 deficiency (a cause of dementia)
Calcium	Renal calculi; impaired ability to absorb other minerals
Potassium	Cardiac arrest

TABLE 14-4 Adverse Effects of Extended or Excessive Use of Selected Herbs

Adverse Effect	Causative Herbs
Anorexia	Green tea
Arrhythmias	Aloe (internal), cascara sagrada, ma-huang
Constipation	Acadia, agrimony, golden seal, St. John's wort
Diarrhea	Cascara sagrada, cayenne, daffodil, eucalyptus, green tea, soybean
Eczema	Garlic, onion
Edema	Aloe, buckthorn, cascara sagrada, rhubarb
Fever	Echinacea
Gastrointestinal discomfort	Cayenne, kava-kava, saw palmetto, valerian
Headache	Black cohosh, green tea, lily-of-the-valley, ma-huang, valerian
Hypokalemia	Buckthorn, cascara sagrada, rhubarb
Hypotension	Black cohosh, hawthorn berry
Insomnia	Green tea, ma-huang, valerian
Jaundice	Kava-kava
Liver damage	Cayenne, germander, uva-ursi
Nausea/vomiting	Black cohosh, celandine, daffodil, echinacea, eucalyptus, green tea, lily-of-the-valley, sandalwood, uva-ursi
Urticaria	Brewer's yeast, psyllium
Vertigo	Green tea

For example, excess calcium consumption (i.e., in excess of 2000 mg/day) can lead to problems such as kidney stones. If calcium supplements are used, no more than 500 mg should be taken at any one time because larger amounts are not absorbed as well. With the increasing number of calcium-

fortified products available, older adults should check labels and total the amount of calcium they consume from various sources. Consideration also must be given to the food with which calcium supplements are taken, because wheat bran, soybeans, and other legumes can interfere with the calcium absorption.

The nursing assessment should include a review of the type and amount of nutritional supplements used. Nurses can encourage older adults to avoid excess intake of supplements and to review the use of nutritional supplements with their health care providers.



KEY CONCEPT

Vitamin, mineral, and herbal supplements can be beneficial, but caution is needed to avoid adverse consequences from their misuse.

Special Needs of Women

Heart disease, cancer, and osteoporosis are among the nutrition-related conditions to which older women are susceptible. Attention to dietary requirements and reduction of diet-related risks can reduce some of these problems.

From 64 to 74 years of age, the rate of heart disease among women equals that of men. The reduction of fat intake to 30% kilocalories or less (70 g in an 1800-calorie diet) can be beneficial in reducing the risk of heart disease in older women. Research is attempting to disclose the role of low fat intake in reduced risk of breast cancer, which could support another benefit to limiting fat intake. Alcohol consumption also has a role in breast cancer; the daily intake of 40 g or more of alcohol has been linked to an increased risk of breast cancer (40 g of alcohol equals 30 oz of beer or 3 oz of 100-proof whiskey). Thus, reducing alcohol intake is advisable.

TABLE 14-5 Herb–Drug Interactions

Herb	Drug	Effect of Interaction
Aloe barbadensis	Cardiac glycosides	Increased effects of drug
	Corticosteroids	Increased potassium loss
	Thiazide diuretics	Increased potassium loss
Cascara sagrada	Thiazide diuretics	Increased potassium loss
Feverfew	Salicylates	Increased antithrombotic effect
	Warfarin sodium	Increased antithrombotic effect
Ginkgo biloba	Antithrombotic drugs	Increased antithrombotic effect
Kava-kava	CNS depressants	Increased sedation
White willow	Salicylates	Increased antithrombotic effect

Nearly all women are affected by some degree of osteoporosis by the time they reach their seventh decade of life. The risk of bone loss is increased by estrogen reduction, obesity, inactivity, smoking, and the excessive consumption of caffeine and alcohol. The risk of fracture from brittle bones and the complications that follow warrant consideration to prevent bone loss by controlling risks. Postmenopausal women should have a daily calcium intake of at least 1000 mg. Calcium from carbonate and citrate are the most common forms of calcium supplements. Calcium carbonate, the most cost-effective form, should be taken with a meal at doses of not more than 500 mg at one time to ensure optimal absorption (Straub, 2007).

Hydration Needs of Older Adults

With age, intracellular fluid is lost, resulting in decreased total body fluids. Whereas water comprises approximately 60% of body weight in younger adults, it constitutes 50% or less of body weight in older adults. This reduces the margin of safety for any fluid loss; a reduced fluid intake or increased loss that would be only a minor problem in a younger person could be life-threatening to an older person. Special measures must be taken to ensure a minimum fluid intake of 1500 mL daily.

Nurses evaluate older adults for factors that can cause them to consume less fluid, such as:

- age-related reductions in thirst sensations
- fear of incontinence (physical condition and lack of toileting opportunities)
- lack of accessible fluids
- inability to obtain or drink fluids independently
- lack of motivation
- altered mood or cognition
- nausea, vomiting, gastrointestinal distress

When such factors are present or there is any suspicion regarding the adequacy of fluid intake, fluid intake and output should be recorded and monitored (see Nursing Diagnosis Highlight: Deficient Fluid Volume).

Fluid restriction not only predisposes older adults to infection, constipation, and decreased bladder distensibility, but it also can lead to serious fluid and electrolyte imbalances. Dehydration, a life-threatening condition to older persons because of their already reduced amount of body fluid, is demonstrated by dry, inelastic skin; dry, brown tongue; sunken cheeks; concentrated urine; blood urea value elevated above 60 mg/dL; and, in some cases, confusion.

At the other extreme, older adults are also more sensitive to overhydration caused by decreased cardiovascular and renal function. Overhydration is a

NURSING DIAGNOSIS HIGHLIGHT

DEFICIENT FLUID VOLUME

Overview

Deficient fluid volume refers to a state of dehydration in which intracellular, extracellular, or vascular fluid is less than that required by the body. This condition can be indicated by increased output, reduced intake, concentrated urine, weight loss, hypotension, increased pulse, poorer skin turgor, dry skin and mucous membranes, increased body temperature, weakness, and elevated serum creatinine, blood urea nitrogen, and hematocrit.

Causative or contributing factors

Vomiting, diarrhea, polyuria, excessive drainage, profuse perspiration, increased metabolic rate, insufficient intake due to physical or mental limitation, inaccessible fluids, medications (e.g., diuretics, laxatives, sedatives).

Goal

The patient possesses an intake and output balance within 200 mL and has cause of problem identified and corrected.

Interventions

- Perform a comprehensive assessment to identify underlying cause of fluid volume deficit; obtain treatment for underlying cause as appropriate.
- Maintain a strict record of intake and output.
- Closely monitor vital signs, urine specific gravity, skin turgor, mental status.
- Monitor patient's weight daily until problem is corrected.
- Encourage fluids, at least 1500 mL during a 24-hour period unless contraindicated; offer foods that are high in fluid content (e.g., gelatin, sherbets, soup); keep fluids easily accessible.
- Consult with physician regarding need for intravenous fluid replacement; if prescribed, monitor carefully because of high risk of overhydration in elderly persons.
- Assist with or provide good oral hygiene.
- Identify persons at high risk for dehydration and closely monitor their intake and output.

consideration if intravenous fluids are needed therapeutically.



KEY CONCEPT

The age-related decline in body fluids reduces the margin of safety when insufficient fluid is consumed or extra fluid is lost.

Promotion of Oral Health

Pain-free, intact gums and teeth will promote the ingestion of a wider variety of food. The ability to meet nutritional requirements in old age is influenced by basic dental care throughout one's lifetime. Poor dental care, environmental influences, inappropriate nutrition, and changes in gingival tissue commonly contribute to severe tooth loss in older persons. After the third decade of life, periodontal disease becomes the first cause of tooth loss; by 70 years of age, most people have lost all their teeth. Growing numbers of aging adults are preserving their teeth as they grow older; however, without attention to the prevention of periodontal disease, they, too, could face their senior years without their natural teeth. In addition to teaching methods to prevent periodontal disease, nurses must ensure that older adults and their caregivers understand the signs of this condition so that they can seek help in a timely manner. Signs of periodontal disease include:

- bleeding gums, particularly when teeth are brushed
- red, swollen, painful gums
- pus at gum line when pressure is exerted
- chronic bad breath
- loosening of teeth from gum line

The use of a toothbrush is more effective than swabs or other soft devices in improving gingival tissues and removing soft debris from the teeth. However, care should be taken not to traumatize the tissues because they are more sensitive, fragile, and prone to irritation in older adults. Loose teeth should be extracted to prevent them from being aspirated and causing a lung abscess.

Obviously, a lifetime of poor dental care cannot be reversed. Geriatric dental problems need to be prevented early in a person's life. Although the specialty of geriatric dentistry has grown, many persons do not have access to this service or the financial means to avail themselves of this care. Through education, nurses can make the public aware of the importance of good, regular dental care and oral hygiene at all ages, and inform patients that aging alone does not necessitate the loss of teeth.

Many older adults believe that having dentures eliminates the need for dental care. Nurses must correct this misconception and encourage continued dental care for the individual with dentures. Lesions, infections, and other diseases can be detected by the dentist and corrected to prevent serious complications from developing. Changes in tissue structure may affect the fit of the dental appliances and require readjustment. Poorly fitting dentures need not always be replaced; sometimes they can be lined to ensure a proper fit. Nurses can explain this to older adults, who may resist correction because of concern for the expense involved. Most important, dental appliances should be used and not kept in a pocket or dresser drawer! Wearing dental appliances allows proper chewing, encouraging older people to introduce a wider variety of foods into their diets.



KEY CONCEPT

Dental problems can affect virtually every system of the body; therefore, they must be identified and corrected promptly.

Threats to Good Nutrition

Indigestion and Food Intolerance

Indigestion and food intolerance are common among older people because of decreased stomach motility, less gastric secretion, and a slower gastric emptying time. Older persons frequently attempt to manage these problems by using antacids or limiting food intake, but both strategies potentially predispose them to other risks. Other means for managing these problems should be explored. For example, the nurse can suggest eating several small meals rather than three large ones. This not only provides a smaller amount of food to be digested at one time, but also helps to maintain a more stable blood glucose level throughout the day. Avoiding or limiting fried foods may be helpful, since it is easier to digest broiled, boiled, or baked food. When food intolerance exists, the person can eliminate specific foods from the diet. Often, older adults need help identifying problem foods, particularly if they have included those foods in their diets throughout their entire lives. Sitting in a high Fowler position while eating and for 30 minutes after meals is helpful as it increases the size of the abdominal and thoracic cavities, provides more room for the stomach, and facilitates swallowing and digestion. Finally, ensuring adequate fluid intake and activity promotes the motility of food through the digestive tract.

**KEY CONCEPT**

Self-imposed dietary restrictions and misuse of antacids to manage indigestion can create a new set of problems for older adults.

Anorexia

Anorexia can be related to a variety of conditions, including medication side effects, inactivity, physical illness, or age-related changes, such as decreased taste and smell sensations, reduced production of the hormone leptin, and gastric changes that cause satiation with smaller volumes of food intake. In the older adults particularly, losses and stresses (e.g., death of loved ones, loneliness, financial worries, and living with effects of chronic conditions) could cause anxiety and depression that could affect appetite.

The initial step in managing this problem is to identify its cause. Depending on the cause, treatment could consist of a high-calorie diet, referral to social programs, tube feeding, hyperalimentation, psychiatric therapy, or medications. Some stimulation to the appetite can be achieved through the use of certain herbs, such as ginger root, ginseng, gotu kola, and peppermint. Intake, output, and weight should be monitored; weight loss greater than 5% within a 1-month period and 10% within a 6-month period are considered significant and require evaluation.

Dysphagia

The incidence of dysphagia increases with age and can take several forms, such as difficulty moving food from the mouth to the esophagus (transfer dysphagia), down the esophagus (transport dysphagia), or from the esophagus into the stomach (delivery dysphagia). Neurologic conditions, such as a stroke, can cause dysphagia, although most cases result from gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD).

A careful assessment that identifies specific swallowing problems is useful in planning the best interventions for the person experiencing dysphagia. Factors to consider include: onset, types of foods that present the most problem (solids or liquids), if it occurs consistently or periodically, and other symptoms and related complications (e.g., aspiration or weight loss). A referral to a speech pathologist is beneficial in evaluating the problem and developing an individualized care plan.

Although specific interventions will be used to address an individual's needs, some general measures prove useful for all persons with dysphagia, such as having the person sit upright whenever food or fluid is being consumed; allowing sufficient time

for eating; ensuring there is no residual food in the mouth before feeding additional food; placing small portions in the mouth; discouraging the person from talking while eating; keeping a suction machine readily available; and monitoring intake, output, and weight. Often, thickened liquids or mechanically altered foods may prove beneficial. Tilting the head to a side and placing food on a particular part of the tongue may be recommended, as may correction of an underlying problem, such as obesity or removal of a structural obstruction.

Constipation

Constipation is a common problem among older persons because of slower peristalsis, inactivity, side effects of drugs, and a tendency toward less fiber and fluid in the diet. If food intake is reduced to relieve discomfort, nutritional status can be threatened. Laxatives, another relief measure, can result in diarrhea, leading to dehydration; if oil-based laxatives are used, fat-soluble vitamins (e.g., A, D, K, and E) can be drained from the body, leading to vitamin deficiencies.

Nurses must recognize constipation as a frequent problem for older adults and encourage preventive measures. Plenty of fluids, fruits, vegetables, and activity are advisable, as is regular and adequate time allowance for a bowel movement. Activity promotes peristalsis and should be encouraged. Fiber is important but must be used with care. Excessive fiber intake can cause bowel obstruction, diarrhea, or the formation of bezoars, which are dense masses of seeds, skins, and other fiber-containing components of plants that form in the stomach (Steinberg & Eitan, 2003). The lower gastric acidity contributes to bezoar development, which is demonstrated by nausea, vomiting, fullness, abdominal pain, and diarrhea. Senna is an effective natural laxative that can be consumed in tablet or tea form. Often, individuals are aware that certain foods (e.g., bananas, prunes, carrots, or oatmeal) facilitate bowel elimination; these should be incorporated into the diet on a regular basis. Laxatives should be considered only after other measures have proved unsuccessful and, when necessary, should be used with great care.

Malnutrition

Because malnutrition is a potential and serious threat to older people, it should be closely monitored. The factors contributing to this problem include decreased taste and smell sensations, reduced mastication capability, slower peristalsis, decreased hunger contractions, reduced gastric acid secretion, less absorption of nutrients because of

BOX 14-1 Nutritional Risks Associated With Selected Medications

Anemia	Colchicine
Colchicine	Corticosteroids
Indomethacin	Erythromycin
Methyldopa	Estradiol
Nitrofurantoin	Estrogens
Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs	Fenoprofen
Oxyphenbutazone	Ibuprofen
Phenylbutazone	Indomethacin
Sulfonamides	Naproxin
Anorexia	Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs
Aminosalicylic acid	Oxyphenbutazone
Cardiac glycosides	Phenylbutazone
CNS stimulants	Probenecid
Propranolol	Tetracycline
Pyrazinamide	Tolmetin
Constipation	Nausea/vomiting
Aluminum hydroxide	Allopurinol
Calcium carbonate	Antibiotics
Cimetidine	Anticancer drugs
Codeine	Anticholinesterases
Narcotics	Anticonvulsants
Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs	Antidysrhythmics
Sedatives-hypnotics	Antihistamines
Diarrhea	Antihypertensives
Ampicillin	Cardiac glycosides
Ascorbic acid	Chloral hydrate
Cardiac glycosides	Codeine
Cimetidine	Colchicine
Laxatives	Diuretics
Magnesium-based preparations	Ibuprofen
Neomycin	Levodopa
Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs	Naproxen
Penicillins	Narcotics
Tetracyclines	Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs
Fluid and electrolyte disturbances	Potassium
Corticosteroids	Probenecid
Diuretics	Propranolol
Estrogens	Reserpine
Laxatives	Tamoxifen
Prednisone	Thiamine
Gastrointestinal upset	Tolmetin
Aspirin	Vasodilators

reduced intestinal blood flow, and a decrease in cells of the intestinal absorbing surface. The effects of medications can contribute to malnutrition (Box 14-1), reinforcing the significance of using nonpharmacologic means to address health conditions when possible. Socioeconomic factors contributing to malnutrition also must be considered,

along with lifelong eating patterns (e.g., history of skipping breakfast or high consumption of “junk foods”).

The appearance of older people can be misleading and delay the detection of a malnourished state. Some of the clinical signs of malnutrition include:



ASSESSMENT GUIDE 14-1

Nutritional Status

HISTORY

- Review health history and medical record for evidence of diagnoses or conditions that can alter the purchase, preparation, ingestion, digestion, absorption, or excretion of foods.
- Review medications for those that can affect appetite and nutritional state.
- Review the type and amount of any nutritional supplements used.
- Ask the patient to describe his or her diet, meal pattern, food preferences, and restrictions.
- Request that the patient keep a diary of all food intake for a week.

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

- Inspect hair: Hair loss or brittleness can be associated with malnutrition.
- Inspect skin. Note persistent “goose bumps” (vitamin B6 deficiency); pallor (anemia); purpura (vitamin C deficiency); brownish pigmentation (niacin deficiency); red scaly areas in folds around eyes and between nose and corner of mouth (riboflavin deficiency); dermatitis (zinc deficiency); and fungal infections (hyperglycemia).
- Test skin turgor. Skin turgor, although poor in many older adults, tends to be best in the areas over the forehead and sternum; therefore, these are preferred areas to test.
- Note muscle tone, strength, and movement. Muscle weakness can be associated with vitamin and mineral deficiencies.
- Inspect eyes. Ask about changes in vision, night vision problems (vitamin A deficiency). Note the patient's percentile rank.
- Inspect oral cavity. Note dryness (dehydration), lesions, condition of tongue, breath odor, condition of teeth or dentures.
- Ask about signs and symptoms: sore tongue, indigestion, diarrhea, constipation, food distaste, weak-

ness, muscle cramps, burning sensations, dizziness, drowsiness, bone pain, sore joints, recurrent boils, dyspnea, dysphagia, anorexia, appetite changes.

- Observe person drinking or eating for difficulties.

Biochemical Evaluation

- Obtain blood sample for screening of total iron binding capacity, transferrin saturation, protein, albumin, hemoglobin, hematocrit, electrolytes, vitamins, prothrombin time.
- Obtain urine sample for screening of specific gravity.

Anthropometric Measurement

- Measure and ask about changes in height and weight. Use age-adjusted weight chart for evaluating weight. Note weight losses of 5% within the past 1 month and 10% with the past 6 months.
- Determine triceps skinfold measurement (TSM). To do so, grasp a fold of skin and subcutaneous fat halfway between the shoulder and elbow and measure with a caliper. Note the patient's percentile rank.
- Measure the midarm circumference (MC) with a tape measure (using centimeters) and use this to calculate midarm muscle circumference (MMC) with the formula:

$$\text{MMC (cm)} = \text{MAC (cm)} - (0.314 \times \text{TSM [mm]})$$

The standard MMC is 25.3 cm for men and 23.2 cm for women. MMC below 90% of the standard is considered undernutrition; below 60% is considered protein-calorie malnutrition.

PSYCHOLOGICAL EXAMINATION

- Test cognitive function.
- Note alterations in mood, behavior, cognition, level of consciousness. Be alert to signs of depression (can be associated with deficiencies of vitamin B6, magnesium, or niacin).
- Ask about changes in mood or cognition.

- weight loss greater than 5% in the past month or 10% in the past 6 months
- weight 10% below or 20% above ideal range
- serum albumin level lower than 3.5 g/100 mL
- hemoglobin level below 12 g/dL
- hematocrit value below 35%

Other problems can indicate malnutrition, such as delirium, depression, visual disturbances, dermatitis, hair loss, pallor, delayed wound healing, lethargy, and fatigue. It is crucial that nurses use keen assessment skills to recognize early malnourishment in older adults and encourage good nutritional practices to prevent its occurrence.

Addressing Nutritional Status and Hydration in Older Adults

A wide range of physical, mental, and socioeconomic factors affect nutritional status in later life. Because these factors can change, regular nutritional assessment is necessary. Effective nutritional assessment involves collaboration among a physician, nurse, nutritionist, and social worker. Assessment Guide 14-1 describes the basic components of the nutritional assessment.



KEY CONCEPT

A variety of physical, psychological, and socioeconomic factors influence nutritional status.

Specific interventions discussed in this chapter can help address threats to good nutrition and hydration. In addition, it is important to consider that, often, a minor service link can enhance an older adult's nutritional status. In addressing the nutritional needs of older adults, the nurse must consider a wide range of services, including Food Stamps, Meals on Wheels, shopping and meal preparation assistance through volunteer organizations, home health aides for feeding assistance, congregate eating programs, and nutritional and psychological counseling.

The nurse must also consider cultural variables affecting nutrition. Ethnic and religious factors can influence food selection and preparation and eating patterns and practices. In some cultures, specific foods are seen as having healing benefit. For example, some Asian Americans believe that health is a balance of yin and yang and may select certain hot or cold foods to restore balance. An understanding of unique cultural factors affecting dietary practices is essential to individualized care.

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. List the various physical, mental, and socioeconomic requisites for good nutritional intake.
2. What topics could be included in an oral health education program for older adults?
3. How have the media and advertisements influenced the use of dietary supplements? What can nurses do to assist older adults in separating fact from myth regarding the claims made by manufacturers and distributors of dietary supplements?
4. Describe factors that can negatively influence dietary intake for older adults in a nursing home, a hospital, and at home.
5. Describe the components of a comprehensive nutritional assessment.

Resources

American Dietetic Association

<http://www.eatright.org>

Food and Nutrition Information Center

<http://www.fnic.nal.usda.gov>

National Institute of Dental and Craniofacial Research

<http://www.nidcr.nih.gov/HealthInformation/SpecialCareResources>

Overeaters Anonymous

<http://www.overeaters.org>

References

- Baker, H. (2007). Nutrition in the elderly: An overview. *Geriatrics*, 62(7), 28–31.
- Lichtenstein, A. H., Rasmussen, H., Yu, W. W., Epstein, S. R., & Russell, R. M. (2008). Modified MyPyramid for older adults. *Journal of Nutrition*, 138(1), 78–82.
- Steinberg, J. M., & Eitan, A. (2003). Prickly pear fruit bezoar presenting as rectal perforation in an elderly patient. *International Journal of Colorectal Disease*, 18(4), 5–7.
- Straub, D. A. (2007). Calcium supplementation in clinical practice: A review of forms, doses, and indications. *Nutrition in Clinical Practice*, 22(3):286–96.
- Walker, S. N. (2003). Bigger is not always better. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 29(5), 3.

Recommended Readings

- Bailey, R. K., Mitchell, D. C., Miller, C. K., & Smiciklas-Wright, H. (2005). Dietary patterns of older adults identified as plausible reports. *The FASEB Journal* 19, A975.
- Burckhardt, P., & Dawson-Hughes, B. (2001). *Nutritional aspects of osteoporosis*. New York: Springer.
- de Castro, J. M., & Stroebel, N. (2002). Food intake in the real world: Implications for nutrition and aging. *Clinical Geriatric Medicine*, 18(4), 685–697.
- Davis, C. A., Britten, P., & Myers, E. F. (2001). Past, present, and future of the Food Guide Pyramid. *Journal of the American Dietetic Association*, 101(8), 881–885.
- Drewnowski, A., & Warren-Mears, V. A. (2001.) Does aging change nutrition requirements? *Journal of Nutrition and Healthy Aging*, 5(2), 70–74.
- Dror, Y. (2003). Dietary fiber intake for the elderly. *Nutrition*, 19(4), 388–389.
- Evans, B. C., & Crogan, N. L. (2006). Building a scientific base for nutrition care of Hispanic nursing home residents. *Geriatric Nursing*, 27(5), 273–279.
- Kennedy, K. L. (2001). Documenting nutritional status and its impact. *Annals of Long-Term Care*, 9(12), 35–38.
- Ma, J., Johns, R. A., & Stafford, R. S. (2007). Americans are not meeting current calcium recommendations. *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition*, 85(5), 1361–1366.
- McDonald, A., & Hildebrandt, L. (2003). Comparison of formulaic equations to determine energy expenditure in the critically ill patient. *Nutrition*, 19(3), 233–239.
- Resnick, B. (2001). Weight loss and failure to thrive: Evaluating and motivating older adults toward recovery. *Annals of Long-Term Care*, 9(7), 21–31.

- Robinson, S. B., & Rosher, R. B. (2002). Can a beverage cart help improve hydration? *Geriatric Nursing, 23*(4), 208–211.
- Shanley, C., & O’Loughlin, G. (2000). Dysphagia among nursing home residents: An assessment and management protocol. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 26*(8), 35–48.
- Sharkey, J. R., Giuliani, C., Haines, P. S., Branch, L. G., Busby-Whitehead, J., & Zohoori, N. (2003). Summary measure of dietary musculoskeletal nutrient (calcium, vitamin D, magnesium, and phosphorus) intakes is associated with lower-extremity physical performance in homebound elderly men and women. *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition, 77*(4), 847–856.
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services and U.S. Department of Agriculture. (2005). *Dietary Guidelines for Americans, 2005* (6th ed.). Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office. Available at <http://www.healthier.us.gov/dietaryguidelines/>
- Wahlqvist, M. L. (2002). Malnutrition in the aged: The dietary assessment. *Public Health and Nutrition, 5*(6A), 911–913.
- Yen, P. K. (2003). Maintaining cognitive function with diet. *Geriatric Nursing, 24*(1), 62–63.
- Yen, P. K. (2005). A quarter century of nutrition progress for older adults. *Geriatric Nursing, 26*(1), 51–52.
- Yen, P. K. (2005). Food and supplement safety. *Geriatric Nursing, 26*(5), 279–280.

Rest and Sleep

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Age-Related Changes in Sleep

- Circadian Sleep–Wake Cycles
- Sleep Stages
- Sleep Efficiency and Quality

Sleep Disturbances

- Insomnia
- Nocturnal Myoclonus and Restless Leg Syndrome
- Sleep Apnea
- Medical Conditions That Affect Sleep
- Drugs That Affect Sleep

Promoting Rest and Sleep in Older Adults

- Pharmacologic Measures to Promote Sleep
- Nonpharmacologic Measures to Promote Sleep
- Pain Control

All human beings must retreat from activity and stimulation to renew their reserves. Several periods of relaxation throughout the day and a block of sleep help promote a healthy pattern of rest. The fact that a person spends nearly one third of his or her lifetime sleeping and resting underscores the significance of these activities. Sleep often is a mirror into our state of health and well-being in that we may be restless and unable to obtain sufficient sleep in the presence of pain, stress, or impaired bodily functions. It also is a factor that affects health and well-being, as inadequate quality or quantity of sleep is associated with risks to physical and mental health.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 Explain differences between younger and older adults in sleep stages and cycles.
- 2 Describe factors that may disturb sleep in older adults.
- 3 Describe pharmacologic and non-pharmacologic means to promote sleep.
- 4 Discuss the importance of pain control for promoting rest and sleep.

POINT TO PONDER

What are your unique sleep and rest requirements, and how well do you meet them? What do you notice about your physical and emotional states when you have had inadequate sleep and rest? ●

Changes that occur with aging and conditions experienced in later years can interfere with the ability to achieve adequate sleep and rest (Nursing Diagnosis Table 15-1). Astute assessment is necessary to ensure that older adults fulfill sleep and rest requirements and to identify obstacles for which intervention is warranted.

Age-Related Changes in Sleep

Insomnia, daytime sleepiness, and napping are all highly prevalent among the older adults. In most cases, these experiences result from age-related changes in circadian sleep–wake cycles, sleep architecture (stages), sleep efficiency, and sleep quality (Ancoli-Israel & Martin, 2006).

Circadian Sleep–Wake Cycles

Older adults are more likely to fall asleep earlier in the evening and awaken earlier in the morning, a behavior referred to as *phase advance* (Ancoli-Israel & Martin, 2006). The quantity of sleep does not change, but the hours in which it occurs may. This change can prove frustrating for older adults who find themselves nodding off during evening activities and wide awake in the early morning hours when everyone else is asleep. Adjusting schedules to accommodate the altered biorhythms could prove useful. Increasing natural light also is useful in pushing the circadian rhythm toward a later hour of sleep.

Sleep Stages

For sleep to be most restful, the person experiences a series of sleep stages. Changes in the amount of time spent in each stage occur with aging (Table 15-2). Reductions in non-rapid eye movement (NREM) sleep and rapid eye movement (REM) stage sleep

begin to occur after midlife. Older people sleep less soundly, shift in and out of stage I sleep to a greater degree than younger adults, and have a decline in the proportion of time spent in the deeper stages III and IV sleep to the point that it is absent in many older adults.

Sleep Efficiency and Quality

Beginning in midlife, people become more sensitive to noise while they are sleeping and are awakened by noises that may not cause a reaction in younger adults. Likewise, older individuals are more likely than the young to be awakened by having lights turned on and having changes in room temperature. It is important to consider these factors when caring for older adults in institutional settings. If the sleeping area is noisy, a white-noise generator that produces soothing sounds that mask other noises could prove useful. Some people find that a radio achieves the same effect.



KEY CONCEPT

Nurses need to be aware that older adults can be easily awakened by noise and lighting associated with caregiving and other staff activities during the night.

Sleep Disturbances

Approximately half of the adult population complains of sleep disorders, with the major complaint being insomnia. The nurse can assess for sleep disturbances in the older adult by using a self-rating tool such as the Pittsburgh Sleep Quality Index (PSQI; see Resources at the end of this chapter). In addition to insomnia, leg movements, sleep apnea, medical conditions, and drugs can disturb sleep in older adults.

Insomnia

It can be difficult to get a fair estimate of the problem because insomnia can have various meanings.

NURSING DIAGNOSIS

TABLE 15-1 Aging and Risks to the Ability to Achieve Rest

Causes or Contributing Factors

Increased awakening during sleep; sleep stages III and IV less prominent
 Increased incidence of nocturia
 Altered perception of night environment, resulting from visual and hearing deficits
 Increased incidence of muscle cramps during resting states

Nursing Diagnosis

Disturbed Sleep Pattern related to less prominent sleep stages
 Disturbed Sleep Pattern related to nocturia
 Anxiety and Fear related to difficulty in falling asleep
 Pain related to muscle cramps

TABLE 15-2 Stages of Sleep and Differences in Older Adulthood

Stage	Characteristics	Differences in Older Adulthood
I	Begins nodding off Can be easily awakened If undisturbed, will reach next stage in a few minutes	More time spent in this stage, most likely due to frequent awakening; increased number of arousals and shifts into non-REM sleep
II	Deeper stage of relaxation reached Some eye movement noted through closed lids Can be easily awakened	No significant change
III	Early phase of deep sleep Reduced temperature and heart rate Muscles relaxed More difficult to be awakened	Decreased
IV	Deep sleep and relaxation All body functions reduced Considerable stimulation needed to be awakened Insufficient stage IV sleep can cause emotional dysfunction	May disappear completely in extreme old age
REM	Rapid eye movement (REM) occurs Increased vital signs (sometimes irregular) Will enter REM sleep approximately once every 90 minutes of stage IV sleep Insufficient REM sleep can cause emotional dysfunction, including psychosis	Decreased due to reduced amount of sleep time in general*

*Certain drugs can also decrease REM sleep, including alcohol, barbiturates, and phenothiazine derivatives.

People may report that they have insomnia because they awaken at 5 AM, have difficulty falling asleep, do not sleep soundly, or travel to the bathroom several times during the night. This reinforces the importance of recognizing insomnia as a symptom and thoroughly assessing for factors that contribute to disrupted sleep. Insomnia can be a short-term problem associated with a changed environment, illness, added stress, or anxiety. Chronic insomnia (i.e., insomnia lasting 3 or more weeks) can be related to physical or mental illnesses, substance abuse, or medications. Sedatives may be unnecessary if the underlying cause of insomnia can be addressed.

Nocturnal Myoclonus and Restless Leg Syndrome

Jerking leg movements during sleep can cause awakenings during the night. One such cause of this is known as nocturnal myoclonus, a condition characterized by at least five leg jerks or movements per hour during sleep. Nocturnal myoclonus is associated with the use of tricyclic antidepressants and chronic renal failure.

Restless leg syndrome, believed to be associated with alterations in dopamine and iron metabolism, causes a strong urge to move the legs. People with

restless leg syndrome may describe the sensations with terms such as “uncomfortable,” “electrical,” “itching,” “pins and needles,” “pulling,” “creepy-crawly,” and “painful.” Moving the legs brings relief of the sensations but also interferes with sleep. Antidepressants, antihistamines, antipsychotics, alcohol, caffeine, hypoglycemia, and simple and refined carbohydrates can contribute to this syndrome. Dehydration worsens symptoms; drinking a glass of water may relieve symptoms for some individuals. It is estimated that more than one third of all older adults experience these problems; therefore, its potential role in causing reported insomnia needs to be evaluated.

Sleep Apnea

Sleep apnea is a significant disorder in which at least five episodes of cessation of breathing, lasting at least ten seconds, occur per hour of sleep. It is characterized by snoring and sudden awakening and gasping for air. The prevalence is two times greater in men than in women.

This disorder can be caused by a defect in the central nervous system that affects the diaphragm (central sleep apnea), a blockage in the upper airway that interferes with normal air flow (obstructive sleep apnea), or a combination of both (mixed).

Snoring usually accompanies the obstructive type. The interruption of sleep can result in daytime fatigue and sleepiness; nurses should assess for sleep apnea when these symptoms are present.

Sleep disorder clinics and other resources can assist in evaluating the disorder and determining the best treatment plan, which could consist of weight reduction, continuous positive pressurized air, and/or surgery to remove obstructions or realign bite.

Sleeping in a supine position should be avoided because it allows the tongue to fall back and block the airway. Alcohol and other drugs with depressant effects can aggravate the problem by decreasing respiratory drive and relaxing throat muscles. Patients need to be cautioned about driving and using machinery if daytime drowsiness is present.

Medical Conditions That Affect Sleep

Health conditions, particularly chronic diseases, can interfere with sleep by producing symptoms such as nocturia, incontinence, pain, orthopnea, apnea, muscle cramps, and tremors. Cardiovascular conditions that produce nocturnal cardiac ischemia can interfere with sleep due to the dyspnea and transient angina that occurs. Fluctuating blood glucose levels can interfere with the sleep of persons who have diabetes. Gastric pain can awaken persons with gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD). Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) and other respiratory conditions can disrupt sleep with coughing and dyspnea. Musculoskeletal conditions can cause pain. People with dementia have minimal stage II and REM sleep, no stage IV sleep, and frequent arousals from sleep. Depression and other emotional disturbances can alter sleep.

Because medical conditions can affect sleep, it is important to consider that changes in sleep patterns may indicate signs of other undetected problems in older persons. Although early morning rising is not unusual for older adults, a sudden change to earlier awakening or insomnia may be symptomatic of an emotional disturbance or alcohol abuse. Sleep disturbances also may arise from cardiac or respiratory problems, which produce difficulties, such as orthopnea and pain related to poor peripheral circulation. Restlessness and confusion during the night may indicate an adverse reaction to a sedative. Nocturnal frequency may be a clue to the presence of diabetes. It is important to assess both the quality and quantity of sleep.

Drugs That Affect Sleep

Like medical conditions, medications used to treat those conditions can affect sleep. Older adults experiencing sleep problems should identify and review their medications with their physicians. Examples of

drugs that can interrupt sleep include anticholinergics, antidepressants, antihypertensives (centrally acting ones), benzodiazepines, b-blockers, diuretics, levodopa, steroids, theophylline, and thyroid preparations. Hypnotics interfere with REM and deep sleep stages and can cause daytime drowsiness (due to their extended half-lives in older people), thereby creating difficulties in falling asleep for the patient.

Examples of specific drugs that affect sleep include diphenhydramine HCl (Benadryl capsules); nicotine (NicoDerm Nicotine Transdermal System); fluoxetine HCl (Prozac); theophylline (Theo-X Extended-Release tablets); and alprazolam (Xanax). Many of the top nonprescription sleep aids contain diphenhydramine (Benadryl) as a primary ingredient; because Benadryl carries a high risk of anticholinergic side effects in older adults, these should be avoided.

Caffeine and alcohol can also negatively affect sleep. Eliminating caffeine and alcohol is advisable if sleep disorders are present. Nurses can educate older adults about the caffeine content of food and beverages (Box 15-1).

Promoting Rest and Sleep in Older Adults

When an older adult is experiencing a disturbed sleep pattern, the nurse plays an important role in identifying ways to improve sleep (see Nursing Diagnosis Highlight: Disturbed Sleep Pattern). Plans may involve pharmacologic and non-pharmacologic measures to promote sleep and measures to control pain.

Pharmacologic Measures to Promote Sleep

Older adults often have difficulty falling asleep. Unfortunately, frequently the first means used to encourage sleep is the administration of a sedative. Sedatives must be used with the utmost care. Barbiturates are general depressants, especially to the central nervous system, and they can significantly depress some vital body functions, lowering basal metabolic rate more than it already is and decreasing blood pressure, mental activity, and peristalsis to the extent that other problems may develop. These serious effects, combined with a greater susceptibility to adverse reactions, warrant that barbiturates be used with extreme caution. Non-barbiturate sedatives also create problems and should be used only when absolutely necessary. Because of the prolonged half-life of medications in older persons, the effects of sedatives may exist into the daytime and result in confusion and sluggishness. Sometimes these symptoms are treated with medications, further complicating the situation. Occasionally, sleeping medications will reverse the normal sleep

BOX 15-1 Caffeine as a Contributor to Poor Sleep

It is important to assess caffeine consumption in individuals who offer complaints related to sleeping. The effects of a cup of a caffeinated beverage begin to be felt in about 15–20 minutes and can last approximately 4 hours. However, some people may feel the effects of caffeine for 10 or more hours. So, an after-dinner cup of coffee can interfere with ability to achieve satisfying sleep. It is important for people to understand the amount of caffeine they are consuming. For example, these are the milligrams of caffeine in an 8-ounce serving of the following beverages:

Cappuccino	120
Coffee	85–110
Tea, brewed	40–60
Shasta cola	45
Pepsi ONE	37

Mountain Dew	34
Diet Coke	31
Sunkist Orange soda	28
Iced tea	25
Diet Pepsi	24
Coca Cola	23
Snapple iced tea	21
Decaf espresso	10

Medications also need to be checked for their caffeine content. Examples of the milligrams of caffeine in a single tablet of popular medications include:

NoDoz Maximum Strength	200
Aqua Ban	100
Excedrin Maximum Strength	65
Anacin	13

Source: National Sleep Foundation. Caffeine calculator: <http://www.sleepfoundation.org>.

NURSING DIAGNOSIS HIGHLIGHT**DISTURBED SLEEP PATTERN****Overview**

A sleep pattern disturbance exists when the quantity or quality of sleep causes disruption to daily function. This disturbance can be displayed by problems falling or staying asleep, nighttime sleep of less than 4 hours, daytime drowsiness, frequent yawning, lack of energy or motivation to engage in activities, dark circles under eyes, weakness, and disturbances in mood or cognition.

Causative or contributing factors

Age-related decrease in stage IV sleep, nocturia, muscle cramps, orthopnea, dyspnea, angina, poor peripheral circulation, cough, incontinence, diarrhea, insufficient activity or exercise, immobility, pain, new environment, depression, confusion, anxiety, medications (e.g., antidepressants, antihypertensives, tranquilizers), noise, interruptions, high caffeine consumption.

Goals

The patient will:

- obtain 5 to 8 hours of sleep daily
- be free from symptoms and signs associated with sleep pattern disturbance.

Interventions

- Assess sleep pattern. Ask the patient about number, length, and quality of naps; activity pattern; bedtime; quality of sleep; awakening time; symptoms and interruptions of sleep. Attempt to identify and correct factors associated with sleep disturbance.

- Increase daytime activity; limit naps, reduce caffeine.
- Consult with physician regarding eliminating medications that are known to disrupt sleep.
- Maintain bedroom temperature between 70°F (21°C) and 75°F (24°C); control interruptions; provide a night-light.
- Assist patient with toileting at bedtime. Be aware that renal circulation improves when one lies down; therefore, the patient may need to toilet shortly after going to bed.
- Use measures that are known to stimulate sleep, such as soft music, television, drinking warm milk.
- Offer back rubs, evening care, and other comfort measures to relax the patient and induce sleep.
- Instruct patient in measures to improve sleep.
- If sedatives are necessary, use those that are least disruptive to sleep cycle and monitor 24-hour effects from the drug.
- Reduce the potential for injury by having bed in lowest position, using side rails, providing night-light, adjusting lighting so that patient does not have to travel from dark bedroom to bright bathroom, encouraging patient to ask for assistance with transferring and ambulating as needed.
- Record or have patient record sleep pattern (e.g., time to bed, time when asleep, times awakened during the night, signs and symptoms during sleep, rising time, self-assessment of restfulness).



FIGURE 15-1 • Daytime activity promotes nighttime sleep.

rhythm. All sedatives may decrease body movements during sleep and predispose the older person to the many complications of reduced mobility.

Nonpharmacologic Measures to Promote Sleep

Alternatives to sedatives should be used to induce sleep whenever possible. The nurse may assess the older person's rest and activity schedules, sleep environment, and diet to identify possible interventions.

Activity and Rest Schedules

The person's activity schedule should first be evaluated. Satisfying, regular activity promotes rest and relaxation (Fig. 15-1). If a person has been inactive in

a bed or wheelchair all day, most likely he or she will not be sleepy at bedtime. Including more stimulation and activity during the day may be a solution.

Greater amounts of rest are required by older people and should be interspersed with periods of activity throughout the day. Many older adults focus all their activity in the early part of the day so that they will have the evening free. For instance, the early morning hours may be used for household cleaning, marketing, club meetings, gardening, cooking, and laundering; the evening hours may then be spent watching television, reading, or sewing. This pattern may be an outgrowth of decades of employment, whereby one worked during the day and relaxed in the evening. Older people need insight into the advantages of pacing activities throughout the entire day and providing ample periods for rest and naps between activities. The nurse may find it useful to review the older person's daily activities hour by hour and assist in developing patterns that more equally distribute activity and rest throughout the day.

Furthermore, the amount of time allotted for sleep must be evaluated. One should not expect the older person who goes to bed at 8 PM to be able to sleep until 8 AM the following day.

Environment

Exposure to sunlight during the day can facilitate sleep at night. A warm bath at bedtime can promote muscle relaxation and encourage sleep, as can a back rub, a comfortable position, and the alleviation of pain or discomfort. A quiet environment at a temperature preferred by the individual should be provided. Flannel sheets and electric blankets can promote comfort and relaxation; electric blankets should be used to preheat the bed and should be turned off when the individual enters the bed to reduce the health hazards associated with electromagnetic fields.

Consider This Case

Mr. and Mrs. E, both 83 years of age, live alone in a busy, high-crime area of a large city. Mr. E has a mild dementia but is able to function well with his wife's assistance and supervision. Over the past year, however, he has had significant changes in his sleep pattern in which he awakens several times during the night to use the bathroom and sleeps most of the day. He has a tendency to drink caffeinated sodas when he awakens if his wife doesn't stop him, so she often will get out of bed when he does to make sure he drinks caffeine-free liquids. Mrs. E's frequent awakening with her husband compounds a long-term problem she has had with getting out of bed when she hears any street sound to assure no one is breaking into their home. Mrs. E is not comfortable napping during the day, and tends to feel tired most of the time.

THINK CRITICALLY

- What risks do their sleep patterns present for Mr. and Mrs. E?
- What recommendations would you have for this couple?

Food and Supplements

Foods high in carbohydrates tend to raise the level of serotonin in the brain, which could have a sedating effect; therefore a protein and carbohydrate snack at bedtime may encourage sleep. Valerian root tea or herbal tincture consumed 45 minutes before bedtime can also facilitate sleep. The supplement melatonin (a synthetic form of the hormone that is naturally stimulated by darkness) has gained popularity for improving the quality of sleep in adults of all ages by correcting imbalances in the body's circadian rhythm. Because melatonin supplements may interact with immunosuppressants, antidepressants, antipsychotics, warfarin, and other medications, it is wise for the pharmacist and physician to review the safety of using melatonin in combination with medications.



KEY CONCEPT

Regular exercise, exposure to sunlight during the day, and non-caffeinated herbal teas at bedtime are three measures to help older adults fall asleep naturally.

Stress Management

Stress is a normal part of life, but it can interfere with rest and sleep. Most individuals daily confront a variety of physical and emotional stressors, such as temperature changes, pollutants, viruses, injury, interpersonal conflicts, time pressures, fear, bad news, and unpleasant or difficult tasks. Many real or perceived threats to our physical, emotional, and social well-being and balance can create stress. Demands and activity levels are not necessarily correlated with stress; for example, a busy schedule or numerous responsibilities to juggle may be less stressful than a boring, monotonous existence.

Regardless of the source of the stress, the body reacts by stimulating the sympathetic nervous system. This causes stimulation of the pituitary gland, the release of adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), and an increase in the body's adrenaline supply. The following series of changes also occur:

- mental alertness increases
- fingers, hands, and toes become cold as more blood goes to the body's muscles
- glycogen converts to glucose
- heart rate and respirations increase
- pupils dilate
- hearing becomes more acute
- blood-clotting activity increases
- sexual interest and drive are reduced, menstrual irregularities occur, testosterone level is lowered
- ability to concentrate decreases, causing more errors and irrational decisions

- anxiety, fear, or a sense that “something isn't right” occurs

Life is a series of stress and recovery episodes that produce no harmful effects. However, chronic stress without recovery can produce serious consequences, including heart disease, hypertension, cerebrovascular accident, cancer, ulcers, skin eruptions, complications of existing illnesses, and a variety of social and emotional problems.



KEY CONCEPT

Unrelieved chronic stress can lead to heart disease, hypertension, cerebrovascular accident, ulcers, and other health disorders.

It is important, therefore, to prevent chronic stress from developing. The key to stress control is not avoiding stress, but managing it by learning compensatory measures. Some of these measures are outlined as follows:

- *Respond to stress in a healthy manner.* Good nutrition, rest, exercise, and other sound health practices strengthen the body's ability to confront stress. When in a stressful situation, adherence to these principles continues to be important. It is beneficial to learn to remain calm when faced with stress; reacting in an unhealthy manner worsens the situation.
- *Manage lifestyle.* Little in the lives of most people would bring the world to a halt if not completed at a certain time or in a specific manner. Things should be put in perspective; for example, what difference will it really make if the clothes are not washed today or if one is 10 minutes late? Whenever possible, anticipate the consequences of a situation so that the stress of an unpredictable situation can be reduced.
- *Relax.* Be it a good book, swimming, weaving, travel, music, or woodcarving, find something in which to get absorbed so that there is some respite from life's demands. Yoga, meditation, qigong, guided imagery, and relaxation exercises can be effective. Also, herbs can be of benefit, including chamomile and lavender to promote relaxation, and American ginseng to protect the body from the ill effects of stress.
- *Pray.* People of faith look to a higher power with whom they can share and understand life's burdens. The “unloading” of one's problems during prayer also can be a rest-inducing activity in that it clears the mind of the day's stresses. Furthermore, the repeated words or rituals associated with prayer can offer the same therapeutic benefits as meditation and relaxation exercises.

POINT TO PONDER

What are the three major stresses in your life? What are you doing to minimize their negative effects? What more could you be doing to control stress in your life? ●

Pain Control

The presence of pain can threaten the ability of older adults to obtain adequate rest and sleep. Although the results of studies regarding the effects of aging on pain sensitivity are inconclusive, the prevalence of chronic pain-causing conditions, such as osteoarthritis and postherpetic neuralgia, is high among older adults. Not only can pain interfere with sleep, but it can also reduce activity levels, depress mood, and result in other factors that can affect sleep and rest patterns.

Identifying the cause of pain is the essential first step to controlling it. Undiagnosed medical conditions can be the source of the problem, but so can psychological factors, poor positioning, and adverse drug reactions. A comprehensive assessment is crucial. Consideration should be given to factors that precipitate, aggravate, and relieve pain. Nurses can assist patients in self-evaluating pain with the use of rating scales that use numbers or diagrams to indicate severity of pain (see Chapter 16).

Because of the risks associated with drugs, non-pharmacologic measures to control pain should be attempted whenever possible. Among these measures are proper positioning, diversional activities, guided imagery, biofeedback, yoga, massage, therapeutic touch, acupuncture, and magnet therapy. If non-pharmacologic means of pain relief are ineffective and drugs are necessary, it is advisable to begin with the weakest type and dosage of analgesic and gradually increase as necessary. See Chapter 16 for more information on pain management.

KEY CONCEPT

Massages, warm soaks, relaxation exercises, guided imagery, and diversion can provide effective relief of many types of pain.

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. What non-pharmacologic measures can be incorporated into an older adult's lifestyle to facilitate sleep?
2. What stresses do older adults face that are different from those encountered by other age groups?

Resources

American Sleep Apnea Association
<http://www.sleepapnea.org>

Hartford Institute of Geriatric Nursing
 Try This: Best Practices in Nursing Care to Older Adults Issue 6.1, The Pittsburgh Sleep Quality Index
http://www.hartforddign.org/publications/trythis/issue06_1.pdf

National Sleep Foundation
<http://www.sleepfoundation.org>

Reference

Ancoli-Israel, S., & Martin, J. L. (2006). Insomnia and daytime napping in older adults. *Journal Clinical Sleep Medicine, 15*(2), 333–342.

Recommended Readings

Avlund, K., Rantanen, T., & Schroll, M. (2007). Factors underlying tiredness in older adults. *Aging Clinical Experimental Research, 19*(1), 16–25.

Bain, K. T. (2006). Management of chronic insomnia in elderly persons. *American Journal of Geriatric Pharmacotherapy, 4*(2), 168–192.

Byles, J. E., Mishra, G. D., & Harris, M. A. (2005). The experience of insomnia among older women. *Sleep, 28*(8), 972–979.

Chasens, E. R. (2003). Nocturia: A problem that disrupts sleep and predicts obstructive sleep apnea. *Geriatric Nursing, 24*(2), 76–81.

Cole, C., & Richards, K. (2007). Sleep disruption in older adults. Harmful and by no means inevitable, it should be assessed for and treated. *American Journal of Nursing, 107*(5), 40–49.

Cricco, M., & Simonsick, E. M. (2001). The impact of insomnia on cognitive functioning of older adults. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society, 49*(9), 1185–1189.

Cuellar, N. G., Rogers, A. E., & Hisghman, V. (2007). Evidenced based research of complementary and alternative medicine (CAM) for sleep in the community dwelling older adult. *Geriatric Nursing, 28*(1), 46–52.

Cuellar, N. G., Rogers, A. E., Hisghman, V., & Volpe, S. L. (2007). Assessment and treatment of sleep disorders in the older adult. *Geriatric Nursing, 28*(4), 254–262.

Endeshaw, Y. (2006). Clinical characteristics of obstructive sleep apnea in community-dwelling older adults. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society, 54*(11), 1740–1744.

Foley, D., Monjan, A., Masaki, K., Ross, W., Havlik, R., White, L., & Launer, L. (2001). Daytime sleepiness is associated with 3-year incident of dementia and cognitive decline in older Japanese-American men. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society, 49*, 1628–1632.

Herrera, C. O. (2002). Sleep disorders. In M. H. Beers & R. Berkow (Eds.), *The Merck manual of geriatrics* (pp. 450–466). Rahway, NJ: Merck Sharp & Dohme Research Laboratories.

Lippincott Williams & Wilkins. (2002). *Nurses handbook of complementary and alternative therapies* (2nd ed., pp. 331–332). Philadelphia: Author.

- Merrill, R. M., Aldana, S. G., Greenlaw, R. L., Diehl, H. A., & Salberg, A. (2007). The effects of an intensive lifestyle modification program on sleep and stress disorders. *Journal of Nutrition, Health, and Aging, 11*(3), 242–248.
- O'Rourke, D. J., Klaasen, K. S., & Sloan, J. A. (2001). Redesigning nighttime care for personal care residents. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 27*(7), 30–37.
- Ouellet, M., & Morris, D. L. (2006). Sleep satisfaction of older adults living in the community: Identifying associated behavioral and health factors. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 32*(10), 5–11.
- Reed, S. D., Newton, K. M., LaCroix, A. Z., Grothaus, L. C., & Ehrlich, K. (2007). Night sweats, sleep disturbance, and depression associated with diminished libido in late menopausal transition and early postmenopause: Baseline data from the Herbal Alternatives for Menopause Trial (HALT). *American Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology, 196*(6), 593.
- Richards, K. C., Sullivan, S. C., Phillips, R. L., Beck, C. K., & Overton-McCoy, A. L. (2001). Effect of individualized activities on the sleep of nursing home residents who are cognitively impaired: A pilot study. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 27*(9), 30–37.
- Sandberg, O., Franklin, K. A., Bucht, G., & Gustafson, Y. (2001). Sleep apnea, delirium, depressed mood, cognition, and ADL ability after stroke. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society, 49*, 391–397.
- Schimazaki, M., & Martin, J. L. (2007). Do herbal agents have a place in the treatment of sleep problems in long-term care? *Journal of the American Medical Directors Association, 8*(4):248–252.
- Tuya, A. C. (2007). The management of insomnia in the older adult. *Medical Health, Rhode Island, 90*(6), 195–196.
- Westley, C. (2004). Sleep: Geriatric self-learning module. *MedSurg Nursing, 13*(5), 291–295.

Comfort and Pain Management

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Comfort

Pain: A Complex Phenomenon

- Prevalence of Pain in Older Adults
- Types of Pain
- Pain Perception
- Effects of Unrelieved Pain

Pain Assessment

An Integrative Approach to Pain Management

- Complementary Therapies
- Dietary Changes
- Medication
- Comforting

Comfort

Comfort is a relative term. To some people it can mean sufficient control of pain to capture a few hours of rest; other individuals may view comfort as freedom from physical and mental stress; and still others may consider luxurious, pampered living synonymous with comfort. The word comfort is derived from the Latin word *confortare*, which means to strengthen greatly. Webster's Dictionary offers definitions that include "to relieve from distress, lessen misery, have freedom from pain and worry, calm, and inspire with hope". From a holistic perspective, comfort can be viewed as a sense of physical, emotional, social, and spiritual peace and well-being.

Comfort tends to be a state often taken for granted until it is threatened. People coast along without pain or distress, not giving much thought to the comfort they are

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 Define comfort.
- 2 Describe the characteristics and effects of pain in older adults.
- 3 Describe the components of a comprehensive pain assessment.
- 4 Outline components of a pain management plan, including complementary therapies, dietary changes, medications, and comforting strategies.

experiencing. But then something happens—unrelenting gastric pain develops, joints ache while doing routine tasks, a suspicious lump is found in a breast—and the comfort cart is upset. Unfortunately, with advancing age, the incidence of factors that can threaten comfort increases.

Pain: A Complex Phenomenon

Pain is the greatest threat to comfort. A definition of pain that was accepted for decades describes pain as “an unpleasant sensory and emotional experience associated with actual or potential tissue damage” (American Pain Society, 2003). This definition is now expanded to include a broader understanding of pain that relies on and accepts the patient’s perception and report (St. Marie, 2002).

Prevalence of Pain in Older Adults

A Gallup survey of the general adult population revealed that more than 4 of 10 people report experiencing pain on a daily basis, with a majority (89%) saying that they experience pain each month (PR Newswire, 2000). This same survey showed that persons over age 65 are more likely to experience pain than younger adults, with 75% of older adults suffering weekly pain compared to 66% of persons aged 18 to 34 years, and that older adults suffer moderate to severe pain twice as long as younger persons.

The impact of pain is far-reaching and is increasingly prevalent with advancing age. The National Center for Health Statistics (2006) reports that:

- One in four adults reports suffering a day-long bout of pain in the past month.
- Three-fifths of adults 65 years and older said they had experienced pain that lasted for one year or more.
- Low back pain is among the most common complaints, along with migraine or severe headache, and joint pain, aching, or stiffness. The knee is the joint that causes the most pain according to the report. (Interestingly, knee replacement surgeries have risen dramatically for people over age 65.)
- Reports of severe joint pain increased with age, and women reported severely painful joints more often than men.

It may be difficult to determine the accuracy of the reported prevalence of pain in older persons. On one hand, older adults may underreport pain because they do not want to be viewed as complainers, lack the funds to seek treatment, or erroneously believe that pain is a normal part of being old. On the other hand, pain could be overreported by some older people who see reporting this symptom as an effective means to get the attention of family mem-

bers and health care professionals. These possibilities reinforce the importance of exploring pain during every assessment and reviewing the relationship of other factors (physical, emotional, socioeconomic, and spiritual) to this symptom.



KEY CONCEPT

The complex phenomenon of pain is a stressor to physical, emotional, and spiritual well-being.

Types of Pain

Pain is classified according to its pathophysiological mechanism as either nociceptive or neuropathic pain. *Nociceptive pain* arises from mechanical, thermal, or chemical noxious stimuli to the A delta and C afferent nociceptors. These nociceptors are found in fasciae, muscles, joints, and other deep structures, and their activation causes a transduction of painful stimuli along the primary afferent fiber of the dorsal horn of the spinal column. Neurotransmitters (e.g., somatostatin, cholecystokinin, and substance P) carry the pain signal through secondary neurons to the brain where the signal is interpreted. Common forms of nociceptive pain include:

- Somatic pain: characteristic of pain in the bone and soft tissue masses. The pain is well localized and described as throbbing or aching.
- Visceral pain: associated with disorders that can cause generalized or referred pain. The pain is described as deep and aching.

Neuropathic pain is associated with diabetic neuropathies, postherpetic neuralgias, and other insults to the nervous system. The pain is sharp, stabbing, tingling, or burning, with a sudden onset of high intensity. It can last a few seconds or linger for a longer period.

Pain also is described according to its onset and duration. *Acute pain* has an abrupt onset, can be severe, but lasts only a short time. *Chronic pain* is that which has persisted for three months or longer and can be of mild to severe intensity.

Pain Perception

The role of age in pain perception is unclear. Results of studies examining the effects of aging on pain sensitivity vary according to the type of pain. There is some evidence of a reduced sensitivity for thermal pain with advancing age (Gagliese & Katz, 2003; Lariviere et al., 2007). Research on aging and mechanical pain threshold has been minimal, although the limited studies that have been done indicate a decreased sensitivity to mechanical pain in older people (Pickering, Jourdan, Eschaler, & Dubray, 2002). Studies have not revealed an age

effect for electrical pain thresholds. Furthermore, understanding the effects of aging on the experience of pain is complicated by the chronic diseases that are common in late life. For example, it could be that older adults do not have reduced pain sensitivity but rather experience a decreased transmission of signals associated with diseased tissues. Much remains to be learned about the relationship of aging and pain perception.



KEY CONCEPT

Research is inconclusive concerning the role of aging on pain perception and tolerance; therefore, the nurse must try to assess and understand each patient's unique pain experience.

Effects of Unrelieved Pain

Unrelieved pain can lead to many complications for older adults. For example, if movement causes pain, the person may limit mobility and, consequently, develop pressure ulcers, pneumonia, and constipation. The individual experiencing pain may have a poor appetite or lack the motivation to eat and drink properly; malnutrition and dehydration can result. The experience of chronic or unrelenting

pain can cause a person to become depressed, hopeless, and spiritually distressed. To provide adequate relief from pain and reduce the risk of complications, effective pain management is essential.



POINT TO PONDER

Reflect on the worst pain you have experienced. How did that affect your activities, relationships, and outlook?

Pain Assessment

Effective pain management begins with qualitative and quantitative assessment of this symptom. Inquiries into the presence of pain are an essential component of every assessment. When patients indicate that they experience pain, nurses can ask them to describe it through the use of questions similar to those shown in Assessment Guide 16-1. Questions that facilitate descriptive rather than yes-or-no answers offer better insights into the pain experience. If medications are used for pain management, ask specific questions about the type, dosage, frequency, and effectiveness. The more detailed the pain history, the better the likelihood of developing an effective pain management plan.



ASSESSMENT GUIDE 16-1

Pain

GENERAL OBSERVATIONS

- Grimacing, crying, moaning, clutching fists
- Limitations of movement
- Favoring or rubbing of specific body part
- Discoloration
- Swelling

INTERVIEW

- Where is the pain located? Does it stay in one place or travel to other locations?
- What does it feel like? Stabbing? Throbbing? Aching? Dull? Sharp?
- On a scale of 0 to 10, with 0 being no pain and 10 being unbearable pain, how would you rate it as typically being? How would you rate it when it is at its best? At its worst?
- How frequently does it occur? Several times a day? Daily? A few times a week? Every few weeks?
- How long does it last? A few seconds? A few hours? All day?

- Is the pain related to any medical problems, injuries, or unusual events?
- What factors seem to bring it on?
- What factors worsen it? Activity? Weather? Stress?
- Is it worse at certain times of the day?
- What helps to relieve the pain? Medications? Positions? Special treatments?
- If medications are used, what are they, what is their dosage, how are they taken, and what effects do they produce?
- Are any complementary or alternative therapies used? If so, what, how, and with what results?
- How does the pain affect your life? Sleep? Appetite? Activity? Socialization? Self-care? Home responsibilities? Relationships?

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

- Range of motion
- Sensitivity to touch
- Temperature of affected area as compared to adjacent areas

BOX 16-1 Signs That Could Indicate Pain in Persons With Cognitive Impairments

Grimacing
Crying, moaning
Increased vital signs
Perspiration
Increased pacing, wandering
Aggressive behaviors
Hitting, banging on objects

Splinting or guarding body part
Agitation
Poorer function
Change in sleep pattern
Change in appetite or intake
Decreased socialization

Physical examination offers additional insights into patients' pain. Painful areas identified during the interview should be examined for discoloration, swelling, trigger points, and other signs. The nurse notes sensitivity to touch and restricted movement to the area, along with body language indicative of pain (e.g., grimacing, favoring a side, or rubbing an area).

Ongoing assessment is essential to determine the status of the pain and effectiveness of interventions.

Patients with cognitive impairments present special challenges to pain assessment. These individuals may not have the ability to interpret or report their symptoms; therefore, a greater burden falls on the nurse to adequately identify and assess pain. Box 16-1 lists signs that could indicate pain in persons who are cognitively impaired. That patients with cognitive impairments do not offer specific complaints does not mean they are free from pain. When the nurse identifies a patient's unique manifestations of pain, he or she should ensure they are well documented in the health record for future reference in assessment.

Cultural factors also must be considered during the pain assessment. In some cultures, people may be socialized to tolerate pain without expression, whereas in other groups, dramatic expression of pain may be the norm. Likewise, some men may have been raised with the belief that "real men don't admit to pain" and not acknowledge the severity of their discomfort. These factors support that the nurse must be thorough and astute when assessing pain.

A variety of pain assessment instruments provide standardized methods for objectively evaluating pain such as the following:

- *Numeric rating scale.* This commonly used tool asks the patient to rate pain on a scale from 1 to 10, with 1 representing minimal pain and 10 the worst pain imaginable. The scale can be difficult for older adults who have trouble thinking in abstract terms and has been found unreliable in persons who are cognitively impaired (Ferrell, Ferrell, & Rivera, 1995).

- *Visual analog scale.* This simple but effective pain assessment tool uses a horizontal line with "no pain" on the left end and "pain as bad as it can possibly be" on the right end (Carr, Jacox, & Chapman, 1992). The patient indicates where his or her pain falls on the scale. A modified version of this tool uses faces, with 0 being a smile and 6 being a crying grimace.
- *McGill Pain Questionnaire.* This popular and widely used tool contains 78 words categorized into 20 groups, a drawing of the body, and a Present Pain Intensity (PPI) scale (Melzack & Katz, 1992). This tool is effective for use with persons who are either cognitively normal or impaired (Ferrell, Ferrell, & Rivera, 1995). Its length and reliance on reading or hearing the items can pose problems with some individuals.

Barriers to using standardized tools must be considered. Patients need to receive clear instructions and have an opportunity to practice using the tool. Using the same tool consistently facilitates the collection of data that is comparable and meaningful.

The fact that patients have not complained about pain does not guarantee its absence in their lives. Only about half of pain sufferers seek medical attention for their pain, with nearly two thirds seeing a doctor only when the pain was absolutely unbearable (PR Newswire, 2000). The reality that many people attempt to live with pain reinforces the importance of nurses inquiring about this symptom with routine assessments.

An Integrative Approach to Pain Management

Nurses can be influential in guiding the development of a pain management plan that is individualized and comprehensive. Before implementing symptomatic treatment, underlying causes for the pain need to be identified and corrected as possible. Goals set the foundation for the interventions

planned and need to be realistic, specific, and achievable, for example:

- reduce pain level from 9 to ≤ 5 within the next 5 days
- obtain at least 5 hours of sleep without interruptions from pain
- independently bathe and dress without restrictions from pain within the next week



KEY CONCEPT

In addition to medical problems, poor positioning or posture, inactivity, emotional issues, and adverse drug reactions could be at the root of new or worsened pain. Improving these underlying factors is the first step in pain management.

Even if underlying causes for pain cannot be identified or corrected, nurses can still plan interventions to manage what may be chronic pain (Nursing Diagnosis Highlight: Chronic Pain). Common components of pain management plans include complementary therapies, dietary changes, medications, and comforting nursing care.

Complementary Therapies

Although medications have a significant role in pain management, they should not be the only approach used. Increasingly, therapies that once were considered “alternative” or “unorthodox” are being used as complementary approaches to pain

management as part of effective integrative care. Using this vision for added options to address pain, possible interventions that could be used in a comprehensive pain management program include:

- *Acupressure*: use of pressure over points along meridians (what in traditional Chinese medicine are believed to be invisible channels of energy [qi] running through the body) to unblock energy flow and restore or promote the balance of qi
- *Acupuncture*: placement of needles under the skin at acupoints along meridians to unblock energy flow and restore or promote the balance of qi
- *Aromatherapy*: branch of herbal medicine that uses scents from the essential oils of plants to create physiological and emotional effects (e.g., use of lavender, geranium, rose, and sandalwood scents to calm)
- *Biofeedback*: process of teaching people to bring specific bodily functions under voluntary control
- *Chiropractic*: use of manipulation or adjustment of the spine and joints to correct misalignments that can be causing dysfunction and pain
- *Electrical stimulation*: use of electrical currents administered to the skin and muscles via electrodes placed on the painful part of the body
- *Exercises*: gentle stretching, range of motion exercises
- *Guided imagery*: suggesting images that can create specific reactions in body

NURSING DIAGNOSIS HIGHLIGHT

CHRONIC PAIN

Overview

Chronic pain is a state in which the uncomfortable sensation of pain is not time limited and must be managed on a long-term basis.

Causative or contributing factors

Arthritis, shingles, terminal cancer, phantom limb, depression, ineffectiveness of analgesic.

Goal

The patient will experience a reduction in or elimination of pain and safely use effective pain-relief measures

Interventions

- Perform a comprehensive assessment to assist in identifying the underlying cause and nature of pain. Review pain-relief measures used and their effectiveness.

- If patient currently is not using one, instruct in the use of a scale for self-assessment of pain.
- Teach patient and/or caregivers pain control measures such as guided imagery, self-hypnosis, biofeedback, yoga.
- Discuss benefits of acupuncture, chiropractic, homeopathy, herbs, and other complementary therapies with health care providers and refer accordingly.
- Assure analgesics are used properly.
- Control environmental stimuli that may affect pain (e.g., loud noise, bright lights, and extreme temperatures).
- Use music therapeutically for relaxation.
- Refer to resources for pain management, such as the American Pain Society and National Chronic Pain Outreach Association.
- Monitor level of pain and continued effectiveness of pain-relief measures.

BOX 16-2 Herbs Used for Pain Management

Because many herbs can interact with medications, the nurse should consult with an herb-knowledgeable professional before suggesting the use of any herb. Herbs commonly used to help manage pain include the following:

- *Capsaicin/capsicum (chili pepper oil)*: used topically for joint and nerve pain; relief provided within a few days
 - *Devil's claw*: effective for inflammatory-related pain; taken orally in dried or extract form; can take several weeks to work
 - *Feverfew*: beneficial for prevention of migraines; used orally; best to take in capsule or extract form because plant leaves can be highly irritating to the mouth
 - *Ginger*: reduces inflammation and nausea
 - *Kava*: sedative effects relieve anxiety and muscle tension; avoid long-term use with liver conditions
 - *St. John's wort*: effective for mild to moderate depression
 - *Tumeric*: useful with inflammatory conditions
 - *Valerian*: relaxes muscles; has a mild sedative effect
 - *White willow*: relieves inflammation and general pain
- *Heat and cold therapies*: use of hot or cold pads, packs, dips (e.g., paraffin), baths, massage, or environments (e.g., sauna)
 - *Herbal medicine*: use of plants for therapeutic benefit (Box 16-2)
 - *Homeopathic remedies*: use of dilute forms of biological material (plant, animal, or mineral) that produce symptoms similar to that caused by the disease or condition
 - *Hypnosis*: guiding person into trancelike state in which increased receptivity to suggestion is possible
 - *Massage*: manipulation of soft tissue by using rubbing, kneading, rolling, pressing, slapping, and tapping movements (called bodywork when combined with deep tissue manipulation, movement awareness, and energy balancing)
 - *Meditation*: using deep relaxation to calm the body and mind and focus on the present
 - *Naturopathy*: use of proper nutrition, pure water, fresh air, exercise, rest, and other natural means
 - *Osteopathy*: branch of physical medicine that uses physical therapy, joint manipulation, and postural correction
 - *Prayer*: petition to God or other Divine power through direct or intercessory praying
 - *Progressive relaxation*: series of exercises that help body achieve a state of deep relaxation
 - *Supplements*: use of specific nutritional products (e.g., B-complex vitamins to enhance function of nervous system; bromelain, fish oil, ginger, tumeric, and devil's claw to reduce inflammation; topical capsaicin to block pain signal; feverfew and vitamin B2 to reduce migraines)
 - *Yoga*: discipline that combines breathing exercises, meditation, and specific postures (asanas) to aid in achieving sense of balance and health



POINT TO PONDER

What methods, other than medications, do you use to manage pain? What facilitates or limits your use of complementary and alternative pain management approaches? ●

Nurses need to be knowledgeable about the uses and contraindications of various therapies to be able to offer guidance to patients. Also, nurses should be familiar with the licensing requirements for various complementary and alternative practitioners and assist patients in locating qualified therapists. Education and counseling are important to ensure patients make informed choices about their therapists.

Dietary Changes

Diet can influence inflammation and its pain, particularly arthritic pain that is common in the older population. Arachidonic acid is a primary precursor in the synthesis of omega-6 to proinflammatory eicosanoids. Therefore, eliminating foods that contain arachidonic acid or that are converted into arachidonic acid can be beneficial to persons who suffer from inflammatory conditions. Foods to consider avoiding include animal products, high-fat dairy products, egg yolks, beef fat, safflower, corn, sunflower, soybean, and peanut oils. White flour, sugars, and “junk foods” also are believed to contribute to inflammation.

A deficiency of B-complex vitamins can contribute to pain caused by damaged or misfiring nerves. Consuming green leafy vegetables can provide B-complex vitamins, along with chemicals that enhance serotonin.

In addition, some foods can reduce or protect against inflammation. Foods rich in omega-3 fatty acids can reduce inflammation; these include cold-

water fish (e.g., salmon, tuna, sardines, mackerel, and halibut) and their oils, flaxseed and flaxseed oil, canola oils, walnuts, pumpkin seeds, and omega-3 enhanced eggs. Antioxidants offer protection against inflammation, and chief among them are flavonoids. Flavonoids inhibit enzymes that synthesize eicosanoids, thereby interfering with the inflammatory process. Sources of flavonoids include red, purple, and blue fruits, such as berries and their juices; black or green tea; red wine; chocolate; and cocoa. Fresh pineapple also is considered helpful in reducing inflammation. The herbs garlic, ginger, and tumeric (the main ingredient in curry powder) also are believed to have anti-inflammatory effects.

Medication

Using medications to manage pain in older adults can be complicated because of the high number of drugs this age group consumes and unique pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics (see Chapter 18). The risk for adverse effects is higher than in younger age groups, but this should not deter analgesic use in older adults. Rather, analgesics need to be used appropriately and monitored closely.

If nonpharmacologic means of pain relief are ineffective and drugs are necessary, it is advisable to begin with the weakest type and dosage of analgesic and gradually increase as necessary. Trials of nonopioids should be used before resorting to opioids. Adjuvant drugs (e.g., tricyclic antidepressants, anti-convulsants, antihistamines, caffeine) can be useful in the control of nonmalignant pain or in combination with opioid drugs.

Narcotics should be used discriminately in older persons because of the high risk for delirium, falls, decreased respirations, and other side effects. Administering a nonnarcotic analgesic with the narcotic could decrease the amount of narcotic that is needed. Analgesics should be administered regularly to maintain a constant blood level; fear of addiction should not be a factor in appropriately using analgesics to assist patients in achieving relief.

Acetaminophen is the most commonly used drug for mild to moderate pain relief in older people, followed by nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), with ibuprofen the most used of this drug group. Before advancing to an opioid analgesic, the patient should try a different NSAID. For moderate to severe pain, opioids of choice include codeine, oxycodone, and hydrocodone; these are available in combination with nonopioids to enhance benefits from the additive effect. Morphine and fentanyl patches are used for severe pain.

Propoxyphene is contraindicated for older adults, because it does not offer any added benefits but has the potential for central nervous system (CNS) and cardiac toxicity. Pentazocine is another drug that should not be used by older persons

because of its high risk for causing delirium, seizures, and cardiac and CNS toxicity.

Nurses should closely observe responses to medications to determine if the drug and its schedule of administration are appropriate. Around-the-clock dosing or the use of sustained-release drugs is useful in the management of continuous pain. If at all possible, medications should be administered on a schedule to prevent pain, rather than treat it after it develops.

Regular reevaluation of patients' response to medications is essential. Medications may change in their effectiveness over time, necessitating a change in the prescription. Also, side effects and adverse reactions can develop with drugs that have been used for a long time without incident.

Comforting

Heavy assignments, fast-paced schedules, and pressures to complete tasks are common experiences for nurses in today's health care system. In the midst of all the *doing* that is demanded, the significance of *being* with patients can be minimized. However, comforting and healing occur through the time spent being with patients.



KEY CONCEPT

Healing is not synonymous with being cured. Rather, it implies living in harmony and peace with a health condition.

Granted, the quantity of time nurses have available to spend with patients is limited, but the quality of that time is significant to comforting and healing (Fig. 16-1). Quality time with patients that fosters comforting is reflected by:



FIGURE 16-1 • The quality of time nurses spend with patients is significant to comforting and healing. Spending quality time involves giving patients undivided attention, regardless of the length of the interaction.

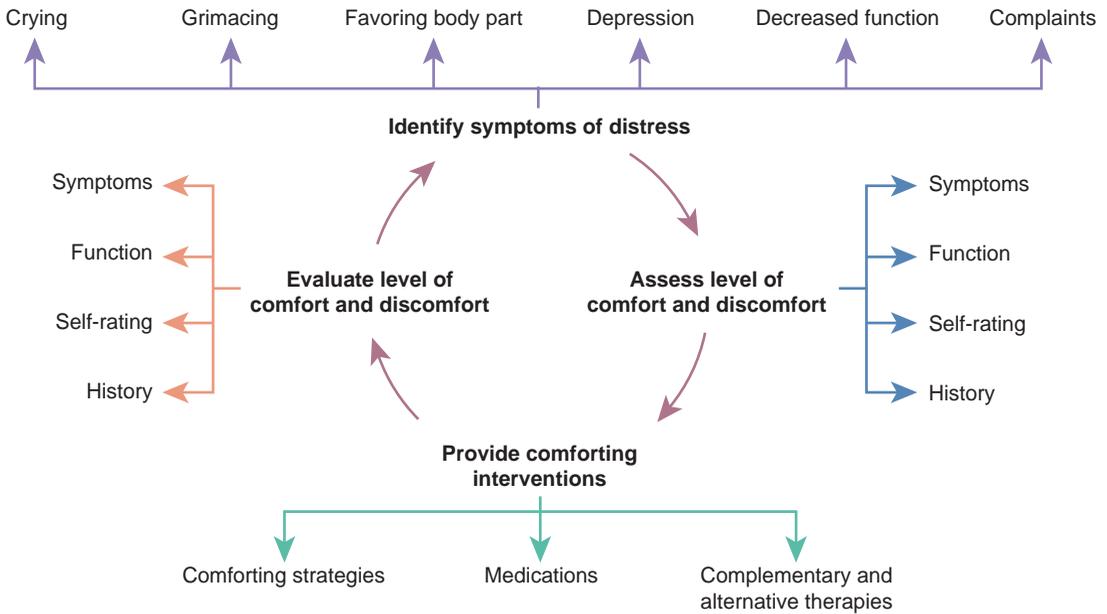


FIGURE 16-2 • Pain and comforting cycle.

- *Giving the patient undivided attention regardless of the length of the interaction.* One method for achieving this is to pause before coming in contact with the patient, take a deep breath, and mentally affirm that you are going to focus on the patient during the time you are together. Sometimes it is helpful to visualize a basket that you are leaving the burdens and tasks of the day in as you enter the patient's room or home.
- *Listening attentively.* Encourage the patient to speak and demonstrate interest through body language and feedback. Feeling that he or she is not heard adds to the patient's discomfort.
- *Explaining.* Describe procedures, changes, and progress. Do not assume that a patient understands a routine procedure.
- *Touching.* Gently rubbing the patient's shoulders, massaging the feet, or holding a hand offers a caring, comforting connection.
- *Perceiving.* Watch for signs that could indicate distress, such as sighing, tear-filled eyes, and flat affect. Validate your observations and inquire about their cause (e.g., "Mrs. Haines, you seem a little distracted today. Is there something you'd like to talk about?"). As tempting as it may be to ignore a problem that is not verbalized, this would not be a healing approach.



POINT TO PONDER

Have you ever been tempted to ignore a problem that you suspect but that the person hasn't verbalized? What were your motives for doing this? ●

Assuring patients' comfort is a dynamic process (Fig. 16-2) that requires reevaluation and readjustment as needs and status change. It requires sensitivity by nurses to patients' cues of distress and a commitment to alleviate suffering. It affords an opportunity for nurses to demonstrate the healing art of their profession.

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. How does society reinforce symptomatic treatment of pain rather than correction of the underlying problem?
2. Develop an integrative care plan for the management of an older adult who experiences chronic arthritis pain.
3. Why could prayer offer relief to someone who is suffering physically and emotionally?
4. Describe possible reasons that reimbursement is provided for medical procedures for pain relief rather than for comforting strategies that nurses could provide.

Resources

American Academy of Pain Management

<http://www.aapainmanage.org>

American Chronic Pain Association

<http://www.theacpa.org>

American Pain Society

<http://www.ampainsoc.org>

References

- American Pain Society. (2003). *Principles of analgesic use in the treatment of acute pain and cancer pain*. Glenview, IL: American Pain Society.
- Gagliese, L., & Katz, J. (2003). Age differences in postoperative pain are scale dependent: A comparison of measures of pain intensity and quality in younger and older surgical patients. *Pain, 103*(1), 11–20.
- Lariviere, M., Goffaux, P., Marchand, S., & Julien, N. (2007). Changes in pain perception and descending inhibitory controls start at middle age in healthy adults. *Clinical Journal of Pain, 23*(6), 506–510.
- Melzack, R., & Katz, J. (2001). The McGill Pain Questionnaire: Appraisal and current status. In D. Turk and R. Melzack (Eds.), *Handbook on Pain Assessment*, (2nd ed.) (pp. 35–52). New York: Guilford.
- National Center for Health Statistics. (2006). National Center for Health Statistics Report: Health, United States, 2006, Special Feature on Pain. Accessed September 22, 2008, from <http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/hus.htm>.
- Pickering, G., Jourdan, D., Eschaliere, A., & Dubray, C. (2002). Impact of age, gender and cognitive functioning on pain perception. *Gerontology, 48*, 112–118.
- PR Newswire. (2000, April 6). *Four of 10 Americans suffer pain daily, Gallup survey shows*. Atlanta: PR Newswire Issue.
- St. Marie, B. (2002). *Core curriculum for pain management nursing*. Philadelphia: W.B. Saunders.

Recommended Readings

- American Geriatrics Society. (2002). The management of persistent pain in older persons. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society. Special Supplement, 50*(6), 205–224.
- Bryant, H. (2007). Pain: A multifaceted phenomenon. *Emergency Nursing, 14*(10), 6–10.
- Chinall, J. T., & Tait, R. C. (2001). Pain assessment in cognitively impaired and unimpaired older adults: A comparison of four scales. *Pain, 92*(1), 173–186.
- Copp, L. A. (2006). Pain and suffering: Responsiveness, progress and perseverance. *Journal of Advanced Nursing, 55*(1), 3–4.
- Coyle, N., & Layman-Goldstein, M. (2001). Pain assessment and management in palliative care. In M. L. Matzo and D. W. Sherman (Eds.), *Palliative care nursing: Quality care to the end of life*. New York: Springer, p. 362–486.
- Dahl, J. L., Joranson, D. E., & Stein, W. (2001). Pain management standards: Their role in improving the quality of care. *Annals of Long-Term Care (Special Issue), 9*(8), 25–30.
- Dillard, J. N. (2002). *Chronic pain solution: Your personal path to pain relief*. New York: Bantam Books.
- Epps, C. D. (2001). Recognizing pain in the institutionalized elder with dementia. *Geriatric Nursing, 22*(2), 71–79.

- Feldt, K. S., & Finch, M. (2002). Older adults with hip fractures: Treatment of pain following hospitalization. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 28*(8), 27–35.
- Gevirtz, C. (2007). Treating sleep disturbances in patients with chronic pain. *Nursing 2007, 37*(4), 26–27.
- Hawk, C. (2002). An evidenced-based look at chiropractic: Tailoring treatment for older adults. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 28*(4), 6–14.
- Herr, K. A. (2001). Assessment and measurement of pain in older adults. *Clinical Geriatric Medicine, 17*(3), 457–478.
- Herr, K. (2002). Chronic pain: Challenges and assessment strategies. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 28*(1), 20–27.
- Herr, K. A. (2002). Pain assessment in cognitively impaired older adults. *American Journal of Nursing, 102*(12), 65–67.
- Horgas, A. L., & Dunn, K. (2001). Pain in nursing home residents: Comparison of residents' self-report and nursing assistants' perceptions. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 27*(3), 44–53.
- Kelly, A. M. (2006). Managing osteoarthritis pain. *Nursing 2006, 36*(11), 20–21.
- Kolcaba, K., & Steiner, R. (2000). Empirical evidence for the nature of holistic comfort. *Journal of Holistic Nursing, 18*(1), 46–62.
- McCaffrey, R., & Locsin, R. (2006). The effect of music on pain and acute confusion in older adults undergoing hip and knee surgery. *Holistic Nursing Practice, 20*(5), 218–224.
- Morse, J. M. (2000). On comfort and comforting. *American Journal of Nursing, 100*(9), 34–37.
- Otis, J. A. D., & McGeeney, B. (2001). Managing pain in the elderly. *Clinical Geriatrics, 9*(5), 82–88.
- Panke, J. T. (2002). Difficulties in managing pain at the end of life. *American Journal of Nursing, 102*(7), 26–33.
- Ray, A. (2002). Pain perception. *Clinical Geriatrics, 10*(3), 38–46.
- Smith, D. W., Arnstein, P., Rosa, K. C., & Wells-Federman, C. (2002). Effects of integrating Therapeutic Touch into a cognitive behavioral pain treatment program: Report of a pilot clinical trial. *Journal of Holistic Nursing, 20*, 367–387.
- Tsai, P. F., & Tak, S. (2003). Disease-specific pain measures for osteoarthritis of the knee or hip. *Geriatric Nursing, 24*, 106–109.
- Wallace, M. (2001). Pain in older adults. *Annals of Long-Term Care, 9*(7), 50–58.
- Ware, L., Epps, C. D., Herr, K., & Packard, A. (2006). Evaluation of the Revised Faces Pain Scale, Verbal Descriptor Scale, Numeric Rating Scale, and Iowa Pain Thermometer in older minority adults. *Pain Management Nursing, 7*(3), 117–125.
- Wynne, C. F., Ling, S. M., & Remsburg, R. (2000). Comparison of pain assessment instruments in cognitively intact and cognitively impaired nursing home residents. *Geriatric Nursing, 21*(1), 20–23.

CHAPTER 17

Safety

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Aging and Risks to Safety

Importance of the Environment to Health and Wellness

Impact of Aging on Environmental Safety and Function

- Lighting
- Temperature
- Colors
- Scents
- Floor Coverings
- Furniture
- Sensory Stimulation
- Noise Control
- Bathroom Hazards
- Psychosocial Considerations

The Problem of Falls

- Risks and Prevention
- Risks Associated With Restraints

Interventions to Reduce Intrinsic Risks to Safety

- Reducing Hydration and Nutrition Risks
- Addressing Risks Associated With Sensory Deficits
- Addressing Risks Associated With Mobility Limitations
- Monitoring Body Temperature
- Preventing Infection
- Suggesting Sensible Clothing
- Using Medications Cautiously
- Avoiding Crime
- Promoting Safe Driving
- Promoting Early Detection of Problems
- Addressing Risks Associated With Functional Impairment

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 Describe the effects of aging on safety.
- 2 Discuss the significance of the environment to physical and psychological health and well-being.
- 3 List the impact of age-related changes on the function and safety of the environment.
- 4 Describe adjustments that can be made to the environment to promote safety and function of older persons.
- 5 Identify bathroom hazards and ways to minimize them.
- 6 Discuss the effect of the environment on psychosocial health.
- 7 List factors that contribute to falls in older adults.
- 8 List measures to reduce older persons' intrinsic risks to safety and well-being.
- 9 Discuss unique safety risks of individuals with functional impairments.

Throughout life, human beings confront threats to their lives and well-being, such as acts of nature, pollutants, communicable diseases, accidents, and crime. Normally, adults take preventive action to avoid these hazards and, should they occur, attempt to control them to minimize their impact. Older persons face the same hazards as any adult, but their risks are compounded by age-related factors that reduce their capacity to protect themselves from and increase their vulnerability to safety hazards. Gerontological nurses need to identify safety risks when assessing older adults and provide interventions to address existing and potential threats to safety, life, and well-being.



KEY CONCEPT

Age-related changes can reduce the capacity of older adults to protect themselves from injury and increase their vulnerability to safety hazards.

Aging and Risks to Safety

The injury rate for older adults falls in the midrange for all age groups (Table 17-1). Older women have a higher rate of injuries than any adult female age group, whereas the rate among men declines through adult years. The death rate from accidents is significant among the older population as compared to other adult age groups (Table 17-2); accidents rank as the sixth leading cause of death for older adults, with falls leading the cause of injury-related deaths.

Age-related changes, altered antigen–antibody response (see Chapter 29), and the high prevalence of chronic disease cause older persons to be highly susceptible to infections. Pneumonia and influenza rank as the fourth leading cause of death in this age group, and pneumonia is the leading cause of infection-related death (see Chapter 31). Older adults

TABLE 17-2 Death Rates From Injuries by Age

Age (Years)	Death Rates (per 100,000 Population)
All ages	37.6
Under 1	23.6
1–4	10.9
5–14	6.4
15–24	37.1
25–34	31.5
35–44	37.8
45–54	38.8
55–64	32.9
65–74	44.1
75–84	101.9
85+	278.9

From National Vital Statistics Reports, Vol. 54, No. 13, Table 11. Death rates for 113 selected causes by age: United States, 2006, p. 37.

have a threefold greater incidence of nosocomial pneumonia as compared with younger age groups; older adults experience gastroenteritis caused by *Salmonella* species more frequently than persons younger than 65 years of age; and urinary tract infections increase in prevalence with age. Older adults account for more than half of all reported cases of tetanus, endocarditis, cholelithiasis, and diverticulitis. Atypical symptomatology often results in delayed diagnosis of infection, contributing to older adults' higher mortality rate from infections; for instance, older persons are more likely to die from appendicitis than younger persons due to the altered presentation of symptoms delaying diagnosis.

Altered pharmacokinetics, self-administration problems, and the high volume of drugs consumed by older individuals can also lead to considerable risks to safety. Risks include adverse effects and accidents resulting from effects such as drowsiness or dizziness. It is estimated that 5% to 30% of geriatric admissions to hospitals are associated with inappropriate drug administration.

Nursing Diagnosis Table 17-3 lists the various age-related factors that can pose risks to the safety and well-being of older adults and potential nursing problems associated with these risks.

Importance of the Environment to Health and Wellness

The environment can be considered in two parts, the microenvironment and the macroenvironment. The microenvironment refers to our immediate

TABLE 17-1 Incidence of Injuries for Various Age Groups

Age (Years)	Persons Injured (Rate per 1000 Population)
<12	100.7
12–21	168.8
22–44	112.1
45–64	104.2
65+	101.1

From U.S. Department of Commerce. (2007). Statistical abstract of the United States (126th ed.). Washington, DC: Bureau of the Census.

NURSING DIAGNOSIS

TABLE 17-3 Aging and Risks to Safety

Causes or Contributing Factors	Nursing Diagnosis
Decrease in intracellular fluid	Deficient Fluid Volume related to easier development of dehydration
Loss of subcutaneous tissue; less natural insulation; lower basal metabolic rate	Risk for Injury and Disturbed Thought Processes related to hypothermia
Decreased efficiency of heart	Activity Intolerance related to alterations (decrease) in cardiac output
Reduced strength and elasticity of respiratory muscles; decreased lung expansion; inefficient cough response; less ciliary activity	Risk for Infection related to reduced ability to expel accumulated or foreign matter from lungs
Reduced oxygen use under stress	Ineffective Tissue Perfusion related to changes in cardiovascular response to stress
Poor condition of teeth	Risk for Infection related to dental disease or aspirated tooth particles
Weak gag reflex	Risk for Infection related to aspiration
Altered taste sensation	Imbalanced Nutrition: More Than Body Requirements of salt or sweets related to taste deficit
Reduction in filtration of wastes by kidneys	Risk for Injury related to ineffective elimination of wastes from blood stream
Higher prevalence of urinary retention	Risk for Infection related to stasis of urine
More alkaline vaginal secretions	Risk for Infection related to inadequate acid environment to inhibit bacterial growth
Decreased muscle strength	Risk for Injury related to reduced muscle strength
Demineralization of bone	Risk for Injury and Impaired Physical Mobility related to increased tendency of bones to fracture
Delayed response and reaction time	Risk for Injury related to inability to respond in timely manner
Poor vision and hearing	Risk for Injury, Impaired Home Maintenance, and Disturbed Sensory Perception related to misperception of environment
Reduced lacrimal secretions	Risk for Injury and Risk for Infection related to decreased ability to protect cornea
Distorted depth perception	Risk for Injury related to decreased ability to judge changes in level of walking surface
Increased threshold for pain and touch	Risk for Injury, Risk for Infection, Disturbed Sensory Perception and Impaired Skin Integrity related to less ability to sense problems, such as pain and pressure
Less elasticity and more dryness and fragility of skin	Impaired Skin Integrity and Risk for Infection related to easier skin breakdown
Poor short-term memory	Risk for Injury and Noncompliance related to inability to recall medication administration, treatments
High prevalence of polypharmacy	Ineffective Management of Therapeutic Regimen and Risk for Injury related to combining drugs inappropriately, drug interactions, and side effects
Reduced income	Risk for Injury related to limited ability to afford protection of safe neighborhood, home repairs, adequate environmental temperature

surroundings with which we closely interact (e.g., furnishings, wall coverings, lighting, room temperature, and room sounds). The macroenvironment consists of the elements in the larger world that affect groups of people or even entire populations (e.g., the weather, pollution, traffic, and natural

resources). Although nurses should be concerned with improving the macroenvironment to benefit public health, the microenvironment, which can be more easily manipulated and from which more immediate benefits can be realized, is the focus of this discussion.

The environment is a statement by and to us, an expression of our unique selves. Whether it is filled with family heirlooms, accented by our handiwork, dramatic in design, or stark and simple, our environment expresses a great deal about our preferences, attitudes, lifestyles, and personalities. In turn, we perceive messages from environments, such as the behavior expected, the degree to which we are welcome, and the consideration for our needs. Although it is seldom given conscious thought, the communication between us and our surroundings is dynamic and significant.

Ideally, the environment provides more than shelter; it should promote continued development, stimulation, and satisfaction to enhance our psychological well-being. This is particularly important for older adults, many of whom spend considerable time in their homes or in a bedroom of an institution and have reduced interaction with the larger environment of their communities. To achieve the fullest satisfaction from their microenvironments, older adults must have various levels of needs met within their surroundings. This can be exemplified by comparing environmental needs with the basic human needs postulated by Maslow (Table 17-4). Similar to Maslow's theory, it can be hypothesized that higher-level satisfaction from the environment cannot be achieved unless lower-level needs are fulfilled. This may explain why some older individuals have the following priorities and problems:

- They do not think installing a free smoke detector is important when there are rodents in their apartment.
- They refuse to have their house remodeled because it will make them look too affluent in a high-crime neighborhood and be a target for burglary.
- They believe their home is no longer their own because a daughter-in-law has decided to redecorate it.

- They remain socially isolated rather than invite guests to a house perceived as shabby.
- They are unwilling to engage in creative arts and crafts if they are adjusting to a new and unfamiliar residence.

Nurses must be realistic in their assessment of the environment to determine which levels of needs are being addressed and to plan measures to promote the fulfillment of higher-level needs.

POINT TO PONDER

What aspects of your home environment contribute to the fulfillment of the higher-level needs based on Maslow's hierarchy? ●

Impact of Aging on Environmental Safety and Function

Previous chapters have described some of the changes experienced with aging. These, along with limitations imposed by highly prevalent chronic diseases, create special environmental problems for older people, such as those listed in Table 17-5.

Of course, specific disabilities accompany various diseases and create unique environmental problems, as is witnessed with a person who is cognitively impaired. Based on common limitations found among older people, most older people need an environment that is safe, functional, comfortable, personal, and normalizing and that compensates for their limitations. Creating such an environment requires considering lighting, temperature, colors, scents, floor coverings, furniture, sensory stimulation, noise control, bathroom hazards, and psychosocial factors. Box 17-1 provides a checklist for assessing basic standards for the older adult's environment.

TABLE 17-4 Environmental Needs Based on Maslow's Hierarchy

Basic Human Needs	Environmental Needs
Self-actualization	A space that promotes the realization of all potential, inspiring objects, beautiful grounds, relaxation aids
Self-esteem	A home one can feel pride in having, elegant decor; status symbols
Trust	A niche in which one can feel confident, control over lifestyle, consistent layout/furnishings/temperature/lighting
Love	A place one derives pleasure from being, familiar and comfortable furniture, favorite objects, attractive
Security	A haven from external threats, ability to safeguard personal possessions, adequate lighting, locks, smoke detectors, alarms
Physiological needs	A shelter in which to live, adequate ventilation, room temperature about 75°F (24°C), functioning utilities and appliances, pest control

TABLE 17-5 Potential Environmental Impact of Various Physical Limitations

Limitation	Potential Environmental Impact
Presbyopia Cornea less translucent, transmits less light	Decreased ability to focus and visualize near objects More external light needed to produce adequate image on retina
Decreased opacity of sclera, allows more light to enter eye Yellowing of lens	Colors more washed out, more contrast required Distorted color vision, particularly for browns, beiges, blues, greens, violets
Senile cataracts cloud lens Macular degeneration Senile miosis, pupil size decreased, less light reaches retina Decreased visual field	Glare more bothersome Vision more difficult, more magnification needed Slower light-to-dark accommodation Peripheral vision narrower
Presbycusis Dependency on hearing aid Reduced olfaction Less discriminating touch sensation Less body insulation, lower body temperature Slower nerve conduction Decreased muscle tone and strength	Distortion of normal sounds Amplification of all environmental sounds Odors, smoke, gas leaks difficult to detect Less stimulation from textures More sensitivity to lower environmental temperatures Slower response to stimuli, less ability to regain balance Increased difficulty rising from a seated position, fatigue easier; less elevation of toes during ambulation, shuffling gait
Stiff joints Urinary frequency, nocturia Shortness of breath, easily fatigued Poor short-term memory High use of medications, causing hypotension, dizziness	Difficulty climbing stairs, manipulating knobs and handles Frequent need for easily accessible bathroom Stairs, long hallways difficult to negotiate Forget to lock doors, turn off appliances Increased risk of falls

Lighting

Light has a more profound effect than simply illuminating an area for better visibility. For example, light affects the following:

- *Function.* An individual may be more mobile and participate in more activities in a brightly lit area, whereas a person in a dim room may be more sedate.
- *Orientation.* An individual may lose the perspective of time in a room that is constantly lit or darkened for long periods. For example, persons exposed to the bright lighting in intensive care units for several days often cannot determine if it is day or night. A person who awakens in a pitch-dark room may be disoriented for a few seconds.
- *Mood and behavior.* Blinking psychedelic lights cause a different reaction from candlelight. In restaurants, customers are quieter and eat more slowly with soft, low illumination levels than with harsh, high ones.

Several diffuse lighting sources rather than a few bright ones are best in areas used by older adults. Fluorescent lights are the most bothersome because of eye strain and glare. The use of fluorescent light-

ing for economic reasons actually may not be cost effective; although less expensive to operate, they have higher maintenance costs. Sunlight can be filtered by sheer curtains. The nurse should assess the environment for glare, paying particular attention to light bouncing off shining floors and furniture. Evaluate lighting from a seated position because insufficient lighting, shadows, glare, and other problems can appear differently from chair or bed level than from a standing position.

Nightlights help facilitate orientation during the night and provide visibility to locate light switches or lamps for nighttime mobility. A soft red light can be useful at night in the bedroom to improve night vision.

Exposure to natural light during the normal 24-hour dark–light cycle helps to maintain body rhythms, which, in turn, influence body temperature, sleep cycles, hormone production, and other functions. When the sleep–wake cycle is interrupted, the body’s internal rhythms can be disrupted. This factor warrants consideration in hospital and nursing home settings, where areas may be lit around the clock to facilitate staff activities; darkening areas at night can assist in maintaining normal body rhythms. Nurses should also consider the lack of

BOX 17-1 Environmental Assessment Checklist

STANDARD	YES	NO	COMMENTS
Smoke detector			
Telephone			
Fire extinguisher			
Vented heating system			
Minimal clutter			
Functioning refrigerator			
Proper food storage			
Adequately lighted hallways and stairways			
Handrails on stairs			
Floor surface even, easy to clean, requiring no wax, free of loose scatter rugs and deep-pile carpets			
Doorways unobstructed, painted a contrasting color from wall			
Bathtub or shower with nonslip surface, safety rails, no electrical outlets nearby			
Hot water temperature less than 110°F (43°C)			
Windows screened, easy to reach and open			
Ample number of safe electrical outlets, probably 3 feet higher than level of floor for easy reach, not overloaded			
Safe stove with burner control on front			
Shelves within easy reach, sturdy			
Faucet handles easy to operate, clearly marked hot and cold			
Proper storage of medications, absence of outdated prescriptions			
For wheelchair use:			
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Doorways and hallways clear and wide enough for passage ● Ramps or elevator ● Bathroom layout to provide maneuvering ● Sinks, furniture low enough to reach 			

exposure to natural sunlight often experienced by institutionalized or homebound ill older individuals. Consideration should be given to taking these individuals outdoors, when possible, and opening windows to allow natural sunlight to enter.

Temperature

It has been known from Galen's time in 160 A.D. that hot and cold temperatures affect human beings. Research has shown that a direct correlation exists between body temperature and performance (Cheung, 2007). Tactile sensitivity, vigilance performance, and psychomotor tasks become impaired in temperatures below 55°F (13°C).

Because older adults have lower normal body temperatures and decreased amounts of natural insulation, they are especially sensitive to lower temperatures (Fig. 17-1); thus, maintaining adequate environmental temperature is significant. The recommended room temperature for an older person should not be lower than 75°F (24°C). The older the person is, the narrower the range of tem-

peratures tolerated without adverse reactions. Room temperatures less than 70°F (21°C) can lead to hypothermia in older adults.

KEY CONCEPT

Older adults are sensitive to lower environmental temperatures because of their lower body temperature and decreased amount of natural insulation.

Although not as significant a problem as hypothermia, hyperthermia can also create difficulty for older persons, who are more susceptible to its ill effects than younger adults. Brain damage can result from temperatures exceeding 106°F (41°C). Even in geographic areas that do not experience excessively high temperatures, consideration must be given to the temperature of rooms or homes in which doors and windows are not opened and no air conditioning is present. Persons with diabetes or cerebral atherosclerosis are at high risk for becoming hyperthermic.



FIGURE 17-1 • Because older adults are especially sensitive to lower temperatures, controlling the environmental temperature is important. Additional layers of clothing may also be needed.

Colors

There is much debate concerning the best environmental color scheme for older people. Colors such as red, yellow, and white can be stimulating and increase pulse, blood pressure, and appetite, whereas blue, brown, and earth tones can be relaxing. Orange can stimulate appetite, whereas violet has the opposite effect. Green is considered the master healer color and gives a sense of well-being. Black and gray can be depressing. Although certain colors are associated with certain effects, experiences with colors play a significant part in individual reactions to and meanings inferred from various colors. Because individual response can vary, it may be best to focus on the use of colors to enhance function and, whenever possible, on the personal preference of the room's resident. Contrasting colors are helpful in defining doors, stairs, and level changes within an area. When the desire is to not draw attention to an area (e.g., a storage closet), walls should be a similar color or within the same color family. Certain colors may be used to define different areas; for example, bedrooms may be blue and green, eating and activity areas orange and red, and lounge areas gray and beige.

Patterned wall and floor coverings can add appeal to the environment; however, wavy patterns and diagonal lines can cause a sensation of dizziness and could worsen the confusion of persons with cognitive impairments. Using a simple pattern or a mural on one wall of the room can be effective and pleasing.

Scents

Scents have been used for aesthetic and medicinal purposes from the earliest of times. Although the use of perfumes and colognes is hardly new, the therapeutic use of scents, aromatherapy (or phyto-medicine), has become popular in the United States only recently. However, it is a commonly used extension of orthodox medicine in countries such as Germany and France.

Involving more than just the smelling of pleasant fragrances, aromatherapy is the therapeutic use of essential oils. Essential oils are highly volatile droplets made by plants and stored in their veins, glands, or sacs; when they are released (by crushing or breaking open the plant), the aroma is released along with them. When the chemicals within the essential oils are inhaled, they are carried to the olfactory bulb, stimulating nerve impulses that travel to the limbic system of the brain for processing. An organ called the amygdala is housed in the limbic system and stores memories associated with different scents. In some cases, the memories can be dormant for many years.

Essential oils also can be absorbed through the skin through baths, compresses, or rubbing or massaging them onto the skin surface. Like topical medications, these oils are absorbed and produce physiologic effects.

Floor Coverings

Carpeting is an effective sound absorber, and for most people it represents warmth, comfort, and a homelike atmosphere. There even has been speculation that the use of carpeting in institutional settings can reduce the number of fractures associated with falls. However, carpeting does create problems, which include the following:

- *Static electricity and cling.* Many older persons have a shuffling gait and incomplete toe lift during ambulation; this can produce uncomfortable static electricity, and the clinging of slippers and shoe soles to the carpeting could cause falls.
- *Difficult wheelchair mobility.* The more plush the carpet is, the more difficult it becomes to roll wheels on its surface.
- *Cleaning.* Spills are more difficult to clean on a carpeted surface; even with washable surfaces, discoloration can result.

- *Odors.* Cigarette smoke and other odors can cling to carpeting, creating unpleasant odors that last. Urine, vomitus, and other substances demand special deodorizing efforts that may not prove effective.
- *Pests.* The undersurface of carpeting provides a wonderful environment in which cockroaches, moths, fleas, and other pests can reside.

To derive some of the benefits of carpeting, carpeting may be applied to some of the wall surface rather than the floor. This can provide a noise buffer, textural variation, and a decor with fewer housekeeping and maintenance problems than floor carpeting.



KEY CONCEPT

Carpeting a portion of the wall can provide a buffer for noise and offer a variation in room decor.

Scattered and area rugs provide an ideal source for falls and should not be used. Tiled floor covering should be laid on a wood foundation rather than directly on a cement surface for better insulation and cushion. Bold designs can cause dizziness and confusion in ambulation; a single solid color is preferable. A non-glare surface is essential for older adults. Floor treatments that create a non-slip surface are particularly useful in bathrooms, kitchens, and areas leading from outside doors.

Furniture

Furnishings should be appealing, functional, and comfortable. A firm chair with arm rests provides support and assistance in rising from or lowering into the seat; low, sinking cushions are difficult for older people to use. Chairs should also be of an appropriate height to allow the individual's feet to rest flat on the floor with no pressure behind the knees. Rockers provide relaxation and some exercise to older people. Love seats are preferable to larger sofas because no one risks being seated in the center without arm rests for assistance.

Upholstery for all furniture should be easy to clean, so leather and vinyl coverings are more useful than cloth. Upholstery should be fire resistant, with a firm surface without buttons or seams in areas that come in contact with the body. Rather than the back, seat, and arm rest being one connecting unit, open space where these sections meet allows for ventilation and easier cleaning. Recliners can promote relaxation and provide a means for leg elevation, but they should not require strenuous effort to change positions.

Tables, bookcases, and other furniture should be sturdy and able to withstand weight from persons leaning for support. If table lamps are used,

bolting them to the table surface can prevent their being knocked over in an attempt to locate them in the dark. Foot stools, candlestick tables, plant stands, and other small pieces of furniture would be best placed in low-traveled areas, if they are present at all. Furniture and clutter should not obstruct the path from the bedroom to the bathroom.

Drawers should be checked for ease of use. Sanding and waxing the corners and slides can facilitate their movement. In hanging mirrors, the height and function of the user must be considered; obviously, persons confined to wheelchairs will need a lower level than their ambulatory counterparts.

Individuals with cognitive impairments need a particularly simple environment. Furniture should look like furniture and not pieces of sculpture. The use of furniture should be clear. Placement of a commode chair next to a sitting chair can be confusing and result in the improper use of both.

Sensory Stimulation

By making thoughtful choices and capitalizing on the objects and activities of daily life, much can be done to create an environment that is pleasing and stimulating to the senses. Some suggestions are:

- textured wall surfaces
- soft blankets and spreads
- differently shaped and textured objects to hold (e.g., a round sheepskin-covered throw pillow and a square tweed-covered one)
- murals, pictures, sculptures, and wall hangings
- plants and freshly cut flowers
- coffee brewing, food cooking, perfumes, and oils
- birds to listen to and animals to pet
- soft music

Different areas in the person's living space can be created for different sensory experiences. The appetite of nursing home residents could be much improved if, within their own dining area, they could smell the aroma of their coffee brewing or bread toasting rather than just having the finished product placed on a tray before them.

For bed-bound persons or those with limited opportunity for sensory stimulation, special efforts are necessary. In addition to the suggestions given, one could regularly change the wall hangings in their rooms. Many libraries and museums will loan artwork free of charge. Collaboration with a local school can yield unique art for the older person and meaningful art projects for the students. A "sensory stimulation box" that contains objects of different textures, shapes, colors, and fragrances could provide an activity.

Noise Control

Sound produces a variety of physiologic and emotional effects. Many of the sounds we take for granted—television, traffic noise, conversation from an adjoining room, appliance motors, leaking faucets, and paging systems—can create difficulties for the older person. Many older adults already experience some hearing limitation as a result of presbycusis and need to be especially attentive to compensate for this deficit.

Environmental sounds compete with the sounds that older adults want or need to hear, such as a telephone conversation or the evening news, resulting in poor hearing and frustration. Unwanted, disharmonic, or chronic noise can be a stressor and cause physical and emotional symptoms.

Ideally, noise control begins with the design of the building. Careful landscaping and walls can buffer outdoor noise. Acoustical ceilings, drapes, and carpeting—also useful on walls—are helpful, as is attention to appliance and equipment maintenance. Radios and televisions should not be playing when no one is listening; if one person needs a louder volume, earphones for that individual can prevent others from being exposed to high volumes. In institutional settings, individual pocket pagers are less disruptive than intercoms and paging systems.

Bathroom Hazards

Many accidental injuries occur in the bathroom and can be avoided with common sense and inexpensive measures. Particular attention should be paid to the following aspects.

- **Lighting.** A small light should be on in the bathroom at all times. Because urinary frequency and nocturia are common, older adults use the bathroom often and can benefit from the increased visibility. Constant lighting is especially helpful if the switch is located outside the bathroom, so that the individual does not have to enter a dark area and then search for a switch.
- **Floor surface.** Towels, hair dryers, and other items should not be left on the bathroom floor, and throw rugs should not be used. For older people, falls are dangerous under any circumstance, but the high likelihood of falling and striking one's head on the hard surface of a tub or toilet increases the potential seriousness of the fall. Leaks should be corrected to avoid creating slippery floors, which are another cause of falls.
- **Faucets.** Lever-shaped faucet handles are easier to use than round ones or those that must have pressure exerted on them. Older people can risk falling or burning themselves by releasing too much hot water as they struggle to turn a faucet handle. This problem supports the need to con-



FIGURE 17-2 • Safety features in this shower include grab bars, safety rails, shower seat, and transfer seat.

trol hot water temperature centrally. Color coding the faucet handles makes differentiation of hot and cold easier than small letters alone.

- **Tubs and shower stalls.** Nonslip surfaces are essential for tubs and shower floors. Grab bars on the wall and safety rails attached to the side of the tub offer support during transfers and a source of stabilization when bathing (Fig. 17-2). A shower or bath seat offers a place to sit when showering and, for tub bathers, a resting point when lifting to transfer out of the tub. Because a drop in blood pressure may follow bathing, it may be beneficial to have a seat alongside the tub to enable the bather to rest when drying.
- **Toilets.** Grab bars or support frames aid in the difficult task of sitting down and rising from a toilet seat. Because the low height of toilet seats makes them difficult for many older people to use, a raised seat attachment could prove useful.
- **Electrical appliances.** The use of electric heaters, hair dryers, and radios in the bathroom produces a considerable safety risk. Even healthy, agile persons can accidentally slip and pull an electrical appliance into the tub with them.

Medical supply stores and health care equipment suppliers offer a variety of devices that can make the bathroom and other living areas safer and more functional. Sometimes less expensive replicas can be homemade and be equally effective. It is much wiser to invest in and use these assistive devices to prevent an injury than to wait until an injury occurs.

Psychosocial Considerations

Physical objects form only a partial picture of the environment. The human elements make the picture complete. Feelings and behavior influence and are influenced by the individual's surroundings.

From the homeless woman who claims the same department store alcove as her resting place each night to the nursing home resident who forbids anyone to open her bedside cabinet, most people want

a space to define as their own. This territoriality is natural and common; many of us would become uncomfortable with a visitor to our office sifting through the papers on our desk, a house guest looking through our closets, or a stranger snuggling close to us on a subway when the rest of the seats are empty. The annoyance we feel at having someone looking into our window, peering over a privacy fence into our yard, playing music loudly enough to be heard in our home, or staring at us demonstrates that our personal space and privacy can be invaded without direct physical contact.

To the dependent, ill, older person, privacy and personal space are no less important, but they may be more difficult to achieve. In an institutional setting, staff and other patients may make uninvited contact with a person's territory and self at any time, ranging from the confused resident who wanders into others' rooms to staff members who lift blankets to check if the bed is dry. Even in the home, well-intentioned relatives may not think twice about discarding or moving personal possessions in the name of housekeeping or entering a bathroom unannounced just to ensure that all is well. The more dependent and ill individuals are, the more personal space and privacy may be invaded. Unfortunately, for these individuals who have experienced multiple losses and a shrinking social world, the regulation of privacy and personal space may be one of the few controls they can exercise. It is important that caregivers realize and respect this need through several basic measures:

- Define specific areas and possessions that are the individual's (e.g., this side of the room; this room in the house; this chair, bed, or closet).
- Provide privacy areas for periods of solitude. If a private room is not available, arrange furniture to achieve maximum privacy (e.g., beds on different sides of the room facing different directions, use of bookshelves and plants as room dividers).
- Request permission to enter personal space. Imagine an invisible circle of about 5 to 10 feet around the person and ask before coming into it: "May I sit your new roommate next to you?" "Is it all right to come in?" "May I clean the inside of your closet?"
- Allow maximum control over one's space.



KEY CONCEPT

It is important for the nurse to recognize the older adult's need for personal space. Regulation of personal space and privacy may be among the few existing controls that can be exercised by persons who have experienced multiple losses and a shrinking social world.

Components of the environment can facilitate or discourage mental and social activity. Clocks, calendars, and newspapers promote orientation and knowledge of current events. Easily accessible books and magazines challenge the mind and expand horizons. Games and hobbies can offer stimulation and an alternative to watching television. The placement of chairs in clusters or in busy but not heavily trafficked areas is conducive to interaction and involvement with a larger world.

Although fewer than 5% of older adults reside in nursing homes, approximately 25% of older persons will spend some time in such a facility during their last years of life. Nursing homes are not reflections of normal homelike environments; adjustment to them can be difficult. Familiar surroundings are replaced with new and strange sights, sounds, odors, and people. Cues that triggered memory and function are gone, and new ones must be mastered at a time when reserves are low. Relatives and neighbors who gave love and understanding are replaced with people who know only that person before them now and who have many tasks to be done. The individual who is experiencing this may have a variety of reactions, such as:

- depression over the loss of health, personal possessions, and independence
- regression because of the inability to manage the stress at hand
- humiliation by having to request basic necessities and minor desires, such as toileting, a cup of tea, or a cigarette
- anger at the loss of control and freedom

Nursing homes cannot offer the same satisfaction as the person's own home, but the institutional environment can be enhanced through the following:

- an attractive decor
- inclusion of the individual's personal possessions
- respect for privacy and personal territory
- recognition of the individuality of the resident
- allowance of maximum control over activities and decision making
- environmental modifications to compensate for deficits

The human environment will be more important to the nursing home resident than the physical surroundings. Superior interior decoration and lovely color schemes mean little when respect, individuality, and sensitivity are absent.

The Problem of Falls



One of the significant concerns about safety in later life relates to the incidence of falls. Studies have indicated that one third of persons age 75 years and older

BOX 17-2 Risk Factors for Falls**AGE-RELATED FACTORS**

History of falls
 Female aged 75 and older
 Impaired vision
 Gait disturbance
 Postural hypotension

HEALTH CONDITIONS OR FUNCTIONAL IMPAIRMENTS

Physical disability
 Incontinence, nocturia
 Delirium, dementia
 Mood disturbance
 Dizziness
 Weakness
 Fatigue
 Ataxia
 Paralysis
 Edema
 Use of cane, walker, wheelchair, crutch, or brace
 Use of restraint
 Presence of IV, indwelling catheter
 Unstable cardiac condition
 Neurologic disease
 Parkinsonism

Transient ischemic attack
 Cerebrovascular accident
 Diabetes mellitus
 Peripheral vascular disease
 Orthopedic disease
 Foot problems
 Multiple diagnoses

MEDICATIONS

Antidepressants
 Antihypertensives
 Antipsychotics
 Diuretics
 Sedatives
 Tranquilizers
 Multiple medications

ENVIRONMENTAL FACTORS

Newly admitted to hospital/nursing home
 Unfamiliar environment
 Highly polished floors
 Inadequate environmental lighting
 Absence of railings, grab bars
 Poor environmental design
 Clutter

experience a fall each year and half of these experience multiple falls (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention [CDC], 2004; 2007). The consequences of falls are serious; 20% of the hospital and 40% of the nursing home admissions of older adults are related to falls (Sterling, O'Connor, & Bonadies, 2001). Even if no physical injury occurs, fall victims may develop a fear of falling again (i.e., post-fall syndrome) and reduce their activities as a result; this can lead to unnecessary dependency, loss of function, decreased socialization, and a poor quality of life.

Risks and Prevention

Many factors contribute to the high incidence of falls in older adults (Box 17-2). Common risk factors include the following:

- *Age-related changes:* reduced visual capacity; problems differentiating shades of the same color, particularly blues, greens, and violets; cataracts; poor vision at night and in dimly lit areas; less foot and toe lift during stepping; altered center of gravity leading to balance being lost more easily; slower responses; urinary frequency

- *Improper use of mobility aids:* using canes, walkers, wheelchairs without being prescribed, properly fitted, or instructed in safe use; not using brakes during transfers
- *Medications:* particularly those that can cause dizziness, drowsiness, orthostatic hypotension, and incontinence, such as antihypertensives, sedatives, antipsychotics, diuretics
- *Unsafe clothing:* poor-fitting shoes and socks, long robes or pants legs
- *Disease-related symptoms:* orthostatic hypotension, incontinence, reduced cerebral blood flow, edema, dizziness, weakness, fatigue, brittle bones, paralysis, ataxia, mood disturbances, confusion
- *Environmental hazards:* wet surfaces, waxed floors, objects on floor, poor lighting
- *Caregiver-related factors:* improper use of restraints, delays in responding to requests, unsafe practices, poor supervision of problem behaviors

A history of falls can predict an individual's risk of future falls; therefore, nurses should carefully assess persons who have experienced a fall or even a minor stumble to identify factors that may increase

NURSING DIAGNOSIS HIGHLIGHT

RISK FOR INJURY

Overview

Many older persons are limited in their ability to protect themselves from hazards to their health and well-being. Indications that this diagnosis exists can be manifested through a history of frequent falls or accidents, the presence of an unsafe environment, adverse drug reactions, infections, frequent hospitalizations, and altered mood or cognition.

Causative or contributing factors

Age-related changes, health problems, weak or immobile state, sensory deficits, improperly fitted or used mobility aids, unsafe use of medications, unsafe environment, altered mood or cognitive function.

Goal

The patient is free from injury.

Interventions

- Assess risk of injury to patient (e.g., falls risk, activities of daily living and impaired activities of daily living function, mental status, gait, medication use, nutritional status, environment, knowledge of injury prevention practices).
- Identify patients at high risk for injury and plan measures to reduce their specific risks.
- Orient patients to new environments.
- Encourage patients to wear prescribed eyeglasses, hearing aids, and prosthetic devices.

- Ensure patients use canes, walkers, and wheelchairs properly and only when prescribed.
- Avoid the use of physical or chemical restraints unless assessed to be absolutely necessary; use proper procedures to ensure safety when they are used.
- Advise patients to change positions slowly, holding on to a stable object as they do.
- Keep floors free from litter and clutter.
- Provide good lighting in all areas used by patient.
- Store cleaning solutions and other poisonous substances in a safe area.
- Encourage patients to use hand rails and grab bars.
- Assist patients as needed with transfers.
- Review medications used for continued need, effectiveness, appropriateness of dosage; instruct patients in safe medication use.
- Be sure patients wear well-fitted, low-heeled shoes and robes and pants of an appropriate length.
- Promptly detect and obtain treatment for changes in physical or mental health status.
- Review home environment for safety risks and assist patient in obtaining assistance in eliminating risks (e.g., low-cost home improvements, housekeeping aid, or senior housing).
- If safety risks are associated with insufficient finances (inability to purchase prescriptions, heating oil, or home repairs) refer patient to social service agency to explore possibility of obtaining assistance.

their risk of this problem. Interventions should be planned accordingly.

Caution is needed to address the risk of falls associated with orthostatic hypotension. This is a common problem that causes dizziness when older adults first stand after awakening. On awakening, older adults should spend several minutes resting in bed and stretching their muscles, followed by several more minutes of sitting on the side of the bed before rising to a standing position. The orthostatic effect of rising to a standing position after bathing, coupled with the dilation of peripheral vessels from the warm bath water, also leads to fainting and falls. Rubber mats or non-slip strips, a bath seat, and resting before rising are essential measures in the bathtub.

Health care facilities can find it beneficial to have an active program to prevent falls that incorporates some of the interventions described in the Nursing Diagnosis Highlight: Risk for Injury. Regular, careful inspection of the environment and prompt correction of environmental hazards (e.g., leaks, cracks in walkways, and broken bed rails) are

essential (see Box 17-1). An evaluation of risk of falling should be incorporated into the assessment of each older client. The Hendrich II Fall Risk Model is a short tool that aids in assessing fall risk (see Resources at the end of this chapter). Staff should orient older clients to new environments and reinforce safe practices, such as using bed rails, braking wheelchairs and stretchers during transfers, and promptly cleaning spills.

**KEY CONCEPT**

A program to prevent falls is essential to settings that provide services to older adults.

Some falls will occur despite the best preventive measures. Caregivers should assess the fall victim and keep him or her immobile until a full examination for injury is done. Skin breaks or discoloration, swelling, bleeding, asymmetry of extremities, lengthening of a limb, and pain are among the findings to

note. Medical examination and x-rays are warranted for even the slightest suspicion of a fracture or other serious injury. Fractures often are not readily apparent immediately after the fall; it may be only when the person attempts to resume normal activity that the injured bone becomes misaligned. Also, areas other than the direct point of impact may be injured in the fall; for instance, a person may have fallen on the knee, but the force of the fall may have placed enough stress on the hip to fracture the femur. Careful examination and observation can aid in the prompt diagnosis of injury and introduction of appropriate treatment.

Risks Associated With Restraints

Throughout most of the 20th century, restraints were widely used in health care settings under the belief that they would prevent falls, promote patients' compliance with treatments, and aid in managing behavioral symptoms. This practice was generally unchallenged until the 1990s, when studies began to emerge suggesting that restraints contribute to serious injuries and worsen cognitive function (Capezuit, Strumpf, Evans, Grisso, & Maslin, 1998). Since then, the combination of research-based clinical evidence, clinical enlightenment, advocacy groups' efforts, and changed standards and regulations concerning restraints have contributed to a significant reduction in restraint use (Squillace et al., 2007).

Restraints consist of anything that restricts freedom of movement. They can consist of physical restraints, such as seat belts, vests, wrist ties, "geri-chairs," bilateral full-length side rails, and chemical restraints, which are drugs given solely for the purpose of discipline or staff convenience.

Applying physical restraints to an already agitated person increases his or her fear and worsens behavioral symptoms. This hardly reflects caring, compassionate practice. In addition, restraints can lead to serious complications, including aspiration, circulatory obstruction, cardiac stress, skin tears and ulcers, anorexia, dehydration, constipation, incontinence, fractures, and dislocations.



POINT TO PONDER

How do you think you would react if you entered a hospital or nursing home room in which your loved one was being cared and found that person struggling to be freed from applied restraints? ●

Evidence now exists that the use of physical restraints can be significantly reduced without increasing staffing or injuries (Strumpf, Evans, & Bourbonniere, 2001). Therefore, nonuse of physical and chemical restraints is a standard that geronto-

logical nurses should promote in all clinical settings. A thorough assessment is beneficial in identifying factors that contribute to agitation and other negative behaviors; these factors could include visual deficits, impaired hearing, unrelieved pain, delirium, dyspnea, excess sensory stimulation, and lack of familiarity with a new environment. Addressing the specific factor contributing to the behavior could calm the patient and eliminate the need for restraints. When behaviors cannot be modified, alternatives to restraints can be considered, such as:

- placing patient in a room near the nursing station in which close observation and frequent contact are facilitated
- one-to-one supervision and companionship (often, family members and volunteers can provide this)
- use of electronic devices that alert staff when the patient attempts to get out of bed or leaves a designated area
- repositioning, soothing communication, touch, and other comfort measures
- frequent reality orientation and reassurance
- diversional activities

Close observation and documentation of patients' responses to restraints and alternatives to restraints are essential.

Interventions to Reduce Intrinsic Risks to Safety

When a fall, injury, or other problem occurs, older adults take longer to recover and risk significantly more complications; thus, the key word in safety is *prevention*. Because of intrinsic risk factors often present in older adults, additional preventive measures are needed beyond those practices that promote safety for persons of any age. A variety of practical methods, most of which are inexpensive, promote safety and should be considered in the care of older adults. These measures not only aid in avoiding injury and illness but also can increase self-care capacity.



KEY CONCEPT

Prevention is important because older adults require more time to recover from injuries and suffer more complications.

Reducing Hydration and Nutrition Risks

Adequate fluid intake can be difficult for older adults, particularly if they are depressed, demented, or physically incapable of maintaining good fluid and food intake. Thirst perception declines with age, causing older persons to be less aware of their

fluid needs. Sometimes a self-imposed fluid restriction is a means of managing urinary frequency; in other situations the mental capacity to respond to the thirst sensation may be lacking. The result is insufficient fluid intake, which causes the body's already reduced tissue fluid reserves to be tapped. Unless contraindicated, older adults should ingest at least 1300 mL of fluid each day. Many sources other than plain water can provide this requirement, including soft drinks, coffee, juices, Jello, ices, and fresh citrus fruits.

Poor oral health, gastrointestinal symptoms, altered cognition, depression, and dependency on others for food can lead to poor food intake. Even healthy older people may have difficulty ingesting a proper diet because of factors such as limited funds, problems in shopping for food, and lack of motivation to prepare healthy meals. The fatigue, weakness, dizziness, and other symptoms associated with a poor nutritional status can predispose older adults to accidents and illness. An appropriate quality and quantity of food intake can increase the body's resistance to such problems. See Chapter 14 for more specific information about hydration and nutritional needs.

Addressing Risks Associated With Sensory Deficits

Changes in vision that occur with aging can pose threats to safety. Most people older than 40 years of age require corrective lenses for vision. The visual capacity of older adults can change frequently enough that regular evaluation of vision and the effectiveness of prescribed lenses is warranted. Annual eye examinations are helpful not only in ensuring the appropriateness of corrective lenses but also in detecting, in a timely fashion, the many eye disorders that increase in prevalence with age.

To compensate for reduced peripheral vision, affected individuals should be approached from the front rather than from the back or side, and furniture and frequently used items should be arranged in full view. Altered depth perception may hamper the ability of the aged to detect changes in levels; this may be alleviated by providing good lighting, eliminating clutter on stairways, using contrasting colors on stairs, and providing signals to indicate when a change in level is being approached. The filtering of low-tone colors is an important consideration when decorating areas for older adults; bright reds, oranges, and yellows and contrasting colors on doors and windows can be appealing and helpful. Difficulty in differentiating between low-tone colors should be considered if urine testing is being taught to older diabetics because these tests often require color differentiation. Cleaning solutions, medications, and

other materials should be labeled in large letters to prevent accidents or errors.

Hearing deficits also pose a safety risk, as directions and warnings can be missed or misinterpreted. Audiometric evaluation should be obtained for persons with hearing impairments to determine possible corrective measures and the benefit of hearing aids. Older persons should be advised not to purchase a hearing aid without an evaluation and prescription for their specific needs.

Explanations and directions for diagnostic tests, medication administration, or other therapeutic measures should be explained in written, as well as verbal, form. Hearing impaired individuals should live close to someone with adequate hearing, who can alert them when fire alarms or other warnings are sounded. Specially trained dogs for the hearing impaired, similar to seeing-eye dogs, may prove useful; local hearing and speech associations can provide information on this and other resources.

Vision and hearing limitations of older adults produce difficulties for care providers who need to communicate necessary questions, warnings, or directions during the night. Whispering to avoid awakening other sleeping individuals may be missed by the older person who has a reduced ability to hear or whose hearing aid is removed, and lip reading is difficult in dimly lit bedrooms. Focusing a flashlight on the lips of the speaker can help the individual read lips, and cupping the hands over the ear and speaking directly into it can aid hearing. A stethoscope also can be used to amplify conversation by placing the earpieces into the individual's ear and speaking into the bell portion. It is a good idea to explain these procedures during the day so that the patient will understand your actions during the night.



KEY CONCEPT

Conversation with a hearing-impaired individual during the night can be facilitated by placing the earpieces of a stethoscope into the impaired person's ears and speaking into the bell or diaphragm.

Other sensory deficits, although more subtle, can predispose older adults to serious risks. A decreased sense of smell can cause older adults to miss warning odors and prevent differentiating between harmful and harmless substances. Because older adults may not be able to detect a gas odor before gas intoxication occurs, electric stoves may be better options than gas stoves. The loss of taste receptors may cause older adults to use excessive amounts of salt and sugar in their diets, which is a possible health hazard. Reduced tactile sensation to pressure from shoes, dentures, or unchanged positions can lead to skin breakdown, and the inability

to differentiate between temperatures can cause burns. Nurses should plan careful observation, education, and environmental modifications to compensate for specific deficits.

Addressing Risks Associated With Mobility Limitations

Slower response and reaction times may be safety hazards. Older pedestrians may misjudge their ability to cross streets as traffic lights change, and older drivers may not be able to react quickly enough to avoid accidents; if family members are not available to escort and transport these individuals, assistance may be obtained through local social service agencies. Slower movement and poor coordination subject older adults to falls and other accidents; loose rugs, slippery floors, clutter, and poorly fitting slippers and shoes should be eliminated. Because poor judgment, denial, or lack of awareness of their limitations may prevent them from protecting themselves, older people should be advised not to take risks, such as climbing ladders or sitting on ledges to wash windows.

Monitoring Body Temperature

Temperature fluctuations can be hazardous to older individuals. The normal body temperature of many older persons is lower than that found in younger persons (e.g., temperatures as low as 97°F [36°C] can be a normal finding in older adults). Temperature elevation indicating a health problem can be missed if one is not aware of the person's baseline norm. For instance, a 99°F (37°C) temperature may not be alarming to the caregiver; however, if it is 2°F above the individual's norm, an infection may be present and, if undiscovered, can lead to complications. In addition to having an undetected, untreated, underlying problem, an unrecognized temperature elevation places an added burden on the heart. For every 1°F elevation, the heart rate increases approximately 10 beats/min—a stress that older hearts do not tolerate well. At the other extreme, hypothermia develops more easily in older people and can cause serious complications and death.

Preventing Infection

Because the risk of developing infections is considerably greater in older persons than in younger adults, avoiding situations that contribute to infection is necessary. Contact with persons who have known or suspected infections should be avoided, as should crowds (e.g., in shopping malls, classrooms, movie theaters) during flu season.

Vaccines should be kept up to date. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention recommends

that persons aged over 65 years, nursing home residents, and persons who have close contact with either of these groups be vaccinated against influenza annually. Pneumococcal vaccines, administered once in a lifetime, and tetanus vaccines every 10 years should also be current. In addition to avoiding external sources of infection, older adults must be careful to ensure they do not create situations that predispose them to infection, such as immobility, malnutrition, and poor hygiene. Of course, good infection control practices are a must for preventing iatrogenic infections in older persons who receive services from health care providers.

Some evidence suggests that the herbs echinacea, goldenseal, and garlic can help prevent infection and that ginseng can assist with infection prevention by protecting the body from the ill effects of stress. See Chapter 29 for more information on promoting immunologic health.

Suggesting Sensible Clothing

Shoes that are too large, offer poor support, or have high heels can lead to falls, as can loose hosiery and robes or pants legs that drag on the floor. Garters and tight-fitting shoes or garments can obstruct circulation. Hats and scarves can decrease the visual field. Clothing that is practical, properly fitting, and conducive to activity is advisable.

Using Medications Cautiously

The high number of drugs consumed by older adults and the differences in the pharmacokinetics in the aged can lead to serious adverse effects. Drugs should be prescribed only when necessary and after nonpharmacologic measures of treatment have proved ineffective. Older adults and their caregivers should be taught the proper use, side effects, and interactions of all drugs they are taking, and be advised in the discreet use of over-the-counter drugs. (See Chapter 18 for more information on drugs.)

Avoiding Crime

Older adults are particularly vulnerable to criminals who view them as ready targets. In addition to being victims of actual crimes, older adults often are so fearful of potentially becoming victims of crime that they may be reluctant to leave their homes. Reasonable discretion should be used in traveling alone or at night and in opening doors to strangers. Likewise, older people should use caution in negotiating contracts and seek the advice of family members or professionals as needed. Gerontological nurses may want to identify crime prevention programs offered in the community by law enforcement agencies, faith communities, senior centers,

and other groups; if such programs are not available, nurses can assist in their development.



KEY CONCEPT

Older adults are particularly vulnerable to purse snatchings, burglaries, and scams by con artists.

Promoting Safe Driving

Older adults drive an estimated 84 billion miles annually. Although when examined as a group, drivers over age 60 have lower accident rates than persons under age 30, accident rates begin to skyrocket after age 75. After age 85, older drivers are involved in four times the number of accidents on a mile-per-mile basis as persons aged 50 to 59, and when they are involved in accidents, they are 15 times more likely to die than drivers in their 40s (Carr, 2000; Insurance Institute for Highway Safety, 2006; National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, Department of Transportation, 2006).

Nurses should assist older drivers in identifying risks to safe driving (e.g., poor vision, use of medications that reduce alertness, slower reflexes) and encourage them to evaluate their continued ability to drive safely. Rather than cease driving altogether, some older adults may find it useful to restrict their driving to daylight hours, noncongested areas, and good weather. Local chapters of the Automobile Association of America and senior citizen groups can be contacted for safe driving classes that could be offered to older adults. If such programs do not exist in the community, the gerontological nurse could stimulate interest and assist in developing programs as a means of advocating for the safety of older drivers.



POINT TO PONDER

Many people take calculated risks, such as exceeding the speed limit, practicing unsafe sex, abusing drugs, and failing to perform regular breast self-examinations. What risks do you take and why do you do so? What can you do to change this behavior? ●

Promoting Early Detection of Problems

The early identification and correction of health problems helps minimize risks to safety. Regular professional assessment is important; however, self-evaluation by older adults can be equally beneficial because they will recognize changes or abnormalities in themselves that signal problems. Nurses can teach older adults how to perform the following measures:

- take their own temperature and pulse (do not assume that everyone knows the right way to use and read a thermometer or palpate a pulse)
- listen to their own lungs with a stethoscope (they may not be able to diagnose the sounds they hear, but they will be able to recognize a new or changed sound)
- observe changes in their own sputum, urine, and feces that could indicate problems
- identify the effectiveness, side effects, and adverse reactions of their medications
- recognize symptoms that should warrant professional evaluation

Confusion, disorientation, poor judgment, and decreased memory handicap older adults' ability to protect themselves from hazards to their health and well-being. When these symptoms occur, they are not to be taken lightly or accepted as normal. Often, the root of the problem can be a reversible disorder, such as hypotension, hypoglycemia, or infection. A thorough assessment is crucial to selecting the appropriate treatment modality and correcting the problem before complications occur.



KEY CONCEPT

Changes, problems, and difficulties older adults mention should be investigated, because they can be indicators of serious conditions.

A review of the individual's behaviors and function can pinpoint potential safety risks. Examples of situations to note include:

- smoking in bed
- incontinence
- inappropriate use of a walker or other mobility aid
- dizziness resulting from a new medication
- driving a car with poor vision
- cashing Social Security checks in a high-crime area
- having an active pet that is constantly underfoot

Nurses can identify these risks by observing and asking about routine activities, responsibilities, and typical tasks performed. Steps to correct potential problems should be taken before an incident occurs.

Addressing Risks Associated With Functional Impairment

A particularly high risk to safety exists when persons are functionally impaired, such as in Alzheimer's disease. Cognitively impaired individuals may not understand the significance of symptoms, may lack the capability to avoid hazards, and may be unable to

communicate needs and problems to others. Examples of specific impairments that could heighten safety risks include significant memory deficits, disorientation, dementia, delirium, depression, deafness, low vision, aphasia, and paralysis.

When such conditions exist, an assessment should be made to determine how activities of daily living (e.g., food preparation, telephone use, medication administration, laundry, and housekeeping) are affected. Interventions are then planned to address specific problems and can include:

- referring the individual to occupational therapists, audiologists, ophthalmologists, psychiatrists, and other specialists for evaluation of the existing condition and prescription of appropriate treatment
- providing assistive devices and mobility aids and instruction in their use
- helping the person to prepare and label drugs for unit dose administration; develop a triggering and recording system for drug administration
- arranging for telephone reassurance, home health aid, home-delivered meals, housekeeper, emergency alarm system, or other community resources to assist the impaired person
- instructing and supporting family caregivers as they supervise and care for the impaired individual
- modifying the individual's environment to reduce hazards and promote function

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. Explain how Maslow's theory of low-level needs having to be fulfilled before one can concentrate on the fulfillment of high-level needs relates to satisfaction from one's environment.
2. What lighting, color selection, and decorations would be most therapeutic for the following areas used by older persons?
 - bedroom
 - recreation room
 - dining room
3. List at least six hazards for older adults in the average bathroom.
4. What measures can be taken to humanize an institutional environment?
5. Describe the safety risks that could result from the following health problems: hypertension, arthritis, right-sided weakness, and Alzheimer's disease.
6. What changes could be made to the average home to make it user friendly and safe for older adults?
7. What content could be included in a program to educate older adults about actions they can take to avoid accidents and injuries?

Resources

AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety Senior Driver Website

<http://www.seniordrivers.org/home/>

Hartford Institute for Geriatric Nursing

Try This: Best Practices in Nursing Care to Older Adults Issue 8, Fall Risk Assessment: Hendrich II Fall Risk Model <http://www.hartfordign.org/resources/education/tryThis.html>

References

- Capezuit, E., Strumpf, N., Evans, L. K., Grisso, J. A., & Maslin, G. (1998). The relationship between physical restraint removal and falls and injuries among nursing home residents. *Journal of Gerontology*, *53A*, M47–M52.
- Carr, D. B. (2000). The older adult driver. *American Family Physician*, *50*(1), 141–150.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2007). Falls in nursing homes. National Center for Injury Prevention and Control, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Retrieved from <http://www.cdc.gov/ncipc/factsheets/nursing.htm>.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2004). Web-based Injury Statistics Query and Reporting System (WISQARS) [database online]. National Center for Injury Prevention and Control, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (producer). Retrieved August 1, 2007, from <http://www.cdc.gov/ncipc/wisqars>.
- Cheung, S. S. (2007). Neuropsychological determinants of exercise tolerance in the heat. *Progressive Brain Research*, *165*, 45–60.
- Insurance Institute for Highway Safety. (2006). Fatality facts, older people. Arlington, VA: Insurance Institute for Highway Safety. Retrieved August 1, 2007, from http://www.iihs.org/research/fatality_facts/olderpeople.html.
- National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, Department of Transportation. (2006). Traffic safety facts 2005: Older population. Washington, DC: National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, Department of Transportation. Retrieved August 1, 2007, from <http://www.nrd.nhtsa.dot.gov/pdf/nrd-30/NCSA/TSF2005/810622.pdf>.
- Squillace, M. R., Remsburg, R. E., Bercovitz, A., Rosenoff, E., & Branden, L. (2007). An Introduction to the National Nursing Assistant Survey. Washington, DC: National Center for Health Statistics. *Vital Health Statistics*, *1*(44), 1–54.
- Sterling, D. A., O'Connor, J. A., & Bonadies, J. (2001). Geriatric falls: Injury severity is high and disproportionate to mechanism. *Journal of Trauma-Injury, Infection and Critical Care*, *50*(1), 116–119.
- Strumpf, N., Evans, L., & Bourbonniere, M. (2001). Restraints. In M. Mezey (Ed.), *The encyclopedia of elder care* (pp. 567–569). New York: Springer.

Recommended Readings

- American Geriatrics Association. Position Paper on Restraints. Retrieved April 1, 2004, from <http://www.americangeriatrics.org/positionpapers/restrain.html>.

- Aud, M. A. (2006). Interior design specialist—Adding another member to the interdisciplinary team. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 32(9), 4.
- Brown, L. H. (2006). Senior drivers: Risks, interventions, and safety. *Nurse Practitioner*, 31(3), 38–40, 43–44, 49.
- Dunn, K. S. (2001). The effect of physical restraints on fall rates in older adults who are institutionalized. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 27(10), 40–48.
- Fick, D., & Foreman, M. (2000). Consequences of not recognizing delirium superimposed on dementia in hospitalized elderly individuals. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 26(1), 30–35.
- Harrison, B., Booth, D., & Algase, D. (2001). Studying fall risk factors among nursing home residents who fell. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 27(10), 26–34.
- Hausdorff, J. M., Rios, D. A., & Edelber, H. K. (2001). Gait variability and fall risk in community-living older adults: A 1-year prospective study. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*, 82(8), 1050–1056.
- Honeycutt, P. H. (2002). Factors contributing to falls in elderly men living in the community. *Geriatric Nursing*, 23(5), 250–257.
- Iwanczyk, L., Weintraub, N. T., & Rubenstein, L. Z. (2006). Orthostatic hypotension in the nursing home setting. *Journal of the American Medical Directors Association*, 7(3), 163–167.
- Lord, S. R., & Dayhew, J. (2001). Visual risk factors for falls in older people. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*, 49, 508–515.
- Luulinen, H., et al. [MSOffice8] (1995). Incidence of injury-causing falls among older adults by place of residence: A population-based study. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*, 43(8), 871–876.
- Lyons, S. S. (2005). Evidence-based protocol: Fall prevention for older adults. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 31(11), 9–14.
- Palmisano-Mills, C. (2007). Common problems in hospitalized older adults. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 33(1), 48–54.
- Patrick, L., & Blodgett, A. (2001). Selecting patients for falls-prevention protocols: An evidence-based approach on a geriatric rehabilitation unit. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 27(10), 22–25.
- Savage, T., & Matheis-Kraft, C. (2001). Fall occurrence in a geriatric psychiatry setting before and after a fall prevention program. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 27(10), 49–53.
- Stevens, M., Holman, C. D., & Bennett, N. (2001). Preventing falls in older people: Impact of an intervention to reduce environmental hazards in the home. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*, 49(11), 1442–1447.
- Stevens, M., Holman, C. D., & Bennett, N. (2001). Preventing falls in older people: Outcome evaluation of a randomized controlled trial. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*, 49(11), 1448–1455.
- Sullivan-Marx, E. M. (2002). Achieving restraint-free care of acutely confused older adults. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 27(4), 56–61.
- Talerico, K. A., & Capezuti, E. (2001). Myths and facts about side rails. *American Journal of Nursing*, 101(7), 43–48.
- Voukelatos, A., Cumming, R. G., Lord, S. R., & Rissel, C. (2007). A randomized, controlled trial of tai chi for the prevention of falls: The central Sydney tai chi trial. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*, 55(8), 1185–1191.
- Wiens, C. A., Coleba, T., Jones, C. A., & Feeney, D. F. (2006). The Falls Risk Awareness Questionnaire: Development and validation for use with older adults. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 32(8), 43–50.

Safe Medication Use

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Effects of Aging on Medication Use

- Polypharmacy and Interactions
- Altered Pharmacokinetics
- Altered Pharmacodynamics
- Increased Risk of Adverse Reactions

Promoting the Safe Use of Drugs

- Avoiding Potentially Inappropriate Drugs: Beers' Criteria
- Reviewing Necessity and Effectiveness of Prescribed Drugs
- Promoting Safe and Effective Administration
- Providing Patient Teaching

Alternatives to Drugs

Review of Selected Drugs

- Analgesics
- Antacids
- Antianxiety Drugs (Anxiolytics)
- Antibiotics
- Anticoagulants
- Anticonvulsants
- Antidepressants
- Antidiabetic Drugs
- Antihypertensive Drugs
- Anti-inflammatory Drugs, Nonsteroidal (NSAIDs)
- Antipsychotics
- Cholesterol-lowering Drugs
- Cognitive Enhancing Drugs
- Digoxin
- Diuretics
- Laxatives
- Sedatives/Hypnotics

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 Describe the unique aspects of drug pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics in older people.
- 2 List measures to promote safe drug use.
- 3 Describe alternatives to medications.
- 4 Identify proper uses and risks associated with common drug groups used with older adults.

When caring for older adults, it is important for the nurse to understand special considerations for medication use in the older population. Drugs act differently in older adults than in younger adults and require careful dosage adjustment and monitoring. Older adults are also more likely than other populations to take more than one medication regularly, increasing the risk of interactions and adverse reactions. To minimize the risks associated with drug therapy and ensure that medications do not create more problems than they solve, close supervision and adherence to sound principles of safe drug use are essential in gerontological nursing.

Effects of Aging on Medication Use

Medication use in older adults presents special challenges because of the number of drugs commonly used, age-related changes that affect drug pharmacokinetics and pharmacotherapeutics, and an increased risk for adverse reactions (Fig. 18-1).

Polypharmacy and Interactions

The high prevalence of health conditions in the older population causes this group to use a large number and variety of medications. Drug use by older adults has been steadily increasing every year; a majority of older people use at least one drug regularly, with the more typical situation involving the use of several drugs daily (Skufca, 2007). Researchers have found that the number of drugs used by older persons increases with age (Kaufman et al., 2002; Gorard, 2006; Page & Ruscin, 2007). The most commonly used drugs by the older population include:

- cardiovascular agents
- antihypertensives
- analgesics
- antiarthritic agents
- sedatives
- tranquilizers
- laxatives
- antacids

The drugs on this list can cause adverse effects (e.g., confusion, dizziness, falls, fluid and electrolyte imbalances) that threaten older people's quality of life. Furthermore, when taken together, some of these drugs can interact and cause serious adverse effects (Table 18-1).

Taking more than one drug also increases the risk of drug–food interactions (Table 18-2). With the increasing use of herbal remedies, drug–herb



FIGURE 18-1 • The high prevalence of drugs consumed by older people and the complexity of drug dynamics in old age require gerontological nurses to evaluate regularly the continued need, appropriateness of dosage, and intended and adverse effects of every drug given to older individuals.

interactions and adverse effects of herbs may also occur (Table 18-3). When caring for older adults, particularly those taking more than one medication, it is important for nurses to monitor for signs of possible interactions.

POINT TO PONDER

How often do you rely on medications to curb appetite, promote sleep, stimulate bowel elimination, or manage a headache or some other symptom? Why do you choose to use medications rather than address the underlying cause or use a natural means to correct the problem? How can you change this? ●

Altered Pharmacokinetics

Pharmacokinetics refers to the absorption, distribution, metabolism, and excretion of drugs.

TABLE 18-1 Interactions Among Popular Drug Groups

	Antacids	Antianxiety	Anticoagulants	Antidiabetics	Antidepressants	Antihypertensives	Antiinflammatory	Antipsychotics	Digitalis preparations	Laxatives	Salicylates	Sedatives	Thiazide diuretics	Tricyclic antidepressants
Antacids			↓					↓	↓					
Antianxiety			↑			↑								
Anticoagulants (oral)				↑										
Antidiabetics														
Antidepressants		↑	↑			↓								
Antihypertensives												↑		
Anti-inflammatory			↑	↑									↑	
Antipsychotics												↑		
Digitalis preparations														
Laxatives									↓					
Salicylates														
Sedatives			↑											
Thiazide diuretics				↓	↑						↓			
Tricyclic antidepressants		↑	↑			↓						↑		

Arrows indicate the effect of drugs listed in the left-hand column on those listed across the top.

Absorption

Generally, older people have fewer problems in the area of drug absorption than with distribution, metabolism, and excretion of drugs. However, a variety of factors can alter drug absorption, such as:

- *Age-related changes.* Decreased intracellular fluid, increased gastric pH, decreased gastric blood flow and motility, reduced cardiac output and circulation, and slower metabolism can slow drug absorption.
- *Route of administration.* Drugs given intramuscularly, subcutaneously, orally, or rectally are not absorbed as efficiently as drugs that are inhaled, applied topically, or instilled intravenously.
- *Concentration and solubility of drug.* Drugs that are highly soluble (e.g., aqueous solutions) and in higher concentrations are absorbed with greater speed than less soluble and concentrated drugs.
- *Diseases and symptoms.* Conditions such as diabetes mellitus and hypokalemia can increase the absorption of drugs, whereas pain and mucosal edema will slow absorption.

Although nurses can do little to improve many of the underlying factors responsible for altered drug absorption, they can use measures to maximize the absorption of drugs. Exercise stimulates

circulation and aids in absorption. Properly used heat and massage likewise increase blood flow at the absorption site. Preventing fluid volume deficit, hypothermia, and hypotension is beneficial in facilitating absorption. Preparations that neutralize gastric secretions should be avoided if a low gastric pH is required for drug absorption. The nurse should monitor for interactions discussed previously that may affect drug absorption. Consideration should also be given to using the most effective administration route for the drug.

Distribution

Although it is difficult to predict with certainty how drug distribution will differ among older adults, changes in circulation, membrane permeability, body temperature, and tissue structure can modify this process. For example, adipose tissue increases compared to lean body mass in older persons, especially in women; therefore, drugs stored in adipose tissue (i.e., lipid-soluble drugs) will have increased tissue concentrations, decreased plasma concentrations, and a longer duration in the body. Decreased cardiac output can raise the plasma levels of drugs while reducing their deposition in reservoirs; this is particularly apparent with water-soluble drugs. Reduced serum albumin levels

TABLE 18-2 Examples of Food and Drug Interactions

Drug	Potential Interactions
Acetaminophen	Accumulation to toxic level if more than 500 mg vitamin C supplements are ingested daily
Allopurinol	Impairs iron absorption, leading to iron deficiency anemia Combined with alcohol or simple carbohydrates can increase blood uric acid level
Aluminum antacids	Depletes phosphate and calcium Decreases absorption of vitamins A, C, and D, and magnesium, thiamine, folacin, and iron
Antihistamines	Ingestion of large amounts of alkaline foods (e.g., milk, cream, almonds, alcohol) can prolong action
Aspirin	Can cause iron deficiency anemia as a result of gastrointestinal bleeding Causes vitamin C deficiency (12+ aspirin tablets daily) Causes thiamine deficiency
Calcium carbonate antacids	Cause deficiencies of phosphate, folacin, iron, thiamine
Calcium supplements	Combined with large doses of vitamin D can cause hypercalcemia Absorption decreased by foods rich in oxalate (e.g., spinach, rhubarb, celery, peanuts), phytic acid (e.g., oatmeal and other grain cereals), phosphorous (chocolate, dried beans, dried fruit, peanut butter)
Chlorpromazine HCl	Large amounts of alkaline foods can delay excretion Can increase blood cholesterol
Cimetidine	Reduces iron absorption
Clonidine HCl	Effectiveness reduced by tyramine-rich foods (e.g., chicken and beef livers, bananas, sour cream, meat tenderizers, salami, yeast, chocolate) Can cause sodium and fluid retention
Colchicine	Effectiveness decreased by caffeine Some herbal teas contain phenylbutazone, which can increase blood uric acid and decrease effectiveness of antigout drugs
Dicumarol	Effectiveness reduced by foods rich in vitamin K (e.g., cabbage, broccoli, asparagus, spinach, turnip greens)
Digitalis	Can cause deficiencies of thiamine, magnesium, and zinc Calcium supplements increase risk of toxicity
Estrogen	Hastens breakdown of vitamin C
Ferrous supplements	Absorption decreased by antacids, increased by vitamin C
Furosemide	Increases excretion of calcium, magnesium, potassium, and zinc
Hydralazine	Can cause vitamin B ₆ deficiency
Levodopa	Effectiveness reduced by high-protein diet Can cause deficiencies of potassium, folacin, and vitamins B ₆ and B ₁₂
Magnesium antacids	Can deplete phosphate and calcium
Magnesium-based laxatives	30 ml contains nearly four times the average daily intake of magnesium; toxicity can result
Mineral oil	Decrease absorption of vitamins A, D, and K
Phenobarbital	Increases breakdown of vitamins D and K Impairs absorption of vitamins B ₆ and B ₁₂ and folic acid
Phenylbutazone	Inhibits absorption of iodine
Phenytoin	Increases breakdown of vitamins D and K Reduces absorption of folacin
Potassium supplements	Absorption decreased by dairy products Impairs absorption of vitamin B ₁₂
Probenecid	Effectiveness decreased by coffee, tea, or cola
Spirinolactone	Increases excretion of calcium Decreases excretion of potassium leading to potassium toxicity
Theophylline	Effectiveness reduced by high-carbohydrate diet
Thiazides	Increases excretion of calcium, potassium, magnesium, zinc Can decrease blood glucose level
Thioridazine	Excretion delayed by high-alkaline diet
Warfarin	Effectiveness reduced by large amounts of vitamin K in diet

(From Eliopoulos, C. [1990]. Safe drug use in the elderly. In Eliopoulos, C. [Ed.]. *Caring for the elderly in diverse care settings*. Philadelphia: J.B. Lippincott.)

TABLE 18-3 Potential Adverse Effects and Drug Interactions of Selected Herbs

Herb	Potential Adverse Effects and Drug Interactions
Aloe	Allergic dermatitis; increases effects of cardiac glycosides; increases potassium loss when taken with corticosteroids or thiazide diuretics
Angelica	Rash when the person is exposed to sunlight
Balm	Interferes with thyroid-stimulating hormone
Barberry	Drastic reductions in blood pressure, heart rate, and respirations with large doses
Bayberry	Edema, elevation of blood pressure; contraindicated in persons with history of cancer
Black cohosh	Depression of cardiac function leading to bradycardia and hypotension; estrogen-like properties can cause abnormal coagulation and liver dysfunction
Bloodroot	Bradycardia, arrhythmia, impaired vision, thirst
Cascara sagrada	Severe intestinal cramps
Celery	Hypokalemia with long-term use
Chaparral	Liver damage
Coltsfoot	Liver toxicity, fever
Comfrey	Liver toxicity
Dandelion	Hypokalemia with long-term use
Ephedra (ma huang)	Elevation of blood pressure and heart rate, insomnia, dizziness, anxiety
Feverfew	Interference with coagulation; when taken orally can cause mouth ulcers, loss of taste sensation, swelling of oral cavity; increases anticoagulation effects of aspirin and warfarin sodium
Garlic	Anticoagulation effect, hypotension, increases effects of antidiabetic agents
Ginkgo biloba	Anticoagulation effect, irritability, restlessness, insomnia, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea; increases effects of anticoagulants
Ginseng	Elevation of blood pressure, insomnia
Goldenseal	Vasoconstriction
Hawthorne	Dramatic reductions in blood pressure
Hops	Drowsiness, increased effects of sedatives and tranquilizers
Licorice	Edema, hypertension, hypokalemia, and hypernatremia with long-term use
Mistletoe	Bradycardia; potentially fatal
Parsley	Hypokalemia with long-term use
Red clover	Estrogen-like effects, contraindicated in persons with estrogen-dependent cancer
Rhubarb	Severe abdominal cramps, diarrhea
Senna	Can increase effects of digoxin
St. John's wort	Acts as monoamine oxidase inhibitor; hypertension, photosensitivity, nausea, vomiting

can be problematic if several protein-bound drugs are consumed and compete for the same protein molecules; the unbound drug concentrations increase and the effectiveness of the drugs will be threatened. Highly protein-bound drugs that may compete at protein-binding sites and displace each other include acetazolamide, amitriptyline, cefazolin, chlorthalidone, chlorpromazine, cloxacillin, digitoxin, furosemide, hydralazine, nortriptyline, phenylbutazone, phenytoin, propranolol, rifampin, salicylates, spironolactone, sulfisoxazole, and warfarin. When monitoring the blood levels of medications, it is also important to evaluate the serum albumin level. For instance, raising the dosage of phenytoin because the blood level is low can lead to toxicity if the serum albumin also is low.



KEY CONCEPT

When several are taken concurrently, protein-bound drugs may not achieve desired results because of ineffective binding to reduced protein molecules.

Conditions such as dehydration and hypoalbuminemia decrease drug distribution and result in higher drug levels in the plasma. When these conditions exist, lower dosage levels may be necessary.

Metabolism, Detoxification, and Excretion

Conditions such as dehydration, hyperthermia, immobility, and liver disease can decrease the metabolism of drugs. As a consequence, drugs can accumulate to toxic levels and cause serious adverse

reactions. Careful monitoring is essential. Along this line, the extended biological half-life of many of the drugs consumed by older adults warrants close evaluation of drug clearance. Estimated creatinine clearance must be calculated based on the age, weight, and serum creatinine level of the individual because serum creatinine levels alone may not reflect a reduced creatinine clearance level.

In advanced age, there may be a reduced secretion of some enzymes, which interferes with the metabolism of drugs that require enzymatic activity. Most important, the detoxification and conjugation of drugs may be significantly reduced, so that the drug stays in the bloodstream longer. Some evidence indicates larger drug concentrations at administration sites in older persons.

The renal system is primarily responsible for the body's excretory functions, and among its activities is the excretion of drugs. Drugs follow a path through the kidneys similar to that of most constituents of urine. After systemic circulation, the drug filters through the walls of glomerular capillaries into the Bowman capsule. The drug continues down the tubule, where substances beneficial to the body will be reabsorbed into the bloodstream through proximal convoluted tubules and where waste substances excreted through the urine flow into the pelvis of the kidney. Capillaries surrounding the tubules reabsorb the filtered blood and join to form the renal vein. It is estimated that to promote this filtration process almost 10 times more blood circulates through the kidneys than through similarly sized body organs. The reduced efficiency of body organs with advanced age affects the kidneys as well, complicating drug excretion in older adults. Nephron units are decreased in number, and many of the remaining ones can be nonfunctional in older individuals. The glomerular filtration rate and tubular reabsorption are reduced. Decreasing cardiac function contributes to the almost 50% reduction in blood flow to the kidneys. The implications of reduced kidney efficiency are important. Drugs are not as quickly filtered from the bloodstream and are present in the body longer. The biological half-life, or the time necessary for half of the drug to be excreted, can increase as much as 40% and increase the risk for adverse drug reactions. Drugs that have a likelihood of accumulating because of an increased biological half-life include antibiotics, barbiturates, cimetidine, digoxin, and salicylate.

KEY CONCEPT

The extended biological half-life of drugs in older adults increases the risk of adverse reactions.

The liver also has many important functions that influence drug detoxification and excretion. Carbohydrate metabolism in the liver converts glucose into glycogen and releases it into the bloodstream when needed. Protein metabolism in the parenchymal cells of the liver is responsible for the loss of the amine groups from amino acids, which aid in the formation of new plasma proteins, such as prothrombin and fibrinogen, as well as in the conversion of some poisonous nitrogenous by-products into nontoxic substances such as vitamin B12. Also important is the liver's formation of bile, which breaks down fats through enzymatic action and removes substances such as bilirubin from the blood. The liver decreases in size and function with age, and hepatic blood flow declines by 45% between the ages of 25 and 65 years. This could affect the metabolism of some drugs, such as antibiotics, cimetidine, chlordiazepoxide, digoxin, lithium, meperidine, nortriptyline, and quinidine.

Altered Pharmacodynamics

Pharmacodynamics refers to the biologic and therapeutic effects of drugs at the site of action or on the target organ. Information on pharmacodynamics in the older population has been limited but is growing as increased research is done in this area. At this point, some of the known differences in older adults' responses to drugs include increased myocardial sensitivity to anesthetics and increased central nervous system receptor sensitivity to narcotics, alcohol, and bromides.

Increased Risk of Adverse Reactions

The risk of adverse reactions to drugs is so high in older people that some geropharmacologists suggest that any symptom in an older adult be suspected as being related to a drug until proved otherwise (Patel, 2003). The following are some general factors to remember in regard to adverse reactions:

- The signs and symptoms of an adverse reaction to a given drug may differ in older persons.
- A prolonged time may be required for an adverse reaction to become apparent in older adults.
- An adverse reaction to a drug may be demonstrated even after the drug has been discontinued.
- Adverse reactions can develop suddenly, even with a drug that has been used over a long period of time without problems.

KEY CONCEPT

The risk of adverse drug reactions is high in older adults because of age-related differences in pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics.

Varying degrees of mental dysfunction often are early symptoms of adverse reactions to commonly prescribed medications for older adults, such as codeine, digitalis, methyldopa, phenobarbital, L-dopa, diazepam (Valium), and various diuretics. Any medication that can promote hypoglycemia, acidosis, fluid and electrolyte imbalances, temperature elevations, increased intracranial pressure, and reduced cerebral circulation also can produce mental disturbances. Even the most subtle changes in mental status could be linked to a medication and should be reviewed with a physician. Older adults easily may become victims of drug-induced cognitive dysfunction. Unfortunately, mental and behavioral dysfunction in older adults is sometimes treated symptomatically (i.e., with medications but without full exploration of the etiology). This approach will not correct a drug-related problem and can predispose the individual to additional complications from the new drug.



KEY CONCEPT

Nurses should ensure that drug-induced cognitive and behavioral problems are not treated with additional drugs.

Promoting the Safe Use of Drugs

Avoiding Potentially Inappropriate Drugs: Beers' Criteria

In 1991, Dr. Mark H. Beers et al. published a paper that identified drugs that carry high risks for older adults (Beers et al., 1991). This work was developed further to provide criteria for potentially inappropriate medication use in older adults (Beers, 1997; Fick et al., 2003). These criteria included drugs that were inappropriate to use in general (Box 18-1) and drugs that were inappropriate to use in the

BOX 18-1

Inappropriate Drugs to Use in Older Adults

The following drugs were identified as having a high risk for adverse reactions in older adults:

- Indomethacin
- Pentazocine
- Muscle relaxants and antispasmodics: methocarbamol, carisoprodol, chlorzoxazone, metaxalone, cyclobenzaprine, and oxybutynin
- Amitriptyline, chlordiazepoxide-amitriptyline, and perphenazine-amitriptyline
- Doxepin
- Meprobamate
- Short-acting benzodiazepines in specific doses that are greater than: 3 mg for lorazepam, 60 mg for oxazepam, 2 mg for alprazolam, 15 mg for temazepam, and 0.25 mg for triazolam
- Long-acting benzodiazepines: chlordiazepoxide, chlordiazepoxide-amitriptyline, clidinium-chlordiazepoxide, diazepam, quazepam, halazepam, and clorazepate
- Disopyramide
- Methyldopa and methyldopa-hydrochlorothiazide
- Gastrointestinal antispasmodic drugs: dicyclomine, hyoscyamine, propantheline, belladonna alkaloids, and clidinium-chlordiazepoxide
- Anticholinergics and antihistamines: chlorpheniramine, diphenhydramine, hydroxyzine, cyproheptadine, promethazine, tripeleminamine, dexchlorpheniramine
- Diphenhydramine
- All barbiturates
- Meperidine
- Ticlopidine
- Ketorolac
- Amphetamines and anorexic agents
- Long-term use of full-dosage, longer half-life non-COX-selective NSAIDs
- Fluoxetine (daily doses)
- Long-term use of stimulant laxatives
- Mineral oil
- Amiodarone
- Orphenadrine
- Guanethidine
- Guanadrel
- Nitrofurantoin
- Methyltestosterone
- Thioridazine
- Mesoridazine
- Short-acting nifedipine
- Desiccated thyroid

Source: Fick, D. M., Cooper, J. W., Wade, W. E., Waller, J. L., Maclean, J. R., & Beers, M. H. (2003). Table 1: Criteria for potentially inappropriate medication use in older adults: Independent of diagnoses or conditions. Updating the Beers criteria for potentially inappropriate medication use in older adults. Results of a U.S. consensus panel of experts. Table 1 *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 163(22), 2716–2724.

TABLE 18-4 Inappropriate Drugs to Use in Older Adults in the Presence of Specific Diagnoses or Condition**A high potential for adverse reactions exists in patients with:**

Anorexia, malnutrition
 Arrhythmias
 Bladder flow obstructions

Blood-clotting disorders or who are using anticoagulants
 Cognitive impairment

COPD
 Depression
 Gastric or duodenal ulcers
 Heart failure
 Hypertension
 Insomnia

Parkinson disease
 Seizures
 Seizure disorder
 Stress incontinence

Syncope, falls

When taken when the patient is taking:

CNS stimulants
 Tricyclic antidepressants
 Anticholinergics and antihistamines, GI antispasmodics, muscle relaxants, oxybutynin, flavoxate, anticholinergics, antidepressants, decongestants, and tolterodine
 Aspirin, NSAIDs, dipyridamole, ticlopidine, clopidogrel

Barbiturates, anticholinergics, antispasmodics, muscle relaxants, CNS stimulants
 Long-acting benzodiazepines, beta-blockers
 Benzodiazepines (long-term use), sympatholytic agents
 NSAIDs and aspirin

Disopyramide and high sodium-containing drugs
 Phenylpropanolamine HCl
 Decongestants, theophylline, methylphenidate, MAO inhibitors, amphetamines

Metoclopramide, conventional antipsychotics, tacrine
 Clozapine, chlorpromazine, thioridazine, thiothixene
 Bupropion

Alpha-blockers, anticholinergics, tricyclic antidepressants, long-acting benzodiazepines
 Short to intermediate-acting benzodiazepines, tricyclic antidepressants

Source: Fick, D. M., Cooper, J. W., Wade, W. E., Waller, J. L., Maclean, J. R., & Beers, M. H. (2003). Table 2: Criteria for potentially inappropriate medication use in older adults: Considering diagnoses or conditions. Updating the Beers criteria for potentially inappropriate medication use in older adults. Results of a U.S. consensus panel of experts. Table 1 *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 163(22), 2716–2724.

presence of specific conditions (Table 18-4). These criteria have been widely accepted in geriatric care circles as a means to reduce both adverse drug effects and drugs costs. In fact, in 1999, the Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services (CMS) adopted the criteria for use in nursing home surveys.

Reviewing Necessity and Effectiveness of Prescribed Drugs

The scope of drug use and significant adverse reactions that can result necessitate that gerontological nurses ensure drugs are used selectively and cautiously. Nurses should review all prescription and nonprescription medications used by patients and ask themselves these questions:

- *Why is the drug ordered?* Consider whether the drug is really needed. Perhaps warm milk and a back rub could eliminate the need for the sedative; maybe the patient had a bowel movement

this morning and now does not need the laxative. The medication may be used because it has been prescribed for years and no one has considered its discontinuation.

- *Is the smallest possible dosage ordered?* Older adults usually require lower dosages of most medications because of the delayed time for excretion of the substance. Larger dosages increase the risk of adverse reactions.
- *Is the patient allergic to the drug?* Sometimes the physician may overlook a known allergy, or perhaps the patient neglected to share an allergy problem with the physician. The nurse may be aware of a patient's sensitivities to certain drugs. Consideration must also be given to new signs that could indicate a reaction to a drug that has been used for a long period without trouble.
- *Can this drug interact with other drugs, herbs, or nutritional supplements that are being used?* It is useful to review resource material to identify

potential interactions—they are too numerous for anyone to commit to memory!

- *Are there any special instructions accompanying the drug's administration?* Some drugs should be given on an empty stomach, others with a meal. Certain times of the day may be better for drugs to be given than others.
- *Is the most effective route of administration being used?* A person who cannot swallow a large tablet may do better with a liquid form. Suppositories that are expelled because of ineffective melting or oral drugs that are vomited obviously will not have the therapeutic effect of the drug given in a different manner.

Nurses must go through a mental checklist of these questions when administering medications and teach older persons who are responsible for their own medication administration, as well as their caregivers, to do the same.



KEY CONCEPT

Regular review of a drug's ongoing necessity and effectiveness is essential.

Promoting Safe and Effective Administration

The most common way to administer drugs is orally. Oral medications in the form of tablets, capsules, liquids, powders, elixirs, spirits, emulsions, mixtures, and magmas are used either for their direct action on the mucous membrane of the digestive tract (e.g., antacids) or for their systemic effects (e.g., antibiotics and tranquilizers). Although oral administration is simple, certain problems can interfere with the process. Dry mucous membranes of the oral cavity, common in older individuals, can prevent capsules and tablets from being swallowed. If they are then expelled from the mouth, there is no therapeutic value; if they dissolve in the mouth, they can irritate the mucous membrane. Proper oral hygiene, ample fluids for assistance with swallowing and mobility, proper positioning, and examining the oral cavity after administration will ensure that the patient receives the full benefit of the medicine during its travel through the gastrointestinal system. Some older people may not even be aware that a tablet is stuck to the roof of their dentures or under their tongue.



KEY CONCEPT

To ensure that oral medications achieve full benefit, encourage good oral hygiene, ample fluids, and proper positioning to facilitate swallowing.

Because enteric-coated and sustained-release tablets should not be crushed, the nurse should consult with a physician for an alternative form of the drug if a tablet is too large to be swallowed. As a rule, capsules are not to be broken open and mixed. Medications are put into capsule form so that unpleasant tastes will be masked or the coating will dissolve when it comes into contact with specific gastrointestinal secretions. Some vitamin, mineral, and electrolyte preparations are bitter, and even more so for older persons, whose taste buds for sweetness are lost long before those for sourness and bitterness. Combining the medication with foods and drinks such as applesauce and juices can make them more palatable and prevent gastric irritation, although there may be a problem if the full amount of medicated food is not ingested. Individuals should be informed that the food or drink they are ingesting contains a medication. Oral hygiene after the administration of oral drugs prevents an unpleasant aftertaste.

Drugs prescribed in suppository form for local or systemic action are inserted into various body cavities and act by melting from body heat or dissolving in body fluids. Because circulation to the lower bowel and vagina is decreased and the body temperature is lower in many older individuals, a prolonged period may be required for the suppository to melt. If no alternative route can be used and the suppository form must be given, a special effort must be made to ensure that the suppository is not expelled.



KEY CONCEPT

Lower body temperature and decreased circulation to the lower bowel and vagina can prolong the time required for suppositories to melt.

Intramuscular and subcutaneous administration of drugs is necessary when immediate results are sought or when other routes cannot be used, either because of the nature of the drug or the status of the individual. The upper, outer quadrant of the buttocks is the best site for intramuscular injections. Frequently, the older person will bleed or ooze after the injection because of decreased tissue elasticity; a small pressure bandage may be helpful. Alternating the injection site will help to reduce discomfort. Medication should not be injected into an immobile limb because the inactivity of the limb will reduce the rate of absorption. For a person receiving frequent injections, the nurse should check for signs of infection at the injection site; reduced subcutaneous sensation in older persons or absence of sensation, as that experienced with a stroke, may prevent the person

from being aware of a complication at the injection site.

Occasionally, intravenous administration of drugs is necessary. In addition to observing the effects of the medication, the nurse needs to be alert to the amount of fluid in which the drug is administered. Declining cardiac and renal function make older people more susceptible not only to dehydration but also to overhydration. The nurse must closely monitor for signs of circulatory overload, including elevated blood pressure, increased respirations, coughing, shortness of breath, and symptoms associated with pulmonary edema. Intake and output balance, body weight, and specific gravity are useful to monitor. Of course, the nurse should also monitor older patients for complications associated with intravenous therapy in any age group, for example, infiltration, air embolism, thrombophlebitis, and pyrogenic reactions. Decreased sensation may mask any of these potential complications, emphasizing the necessity for close nursing observation.



KEY CONCEPT

Older adults are at risk for circulatory overload during intravenous drug therapy; close monitoring is essential.

Providing Patient Teaching

Because so many older people are responsible for self-medication, nurses should promote self-care capacity in this area. The nurse should assess a patient's risk for medication errors (Box 18-2) and plan interventions to minimize those risks. A detailed description, both verbal and written, should be given to older people and their caregivers, outlining the drug's name, dosage schedule, route of administration, action, special precautions, incompatible foods or drugs, and adverse reactions (Fig. 18-2). A color-coded dosage schedule can assist persons who have visual deficits or who are illiterate. Medication labels with large print and caps



FIGURE 18-2 • The nurse teaches the older adult about his medications to promote safe self-care.

that can be easily removed by weak or arthritic hands should be provided. During every patient–nurse visit, the nurse should review the patient's medication schedule and new symptoms. A variety of potential medication errors can be prevented or corrected by close monitoring. Some of the classic self-medication errors include incorrect dosage, noncompliance arising from misunderstanding, discontinuation or unnecessary continuation of drugs without medical advice, and the use of medications prescribed for previous illnesses. Box 18-3 describes guidelines to use in teaching older adults about safe drug use.

Alternatives to Drugs

Older adults have many health conditions for which drugs can prove helpful. On the other hand, drugs can produce serious adverse effects that can result in greater threats to older persons than their primary health conditions. It is crucial that drugs be used cautiously and that the benefits and risks of drugs be weighed to ensure they are resulting in more good than harm.

Sometimes lifestyle changes can improve conditions and eliminate the need for medications. These

BOX 18-2 Risk Factors for Medication Errors

- Use of multiple medications
- Cognitive impairment
- Visual deficits
- Hearing deficits
- Arthritic or weak hands
- History of noncompliance with medical care
- Lack of knowledge regarding medications
- Limited finances
- Illiteracy
- Lack of support system
- History of inappropriate self-medication
- Presence of expired or borrowed medications in home

BOX 18-3 Tips for Safe Drug Use: Teaching Tool

- Keep a current list of all of the following that you use:
 - prescription drugs
 - over-the-counter drugs
 - vitamins, minerals, and other nutritional supplements
 - herbal and homeopathic remedies
 - and show this to your health care providers
- For each drug, herb, homeopathic remedy, or nutritional supplement that you use, know (and, if possible, have this information written down) the: dosage
 - administration schedule
 - administration instructions (take on full or empty stomach, take only if symptom is present, discontinue after x days)
 - purpose
 - usual side effects
 - adverse effects that you should bring to the attention of your health care provider
 - precautions (when you should not take it, interactions with food, other drugs or substances)
 - storage instructions
 - where purchased/obtained
- Learn as much as you can about the drugs you are taking by reading the literature that comes with the drug and consumer drug reference books that are available at your local library or bookstore.
- Recognize that your drug dosage may be different from someone else's dosage who is taking the same drug.
- Be aware that you can develop adverse effects to drugs that you have taken for years without problems. Review your symptoms with your health care provider.
- Try to reduce the drugs you are using. Discuss with your health care provider improvements in your symptoms or other changes that could cause a drug to no longer be needed.
- Periodically review your drug dosages with your health care provider to see if any changes in your body's function could lead to reduced dosages.
- Try to manage new symptoms naturally rather than with drugs.
- Do not take new drugs without consulting your health care provider.

can include diet modifications, regular exercise, effective stress management techniques, and regular schedules for sleep, rest, and elimination.

Alternative and complementary therapies provide new avenues for treating health conditions. These therapies have grown in acceptance and popularity among consumers and can offer effective and safe approaches to managing health conditions. Often, alternative therapies can replace the need for drugs or enable lower dosages of drugs to be used. It is crucial for nurses to be aware of the uses, limitations, precautions, and possible adverse reactions associated with alternative therapies so that they can help older adults be informed consumers.

**POINT TO PONDER**

How can you envision using alternative and complementary therapies as substitutes for or adjuncts to drug therapy in your practice? What obstacles could you face in attempting to integrate these therapies into your practice and what could you do to overcome them? ●

Review of Selected Drugs

The remainder of this chapter reviews major drug groups and the main concerns related to their use in

the older population. This section is not intended to be an all-inclusive drug review; readers are advised to consult with current drug references and pharmacists for comprehensive information.

Analgesics

With the high prevalence of pain among older adults, analgesics are widely used. Of the analgesics, the nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID) aspirin is particularly popular because of its effectiveness and low cost. Older adults are especially sensitive to the effects of aspirin and more likely to experience side effects. Of the various side effects of aspirin, gastrointestinal bleeding is one of the most serious. When iron-deficiency anemia is detected in older persons, it is important to inquire about aspirin consumption, which could be related to gastrointestinal (GI) bleeding. Using buffered or enteric-coated aspirin preparations and avoiding taking aspirin on an empty stomach are helpful measures in preventing GI irritation and bleeding. Insomnia can occur when patients are using caffeine-containing aspirin products (e.g., Anacin, Butalbital Compound, Cope, Fiorinal, Stanback Powder), so it is important to inquire about the specific brand of aspirin when collecting drug information from a patient. Occasionally disturbances of the central nervous system develop when persons with decreased renal function use aspirin. Aspirin

suppositories can cause irritation of the rectum. Symptoms related to this include changes in mental status, dizziness, tinnitus, and deafness. When patients are on low-sodium diets, consideration must be given to their aspirin intake as a large intake of sodium salicylate (as could occur with patients taking aspirin regularly for arthritis) can contribute a significant amount of sodium to the diet.

Acetaminophen is another popular analgesic among older people with mild to moderate pain. Despite its relative lack of anti-inflammatory activity, it often is recommended for the initial treatment of osteoarthritis. The total daily dose should not exceed 4000 mg as high doses taken long-term can cause irreversible hepatic necrosis. Liver enzymes can be elevated with long-term use at lower doses. Acetaminophen doses should be adjusted for patients with altered liver function. As with aspirin and caffeine products, acetaminophen products that contain caffeine or pseudoephedrine hydrochloride (e.g., *Dristan Cold No Drowsiness Formula Maximum Strength Caplets*, *Excedrin Aspirin-Free Caplets*, *Sine-Off Maximum Strength No Drowsiness Formula Caplets*, *Sinutab*) can cause insomnia. Acetaminophen can cause false results with some blood glucose tests; inquiry should be made about the new use of the drug when new alterations in blood glucose levels are discovered. Patients with renal or liver disease have a high risk for serious side effects when using acetaminophen.

Short-acting opioids (codeine, fentanyl, meperidine, morphine, oxycodone) are used for mild to moderate pain and typically would be tried before long-acting opioids (fentanyl, morphine sustained release, oxycodone sustained release) are initiated. Opioids should be used with caution in older adults due to an increased risk for adverse effects, especially respiratory depression. Common adverse effects of these drugs include constipation, nausea, vomiting, sedation, lethargy, weakness, risk of falls, confusion, and dependency. Because older adults are more likely to suffer from prostatic hypertrophy or obstruction and age related renal function impairments, they are at risk at experiencing opioid-induced urinary retention. Meperidine is the least preferred opioid because it is excreted by the kidney; because older adults are more likely to have decreased renal function, the risk of toxic reactions to this drug is high.

Nursing guidelines for older adults taking analgesics include the following:

- Assess the symptom of pain carefully for its underlying cause. Improving or eliminating the cause of the pain may make the use of an analgesic unnecessary.
- Explore nonpharmacologic means to manage pain, such as relaxation exercises, massages, warm soaks, and diversional activities.
- If nonpharmacological means of pain control are unsuccessful, begin with the weakest type and dose of analgesic and gradually increase so that the patient's response can be evaluated.
- Administer analgesics regularly to maintain a constant blood level.
- Observe for signs of infection other than fever in patients who are taking aspirin or acetaminophen as the antipyretic effect of these drugs can mask fevers associated with infection.
- Because bleeding and delayed clotting times can result from long-term aspirin use, observe for signs of anemia, bleeding, and altered hemoglobin and prothrombin time.
- Note signs of salicylate toxicity, which include dizziness, vomiting, tinnitus, hearing loss, sweating, fever, confusion, burning in the mouth and throat, convulsions, and coma.
- Hypoglycemic reactions can occur when persons with diabetes combine aspirin with sulfonylureas.
- Use narcotics very carefully in older adults.
- If there has been a known or suspected overdose of any drug from this group, refer the patient for emergency help at once, even if no symptoms are present. Signs of poisoning may not appear for several days, although liver damage may be occurring.
- Be alert to interactions:
 - Aspirin can increase the effects of oral anticoagulants, oral antidiabetics, cortisone-like drugs, penicillins, and phenytoin
 - Aspirin can decrease the effects of probenecid, spironolactone, and sulfapyrazone
 - Aspirin's effects can be increased by large doses of vitamin C, and decreased by antacids, phenobarbital, propranolol, and reserpine
 - Acetaminophen's effects can be decreased by phenobarbital
 - Narcotic analgesics can increase the effects of antidepressants, sedatives, tranquilizers, and other analgesics
 - The effects of narcotics can be increased by antidepressants and phenothiazines; nitrates can increase the action of meperidine
 - Meperidine can decrease the effects of eye drops used for the treatment of glaucoma

Antacids

Decreased gastric acid secretion and increased intolerance to fatty and fried foods make indigestion a common occurrence in late life and antacids popular drugs. It is important, however, that nurses assess the reason for antacid use. What patients

believe to be indigestion actually could be gastric cancer or ulcer; also, cardiac disorders can present with atypical symptoms that resemble indigestion. Chronic antacid use could warrant the need for a diagnostic evaluation.

The availability and widespread use of antacids can cause some individuals to minimize the seriousness of these drugs. Antacids are drugs and they do interact with other medications. Sodium bicarbonate and magnesium-containing antacids can cause fluid and electrolyte imbalances by promoting diarrhea; sodium bicarbonate can cause hypernatremia and metabolic acidosis; calcium carbonate can lead to hypercalcemia; prolonged use of aluminum hydroxide can cause hyperphosphatemia; and long-term use of calcium-based antacids can lead to constipation and renal problems. Therefore it is important to use these drugs carefully and only when needed.

Nursing guidelines for older adults taking antacids include the following:

- During assessments, ask specifically about the use of antacids. Some patients may not consider over-the-counter antacids medications of concern and may omit them when reporting their medication histories.
- Ensure that patients who have used antacids frequently or over a long period of time have been evaluated for the underlying cause of their problem.
- Avoid administering other medications within 2 hours of administration of an antacid, unless otherwise ordered, to prevent the antacid from interfering with drug absorption.
- Monitor bowel elimination. Constipation can result from the use of aluminum hydroxide and calcium antacids; diarrhea can occur when magnesium hydroxide combinations are used.
- Advise patients who are on sodium-restricted diets to avoid using sodium bicarbonate as an antacid.
- Be alert to interactions:
 - Aluminum hydroxide can increase the effects of meperidine and pseudoephedrine
 - Magnesium hydroxide can increase the effects of dicumarol
 - Most antacids can decrease the effects of barbiturates, chlorpromazine, digoxin, iron preparations, isoniazid, oral anticoagulants, penicillin, phenytoin, phenylbutazone, salicylates, sulfonamides, tetracycline, and vitamins A and C.

Antianxiety Drugs (Anxiolytics)

Financial worries, deaths, crime, illness, and many of the other problems commonly faced by older adults give legitimate cause for anxiety. Financial

aid, counseling, self-care instruction, and other interventions can yield better long-term results in treating situational anxiety than a medication alone, and these measures may also prevent additional problems from arising as a result of adverse drug reactions. According to the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (American Psychiatric Association, 2000), antianxiety medications should only be used when there is generalized anxiety disorder, panic disorder, anxiety that accompanies another psychiatric disorder, sleep disorder, significant anxiety in response to a situational trigger, or delirium, dementia, and other cognitive disorders with associated behaviors that are well documented, persistent, not due to preventable or correctable reasons, and create such distress or dysfunction to make the person a risk to self or others.

When they are deemed necessary, benzodiazepines are common antianxiety drugs used in older persons. The central nervous system (CNS) depressants can include short-acting benzodiazepines (e.g., alprazolam, estazolam, lorazepam, oxazepam, temazepam) and long-acting benzodiazepines (e.g., chlordiazepoxide, clonazepam, diazepam, flurazepam, quazepam). Older adults are more likely to experience side effects, which could include dizziness, unsteady gait, drowsiness, slurred speech, and confusion. Although less common, other side effects could include abdominal or stomach cramps, increased heart rate, increased perspiration, sensitivity to light, seizures, and hallucinations. Some patients experience insomnia, irritability, and nervousness after they discontinue taking these drugs.

Meprobamate, diphenhydramine, and hydroxyzine are not advised for use with older adults. Patients who have used meprobamate for a long period of time can become physically and psychologically dependent on the drug and need to be weaned from it slowly.

Nursing guidelines for older adults taking anxiolytics include the following:

- Ensure that approaches other than medications have been attempted prior to having an antianxiety drug prescribed. Even if these measures were tried and ineffective previously, they should be tried again.
- Advise patients to change positions slowly and to avoid operating a car or machinery that requires mental alertness and fast responses.
- These drugs can be constipating, so instruct patients to incorporate foods in the diet that can promote bowel elimination. Monitor bowel elimination.
- Monitor nutritional status and weight to assure food intake is not jeopardized by possible lethargy or GI upset.

- Advise caution in grapefruit consumption; this fruit can increase the concentration of these drugs.
- Advise patients that several days of administration may be necessary before clinical effects from the medication are noted and that the effects could continue several days after the drug is discontinued.
- Avoid alcohol when these drugs are used and limit caffeine.
- Be alert to interactions:
 - Antianxiety drugs can increase the effects of anticonvulsants, antihypertensives, oral anticoagulants, and other CNS depressants.
 - The effects of antianxiety drugs can be increased by tricyclic antidepressants.
 - Diazepam can increase the effects of digoxin and phenytoin, leading to toxicity; diazepam can decrease the effects of levodopa.

Antibiotics

Age-related changes in the immune system and the high prevalence of disease processes cause older adults to be highly susceptible to infections. Antibiotics can play a role in treating these infections; however, excessive use of antibiotics has contributed to the emergence and spread of antibiotic-resistant bacteria. Penicillin resistance to *Streptococcus pneumoniae* has increased significantly, as has resistance to macrolides, doxycycline, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, and second- and third-generation cephalosporins. Antibiotic-resistant *S. pneumoniae* is of serious concern because this pathogen is the leading cause of community-acquired bacterial pneumonia, bacterial meningitis, and bacterial sinusitis. Oral thrush, colitis, and vaginitis are common secondary infections from antibiotic therapy that can cause discomfort and a new set of problems. Further, adverse reactions to antibiotics occur more frequently in older adults than in persons of other ages. With the serious consequences, antibiotic therapy must be used selectively and cautiously.

Any antibiotic can cause diarrhea, nausea, vomiting, anorexia, and allergic reactions. Parenteral vancomycin and aminoglycosides (e.g., amikacin, gentamicin, tobramycin) require close monitoring due to the risk of causing hearing loss and renal failure; renal function tests should be done regularly during the use of these medications. Fluoroquinolones (e.g., ciprofloxacin, moxifloxacin) increase the risk of hypo- and hyperglycemia in older adults and can cause prolonged QTc intervals; this group of antibiotics is not used in patients with known prolonged QTc intervals or who are receiving certain antiarrhythmic agents. Cephalosporins can cause false results with urine testing for glucose.

Nursing guidelines for older adults taking antibiotics include the following:

- Ensure that cultures are obtained when an infection is suspected or present; different antibiotics are effective for different infections.
- Administer antibiotics on a regular schedule to maintain a constant blood level. Reinforce to patients that they should not skip doses. Consider developing a medication chart or calendar to assist the older patient in remembering to administer the drugs.
- Observe for signs of superinfections, which can develop with long-term use of antibiotics.
- Be alert to interactions:
 - Penicillins are protein-bound drugs. When taken with other highly protein-bound drugs (e.g., aspirin, phenytoin, valproate, aripiprazole, buspirone, clozapine) the effects of penicillin can be reduced, and penicillin, in turn, can reduce the effects of other protein-bound drugs.
 - The effects of ampicillin and carbenicillin can be decreased by antacids, chloramphenicol, erythromycin, and tetracycline.
 - The effects of doxycycline can be decreased by aluminum-, calcium-, or magnesium-based laxatives, antacids, iron preparations, phenobarbital, and alcohol.
 - The effects of sulfisoxazole can be increased by aspirin, oxyphenbutazone, probenecid, sulfipyrazone, and para-aminosalicylic acid. Sulfisoxazole can increase the effects of alcohol, oral anticoagulants, oral antidiabetic agents, methotrexate, and phenytoin.
 - Probenecid delays the excretion of most antibiotics, risking that their levels will accumulate in the blood and increase the side effects.

Anticoagulants

Anticoagulants are effective in preventing both arterial and venous thrombosis and are often prescribed for patients with a history of thromboembolic disorders, heart attacks, strokes, and coronary disorders, as well as for prophylaxis for patients who have had hip surgery and mitral valve replacement. Although beneficial, anticoagulants have a narrow treatment range and carry a higher risk for bleeding in older persons.

Usually, heparin is prescribed for rapid anticoagulation, followed by warfarin (coumarin) for long-term use. Neither of these drugs dissolves existing clots, but rather, prevents the formation of new ones. Heparin is known to block the eosinophilic response to adrenocorticotrophic hormone and insulin. Osteoporosis and spontaneous fractures are a risk to persons who have used heparin for a long time.

Nursing guidelines for older adults taking anticoagulants include the following:

- Ensure that patients using anticoagulants have their prothrombin time (PT)/international normalization ratio (INR) monitored; discuss the recommended frequency with the physician.
- Age-adjusted dosages may be prescribed; consult with the physician.
- Administer anticoagulants at the same time each day to maintain a constant blood level.
- Observe for signs of bleeding; teach patients to observe for these signs.
- Educate patients about the need to be careful about diet. A large intake of vitamin K rich foods (asparagus, bacon, beef liver, cabbage, fish, cauliflower, green leafy vegetables) can reduce the effectiveness of anticoagulants. Mango and papaya can increase INR. High doses of vitamin E can increase bleeding risk.
- Many herbs interact with anticoagulants. Advise patients to refrain from taking herbal products until they have reviewed them with their health care provider.
- Keep vitamin K readily available as an antidote when patients are receiving anticoagulants.
- Advise patients to avoid using aspirin as it can interfere with platelet aggregation and cause bleeding. Three grams or more of salicylates—a level that could be reached by persons who use aspirin for arthritic pain—are sufficient to cause hemorrhage in older adults.
- Be alert to interactions:
 - Anticoagulants can increase the effects of oral hypoglycemic agents and phenytoin, and decrease the effects of cyclosporine and phenytoin.
 - The effects of anticoagulants can be increased by acetaminophen, allopurinol, alteplase, amprenavir, androgens, aspirin and some other NSAIDs, azithromycin, bismuth subsalicylate, some calcium channel blockers, capsaicin, broad spectrum antibiotics, chlorpromazine, colchicine, ethacrynic acid, mineral oil, phenylbutazone, phenytoin, probenecid, reserpine, thyroxine, tolbutamide, and tricyclic antidepressants.
 - The effects of anticoagulants can be decreased by antacids, antithyroid agents, barbiturates, carbamazepine, chlorpromazine, cholestyramine, estrogens, rifampin, thiazide diuretics, and vitamin K.
 - Heparin's effects can be partially reduced by digoxin, antihistamines, nicotine, and tetracyclines.

Anticonvulsants

Seizures in older adults can result from a history of epilepsy, injury, hypoglycemia, infections, elec-

trolyte imbalance, or drug reactions. Treating many of these conditions can eliminate the seizures and the need for anticonvulsant drugs; this reinforces the importance of a comprehensive assessment and diagnostic testing to identify the precise cause.

Anticonvulsants can be used singularly or in combination to sustain a blood level that will control seizures with the fewest side effects. Older people have a higher risk of toxicity from anticonvulsants, necessitating that they be used cautiously. Carbamazepine, lamotrigine, valproate, and gabapentin are preferred over phenobarbital and phenytoin for treating older patients with epilepsy.

In addition to seizures, anticonvulsants can be prescribed for the treatment of bipolar disorders, schizoaffective disorders, chronic neuropathic pain, prevention of migraines, and other conditions.

Nursing guidelines for older adults taking anticonvulsants include the following:

- Observe for and inquire about possible side effects from these drugs, including change in bowel habits, abnormal bruising, bleedings, pallor, weakness, jaundice, muscle and joint pain, nausea, vomiting, anorexia, dizziness (increasing the risk for falls), blurred vision, diplopia, confusion, agitation, slurred speech, hallucinations, arrhythmias, hypotension, sleep disturbances, tinnitus, urinary retention, and glycosuria.
- As these drugs can depress psychomotor activity, ensure patients have adequate physical activity.
- Ensure periodic evaluations of blood levels are done for drugs for which this is required and/or available (e.g., carbamazepine, phenytoin, phenobarbital, primidone, valproic acid).
- Be aware that these drugs can worsen any existing liver or kidney disease.
- Anticonvulsants should not be discontinued abruptly.
- Advise patients to avoid grapefruit and grapefruit juice when taking these drugs as grapefruit increases the risk of toxicity.
- Anticonvulsants can aggravate existing glaucoma, coronary artery disease, or prostate disease. Patients with these conditions require close monitoring.
- Some anticonvulsants can cause photosensitivity.
- Be alert to interactions:
 - Anticonvulsants can increase the effects of analgesics, antihistamines, propranolol, sedatives, and tranquilizers.
 - Anticonvulsants can decrease the effects of cortisone and anticoagulants.
 - The CNS depressant effects can be increased and the anticonvulsant effects decreased when some anticonvulsants are used with tricyclic antidepressants.

- Anticonvulsants and digitalis preparations taken concurrently significantly increase the risk of toxicity from both drugs.

Antidepressants

The incidence of depression increases with age, contributing to it being the major psychiatric diagnosis in older adults. Depression may be a problem that some older adults have struggled with throughout their lives, or a new symptom in response to life circumstances that they now face.

There are several different classes of antidepressants available, including alpha-adrenoceptors (e.g., mirtazapine), dopamine-reuptake blocking compounds (e.g., bupropion), monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs), serotonin antagonists (5-HT₂, e.g., nefazodone, trazodone), selective serotonin-norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors (SNRIs, e.g., duloxetine, venlafaxine), selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs, e.g., citalopram, escitalopram, fluoxetine, fluvoxamine, paroxetine, sertraline), and tricyclic antidepressants (TCA). Of these, the SSRIs tend to be well-tolerated and effective in older adults. Citalopram, sertraline, and escitalopram have fewer drug–drug interactions. Although popular, tricyclic antidepressants have side effects that can pose risks to older adults, such as anticholinergic effects, orthostatic hypotension, and arrhythmias, especially in patients with cardiovascular disease.

Nursing guidelines for older adults taking antidepressants include the following:

- Assess factors contributing to depression. In some situations, obtaining financial aid, receiving grief counseling, joining a group, and other actions can improve the cause of the depression and reduce or eliminate the need for drugs.
- Explore the use of other therapies in addition to antidepressants to improve mood.
- Ensure that the lowest effective dosage of the drug is used to reduce the risk of adverse effects.
- Advise patients that several weeks of therapy commonly is required before improvement is noted.
- Monitor the plasma level of the drug. Be aware that dosage adjustment may be needed.
- Observe for, ask about, and report side effects, including diaphoresis, urinary retention, indigestion, constipation, hypotension, blurred vision, difficulty voiding, increased appetite, weight gain, photosensitivity, and fluctuating blood glucose levels.
- The dizziness, drowsiness, and confusion that can occur in older adults can increase the risk of falls, so special precautions are needed.
- Dryness of the mouth can be an uncomfortable side effect of these drugs. Advise patients to use sugarless mints, ice chips, or a saliva substitute to improve this symptom. Monitor oral health closely because dry mouth increases the risk of dental disease.
- Some antidepressants need to be discontinued gradually, so advise patients not to abruptly stop taking the drugs.
- Observe patients for a worsening of depression symptoms or suicidal thinking or behavior; bring these findings to the physician's attention immediately.
- Be alert to interactions:
 - Antidepressants can increase the effects of anticoagulants, atropine-like drugs, antihistamines, sedatives, tranquilizers, narcotics, and levodopa.
 - Antidepressants can decrease the effects of clonidine, phenytoin, and various antihypertensives.
 - The effects of antidepressants can be increased by alcohol and thiazide diuretics.
 - Bupropion can increase the risk of seizures.

Antidiabetic Drugs

Antidiabetic drugs require careful dosage adjustment based on the individual's weight, diet, and activity level. Drugs in this group fall under insulin and sulfonylureas. The self-injection of insulin can be a challenge for some older adults, particularly those with arthritic hands, poor vision, or cognitive impairment. Ongoing assessment of the ability of older adults and their family caregivers to manage injections is essential. People who still are producing some degree of insulin may take sulfonylureas. Examples include chlorpropamide, glimepiride, glipizide, glyburide, metformin, tolazamide, and tolbutamide.

Chlorpropamide and glyburide are not drugs of choice for older adults because they have a long half-life and increase the risk of serious hypoglycemia.

Hypoglycemia is a more probable and serious problem for older diabetics than ketosis. Some of the classic signs of hypoglycemia may not be present in older adults; confusion and slurred speech may give the first clue of this complication.

See Chapter 27 for more information about the care of the patient who has diabetes. Nursing guidelines for older adults taking antidiabetic drugs include the following:

- Teach individuals with diabetes and their caregivers about the proper use and storage of medications, and recognition of hypo- and hyperglycemia. Reinforce that all insulins or oral antidiabetic drugs are not interchangeable (i.e., different drugs have different potency, onset, and duration).

- Ensure that people with diabetes wear or carry identification to alert others of their diagnosis in the event they are found unconscious or confused.
- For patients using insulin, examine injection sites regularly. Local redness, swelling, pain, and nodule development at the injection site can indicate insulin allergy. A sunken area at the injection site can be caused by atrophy and hypertrophy associated with insulin lipodystrophy—a harmless although unattractive condition.
- Report conditions that could alter antidiabetic drug requirements, such as fever, severe trauma, prolonged diarrhea or vomiting, altered thyroid function, or heart, kidney, or liver disease.
- Advise patients to avoid drinking alcohol as this can lead to a significant drop in blood sugar.
- Be alert to interactions:
 - The effects of antidiabetic drugs can be increased by alcohol, oral anticoagulants, cimetidine, isoniazid, phenylbutazone, ranitidine, sulfapyrazone, and large doses of salicylates.
 - The effects of antidiabetic drugs can be decreased by chlorpromazine, cortisone-like drugs, furosemide, phenytoin, thiazide diuretics, thyroid preparations, and cough and cold medications.
 - Antidiabetic drugs can increase the effects of anticoagulants.

Antihypertensive Drugs

Good circulation becomes increasingly difficult to achieve in later life because of reduced elasticity of peripheral vessels and the accumulation of deposits in the lumen of vessels. To compensate for increased peripheral resistance, systolic blood pressure may rise. Likewise, diastolic blood pressure may increase in response to an age-related reduction in cardiac output. While these increases in blood pressure may compensate for changes that could interfere with adequate circulation, they create new risks associated when blood pressure enters a level considered hypertensive (>140 mm Hg systolic and/or >90 mm Hg diastolic).

Because diuretics blunt the sodium- and water-retaining effects of many other antihypertensive drugs such as beta blockers, they are the most commonly used medication in combination antihypertensive agents. Diuretics cause blood vessels to dilate and help the kidneys eliminate salt and water, thereby decreasing fluid volume throughout the body and lowering blood pressure. Beta blockers block the effects of the sympathetic division, the part of the nervous system that can rapidly respond to stress by increasing blood pressure. Examples include acebutolol, atenolol, betaxolol,

bisoprolol, carteolol, metoprolol, nadolol, penbutolol, pindolol, propranolol, and timolol. Side effects from beta blockers can include bronchospasm, bradycardia, heart failure, possible masking of low blood sugar levels, impaired peripheral circulation, insomnia, fatigue, shortness of breath, depression, Raynaud's phenomenon, vivid dreams, hallucinations, sexual dysfunction, and with some beta-blockers, an increased triglyceride level.

Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors (e.g., lisinopril) are well tolerated antihypertensive drugs and are popular initial agents in the treatment of hypertension. They dilate arterioles by preventing the formation of angiotensin II, which causes arterioles to constrict and block the action of angiotensin-converting enzyme, which converts angiotensin I to angiotensin II. Examples include benazepril, captopril, enalapril, fosinopril, lisinopril, moexipril, perindopril, quinapril, ramipril, andtrandolapril. Cough is a common side effect from this drug. In patients for whom ACE inhibitor and diuretic combinations are indicated but not tolerated, angiotensin-II receptor antagonist (e.g., losartan) and diuretic combinations may be used.

Calcium channel blockers cause arterioles to dilate by a completely different mechanism; this group of drugs tends to be more effective in treating hypertension in block individuals than some of the other antihypertensives. Examples include amlodipine, diltiazem (sustained-release only), felodipine, isradipine, nifedipine, nifedipine (sustained-release only), nisoldipine, and verapamil. Side effects from these drugs include headache, dizziness, flushing, fluid retention, problems in the heart's electrical conduction system (including heart block), bradycardia, heart failure, enlarged gums, and constipation. ACE inhibitors and calcium channel blockers may be prescribed in combination to lower blood pressure, as may other combinations.

Alpha-blockers (doxazosin, prazosin, terazosin) and angiotensin II blockers (candesartan, eprosartan, irbesartan, losartan, telmisartan, valsartan) are among the other drugs that could be prescribed for hypertension management.

Nursing guidelines for older adults taking antihypertensive drugs include the following:

- Assess blood pressure carefully. Obtain readings with the patient in lying, sitting, and standing positions.
- Help patients in learning and using nonpharmacologic measures to reduce blood pressure, such as weight reduction, restriction of sodium and alcohol intake, moderate aerobic exercise, and stress management techniques.

- Monitor patients closely when therapy is initiated. Some antihypertensives can cause significant hypotension initially. Advise patients to change positions slowly to prevent falls.
- Ensure that patients obtain lab work as ordered. Monitoring of serum potassium is especially important when patients are receiving ACE inhibitors with potassium or potassium-sparing diuretics.
- Monitor patients for side effects.
- Reinforce to patients the importance of adhering to treatment even when symptoms are absent.
- Some antihypertensives should not be abruptly discontinued. Advise patients to check with their physicians before discontinuing these drugs.
- Be alert to interactions:
 - Antihypertensive drugs can increase the effects of barbiturates, insulin, oral antidiabetic drugs, sedatives, and thiazide diuretics.
 - The effects of antihypertensives can be decreased by amphetamines, antacids, antihistamines, salicylates, and tricyclic antidepressants.
 - Verapamil can increase the blood digoxin level.
 - The effects of propranolol can be increased by cimetidine, ciprofloxacin, diuretics.
 - Grapefruit juice can affect the bioavailability and alter the effects of calcium-channel blockers.
 - Individual drugs have specific interactions; carefully review drug literature to learn about them.

Anti-inflammatory Drugs, Nonsteroidal (NSAIDs)

The high prevalence of arthritis in the older population contributes to the wide use of NSAIDs. These drugs are effective in relieving mild to moderate pain and inflammation; however, they usually are not used unless lower risk analgesics (e.g., acetaminophen) have failed to be beneficial. Examples of NSAIDs include diclofenac, diflunisal, flurbiprofen, indomethacin, meclofenamate, naproxen, piroxicam, salicylates, and tolmetin.

Cyclooxygenase-II (COX-2) inhibitors were a new class of NSAIDs introduced in 1998 that were believed to have the advantage of causing less gastric irritation. They are called COX-2 inhibitors because they block an enzyme called cyclooxygenase, which is believed to trigger pain and inflammation in the body. In 2005, a Food and Drug Administration (FDA) advisory committee concluded that COX-2 inhibitors increase the risk of heart attacks and strokes. However, the FDA agreed to allow some of these drugs (celecoxib [Celebrex]) to be sold because, for many people, the benefits of the drugs outweighed the cardiovascular risks.

When patients are taking celecoxib, careful monitoring is necessary. Side effects to observe for include swelling of the face, fingers, hands, and lower legs; severe stomach pain; and signs of bleeding. People who are allergic to sulfa drugs may have allergic reactions to celecoxib.

Oxyphenbutazone and phenylbutazone, although effective within days after therapy is initiated, are extremely potent drugs and carry a high risk of adverse effects for older adults. They should not be used in patients with blood disorders, dementia, GI ulcers, glaucoma, or cardiac, renal, liver, or thyroid disease. Long-term therapy is discouraged.

Any NSAID can cause or worsen renal failure, raise blood pressure, and exacerbate heart failure. Nursing guidelines for older adults taking NSAIDs include the following:

- NSAIDs have a narrowed therapeutic window, and toxic levels accumulate much easier and at lower doses in older adults. Closely observe for and ask about side effects, such as GI symptoms, impaired hearing, and indications of CNS disturbances. Be aware that older adults are at higher risk of developing delirium as a side effect to these drugs.
- Ensure blood evaluations are done regularly.
- Administer these drugs with food or a glass of milk, unless contraindicated, to reduce GI irritation.
- If patients are using aspirin for cardioprotective effects and are started on a NSAID, review this with the physician or pharmacist as some NSAIDs (e.g., ibuprofen) can reduce the cardiac benefit of aspirin.
- Prolonged use of indomethacin, meclofenamate, piroxicam, and tolmetin can cause CNS effects (e.g., headache, dizziness, drowsiness, confusion). When reviewing patients' drugs, note if these drugs have been used for an extended time and review this with the physician and pharmacist.
- Be alert to interactions:
 - NSAIDs can increase the effects of oral anticoagulants, insulin, oral antidiabetic drugs, cyclosporine, lithium, penicillin, phenytoin, and sulfa drugs; they can decrease the effects of diuretics and beta blockers.
 - When celecoxib is used with aspirin, lithium, or fluconazole, there is an increased risk for serious side effects.
 - Oxyphenbutazone can decrease the effects of digitoxin.

Antipsychotics

Antipsychotic medications are commonly used to treat older adults with delirium, agitation, and

psychosis due to Alzheimer's disease, and schizophrenia. The effectiveness of antipsychotics in controlling symptoms has enabled many individuals to improve their quality of life and function; however, these drugs can have profound adverse effects, necessitating careful prescription and close monitoring.

There are two major classes of antipsychotic drugs:

- *First-generation (conventional) agents:* chlorpromazine, flumezapine, haloperidol, loxapine, mesoridazine, promazine, thioridazine, thiothixene, trifluoperazine, triflupromazine
- *Second-generation (atypical) agents:* aripiprazole, clozapine, olanzapine, quetiapine, risperidone, ziprasidone.

Because they were viewed as having a lower risk for adverse effects and greater tolerability, the atypical antipsychotics have largely replaced the conventional agents. However, the atypical antipsychotics have been found to have their own set of side effects that are of concern in geriatric care, such as postural hypotension, sedation, and falls. The FDA has determined that the treatment of behavioral disorders in older patients with dementia with atypical or second generation antipsychotic medications (olanzapine [Zyprexa], aripiprazole [Abilify], risperidone [Risperdal], quetiapine [Seroquel]) is associated with increased cerebrovascular adverse events and mortality and issued a black box warning (U.S. Food and Drug Administration, 2005). These drugs should only be used for the treatment of schizophrenia and not for behavioral disturbances associated with dementias.

The serious risks associated with these drugs and the paucity of clinical trials with psychotropic medications in the older population in general and in patients with dementia in particular (Jeste et al., 2007) demand that nonpharmacologic interventions be used before initiating drug therapy. Nonpharmacologic interventions can include addressing factors that contribute to symptoms, environmental modifications, behavioral interventions, and treatment of other conditions.

Nursing guidelines for older adults taking antipsychotics include the following:

- Ensure that patients receive a thorough physical and mental health evaluation before any antipsychotic drug is prescribed.
- Whenever possible, attempt to use other interventions to address symptoms prior to using antipsychotics.
- Antipsychotics should be used for the treatment of specific disorders and not as a means of managing behavior. Using antipsychotics to control

behaviors alone can be viewed as chemically restraining patients.

- Drugs have a longer biological half-life in older adults; assure the lowest possible dosage is initially used.
- Older adults are more sensitive to the *anticholinergic effects* of these medications: dry mouth, constipation, urinary retention, blurred vision, insomnia, restlessness, fever, confusion, disorientation, hallucinations, agitation, picking behavior. They also are at greater risk for developing *extrapyramidal* symptoms: tardive dyskinesia, parkinsonism, akinesia, dystonia. Observe and report these symptoms promptly.
- Patients taking antipsychotics are at high risk for falls due to the hypotensive and sedative effects. Implement fall prevention measures for these individuals.
- Constipation is a common side effect of antipsychotics. Advise patients to include fiber and other foods in diet that promote regular bowel movement and monitor bowel elimination.
- Men with prostatic hypertrophy may develop urinary hesitance and retention when using antipsychotics. Advise patients and caregivers to monitor urinary symptoms and report changes promptly.
- Gradual weaning rather than abrupt withdrawal from these drugs is recommended.
- Response to these drugs can vary in older adults, necessitating close monitoring.
- Be alert to interactions:
 - The effects of antipsychotics can be reduced by anticholinergic drugs, phenytoin, and antacids.
 - Antipsychotics can increase the effects of sedatives and antihypertensives, and decrease the effects of levodopa.
 - Alcohol can increase the sedative action and depressant effects of these drugs on brain function.

Cholesterol-Lowering Drugs

Increasing numbers of aging individuals are alert to the risks associated with elevated levels of low-density lipoprotein (LDL) cholesterol. Direct to consumer marketing of cholesterol-lowering drugs has increased awareness of this problem, also. The result has been a growing use of cholesterol-lowering drugs. These drugs have shown benefit in reducing cardiovascular events and mortality in older adults.

The main goal in lowering cholesterol is to lower LDL and raise high-density lipoprotein (HDL). Treatment goals are individualized, based on the unique profile of the individual patient. Often, prior to initiating therapy, other interventions

are used (e.g., eating a heart-healthy diet, exercise programs, weight reduction). Cholesterol-lowering drugs include statins, niacin, bile-acid resins, fibric acid derivatives, and cholesterol absorption inhibitors.

Statins (HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors), usually the first line of treatment, block the production of cholesterol in the liver. Examples include rosuvastatin (Crestor), atorvastatin (Lipitor), fluvastatin (Lescol), lovastatin (Mevacor), pravastatin (Pravachol), and simvastatin (Zocor). There also are combination statins, such as Advicor, a combination of a statin and niacin, and Caduet, a combination of a statin (atorvastatin) and the antihypertensive amlodipine (Norvasc). As these drugs can impair liver function, liver function tests should be done prior to initiating therapy and at regular intervals thereafter. Muscle pain is an important symptom to note in patients using statins as these drugs can cause myopathy and the breakdown of skeletal muscle which can precipitate renal failure.

Niacin, or nicotinic acid, is a B-complex vitamin that—in addition to being available in the diet—can be prescribed at high dosages to lower LDL and raise HDL cholesterol. Examples include Niacor, Niaspan, and Slo-niacin. The main side effects are flushing, itching, tingling and headache; aspirin can reduce many of these symptoms. Niacin can interfere with glucose control and aggravate diabetes. It also can exacerbate gallbladder disease and gout.

Bile-acid resins work inside the intestine, where they bind to bile and prevent it from being reabsorbed into the circulatory system. Examples include cholestyramine (Questran and Questran Light), colestipol (Colestid), and colesevelam (Wel-Chol). The most common side effects are constipation, gas, and upset stomach. These drugs can interact with diuretics, beta-blockers, corticosteroids, thyroid hormones, digoxin, valproic acid, NSAIDs, sulfonyleureas, and warfarin; consult with the physician and pharmacists as to the length of time to wait between the administration of these drugs and bile-acid resins.

Fibric acid derivatives, although their mechanism of action is not fully clear, are thought to enhance the breakdown of triglyceride-rich particles, decrease the secretion of certain lipoproteins, and induce the synthesis of HDL. Examples include fenofibrate (Tricor), gemfibrozil (Lopid), and fenofibrate (Lofibra). Liver function tests and CBC should be evaluated prior to initiating therapy and on a regular basis thereafter.

Cholesterol absorption inhibitors work by inhibiting the absorption of cholesterol in the intestines. Vytorin is a newer drug that is a combination of ezetimibe (Zetia) and the statin simvastatin.

Nursing guidelines for older adults taking cholesterol-lowering drugs include the following:

- Assist patients in implementing dietary and lifestyle modifications to help reduce cholesterol levels.
- Ensure that patients receive liver functions and other necessary tests as ordered.
- Monitor for interactions and follow precautions for each category of cholesterol-lowering drugs as discussed above.

Cognitive Enhancing Drugs

With nearly five million people suffering from dementia and approximately 30 million having some type of memory disorder, there has been increasing development of drugs to improve cognitive functions. These drugs include:

- *Cholinesterase inhibitors*: donepezil (Aricept), galantamine (Razadyne), rivastigmine (Exelon), tacrine (Cognex).
- *NMDA receptor antagonists*: memantine (Namenda).

These drugs can cause many side effects, including nausea; vomiting; diarrhea; anorexia; weight loss; urinary frequency; muscle cramps; joint pain, swelling, or stiffness; fatigue; drowsiness; headache; dizziness; nervousness; depression; confusion; changes in behavior; abnormal dreams; difficulty falling asleep or staying asleep; discoloration or bruising of the skin; and red, scaling, itchy skin.

Nursing guidelines for older adults taking cognitive enhancing drugs include the following:

- Evaluate patients' mental status, cognition, and activities of daily living prior to initiation of therapy and periodically thereafter during prolonged treatment. Monitor for signs and symptoms of GI bleed. Ensure that patients using tacrine have regular liver function tests.
- Recommend that patients on these drugs be reevaluated as their underlying disorder progresses.
- Cholinesterase inhibitors can affect cardiac conduction in patients with existing conduction disorders or who are using medications that affect heart rate. Review potential risks with the physician and pharmacist.
- Avoid abrupt discontinuation of these drugs.
- Tacrine is best taken on an empty stomach. Galantamine is best taken with food.
- Be alert to interactions with: anticholinergics, aspirin (high doses used for arthritis), cholinergic drugs, cholinesterase inhibitors, long-term use of NSAIDs, carbamazepine, dexamethasone, phenobarbital, phenytoin, and rifampin.

Digoxin

Digitalis preparations are used in the treatment of congestive heart failure, atrial flutter fibrillation, supraventricular tachycardia, and extrasystoles to increase the force of myocardial contraction through direct action on the heart muscle. The resulting improvement in circulation helps to reduce edema, as well.

Daily doses in older adults ordinarily should not exceed 0.125 mg except if used to control atrial arrhythmia and ventricular rate. Digoxin should be used with caution in patients with impaired renal function.

Nursing guidelines for older adults taking digoxin include the following:

- Check and/or instruct patients and their caregivers to check pulse for rate, rhythm, and regularity prior to administering digoxin.
- The usual biological half-life of these drugs can be extended in older adults, increasing their risk of digitalis toxicity. Signs of toxicity include: bradycardia, diarrhea, anorexia, nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, delirium, agitation, hallucinations, headache, restlessness, insomnia, nightmares, aphasia, ataxia, muscle weakness and pain, cardiac arrhythmias, high serum drug levels (although *toxicity can occur in the presence of normal serum levels*). Promptly report any signs of possible toxicity.
- Hypokalemia makes patients more susceptible to toxicity so make sure that the patient consumes potassium-rich foods and that serum potassium is evaluated regularly.
- Be alert to interactions:
 - The effects of digoxin can be increased by alprazolam, amphotericin, benzodiazepines, carvedilol, cyclosporine, erythromycin, ethacrynic acid, fluoxetine, guanethidine, ibuprofen, indomethacin, phenytoin, propranolol, quinidine, tetracyclines, tolbutamide, trazodone, trimethoprim, verapamil, and some other drugs.
 - The effects of digoxin can be decreased by antacids, cholestyramine, kaolin-pectin, laxatives, neomycin, Phenobarbital, phenylbutazone, and rifampin.
 - The risk of toxicity is increased with digitalis preparations are taken with cortisone, diuretics, parenteral calcium reserpine, and thyroid preparations.

Diuretics

Diuretics are used in the treatment of a variety of cardiovascular disorders such as hypertension and congestive heart failure. There are several major types that work in different ways:

- *Thiazides*: inhibit sodium reabsorption in the cortical diluting site of the ascending loop of Henle and increase the excretion of chloride and potassium. Examples include chlorothiazide, hydrochlorothiazide, and metolazone.
- *Loop diuretics*: inhibit reabsorption of sodium and chloride at the proximal portion of the ascending loop of Henle. Examples include bumetanide, ethacrynic acid, and furosemide.
- *Potassium-sparing diuretics*: antagonize aldosterone in the distal tubule, causing water and sodium, but not potassium, to be excreted. Examples include amiloride, spironolactone, and triamterene.

Under normal circumstances, older adults are at high risk of developing fluid and electrolyte imbalances; diuretic therapy increases this risk considerably. Special attention must be paid to recognizing signs of imbalances early and correcting them promptly.

Nursing guidelines for older adults taking diuretics include the following:

- Plan an administration schedule that interferes least with the patient's schedule. Morning administration is usually preferable.
- Monitor intake and output, and assure adequate fluids are consumed.
- Teach patients and their caregivers to recognize and promptly report signs of fluid and electrolyte balance: dry oral cavity, confusion, thirst, weakness, lethargy, drowsiness, restlessness, muscle cramps, muscular fatigue, hypotension, reduced urinary output, slow pulse, and GI disturbances.
- Because of postural hypotension that can occur from the use of these drops, careful attention should be paid to preventing falls.
- Latent diabetes sometimes can be manifested during thiazide diuretic therapy.
- Monitor hearing in patients receiving loop diuretics as these drugs can cause transient ototoxicity.
- Diuretics can worsen existing liver disease, renal disease, gout and pancreatitis, and raise blood glucose in diabetics. Careful monitoring of patients with these conditions is essential.
- Ensure serum electrolytes, glucose, and BUN are evaluated periodically.
- Be alert to interactions:
 - Diuretics can increase the effects of antihypertensives and decrease the effects of allopurinol, digoxin, oral anticoagulants, antidiabetic agents and probenecid.
 - The effects of diuretics can be increased by analgesics and barbiturates; diuretics' effects can be decreased by cholestyramine and large quantities of aspirin (administer these drugs at least one hour before).

Laxatives

Age-related reduction in peristalsis and the tendency of many older adults to be less active, consume low-fiber diets, and take medications that are constipating, cause constipation to be a common problem. Nonpharmacologic measures to promote bowel elimination should be used before resorting to the use of laxatives. When laxatives are necessary, they should be selectively chosen and used. Laxatives differ in their function:

- *Bulk formers* (e.g., methylcellulose) absorb fluid in the intestines and create extra bulk, which distends the intestines and increases peristalsis. They usually take 12 to 24 hours to take effect. Bulk formers need to be mixed with large amounts of water. These compounds should not be used when there is any indication of intestinal obstruction.
- *Stool softeners* (e.g., docusate sodium) collect fluid in the stool which makes the mass softer and easier to move. They do not affect peristalsis; they take effect in 24 to 48 hours.
- *Hyperosmolars* (e.g., glycerin) pull fluid into the colon, causing bowel distention which increases peristalsis. These take effect within 1 to 3 hours; they are contraindicated when there is the risk of fecal impaction.
- *Stimulants* (e.g., cascara sagrada) irritate the smooth muscle of the intestines and pull fluid into the colon, causing peristalsis. They take effect in 6 to 10 hours. Stimulants can cause intestinal cramps and excessive fluid evacuation.
- *Lubricants* (e.g., mineral oil) coat fecal material to facilitate its passage. They take effect in 6 to 8 hours. These compounds are not recommended for older adults.

Nursing guidelines for older adults taking laxatives include the following:

- Recognizing that it is a common geriatric risk, assist older adults in preventing constipation.
- When patients complain of constipation, assess carefully before suggesting or administering a laxative.
- Reinforce to older adults and their caregivers that laxatives, although popular, are drugs and can cause side effects and interact with other drugs.
- Good fluid intake must accompany the use of bulk forming laxatives and stool softeners to prevent the accumulation of stool leading to bowel obstruction.
- Be alert to interactions:
 - Laxatives can reduce the effectiveness of many oral medications by increasing the speed of their passage through the GI system.
 - Chronic mineral oil use can deplete the body's fat-soluble vitamins (vitamins A, D, E, and K).

Sedatives/Hypnotics

Hypnotics and sedatives often are prescribed for older adults for the treatment of insomnia, nocturnal restlessness, anxiety, confusion, and related disorders. The dose will determine if the same drug will have a hypnotic or sedative effect.

Generally, chloral hydrate, diphenhydramine, flurazepam, hydroxyzine, quazepam, and triazolam are not drugs of choice for older adults for the management of insomnia (McSpadden & Yale, 2006).

Because tolerance to sedatives can develop after prolonged use, continued evaluation of effectiveness is necessary. It is not unusual for restlessness, insomnia, and nightmares to occur after sedatives are discontinued.

Nursing guidelines for older adults taking sedatives/hypnotics include the following:

- Before these drugs are used, evaluate factors contributing to insomnia. Adjusting environmental lighting or temperature, controlling noise, eliminating caffeine, increasing physical activity, relieving pain, giving a back rub, and controlling symptoms of diseases can improve sleep and eliminate the need for a sedative.
- Carefully monitor patients who are using sedatives as they are at higher risk of falls and fractures.
- Be alert to interactions:
 - Sedatives and hypnotics can increase the effects of oral anticoagulants, antihistamines, and analgesics, and decrease the effects of cortisone and cortisone-like drugs.
 - The effects of sedatives and hypnotics can be increased by alcohol, antihistamines, and phenothiazines.

There are other groups of drugs that older adults can use. It is advantageous to learn about drugs before administering them, understand the impact specific drugs can have on older adults, teach older adults how to use individual drugs safely, and regularly monitor for side effects and adverse reactions.

Critical Thinking Exercises

1. List age-related changes that affect the way in which drugs behave in older persons.
2. What key points would you include in a program to educate senior citizens about safe drug use?
3. What interventions could you employ to aid an older adult who has poor memory to safely administer medications?
4. Review the major drug groups and identify those that address problems that could potentially be managed with nonpharmacologic means.

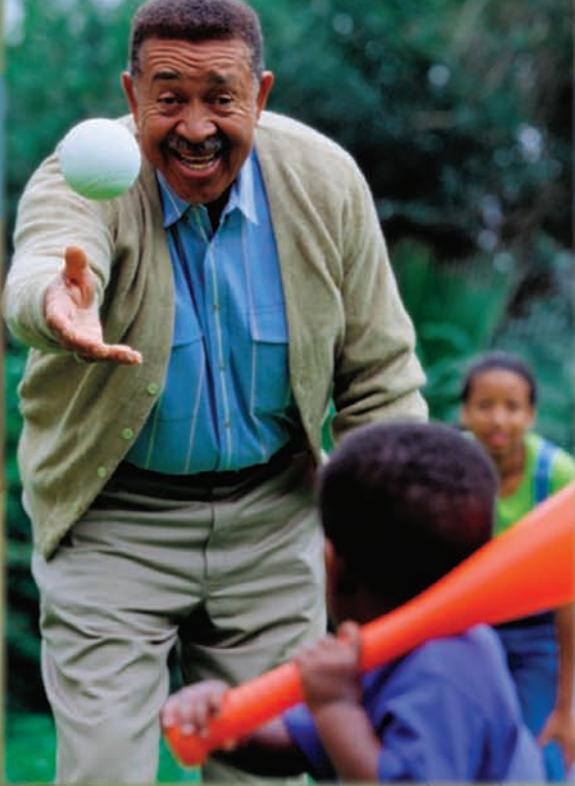
References

- American Psychiatric Association. (2000). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (4th ed.). Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association.
- Beers, M. H. (1997). Explicit criteria for determining potentially inappropriate medication use by the elderly. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, *157*, 1531–1536.
- Beers, M. H., Ouslander, J. G., Rollinger, J., Reuben, D. B., & Beck, J. C. (1991). Explicit criteria for determining inappropriate medication use in nursing home residents. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, *151*, 1825–1832.
- Fick, D. M., Cooper, J. W., Wade, W. E., Waller, J. L., Maclean, J. R., & Beers, M. H. (2003). Updating the Beers criteria for potentially inappropriate medication use in older adults. Results of a U.S. consensus panel of experts. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, *163*(22), 2716–2724.
- Gorard, D. A. (2006). Escalating polypharmacy. *QJM*, *99*(11), 797–800.
- Jeste, D. V., Blazer, D., Casey, D., Meeks, T., Salzman, C., et al. (2007). ACNP White Paper: Update on use of antipsychotic drugs in elderly persons with dementia. *Neuropsychopharmacology*, *18*, 1–14, <http://www.neuropsychopharmacology.org>.
- Kaufman, D. W., Kelly, J. P., Rosenberg, L., Anderson, T. E., et al. (2002). Recent patterns of medication use in the ambulatory adult population of the United States: The Slone survey. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, *287*(3), 337–344.
- McSpadden, C. S., & Yale, S. (2006). *Unnecessary medications in the elderly. A guide to improving therapeutic outcomes* (pp. 7–28). Miamisburg, OH: MED-PASS Inc.
- Page, R. L. II, & Ruscin, J. M. (2007). The risk of adverse drug events and hospital-related morbidity and mortality among older adults with potentially inappropriate medication use. *American Journal of Geriatric Pharmacotherapy*, *4*(4), 297–305.
- Patel, R. B. (2003). Polypharmacy and the elderly. *Journal of Infusion Nursing*, *26*(3), 166–169.
- Skufca, L. (2007). *Are Americans age 45+ using drugs wisely: A 2006 study research report*. Washington, DC: AARP.
- U.S. Food and Drug Administration. (2005). FDA public health advisory: Deaths from antipsychotics in elderly patients with behavioral disturbances. Retrieved August 10, 2007, from <http://www.fda.gov/Cder/drug/advisory/antipsychotics.htm>.
- adverse effects of medication management in home care. *Geriatric Nursing*, *25*(3), 164–170.
- Fulton, M. M., & Allen, E. R. (2005). Polypharmacy in the elderly: A literature review. *Journal of the American Academy of Nurse Practitioners*, *17*(4), 123–132.
- Gore, V. W., & Mouzon, M. (2006). Polypharmacy in older adults. Front-line strategies. *Advances for Nurse Practitioners*, *14*(9), 49–52.
- Gruewald, J. (2004). *PDR for herbal medicines*. Montvale, NJ: Medical Economics Company.
- Logue, R. M. (2002). Self-medication and the elderly: How technology can help. *American Journal of Nursing*, *102*(7), 51–56.
- Luggen, A. S. (2005). Pharmacology update: Inappropriate prescribing in the long-term care setting. *Geriatric Nursing*, *26*(4), 233.
- Miller, C. A. (2000). Advising older adults about pain remedies. *Geriatric Nursing*, *21*(1), 55.
- Miller, C. A. (2002). The connection between drugs and falls in elders. *Geriatric Nursing*, *23*(2), 171–172.
- Miller, C. A. (2002). Cardiovascular drugs: Reason for promise and vigilance. *Geriatric Nursing*, *23*(3), 171–172.
- Miller, C. A. (2005). Drugs and the elderly: Looking back and ahead. *Geriatric Nursing*, *26*(1), 60–61.
- Mitty, E., & Flores, S. (2007). Assisted living nursing practice: Medication management: Part 1. Assessing the resident for self-medication ability. *Geriatric Nursing*, *28*(2), 83–89.
- Mitty, E., & Flores, S. (2007). Assisted living nursing practice: Medication management: Part 2. Supervision and monitoring of medication administration by unlicensed assistive personnel. *Geriatric Nursing*, *28*(3), 153–160.
- Pugh, M. J., Cramer, J., Knoefel, J., Charbonneau, A., & Berlowitz, D. R. (2003). Are elderly patients receiving appropriate antiepileptic drugs? *Abstracts of the Academy of Health Meetings*, *20*, 713.
- Schuermans, M. J., Duursma, S. A., Shorridge-Baggett, L. M., et al. (2003). Elderly patients with a hip fracture: The risk for delirium. *Applied Nursing Research*, *16*(2), 75–84.
- Semla, T. P., & Beizer, J. L. (1997). *Guide to preferred drugs in long-term care: A comparative formulary for geriatric specialists*. Hudson, OH: Lexi-Comp.
- Senft, D. J. (2007). Significant medication error citations without an observed medication pass. *Geriatric Nursing*, *28*(1), 25–26.
- Shen, Q., Karr, M., Ko, A., Chan, D. K., Khan, R., & Duvall, D. (2006). Evaluation of a medication education program for elderly hospital in-patients. *Geriatric Nursing*, *27*(3), 184–192.
- Sheplar, S. A., Grogan, T. A., & Pater, K. S. (2006). Keep your older patients out of medication trouble. *Nursing* *2006*, *36*(9), 44–47.
- Spellbring, A. M., & Ryan, J. W. (2003). Medication administration by unlicensed caregivers: A model program. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, *29*(6), 48–56.
- Vogelsmeier, A., Scott-Cawiezell, J., & Zellmer, D. (2007). Barriers to safe medication administration in the nursing home—exploring staff perceptions and concerns about the medication use process. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, *33*(4), 5–12.
- Zarowitz, B.J. (2006). Medication overuse and misuse. *Geriatric Nursing*, *27*(4), 204–206.

Recommended Readings

- Bergman-Evans, B. (2006). AIDES to improving medication adherence in older adults. *Geriatric Nursing*, *27*(3), 174–175.
- Bergman-Evans, B. (2006). Evidence-based guideline. Improving medication management for older adult clients. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, *32*(7), 6–14.
- Bretherton, A., Day, L., & Lewis, G. (2003). Polypharmacy and older people. *Nursing Times*, *99*(17), 54–55.
- Cassidy, B.S. (2005). The regulatory influence on medication administration in long-term care facilities. *Geriatric Nursing*, *26*(4), 212–215.
- Ellenbecker, C. H., Frazier, S. C., & Verney, S. (2004). Nurses' observations and experiences of problems and

UNIT 5



Facilitating Physiological Balance

19 RESPIRATION

20 CIRCULATION

21 DIGESTION AND BOWEL ELIMINATION

22 URINARY ELIMINATION

23 REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM HEALTH

24 MOVEMENT

25 NEUROLOGIC FUNCTION

26 SENSATION

27 ENDOCRINE FUNCTION

28 INTEGUMENTARY FUNCTION

29 IMMUNE FUNCTION

Respiration

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Effects of Aging on Respiratory Health Respiratory Health Promotion Selected Respiratory Conditions

- Asthma
- Chronic Bronchitis
- Emphysema
- Lung Cancer
- Lung Abscess

General Nursing Considerations for Respiratory Conditions

- Recognizing Symptoms
- Preventing Complications
- Ensuring Safe Oxygen Administration
- Performing Postural Drainage
- Promoting Productive Coughing
- Using Complementary Therapies
- Promoting Self-Care
- Providing Encouragement

Respiratory health is vital to the older person's ability to maintain a physically, mentally, and socially active life. It can make the difference between a person maximizing opportunities to live life to the fullest and being too fatigued and uncomfortable to leave the confines of home. A lifetime of insults to the respiratory system from smoking, pollution, and infection takes its toll in old age, making respiratory disease a leading cause of disability and the fourth leading cause of death in persons over 70

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 List the impact of age-related changes on respiratory health.
- 2 Describe measures to promote respiratory health in older adults.
- 3 Discuss the risks, symptoms, and care considerations associated with selected respiratory illnesses.
- 4 Describe interventions that can aid in preventing complications and promoting self-care in older persons with respiratory conditions.

years of age. However, positive health practices to promote effective breathing can benefit respiratory health at any age and minimize limitations imposed by problems.

Effects of Aging on Respiratory Health

The effects of aging create a situation in which respiratory problems can develop more easily and be more difficult to manage. Various connective tissues responsible for respiration and ventilation are weaker. The elastic recoil of the lungs during expiration is decreased because of less elastic collagen and elastin, and expiration requires the active use of accessory muscles. Alveoli are less elastic, develop fibrous tissue, and contain fewer functional capillaries. The loss of skeletal muscle strength in the thorax and diaphragm, combined with the loss of resilient force that holds the thorax in a slightly contracted position, contributes to the slight kyphosis and barrel chest seen in many older adults. The net effect of these changes is a reduction in vital capacity and an increase in residual volume—in other words, less air exchange and more air and secretions remaining in the lungs.

Although it may appear to be a relatively minor consideration, hair in the nostrils becomes thicker with age and may readily accumulate a greater amount of dust and dirt particles during inspiration. Unless these particles are removed and the nasal passage is kept patent, there may be an interference with the normal inspiration of air. Blowing the nose and mild manipulation with a tissue may

adequately rid the nostrils of these particles. When particles are difficult to remove, a cotton-tipped applicator moistened with warm water or saline solution may help loosen them. Caution should be taken not to insert the cotton-tipped applicator too far into the nose because trauma can result easily. Any nasal obstruction not easily removed should be brought to a physician's attention.

Further, age-related changes external to the respiratory system can affect respiratory health in significant ways. A reduction in body fluid and reduced fluid intake can cause drier mucous membranes, impeding the removal of mucus and leading to the development of mucous plugs and infection. Altered pain sensations can cause signals of respiratory problems to be unnoticed or mistaken for non-respiratory disorders. Different norms for body temperature can cause fever to present at an atypically lower level, potentially being missed and allowing respiratory infections to progress without timely treatment. Loose or brittle teeth can dislodge or break, leading to lung abscesses and infections from the aspiration of tooth fragments. Relaxed sphincters and slower gastric motility further contribute to the risk of aspiration. Impaired mobility, inactivity, and side effects from the numerous medications used by the older population can decrease respiratory function, promote infection, interfere with early detection, and complicate treatment of respiratory problems. Nursing Diagnosis Table 19-1 lists respiratory risks associated with aging. Astute assessment is essential to reducing the morbidity and mortality associated with these conditions (Assessment Guide 19-1).

NURSING DIAGNOSIS

TABLE 19-1 Aging and Risks to Adequate Respiration

Causes or Contributing Factors	Nursing Diagnosis
Reduced elastic recoil of lungs during expiration	Impaired Gas Exchange
Increase in residual capacity	Ineffective Breathing Pattern
Decrease in vital capacity	Ineffective Breathing Pattern
Decrease in maximum breathing capacity	Risk for Infection
Hyperinflation of lung apices and underinflation of lung bases	Ineffective Airway Clearance
Reduced number and elasticity of alveoli	Impaired Gas Exchange
Calcification of tracheal and laryngeal cartilage	Activity Intolerance related to decreased respiratory efficiency
Reduced ciliary activity	Ineffective Airway Clearance
Increased diameter of bronchioles and alveolar ducts	Risk for Infection
Loss of skeletal muscle strength in thorax and diaphragm	
Increased rigidity of thoracic muscles and ribs	
Increased diameter of anteroposterior chest	
Less efficient cough response	



ASSESSMENT GUIDE 19-1

Respiratory Function

GENERAL OBSERVATIONS

Much can be determined regarding the status of the respiratory system through careful observation of the following:

- **Color:** Coloring of the face, neck, limbs, and nail beds can be indicative of respiratory status. Ruddy, pink complexions often occur with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) and are associated with hypoxia, which is caused by a high carbon dioxide level in the blood that inhibits involuntary neuro-transmission from the pons to the diaphragm for inspiration. In the presence of chronic bronchitis, patients can have a blue or gray discoloration caused by the lack of oxygen binding to the hemoglobin.
- **Chest structure and posture:** The anteroposterior chest diameter increases with age—significantly so in the presence of COPD. Note abnormal spinal curvatures (e.g., kyphosis, scoliosis, lordosis).
- **Breathing pattern:** Observe the chest for symmetrical expansion during respirations, as well as the depth, rate, rhythm, and length of respirations. Decreased expansion of the chest can be caused by pain, fractured ribs, pulmonary emboli, pleural effusion, or pleurisy. Ask the patient to change positions, walk, and cough to see if these activities result in any changes.

INTERVIEW

Some older persons may give unreliable accounts of their past respiratory symptoms or have grown so accustomed to living with their symptoms that they do not consider them unusual. Specific questions can assist in revealing disorders, such as the following:

- “Do you ever have wheezing, chest pain, or a heavy feeling in your chest?”
- “How often do you get colds? Do you get colds that keep returning? How do you treat them?”
- “How far can you walk? How many steps can you climb before getting short of breath?”
- “Do you have any breathing problems when the weather gets cold or hot?”
- “How many pillows do you sleep on? Do breathing problems (e.g., coughing, shortness of breath) ever awaken you from sleep?”
- “How much do you cough during the day? During each hour? Can you control it?”
- “Do you bring up sputum, phlegm, or mucus when you cough? How much? What color? Is it the consistency of water, egg white, or jelly?”
- “How do you manage respiratory problems? How often do you use cough syrups, cold capsules, inhalers, vapors, rubs, or ointments?”
- “Did you ever smoke? If so, for how long and when and why did you stop? How many cigarettes or cigars do you smoke daily? Do people you live with or spend a lot of time with smoke?”
- “What kind of jobs have you had over your lifetime? Any in factories or chemical plants?”
- “Do you live or have you lived near factories, fields, or high-traffic areas?”

More specific questions increase the likelihood of obtaining a full and accurate history of factors related to respiratory health. Ascertain and document the dates of influenza and pneumonia vaccines as well.

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

- Palpate the posterior chest to evaluate the depth of respirations, degree of chest movement, and presence of masses or pain. Normally there is bilateral movement during respirations and reduced expansion of the base of the lungs. Tactile fremitus is usually best felt in the upper lobes; increased fremitus in the lower lobes occurs with pneumonia and masses. COPD and pneumothorax can cause a lack of fremitus in the upper lobes.
 - Percussion of the lungs should produce a resonant sound. Auscultation of the lungs should reflect normal bronchial, vesicular, and bronchovesicular breath sounds; crackles, rhonchi, and wheezes are abnormal findings.
- Review assessment data for actual and potential nursing diagnoses that can be used in guiding the care plan.

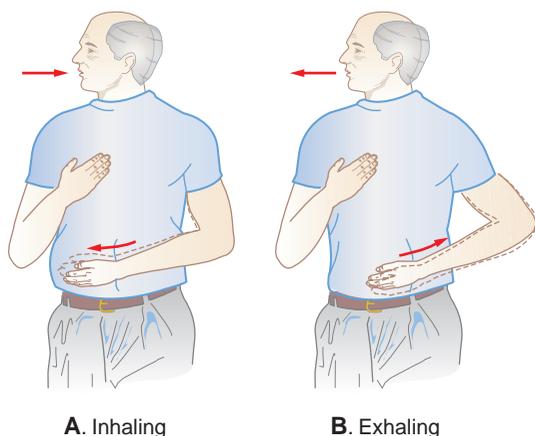
KEY CONCEPT

Pieces of brittle teeth can break off, be aspirated, and cause respiratory problems. This reinforces the importance of good oral health and dental care in late life.

Respiratory Health Promotion

The high risk of developing respiratory disorders that every older person faces warrants the incorporation of preventive measures into all care plans. Infection prevention is an important component. In addition to the precautions any adult would take, older persons need to be particularly attentive to obtaining influenza and pneumonia vaccines and avoiding exposure to individuals who have respiratory infections (see Chapter 30 for discussion of influenza and pneumonia).

Also, in addition to basic health practices, special attention to promoting respiratory activity is important. Nurses should teach all older adults to do deep-breathing exercises several times daily (Fig. 19-1). Keeping in mind that full expiration is more difficult than inspiration for older individuals, these exercises should emphasize an inspiratory–expiratory ratio of 1:3. To help make these exercises routine, link them with other routines, such as before meals or every time the person sits down to watch the news. Even



A. Inhaling

B. Exhaling

FIGURE 19-1 • Breathing exercises should emphasize forced expiration. **(A)** With one hand on the stomach (below the ribs) and the other over the middle anterior chest, the patient should inhale to the count of one. The hand over the stomach should move outwardly as the diaphragm and stomach move downward; the hand over the chest should not move. **(B)** Expire air to the count of three. The hand over the stomach should be pulled closer to the body as the diaphragm and stomach move upward; the hand over the chest should not move.

healthy, active people can benefit from including these exercises in their daily activities. Yoga is another practice that can aid in respiration.

POINT TO PONDER

Take a few minutes to slow down, close your eyes, and do deep-breathing exercises. What effects did this have on your body, mind, and spirit? How could these exercises benefit you if you did them several times throughout the day? ●

Because smoking is the most important factor contributing to respiratory disease, smoking cessation is an important health promotion measure. Many older smokers started their habit at a time when the full effects of smoking were not realized and smoking was considered fashionable, sociable, and sophisticated. Although smokers may be aware of the health hazards associated with smoking, it is an extremely difficult habit to break. The effects on respiratory health initially may be so subtle and gradual that they are not realized. Unfortunately, by the time signs and symptoms become apparent, considerable damage to the respiratory system may have occurred. Smokers have twice the incidence of lung cancer, a higher incidence of all respiratory disease, more complications with respiratory problems, and commonly suffer from productive coughs, shortness of breath, and reduced breathing capacity. Although maximum benefit is obtained by not starting to smoke in the first place or quitting early in life, smoking cessation is beneficial at any age. Local chapters of the American Lung Association, health departments, clinics, and commercial agencies offer a wide range of smoking cessation approaches that may be useful.

Immobility is a major threat to pulmonary health, and older adults frequently experience conditions that decrease their mobility. Preventing fractures, pain, weakness, depression, and other problems that could decrease mobility is an essential goal. Older adults, their family members, and caregivers all need to be educated about the multiple risks associated with immobility. It may be tempting for the older person to reduce activity or for caring family members to encourage that person to rest on days when arthritis or other discomforts are bothersome, unless it is understood that by doing so, more discomfort and disability can result. When immobility is unavoidable, hourly turning, coughing, and deep breathing will promote respiratory activity; blow bottles and similar equipment can also be beneficial. Persons who are chair bound may need the same attention to respiratory activity as the bedbound to ensure their lungs are fully expanded.

Older persons should be advised against treating respiratory problems themselves. Many over-the-counter cold and cough remedies can have serious effects in older adults and can interact with other medications being taken. These drugs also can mask symptoms of serious problems, thereby delaying diagnosis and treatment. Older adults should know that a cold lasting more than one week may not be a cold at all, but something more serious that requires medical attention.

It is important to review all medications used by older persons for their impact on respiration. Decreased respirations or rapid, shallow breathing can be caused by many of the drugs commonly prescribed for geriatric conditions; these drugs include analgesics, antidepressants, antihistamines, antiparkinson agents, synthetic antispasmodics, sedatives, and tranquilizers. As always, alternatives to drugs should be used whenever possible.

Environmental factors also influence respiratory health. Indirect room ventilation is best for older people who are more susceptible to drafts; fibrosis, which is common in older people, can be aggravated by chilling and drafts. Considerable attention has been paid to pollutants such as ozone, carbon monoxide, and nitrogen oxide that reduce the quality of the air we breathe outdoors. However, indoor air pollution can affect respiratory health as well. Synthetic or plastic building materials can emit gas; spores, animal dander, mites, pollen, plaster, bacteria, and viruses can be present in household dust; and cigarette smoke can add carbon monoxide and cadmium to indoor air. Conscious choices to minimize exposure to air pollution in the places where we reside, work, and play can help alleviate some of the stress to our respiratory systems. Furthermore, the quality of indoor air can be improved by:

- installing and maintaining air filters in heating and air conditioning systems
- vacuuming regularly (preferably using a central vacuum system or a water-trap vacuum that prevents dust from returning to the room)
- damp-dusting furnishings
- discouraging cigarette smoking
- opening windows to air out rooms
- maintaining green houseplants to help detoxify the air

Nurses should assist older adults in identifying and reducing sources of indoor pollutants. Housecleaning hints may be shared (e.g., dusting with a damp cloth, airing out blankets, removing unnecessary stored paper and cloth objects); in some situations, helping older adults locate housecleaning services can prove beneficial to improving their respiratory health.



POINT TO PONDER

What sources of air pollution are you able to identify in your home and work environments? What can you do to correct them? ●

Finally, often overlooked in the prevention of respiratory problems is the significance of a healthy oral cavity. Infections of the oral cavity can lead to respiratory infections or can decrease appetite and facilitate a generally poor health status. As noted, teeth can break or dislodge, leading to lung abscesses, infections, and aspirated tooth fragments. Respiratory infections may decline when loose or diseased teeth are removed.

Some considerations for promoting effective breathing can be found in the Nursing Diagnosis Highlight: Ineffective Breathing Pattern.

Selected Respiratory Conditions

Asthma

Some older persons are affected with asthma throughout their lives; others develop it during old age. Its symptoms and management in older adulthood do not differ much from those in other age groups. Because of the added stress that asthma places on the heart, however, older asthmatics have a high risk of developing complications such as bronchiectasis and cardiac problems. The nurse should help detect causative factors (e.g., emotions, mouth breathing, chronic respiratory infections) and educate the patient regarding early recognition of and prompt attention to an asthma attack when it does occur.

Careful assessment of the older asthmatic patient's use of aerosol nebulizers is advisable. Due to the difficulty some older people have in properly using inhalers, a spacer or holding chamber may be helpful to allow the inhalant medication to penetrate deep into the lungs. These systems consist of aerochambers that trap the medication or holding chambers that collapse and inflate during inhalation and expiration. Specific instructions are provided with each system. It is beneficial for the nurse to review the use of these devices as part of every assessment of patients who use them.

Precautions to avoid adverse drug effects are important. Overuse of sympathomimetic bronchodilating nebulizers creates a risk for cardiac arrhythmias leading to sudden death. Cromolyn sodium is one of the least toxic respiratory drugs that can be used, although several weeks of therapy may be necessary for benefits to be realized. Some

NURSING DIAGNOSIS HIGHLIGHT

INEFFECTIVE BREATHING PATTERN

Overview

In late life there is a high prevalence of conditions that limit the ability to adequately inflate the lungs or rid them of sufficient amounts of carbon dioxide. Signs such as confusion, dyspnea, shortness of breath, abnormal arterial blood gases, cyanosis, pursed-lip breathing, retraction of respiratory muscles during breathing, and shallow respirations could be associated with this diagnosis.

Causative or contributing factors

Weakness, fatigue, pain, paralysis, immobility, altered mental status, respiratory or musculoskeletal disease

Goal

The patient displays an effective breathing pattern, is free from signs of ineffective breathing, and possesses normal arterial blood gases.

Interventions

- Instruct patient in breathing exercises (see Fig. 19-1).
- Control symptoms (e.g., pain) that could threaten effective respirations.
- Raise head of bed at least 30 degrees when patient is lying down, unless contraindicated.
- Instruct patient to turn, cough, and deep breathe at least once every 2 hours.
- Monitor rate, depth, and rhythm of respirations; coloring; coughing pattern; blood gases; and mental status.

of the new steroid inhalants are effective and carry a lower risk of systemic absorption and adverse reactions than older steroids.

Chronic Bronchitis

Many older persons demonstrate the persistent, productive cough; wheezing; recurrent respiratory infections; and shortness of breath caused by chronic bronchitis. These symptoms may develop gradually, sometimes taking years for the full impact of the disease to be realized, when, because of bronchospasm, patients notice increased difficulty breathing in cold and damp weather. They experience more frequent respiratory infections and greater difficulty managing them. Episodes of hypoxia begin to occur because mucus obstructs the bronchial tree and causes carbon dioxide retention. As the disease progresses, emphysema may develop and death may occur from obstruction.

Management of chronic bronchitis, aimed at removing bronchial secretions and preventing obstruction of the airway, is similar for all age groups. Older patients may need special encouragement to maintain good fluid intake and to expectorate secretions. The nurse can be most effective in preventing the development of chronic bronchitis by discouraging chronic respiratory irritation, such as from smoking, and by helping older adults prevent respiratory infections.

**POINT TO PONDER**

Smoking-related respiratory diseases have an impact not only on the affected individual, but also on society in terms of health care costs. What do you think about the costs to society that result from an individual's personal decision to smoke? What incentives could be used by society to discourage this behavior? ●

Emphysema

Emphysema occurs with increasing incidence in the older population. Factors causing this destructive disease include chronic bronchitis, chronic irritation from dusts or certain air pollutants, and morphologic changes in the lungs, which include distention of the alveolar sacs, rupture of the alveolar walls, and destruction of the alveolar capillary bed. Cigarette smoking also plays a major role in the development of emphysema. The symptoms are slow in onset and initially may resemble age-related changes in the respiratory system, causing many patients to experience delayed identification and treatment of this disease. Gradually, increased dyspnea is experienced, which is not relieved by sitting upright as it may have been in the past. A chronic cough develops. As more effort is required for breathing and hypoxia occurs, fatigue, anorexia, weight loss, and weakness are demonstrated. Recurrent respiratory infections, malnutrition, congestive heart failure, and cardiac

arrhythmias are among the more life-threatening complications older adults can experience from emphysema.

Treatment usually includes postural drainage, bronchodilators, the avoidance of stressful situations, and breathing exercises, which are an important part of patient education. Cigarette smoking definitely should be stopped. The older patient may have insufficient energy to consume adequate food and fluid; nurses need to assess for this and arrange for dietary interventions that can facilitate intake (e.g., frequent small feedings and high-protein supplements). If oxygen is used, it must be done with extreme caution and close supervision. It must be remembered that for these patients, a low oxygen level rather than a high carbon dioxide level stimulates respiration. The older patient with emphysema is a high-risk candidate for the development of carbon dioxide narcosis. Respiratory infections should be prevented, and any that do occur, regardless of how minor they may seem, should be promptly reported to the physician. Sedatives, hypnotics, and narcotics may be contraindicated because the patient will be more sensitive to these drugs. It may be useful to consult with patients' physicians regarding the possibility of lung volume reduction surgery (a procedure in which the most severely diseased portions of the lung are removed to allow remaining tissues and respiratory muscles to work better).

Patients with emphysema need a great deal of education and support to be able to manage this disease. Adjusting to the presence of a serious chronic disease requiring special care or even a lifestyle change may be difficult. The patient must learn to pace activities, avoid extremely cold weather, administer medications correctly, and recognize symptoms of infection. Nursing Care Plan 19-1 outlines a sample care plan for the patient with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD).



KEY CONCEPT

The combination of chronic bronchitis and emphysema is known as chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD).

Lung Cancer

Most lung cancer occurs now in patients older than 65 years. The generational patterns in smoking prevalence are a large factor responsible for this, although improved diagnostic tools and greater numbers of people surviving to advanced years certainly play a role in the high incidence of lung cancer in older adults. Lung cancer occurs more fre-

quently in men, although the rate among women is rising. The incidence and mortality rate from lung cancer is highest among black individuals as compared to white, Hispanic, and Asian populations (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2007). Cigarette smokers have twice the incidence as nonsmokers. A high incidence occurs among individuals who are chronically exposed to agents such as asbestos, coal gas, radioactive dusts, and chromates. This emphasizes the importance of obtaining thorough information regarding a patient's occupational history as part of the nursing assessment. Although conclusive evidence is unavailable, some association has been reported between the presence of lung scars, such as those resulting from tuberculosis and pneumonitis, and lung cancer.



KEY CONCEPT

Chronic exposure to cigarette smoke, asbestos, coal gas, radon gas, and air pollutants contribute to the development of lung cancer.

The individual may have lung cancer long before any symptoms develop. Thus, people at high risk should be screened regularly. Dyspnea, coughing, chest pain, fatigue, anorexia, wheezing, and recurrent upper respiratory infections are part of the symptoms seen as the disease progresses. Diagnosis is confirmed through chest roentgenogram, sputum cytology, bronchoscopy, and biopsy. Treatment may consist of surgery, chemotherapy, or radiotherapy, requiring the same type of nursing care as that for patients of any age with this diagnosis.

Lung Abscess

A lung abscess may result from pneumonia, tuberculosis, a malignancy, or trauma to the lung. Aspiration of foreign material can also cause a lung abscess; this may be a particular risk to aged persons who have decreased pharyngeal reflexes. Symptoms, which resemble those of many other respiratory problems, include anorexia, weight loss, fatigue, temperature elevation, and a chronic cough. Sputum production may occur, but this is not always demonstrated in older persons.

Diagnosis and management are the same as that for other age groups. Modifications for postural drainage, an important component of the treatment, are discussed later in this chapter. Because protein can be lost through the sputum, a high-protein, high-calorie diet should be encouraged to maintain and improve the nutritional status of the older patient.

NURSING CARE PLAN 19-1

The Older Adult With Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease

Nursing Diagnoses: Impaired Gas Exchange related to chronic tissue hypoxia; Risk for Infection related to pooling of secretions in lungs

Goal

The patient maintains a patent airway; the patient expectorates secretions from lungs

Nursing Actions

- Teach breathing exercises to increase inspiratory to expiratory ratio using the following guidelines:
 - slowly inhale to the count of 5
 - lean forward (30–40 degrees) and slowly exhale to the count of 10; use pursed-lip breathing for expiration
 - repeat several times, breathing slowly and rhythmically
- Teach abdominal breathing to assist with expiration using the following guidelines:
 - In a lying position*
 - Place a book or small pillow on the abdomen
 - Push out the abdomen during inspiration; observe the book or pillow rise
 - Exhale slowly through pursed lips while pulling in the abdomen
 - In a sitting position*
 - Hold a book or small pillow against the abdomen
 - Push out the abdomen against the book or pillow during inspiration
 - Lean forward, exhale slowly through pursed lips and pull in the abdomen, pressing the book or pillow against the abdomen
- Instruct patient to cough and breathe deeply at least once every 8 hours. Coughing can be stimulated by deep expiration and could be planned following breathing exercises.
- Perform postural drainage exercises as ordered; allow rest periods between position changes and be careful to avoid forceful pounding as older adults with brittle bones could experience a fracture.
- If antibiotics are prescribed, ensure that they are administered on time to maintain a constant blood level.
- Control contact with persons who have signs of respiratory infection.
- Note signs of respiratory infection and promptly report to the physician.
- Maintain a stable room temperature of 75°F.
- If oxygen is prescribed, administer with caution and close observation to prevent carbon dioxide narcosis (see Fig. 19-2).
- Ensure that influenza and pneumococcal vaccines have been administered, unless contraindicated.

Nursing Diagnosis: Activity Intolerance related to chronic hypoxia

Goal

The patient performs ADLs without becoming fatigued or experiencing respiratory symptoms

Nursing Actions

- Determine impact of respiratory symptoms on activities of daily living (ADL), identify actual or potential deficits in engaging in ADL, and provide assistance to compensate for deficits or interventions to increase self-care ability.
- Schedule rest periods between activities.
- Identify factors that contribute to activity intolerance (e.g., interruptions to sleep due to coughing, lack of knowledge of ways to schedule activities to preserve energy) and control or improve as possible.

(continued)

NURSING CARE PLAN 19-1 (CONTINUED)

- Gradually increase activity level; monitor vital signs and discontinue activity if the following occur:
 - decrease in respiratory rate
 - decrease in pulse rate
 - lack of increase in systolic pressure
 - 15 mm Hg increase in diastolic pressure
 - confusion
 - vertigo
 - pain
 - respiratory distress
- Consult with dietician regarding nutritional intake to support activity.

General Nursing Considerations for Respiratory Conditions

Recognizing Symptoms

Older adults should be advised to seek medical attention promptly if any sign of a respiratory infection develops (see Chapter 30). Frequently, older people do not experience the chest pain associated with pneumonia to the same degree younger adults do, and their normally lower body temperature can cause an atypical appearance of fever (i.e., at lower levels than would occur for younger persons). Thus, by the time symptoms are visible to others, pneumonia can be in an advanced stage.

The nurse should teach older persons to report changes in the character of sputum, which could be associated with certain disease processes. For example, the sputum is tenacious, translucent, and grayish white with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease; it is purulent and foul smelling with a lung abscess or bronchiectasis; and it is red and frothy with pulmonary edema and left-sided heart failure.

Preventing Complications

Once respiratory diseases have developed, close monitoring of the patient's status is required to minimize disability and prevent mortality. Close nursing observation can prevent and detect respiratory complications and should include checking the following:

- respiratory rate and volume
- pulse (e.g., a sudden increase can indicate hypoxia)
- blood pressure (e.g., elevations can occur with chronic hypoxia)
- temperature (e.g., not only to detect infection but also to prevent stress on the cardiovascular and respiratory systems as they attempt to meet the body's increased oxygen demands imposed by an elevated temperature)

- neck veins (e.g., for distention)
- patency of airway
- coughing (e.g., frequency, depth, productivity)
- quality of secretions
- mental status

Ensuring Safe Oxygen Administration

Oxygen therapy should be used prudently to treat respiratory disorders in older adults. COPD or chronic high levels of oxygen (from oxygen therapy) can contribute to a person's retaining a higher amount of carbon dioxide in his or her lungs; carbon dioxide retention increases the risk of developing the serious complication of carbon dioxide narcosis during oxygen therapy (Fig. 19-2). The nurse should monitor blood gases and observe the patient for symptoms of carbon dioxide narcosis, which include confusion, muscle twitching, visual defects, profuse perspiration, hypotension, progressive degrees of circulatory failure, and cerebral depression, which may be displayed as increased sleeping or a deep comatose state.

Because inappropriate oxygen administration can have serious consequences for older persons, nurses must strictly adhere to proper procedures when it is used. The nurse should check the gauge frequently to ensure that it is set at the prescribed level and check the oxygen flow for any interruption or blockage from an empty tank, kinked tubing, or other problems. The nurse should evaluate and recommend the method of administration that will be most effective for the individual patient. Older patients who breathe by mouth or have poor control in keeping their lips sealed most of the time may not receive the full benefit of a nasal cannula. An emaciated person whose facial structure does not allow for a tight seal of a face mask may lose a significant portion of oxygen through leakage. A patient who is insecure and anxious inside an oxygen tent may spend oxygen for emotional stress and not gain full therapeutic benefit.

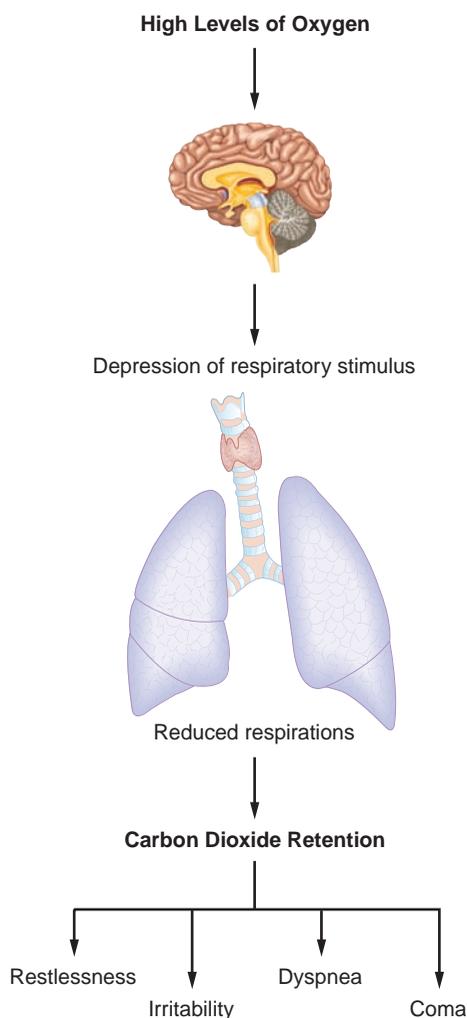


FIGURE 19-2 • Oxygen must be administered to older people carefully. Chronic high levels of oxygen can depress the respiratory stimulus in the brain, thereby reducing respiration and promoting carbon dioxide retention.

The patient's nasal passages should be regularly cleaned to maintain patency. Indications of insufficient oxygenation must be closely monitored; some older persons will not become cyanotic when hypoxic, so the nurse must evaluate other signs.

With increasing numbers of patients being discharged from hospitals on oxygen for home use and with the realization that many older people lack capabilities, knowledge, and caregiver support, realistic appraisals of the patient's ability to use home oxygen safely are crucial. The patient should have information reinforced and receive supervision through home health agencies or other community resources until the patient or caregiver is comfortable and competent with this treatment. The home environment needs to be evaluated for safety. Con-

sideration must be given to the impact of oxygen on the patient and family's total lifestyle; whether home oxygen results in the family having a new lease on life or becoming prisoners in their home can be influenced by the assistance and support they receive.

Performing Postural Drainage

Postural drainage often is prescribed for removing bronchial secretions in certain respiratory conditions. The basic steps for this procedure are the same as those for other adults, with some slight modifications. If aerosol medications are prescribed, the nurse administers them before the postural drainage procedure. The position for postural drainage depends on the individual patient and on the portion of the lung involved. The older patient needs to change positions slowly and be allowed a few minutes to rest between position changes to adjust to the new position. The usual last position for postural drainage—lying face down across the bed with the head at floor level—may be stressful for the older person and have adverse effects. The nurse can consult with the physician regarding the advisability of this position and possible alterations to meet the needs of the individual patient. Cupping and vibration facilitate drainage of secretions; however, old tissues and bones are more fragile and may be injured more easily. The procedure should be discontinued immediately if dyspnea, palpitation, chest pain, diaphoresis, apprehension, or any other sign of distress occurs. Thorough oral hygiene and a period of rest should follow postural drainage. Documentation of the tolerance of the procedure and the amount and characteristic of the mucus drained is essential.

Promoting Productive Coughing

Coughing to remove secretions is important in the management of respiratory problems; however, nonproductive coughing may be a useless expenditure of energy and stressful to the older patient. Various measures can be used to promote productive coughing. Hard candy and other sweets increase secretions, thereby helping to make the cough productive. The breathing exercises discussed earlier can also be beneficial. A variety of humidifiers can be obtained without prescription for home use; the nurse needs to teach the patient the correct, safe use of such an apparatus. Expectorants also may be prescribed to loosen secretions and make coughing more productive. A basic, although extremely significant, measure to reinforce is good fluid intake. Patients should be advised to use paper tissues, not cloth handkerchiefs, for sputum expectoration. Frequent handwashing and oral hygiene are essential and have many physical and psychological benefits.

Consider This Case

Seventy-nine-year-old Mr. B, who has COPD, lives at home with his 80-year-old wife, who has Alzheimer's disease. Mrs. B is able to ambulate and perform activities of daily living with guidance from Mr. B; however, Mrs. B displays poor judgment and requires close supervision. Recently, Mr. B was hospitalized for pneumonia and discharged with home oxygen. His wife, who stayed with a friend during Mr. B's hospitalization, has returned home. Mr. B desires to care for his wife at home but finds his energy reserves are low and has difficulty tracing her steps throughout the house while attached to his oxygen. The couple desperately wants to stay in their home but have no family in the area and receive only limited assistance from friends and neighbors.

THINK CRITICALLY

- What are the risks faced by this couple and how can they be minimized?
- What assistance could be provided to the couple?



KEY CONCEPT

Nonproductive coughing can be a useless expenditure of energy and can be stressful to an older adult.

Using Complementary Therapies

Some herbs are believed to affect respiratory health. Mullein, marshmallow, and slippery elm have mucus-secreting effects and can soothe irritated respiratory linings. Lobelia, coltsfoot, and sanguinaria have been used as expectorants. Aromatherapy using eucalyptus, pine, lavender, and lemon may prove useful. Prior to introducing any herbal remedy, the nurse must research for possible interactions with medications the patient is using and discuss with the physician.

Hot, spicy foods (e.g., garlic, onion, chili peppers) are recommended to open air passages, whereas mucus-forming foods, such as dairy products and processed foods, are ill advised. Vitamins A, C, E, and B6; zinc; and proteolytic enzymes are suggested as dietary supplements.

Acupuncture, under a trained therapist, is used for the management of asthma, emphysema, and hay fever. Acupressure is being used with some benefit by persons with asthma, bronchitis, and emphysema. Yoga can promote deep breathing and good oxygenation of tissues. Rolfing (a technique using pressure applied with the fingers, knuckles, and elbows to release fascial adhesions and realign the body into balance) and massage can free the rib cage and improve breathing.

Growing numbers of Americans are using complementary therapies for the prevention and management of respiratory conditions. Although the efficacy of these methods may not be fully established, nurses should keep an open mind; if the therapy does no harm and is believed by the indi-

vidual to be of benefit, positive outcomes could be achieved by combining complementary with conventional treatments.

Promoting Self-Care

Bronchodilators may be prescribed in inhaler form for the treatment of bronchial asthma and other conditions causing bronchospasm, such as chronic bronchitis or emphysema. Effective use of these devices depends on the ability of the individual to manipulate the apparatus and coordinate the spray with inhalation—areas that can be problematic for older persons with slower responses, poorer coordination, arthritic joints, or general weakness. Before an inhaler is prescribed, the ability of the patient to use it correctly must be assessed. Respiratory therapists can be of assistance in recommending devices that can assist patients in overcoming specific obstacles to using inhalers. If the patient is able to manage the skills required for use, instructions and precautions should be reviewed in depth. The patient and caregivers must understand the serious cardiac effects of excessive use. Normally, one or two inhalations are sufficient to relieve symptoms for 4 hours. To ensure that the inhaler does not become empty unexpectedly and leave the person without medication when needed, the fullness of the inhaler should be evaluated periodically by placing it in a bowl of water. When full, the inhaler will sink; when empty, it will float—varying levels in between indicate partial levels of fullness.



KEY CONCEPT

The effective use of inhalers requires the ability of the user to manipulate the apparatus and coordinate the spray with inhalation—tasks that may be difficult for some older persons.

Not long ago, patients on ventilator support were found in intensive care units of acute hospitals. Today, growing numbers of ventilator-dependent persons are being managed at home or in long-term care facilities. Each ventilator has unique features, and nurses should seek the guidance of a respiratory care specialist to ensure a thorough understanding and correct use of the equipment. Whether in their own homes or in an institutional setting, these patients need strong multidisciplinary support to assist with the complex web of physical, emotional, and social care needs they may present. Nurses can play a significant role in providing a realistic assessment of the abilities of patients and family caregivers to manage ventilator-related care. It makes little sense to use a ventilator to save a patient's life and then threaten that life by sending the person home with a family who cannot meet care needs. Special attention also must be paid to the quality of life of the ventilator-dependent patient; counseling, sensory stimulation, expressive therapies, and other resources should be used.

Providing Encouragement

Respiratory problems are frightening and produce anxiety. Patients with these conditions require psychological support and reassurance, especially during periods of dyspnea. Patients need a complete understanding of their disease and its management to help reduce their anxiety. Repeated encouragement may be required to assist the patient in meeting the demands of a chronic disease. Some patients may find it necessary to spend most of their time indoors to avoid the extremes of hot and cold weather; some may have to learn to transport oxygen with them as they travel outside their homes; some may need to move to a different climate for relief. These changes in lifestyle may have a significant impact on their total lives. As with any persons having chronic diseases, patients with respiratory problems can benefit from being assisted to live the fullest life possible with their conditions, rather than become prisoners to them.

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. What self-imposed and environmentally imposed risks to younger adults can contribute to the development of respiratory conditions in later life?
2. In what ways can age-related changes affect the development, recognition, and management of respiratory conditions?
3. What key points would you include in an educational program for the promotion of respiratory health in senior citizens?

4. Describe the precautions that must be taken when oxygen is administered to older adults.

Resources

American Lung Association

<http://www.lungusa.org>

Asthma and Allergy Foundation of America

<http://www.aafa.org>

National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute Information Center

<http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov>

Office on Smoking and Health, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention

<http://www.cdc.gov/tobacco>

Reference

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2007). Rate of lung cancer by race and ethnicity. Retrieved August 10, 2007, from <http://www.cdc.gov/cancer/lung/statistics/trends.htm>.

Recommended Readings

- Barnes, P. J. (2001). Modern management of COPD in the elderly. *Annals of Long-Term Care*, 9(5), 51–56.
- Blazer, D. G., Landerman, L. R., Hays, J. C., Grady, T. A., Havlik, R., & Corti, M. C. (2001). Blood pressure and mortality risk in older people: Comparison between African Americans and whites. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*, 49(3), 375–381.
- Cooley, M. E., Sipples, R. L., Murphy, M., & Sarna, L. (2008). Smoking cessation and lung cancer: Oncology nurses can make a difference. *Seminars in Oncology Nursing*, 24(1), 16–26.
- Drinka, P. J., & Hanlon, J. (2007). Aspiration of gastric contents. *Journal of the American Medical Directors Association*, 8(6), 345–346.
- Falsey, A. R. (2007). Community-acquired viral pneumonia. *Clinics in Geriatric Medicine*, August 23(3), 535–552.
- Fraser, M. (2007). Community-acquired pneumonia in the elderly. *ElderCare*, 7(1):6–8.
- Goodell, T. T. (2007). Sexuality in chronic lung disease. *Nursing Clinics of North America*, 42(4), 631–638.
- Health Services Technology Assessment Text. (2008). Lung Cancer Screening: An Update for the U.S. Preventive Services Task Force, U.S. Preventive Services Task Force Evidence Syntheses, <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/bv.fcgi?rid=hstat3.section.33832>.
- Janowiak, J. J., & Hawthorne, D. C. (1999). A comprehensive approach to controlling allergies and asthma. *Alternative and Complementary Therapies*, 5(5), 251–253.
- Jeffries, M., Townsend, R., & Horrigan, E. (2007). Helping your patient combat lung cancer. *Nursing 2007*, (12), 36–41.
- Jett, K. E. (2006). Examining the evidence: Knowing if and when to transfer a resident with pneumonia from the nursing home to the hospital or subacute unit. *Geriatric Nursing*, 27(5), 280.

- Joyce, M., Schwartz, S., & Huhmann, M. (2008). Supportive care in lung cancer. *Seminars in Oncology Nursing*, 24(1), 57–67.
- Regan, S. F., & Fowler, C. (2002). Influenza: Past, present, and future. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 28(11), 30–37.
- Robinson, A. W., & Sloan, H. L. (2000). Heart health and older women. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 26(5), 38–45.
- Rosenberg, H., & Resnick, B. (2003). Exercise intervention in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Geriatric Nursing*, 24(2), 90–98.
- Rosenberg, H., & Resnick, B. (2003). Exercise intervention in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Geriatric Nursing*, 24(2), 90–98.
- Sheahan, S. L., & Musialowski, R. (2001). Clinical implications of respiratory system changes in aging. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 27(5), 26–34.
- Williams, S. G., Schmidt, D. K., Redd, S. C., & Storms, W., and the National Asthma Education and Prevention Program. (2003). Key clinical activities for quality asthma care. Recommendations of the National Asthma Education and Prevention Program. *MMWR Recommendations Report, March 28(52) (RR-6)*, 1–8.
- Wingo, P. A., Cardinez, C. J., & Landis, S. H. (2003). Long term trends in cancer mortality in the United States. *Cancer*, 97(suppl 12), 3133–3275.

CHAPTER 20

Circulation

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Effects of Aging on Cardiovascular Health Cardiovascular Health Promotion

- Proper Nutrition
- Adequate Exercise
- Cigarette Smoke Avoidance
- Stress Management
- Proactive Interventions

Selected Cardiovascular Conditions

- Hypertension
- Hypotension
- Congestive Heart Failure
- Pulmonary Emboli
- Coronary Artery Disease
- Arrhythmias
- Peripheral Vascular Disease

General Nursing Considerations for Cardiovascular Conditions

- Prevention
- Keeping the Patient Informed
- Preventing Complications
- Promoting Circulation
- Providing Foot Care
- Managing Problems Associated With Peripheral Vascular Disease
- Promoting Normality
- Integrating Complementary Therapies

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 Describe the effects of aging on cardiovascular health and circulation.
- 2 List factors that promote cardiovascular health.
- 3 Identify unique features of common cardiovascular diseases in older adults.
- 4 Describe nursing actions to assist patients with cardiovascular conditions.

Improved technology for early diagnosis and treatment, along with increased public awareness of the importance of proper nutrition, exercise, and smoking cessation have resulted in a decline in heart disease in the population as a whole. It is anticipated that future generations will experience fewer deaths and disabilities associated with cardiovascular diseases. Unfortunately, today's older population carries the insults of many years of inadequate preventive, diagnostic, and treatment practices which cause them to experience cardiovascular disease as the major cause of disability and death. These compound some of the effects that aging has on the cardiovascular system. With the high prevalence of cardiovascular conditions in older adults, it is crucial that actions be planned to prevent and address some of the potential nursing problems related to circulation.

Effects of Aging on Cardiovascular Health

With age, heart valves increase in thickness and rigidity due to sclerosis and fibrosis. The aorta becomes dilated and a slight ventricular hypertrophy develops. The heart muscle is less efficient and loses some of its contractile strength, causing a reduction in cardiac output when the demands on the heart are increased. More time is required for the cycle of diastolic filling and systolic emptying to be completed. These changes typically are gradual and become most apparent when the older adult is faced with an unusual physiological stress, such as heightened activity or an infection.

Good tissue health depends on adequate tissue perfusion (i.e., circulation to and from a body part). To ensure good tissue perfusion, arterial blood pressure must remain within a normal range. Unfortunately, older adults are more likely to suffer from conditions that can alter tissue perfusion, such as the following:

- cardiovascular disease: arteriosclerotic heart disease, hypertension, congestive heart failure, varicosities
- diseases: diabetes mellitus, cancer, renal failure
- blood dyscrasias: anemia, thrombus, transfusion reactions
- hypotension: arising from anaphylactic shock, hypovolemia, hypoglycemia, hyperglycemia, orthostatic hypotension
- medication side effects: antihypertensives, vasodilators, diuretics, antipsychotics
- other conditions: edema, inflammation, prolonged immobility, hypothermia, malnutrition

Nursing Diagnosis Table 20-1 identifies diagnoses associated with age-related risks to circulation. The nurse can assess the adequacy of tissue circulation in older adults by reviewing the individual's health history, evaluating vital signs, inspecting the body, and noting signs or symptoms. Box 20-1 lists indications of ineffective tissue perfusion.

Cardiovascular Health Promotion

The prevention of cardiovascular problems in all age groups is an important goal for all nurses to consider. By teaching the young and old to identify and lower risk factors related to cardiovascular disease, nurses promote optimum health and function. Important practices to reinforce include eating properly, getting adequate exercise, avoiding cigarette smoke, managing stress, and using proactive interventions when appropriate.

Proper Nutrition

A diet that provides all daily requirements maintains weight within an ideal range for height and age, and controls cholesterol intake is beneficial. Box 20-2 lists some general dietary guidelines for reducing the risk of cardiovascular disease. Some nutritional supplements can also help cardiovascular health (Box 20-3).

NURSING DIAGNOSIS

TABLE 20-1 Aging and Risks to Adequate Circulation

Causes or Contributing Factors	Nursing Diagnosis
Decreased elasticity of blood vessels	Ineffective Tissue Perfusion
Increased resistance of peripheral vessels	Activity Intolerance
Decreased coronary blood flow	Ineffective Tissue Perfusion
Less efficient cardiac oxygen usage	Impaired Gas Exchange
Reduced proportion of oxygen extracted from arterial blood by tissues	Ineffective Tissue Perfusion
Reduced cardiovascular responsiveness to adrenergic stimulation	Activity Intolerance

BOX 20-1 Indications of Ineffective Tissue Perfusion

Hypotension
Tachycardia, decreased pulse quality
Claudication
Edema
Loss of hair on extremities
Tissue necrosis, stasis ulcers
Dyspnea, increased respirations

Pallor, coolness of skin
Cyanosis
Decreased urinary output
Delirium (altered cognition and level of consciousness)
Restlessness
Memory disturbance

Dr. Dean Ornish has promoted a diet that has been shown to be effective not only in preventing, but also in reversing, heart disease (Ornish, 2005; Ornish 2008). The Reversal Diet for people who have cardiovascular disease consists of the following:

- less than 10% of calories from fat and very little of those from saturated fat
- high fiber intake
- exclusion of all oils and animal products, except nonfat milk and yogurt
- exclusion of caffeine and other stimulants
- allows, but does not encourage, less than 2 oz. of alcohol per day
- no calorie restriction

Ornish's Prevention Diet is intended for persons with a cholesterol level less than 150 or a ratio of total cholesterol to high-density lipoprotein (HDL) cholesterol of less than 3 who have no cardiac disease. It is similar to the Reversal Diet, with the exception that as much as 20% of calories can come from fat. (In addition to dietary modifica-

tions, Dr. Ornish's program advocates moderate exercise, increased intimacy, stress reduction, and other healthy practices.)

In recent years, Ornish's diet has been criticized as being too restrictive of fats and contributing to the rise in obesity as people consume excess carbohydrates with the restricted fat intake. Despite the criticism and although many people find the restrictive diet proposed by Ornish to be difficult to follow on a long-term basis, any sustained dietary and lifestyle modifications that support the goals of reduced fats and stimulants, increased dietary fiber and exercise, and effective stress management certainly will move people in the right direction.

**POINT TO PONDER**

Does your current diet increase your risk for cardiac disease? If so, what factors could present obstacles to you in changing your dietary pattern to one that is more vegetarian, and what could you do about overcoming these obstacles? ●

BOX 20-2 Dietary Guidelines for Reducing the Risk of Cardiovascular Disease

- Reduce the intake of fried foods, animal fats, and partially hydrogenated fats. Beware of fast foods, which tend to be high in fat and calories.
- Increase the intake of complex carbohydrates and fiber. Use unrefined whole grain products, such as whole wheat, oats and oatmeal, rye, barley, corn, popcorn, brown rice, wild rice, buckwheat, bulgur (cracked wheat), millet, quinoa, and sorghum.
- Maintain caloric intake between ideal ranges. Reduce consumption of nutrient-poor foods.
- Use monounsaturated oils (e.g., canola oil, cold-pressed olive oil) and omega-6 oils (e.g., blackcurrant oil, evening primrose oil).
- Eat fish rich in omega-3 fatty acids (e.g., salmon, trout, and herring) at least twice weekly.
- Reduce intake of red meat, sugar, and highly processed foods.
- Limit alcoholic beverages.

BOX 20-3 Nutritional Supplements for Cardiovascular Health*

Vitamin B₆: effective in preventing the homocysteine-induced oxidation of cholesterol, which can aid in preventing heart attacks and strokes

Vitamin B₁₂: can decrease homocysteine levels

Folic acid: essential for proper metabolism of homocysteine

Vitamin C: helps prevent the formation of oxysterols, maintains integrity of arterial walls

Selenium: reduces platelet aggregation

Magnesium: aids in dilating arteries and facilitating circulation, may prevent calcification of vessels, lowers

total cholesterol, raises high-density lipoprotein (HDL) cholesterol, inhibits platelet aggregation

Calcium: may decrease total cholesterol and inhibit platelet aggregation

Chromium: lowers total cholesterol and triglycerides (particularly when combined with niacin), raises HDL cholesterol

Potassium: can aid in reducing reliance on antihypertensives and diuretics

Fish oil: reduces deaths from coronary artery disease, lowers blood pressure

*Note: It is preferable to get necessary vitamins and minerals from the diet, not through supplements.

Proper nutrition throughout life is important to prevent hyperlipidemia, which is a significant risk factor in cardiovascular disease. In the past several decades, much has been learned about the significant reduction in cardiovascular and cerebrovascular incidents associated with the reduction of cholesterol levels in middle-aged persons. Although there is insufficient research to demonstrate the benefits in persons of advanced age, reducing cholesterol intake is generally a positive practice. (For more discussion on hyperlipidemia, see Chapter 27.) Lifestyle modifications to lower cholesterol can also help people avoid the use of cholesterol medications, which, despite their benefits, can cause side effects, such as muscle pain, weakness, fatigue, erectile dysfunction, memory loss, and burning and tingling in the hands and feet.

Adequate Exercise

Automobiles, elevators, modern appliances, and less physically demanding jobs lead to a more sedentary lifestyle than may be optimally healthy. Related to this may be the practice of being physically inactive during the week and then filling weekends with housecleaning, yard work, and sports activities. A sensible distribution of exercise throughout the week is advisable and is more beneficial to cardiovascular function than are periodic spurts of activity. The lack of physical exercise, known as physical deconditioning, can heighten many of the age-related functional declines that aging people can experience. On the other hand, a slower rate of decline and improved cardiovascular status has been found in middle-aged persons who exercised regu-

larly. Nurses can encourage persons who dislike scheduled exercise programs to maximize opportunities for exercise during their routine activities (e.g., using stairs instead of an elevator, parking their car on the far end of the lot, or walking to the local newsstand to buy a newspaper instead of having it delivered).



KEY CONCEPT

In addition to traditional aerobic, strengthening, and balance exercises, yoga and t'ai chi are good ways to enhance circulation.

Cigarette Smoke Avoidance

Although many smokers are aware of the health risks of cigarettes, breaking the habit is quite difficult, and, for this, people need more than to be told to stop. They require considerable support and assistance, which are often obtainable through smoking cessation programs. Acupuncture has proved helpful to some individuals for smoking cessation. Even if the patient has had repeated failures in attempting to quit, the next try could be successful and should be encouraged. In addition to avoiding cigarette smoking themselves, nurses can instruct people to limit their exposure to the cigarette smoke produced by others, which also can be detrimental.

Stress Management

Stress is a normal part of life. Nurses can teach people to identify the stressors in their lives, their unique reactions to stress, and how they can more

effectively manage stress. Relaxation exercises, yoga, meditation, and a variety of other stress-reducing activities can prove beneficial to nearly all persons.

Gerontological nurses understand that it is much easier and more useful to establish good health practices early in life than to change them or deal with their outcomes in old age.

Proactive Interventions

Research continues to unfold that sheds light on routines that people can establish to promote healthy hearts. An aspirin a day can prove to be a good preventive measure because low-dose aspirin has been shown to reduce the risk of heart attack. A daily aspirin dose at 75 to 81 milligrams is sufficient to provide heart disease prevention benefits, although a dose as low as 30 milligrams was found to be adequate (Campbell et al., 2007). A study of men who consumed alcohol at least 3 or 4 days per week showed a reduction in the risk of myocardial infarction, suggesting that light drinking could be beneficial (Klatsky & Udaltsova, 2007; Leighton & Urquiaga, 2007). Of course, various nutritional supplements are suggested to have a role in cardiovascular health. Although additional insights are needed to fully understand the effects of these types of interventions, at this point it is reasonable to suggest that a daily low-dose aspirin, daily multivitamin supplement, and enjoyment of light alcoholic beverages in moderation could be beneficial to adults of all ages in preventing cardiovascular disease.

For individuals at risk for heart disease, undergoing C-reactive protein screening is another preventive measure (Box 20-4).

A comprehensive assessment of the cardiovascular system is useful in not only identifying signs of disease, but also, in learning about patients' lifestyle habits that could contribute to cardiovascular disease (Assessment Guide 20-1). During the assessment, the nurse identifies actual and potential problems and develops nursing diagnoses accordingly. Nursing Diagnosis Table 20-2 lists nursing diagnoses related to cardiovascular problems.



KEY CONCEPT

Cardiovascular health in old age begins with positive health practices in younger years.

Selected Cardiovascular Conditions

Hypertension

The incidence of hypertension increases with advancing age and is the most prevalent cardiovascular disease of older adults, making it a problem the gerontological nurse commonly encounters. Many older individuals have high blood pressure arising from the vasoconstriction associated with aging, which produces peripheral resistance. Hyperthyroidism, parkinsonism, Paget disease, anemia, and a thiamine deficiency can also be responsible for hypertension.

Individuals with a systolic pressure ≥ 140 and a diastolic pressure ≥ 90 are considered hypertensive. The nurse should carefully assess the patient's blood pressure by checking it several times with the person in standing, sitting, and prone positions. Anxiety,

BOX 20-4 Importance of C-Reactive Protein Screening

With the awareness that inflammation in the bloodstream can be a cause of myocardial infarction, the American Heart Association and the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention have recommended C-reactive protein (CRP) screening for persons at moderate risk of heart disease (Ridker, 2003). CRP is a marker of inflammation that is a stronger predictor of cardiovascular events than low-density lipoprotein (LDL) cholesterol. Two measures of CRP are suggested, with the lower value or the average being used to determine vascular risk. Because CRP levels are stable over long periods of time, are not affected by food intake, and demonstrate almost no circadian variation, there is no need to obtain fasting blood samples for CRP assessment. The cost of CRP testing is comparable to that of standard cholesterol screening and may

be quite cost-effective in terms of avoiding serious complications and death.

Individuals with CRP levels >3 mg/dL who have LDL cholesterol <130 mg/dL are considered a high risk group and are advised to follow ATP III lifestyle interventions. People with an elevated CRP and LDL between 130–160 mg/dL are at elevated global risk and should be advised to adhere strictly to current ATP treatment guidelines. Those individuals with elevated CRP and LDL levels >160 mg/dL may need to be placed on medications and closely monitored for compliance to their treatment plan.

Significantly elevated levels of CRP could be related to other causes of systemic inflammation, such as lupus or endocarditis; additional diagnostic testing is warranted.



ASSESSMENT GUIDE 20-1

Cardiovascular Function

Early detection of cardiac problems can be difficult because of the atypical presentation of symptoms, the subtle nature of the progression of cardiac disease, and the ease with which cardiac symptoms can be mistakenly attributed to other health conditions (e.g., indigestion, arthritis). Careful questioning and observation can yield valuable insight into problems that have recently developed or escaped recognition.

Clues to peripheral vascular disorders often can be detected through general contact with patients, who may comment that their feet always feel cold and numb, that they experience burning sensations in the calf, or that they become dizzy on rising. They may ambulate slowly, rub their legs, or kick off their shoes. Varicosities may be noted on the legs. Such observations can be used to introduce discussion of peripheral vascular problems.

GENERAL OBSERVATIONS

Assessment of the cardiovascular system can begin at the moment you see the patient by observing indicators of cardiovascular status. Such observations would note the following:

- **Generalized coloring:** Note pallor, which can accompany cardiovascular disorders.
- **Energy level:** Note fatigue and the amount of activity that can be tolerated.
- **Breathing pattern:** Observe respirations while the patient ambulates, changes position, and speaks. Acute dyspnea warrants prompt medical attention because it can be a symptom of myocardial infarction in older adults.
- **Condition of nails:** Inspect the color, shape, thickness, curvature, and markings in nailbeds, which can give insight into problems. Nails may be thick and dry in the presence of cardiovascular disease. Check blanching; circulatory insufficiency can delay the nails' return to pink after blanching. Advanced cardiac disease can cause clubbing of the nails.
- **Status of vessels:** Inspect the vessels on the extremities, head, and neck. Note varicosities, as well as redness on the skin above a vessel.
- **Hair on extremities:** Hair loss can accompany poor circulation.
- **Edema:** Swelling of the ankles and fingers is often indicative of cardiovascular disorders.
- **Mental status:** Inadequate cerebral circulation often manifests itself through confusion; evaluate cognitive function and level of consciousness.

INTERVIEW

The interview should include a review of function, signs, and symptoms. Ask questions pertaining to the following topics.

Symptoms

Inquire regarding the presence of dizziness, light-headedness, edema, cold extremities, palpitations, blackouts, breathing difficulties, coughing, hemoptysis, chest pain or unusual sensations in chest, neck, back, or jaws. It is helpful to use specific examples in questions: "Do you ever feel as though there is a vise pressing against your chest?" "Have you ever become sweaty and had trouble breathing while you felt that unusual sensation in your chest?" "Do you find that rings and shoes become tighter as the day goes on?" "Do you ever get the sensation of the room spinning when you rise from lying down?" When symptoms are reported, explore their frequency, duration, and management.

Some patients may be able to relate symptoms to vascular problems. However, others may be unaware that signs such as light-headedness, scaling skin, edema, or discoloration can be associated with peripheral vascular disorders; therefore, asking specific questions is crucial. Elicit information through questions such as the following:

- "Do your arms or legs ever become cold or numb?"
- "Do dark spots or sores ever develop on your legs?"
- "Do your legs get painful or swollen when you walk or stand?"
- "Do you ever have periods of feeling dizzy, light-headed, or confused?"
- "Does one leg ever look larger than the other?"

Changes in Function

Ask the patient if he or she has noted changes in physical or mental function:

- "Do you have difficulty or have you noticed any changes in your ability to walk, work, or take care of yourself?"
- "Do you ever have periods in which your thinking doesn't seem clear?"
- "Have you had to restrict activities or change your lifestyle recently?"

Lifestyle Practices

- How often do you exercise and what type of exercises do you do?
- What is your pattern of alcohol consumption?



ASSESSMENT GUIDE 20-1 (Continued)

Cardiovascular Function

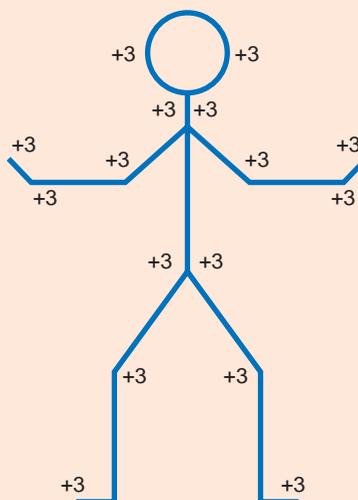
- What supplements (vitamin, herbal, homeopathic) are you using?
- Do you do anything to promote health (e.g., take a daily aspirin, follow a special diet)?

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

- Inspect the patient from head to toe, noting areas of irritation or redness over a vessel, distended vessels, edema, and pallor: Blanching of the nailbeds gives information about circulation. An examination of the extremities should include palpitation of the pulses and temperature of the extremities and observation of hair distribution on the legs.
- Assessment of apical and radial pulses should normally reveal a pulse that ranges between 60 and 100 beats/min. Remember that older hearts take longer to recover from stress; thus, tachycardia may be detected as a result of a stress that occurred several hours earlier. If tachycardia is discovered in an older person, reassess in several hours.
- Assess blood pressure in lying, sitting, and standing positions to determine the presence of postural hypotension (Fig. A); positional drops greater than 20 mm Hg are significant.
- Auscultate the heart to detect thrills and bruits. Palpate the point of maximal impulse to identify displacement, which can occur with problems such as left ventricular hypertrophy. Measure jugular venous pressure.
- Palpate pulses bilaterally for condition of the vessel wall, rate, rhythm, quality, contour; and equality at the following sites:
 - *Temporal pulse*, the only palpable artery of the head, located anterior to the ear, overlying the temporal bone; normally appears tortuous
 - *Brachial pulse* located in the groove between the biceps and triceps; usually palpated if arterial insufficiency is suspected
 - *Radial pulse* branching from the brachial artery, the radial artery extends from the forearm to the wrist on the radial side and is palpated on the flexor surface of the wrist laterally
 - *Ulnar pulse* also branching from the brachial artery, the ulnar artery extends from the forearm to the wrist on the ulnar side and is palpated on the flexor surface of the wrist medially; usually palpated if arterial insufficiency is suspected
 - *Femoral pulse*; the femoral artery is palpated at the inguinal ligament midway between the antero-superior iliac spine and the pubic tubercle
 - *Popliteal pulse* located behind the knee; the popliteal artery is the continuation of the femoral artery. Having the patient flex the knee during palpitation can aid in locating this pulse.
 - *Posterior tibial pulse* palpable behind and below the medial malleolus
 - *Dorsalis pedis pulse* palpated at the groove between the first two tendons on the medial side of the dorsum of the foot; this and the posterior tibial pulse can be congenitally absent
- Rate pulses on a scale from 0 to 4:
 - 0 = no pulse
 - 1 = thready, easily obliterated pulse
 - 2 = pulse difficult to palpate and easily obliterated
 - 3 = normal pulse
 - 4 = strong, bounding pulse, not obliterated with pressure.



A



B



ASSESSMENT GUIDE 20-1 (Continued)

Cardiovascular Function

Often, a stick figure is used to document the quality of pulses at different locations (Fig. B).

- While assessing pulses, inspect the vessels for signs of phlebitis. Signs could include redness, tenderness, and edema over a vein. Sometimes, visible signs of inflammation may not be present, and the primary indication that phlebitis exists can be tenderness of the vessel detected through palpation. A positive Homans' sign (i.e., pain when the affected leg is dorsiflexed) can accompany deep phlebitis of the leg.
- Inspect the legs for discoloration, hair loss, edema, scaling skin, pallor; lesions, and tortuous-looking veins.
- Assess skin temperature by touching the skin surface in various areas.
- Assure patient has had recent electrocardiogram and blood screening for cholesterol and CRP (see Box 20-4).
- Alterations in cerebral circulation can cause disruptions to cognitive function; therefore, a mental status evaluation can provide useful information about circulatory problems.

stress, or activity before the blood pressure check should be noted, because these factors may be responsible for a temporary elevation. The anxiety of being examined by a physician or of preparing for and experiencing a visit with a health care provider frequently causes elevated blood pressure in a usually normotensive individual.

Awakening with a dull headache, impaired memory, disorientation, confusion, epistaxis, and a slow tremor may be symptoms of hypertension. The presence of these symptoms with an elevated blood pressure reading usually warrants treatment. Hypertensive older patients are advised to rest, reduce their sodium intake, and, if necessary, reduce their weight. Aggressive antihypertensive therapy is discouraged for older persons because of the risk of a sudden dangerous decrease in blood pressure. Nurses should observe for signs indicating blood pressure that is too low to meet the patient's demands, such as dizziness, confusion, syncope, restlessness, and drowsiness. An elevated blood urea nitrogen level may be present also. These signs should be observed for and communicated to the physician if they appear. In the management of the older hypertensive person, it is a challenge to achieve a blood pressure level high enough to provide optimum circulation yet low enough to prevent serious related complications.

Controversy still exists as to the proper treatment of hypertension in older patients; therefore, hypertensive older adults may receive a wide range of therapy, rather than antihypertensive drugs alone. Drugs that can be used to treat hypertension include diuretics, beta-blockers, calcium channel blockers, and angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors. Because they have a higher risk for adverse reactions from antihypertensive drugs, older patients should be assisted in using nonpharmacologic measures to reduce blood pressure when-

ever possible. Biofeedback, yoga, meditation, and relaxation exercises can prove effective in reducing blood pressure (Yeh, Davis, & Phillips, 2006). In fact, the National Institutes of Health recommended meditation over prescription drugs for mild hypertension (Astin, Shapiro, Eisenberg, & Forsy, 2003). Fish oil supplements can reduce blood pressure in hypertensive individuals. Higher whole-grain intake was associated with a reduced risk of hypertension in middle-aged and older women, suggesting a potential role for increasing whole-grain intake in the primary prevention of hypertension and its cardiovascular complications (Wang et al., 2007). Some herbs have hypotensive effects, including garlic, hawthorn berries, rauwolfia, and periwinkle. On the other hand, herbs such as ginseng and licorice can cause a rise in blood pressure when used regularly. The impact of herbs on blood pressure emphasizes the need to inquire about the use of these products during the assessment.



KEY CONCEPT

Biofeedback, yoga, meditation, and relaxation exercises have been effective in reducing blood pressure.

Hypotension

A decline in systolic blood pressure of 20 mm Hg or more after rising and standing for 1 minute is postural hypotension; a similar reduction within 1 hour of eating is postprandial hypotension. Various studies have shown that many older adults experience problems related to postural and postprandial hypotension due to the increased intake of vasoactive medications and concomitant decrease in physiologic function, such as

NURSING DIAGNOSIS

TABLE 20-2 Nursing Diagnosis Related to Cardiovascular Problems

Causes or Contributing Factors	Nursing Diagnosis
Insufficient oxygen transport, poor circulation, electrolyte imbalance, bed rest, pain, fatigue, effects of medications, fear of harming self	Activity Intolerance
Change in self-concept, fear of unknown procedures or diagnosis, hospitalization	Anxiety
Bed rest, medications, diet, stress, inactivity, insufficient fluids, pain, hospital environment	Constipation
Bradycardia, tachycardia, congestive heart failure, myocardial infarction, hypertension, cor pulmonale, stress, medications	Ineffective Tissue Perfusion
Vasospasm, occlusion, phlebitis, spasms, diagnostic tests, surgery, poor positioning, exertion	Acute Pain
Hospitalization, altered self-concept, helplessness	Ineffective Coping
Separation of patient from family, lack of knowledge	Compromised Family Coping
Hospitalization, forfeiture of activities, fear of impact	Deficient Diversional Activity
Patient's illness; financial, physical, and psychological burdens of illness; hospitalization; role changes	Interrupted Family Process
Change in function, disability, procedures, pain, lack of knowledge	Fear
Ascites, hypovolemia, anorexia	Deficient Fluid Volume
Decreased cardiac output, excess fluid intake, dependent venous pooling/stasis	Excess Fluid Volume
Change in body function or lifestyle, pain	Chronic Low Self-Esteem
Lack of knowledge, loss of independence	Ineffective Health Maintenance
Disability, pain, fatigue	Impaired Home Maintenance
Impaired oxygen transport, invasive procedures, medications, immobility	Risk for Infection
Poor circulation, fatigue, immobility, pain, medications	Risk for Injury
Unfamiliar diagnostic tests, diagnosis, treatments, diet, ineffective coping, denial	Deficient Knowledge
Pain, fatigue, bed rest, edema, medications	Impaired Physical Mobility
Lack of knowledge or skill, prescribed plan in conflict with beliefs and practices, insufficient funds	Noncompliance
Anorexia, depression, stress, medications, nonacceptance of prescribed diet, anxiety	Imbalanced Nutrition: Less Than Body Requirements
Inability to participate in usual activities, lack of knowledge, hospitalization	Powerlessness
Immobility, pain, edema, fatigue	Self-Care Deficit
Change in body function, new diagnosis, hospitalization, immobility, pain	Disturbed Body Image
Metabolic changes, impaired oxygen transport, medications, immobility, pain, stress, hospital environment	Disturbed Sensory Perception
Pain, fatigue, fear, anxiety, depression, medications, hospitalization, lack of knowledge	Sexual Dysfunction
Edema, immobility, impaired oxygen transport	Impaired Skin Integrity
Impaired oxygen transport, immobility, hospitalization, pain, anxiety, inactivity, medications, depression	Disturbed Sleep Pattern
Metabolic or electrolyte imbalances, medications, anxiety, depression	Disturbed Thought Processes
Decreased cardiac output, myocardial infarction, angina, congestive heart failure, hypertension, vasoconstriction, hypotension, immobility, medications	Altered Tissue Perfusion
Diuretics, bed rest, hospital environment, anxiety	Impaired Urinary Elimination

baroreceptor sensitivity (Frishman et al., 2003). This can be secondary to age-related changes, such as blunting of the baroreflex-mediated heart rate response to hypotensive and hypertensive stimuli and the presence of diseases that affect the heart. Postprandial hypotension also can be related to antihypertensive medications taken before eating and a high carbohydrate intake at meals (the effects can be prevented by drinking a caffeinated beverage after the meal). Hypotension can have serious consequences for older persons, including a high risk for falls, stroke, syncope, and coronary complications.

Congestive Heart Failure

The incidence of congestive heart failure (CHF) increases significantly with age and is a leading cause of hospitalization of older adults. It is a potential complication in older patients with arteriosclerotic heart disease; the successful treatment of older people with myocardial infarction (MI) with thrombolytic agents contributes to the increasing incidence. Coronary artery disease is responsible for most cases of CHF, followed by hypertension; other conditions that can precipitate CHF in older adults include cor pulmonale, mitral stenosis, subacute bacterial endocarditis, hypothyroidism, anemia, vitamin deficiencies, bronchitis, pneumonia, and congenital heart disease. This problem is common in older adults because of age-related changes, such as reduced elasticity and lumen size of vessels and rises in blood pressure that interfere with the blood supply to the heart muscle. The decreased cardiac reserves limit the heart's ability to withstand effects of disease or injury.

Symptoms of CHF in older patients include dyspnea on exertion (the most common finding), confusion, insomnia, wandering during the night, agitation, depression, anorexia, nausea, weakness, shortness of breath, orthopnea, wheezing, weight gain, and bilateral ankle edema. On auscultation, moist crackles are heard. The nurse should promptly report to the physician the detection of any of these symptoms.

History and physical examination assist in confirming the diagnosis of CHF. The New York Heart Association has developed four categories of CHF that can be used in classifying the severity of the disease and guiding treatment (NYHA allows use of this classification system without permission):

- *Class 1:* Cardiac disease without physical limitation
- *Class 2:* Symptoms experienced with ordinary physical activity; slight limitations may be evident
- *Class 3:* Symptoms experienced with less than ordinary activities; physical activity significantly limited
- *Class 4:* Symptoms experienced with any activity and during rest; bedrest may be required

Management of CHF in older adults is basically the same as in middle-aged adults, commonly consisting of bed rest, angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors, beta blockers, digitalis, diuretics, and a reduction in sodium intake. The patient may be allowed to sit in a chair next to the bed; usually, complete bed rest is discouraged to avoid the potential development of thrombosis and pulmonary congestion. The nurse should assist the patient into the chair, provide adequate support, and, while the patient is sitting, observe for signs of fatigue and dyspnea and changes in skin color and pulse.

The presence of edema and the poor nutrition of the tissues associated with this disease, along with the more fragile skin of the aged, all predispose the patient to a greater risk of skin breakdown. Regular skin care and frequent changes of positioning are essential. CHF is a frightening, and often recurring, condition requiring a great deal of reassurance and emotional support. Nursing Care Plan 20-1 offers a basic care plan for the older adult with heart failure.



KEY CONCEPT

The risk of skin breakdown is high in persons with CHF because of the presence of edema and poor nutrition of the tissues. The fragility of older skin compounds this risk.

Pulmonary Emboli

The incidence of pulmonary emboli is high in older persons, although detection and diagnosis of it in this age group are challenging. Patients at high risk of developing this problem are those with a fractured hip, CHF, arrhythmias, and a history of thrombosis. Immobilization and malnourishment, which are frequent problems in the older population, can contribute to pulmonary emboli. Symptoms to observe include confusion, apprehension, increasing dyspnea, slight temperature elevation, pneumonitis, and an elevated sedimentation rate. Older patients may not experience chest pain because of altered pain sensations, or their pain may be attributed to other existing problems. A lung scan or angiography may be done to confirm the diagnosis and establish the location, size, and extent of the problem. Treatment of pulmonary emboli in older adults does not significantly differ from that used for the young.

Coronary Artery Disease

Coronary artery disease is the popularly used phrase for ischemic heart disease. The prevalence of coronary artery disease increases with advanced age, so that some form of this disease exists in most persons 70 years of age or older.

NURSING CARE PLAN 20-1

The Older Adult With Heart Failure

Nursing Diagnosis: Activity Intolerance related to decreased cardiac output, pain, dyspnea, fatigue

Goal

The patient tolerates light-to-moderate activity without pain, dyspnea, or dysrhythmias

Nursing Actions

- Assess patient's ability to engage in activities of daily living; note presence of symptoms at various levels of activity.
- Schedule activities to avoid clustering of strenuous activities together (e.g., shower; diagnostic test, physical therapy); plan rest periods before and after activities.
- Consult with physician to develop plan to gradually increase activity; monitor response and adjust activity accordingly.
- Administer oxygen as needed and prescribed; use nasal prongs rather than mask, because a mask tends to further increase anxiety and may not achieve an adequate seal against the patient's face. (Be aware that oxygen may be prescribed at lower levels or contraindicated for patients with chronic hypoxia.)
- Prevent and control pain; be alert to unique manifestations of pain in older adults (e.g., altered mental status, apprehension, changes in functional capacity).
- Assess vital signs at rest and with activity. Note signs of decreased cardiac output (e.g., drop in blood pressure, increased pulse).
- Monitor cardiac rhythm as ordered via electrocardiography or telemetry.
- Administer antidysrhythmic drugs as ordered; monitor response.
- Note alterations in mental status that could indicate cerebral hypoxia (e.g., confusion, restlessness, decreased level of consciousness, agitation).
- Provide diversional activities to accommodate level of activity tolerance.

Nursing Diagnosis: Impaired Skin Integrity related to edema and poor tissue nutrition

Goal

The patient is free from pressure ulcers and other impairments in skin integrity

Nursing Actions

- Assess amount of time patient can remain in position before signs of pressure are apparent; develop individualized turning and repositioning schedule.
- Use sheepskin, cushions, and other protective devices.
- Keep skin clean and dry.
- Ensure patient consumes adequate diet; consult with nutritionist for diet plan as needed.

Nursing Diagnoses: Excess Fluid Volume related to ineffective pumping action of heart; Imbalanced Nutrition: Less Than Body Requirements related to decreased appetite, dyspnea, dietary restrictions, side effects of treatments

Goal

The patient maintains fluid and electrolyte balance
The patient ingests sufficient nutrients to meet body's metabolic needs without increasing cardiac workload

Nursing Actions

- Weigh patient daily (same time of day, same amount of clothing, same scale); record and report changes in weight that exceed 3 lb without relationship to dietary change.
- Inspect extremities, periorbital areas, and sacrum for edema; assess for jugular venous distension.
- Elevate and support extremities while patient sits.
- Apply antiembolism stockings or elastic wraps as ordered; remove for 10 minutes every 8 hours and inspect skin.

(continued)

NURSING CARE PLAN 20-1 (CONTINUED)

- Ensure patient complies with fluid and sodium restrictions as ordered; educate patient as necessary.
- Record and evaluate intake and output.
- Consult with dietitian regarding dietary restrictions and incorporating patient's preferences into diet.
- Administer diuretics as ordered; observe for signs of related fluid and electrolyte imbalances; educate patient as necessary.
- Monitor specific gravity and laboratory studies (e.g., blood urea nitrogen, creatinine, electrolytes).
- Instruct patient to identify and report symptoms of worsening of condition (e.g., swelling of ankles, loss of appetite, weight gain, shortness of breath).

Nursing Diagnosis: Deficient Knowledge related to lifestyle modifications and caregiving needs associated with congestive heart failure

Goal

The patient describes care plan requirements and self-care measures
The patient demonstrates maximum self-care

Nursing Actions

- Assess learning needs.
- Consult with multidisciplinary team regarding recommendations pertaining to diet and fluid intake, activity, medications, exercise guidelines, and any precautions.
- Teach patient how to distribute rest and activity throughout the day to reduce workload of heart.
- Review symptoms that patient should identify and report, including weight gain of 3 or more pounds within a one to several days time period, increased fatigue or weakness, dizziness, fainting or feeling faint, edema, shortness of breath, dyspnea with activities that were previously tolerated, cough, chest pain, abdominal pain or bloating, bleeding, bruising, or vomiting.
- Refer to community resources as needed (e.g., support groups, healthy cooking classes).
- Supply with telephone numbers of physician, case manager, and other relevant contacts.

Angina

A symptom of myocardial ischemia, the anginal syndrome presents in an atypical pattern in older adults, making detection difficult. Pain may be diffuse and of a less severe nature than described by younger adults. The first indication of this problem may be a vague discomfort under the sternum, frequently after exertion or a large meal. The type of pain described and the relationship of the onset of pain to a meal may cause the patient and the health professional to attribute this discomfort to indigestion. As this condition progresses, the patient may experience precordial pain radiating down the left arm. Other symptoms can include coughing, syncope, sweating with exertion, and episodes of confusion.

The recurrence of anginal syndromes over many years can result in the formation of small areas of myocardial necrosis and fibrosis. Eventually, diffuse myocardial fibrosis occurs, leading to myocardial weakness and the potential risk of CHF.

Nitroglycerin has been effective in preventing and treating anginal attacks. Older persons are more likely to experience orthostatic hypotension with nitrates resulting from loss of vasomotor and baroreceptor reactivity. Because this drug may cause a drop in blood pressure, lower dosages may be indicated. The nurse cautions the patient to sit or lie down after taking the tablet to prevent fainting episodes and falls. To prevent swallowing the tablet and thus blocking its absorption, patients should not swallow their saliva for several minutes after sublingual administration. Long-acting nitrates are usually not prescribed for older adults.

To prevent anginal syndromes, the nurse teaches and helps the patient to avoid factors that may aggravate this problem, such as cold wind, emotional stress, strenuous activity, anemia, tachycardia, arrhythmias, and hyperthyroidism. Acupuncture has been shown to reduce the frequency and severity of angina attacks in some individuals and is a consideration. Because

the pain associated with an MI may be similar to that of angina, patients should be instructed to notify the physician or nurse if pain is not relieved by nitroglycerin. Patients' charts should include factors that precipitate attacks, as well as the nature of the pain and its description by the patient, the method of management, and the usual number of nitroglycerin tablets used to alleviate the attack. Education and support in reducing risk factors complement the plan of care.



KEY CONCEPT

Some anginal attacks can be prevented by avoiding factors such as cold wind, emotional stress, strenuous activity, anemia, and tachycardia.

Myocardial Infarction

Myocardial infarction (MI) is frequently seen in older persons, especially in men with a history of hypertension and arteriosclerosis. The diagnosis of MI can be delayed or missed in older adults because of an atypical set of symptoms and the absence of pain. Symptoms include pain radiating to the left arm, the entire chest, the neck, and the abdomen; confusion; moist, pale skin; decreased blood pressure; syncope; cough; low-grade fever; and an elevated sedimentation rate. Output should be observed because partial or complete anuria may develop as this problem continues. Arrhythmias may occur, progressing to fibrillation and death, if untreated.

The trend in treating MI has been to reduce the amount of time in which the patient is limited to bed rest and to replace complete bed rest with allowing the patient to sit in an armchair next to the bed. The patient should be assisted into the chair with minimal exertion by him or her. Arms should be supported to avoid strain on the heart. Not only does this armchair treatment help to prevent many of the complications associated with immobility, but it also prevents pooling of the blood in the pulmonary vessels, thereby decreasing the work of the heart.

Early ambulation following an MI is encouraged. Typically, patients are allowed out of bed within a few days of an uncomplicated MI and are ambulating shortly thereafter. Getting out of bed early can be beneficial for the heart (using a bedpan puts more work on the heart than using a commode), maintains the body's condition, and assists in the prevention of complications associated with immobility.

Thrombolytic therapy is commonly used, and because older persons are more susceptible to cerebral and intestinal bleeding, close nursing observation for signs of bleeding is essential. Nurses should be alert to signs of developing pulmonary edema and CHF, potential complications for the geriatric patient with an MI. These and other observations,

such as persistent dyspnea, cyanosis, decreasing blood pressure, rising temperature, and arrhythmias, reflect a problem in the patient's recovery and should be brought to the physician's attention promptly.

Fitness programs have shown to be beneficial for older persons with coronary artery disease in improving cardiac functional capacity, reducing ischemic episodes, decreasing the risk of complications, and promoting a sense of well-being and control over the disease. Walking, swimming, and bicycling are excellent rhythmic, aerobic means of exercise for older adults. Aggressive sports are not necessarily excluded but do present a greater challenge in controlling heart rate during the exercise. All exercise sessions should begin with a 5-minute warm-up and end with a 5- to 10-minute cool-down of low-intensity exercises. Nurses should advise patients to obtain a medical evaluation and exercise test before engaging in a fitness program. Usually, a target heart rate of approximately 70% to 85% of the maximal heart rate is recommended during exercise.



KEY CONCEPT

Fitness programs for older adults with coronary artery disease can improve cardiac functional capacity, reduce ischemic episodes, decrease the risk of complications, and promote a sense of well-being and control over the condition.

Arrhythmias

Digitalis toxicity, hypokalemia, acute infections, hemorrhage, anginal syndrome, and coronary insufficiency are some of the many factors that cause an increasing incidence of arrhythmias with age. Of the causes mentioned, digitalis toxicity is the most common.

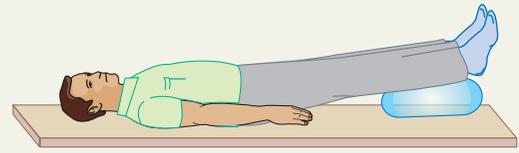
The basic principles of treatment for arrhythmias do not vary much for older adults. Tranquilizers, antiarrhythmic drugs, digitalis, and potassium supplements are part of the therapy prescribed; cardioversion may be done also. Patient education may be warranted to help the individual modify diet, smoking, drinking, and activity patterns. The nurse should be aware that digitalis toxicity can progress in the absence of clinical signs and with blood levels within a normal range, and that the effects can be evident even 2 weeks after the drug has been discontinued. This reinforces the importance of nursing assessment and monitoring to detect subtle changes and atypical symptoms. Older people have a higher mortality rate from cardiac arrest than other segments of the population, emphasizing the need for close nursing observations and early problem detection to prevent this serious complication.

BOX 20-5 Buerger-Allen Exercises

Instruct the patient to perform Buerger-Allen exercises by following these steps:

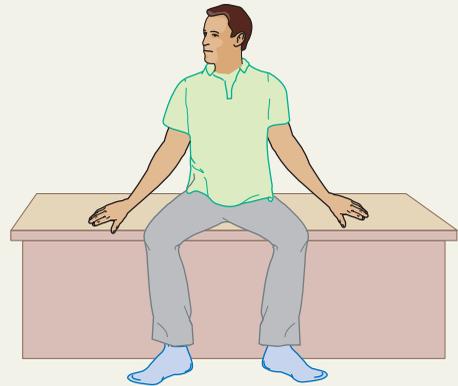
1. Lie flat with legs elevated above the level of the heart until blanching occurs (about 2 minutes; Fig. A).
2. Sit on edge of bed; lower the legs to fill the vessels and exercise feet until the legs are pink (about 5 minutes; Fig. B).
3. Lie flat for about 5 minutes before repeating the exercises (Fig. C).
4. Repeat the entire exercise five times, or as tolerated, at three different times during the day.

Assist the patient with position changes because postural hypotension can occur. Note the patient's tolerance and the effectiveness of the procedure.

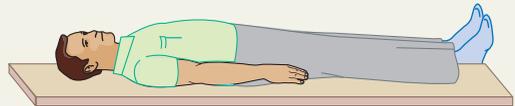


A

Support for legs



B



C

Peripheral Vascular Disease

Arteriosclerosis

Arteriosclerosis is a common problem among older persons, especially those who have diabetes. Unlike atherosclerosis, which generally affects the large vessels coming from the heart, arteriosclerosis most often affects the smaller vessels farthest from the heart. Arteriography and radiography can be used to diagnose arteriosclerosis, and oscillometric testing can assess the arterial pulse at different levels. If surface temperature is evaluated as a diagnostic measure, the nurse should keep the patient in a warm, stable room temperature for at least 1 hour before testing. Treatment of arteriosclerosis includes bed rest, warmth, Buerger-Allen exercises (Box 20-5), and vasodilators. Occasionally, a permanent vasodilation effect is achieved by performing a sympathetic ganglionectomy.

Special Problems Associated With Diabetes

Persons with diabetes, who have a high risk of developing peripheral vascular problems and associated complications, commonly display the diabetes-

associated neuropathies and infections that affect vessels throughout the entire body. Arterial insufficiency can present in several ways. Resting pain may occur as a result of intermittent claudication, arterial pulses may be difficult to find or totally absent, and skin discoloration, ulcerations, and gangrene may be present. Diagnostic measures, similar to those used to determine the degree of arterial insufficiency with other problems, include oscillometry, elevation-dependency tests, and palpation of pulses and skin temperatures at different sites. When surgery is possible, arteriography may be done to establish the exact size and location of the arterial lesion. The treatment selected will depend on the extent of the disease. Walking can promote collateral circulation and may constitute sufficient management if intermittent claudication is the sole problem. Analgesics can provide relief from resting pain.

Because many of today's older adults may have witnessed severe disability and death among others with the disease they have known throughout their lives, they need to be assured that improved

methods of medical and surgical management—perhaps not even developed at the time their parents and grandparents had diabetes—increase their chances for a full, independent life.

Aneurysms

In older adults, advanced arteriosclerosis is usually responsible for the development of aneurysms, although they may also result from infection, trauma, syphilis, and other factors. Some aneurysms can be seen by the naked eye and are able to be palpated as a pulsating mass; others can only be detected by radiography. A thrombosis can develop in the aneurysm, leading to an arterial occlusion or rupture of the aneurysm—the most serious complications associated with this problem.

Aneurysms of the abdominal aorta most frequently occur in older people. Patients with a history of arteriosclerotic lesions, angina pectoris, MI, and CHF more commonly develop aneurysms in this area. A pulsating mass, sometimes painful, in the umbilical region is an indication of an abdominal aortic aneurysm. Prompt correction is essential to prevent rupture. Fewer complications and deaths result from surgical intervention before rupture. Among the complications that older adults can develop after surgery for this problem are hemorrhage, MI, cerebrovascular accident, and acute renal insufficiency. The nurse should observe closely for signs of postoperative complications.



KEY CONCEPT

Abdominal aortic aneurysms are a high risk in persons with a history of arteriosclerotic lesions, angina pectoris, MI, and CHF.

Aneurysms can develop in peripheral arteries, the most common sites being the femoral and popliteal arteries. Peripheral aneurysms can usually be palpated, thus establishing the diagnosis. The most serious complication associated with peripheral aneurysms is the formation of a thrombus, which can occlude the vessel and cause loss of the limb. As with abdominal aortic aneurysms, early treatment reduces the risk of complications and death. The lesion may be resected and the portion of the vessel removed replaced, commonly with a prosthetic material. For certain patients, a lumbar sympathectomy can be performed. The nurse should be aware that these patients can develop a thrombus postoperatively and assist the patient in preventing this complication.

Varicose Veins

Varicosities, a common problem in old age, can be caused by lack of exercise, jobs entailing a great deal

of standing, and loss of vessel elasticity and strength associated with the aging process. Varicosities in all ages can be detected by the dilated, tortuous nature of the vein, especially the veins of the lower extremities. The person may experience dull pain and cramping of the legs, sometimes severe enough to interfere with sleep. Dizziness may occur as the patient rises from a lying position because blood is localized in the lower extremities and cerebral circulation is reduced. The effects of the varicosities make the skin more susceptible to trauma and infection, promoting the development of ulcerative lesions, especially in the obese or diabetic patient (Box 20-6).



KEY CONCEPT

Persons with varicose veins can experience dizziness when rising from a lying position because blood is localized in the lower extremities and cerebral circulation is reduced.

Treatment of varicose veins is aimed toward reducing venous stasis. The patient elevates and rests the affected limb to promote venous return. Exercise, particularly walking, also will enhance circulation. The nurse should make sure that elastic stockings and bandages are properly used and not constricting and that the patient is informed of the causes of venous stasis (e.g., prolonged standing, crossing the legs, wearing constricting clothing) to prevent the development of complications and additional varicosities. Ligation and stripping of the veins require the same principles of nursing care used for other age groups undergoing this surgery.

Venous Thromboembolism

An increasing incidence of venous thromboembolism is found among older adults. Patients who have been restricted to bed rest or have had recent surgery or fractures of a lower extremity are high-risk candidates. Although the veins in the calf muscles are the most frequently seen sites of this problem, it also occurs in the inferior vena cava, iliofemoral segment, and various superficial veins.

The symptoms and signs of venous thromboembolism depend on the vessel involved. The nurse should be alert for edema, warmth over the affected area, and pain in the sole of the foot. Edema may be the primary indication of thromboembolism in the veins of the calf muscle, because discoloration and pain are often absent in aged persons with this problem. If the inferior vena cava is involved, bilateral swelling, aching and cyanosis of the lower extremities, engorgement of the superficial veins, and tenderness along the femoral veins will be present. Similar signs

BOX 20-6 Topics to Include in Teaching the Patient With a Leg Ulcer

Venous ulcers result from chronic deep vein insufficiency or severe varicosities. The nurse teaches patients with venous ulcers to promote tissue perfusion and prevent complications as follows:

- Use gravity to promote circulation and reduce edema by elevating the lower extremity when sitting and by avoiding prolonged standing, sitting, and crossing the legs.
- Prevent pressure on the ulcer by using an over-bed cradle to keep linens from touching the extremity.
- Prevent constriction to circulation by avoiding tight socks or garters.
- Control pain by using an analgesic; taking an analgesic approximately 30 minutes prior to the dressing change can reduce some of the discomfort associated with the procedure.
- Change the dressing as prescribed (if the patient is unable to perform the procedure independently, instruct a caregiver).
- Promote circulation by exercising (e.g., walking, swimming, stationary bicycling, dorsiflexion of the feet).

will appear with involvement of the iliofemoral segment, but only on the affected extremity.

The location of the thromboembolism will dictate the treatment used. Elastic stockings or bandages, rest, and elevation of the affected limb may promote venous return. Analgesics may be given to relieve any associated pain. Anticoagulants may be administered, and surgery may be performed as well. The nurse should help the patient to avoid situations that cause straining and to remain comfortable and well hydrated.

General Nursing Considerations for Cardiovascular Conditions

Prevention

The high incidence and potentially disabling effects of cardiovascular disease demand conscientious actions by gerontological nurses to incorporate preventive measures into their planning and caregiving. Education, counseling, coaching, and rehabilitative/restorative activities facilitate prevention on three levels:

1. *Primary*: to prevent disease from developing in healthy older adults
2. *Secondary*: to strengthen the abilities of persons who are diagnosed with disease to avoid complications and worsening of their conditions and achieve maximum health and function
3. *Tertiary*: to maximize capabilities through rehabilitative and restorative efforts so that the disease doesn't create additional problems

The measures for promoting cardiovascular health described at the beginning of this chapter are

advantageous to incorporate into any health promotion plan for older adults.

Keeping the Patient Informed

Basic diagnostic and treatment measures for cardiovascular problems of older adults will not differ greatly from those used with younger patients, and the same nursing measures can be applied. Because of sensory deficits, anxiety, poor memory, or illness, the older patient may not fully comprehend or remember the explanations given for diagnostic and treatment measures. Full explanations with reinforcement are essential. Patients and their families should have the opportunity to ask questions and to discuss their concerns openly. Often procedures that seem relatively minor to the nurse, such as frequent checks of vital signs, may be alarming to the unprepared patient and family.

Preventing Complications

The edema associated with many cardiovascular diseases may promote skin breakdown, especially in older people who typically have more fragile skin. Frequent changes of position are essential. The body should be supported in proper alignment, and dangling arms and legs off the side of a bed or chair should be avoided. A frequent check of clothing and protective devices can aid in detecting constriction due to increased edema. Protection, padding, and massage of pressure points are beneficial. If the patient is to be on a stretcher, an examining table, or an operating room table for a long time, protective padding placed on pressure points beforehand can provide comfort and prevent skin breakdown. When much edema is present, excessive activity should be avoided because it will increase the circulation of the fluid, with the toxic wastes it contains,

and can subject the patient to profound intoxication. Weight and circumferences of extremities and the abdomen should be monitored to provide quantitative data regarding changes in the edematous state.

Accurate observation and documentation of fluid balance are especially important. Within any prescribed fluid restrictions, fluid intake should be encouraged to prevent dehydration and facilitate diuresis; water is effective for this. Fluid loss through any means should be measured; volume, color, odor, and specific gravity of urine should be noted. Intravenous fluids must be monitored carefully, particularly because excessive fluid infusion results in hypervolemia and can subject older adults to the risk of CHF. Intravenous administration of glucose solution could stimulate the increased production of insulin, resulting in a hypoglycemic reaction if this solution is abruptly discontinued without an adequate substitute.

Vital signs must be checked regularly, with close attention to changes. A temperature elevation can reflect an infection or an MI. The body temperature for older individuals may be normally lower than for younger adults; it is important to record the patient's normal temperature when well to have a baseline for comparison. It is advisable to detect and correct temperature elevations promptly because a temperature elevation increases metabolism, thereby increasing the body's requirements for oxygen, and causes the heart to work harder. A decrease in temperature slows metabolism, causing less oxygen consumption and less carbon dioxide production and fewer respirations. A rise in blood pressure is associated with a reduced cardiac output, vasodilation, and lower blood volume. Hypotension can result in insufficient circulation to meet the body's needs; symptoms of confusion and dizziness could indicate insufficient cerebral circulation resulting from a reduced blood pressure. Pulse changes are significant. In addition to cardiac problems, tachycardia could indicate hypoxia caused by an obstructed airway. Bradycardia may be associated with digitalis toxicity.

Oxygen is frequently administered in the treatment of cardiovascular diseases, and in older patients it requires most careful use. The nurse should observe the patient closely for hypoxia. Patients using a nasal cannula may breathe primarily by mouth and reduce oxygen intake. Although a face mask may remedy this problem, it does not guarantee sufficient oxygen inspiration. Older patients may not demonstrate cyanosis as the initial sign of hypoxia; instead, they may be restless, irritable, and dyspneic. These signs also can indicate high oxygen concentrations and consequent carbon dioxide narcosis, a particular risk to older patients receiving oxygen therapy. Blood gas

levels will provide data to reveal these problems, and early correction is facilitated by keen nursing observation.



KEY CONCEPT

Instead of demonstrating cyanosis, older adults with hypoxia can become restless, irritable, and dyspneic.

Anorexia may accompany cardiovascular disease, and special nursing assistance may be necessary to help patients meet their nutritional needs. Several smaller meals throughout the entire day rather than a few large ones may compensate for poor appetite and reduce the work of the heart. Favorite foods, served attractively, can be effective. Patients should be encouraged to maintain a regular intake of glucose, the primary source of cardiac energy. Education may be necessary regarding low-sodium, low-cholesterol, and low-calorie diets. Therapeutic dietary modifications should attempt to incorporate ethnic food enjoyed by patients; patients may reject a prescribed special diet if they believe they must forfeit the foods that have been an important component of their lives for decades. It may be necessary to negotiate compromises; a realistic, although imperfect, diet with which patients are satisfied is more likely to be followed than an ideal one that patients cannot accept. The nurse should review foods included in the diets and inform patients of the sodium, cholesterol, and caloric contents of these items. These foods can then be categorized as those that should be eaten “never,” “occasionally or not more than once monthly,” and “as desired.” Patients should learn to read labels of food, beverages, and drugs for sodium content; they must understand that carbonated drinks, certain analgesic preparations, commercial alkalizers, and homemade baking soda mixtures contain sodium.



KEY CONCEPT

One way to promote dietary compliance is to classify foods for the patient as those that should “never be eaten,” “eaten occasionally,” or “eaten as desired.”

Straining from constipation, enemas, and removal of fecal impactions can cause vagal stimulation, a particularly dangerous situation for patients with cardiovascular disease. Measures to prevent constipation must be an integral part of the care plan for these patients; a stool softener may be prescribed. If bed rest is prescribed, range-of-motion exercises should be performed, because they will cause muscle contractions that compress peripheral veins and thereby facilitate the return of venous blood.

Patients who are weak or who fall asleep while sitting need to have their heads and necks supported to prevent hyperextension or hyperflexion of the neck. All older persons, not only those with cardiovascular disease, can suffer a reduction in cerebral blood flow from the compression of vessels during this hyperextension or hyperflexion. Those with CHF need good positioning and support. A semi-recumbent position with pillows supporting the entire back maintains good body alignment, promotes comfort, and assists in reducing pulmonary congestion. Cardiac strain is reduced by supporting the arms with pillows or armrests. Footboards help prevent foot-drop contracture; patients should be instructed in how to use them for exercising.

If hepatic congestion develops, drugs may detoxify more slowly. Because older adults may already have a slower rate of drug detoxification, nurses must be acutely aware of signs indicating adverse reactions to drugs. Digitalis toxicity particularly should be monitored and could present with a change in mental status, nausea, vomiting, arrhythmias, and a slow pulse. Because hypokalemia sensitizes the heart to the effects of digitalis, prevention through proper diet and the possible use of potassium supplements is advisable.

Promoting Circulation

Because older adults experience age-related changes and a high prevalence of health conditions that heighten their risk of altered tissue perfusion, gerontological nurses should promote interventions that improve tissue circulation to:

- ensure that blood pressure is maintained within an acceptable range (usually under 140 mm Hg systolic and 90 mm Hg diastolic)
- prevent and eliminate sources of pressure on the body
- remind or assist patients to change positions frequently
- prevent pooling of blood in the extremities
- encourage physical activity
- prevent hypothermia, maintain body warmth (particularly of the extremities)
- massage the body unless contraindicated (e.g., in the presence of deep vein thrombosis and pressure ulcer)
- monitor drugs for the side effect of hypotension
- educate to reduce risks (e.g., avoiding excess alcohol ingestion, cigarette smoking, obesity, inactivity)
- periodically evaluate physical and mental health to identify signs and symptoms of altered tissue perfusion.

Nurses can play a significant role in preventing peripheral vascular problems. Health education for

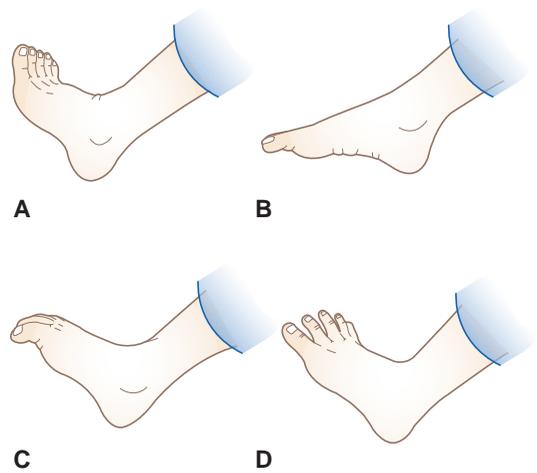


FIGURE 20-1 • Foot and toe exercises. **(A)** Foot flexion. **(B)** Foot extension. **(C)** Curling toes. **(D)** Moving toes apart.

persons of all ages should reinforce the importance of exercise in promoting circulation; factors that can interfere with optimal circulation, such as crossing legs and wearing garters, should be reviewed. Weight control can be encouraged because obesity can interfere with venous return. Tobacco use should be discouraged because it may cause arterial spasms. Immobility and hypotension should be prevented to avoid thrombus formation. Figure 20-1 illustrates exercises that may benefit patients with peripheral vascular disease. Yoga and t'ai chi also can promote circulation. In addition, Buerger-Allen exercises (see Box 20-5) may be prescribed, and the patient and family members or caregivers will need to learn how they are done correctly and comfortably. Instruction in the correct use of support hose or special elastic stockings is important.

KEY CONCEPT

Circulation can be enhanced by exercise, support hose, and avoidance of obesity, immobility, hypotension, and obstructive clothing.

Providing Foot Care

Persons with peripheral vascular disease must pay special attention to the care of their feet, which should be bathed and inspected daily. To avoid injury, patients should not walk in bare feet. Any foot lesion or discoloration should be brought promptly to the attention of the physician or nurse. These patients are at high risk of developing fungal infections from the moisture produced by normal foot perspiration; it is not unusual for older people to develop fungal infections under their nails,

emphasizing the importance of regular, careful nail inspection. If untreated, a simple fungal infection can lead to gangrene and other serious complications. Placing cotton between the toes and removing shoes several times during the day will help keep the feet dry. Shoes should be large enough to avoid any pressure and safe enough to prevent any injuries to the feet; they should be aired after wearing. Laces should not be tied tightly because they can exert pressure on the feet. Colored socks may contain irritating dyes and would be best to avoid; socks should be changed regularly. Although the feet should be kept warm, the direct application of heat to the feet (as with heating pads, hot-water bottles, and soaks) can increase the metabolism and circulatory demand, thereby compounding the existing problem.

Managing Problems Associated With Peripheral Vascular Disease

Ischemic foot lesions may be present in patients with peripheral vascular disease. If eschars are present, they should be loosened to allow drainage. Careful debridement is necessary to avoid bleeding and trauma; chemical debriding agents may be useful. Systemic antibiotic agents can be helpful in controlling cellulitis. Topical antibiotics usually are not used because epithelization must occur before bacterial flora can be destroyed. Analgesics may be administered to relieve associated pain. Good nutrition, particularly an adequate protein intake, and the maintenance of muscle strength and joint motion are essential. Various surgical procedures may be used in treating ischemic foot lesions, including bypass grafts, sympathectomies, and amputations.

Loss of a limb may represent a significant loss of independence to older people, regardless of the reality of the situation. With an altered body image, new roles may be assumed as other roles are forfeited. Patients and their families need opportunities to discuss their fears and concerns. Making them aware of the likelihood of a normal life and the availability of appliances that make ambulation, driving, and other activities possible may help reduce anxieties and promote a smoother adjustment to the amputation. The rehabilitation period can be long for older adults and may necessitate frequent motivation and encouragement by nursing staff.

Promoting Normality

An often unasked question of older patients relates to the impact of their cardiovascular condition on sexual activity. They may be reluctant to inquire because they fear being ridiculed or causing shock that “someone their age would still be interested in sex.” They may resign themselves to forfeiting sexual

activity under the misconception that they will further harm their hearts; research has demonstrated that patients often place unnecessary restrictions on sexual activities following heart attacks. Nurses should encourage discussion of this subject and introduce the topic if patients seem unable to do so themselves. If there is fear of injuring the heart by resuming sexual activity, the nurse should provide realistic explanations, including when sex can be resumed, how medications can affect sexual function, how to schedule medications for beneficial impact during sexual activity, and sexual positions that produce the least cardiac strain.



KEY CONCEPT

Nurses should offer patients realistic explanations about the relationship of cardiovascular conditions and sexual function.

Relaxation and rest are both important in the treatment of cardiovascular disease, and it is wise to remember that a patient who is at rest is not necessarily relaxed. The stresses from hospitalization, pain, ignorance, and fear regarding disability; alterations in lifestyle; and potential death can cause the patient to become anxious, confused, and irrational. Reassurance and support are needed, including full explanations of diagnostic tests, hospital or institutional routines, and other activities. The nurse must provide opportunities for patients and their families to discuss questions, concerns, and fears. Realistic explanations of any required restrictions and lifestyle changes should emphasize that patients need not become “cardiac cripples” just because they have a cardiac disease. Most patients can live a normal life and need to be reassured of this. (Refer to the Resources list at the end of the chapter for organizations with resources to help patients live with cardiovascular disorders.)

Integrating Complementary Therapies

The benefits of digitalis (foxglove) in treating heart disease has stimulated interest in the use of other herbs for preventing and treating cardiovascular disorders. One such herb that shows promise is hawthorn berry, which has been found to dilate blood vessels to improve circulation to the heart, relieve spasms of the arterial wall, and produce a hypotensive effect (Mashour, Lin, & Frishman, 2000). Garlic, because it contains antioxidant sulfur compounds, has shown some value in dissolving clots (Fugh-Berman, 2000). Ginger has been shown to lower cholesterol. Patients are wise to discuss the use of medicinal herbs with their health care practitioners and to avoid exceeding recommended dosages.

Consider This Case

Although 68 years of age, Ms. U has continued to carry a full time teaching load at the university and had no plans of retirement in the foreseeable future. While hiking last week, Ms. U developed chest pain and went to the hospital emergency department for evaluation. She was diagnosed to have a myocardial infarction and, after a brief hospitalization, was sent home on a thrombolytic agent. As she followed a healthy diet and exercised regularly, the cardiologist recommended no other treatment, but did want to see Ms. U at regular intervals. Ms. U now is afraid to resume her physical activities and is contemplating retirement because of “her heart condition.”

THINK CRITICALLY

- What do you assess to be the issues with Ms. U?
- What could you do to assist her?

Some of the nonconventional measures to facilitate deep relaxation and reduce stress can be effective in reversing heart disease. Meditation has been shown to increase blood flow and oxygen consumption (Canter, 2003). Biofeedback, guided imagery, t'ai chi, and yoga have been shown to lower blood pressure and heart rate (Astin et al., 2003). During treatments, acupuncture has lowered blood pressure (Turnbull & Patel, 2007).

Some patients may find yoga beneficial to their circulation because the various asanas (postures) used in yoga increase circulation because of the effects on the endocrine glands and nerve plexuses. Acupressure massage techniques using rubbing, kneading, percussion, and vibration can improve circulation. The herb ginkgo biloba has shown promise as being effective in improving cerebral and peripheral circulation. The future may hold additional noninvasive measures to improve circulation.

Although the full benefits of complementary therapies are in the process of being discovered, these measures are less intrusive and less expensive than conventional treatments, and for the most part, carry minimal risk. Nurses should consider the use of these therapies to prevent heart disease and complement conventional treatments when pathology exists.

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. How does the lifestyle of the average American contribute to the risk of developing cardiovascular disease with age?
2. List the complications to the general health status of the older adult that can arise as a result of a cardiovascular disorder.
3. Outline general topics you would address when teaching an older individual who is recovering from a myocardial infarction.
4. What measures could you advise young adults to incorporate into their health practices that would promote cardiovascular health in late life?

Resources

American Heart Association

<http://www.amhrt.org>

Mended Hearts (for patients with heart disease)

<http://www.mendedhearts.org>

National Amputation Foundation

<http://www.nationalamputation.org>

National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute

<http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov>

References

- Astin, J. A., Shapiro, S. L., Eisenberg, D. M., & Forsys, K. L. (2003). Mind-body medicine: State of the science, implications for practice. *Journal of the American Board Family Practice*, 16(2), 131–147.
- Campbell, C. L., Smyth, S., Montalescot, G., & Steinhubl, S. R. (2007). Aspirin dose for the prevention of cardiovascular disease: A systematic review. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 297(18), 2018–2024.
- Canter, P. H. (2003). The therapeutic effects of meditation. *British Medical Journal*, 326(7398), 1049–1050.
- Frishman, W. H., Azer, V., & Sica, D. (2003). Drug treatment of orthostatic hypotension and vasovagal syncope. *Heart Disease*, 5(1), 49–64.
- Fugh-Berman, A. (2000). Herbs and dietary supplements in the prevention and treatment of cardiovascular disease. *Preventive Cardiology*, 3(1), 24–32.
- Klatsky, A. L., & Udaltsova, N. (2007). Alcohol drinking and total mortality risk. *Annals of Epidemiology*, 15(5 Supplement), S63–S67.
- Leighton, E., & Urquiaga, I. (2007). Changes in cardiovascular risk factors associated with wine consumption in intervention studies in humans. *Annals of Epidemiology*, 17(5 Supplement), S32–36.

- Mashour, N. H., Lin, G. I., & Frishman, W. H. (2000). Herbal medicine for the treatment of cardiovascular disease. In P. B. Fontanarosa (Ed.), *Alternative medicine: An objective assessment* (p. 286). Chicago: American Medical Association.
- Ornish, D. (2005). Comparison of diets for weight loss and heart disease risk reduction. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 293(13), 1589–1590.
- Ornish, D. (2008). *Dr. Dean Ornish's program for reversing heart disease*. New York: Ivy Books.
- Ridker, P. M. (2003). Clinical application of C-reactive protein for cardiovascular disease detection and prevention. *Circulation*, 107(3), 363–369.
- Turnbull, F., & Patel, A. (2007). Acupuncture for blood pressure lowering: Needling the truth. *Circulation*, 115(24), 3048–3049.
- Wang, L., Gaziano, J. M., Liu, S., Manson, J. E., Buring, J. E., & Sesso, H. D. (2007). Whole- and refined-grain intakes and the risk of hypertension in women. *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition*, 86(2), 472–479.
- Yeh, G. Y., Davis, R. B., & Phillips, R. S. (2006). Use of complementary therapies in patients with cardiovascular disease. *American Journal of Cardiology*, 98(5), 673–680.
- Furberg, C. D., & Psaty, B. M. (1995). Calcium antagonists: Antagonists or protagonists of mortality in elderly hypertensives? *Journal of the American Geriatric Society*, 43(8), 1309–1310.
- Garcia-Palmieri, M. (2001). Cardiovascular disease prevention in the elderly. *Clinical Geriatrics*, 9(5), 69–77.
- Gondek, M. C. (1999). Talking about sex: A post-MI script. *RN*, 62(7), 52–53.
- Halm, M., & Penque, S. (1999). Heart disease in women. *American Journal of Nursing*, 99(4), 26–32.
- Handberg, E. (2006). End-of-life issues in elderly patients with acute coronary syndrome: The role of the cardiovascular nurse. *Progress in Cardiovascular Nursing*, 21(3), 151–155.
- Keaton, K. A., & Pierce, L. L. (2000). Cardiac therapy for men with coronary artery disease: The lived experience. *Journal of Holistic Nursing*, 18(1), 46–62.
- Koertge, J., Weidner, G., Elliott-Eller, M., Scherwitz, L., Merritt-Worden, T. A., et al. (2003). Improvement in medical risk factors and quality of life in women and men with coronary artery disease in the Multicenter Lifestyle Demonstration Project. *American Journal of Cardiology*, 91(11), 1316–1322.
- Lai, S. C., & Cohen, M. N. (1999). Promoting lifestyle changes. *American Journal of Nursing*, 99(4), 63–64.
- Mann, J. L., & Evans, T. S. (2006). A review of the management of heart failure in long-term care residents. *Consultant Pharmacist*, 21(3), 222–228.
- Mann, S. J. (2000). The mind/body link in essential hypertension: Time for a new paradigm. *Alternative Therapies in Health and Medicine*, 6(2), 39–56.
- Michael, K. M., & Shaughnessey, M. (2006). Stroke prevention and management in older adults. *Journal of Cardiovascular Nursing*, 21(5), S21–S26.
- Miller, C. (2002). Cardiovascular drugs: Reason for promise and vigilance. *Geriatric Nursing*, 23(1), 171–172.
- Mukamal, K. J., Conigrave, K. M., Mittleman, M. A., Camargo, C. A., Stampfer, M. J., et al. (2003). Roles of drinking pattern and type of alcohol consumed in coronary heart disease in men. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 348(2), 109–111.
- Robinson, A. W., & Sloan, H. L. (2000). Heart health and older women. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 26(5), 38–45.
- Satish, S., Freeman, D. H., Ray, L., & Goodwin, J. S. (2001). The relationship between blood pressure and mortality in the oldest old. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*, 49(4), 367–374.
- Siomko, A. J. (2000). Demystifying cardiac markers. *American Journal of Nursing*, 100(1), 36–37.
- Yaes, R. J. (2003). Aspirin, clopidogrel, or both for secondary prevention of coronary disease. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 348(6), 560–563.

Recommended Readings

- Akdolun, N., & Terakye, G. (2001). Sexual problems before and after myocardial infarction: Patients' needs for information. *Rehabilitation Nursing*, 26(4), 152–158.
- Ancheta, I. B. (2006). A retrospective pilot study: Management of patients with heart failure. *Dimensions of Critical Care Nursing*, 25(5), 228–233.
- Appel, L. J., Moore, T. J., Obarzanek, E., et al. (1997). A clinical trial of the effects of dietary patterns on blood pressure. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 336(16), 1117–1124.
- Aronow, W. S. (2001). Therapy of older persons with congestive heart failure. *Annals of Long-Term Care*, 9(1), 23–29.
- Brown, T. J., & Mateko, E. B. (2005). Prevalence of hypertension in a sample of Black American adults using JNC 7 classifications. *Journal of the National Black Nurses Association*, 16(2), 1–5.
- Bubien, R. S. (2000). A new beat on an old rhythm. *American Journal of Nursing*, 100(1), 42–51.
- Bueno, E. A., Mamtani, R., & Frishman, W. H. (2001). Alternative approaches to the medical management of angina pectoris: Acupuncture, electrical nerve stimulation, and spinal cord stimulation. *Heart Disease*, 3(4), 236–241.
- Daviglus, M. L., Stamler, J., Orenca, A. J., et al. (1997). Fish consumption and the 30-year risk of fatal myocardial infarction. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 336(16), 1046–1053.

Digestion and Bowel Elimination

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Effects of Aging on Gastrointestinal Health Gastrointestinal Health Promotion Selected Gastrointestinal Conditions and Related Nursing Considerations

- Dry Mouth (Xerostomia)
- Dental Problems
- Dysphagia
- Hiatal Hernia
- Esophageal Cancer
- Peptic Ulcer
- Cancer of the Stomach
- Diverticular Disease
- Cancer of the Colon
- Chronic Constipation
- Flatulence
- Intestinal Obstruction
- Fecal Impaction
- Bowel Incontinence
- Acute Appendicitis
- Cancer of the Pancreas
- Biliary Tract Disease

Summary

Digestion and bowel elimination are important functions of the gastrointestinal tract. Significantly fewer older people die from gastrointestinal problems than from diseases of other major body systems; however, these problems often are the source of many complaints and discomforts

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 Describe how aging affects gastrointestinal health.
- 2 Discuss measures to promote gastrointestinal health in older adults.
- 3 List symptoms and management of selected gastrointestinal conditions in older adults.

in this age group. Indigestion, belching, diarrhea, constipation, nausea, vomiting, anorexia, weight gain or loss, and flatulence are among the bothersome problems that increasingly occur, even in the absence of organic cause. Gallbladder disease and various cancers of the gastrointestinal tract increase in incidence in later life. In addition, poor nutrition, medications, emotions, inactivity, and a variety of other factors influence the status of gastrointestinal health.

Usually, older adults are aware of their gastrointestinal discomforts and use various measures to manage symptoms of these problems. In some situations, misinformation can interfere with good gastrointestinal health (e.g., assuming that tooth loss is normal or believing a daily laxative is essential); in other circumstances, self-treatment can delay the diagnosis of pathologies (e.g., using antacids to mask symptoms of stomach cancer). Gerontological nurses play an important role in promoting gastrointestinal health in older adults and intervening when problems are identified.

Effects of Aging on Gastrointestinal Health

The gastrointestinal (GI) system and accessory structures experience significant changes with age (see Chapter 5). The tongue atrophies, affecting the taste buds and decreasing taste sensations. Saliva production decreases and swallowing may be more difficult. Esophageal and stomach motility decrease, causing food to remain in the upper GI system for a longer period of time; as a result, there is a risk for indigestion and aspiration. The stomach has a higher pH as a result of the declines in hydrochloric acid and pepsin; this contributes to an increased incidence of gastric irritation in late life. There are fewer cells on the absorbing surface of the intestinal walls affecting the absorption of dextrose, xylose, calcium, iron, and vitamins B, B12, and D.

Slower peristalsis, inactivity, reduced food and fluid intake, drugs, and a diet low in fiber are responsible for the high incidence of constipation in older individuals. Decreased sensory perception may cause the signal for bowel elimination to go unnoticed, which can promote constipation. There also is a tendency toward incomplete emptying of the bowel with one bowel movement; 30 to 45 minutes after the initial movement, the remainder of the bowel movement may need to occur and, if not heeded, problems may develop.

Gastrointestinal Health Promotion

A variety of gastrointestinal conditions can be avoided by good health practices. Good dental hygiene and regular visits to the dentist can prevent

disorders that can threaten nutritional intake, general health, comfort, and self-image. The proper quantity and quality of foods can enhance general health and minimize the risk of indigestion and constipation. (See Chapter 14 for more specific information on ways to promote nutritional health.) Knowledge of the relationship of medications to gastrointestinal health is also important.

Natural means to promote bowel elimination are important for older adults to incorporate into their daily routines, including good fluid intake, a diet rich in fruits and vegetables, activity, and the establishment of a regular time for bowel elimination (Fig. 21-1). Dietary fiber intake of 20 to 35 grams/day is advisable; however, if fiber intake has been low, the amount should be gradually increased to prevent gas, bloating, diarrhea, and other symptoms. If a person dislikes eating high-fiber foods, these foods can be added to other foods (e.g., adding wheat bran to ground beef or muffins) to mask the taste. Plenty of fluids should accompany increased fiber intake. Because of the tendency for incomplete emptying of the bowel at one time, opportunity should be provided for full emptying and for repeated attempts at subsequent elimination. Sometimes, an older person's request to be taken to the bathroom or to have a bedpan for bowel elimination shortly before a movement occurs is viewed as an



FIGURE 21-1 • A diet rich in fruits and vegetables is one natural means to promote bowel elimination.

unnecessary demand and ignored; it is then wondered why bowel incontinence results. It is useful for older adults to attempt a bowel movement following breakfast, because the morning activity and ingestion of food and fluid following a period of rest stimulate peristalsis.

Astute assessment can reveal problems that patients may have omitted sharing with their physicians and can identify practices that interfere with good health (Assessment Guide 21-1). Nursing Diagnosis Table 21-1 lists possible diagnoses related to gastrointestinal problems.

Selected Gastrointestinal Conditions and Related Nursing Considerations

Dry Mouth (Xerostomia)

Saliva serves several important functions, such as lubricating soft tissues, assisting in remineralizing teeth, promoting taste sensations, and helping to control bacteria and fungus in the oral cavity. Reduced saliva, therefore, can have significant consequences.

Dry mouth can result from a variety of factors in addition to age-related slight declines in saliva secretion. Many of the medications used by older persons (e.g., diuretics, antihypertensives, anti-inflammatories, and antidepressants) can affect salivation. Sjögren's syndrome, a disease of the immune system, can reduce salivary gland function and cause severe dryness of the mucous membrane. Mouth breathing and altered cognition also contribute to this problem.

Persons with dry mouth benefit from frequent oral hygiene, not only because of the comfort obtained, but also to reduce the higher risk of dental disease related to dry mouth. Saliva substitutes (e.g., Salivart Synthetic Saliva) are available as gels and rinses; however, sipping water to relieve dryness and stimulating saliva production with hard sugarless candy and gum are effective for many individuals.

Dental Problems

Dental care is important throughout an individual's life. Dental examination can be instrumental in the early detection and prevention of many problems that affect other body systems. Poor condition of teeth can restrict food intake, which can cause constipation and malnourishment (see Chapter 14); it can also detract from appearance, which can affect socialization, and this can result in a poor appetite, which also can lead to malnourishment. Periodontal disease can predispose older adults to systemic infection. Although dental care is important in preventing these problems, financial limitations prevent many older persons from

seeking dental attention. Some have the misconception that dentures eliminate the need for regular visits to the dentist; others, like many younger persons, fear the dentist. The nurse should encourage regular dental examination and promote dental care, explaining that serious diseases can be detected by the dentist and helping patients find free or inexpensive dental clinics. Understanding how modern dental techniques minimize pain can alleviate fears. Although older persons may not have had the benefit of fluoridated water or fluoride treatments when younger, topical fluoride treatments are as beneficial to the teeth of older persons as they are to younger teeth. The nurse should instruct patients to inform their dentists about health problems and medications they take to help them determine how procedures need to be modified, what healing rate to expect, and which medications should not be administered.

Dental problems can be caused by altered taste sensation, a poor diet, or a low-budget carbohydrate diet with excessive intake of sweets, which can cause tooth decay. Deficiencies of the vitamin B complex and calcium, hormonal imbalances, hyperparathyroidism, diabetes, osteomalacia, Cushing disease, and syphilis can be underlying causes of dental problems, and certain drugs, such as phenytoin, which can cause gingivitis or antihistamines, and antipsychotics, which cause severe dry mouth, can play a part. The aging process itself takes its toll on teeth. Surfaces are commonly worn down from many years of use, varying degrees of root absorption occur, and loss of tooth enamel can increase the risk of irritation to deeper dental tissue. Although benign neoplastic lesions develop more frequently than malignant ones, cancer of the oral cavity, especially in men, increases in incidence with age, as does moniliasis, which is often associated with more serious problems, such as diabetes or leukemia. It should not be assumed that all white lesions found in the mouth are moniliasis; biopsy is important to make sure they are not cancerous. Periodontal disease, which damages the soft tissue surrounding teeth and supporting bones, has a high incidence among older adults. Dental caries occur less frequently in older people, but they remain a problem.



KEY CONCEPT

With age, the teeth experience a wearing down on the surfaces, decrease in the size and volume of pulp, increased brittleness, varying degrees of root absorption, and a loss of enamel.

Good oral hygiene is especially important to older persons, who already may be having problems



ASSESSMENT GUIDE 21-1

Gastrointestinal Function

GENERAL OBSERVATIONS

- *General appearance.* Pallor can be associated with blood loss from gastrointestinal bleeding. Weakness and fatigue can be due to malnutrition, fluid and electrolyte imbalances, or bleeding. Note obesity or unusual thinness.
- *Odors.* Unusual breath odors can be associated with disorders. Halitosis can indicate poor oral hygiene practices, disease of the oral cavity or esophagus, lung abscess or infection, liver disease, or uremia.
- *Skin.* Dry skin and skin with poor turgor can indicate dehydration; scaling, itching, discolored skin, or skin eruptions can result from a variety of nutritional deficiencies.

INTERVIEW

Carefully structured questions can reveal hidden problems, particularly in older adults who accept some gastrointestinal symptoms as normal or who have lived with these symptoms for so long that they no longer consider them abnormalities. Questions should review topics such as the following:

- *Status of teeth or dentures.* “When was your last dental exam? How do you care for your teeth or dentures? When did you get your dentures; how do they fit? Do you have any pain, bleeding, or other symptoms?”
- *Taste, appetite.* “Does food taste differently to you than it did in the past? What do you do to make food taste better? How is your appetite; how does it compare to earlier years?”
- *Symptoms.* “Do you ever have a sore mouth, difficulty swallowing, choking, a sense that something has ‘gone down the wrong hole,’ nausea, vomiting, bleeding from your mouth, blood in your vomitus or stool, pain or burning in your stomach or intestines, diarrhea, constipation, gas, bleeding from your rectum?” Specific questions should be asked to explore each positive response.
- *Weight.* “Have you noticed any recent changes in your weight? Have you been trying to gain or lose weight?”
- *Digestion.* “How often do you have indigestion? What seems to cause it and how is it managed? Is there a sense of fullness or discomfort in the chest after meals? Does regurgitation or belching ever occur?”
- *Elimination.* “How often do you have a bowel movement? Do you have to take special measures to move your bowels? If so, what are they? Do you

strain to have a bowel movement? Is there ever blood in your stools or on the toilet tissue? What are the color and consistency of your bowel movements?”

- *Diet.* “Describe what and when you eat in a typical day. Do foods have a different taste to you? Can you shop for and cook meals on your own? Has your eating pattern changed?”

Further questions may be necessary in response to certain problems that emerge through the interview.

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

Inspection, auscultation, percussion, and palpation aid in validating problems identified through the interview and in detecting undisclosed disorders. A systematic examination of the gastrointestinal system would review the following:

- *Lips.* Note symmetry, color, moisture, and general condition. Because capillaries are abundant in the lips, a bluish discoloration could reflect poor oxygenation. Cracks and fissures can be associated with riboflavin deficiencies, jagged teeth, or poorly fitting dentures.
- *Oral cavity.* With a tongue depressor and flashlight, inspect the mouth. The mucous membrane should be moist and pink. Black persons may have a pigmented mucosa. Excessive dryness of the mucosa or tongue can indicate dehydration. Note lesions or areas of irritation, which could be caused by teeth, dentures, or pathologic conditions. White beads in the oral cavity can be a sign of moniliasis infections and should be cultured. Bleeding, swollen gums are most commonly associated with periodontal disease. Swollen gums also can result from phenytoin therapy or leukemia. Lead poisoning causes a bluish black line along the edge of the gums, but only if teeth are present. Older persons can develop lead poisoning due to occupational exposure or contact within their home environment.
- *Tongue.* Examine the top and bottom surface of the tongue. A coating on the tongue can be associated with poor hygiene or dehydration. A smooth, red tongue occurs with iron, vitamin B12, or niacin deficiencies. Thick, white patches can indicate leukoplakia, which could be precancerous. Give attention to lesions on the tongue that have been present for several weeks because they can be cancerous; they more frequently occur on the bottom surface than on the top of the tongue. Varicosities on the undersurface of the tongue are not unusual findings.

**ASSESSMENT GUIDE 21-1 (Continued)****Gastrointestinal Function**

- **Pharynx.** During normal swallowing, the vagus nerve causes the soft palate to rise and block the nasopharynx so that aspiration is prevented. To test this function, press a tongue depressor on the middle of the tongue, but not so far back that gagging results, and ask the patient to say “ah.” The soft palate should rise when “ah” is said. If soreness, redness, or white patches are present in the throat, a culture is warranted.
- **Abdomen.** Have the patient void and then lie supine on a firm surface; inspect the abdomen. Ask about any scars that are present; the patient may have forgotten to mention an appendectomy that occurred 50 years ago. Striae, or stretch marks, are pink or blue if newly developed and silvery white if old; they can result from obesity, ascites, pregnancy, or tumors. Note rashes, indentations, and other findings. Both sides of the abdomen should be symmetrical with no bulging areas. A symmetrical distention most commonly is due to obesity, but can also be associated with ascites or tumors. Central, lower-abdominal (i.e., below the umbilicus) distention occurs with bladder distention or tumors of the uterus or ovaries. Central, upper abdominal distention may result from gastric dilation or pancreatic tumors. The abdomen should rise and fall in conjunction with respirations. Peristaltic activity may be observed; sometimes, gently flicking a finger on the abdomen will stimulate peristalsis. With the diaphragm of the stethoscope, bowel sounds can be heard about once every 5 to 15 seconds; they usually are irregular. If no bowel sounds are heard, try stimulating them by flicking a finger on the abdomen. No sounds for at least 5 minutes can indicate the absence of bowel sounds, and medical evaluation would be warranted. Loud, gurgling sounds indicate increased peristaltic activity. Palpation of the abdomen should normally reveal no masses.
- **Rectum.** Perform a rectal examination with the patient in a standing position, bent over the examination table, or in a left lateral position with the right hip and knee flexed. Inspect the perianal area first. Flaccid skin sacs around the anus are hemorrhoids. Fissures, tumors, inflammation, and poor hygienic practices may be noted. Ask the patient to bear down, which could make additional hemorrhoids or rectal prolapse visible. Ask the patient to bear down again and insert a lubricated gloved finger into the anal canal. Assure the patient that it is normal to feel as if a bowel movement is imminent. The sphincter should tighten around the finger. Masses or other abnormalities along the rectal wall should be noted. A hard mass that prevents full palpation of the rectum may be a fecal impaction. Impactions may or may not be movable. If it is a fecal impaction, fecal material will be found on the glove or a discharge will occur when the examining finger is withdrawn.
- **Stool.** Obtain a stool specimen; fecal material withdrawn during the rectal examination can give clues to problems. Black, tarry stools can be associated with the ingestion of iron preparations or iron-rich foods or can indicate upper gastrointestinal bleeding; bright-red blood accompanies bleeding from the lower bowel or hemorrhoids; pale, fatty stool can occur with absorption problems; gray or tan stool is caused by obstructive jaundice; and mucus in the stool may result from inflammation.

with anorexia or food distaste. Teeth, gums, and tongue should be brushed regularly using a soft toothbrush, which also can be used in gentle gum massage for people with dentures. Brushing is superior to using swabs, even for the teeth of unconscious patients. Daily flossing of natural teeth should also be performed. Because the buccal mucosa is thinner and less vascular with age, trauma to the oral cavity needs to be avoided. The nurse should notify the dentist and physician of an atonic or atrophic tongue, lesions, mucosa discoloration, loose teeth, soreness, bleeding, or any other problem identified during inspection and care of the oral cavity.

Dysphagia

The incidence of swallowing difficulties increases with age. As swallowing depends on complex mechanisms involving several cranial nerves and the muscles of the mouth, face, pharynx, and esophagus, anything that impacts those structures can cause dysphagia. Gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD) is a common cause, as are stroke and structural disorders. Dysphagia can be oropharyngeal, characterized by difficulty transferring food from the mouth into the pharynx and esophagus, or esophageal, involving transfer of food down the esophagus.

NURSING DIAGNOSIS

TABLE 21-1 Nursing Diagnoses Related to Gastrointestinal Problems

Causes or Contributing Factors	Nursing Diagnosis
Anemia, constipation, obesity, vitamin and mineral deficiencies, dehydration	Activity Intolerance
Age-related decreased colonic peristalsis and duller neural impulses for signal to defecate, anorexia, obesity, hemorrhoids, lack of roughage in diet, dehydration, habitual laxative use	Constipation
Medications, peptic ulcer, gastritis, ulcerative colitis, diverticulitis, diabetes, fecal impaction, tube feedings, stress	Diarrhea
Indigestion, constipation, hemorrhoids, flatus	Acute Pain
Uncontrolled diabetes, infection, peritonitis, diarrhea, vomiting, blood loss, insufficient fluid intake, high-solute tube feedings	Deficient Fluid Volume
Diabetes, malnutrition, hemorrhoids	Risk for Infection
Intestinal obstruction, anorexia, nausea, vomiting, poor dental status, altered taste sensations, constipation	Imbalanced Nutrition: Less Than Body Requirements
Altered taste sensations, ethnic preferences, inactivity, lack of motivation to eat well	Imbalanced Nutrition: More Than Body Requirements
Diabetes, cancer, gingivitis, periodontal disease, jagged teeth, poorly fitting dentures, dehydration, malnutrition, dry mouth	Impaired Oral Mucous Membrane

Careful assessment and observation assist in diagnosing the cause of the problem. The nurse should ask patients with dysphagia:

- when the problem began
- what other symptoms accompany the dysphagia (chest pain, nausea, or coughing)
- what types of foods trigger symptoms (e.g., solids or liquids)
- if the problem is intermittent or present with every meal

Observing food intake can offer insights into the nature of the problem. Referral to a speech-language pathologist is essential to developing an effective plan of care.

Prevention of aspiration and promotion of adequate nutritional status are major goals in the care of patients with dysphagia. The nurse should follow the recommendations of the speech-language therapist closely. Patients with dysphagia should eat in an upright position, ingesting small bites in an unhurried manner. Verbal cues may be needed. An easily-accessible suction machine is beneficial in the event of choking. It is important to monitor food intake and weight.

Hiatal Hernia

The incidence of hiatal hernia increases with age, affecting about half of people in the United States

over age 50, and is of greater incidence in older women. There is some thought that the low-fiber diet of Americans contributes to the high prevalence of this condition. The two types of hiatal hernia are sliding (axial) and rolling (paraesophageal). The sliding type is the most common and occurs when a part of the stomach and the junction of the stomach and esophagus slide through the diaphragm. Most patients with GERD have this type of hiatal hernia. In the rolling or paraesophageal type, the fundus and greater curvatures of the stomach roll up through the diaphragm. Heartburn, dysphagia, belching, vomiting, and regurgitation are common symptoms associated with hiatal hernia. These symptoms are especially problematic when the patient is recumbent. Pain (sometimes mistaken for a heart attack) and bleeding also may occur. Diagnosis is confirmed by a barium swallow and esophagoscopy.

A majority of patients are managed medically. If the patient is obese, weight reduction can minimize the problem. A bland diet may be recommended, as may the use of milk and antacids for symptomatic relief. Several small meals each day rather than three large ones help improve hiatal hernias and may be advantageous to the aged in coping with other age-related gastrointestinal problems. Eating before bedtime should be discouraged. Some patients may find it helpful to

NURSING CARE PLAN 21-1

The Older Adult With Hiatal Hernia

Nursing Diagnosis: Pain

Goal

The patient is free from discomfort related to hiatal hernia

Nursing Actions

- Assist patient in identifying situations that cause discomfort (e.g., bending, bedtime snacking); advise patient to avoid them.
- Teach and support low-calorie diet if obesity is a problem.
- Advise patient to eat 5 to 6 small-portioned meals during the day rather than 3 large meals; in a hospital or institutional setting, consult with dietician to arrange this meal plan.
- Instruct patient to eat meals slowly and to sit upright while eating and for at least 1 hour thereafter.
- Discourage consumption of spicy foods, caffeinated beverages, carbonated beverages, and alcohol.
- Advise patient to stop smoking if patient has this habit; refer to smoking cessation program as needed.
- Advise patient against consuming food for at least 2 hours prior to bed time or nap.
- Instruct patient to avoid heavy lifting, bending, wearing girdles or tight pants, and coughing or sneezing strenuously.
- Prevent constipation to avoid straining during bowel movements.
- Elevate upper portion of bed by placing blocks under the head of the bed (this is preferable to raising upper portion of mattress due to risk of shearing force).
- Administer antacids as prescribed.

Nursing Diagnosis: Imbalanced Nutrition

Goal

The patient consumes the prescribed diet; the patient is free from abdominal discomfort

Nursing Actions

- Consult with nutritionist and physician to develop diet plan appropriate for the patient.
- Instruct patient to eat 5 or 6 small-portioned meals rather than 3 large ones.
- Identify foods that increase symptoms and instruct patient to omit these from diet; offer foods of equal nutritive value to replace food eliminated from diet if necessary.
- Record and monitor weight and dietary intake.

sleep in a partly recumbent position. H₂ blockers, such as ranitidine, cimetidine, or nizatidine, and proton-pump inhibitors like lansoprazole and omeprazole, often are prescribed. Nursing Care Plan 21-1 offers a sample care plan for the patient with hiatal hernia.



KEY CONCEPT

Several small meals throughout the day, rather than three large ones, not only are beneficial in the management of hiatal hernia, but also have advantages for the gastrointestinal health of all older adults.

Esophageal Cancer

Most persons affected by cancer of the esophagus are of advanced age. This disease commonly strikes between the ages of 50 and 70 years and is of higher incidence in men, alcoholic persons, and persons who smoke or use smokeless tobacco. Poor oral hygiene and chronic irritation from tobacco, alcohol, and other agents contribute to the development of this problem. Barrett's esophagus, a condition in which the normal lining of the esophagus is replaced by a type of lining usually found in the intestines (intestinal metaplasia) is associated with an increased risk of developing cancer (Peters, 2003); the risk of developing adenocarcinoma is 30 to

125 times higher in people who have Barrett's esophagus than in people who do not (National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Disease, 2007).

Dysphagia, weight loss, excessive salivation, thirst, hiccups, anemia, and chronic bleeding are symptoms of the disease. Barium swallow, esophagoscopy, and biopsy are performed as diagnostic measures. Treatment options include surgical resection, radiation, chemotherapy, laser therapy, and photodynamic therapy. Unfortunately, a poor prognosis is common among older patients. Benign tumors of the esophagus are rare in older people.

Peptic Ulcer

In addition to stress, diet, and genetic predisposition as causes, particular factors are believed to account for the increased incidence of ulcers in older persons, including longevity, more precise diagnostic evaluation, and the fact that ulcers can be a complication of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), which is increasingly prevalent. Drugs commonly prescribed for older adults that can increase gastric secretions and reduce the resistance of the mucosa include aspirin, reserpine, tolbutamide, phenylbutazone, colchicine, and adrenal corticosteroids.

Peptic ulcers tend to present with more acute symptoms in older adults, such as pain, bleeding, obstruction, and perforation. Diagnostic and therapeutic measures resemble those used for younger adults. The nurse should be alert to complications associated with peptic ulcer, which are more likely to occur with older adults, such as constipation or diarrhea caused by antacid therapy and pyloric obstruction resulting in dehydration, peritonitis, hemorrhage, and shock.



POINT TO PONDER

In what ways do diet, activity, emotions, and other factors affect your appetite, diet, digestion, and bowel elimination? Do you notice any patterns that you could correct, and if so, how? ●

Cancer of the Stomach

The incidence of gastric cancer increases with age, occurring most frequently in people between 50 and 70 years of age. It is more prevalent among men, poor socioeconomic groups, and African American, Asian, Native American, and Hispanic individuals. Adenocarcinomas account for most gastric malignancies. Anorexia, epigastric pain, weight loss, and anemia are symptoms of gastric cancer; these symptoms may be insidious and easily mistaken for indigestion problems. Bleeding and enlargement of the liver may occur. Symptoms related to pelvic metastasis may also

develop. Diagnosis is confirmed by barium swallow and gastroscopy with biopsy. Surgical treatment consisting of a partial or total gastrectomy is preferred. Unfortunately, older people with gastric cancer have a poor prognosis.



KEY CONCEPT

Symptoms of gastric cancer can be insidious and easily mistaken for indigestion.

Diverticular Disease

Multiple pouches of intestinal mucosa in the weakened muscular wall of the large bowel, known as diverticulosis, are common among older persons. Chronic constipation, obesity, hiatal hernia, and atrophy of the intestinal wall muscles with aging contribute to this problem. The low-fiber, low-residue diets that are common in Western societies are a major reason that diverticulosis are common in this country but rare in many third world countries. Most cases involve the sigmoid colon; many cases are asymptomatic. If symptoms are present, they can include slight bleeding, as well as a change in bowel habits (constipation, diarrhea, or both) and tenderness on palpation of the left lower quadrant. Usually a barium enema identifies the problem. Surgery is not performed unless severe bleeding develops. Medical management is most common and includes an increase in dietary fiber intake, weight reduction, and avoidance of constipation.

Bowel contents can accumulate in the diverticula and decompose, causing inflammation and infection; this is known as diverticulitis. Although fewer than half the patients with diverticulosis develop diverticulitis, most patients who do are old. Older men tend to experience this problem more than any other group.

Overeating, straining during a bowel movement, alcohol, and irritating foods may contribute to diverticulitis in the patient with diverticulosis. Abrupt onset of pain in the left lower quadrant, similar to that of appendicitis but over the sigmoid area, is a symptom of this problem. Nausea, vomiting, constipation, diarrhea, low-grade fever, and blood or mucus in the stool may also occur. These attacks can be severely acute or slowly progressing; although the acute attacks can cause peritonitis, the slower forms can also be serious because of the possibility of lower bowel obstruction resulting from scarring and abscess formation. In addition to the mentioned complications, fistulas to the bladder, vagina, colon, and intestines can develop. During the acute phase, efforts focus on reducing infection, providing nutrition, relieving discomfort, and promoting rest. Usually nothing is ingested by mouth, and intravenous

therapy is used. When the acute episode subsides, the patient is taught to consume a low-residue diet. Surgery, performed if medical management is unsuccessful or if serious complications occur, may consist of a resection or temporary colostomy. Continued follow-up should be encouraged.

Cancer of the Colon

Cancer at any site along the large intestine is common with advancing age. The sigmoid colon and rectum tend to be frequent sites for carcinoma; in fact, colorectal cancer is the second most common malignancy in the United States. Although the pattern of symptoms frequently varies for each person, some common symptoms include:

- bloody stools
- change in bowel function
- anorexia
- nausea
- epigastric pain
- jaundice

Some older patients ignore bowel symptoms, believing them to be from constipation, poor diet, or hemorrhoids. The patient's description of bowel problems is less reliable than a digital rectal examination, which detects half of all carcinomas of the large bowel and rectum. Fecal occult blood testing is effective for early detection of colonic tumors. The standard diagnostic tests, including barium enema and sigmoidoscopy with biopsy, are used to confirm the diagnosis. Surgical resection with anastomosis or the formation of a colostomy is usually performed. Medical-surgical nursing textbooks can provide information on this surgery, and nurses should consult them for specific guidance on caring for patients with this condition.



KEY CONCEPT

An annual stool occult blood and digital rectal examination are recommended because they can detect many cancers of the large bowel and rectum. In addition, a flexible sigmoidoscopy every 5 years or a colonoscopy every 10 years is advised as an important means to detect colon cancer. Risk factors may warrant more frequent screening.

It is important to realize that a colostomy can present many problems for older adults. In addition to having to adjust to many bodily changes with age, a colostomy presents a major adjustment and a threat to a good self-concept. Older adults may feel that a colostomy further separates them from society's view of normal. Socialization may be impaired by the patient's concern over the reactions of others

or by fear of embarrassing episodes. Reduced energy reserves, arthritic fingers, slower movement, and poorer eyesight are among the problems that may hamper the ability to care for a colostomy, thus causing dependency on others to assist with this procedure. This need for assistance may be perceived as a significant loss of independence for older persons. Tactful, skilled nursing intervention can promote psychological as well as physical adjustment to a colostomy. Continued follow-up is beneficial to assess the patient's changing ability to engage in this self-care activity, identify problems, and provide ongoing support and reassurance.

Chronic Constipation

Constipation is a common concern for older adults (Nursing Diagnosis Highlight: Constipation). Many factors can contribute to this problem, including:

- inactive lifestyle
- low fiber and fluid intake
- depression
- laxative abuse
- certain medications, such as opiates, sedatives, and aluminum hydroxide gels
- dulled sensations that cause the signal for bowel elimination to be missed
- failure to allow sufficient time for complete emptying of the bowel

A diet high in fiber and fluid and regular activity can promote bowel elimination, and particular foods that patients find effective (e.g., prunes or chocolate pudding) can be incorporated into the regular diet. A mixture of raisins, prunes, dates, and currants can be a nourishing, tasty snack that promotes bowel elimination. (For individuals with chewing impairments, this can be blended with yogurt or applesauce.) Providing a regular time for bowel elimination is often helpful; mornings tend to be the best time for older adults to empty their bowels. Sometimes rocking the trunk from side to side and back and forth while sitting on the toilet will stimulate a bowel movement. Only after these measures have failed should medications be considered.



KEY CONCEPT

Measures to promote bowel elimination include scheduling a regular time for this function, incorporating high-fiber foods into the diet, and rocking the trunk from side to side and back and forth while sitting on the toilet.

Older persons may need education concerning bowel elimination. The safe use of laxatives should be emphasized to prevent laxative abuse. The patient

NURSING DIAGNOSIS HIGHLIGHT

CONSTIPATION

Overview

Constipation is a condition in which there is an infrequent passage of dry, hard stools. Some of the findings consistent with constipation include decreased frequency of bowel movements (as compared to patient's normal pattern); straining to have bowel movement; hard, dry stools; abdominal distention and discomfort; palpable mass and sense of pressure or fullness in rectum; poor appetite; backache, headache; reduced activity level; and request for or use of laxatives or enemas.

Causative or contributing factors

Age-related decrease in peristalsis, inactivity, immobility, hemorrhoidal pain, poor dietary intake of fiber and fluids, dehydration, surgery, dependency on laxatives or enemas, side effects of medications (e.g., antacids, calcium, anticholinergics, barium, iron, narcotics)

Goal

The patient establishes a regular pattern of bowel elimination and passes a stool of normal consistency without straining or experiencing discomfort.

Interventions

- Establish and maintain record of frequency and characteristics of bowel movements.
- Ensure patient consumes at least 1300 mL fluids daily (unless contraindicated).
- Review dietary pattern with patient and educate as needed regarding the inclusion of high-fiber foods in diet; monitor dietary intake.
- Assist patient in developing a program to increase activity level as appropriate.
- Assist patient in developing a regular schedule for toileting; provide toileting assistance as needed; ensure privacy is provided during toileting; if bedpan must be used, be sure patient is in upright position, unless contraindicated, and made comfortable.
- Consider use of herbs with laxative effects, such as aloe, dandelion root, cascara sagrada, senna, and rhubarb.
- Consult with physician regarding use of vitamin C supplements several times daily until stool is soft (not to exceed 5000 mg/d).
- Administer laxatives, as prescribed; avoid long-term use of laxatives unless patient's condition warrants otherwise.
- Monitor for fecal impaction.
- Assess patient's use of laxatives and enemas; if dependency on laxatives or enemas for bowel elimination exists, educate patient about hazards associated with this dependency and develop a plan to gradually taper usage of laxative or enema (abrupt discontinuation is contraindicated).
- Educate patient as to nonpharmacologic means to stimulate bowel movement.

should be aware that diarrhea resulting from laxative abuse may cause dehydration, a serious threat to life. Dandelion root, cascara sagrada, senna, and rhubarb are herbs that stimulate bowel movement and can be taken to prevent constipation.

Older adults in a hospital or nursing facility may benefit from an elimination chart that reflects the time, amount, and characteristics of bowel movements. This chart can help the nurse prevent consti-

pation and fecal impaction by providing easily accessible data regarding bowel elimination. Even older persons in the community can benefit from the use of an elimination record that they can maintain themselves.

Chronic constipation that does not improve with the usual measures may require medical evaluation, including anal, rectal, and sigmoid examinations, to determine the presence of any underlying cause.

Consider This Case

Mr. C is a 75-year-old participant in an adult day care program. In interviewing him, you learn that he had a cerebrovascular accident 2 years ago that left him with some right-sided weakness. His medical record indicates that he also has a history of hiatal hernia, depression, hypertension, and osteoarthritis. He is taking anti-hypertensive, antidepressant, and nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs.

THINK CRITICALLY

- What threats to gastrointestinal health exist for Mr. C?
- What measures could be taken to reduce those threats?

Flatulence

Flatulence, which is common in older adults, is caused by constipation, irregular bowel movements, certain foods (e.g., the high-fiber foods promoted for increased dietary intake in recent years), and poor neuromuscular control of the anal sphincter. Achieving a regular bowel pattern and avoiding flatus-producing foods may relieve this problem, as may the administration of specific medications intended for this purpose. Sitting upright after meals is helpful in allowing gas to rise to the fundus of the stomach and be expelled.

Discomfort associated with the inability to expel flatus can occur occasionally. Increased activity can provide relief, as may a knee-chest position, if possible. A flatus bag consisting of a rectal tube with an attached plastic bag that prevents the entrance of air into the rectum can be beneficial.

Intestinal Obstruction

Partial or complete impairment of flow of intestinal contents in the large intestines most often occurs due to cancer of the colon; adhesions and hernias are the primary cause of obstructions in the small intestine. Other causes of blockage include diverticulitis, ulcerative colitis, hypokalemia, vascular problems, and paralytic ileus, a mechanical obstruction that can occur following surgery due to nerves being affected by the extended lack of peristaltic activity.

Symptoms vary depending on the site and cause of the obstruction:

- Small bowel obstruction causes upper and mid-abdominal pain in rhythmic recurring waves related to the small intestine's attempt to push the contents through the obstruction. Vomiting occurs and may bring some relief.
- Obstructions occurring past the ileum cause abdominal distension so severe that the raised diaphragm can inhibit respirations. Vomiting is more severe than with small bowel blockages and initially is composed of semi-digested food and later, contains bile and is more watery.
- Obstruction of the colon causes lower abdominal pain, altered bowel habits, distension, and a sensation of the need to defecate. Vomiting usually does not occur until late, when the distension reaches the small intestine.

The nurse should review symptoms thoroughly and note bowel sounds. Bowel obstruction can cause high-pitched peristaltic rushes to be heard on auscultation. If the obstruction has persisted for a long time or the bowel has been significantly damaged, bowel sounds decrease and eventually are absent.

Timely intervention is essential to prevent bowel strangulation and serious complications. X-rays and blood evaluation typically are done to determine the cause and extent of the problem. Intestinal intubation is the major treatment and often helps to decompress the bowel and allow the obstruction to be broken. If medical management is unsuccessful or if the cause is due to vascular or mechanical obstructions, surgery is required. In addition to supporting the medical or surgical treatment plan, nurses need to promote the patient's comfort and ensure that fluid and electrolyte balance is restored and maintained.

Fecal Impaction

Prevention of constipation aids in avoiding fecal impaction. Observing the frequency and character of bowel movements may aid in detecting the development of an impaction; a bowel elimination record is essential for older people in a hospital or nursing home for identifying alternations in bowel elimination. Indications of a fecal impaction include:

- distended rectum
- abdominal and rectal discomfort
- oozing of fecal material around the impaction; often mistaken as diarrhea
- palpable, hard fecal mass
- fever

Because policies may vary, nurses should review the permissive procedures of their employing agency to ensure that removal of a fecal impaction is an acceptable nursing action. An enema, usually oil retention, may be prescribed to assist in the softening and elimination process. Manual breaking and removal of feces with a lubricated gloved finger will promote removal of the impaction. Sometimes, injecting 50 mL hydrogen peroxide through a rectal tube will cause breakage of the impaction as the hydrogen peroxide foams. Care should be taken not to traumatize or overexert the patient during these procedures.

Bowel Incontinence

Involuntary defecation, bowel incontinence, refers to the inability to voluntarily control the passage of stool. It is most often associated with fecal impaction in older adults who are institutionalized or physically or cognitively impaired. For this reason, the initial step is to assess for the presence of an impaction. If an impaction is not present, the nurse must assess for other causes. Possible causes of bowel incontinence include decreased contractile strength, impaired automaticity of the puborectal and external anal sphincter (secondary to age-related muscle

NURSING CARE PLAN 21-2

The Older Adult With Bowel Incontinence

Nursing Diagnosis: Bowel Incontinence

Goals

The patient achieves partial or complete restoration of bowel control.

Nursing Actions

- Record and evaluate patient's bowel elimination pattern.
- Establish consistent time to toilet based on pattern.
- Position patient in best physiologic position for bowel movement: sitting with normal posture.
- Have patient lean forward or prop feet on stool to increase intra-abdominal pressure.
- Instruct patient to bear down and attempt to defecate.
- Record results; ensure patient does not develop fecal impaction.
- If necessary, stimulate anorectal reflex with glycerin suppository 30 to 45 minutes before scheduled bowel movement.
- Supplement toilet activities with exercise and good fluid (minimally 1500 mL/d) and fiber intake unless contraindicated.

weakness or injury to the pudendal nerve), loss of cortical control, and reduced reservoir capacity (secondary to surgical resection or the presence of a tumor). Proctosigmoidoscopy, proctography, and anorectal manometry are among the diagnostic tests used to evaluate this disorder. The cause of the incontinence dictates the treatment approach, which could include bowel retraining (Nursing Care Plan 21-2), drugs, surgery, or biofeedback.

Acute Appendicitis

Although acute appendicitis does not occur frequently in older persons, it is important to note that it may present with altered signs and symptoms if it does occur. The severe pain that occurs in younger persons may be absent in older adults, whose pain may be minimal and referred. Fever may be minimal, and leukocytosis may be absent. These differences often cause a delayed diagnosis. Prompt surgery will improve the patient's prognosis. Unfortunately, delayed or missed diagnosis and the inability to improve the general status of the patient before this emergency surgery can lead to greater complications and mortality in older persons with appendicitis.

Cancer of the Pancreas

Pancreatic cancer is difficult to detect until it has reached an advanced stage. Anorexia, weakness, weight loss, and wasting are generalized symptoms easily attributed to other causes. Dyspepsia, belching, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, constipation, and obstructive jaundice may occur as well. Fever may or may not be present. The person may experience

epigastric pain radiating to the back. This pain is relieved when the person leans forward and is worsened when a recumbent position is assumed. Surgery is performed to treat this problem. Unfortunately, the disease is generally so advanced by the time diagnosis is made that the prognosis is usually poor.

Biliary Tract Disease

The incidence of gallstones increases with age and affects women more frequently than men. Pain is the primary symptom. Treatment measures include nonsurgical therapies, such as rotary lithotrite treatment and extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy, and the standard surgical procedures. Obstruction, inflammation, and infection are potential outcomes of gallstones and require monitoring.

Cancer of the gallbladder primarily affects older persons, especially women. Fortunately, this disease does not occur frequently. Pain in the right upper quadrant, anorexia, nausea, vomiting, weight loss, jaundice, weakness, and constipation are the usual symptoms. Although surgery may be performed, the prognosis for the patient with cancer of the gallbladder is poor.

Summary

Gastrointestinal symptoms, although common, can indicate serious medical problems in older adults and need to be taken seriously. Diagnosis of these problems can be difficult because of atypical symptomatology, self-medication that masks symptoms, and easy confusion with disorders of other systems. Astute questioning and alertness to subtle symptoms

during the assessment can help these conditions to be diagnosed and treated early.

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. What age-related changes affect bowel elimination?
2. Describe the changes in dental care that have occurred since today's older adults were children and the way in which this will affect dental health of future generations of older persons.
3. What preventive measures could you recommend to older adults to promote bowel elimination?
4. What are some actions that you could take to encourage older adults to seek regular screening for colon cancer?

Resources

Crohn's and Colitis Foundation of America

<http://www.cdfa.org>

National Institute of Dental and Craniofacial Research

<http://www.nidcr.nih.gov>

United Ostomy Association

<http://www.uoa.org>

References

National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Disease. (2007). Barrett's esophagus. Bethesda, MD: National Digestive Diseases Information Center. NIH Publication No. 02-4546. Available online: <http://www.digestive.niddk.nih.gov/ddiseases/pubs/barretts/>

Peters, J. H. (2003). Barrett's esophagus: Now what? *Annals of Surgery*, 237(3), 299–300.

Recommended Readings

Bliss, D. Z., Fisher, L. R., & Savik, K. (2005). Managing fecal incontinence: Self-care practices of older adults. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 31(7), 35–44.

Chernoff, R. (2003). *Geriatric nutrition. The health professionals handbook* (2nd ed.). New York: Jones and Bartlett.

Coleman, P. (2002). Improving oral health care for the frail elderly: A review of widespread problems and best practices. *Geriatric Nursing*, 23(1), 189–197.

Dunmore, F. (2002). Care models for the older adult with gastroesophageal reflux disease. *Geriatric Nursing*, 23(2), 212–216.

Hale, M. E., Smith, E., St James, J., & Wojner-Alexandrov, A. (2007). Pilot study of the feasibility and effectiveness of a natural laxative mixture. *Geriatric Nursing* 28(2), 104–111.

Johns Hopkins University. (2007). Colon cancer screening: A gentle reminder. *Johns Hopkins Medical Letter. Health After 50*. 19(5), 6–7.

MacDonald, D. E. (2006). Principles of geriatric dentistry and their application to the older adult with a physical disability. *Clinical Geriatric Medicine*, 22(2), 413–434.

Mentes, J. C. (2006). A typology of oral hydration problems exhibited by frail nursing home residents. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 32(1), 13–19.

Ratnaike, R., & Hatherly, S. (2002). Dysphagia in older persons, Part I: Oropharyngeal dysphagia. *Clinical Geriatrics*, 10(3), 19–31.

Robbertz, A. A., Larf, R. C., Rupp, R. L., & Alexander, D. C. (2007). A qualitative assessment of dental care access and utilization among the older adult population in the United States. *General Dentistry*, 54(5), 361–365.

Salles, N. (2007). Basic mechanisms of the aging gastrointestinal tract. *Digestive Diseases*, 25(2), 112–117.

Sanoff, H. K., Bleiberg, H., & Goldberg, R. M. (2007). Managing older patients with colorectal cancer. *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 25(14), 1891–1897.

Shanley, C., & O'Loughlin, G. (2000). Dysphagia among nursing home residents: An assessment and management protocol. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 28(8), 35–48.

Smith, P. A. (2006). Nutrition, hydration, and dysphagia in long-term care: Differing opinions on the effects of aspiration. *Journal of the American Medical Directors Association*, 7(9), 545–549.

Syngal, S., Schrag, D., Falchuk, M., Tung, N., Farraye, F. A., et al. (2003). Colorectal cancer test use among persons aged 50 years. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 289, 2492–2493.

Tariq, S. H. (2007). Constipation in long-term care. *Journal of the American Medical Directors Association*, 8(4), 209–218.

Thjodleifsson, B., & Jonsson, P. V. (2001). Management of gastroesophageal reflux disease in the elderly patient. *Clinical Geriatrics*, 9(6), 50–57.

Walsh, J. M. E., & Terdiman, J. P. (2003). Colorectal cancer screening: Scientific review. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 289(10), 1288–1296.

CHAPTER 22

Urinary Elimination

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Effect of Aging on Urinary Elimination Urinary System Health Promotion Selected Urinary Conditions

- Urinary Incontinence
- Bladder Cancer
- Renal Calculi
- Glomerulonephritis

General Nursing Considerations for Urinary Conditions

Urinary problems, although bothersome, frequent, and potentially life-threatening, are disorders not easily discussed by older adults. Some feel embarrassment or believe it is inappropriate to talk about these problems, while other individuals may accept symptoms of urinary disorders as a normal part of aging. These factors often delay early detection and treatment. Untreated, these problems can jeopardize total body health and affect psychosocial well-being. Nurses are in ideal positions to develop close relationships with older patients, which can help patients to more comfortably discuss problems of the urinary tract. By demonstrating sensitivity, acceptance, and understanding of patients' problems, nurses can facilitate prompt, appropriate intervention.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 Describe age-related changes that affect urinary elimination.
- 2 List measures that promote urinary system health.
- 3 Outline factors to consider in assessing the urinary system.
- 4 Describe the incidence, symptoms, and management of selected urinary conditions.
- 5 Outline a care plan for the patient who is incontinent of urine.

Effects of Aging on Urinary Elimination

Age-related changes in the urinary tract may cause various elimination problems. One of the greatest annoyances is urinary frequency, caused by hypertrophy of the bladder muscle and thickening of the bladder, which decreases bladder ability to expand and reduces storage capacity. In addition to frequency during the day, nighttime urinary frequency (nocturia) can be a problem. Often, kidney circulation improves when the person assumes a recumbent position, so voiding may be required a few hours after the individual lies down and at other times during the night. Age-related changes in cortical control of micturition also contribute to nocturia; this problem, along with incontinence (which is not a normal consequence of aging), can be noted in persons with dementia or other conditions affecting the cerebral cortex. Nurses should advise older adults and their caregivers that long-acting diuretics, such as the thiazides, even when administered in the morning, can also cause nocturia. If multiple episodes of nocturia occur, medical evaluation may be warranted to ensure that no urinary tract problem is present.

Inefficient neurologic control of bladder emptying and weaker bladder muscles can promote the retention of large volumes of urine. In women, the most common cause of urinary retention is a fecal impaction; prostatic hypertrophy, present to some degree in most older men, is the primary cause in men. Symptoms of retention include urinary frequency, straining, dribbling, palpable bladder, and the sensation that the bladder has not been emptied. Retention can predispose older individuals to the development of urinary tract infections.

The filtration efficiency of the kidneys decreases with age, affecting the body's ability to eliminate drugs. The nurse should observe the patient for signs of adverse drug reactions resulting from an accumulation of toxic levels of medications. Higher blood urea nitrogen levels may occur due to reduced renal function, causing lethargy, confusion, headache, drowsiness, and other symptoms. Decreased tubular function may cause problems in the concentration of urine; the maximum specific gravity at 80 years of age is 1.024, whereas at younger ages it is 1.032. Reduced ability to concentrate and dilute urine in response to water or sodium excess or depletion occurs. Decreased reabsorption from the filtrate makes a proteinuria of 1.0 usually of no diagnostic significance in older adults. An increase in the renal threshold for glucose is a serious concern, because older individuals can be hyperglycemic without evidence of glycosuria. False-negative results in diabetic urine testing can occur for this reason.



KEY CONCEPT

Changes in the renal threshold for glucose cause older adults to be hyperglycemic without having any evidence of glycosuria.

The inability to control the elimination of urine (i.e., incontinence) is not a normal occurrence with advanced age; however, age-related changes increase the risk for this problem. Incontinence reflects a physical or mental disorder and demands a thorough evaluation. Some stress incontinence may be present, particularly in women who have had multiple pregnancies or in persons who postpone voiding after they sense the urge. More information on incontinence is discussed later in the chapter.

Urinary System Health Promotion

Basic health practices, which are easily incorporated into the daily schedule, can prevent a variety of urinary tract problems. For instance, a good fluid intake can reduce the amount of bacteria in the bladder. Acidic urine, beneficial in preventing infection, can be enhanced by the intake of vitamin C and foods such as cranberries, prunes, plums, eggs, cheese, fish, and grains. Catheterization significantly increases the risk of infection and should be avoided. Activity can eliminate urinary stasis, and frequent toileting can prevent urinary retention. The nurse can teach older adults specific efforts to enhance voiding and prevent retention, including the following:

- voiding in upright position
- massaging bladder area
- rocking back and forth
- running water
- soaking hands in warm water

The reduced bladder capacity of older adults should be kept in mind when individuals who are unable to ambulate independently are placed in wheelchairs; they will not be able to sit all day without needing to void, and unnecessary incontinence may result if toileting assistance is not provided. Trips and activities should be planned to allow bathroom breaks at frequent intervals.

For older adults experiencing nocturia, nurses can implement measures to promote patients' safety. Because older adults' increased threshold for light perception makes night vision difficult, nocturia could predispose them to accidents when attempting to walk to the bathroom in the dark. Night-lights should be used to improve visibility during trips to the bathroom, and any clutter or environmental hazards that

could cause a fall should be removed. Reducing fluids immediately before bedtime may help, although they should not be significantly restricted.

A complete history and examination are essential to pinpoint specific areas that require further investigation; however, obtaining data about urinary function and problems can be difficult. Because older persons may feel embarrassment about discussing these problems, the nurse should set a comfortable tone and display sensitivity during the assessment to facilitate good data collection. Assessment Guide 22-1

describes some of the areas to include in assessing the urinary system; Nursing Diagnosis Table 22-1 outlines some of the nursing diagnoses that could be identified.

Selected Urinary Conditions

Urinary Incontinence

A common and bothersome disorder of older adults that requires skillful nursing attention is the involuntary loss of urine, or urinary incontinence.



ASSESSMENT GUIDE 22-1 Urinary Function

INTERVIEW

The interview should include a review of function, signs, and symptoms. Ask questions pertaining to the following:

- *Frequency of voiding.* “How often do you need to urinate during the day and during the night? Has there been any recent change in that pattern?”
- *Continence.* “Do you ever lose control of your urine? Do you experience a steady stream of urine dribbling at all times or at certain times? Is urine released when you cough or sneeze? How soon do you need to toilet after getting the urge to void before you lose control?”
- *Retention.* “Do you ever feel that you have not fully emptied your bladder after you have voided? Do you have a sense of fullness in your bladder after voiding?”
- *Pain.* “Does it burn when you void? Do you experience pain in your lower abdomen or anywhere else? Is there any tenderness, discomfort, itching, or pain anywhere along your genital area?”
- *Urine.* “Have you ever seen crystals or particles in your urine? Is your urine ever pink, bloody, or discolored? Is it as clear as tap water or as dark as rusty water? Does your urine ever have a strong odor? If so, what is that odor like?”

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

- Inspect, percuss, and palpate the abdomen for bladder fullness, pain, or abnormalities.
- Test women for stress incontinence by doing the following:
 - Have the patient drink at least one full glass of fluid and wait until she senses fullness of the bladder.
 - Instruct the patient to stand. If this is not possible, have her sit as upright as possible.

- Ask the patient to hold a 4 × 4 gauze at her perineum.
- Instruct the patient to cough vigorously.
- The test is negative if no leakage or leakage of only a few drops occurs. If residual urine is a problem, a postvoid residual may be ordered in which the patient is catheterized within 15 minutes of voiding to determine the volume of urine remaining in the bladder.

- If incontinence is present, refer the patient for a comprehensive evaluation; it can prove useful to maintain a record or have the patient maintain a diary of each occurrence of incontinence and factors associated with these incidents.

EXAMINATION OF URINE SAMPLE

A urinalysis can provide basic information about this system. The specific gravity should range from 1.005 to 1.025, and the pH from 4.6 to 8. Although alkaline urine is most often associated with infections, it can be present if the specimen has been sitting for a few hours. Normally the urine should be free of glucose and protein, but renal changes in the older adult cause proteinuria and glycosuria to be less reliable findings.

Note the color of the urine sample. Examination of the urine's color can yield insight into the presence of health problems. Dark colors can indicate increased urine concentration. Red or rust color usually is associated with the presence of blood. Yellow-brown or green-brown color can be caused by an obstructed bile duct or jaundice. Orange urine results from the presence of bile or the ingestion of phenazopyridine. Very dark brown urine is associated with hematuria or carcinoma.

Also note the urine sample's odor. A faint aromatic odor of the urine is normal. Strong odor can indicate concentrated urine associated with dehydration. Ammonia-like odor can accompany infections.

NURSING DIAGNOSIS

TABLE 22-1 Nursing Diagnoses Associated With Aging and Urinary Problems

Causes or Contributing Factors	Nursing Diagnosis
Ineffective filtration of drugs, wastes from blood due to loss of nephrons and approximately 50% decrease in glomerular filtration rate	Ineffective Health Maintenance
Unreliable urine specimen findings due to decreased resorption of glucose from filtrate and less concentrated urine	Ineffective Health Maintenance
Urgency, frequency, nocturia related to weaker bladder muscles, decreased bladder capacity, slower micturation reflex, and prostate enlargement with age	Impaired Urinary Elimination
Infection, cancer; retention	Pain
Concentrated urine, immobility, more alkaline urine, catheterization	Risk for Infection
Falls on urine puddles	Risk for Injury
Immobility, dementia, weakness	Toileting Self-Care Deficit
Incontinence	Body Image Disturbance Impaired Skin Integrity
Nocturia, retention, dysuria	Sleep Pattern Disturbance
Embarrassment over symptoms, odor; frequency, discomfort	Impaired Social Interaction
Infection, retention, calculi, strictures, incontinence	Impaired Urinary Elimination

Studies have shown that urinary incontinence is present in 15% to 30% of the community-based older population, 50% of the institutionalized older population, and 30% of hospitalized older adults; this problem is twice as prevalent in women as compared to men (Ogundele, Silverberg, Sinert, & Guerrero, 2006).

The following are various types of incontinence:

- **Stress incontinence:** caused by weak supporting pelvic muscles. When pressure is placed on the pelvic floor (e.g., from laughing, sneezing, or coughing), urine is involuntarily lost.
- **Urgency incontinence:** caused by urinary tract infection (UTI), enlargement of the prostate, diverticulitis, or pelvic or bladder tumors. Irritation or spasms of the bladder wall cause a sudden elimination of urine.
- **Overflow incontinence:** associated with bladder neck obstructions and medications (e.g., adrenergics, anticholinergics, and calcium channel blockers). Bladder muscles fail to contract or periurethral muscles do not relax, leading to an excessive accumulation of urine in the bladder.
- **Neurogenic (reflex) incontinence:** arising from cerebral cortex lesions, multiple sclerosis, and other disturbances along the neural pathway. There is an inability to sense the urge to void or control urine flow.
- **Functional incontinence:** caused by dementia, disabilities that prevent independent toileting, sedation, inaccessible bathroom, medications that impair cognition, or any other factor interfering with the ability to reach a bathroom.
- **Mixed incontinence:** can be due to a combination of these factors.

Nurses should not assume that individuals with incontinence, even long-term incontinence, have necessarily had this problem identified and evaluated. Embarrassment in discussing this disorder or the belief that incontinence is a normal outcome of aging can lead to unreported incontinence. This reinforces the importance of questioning about incontinence during every routine assessment. In addition to referring the patient for a comprehensive medical evaluation, nurses can help identify the cause and determine appropriate treatment measures through the process of nursing assessment. Box 22-1 lists some of the factors to consider in assessing the incontinent individual.

The initial goal for incontinent individuals is to identify the cause of incontinence; thereafter, treatment goals are developed based on the underlying cause. Kegel exercises (Box 22-2), biofeedback, and

BOX 22-1 Factors to Assess in the Patient Who is Incontinent of Urine

- **Medical History:** Note diagnoses that could contribute to incontinence, such as delirium, dementia, cerebrovascular accident, diabetes mellitus, congestive heart failure, urinary tract infection.
- **Medications:** Review all prescription and nonprescription drugs used for those that can affect continence, such as diuretics, antianxiety agents, antipsychotics, antidepressants, sedatives, narcotics, antiparkinsonism agents, antispasmodics, antihistamines, calcium channel blockers, and α -blockers and α -stimulants.
- **Functional Status:** Assess activities of daily living (ADL); note impairments; ask about recent changes in function; determine degree of dependency on others for mobility, transfers, toileting.
- **Cognition:** Test cognitive function; review symptoms such as depression, hallucinations; ask about recent changes in mood or intellectual function.
- **Neuromuscular Function in Lower Extremities:** Test patient's ability to keep leg lifted against your efforts to gently push it down; touch various areas along both legs with pin point and smooth side of safety pin to determine patient's ability to detect and differentiate sensations.
- **Urinary Control and Retention:** Test for stress incontinence in women; determine postvoid residual.
- **Bladder Fullness and Pain:** Inspect, percuss, and palpate the bladder for distention, discomfort, and abnormalities.
- **Elimination Pattern:** Record bladder elimination patterns and associated factors for several days; inquire about changes to elimination pattern; note frequency, pattern, amount, and relationship to other factors.
- **Fecal Impaction:** Palpate the rectum for the presence of fecal impaction (unless contraindicated).
- **Symptoms:** Ask about urgency, burning, vaginal itching, pain, pressure in bladder area, fever.
- **Diet:** Assess intake of potential bladder irritants: caffeine, alcohol, citrus fruits/juices, tomatoes, spicy foods, artificial sweeteners.
- **Reactions to Incontinence:** Explore how incontinence has affected activities, lifestyle, self-concept; determine patient's appraisal of problem.

medications (e.g., estrogen or anticholinergics) may be useful for the improvement of stress incontinence; in some circumstances, surgery may be warranted. Urgency incontinence can be aided by adherence to a toileting schedule, Kegel exercises, biofeedback, and medications (e.g., anticholinergics or adrenergic antagonists). Overflow incontinence may benefit from adherence to a toileting

schedule, the use of the Crede method, intermittent catheterization, and medications (e.g., parasympathomimetics). Interventions to assist with functional incontinence could range from improvement of mobility to provision of a bedside commode. Nursing Care Plan 22-1 presents a sample care plan for the older adult with urinary incontinence.

Consider This Case

Eighty-six-year-old Mr. E lives with his daughter and her family. His bedroom is on the first floor of their two-story home with a bathroom a short distance from his room. The family members pass by Mr. E's bedroom on a regular basis and have noticed a strong urine odor coming from the room. Mr. E has no cognitive impairments, fulfills his activities of daily living independently, and as has always been his pattern, conducts himself in a proper manner. Mr. E has never mentioned any problem with elimination, and because he launders his own linens and takes care of his own room, the family cannot determine if he is wetting the bed.

THINK CRITICALLY

- What are some of the challenges of this situation?
- What advice could you offer the family in approaching this issue with Mr. E?

BOX 22-2 Kegel Exercises

Kegel exercises are an approach to strengthening the pelvic floor muscles, which can lead to an improvement in control over urine incontinence. Nurses can give the following basic instructions to women.

FIND THE MUSCLES INVOLVED IN THE EXERCISES

You first need to identify the pelvic floor muscles that are involved in the exercises. To do this, stop the flow of urine while voiding and notice how the muscles are tightening in the vaginal area and the pelvic floor is lifting. Another approach is to insert a finger in your vagina and tighten your muscles around your finger. Notice the vagina tightening and the pelvic floor lifting. Stop and start the urinary flow several times until you identify the muscles and understand the muscle movements.

PRACTICE THE EXERCISES

Void prior to starting the exercises. Get in a sitting or standing position and tighten the pelvic floor muscles.

Be sure not to tighten the muscles of the abdomen, buttocks, or thighs but just the pelvic muscles. At first, try to keep the muscles tightened for about 5 seconds, several times in a row. Gradually increase the time the muscles are tightened to 10 seconds with about 10 seconds of muscle relaxation in between flexing.

PERFORM THE EXERCISES

Once you are able to hold the muscles tight for 10 seconds, perform a set of 10 exercises in a row. Repeat these several times throughout the day, every day. Results should be noted in 2 to 3 months. After improvement in incontinence is obtained, it is helpful to continue doing Kegel exercises to maintain the muscle strength. Even if the incontinence is not completely eliminated, its progression can be slowed by doing these exercises.

NURSING CARE PLAN 22-1**The Older Adult With Urinary Incontinence**

Nursing Diagnosis: Impaired Urinary Elimination

Goal

The patient achieves partial or complete restoration of bladder control
The patient effectively contains expelled urine

Nursing Actions

- Ensure that a comprehensive evaluation has been conducted to identify cause of incontinence and potential for regained bladder control.
- Identify individual voiding pattern: frequency, sensation of signal to void, time between signal being received and inability to hold urine, amount voided, and symptoms.
- If potential for bladder control exists, initiate bladder retraining program.
- Monitor intake and output; estimate urine lost on clothing and linens (1 inch diameter is approximately equal to 10 mL of urine).
- Ensure that bathroom is easily accessible; provide bedside commode or bedpan if needed.
- Offer at least 1500 mL liquids daily unless contraindicated.
- Encourage patient to lean forward while sitting on commode and to press on lower abdomen (Crede method) to promote optimal bladder emptying.
- Teach patient methods to stimulate voiding reflex: pouring warm water over perineum, stroking abdomen and inner thigh, drinking water while sitting on commode.
- Instruct female patient in Kegel exercises.
- Provide urinary sheaths, condom catheters, adult briefs, sanitary pads, or incontinence pants to contain urine.
- Avoid indwelling catheter use.

(continued)

NURSING CARE PLAN 22-1 (Continued)

Goal

Nursing Actions

- When incontinent episodes occur, discuss cause with patient in a matter-of-fact manner.
- Modify environment to accommodate incontinence (e.g., protect mattress and furniture, provide good ventilation, use room deodorizer, keep bathroom well-lighted).

Nursing Diagnosis: Risk for Impaired Skin Integrity related to incontinence

Goals

Nursing Actions

The patient maintains skin integrity.

- Check patient for wetness every 2 hours; change clothing and linen as necessary.

The patient stays dry and odor free

- Thoroughly cleanse and dry patient's skin after incontinent episodes.
- Assess skin status daily.

Nursing Diagnosis: Risk for Injury related to incontinence

Goal

Nursing Actions

The patient is free from falls related to escaped urine

- Provide an effective containment device for urine (e.g., adult brief, condom catheter).
- Check patient's environment regularly for urine on floor.
- Clean urine from floor promptly.

Nursing Diagnosis: Chronic Low Self-esteem related to incontinence

Goals

Nursing Actions

The patient restores or maintains desired roles and functions

- Encourage patient to express feelings.
- Provide realistic explanations as to causes, management, and prognosis of patient's type of incontinence.

The patient develops or maintains positive view of self

- Assist patient in dressing in street clothes.
- Avoid discussing patient's incontinence in presence of visitors and other patients.
- Ensure that caregivers and family members treat patient with dignity.



KEY CONCEPT

Nurses cannot assume that people with long-standing incontinence have received a comprehensive evaluation of this problem. A careful review of the medical history and interview with the patient are important to determine whether diagnostic testing has been done.

Inconsistency on the part of the nursing staff is destructive to the progress of patients and denigrating to their efforts to regain bladder control. Conversely, positive reinforcement and encouragement are most beneficial to the patient during this difficult program. Indwelling catheters should be used only in special circumstances and certainly never for the convenience of staff. Half of patients will

develop bacteriuria within the first 24 hours of being catheterized; 35% to 40% of all nosocomial infections are catheter-associated UTIs (Foxman, 2003). In addition, the risk of developing urinary calculi is high when indwelling catheters are present. (Urinary tract infections are discussed in Chapter 30.)

Bladder Cancer

The incidence of bladder cancer increases with age. According to the American Cancer Society (2007), 90% of the cases of bladder cancer are in people over age 55, older men have four times the rate of older women, and white individuals are diagnosed with this cancer nearly twice as often as black or Hispanic people. Chronic irritation of the bladder, exposure to dyes, and cigarette smoking—all avoidable factors—are among the risk factors associated

with bladder tumors. Some of the symptoms resemble those of a bladder infection, such as frequency, urgency, and dysuria. A painless hematuria is the primary sign and characterizes cancer of the bladder. Standard diagnostic measures for this disease are used with the aged patient, including cystoscopic examination.

Treatment for bladder cancer can include surgery or radiation, depending on the extent and location of the lesion. The nurse should use the nursing measures described in medical-surgical nursing literature. Observation for signs indicating metastasis, such as pelvic or back pain, is part of the nursing care for patients with bladder cancer.

Renal Calculi

Renal calculi occur most frequently in middle-aged adults. In older adults, the formation of stones can result from immobilization, infection, changes in the pH or concentration of urine, chronic diarrhea, dehydration, excessive elimination of uric acid, and hypercalcemia. Pain, hematuria, and symptoms of urinary tract infection are associated with this problem, and gastrointestinal upset may also occur. Standard diagnostic and treatment measures are used for the aged, and the nurse can assist by preventing urinary stasis, providing ample fluids, and facilitating prompt treatment of urinary tract infections.

Glomerulonephritis

Most frequently, chronic glomerulonephritis already exists in older persons who develop an acute condition. The symptoms of this disease may be so subtle and nonspecific that they are initially unnoticed. Clinical manifestations include fever, fatigue, nausea, vomiting, anorexia, abdominal pain, anemia, edema, arthralgias, elevated blood pressure, and an increased sedimentation rate. Oliguria may occur, as can moderate proteinuria and hematuria. Headache, convulsions, paralysis, aphasia, coma, and an altered mental status may be consequences of cerebral edema associated with this disease.

Diagnostic and treatment measures do not differ significantly from those used for the young. Antibiotics, a restricted sodium and protein diet, and close attention to fluid intake and output are basic parts of the treatment plan. If older adults are receiving digitalis, diuretics, or antihypertensive drugs, close observation for cumulative toxic effects resulting from compromised kidney function must be maintained. The patient should be evaluated periodically after the acute illness is resolved for exacerbations of chronic glomerulonephritis and signs of renal failure.

General Nursing Considerations for Urinary Conditions

Nurses need sensitivity in dealing with patients' urinary problems. In addition to being areas that are considered taboo for discussion for some persons, these disorders may raise fears and anxieties that tales of becoming incontinent in old age perhaps are valid. Realistic explanations and a committed effort to correcting these disorders are vital. All levels of staff need to remember the importance of discretion and dignity in managing these problems. Staff members should not check to see if a patient's pants are wet in front of others, allow someone to sit on a bedside commode in a hallway, bring in a group of students without the patient's permission to observe a catheterization, or scold the patient for having an accident in bed. Every effort should be made to minimize embarrassment and promote a positive self-concept.

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. What factors should be reviewed when assessing urinary incontinence, and what barriers could arise in reviewing them and obtaining accurate answers from older adults?
2. What can be done to reduce each of the major causes of urinary incontinence in older adults?
3. What actions could be taken to promote a positive self-concept of an individual with urinary incontinence?
4. Identify resources in your community to assist patients with incontinence or cancer of the urinary system.

Resources

National Association for Continence

<http://www.nafc.org>

Simon Foundation for Continence

<http://www.simonfoundation.org>

National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases, National Kidney and Urologic Diseases

Information Clearinghouse

<http://www.kidney.niddk.nih.gov>

References

- American Cancer Society. (2007). What are the key statistics for bladder cancer? Cancer reference information. Retrieved August 10, 2007, from <http://www.cancer.org>
- Foxman, B. (2003). Epidemiology of urinary tract infections: Incidence, morbidity, and economic costs. *Disease a Month*, 49(2), 53–70.

Ogundele, O., Silverberg, M. A., Sinert, R., & Guerrero, P. (2006). Urinary incontinence. eMedicine. Retrieved August 15, 2007, from <http://www.emedicine.com/emerg/topic791.htm>.

Recommended Readings

- American Journal of Nursing. (2003). The state of the science on urinary incontinence. A summary of the July 2002 symposium. *American Journal of Nursing*, 103(3), 45–49.
- Aragon, D., & Sole, M. L. (2006). Implementing best practice strategies to prevent infection in the ICU. *Critical Care Nursing Clinics of North America*, 18(4), 441–452.
- Bassett, S., & Smyer, T. (2003). Health screening practices in rural long-term care facilities. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 29(4), 42–49.
- Ben-Tovim, D. I., Dougherty, M. L., Stapleton, A. M., & Pinnock, C. B. (2002). Coping with prostate cancer: A quantitative analysis using a new instrument, the centre for clinical excellence in urological research coping with cancer instrument. *Urology*, 59(3), 383–388.
- Breen, D. P., Wanserski, G. R., & Smith, P. C. (2007). Clinical inquiries. What is the recommended workup for a man with a first UTI? *Journal of Family Practice*, 56(8), 657–658, 661.
- Bucci, A. T. (2007). Be a continence champion: Use the CHAMMP tool to individualize the plan of care. *Geriatric Nursing*, 28(2), 120–124.
- Burgio, K. L., Goode, P. S., Locher, J. L., et al. (2002). Behavioral training with and without biofeedback in the treatment of urge incontinence in older women: A randomized controlled trial. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 288, 2293–2299.
- Chasens, E. R., & Umlauf, M. G. (2003). Nocturia: A problem that disrupts sleep and predicts obstructive sleep apnea. *Geriatric Nursing*, 24(2), 76–81.
- Dowling-Castronovo, A. (2001). Urinary incontinence assessment. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 27(5), 6–7.
- Dubeau, C. E. (2006). The aging lower urinary tract. *Journal of Urology*, 175(3), S11–S15.
- Durrant, J., & Snape, J. (2003). Urinary incontinence in nursing homes for older people. *Age and Ageing*, 32(1), 12–18.
- Frenchman, I. B. (2001). Cost of urinary incontinence in two skilled nursing facilities: A prospective study. *Clinical Geriatrics*, 9(1), 49–52.
- Gray, M. (2000). Urinary retention management in the acute care setting. Part 1. *American Journal of Nursing*, 100(7), 40–48.
- Gray, M. (2000). Urinary retention management in the acute care setting. Part 2. *American Journal of Nursing*, 100(8), 36–44.
- Gray, M. (2003). The importance of screening, assessing, and managing urinary incontinence in primary care. *Journal of the American Academy of Nursing Practice*, 15(3), 102–107.
- Jackson, M. A. (2007). Evidence-based practice for evaluation and management of female urinary tract infection. *Urology Nursing*, 27(2), 133–136.
- Jansen, L., & Forbes, B. (2006). The psychometric testing of a urinary incontinence nursing assessment instrument. *Journal of Wound, Ostomy, and Continence Nursing*, 33(1), 69–71.
- Juthani-Mehta, M. (2007). Asymptomatic bacteriuria and urinary tract infection in older adults. *Clinics in Geriatric Medicine*, 23(3), 585–594.
- Landi, F., Cesari, M., Russo, A., Onder, G., Lattanzio, F., & Bernabei, R. (2003). Potentially reversible risk factors and urinary incontinence in frail older people living in community. *Age and Ageing*, 32(2), 194–199.
- LeCroy, C. (2006). Games as an innovative teaching strategy for overactive bladder and BPH. *Urology Nursing*, 26(5), 381–384, 393.
- MacDonald, C. D., & Butler, L. (2007). Silent no more: Elderly women's stories of living with urinary incontinence in long-term care. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 33(1), 14–20.
- Maloney, C. (2002). Estrogen and recurrent UTI in postmenopausal women. *American Journal of Nursing*, 102(8), 44–54.
- Mather, K. F., & Bakas, T. (2002). Nursing assistants' perception of their ability to provide continence care. *Geriatric Nursing*, 23(1), 76–81.
- Matthews, P. A. (2007). Getting ready for certification: Bladder cancer. *Urology Nursing*, 27(3), 249–250.
- Mueller, C., & Cain, H. (2002). Comprehensive management of urinary incontinence through quality improvement efforts. *Geriatric Nursing*, 23(1), 82–87.
- Newman, D. K. (2006). Urinary incontinence, catheters, and urinary tract infections: An overview of CMS tag F 315. *Ostomy and Wound Management*, 52(12), 34–36, 40–44.
- Palmer, H. H., & Newman, D. K. (2006). Bladder control educational needs of older adults. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 32(1), 28–32.
- Pickett, M., Bruner, D. W., Joseph, A., & Burggraf, V. (2000). Prostate cancer elder alert: Living with treatment choices and outcomes. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 26(2), 22–34.
- Sublett, C. M. (2007). Adding to the evidence base—a critique of group session teaching of behavioral modification program for urinary incontinence. *Urology Nursing*, 27(2), 151–152.
- Williner, R., & Hantikainen, R. (2005). Individual quality of life following radical prostatectomy in men with prostate cancer. *Urology Nursing*, 25(2), 88–90.
- Zarowitz, B. J., & Ouslander, J. G. (2006). Management of urinary incontinence in older persons. *Geriatric Nursing*, 27(5), 265–270.

Reproductive System Health

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Effects of Aging on the Reproductive System Reproductive System Health Promotion Selected Reproductive System Conditions

Problems of the Female Reproductive System
Problems of the Male Reproductive System

Summary

As with urinary problems discussed in the last chapter, reproductive system problems may be difficult topics for older adults to discuss. However, it is important for older adults to consider their reproductive systems when thinking of their overall health. In addition to preventing and detecting serious problems such as cancer and sexually transmitted diseases, understanding health practices related to the reproductive system can promote satisfying sexual activity for older persons, yielding multiple benefits. Gerontological nurses can play an important role in educating older adults about changes that occur with aging and about important health promotion measures to prevent or identify potentially serious reproductive system problems.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 List changes to the male and female reproductive systems that occur with age.
- 2 Describe measures to promote reproductive system health in older adults.
- 3 Outline factors to consider in assessing reproductive system health in older adults.
- 4 Describe the symptoms and management of selected disorders of the reproductive system.
- 5 Outline care plan measures for the patient who has had prostate surgery.

Effects of Aging on the Reproductive System

There are several changes in the female reproductive system that increase the risk for uncomfortable conditions and interfere with satisfying sexual experiences. Hormonal changes cause the vulva to atrophy. There is a flattening of the labia and loss of subcutaneous fat and hair. The vaginal epithelium becomes thin and the vaginal environment is drier and more alkaline; these changes can cause intercourse to be uncomfortable for older women, although orgasms and satisfying sexual experiences normally are possible. The cervix, uterus, fallopian tubes, and ovaries atrophy. The uterus and ovaries also decrease in size; therefore, they may not be palpable during the physical examination. The endometrium continues to respond to hormonal stimulation. The fallopian tubes also undergo shortening and straightening. The breasts sag and are less firm with age due to the replacement of mammary glands by fat tissue after menopause. Some retraction of the nipples may occur as a result of shrinkage and fibrotic changes. Firm linear strands may develop on the breasts from fibrosis and calcification of the terminal ducts.

The genitalia of men undergo changes, as well. There is a reduction in sperm count related to the seminal vesicles having a thinner epithelium, replacement of muscle tissue with connective tissue, and less capacity to retain fluids. Structural changes in the seminiferous tubules include increased fibrosis, thinning of the epithelium, thickening of the basement membrane, and narrowing of the lumen. There is atrophy of the testes and a reduction in testicular mass. Fluid ejaculated usually remains the same although it contains lesser amounts of living sperm. Testosterone stays the same or decreases

only slightly. More time is required for an erection to be achieved and it is more easily lost than in younger men. Most older men experience an enlargement of the prostate gland as some of the prostate tissue is replaced with a fibrotic tissue. Although most prostatic enlargement is benign, there is an increased risk for malignancy with age.

Reproductive System Health Promotion

An important way that nurses can promote reproductive system health is to stress the value of regular examinations of this system. An annual gynecologic examination, including a Pap smear, is essential for the older woman; she should also be knowledgeable about self-examination of the breasts. The American Cancer Society and the American Urological Association recommend annual prostate-specific antigen (PSA) testing for older men. Although useful in discovering some cancers in earlier stages, PSA tests can produce false negative and false positive results, the latter of which has been shown to produce persistent psychological stress (Katz et al., 2007). Men with prostatic hypertrophy should be examined at least every 6 months to ensure that a malignancy has not developed. The nurse should also ensure that older men know how to perform testicular self-examination. Finally, a complete history and physical examination are essential to pinpoint specific areas that require further investigation (Assessment Guide 23-1). Nursing Diagnosis Table 23-1 lists diagnoses associated with reproductive system problems that the nurse may identify.

Chapter 12 discusses nursing considerations in fostering sexual function and expression in older adults.

Consider This Case

Mr. and Mrs. C have been married for 50 years and, with their children all married, they live alone. They shared a healthy sex life, but over the years the frequency of intercourse and sexual play has steadily declined. Recently, Mr. C has heard some of his friends discussing their renewed sexual activity since taking drugs for their erectile dysfunction. These conversations have caused Mr. C to desire sex more frequently; however, his sexual advances have been rejected by his wife who not only shows no interest, but ridicules him for his. Their differences in sexual desires are leading to many arguments between the couple. During her visit for a routine gynecological examination, Mrs. C tells you that her husband “has started to act like a sex maniac and is making a fool of himself by not acting his age.”

THINK CRITICALLY

- What are the possible factors causing each of the spouse’s reactions?
- How would you respond to Mrs. C?



ASSESSMENT GUIDE 23-1 Reproductive System Health

INTERVIEW

The interview should include a review of function, signs, and symptoms. Ask questions pertaining to the following:

- **Pain.** “Do you experience pain in your lower abdomen or anywhere else? Is there any tenderness, discomfort, itching, or pain anywhere along your genital area? Do you experience pain with intercourse?”
- **Discharge.** “Do you ever have secretions, blood, or other discharge from your genitals?”
- **Sexual dysfunction.** “Can you obtain an erection and hold it through intercourse? What are your ejaculations like? Is your vagina sensitive or overly dry during intercourse? Do you feel extra pressure or that your partner’s penis is hitting a blockage during intercourse? Can you have satisfying orgasms? Has there been any change in your sexual pattern?”

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

- Inspect the genitalia for lesions, sores, breaks, or masses. Note bleeding, discharges, odors, and other abnormalities.
- If the female patient has not had a gynecologic examination or mammogram within the past year, refer her accordingly. Likewise, the male patient should receive a prostate-specific antigen (PSA) test and prostate examination if one has not been done within the past year.
- For females, palpate the breasts for masses.
- Review the procedure for self-examination of the breasts with female patients and provide instruction if the patient is unskilled in this technique.



KEY CONCEPT

It is important to ensure that older women know how to perform breast self-examination and that older men know how to perform testicular self-examination.

Selected Reproductive System Conditions

Problems of the Female Reproductive System *Infections and Tumors of the Vulva*

Age-related changes to the vulva cause it to be more fragile and more easily susceptible to irritation and

infection. Vulvar problems in the aged may reflect serious disease processes such as diabetes, hepatitis, leukemia, and pernicious anemia. Senile vulvitis is the term used to describe vulvar infection associated with hypertrophy or atrophy. Incontinence and poor hygienic practices can also be underlying causes of vulvitis. Pruritus is the primary symptom associated with vulvitis. Patients who are confused and noncommunicative may display restlessness and touch themselves at the genitals; the nurse may discover that patients are suffering from irritation and thickening of the vulvar tissue as a result of scratching. Initially, treatment aims to find and manage any underlying cause. Good nutritional status helps improve the condition, as does special

NURSING DIAGNOSIS

TABLE 23-1 Nursing Diagnosis Associated With Reproductive System Problems

Causes or Contributing Factors

Sexual dysfunction, pain, embarrassment over symptoms or treatments
 Infection, cancer
 More alkaline and fragile vaginal canal, prostatic hypertrophy
 Infection, pain, altered structures, embarrassment
 Sexual dysfunction
 Vaginitis
 Prostatic enlargement, vaginitis

Nursing Diagnosis

Anxiety
 Pain
 Risk for Infection
 Sexual Dysfunction
 Body Image Disturbance
 Impaired Skin Integrity
 Impaired Urinary Elimination

attention to cleanliness. Sitz baths and local applications of saline compresses or steroid creams may be included in the treatment plan. Special attention is required to keep the incontinent patient clean and dry as much as possible.



KEY CONCEPT

Age-related changes cause the vulva to be more fragile and more easily susceptible to irritation and infection.

Although pruritus commonly occurs with vulvitis, it may be a symptom of a vulvar tumor. Pain and irritation also may be associated with this problem. Any mass or lesion in this area should receive prompt attention and be biopsied. The clitoris is commonly the site of a vulvar malignancy. Cancer of the vulva, the fourth most common gynecologic malignancy in later life, may be manifested by large, painful, and foul-smelling fungating or ulcerating tumors. The adjacent tissues may also be affected. A radical vulvectomy is usually the treatment of choice and tends to be well tolerated by the older woman. Less commonly used is radiation therapy, which is not tolerated as well as surgery. Counseling regarding self-care practices, body image, and sexual activity should be provided. Early treatment, before metastasis to inguinal lymph nodes, improves prognosis.

Atrophic Vaginitis

The postmenopausal woman experiences a variety of changes that affect the vaginal canal, including reduction in collagen and adipose tissue, shortening and narrowing of the vaginal canal, decreased elasticity, less vaginal lubrication, and a more alkaline vaginal pH as a result of lower estrogen levels. The increased fragility of the fragile vagina in postmenopausal women causes it to be more easily irritated, which heightens the risk for vaginitis. Itching, foul-smelling discharge, and postcoital bleeding are symptoms associated with vaginal infection. Treatment could include topical estrogen creams and estrogen replacement therapy. Nurses should advise the older woman to avoid douches and the use of perfumed soaps and sprays to the genitalia, wear cotton underwear, keep the genital area clean and dry, and to use lubricants (e.g., K-Y jelly, vitamin E oil, and aloe vera gel) when engaging in intercourse. (Chapter 30 offers additional discussion of vaginitis.)

Cancer of the Vagina

Cancer of the vagina is rare in older women; it results more frequently from metastasis than from the vaginal area as a primary site. All vaginal ulcers

and masses detected in older women should be viewed with suspicion of malignancy and be biopsied. Because chronic irritation can predispose women to vaginal cancer, those who have chronic vaginitis or who wear a pessary should obtain frequent Pap smears. Treatment is similar to that used for younger women and may consist of irradiation, topical chemotherapeutic agents, or surgery, depending on the extent of the carcinoma.

Problems of the Cervix

With age, the cervix becomes smaller, and the endocervical epithelium atrophies. Occasionally the endocervical glands can seal over, causing the formation of nabothian cysts. As secretions associated with these cysts accumulate, fever and a palpable tender mass may be evident. It is important, therefore, for the older woman to receive regular gynecologic examinations to check the patency of the cervix.

Cancer of the Cervix

The incidence of cervical cancer peaks in the fifth and sixth decades of life and thereafter declines. Although less than 25% of all diagnosed cases of cervical cancer are in older women, over 40% of cervical cancer deaths occur among this group. Despite the fact that most endocervical polyps are benign in older women, they should be viewed with suspicion until biopsy confirms such a diagnosis. Vaginal bleeding and leukorrhea are signs of cervical cancer in aged women. Pain does not usually occur. As the disease progresses, the patient can develop urinary retention or incontinence, fecal incontinence, and uremia. Treatment of cervical cancer can include radium or surgery. The American Cancer Society (2007) suggests that women 65 to 70 years of age who have had at least three normal Pap tests and no abnormal Pap tests in the last 10 years may decide, on consultation with their healthcare provider, to stop cervical cancer screening.

Cancer of the Endometrium

Although it mainly affects older women at an average age of 55 to 65 years, cancer of the endometrium is not uncommon in the older woman. It is of higher incidence in obese, diabetic, and hypertensive women. Any postmenopausal bleeding should give rise immediately to suspicion of this disease. Dilation and curettage usually are done to confirm the diagnosis because not all cases can be detected by Pap smears alone. Treatment consists of surgery, irradiation, or a combination of both. Early treatment can prevent metastasis to the vagina and cervix. Endometrial polyps can also cause bleeding and should receive serious attention because they could be indicative of early cancer.

Cancer of the Ovaries

Ovarian cancer, which increases in incidence with age, is responsible for only 5% of malignant disease in older women, although it is the leading cause of death from gynecologic malignancies. Early symptoms are nonspecific and can be confused with gastrointestinal discomfort. As this disease progresses, the clinical manifestations include bleeding, ascites, and the presence of multiple masses. Treatment may consist of surgery or irradiation. Benign ovarian tumors commonly occur in older women, and surgery is usually required to differentiate them from malignant ones.



KEY CONCEPT

Although ovarian cancer is less common than endometrial or cervical cancer, it is more deadly when it does occur.

Perineal Herniation

As a result of the stretching and tearing of muscles during childbirth and of the muscle weakness associated with advanced age, perineal herniation is a common problem among older women. Cystocele, rectocele, and prolapse of the uterus are the types most likely to occur. Associated with this problem are lower back pain, pelvic heaviness, and a pulling sensation. Urinary and fecal incontinence, retention, and constipation may also occur. Sometimes the woman is able to feel pressure or palpate a mass in her vagina. These herniations can make intercourse difficult and uncomfortable. Although rectoceles do not tend to worsen with age, the opposite is true for cystoceles, which will cause increased problems with time. Surgical repair is the treatment of choice and can be successful in relieving these problems.

Dyspareunia

Dyspareunia is a common problem among older women but is not necessarily a normal consequence of aging. Nulliparous women experience this problem more frequently than women who have had children. Because vulvitis, vaginitis, and other gynecologic problems can contribute to dyspareunia, a thorough gynecologic examination is important, and any lesions or infections should be corrected to alleviate the problem. All efforts should be made to help the older woman achieve a satisfactory sexual life. (Chapter 12 presents a more detailed discussion of problems affecting sexual intimacy.)



KEY CONCEPT

Dyspareunia is a common, although not necessarily normal, finding in older women.

Cancer of the Breast

Decreased fat tissue and atrophy in older women's breasts can cause tumors, possibly present for many years, to become more evident. Because breast cancer is a leading cause of cancer deaths in older as well as younger women, nurses should encourage women to have regular breast examinations. Unfortunately, although the incidence of breast cancer increases with age, the older the woman is, the less likely she is to perform self-examination of breasts or receive yearly mammograms or breast examinations by a health care professional. Diagnostic and treatment measures for women with breast cancer are the same at any age.



KEY CONCEPT

Although the incidence of breast cancer rises with age, older women are the least likely group to receive mammograms and breast examinations by a professional or to perform self-examinations of their breasts.

Problems of the Male Reproductive System

Benign Prostatic Hyperplasia

A majority of older men have some degree of benign prostatic hyperplasia, which causes approximately one in four of them to have dysuria. Symptoms of this problem progress slowly but continuously; they begin with hesitancy, decreased force of urinary stream, frequency, and nocturia as a result of obstruction of the vesical neck and compression of the urethra that causes a compensatory hypertrophy of the detrusor muscle and subsequent outlet obstruction. Dribbling, poor control, overflow incontinence, and bleeding may occur. As the hyperplasia progresses, the bladder wall loses its elasticity and becomes thinner, leading to urinary retention and an increased risk of urinary infection. Unfortunately, some men are reluctant or embarrassed to seek prompt medical attention and may develop kidney damage by the time symptoms are severe enough to motivate them to be evaluated.

Treatment can include prostatic massage, the use of urinary antiseptics and, if possible, the avoidance of diuretics, anticholinergics, and antiarrhythmic agents. The herb saw palmetto can help some men reduce the size of the prostate, improving urinary flow and decreasing nocturia. The most common prostatectomy approach used for older men with prostatism is transurethral surgery. The patient should be reassured that this surgery will not necessarily result in impotence. On the other hand, realistic explanations are needed so the patient understands that this surgery will not cause a sudden rejuvenation of sexual performance (Fig. 23-1).



FIGURE 23-1 • Men benefit from realistic explanations of the effects of treatments on sexual function.

Nursing Care Plan 23-1 describes care for the older adult recovering from prostate surgery. (Prostatitis is discussed in Chapter 30.)

Cancer of the Prostate

Prostatic cancer increases in incidence with age. In fact, more than half of men over 70 years of age have histologic evidence of prostate cancer, although less than 3% will die from the disease (National Cancer Institute SEER, 2003). Often, this disease can be asymptomatic; however, a majority of prostatic cancers can be detected by digital rectal examination, which emphasizes the importance of regular physical examinations. Benign hypertrophy should be followed closely because it is thought to be associated with prostatic cancer, the symptoms of which can be similar. Symptoms such as back pain, anemia, weakness, and weight loss can develop as a result of metastasis.

If metastasis has not occurred, treatment may consist of irradiation or a radical prostatectomy; the latter procedure will result in impotency. Estrogens may be used to prevent tumor dissemination.

NURSING CARE PLAN 23-1

The Older Adult Recovering From Prostate Surgery

Nursing Diagnosis: Risk for Injury and Infection related to surgery

Goal

The patient is free from injury; is free from infection

Nursing Actions

- Advise patient to avoid strenuous activities for 3 to 4 weeks.
- Advise patient to prevent constipation. Recommend dietary adjustments as needed; advise patient to consult with physician regarding use of stool softener if bowel movements are strained or irregular.
- Teach patient to avoid Valsalva maneuver.
- Encourage high fluid intake unless contraindicated.
- Teach patient to observe for and promptly report signs of complications, including bright red blood in urine, elevated temperature, severe pain, weakness.

Nursing Diagnoses: (1) Sexual Dysfunction related to surgery; (2) Deficient Knowledge related to effect of surgery on sexual function

Goal

The patient expresses realistic understanding of effect of surgery on sexual function; resumes satisfying sexual relationship

Nursing Actions

- Consult with physician regarding sexual restrictions; discuss with patient. (Typically, sexual intercourse is avoided for about 1 month postoperatively, after which time patient can usually return to previous sexual function. It is not unusual for complete return of sexual function to take as long as 1 year.)
- Assess patient's understanding of impact of surgery on sexual function; clarify misinformation as needed.
- Listen to patient's concerns and provide support.
- Discuss anticipated return of sexual function with patient's wife, if acceptable to patient.
- Prepare patient for possibility of retrograde ejaculation (dry climax), which will make urine appear milky.

(continued)

NURSING CARE PLAN 23-1 (Continued)

Goal

Nursing Actions

- Discuss with couple the potential for anxiety and other psychological factors related to illness and surgery to interfere with sexual function.
- Encourage couple to share other forms of intimacy until intercourse can be resumed.

Nursing Diagnosis: Risk for Urinary Incontinence: Stress or Urge related to catheter removal

Goal

Nursing Actions

The patient resumes urinary continence

- Assess bladder control after urinary catheter is removed.
- If dribbling of urine occurs, advise patient that this is common and will subside and instruct patient in perineal exercises.

Palliative treatment, used if the cancer has metastasized, includes irradiation, transurethral surgery, orchiectomy, and estrogens. General principles associated with these therapeutic measures are applicable to the aged patient. Many men are able to continue sexual performance after orchiectomy and during estrogen therapy; the physician should be consulted for specific advice concerning the expected outcomes for individual patients.

Tumors of the Penis, Testes, and Scrotum

Cancer of the penis is rare and appears as a painless lesion or wartlike growth on the prepuce or glans. The resemblance of this growth to a chancre can cause a misdiagnosis or reluctance on the part of the patient to seek treatment. A biopsy should be done of any penile lesion. Treatment may consist of irradiation and local excision for small lesions and partial or total penile amputation for extensive lesions.

Testicular tumors are uncommon in older people but are usually malignant when they do occur; testicular enlargement and pain and enlargement of the breasts are suspicious symptoms. Chemotherapy, irradiation, and orchiectomy are among the treatment measures. As part of the assessment, nurses should ascertain the patient's knowledge of testicular self-examination and provide education on this procedure if necessary; the American Cancer Society can provide educational materials to use for this instruction.

Scrotal masses, usually benign, can result from conditions such as hydrocele, spermatocele, varicocele, and hernia. Symptoms and treatment depend on the underlying cause and are the same as for younger men. As with any reproductive system problem, counseling regarding self-care practices, body image, and sexual activity is important.

Summary

The health of the reproductive system has an impact on total body health. Conditions of the reproductive system can be related to undiagnosed disease processes that require attention, such as diabetes or infections. The close relationship and trust that patients often have with nurses can enable patients to more comfortably share concerns and symptoms related to the reproductive system more openly with nurses than other members of the health care team. Nurses should include a review of the reproductive system in their assessments of patients and assure abnormal findings and symptoms are referred for evaluation and treatment.

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. Discuss reasons for older adults not performing breast and testicular self-examinations and measures nurses could take to promote older adults performing these examinations.
2. Outline a program for ensuring regular breast and testicular exams are done for individuals living in an assisted living community or nursing home.
3. Outline suggestions that could be offered to older women who state that they find sexual intercourse uncomfortable due to the dryness of their vaginal canal.

Resources

Gilda's Club Worldwide
<http://www.gildasclub.org>

Gynecologic Cancer Foundation
<http://www.wcn.org>

MaleCare

<http://www.malecare.com>

National Prostate Cancer Coalition

<http://www.fightprostatecancer.org>

Ovarian Cancer National Alliance

<http://www.ovariancancer.org>

The Wellness Community

<http://www.thewellnesscommunity.org>

References

- American Cancer Society. (2007). American Cancer Society guidelines for early detection of cancer. Retrieved August 20, 2007, from http://www.cancer.org/docroot/PED/content/PED_2_3X_ACS_Cancer_Detection_Guidelines_36.asp.
- Katz, D. A., Jarrard, D. F., McHorney, C. A., Hillis, S. L., Wiebe, D. A., & Fryback, D. G. (2007). Health perceptions in patients who undergo screening and workup for prostate cancer. *Urology*, *69*(2), 215–220.
- National Cancer Institute. (2003). Task force announces new cancer screening guidelines. Cancer.gov News Center, Posted January 22, 2003. Retrieved April 2, 2004, from <http://www.cancer.gov/newscenter/pressreleases/cervicalscreen>.
- National Cancer Institute, SEER (Surveillance Epidemiology and End Results). (2003). Prevalence: Prostate cancer. Retrieved May 30, 2003, from http://seer.cancer.gov/fast-stats/html/pre_prost.html.

Recommended Readings

- Ahmad, M. M., Musil, C. M., Zauszniewski, J. A., & Resnick, M. I. (2005). Prostate cancer: Appraisal, coping, and health status. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, *31*(10), 34–43.
- Baum, N., & Lipp, A. (2001). PSA for the primary care physician. *Clinical Geriatrics*, *9*(8), 32–38.
- Bruner, D. W., Pickett, M., Joseph, A., & Burggraf, V. (2000). Prostate cancer elder alert: Epidemiology, screening, and early detection. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, *26*(1), 6–15.
- Carbone, D. J., & Seftel, A. D. (2002). Erectile dysfunction: Diagnosis and treatment in older men. *Geriatrics*, *57*(9), 18–24.

- Cash, J. C. (2006). Power against prostate cancer. Intensity-modulated radiation therapy and interstitial brachytherapy. *Advances in Nursing Practice*, *14*(9), 37–42.
- Jones, R. A., & Wenzel, J. (2006). Prostate cancer among African-American males: Understanding the current issues. *Journal of the National Black Nurses Association*, *16*(1), 55–62.
- Kleier, J. A. (2006). Language adaptation and testing of the Prostate Health Questionnaire for Jamaican and Haitian men. *Urology Nursing*, *26*(4), 304–310.
- Linqvist, O., Widmark, A., & Rasmussen, B. H. (2006). Reclaiming wellness—living with bodily problems, as narrated by men with advanced prostate cancer. *Cancer Nursing*, *29*(4), 327–337.
- Madsen, L. T., & Ganey-Code, E. (2006). Assessing and addressing erectile function concerns in patients post-prostatectomy. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, *33*(2), 209–211.
- Matthews, P. A. (2007). Hormone ablation therapy: Lightening the load for today's prostate cancer patient. *Urology Nursing*, *27*(2 Supplement), 3–11.
- McCorkle, R., Siefert, M. L., Dowd, M. F., Robinson, J. P., & Pickett, M. (2007). Effects of advanced practice nursing on patient and spouse depressive symptoms, sexual function, and marital interaction after radical prostatectomy. *Urologic Nursing*, *27*(1), 65–77.
- Safarinejad, M. R. (2006). Population-based screening for prostate cancer by measuring free and total serum prostate-specific antigen in Iran. *Annals of Oncology*, *17*(7), 1166–1171.
- Sanders, S., Pedro, L. W., Bantum, E. O., & Galbraith, M. E. (2006). Couples surviving prostate cancer: Long-term intimacy needs and concerns following treatment. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, *10*(4), 503–508.
- Smith, K. B., Tripp D., Pukall, C., & Nickel, J. C. (2007). Predictors of sexual and relationship functioning in couples with chronic prostatitis and chronic pelvic pain syndrome. *Journal of Sexual Medicine*, *4*(3), 734–744.
- Sriprasad, S., Dew, T. K., Muir, G. H., Thompson, P. M., Mulvin, D., et al. (2001). Validity of PSA, free/total PSA ratio and complexed/total PSA ratio measurements in men with acute urinary retention. *Prostate Cancer and Prostatic Disease*, *4*(3), 167–172.
- Weber, B. A., Roberts, B. L., & McDougall, G. J. (2000). Exploring the efficacy of support groups for men with prostate cancer. *Geriatric Nursing*, *21*(5), 250–253.
- Weber, B. A., & Sherrill-Navarro, P. (2005). Psychosocial consequences of prostate cancer: 30 years of research. *Geriatric Nursing*, *26*(3), 166–175.

Movement

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Effects of Aging on Musculoskeletal Function Musculoskeletal Health Promotion

- Promotion of Physical Exercise in all Age Groups
- Exercise Programs Tailored for Older Adults
- The Mind–Body Connection
- Prevention of Inactivity
- Nutrition

Selected Musculoskeletal Conditions

- Fractures
- Osteoarthritis
- Rheumatoid Arthritis
- Osteoporosis
- Gout
- Podiatric Conditions

General Nursing Considerations for Musculoskeletal Conditions

- Managing Pain
- Preventing Injury
- Promoting Independence

A variety of physical, psychological, and social benefits are gained through regular activity. Physical activity aids respiratory, circulatory, digestive, excretory, and musculoskeletal functions. Mental acuity and mood are enhanced by the physiological effects of exercise. Physical activity can be a means to engage in social activity; a physically fit state supports older adults in participating in social events. Multiple health problems, such as

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 Describe the effects of aging on musculoskeletal function.
- 2 List the benefits of activity.
- 3 Describe the adjustments that may need to be made in exercise programs in late life.
- 4 Discuss the challenges older adults may face in maintaining an active state.
- 5 List actions that could benefit an older adult who has impaired mobility.
- 6 Discuss the role of nutrition in musculoskeletal health.
- 7 Describe factors contributing to, symptoms of, and related nursing care for fractures, osteoarthritis, rheumatoid arthritis, osteoporosis, gout, and podiatric conditions.
- 8 Discuss pain management measures for musculoskeletal problems.
- 9 Identify ways to reduce risks of injury associated with musculoskeletal problems.
- 10 Describe measures to facilitate independence in persons with musculoskeletal problems.

NURSING DIAGNOSIS

TABLE 24-1 Aging and Risks to Maintaining an Active State

Causes or Contributing Factors	Nursing Diagnosis
Decreased cardiac output	Activity Intolerance related to less efficient management of stress
Reduced breathing capacity and efficiency	Activity Intolerance related to shortness of breath
Delayed oxygen diffusion	Ineffective Tissue Perfusion related to delayed oxygen diffusion
Decrease in muscle mass, strength, and movements	Activity Intolerance related to muscle weakness and fatigue
Demineralization of bone; deterioration of cartilage, surface of joints	Impaired Physical Mobility related to decreased range of motion
High risk for injury related to brittleness of bones	Pain related to stiff joints
Poorer vision and hearing	Impaired Social Interactions related to sensory deficit
Social isolation related to sensory deficit	Impaired Verbal Communication related to sensory deficit
Wrinkling of skin; thinning, loss, and change in hair color	Disturbance in Self-Concept related to age-related changes to appearance
Lower basal metabolic rate	Impaired Physical Mobility related to slower functions
	Risk for Injury and infection related to decreased bodily functions during resting/sleeping states
Higher prevalence of chronic, disabling disease	Activity Intolerance related to chronic disease
	Impaired Physical Mobility related to chronic disease
	Pain related to chronic disease
	Social Isolation related to chronic disease
Reduced income	Deficient Diversional Activity related to fewer funds available for leisure pursuits
	Chronic Low Self-Esteem related to decreased income
	Social Isolation related to fewer funds available for transportation, entertainment, leisure pursuits

atherosclerosis, obesity, joint immobility, pneumonia, constipation, pressure ulcers, depression, and insomnia, can be avoided when an active state is maintained. However, maintaining a physically active state is more challenging in late life due to the effects of aging and the symptoms and restrictions imposed by the chronic health conditions that are highly prevalent among older adults. Gerontological nurses can contribute significantly to the health of older adults by guiding them in maintaining and improving their physical condition and by assisting them in effectively managing conditions that could threaten an active physical state.

Effects of Aging on Musculoskeletal Function

The decline in the number and size of muscle fibers and subsequent reduction in muscle mass decreases body strength; grip strength endurance declines. Connective tissue changes reduce the flexibility of joints and muscles.

A increasing challenge facing individuals as they age is *sarcopenia*—the reduction of muscle mass

and/or function, resulting from a reduction of protein synthesis and an increase in muscle protein degradation. When added to the impaired capacity for muscle regeneration that occurs in late life, this can lead to disability, particularly in patients with diseases or organ impairment. Immobility and lack of exercise, increased levels of proinflammatory cytokines, increased production of oxygen free radicals or impaired detoxification, low anabolic hormone output, malnutrition and reduced neurological drive have been advocated as being responsible for sarcopenia (Di Iorio et al., 2006).

Nursing Diagnosis Table 24-1 describes the effects of aging that challenge the older adult's ability to remain active.

Musculoskeletal Health Promotion

Promotion of Physical Exercise in all Age Groups

Maintaining a physically active state is an increasingly difficult task not only for older adults but also for many younger people. Fewer occupations require hard physical labor, and those that do often

BOX 24-1 Calculating Maximum and Target Heart Rates

Maximum heart rate = $220 - \text{age}$

Target heart rate = maximum heart rate \times 75%

Target heart rate range = 65% to 80% of maximum heart rate

(Commercial heart rate monitors, available at sports supplies stores, can provide feedback on heart rate during exercise without the inconvenience of having to stop to palpate the pulse.)

use technological innovations to perform the more strenuous tasks. Television viewing and spectator sports are popular forms of recreation. Automobiles, taxicabs, and buses provide transportation to destinations once conveniently reached by walking. Elevators and escalators minimize stair climbing. Modern appliances have considerably eased the physical energy expended in household chores. Youth are spending considerable amounts of time sitting in front of computer screens and playing video games. Growing numbers of Americans find that it is challenging to find the time for jogging or trips to the gym.

Educating and encouraging persons of all ages to exercise regularly is an important way that gerontological nurses can influence the health of today's and future generations of older people. All exercise programs should address:

- **Cardiovascular endurance.** The ability of the heart, lungs, and blood vessels to deliver oxygen to all body cells is enhanced by aerobic training. Aerobic exercises include walking, jogging, cycling, swimming, rowing, tennis, and aerobic dancing. For cardiac endurance, these exercises must be performed long enough to require a continuous supply of oxygen, which puts a demand on the cardiopulmonary system to reach at least 55% of its maximum heart rate (Box 24-1). Ideally, the heart rate should fall within the target heart rate range during exercise. Depending on the exercise, these should be done for at least 20 minutes, at least 3 days a week. Adjustments to desirable target heart rate range may need to be made for persons with heart conditions or who are taking certain medications; consultation with a physician is important before initiating an exercise program.
- **Flexibility.** The ability to freely move muscles and joints through their range of motion is another part of physical fitness. Gentle stretching exercises help maintain flexibility of joints and muscles; stretching exercises for about 5 to 10 minutes before and after other exercises can reduce muscle soreness. Major muscle groups should be stretched at least twice weekly.
- **Strength training.** Strength and endurance are enhanced by exercises that challenge muscles. Key elements of strength training are resistance

and progression. Resistance is achieved by lifting weights and the use of weight machines; isometric exercises or the use of one's own body weight through calisthenics, such as push-ups and pull-ups, are also good means of strength training. Progression involves increasing the workload on the muscles, such as by lifting heavier weights. The recommendation for most adults is to exercise a muscle through a set of 8 to 12 repetitions at least twice weekly.

Essential to every health assessment is a review of the quality and quantity of exercise. Nurses should address identified exercise deficits by reviewing desirable exercise goals and strategies. Helping people to develop good exercise habits today promotes a healthier senior population in the future.



POINT TO PONDER

Do you have regular exercise built into your life? If not, what factors prevent this? ●

Exercise Programs Tailored for Older Adults

The fitness craze is popular in our society, and older adults are not untouched by this movement. Regular physical activity can delay or prevent some of the age-related losses in cardiovascular function and improve maximal oxygen uptake. It can also lower resting systolic and diastolic blood pressure. Physical activity can increase muscle strength and flexibility and slow the rate of bone loss.

Exercise can improve body tone, circulation, appetite, digestion, elimination, respiration, immunity, sleep, and self-concept. Participation in exercise programs can also provide opportunities for socialization and recreation (Fig. 24-1). Growing numbers of older adults understand the benefits of and are engaging in exercise programs.

Although exercise is highly beneficial to older adults, it can create problems if adjustments are not made for their advanced age. In addition to the effects of aging on musculoskeletal function described previously, age-related changes affect a person's ability to exercise. The reduced stroke volume experienced with age usually is adequate during mild exercise, although it is unable to increase in response to more strenuous



FIGURE 24-1 • Planned activities can offer opportunities for socialization as well as exercise.

exercise as compared to younger hearts. This causes the heart rate to accelerate to supply adequate circulation to the tissues. Not only does an increased resistance to blood flow result in a higher systolic blood pressure during rest, but also systolic pressures can rise above 200 mm Hg during exercise. Reduced vital capacity and increased residual capacity limit air movement, causing the respiratory muscles to work harder and the respiratory rate to increase. The proportionate increase in body fat in older bodies causes

heat to dissipate less effectively, making older persons more susceptible to heat stroke if they exercise in hot temperatures. The 10% to 15% decline in total body fluid that is experienced by late life means that older persons can dehydrate more easily from perspiration during exercise. These factors emphasize the importance of assessing older adults before they start an exercise program and monitoring their status during physical activity. Box 24-2 describes some of the guidelines that can assist older adults to obtain maximum benefit from exercise programs.

Exercise programs are best followed if they match the individual's interests and needs. Some people dislike playing organized sports but enjoy dancing, so helping them to find church and community groups that regularly sponsor evenings of dancing may do more to promote exercise than describing all the benefits of joining a tennis or bowling team. Likewise, people who may not be able or willing to work out at a gym may be open to lifting weights or jogging on a mini-trampoline in their homes. A range of options should be considered, such as brisk walking, swimming, yoga, and aerobic exercises. In addition, people can take advantage of opportunities to enhance physical activity during daily routines, such as climbing stairs instead of taking an elevator, parking the car farther away from the destination to increase

BOX 24-2

Guidelines for Exercise Programs for Older Adults

- Ensure that a recent physical examination has been done to detect conditions that could affect or be affected by an exercise program (e.g., heart disease, diabetes). If health conditions are present, consult with the physician as to restrictions or modifications to the exercise program.
- Assess the older adult's current activity level, range of motion, muscle strength and tone, and response to physical activity. In collaboration with the patient, develop an exercise program that recognizes interests, capacities, limitations, and realistic potential.
- Emphasize exercises that focus on good speed and rhythm (e.g., low weights, high repetitions). Keep resistance exercises at a low level and avoid isometric exercises.
- Determine the training heart rate and evaluate heart rate during exercise to ensure that the rate stays within a safe range.
- To determine an age-adjusted training heart rate, subtract the person's age from 220 and multiply that answer by 70% (Heyward, 1998). This calculates the maximum rate that will provide vascular and other benefits without causing deleterious effects. The resting heart rate can serve as the lower level and the training heart rate as the upper level for a safe heart rate range during exercise.
- Monitor pulse during exercise and reduce intensity and length of exercise if heart rate is more than 10 beats above target heart rate.
- Consult the physician as to the appropriateness of the exercise program for persons who have a resting heart rate exceeding 100.
- Advise the older adult to wear proper-fitting shock-absorbing shoes with traction soles.
- Encourage warm-up exercises (e.g., gentle stretching and flexing) for at least 10 minutes before the person engages in the full exercise program.
- Provide for a period of cooling down after exercises.
- Begin with a conservative exercise program and gradually increase activity. Monitor vital signs and symptoms at various activity levels. Note arrhythmias, significant changes in blood pressure, dyspnea, shortness of breath, fatigue, angina, and intermittent claudication.



FIGURE 24-2 • Walking the dog outdoors can provide an opportunity to incorporate physical activity into the older adult's daily routine.

walking, taking the dog on a longer route during regular walks, and doing one's own yard work and housecleaning (Fig. 24-2).

It is advisable to pace exercises throughout the day and avoid fatigue from exercising because of potential muscle pain and cramping. Morning stretching exercises loosen stiff joints and muscles, which encourages activity, whereas bedtime exercises promote relaxation and encourage sleep. If an older person is not accustomed to a great deal of physical activity, they should begin exercises gradually and increase them according to individual progress. Some tachycardia normally may occur during the exercises and continue for as long as several hours thereafter in older adults. Longer periods must be allowed for the older person to perform exercises, and rest periods should follow activity. Warm water and warm washcloths or towels wrapped around the joints may ease joint motion and facilitate exercising.

The thinner, weaker, and more brittle bones of older people heighten the risk for fractures. Exercises that stress an immobilized joint, strenuous sports, and running and jumping exercises must be avoided to prevent trauma. Older adults with cardiac or respiratory problems should seek advice from their physician about the amount and type of exercise best suited for their unique capacities and limitations.

Increasing numbers of older adults are using exercises that were once limited to the complementary and alternative therapy arena. T'ai chi and yoga are examples of such practices. These practices seem to have many beneficial uses among older adults. After the first major study was published that showed that t'ai chi exercises helped to reduce falls in older adults by 25% (Province et al., 1995), several other studies have demonstrated that in addition to improving flexibility and balance, t'ai chi is beneficial in promoting positive mood in older adults (Adler & Roberts, 2006; McCann, 2003; Greenspan et al., 2007). (See the Resources listing at the end of this chapter for web sites that provide more information about yoga and t'ai chi.)

Some older individuals may be unable to participate in formal exercise programs. For these persons, it can be beneficial to build less aggressive exercises into their daily activities and promote maximum activity during routine care activities. For example:

- Suggest that the patient do foot, leg, shoulder, and arm circling while watching television.
- Instruct the patient to do deep-breathing and limb exercises in the period between awakening and rising from bed.
- Encourage the patient to wash dishes or light laundry by hand to exercise the fingers with the benefit of warm water.
- When greeting a patient in the hall, ask the person to raise both arms as high as possible and wave.
- When giving a medication, ask the patient to bend each extremity several times.
- During bathing activities, ask the patient to flex and extend all body parts.

Figure 24-3 depicts several exercises that can easily be incorporated into the older adult's daily activities.



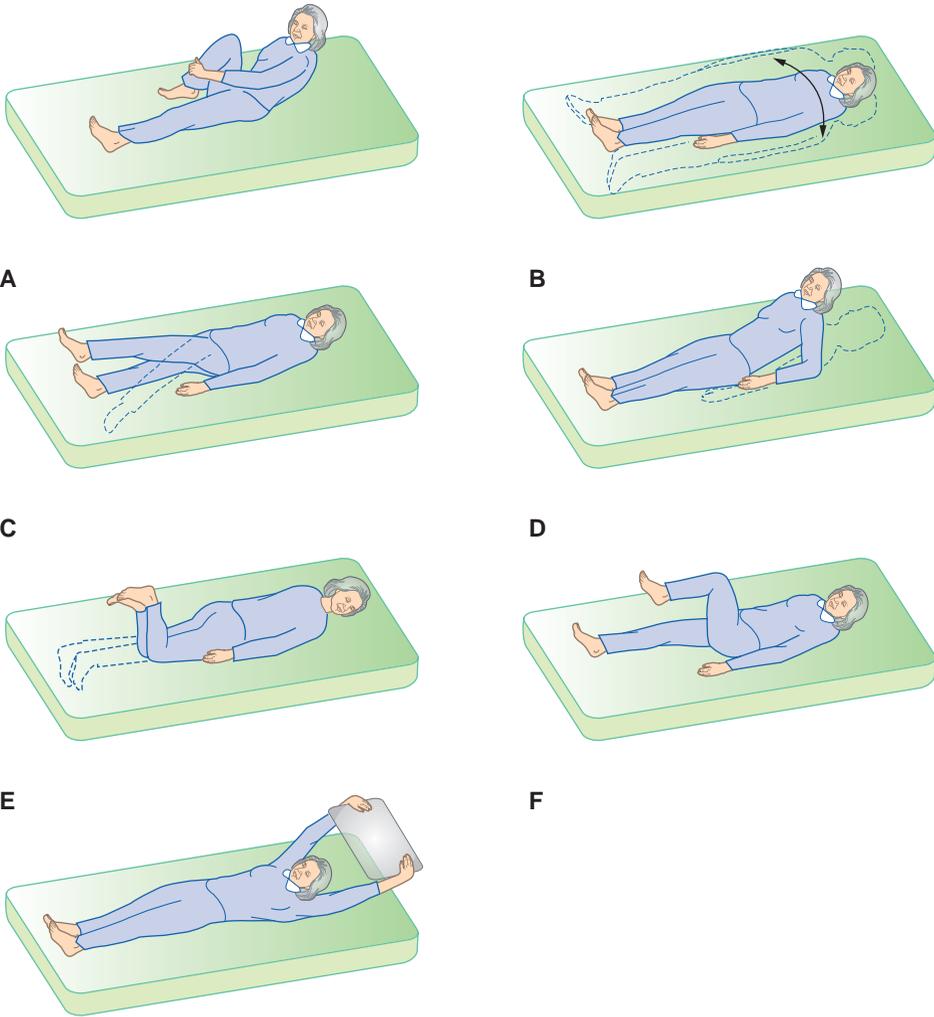
KEY CONCEPT

People who are unable to participate in an aggressive exercise program can stretch and exaggerate movements during routine activities to promote joint mobility and circulation.

At times, older persons may need partial or complete assistance with exercises. The nurse or other caregivers will find it useful to remember the following points:

- Exercise all body joints through their normal range of motion at least three times daily.
- Support the joint and distal limb during the exercise.
- Do not force the joint past the point of resistance.

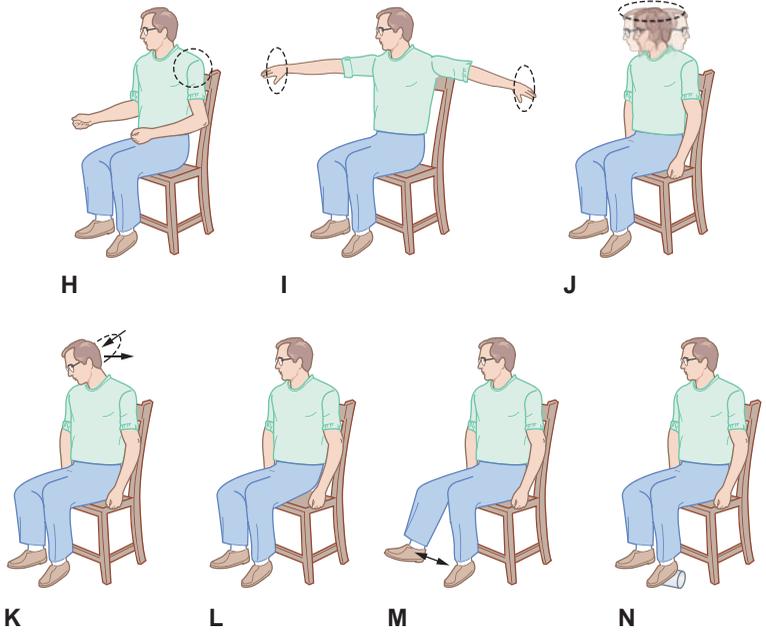
Exercises to Do While in Bed



G
FIGURE 24-3 • Exercises to do while in bed: (A) Flexing the knee with the opposite hand holding the foot for assistance. (B) Rolling from side to side. (C) Scissorlike crossing of the legs. (D) Raising the chest. (E) Flexing the knees while lying on the abdomen. (F) Bicycling. (G) Lifting a pillow over the head with the arms straight. **Exercises to do while sitting:** (H) Circling motion of the shoulder joint with the arm at the side. (I) Circling the arms. (J) Rotating the head. (K) Flexing and extending the neck. (L) Pushing up in a chair with the use of the arms. (M) Kicking the legs while sitting. (N) Rolling the foot on a can.

All exercises can be built into regular activities. **Exercises to do anytime:** (O) Rolling a pencil on a hard surface. (P) Flexing the fingers around a pencil. (Q) Exaggerating chewing motions. (R) Rubbing the back with a towel. (S) Tightening the rectoperineal muscles. (T) Holding the stomach in to tighten the abdominal muscles.

Exercises to Do While Sitting



Exercises to Do Anytime

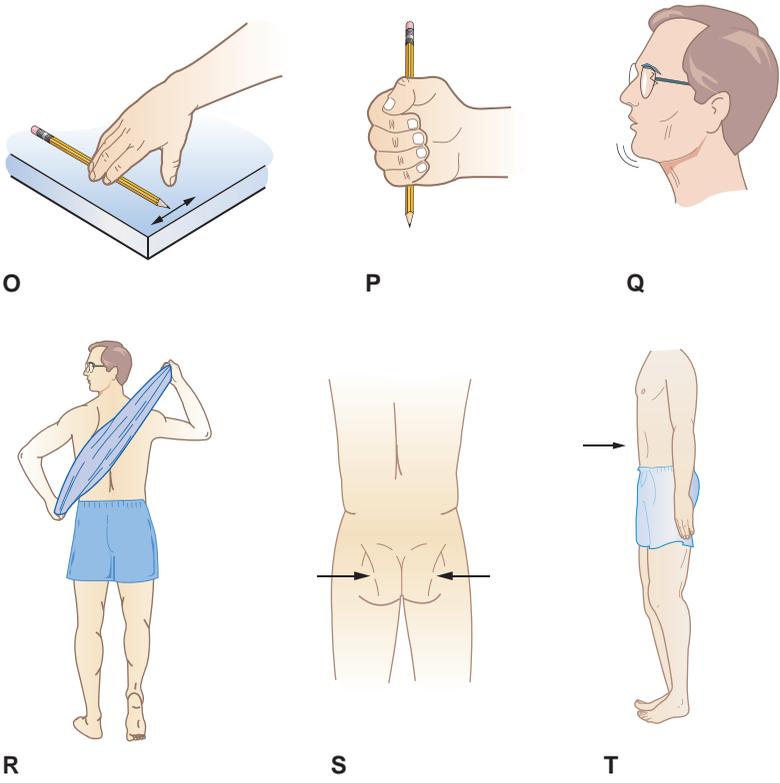


FIGURE 24-3 • (Continued)

Chapter 35 reviews range of motion exercises and some of the assistive devices that can help older adults be active.

The Mind–Body Connection

Cognitive and emotional states can influence physical activity. Depressed individuals may be poorly motivated to engage in exercise or lack the energy to be physically active. Persons with Alzheimer’s disease and other cognitive impairments may lack the memory, judgment, or coordination to safely exercise. On the other hand, inactive states lead to the ill effects of immobility (e.g., poor circulation, fatigue, reduced release of endorphins) that can affect the mind. Promotion of physical activity, therefore, can have positive effects on mood and cognition. Nurses can help patients with mood or cognitive disorders in the development and implementation of an exercise program appropriate for their capabilities and needs. Activities must be planned according to the unique interests of the individual and could include arts, crafts, travel, classes, gardening, auto repair, dancing, listening to music, people watching, and collecting. Pets are frequently a source of interest, activity, and companionship for older adults. Older adulthood can also be the time for the development of new hobbies and interests.

KEY CONCEPT

Mental stimulation is as vital to an individual’s physical well-being as physical activity. Likewise, physical activity can improve mood and cognition.

Therapeutic recreation is structured leisure with a specific goal in mind, for example, working with

clay to exercise fingers, painting to express feelings, and cooking classes to restore or maintain roles. Specialists in recreation, music, art, or dance therapy can provide valuable assistance in matching activities to the unique needs, interests, and capacities of older persons.

With any activity, adequate time and patience are necessary. Slower passage of impulses through the nervous system, sensory deficits, and the vast storehouse of information being triggered and sorted in response to psychological stimuli are just a few of the factors that interfere with rapid reactions in older people.

Prevention of Inactivity

As listed in Box 24-3, the deconditioning effects of inactivity are significant to older adults and exaggerate the age-related effects of sarcopenia. For a person of any age, maintaining an active state can be challenging. For older adults, age-related changes in muscle strength and endurance, reduced opportunities for activity, and fatigue, pain, dizziness, dyspnea, and other symptoms associated with health problems prevalent in later life can further reduce activity levels.

KEY CONCEPT

Inactivity can result in deconditioning, which compounds the effects of sarcopenia.

Because these real obstacles get in the way of being physically active in later life, special efforts are demanded by older adults and those caring for them to compensate for this problem. A crucial measure is to educate the public, especially care-

BOX 24-3 Deleterious Effects of Inactivity

- *Changes in physiologic function*
 - Reduced pulse rate
 - Increased cardiac workload
 - Decreased aerobic capacity
 - Decreased chest expansion and ventilation
 - Reduced muscle strength, tone, and endurance
 - Demineralization of bones, increased ease of fractures
 - Slower gastrointestinal motility
 - Slower metabolism and lymphatic circulation
- *Increased risk of complications*
 - Postural hypotension
 - Hypostatic pneumonia
 - Pressure ulcers
- Poor appetite
- Obesity
- Constipation
- Fecal impaction
- Incontinence
- Renal stone formation
- Urinary tract infection
- Joint stiffness, limited range of motion
- *Changes in mood and self-concept*
 - Increased feelings of helplessness, depression
 - Perception of self as incapable, frail
- *Increased dependency*
- *Reduced opportunities for socialization*

givers, about the importance of physical activity for older adults (e.g., lowering blood pressure, maintaining muscle strength, preventing falls, aiding lymphatic circulation, sharpening mental acuity, elevating mood, and improving digestion and elimination). Sometimes families believe they are assisting their older relatives by “doing for” and allowing them to be sedentary. Often, assisting with household responsibilities not only enhances good functioning of the body’s systems but also promotes a sense of worth by providing an opportunity for productivity. Although physical activity may be more uncomfortable or demanding than inactivity, future health problems and disability may be spared by its regular practice.

Creativity in suggesting pastimes that can stimulate movement may be a key to increasing opportunities for activity. For instance, encouraging membership in a senior citizen’s club can motivate many types of activity because the individual will have a reason to perform the following tasks, among others:

- get out of bed
- prepare and eat breakfast
- bathe
- dress
- comb hair
- travel to the club
- negotiate a new environment
- interact with others
- participate in activities
- travel home
- undress

Those caring for older people can enhance motivation by demonstrating a sincere interest in their activities, for example, asking how they spent their day, admiring crafts they made, or listening to the details of a trip. Recognizing housekeeping efforts, using their handmade gifts, and commenting on a well-groomed appearance are small but meaningful ways to reinforce the older person’s efforts to be active.

Nurses can inform older adults about local resources that can promote activity, such as senior centers, exercise classes, educational and recreational programs at local schools or colleges, volunteer opportunities, and local clubs. In addition, they can promote activity by arranging transportation for older adults to and from activities. For homebound older people, special services offered by libraries, vision associations, Pets on Wheels, social service organizations, faith communities, and other agencies can provide resources and companionship that promote activity. Refer to the Resources listings at the end of chapters for agencies that address specific needs.

An older adult’s unique capacities and limitations, as well as interests, will dictate the appropriate activities for that individual. Learning about an older adult’s individual interests, preferences, and abilities can assist nurses in identifying activities that will be familiar and enjoyable. Stereotyping older adults by assuming they all enjoy exactly the same activities violates the underlying nursing principle of individualized care and severely limits the opportunities available for older persons. If it is assumed that older persons are normally inactive, disinterested in exercise, and unable to participate in physical activity, and if they are treated as though they are, they most likely will fulfill these expectations. On the other hand, if they are expected to keep active and interested in the world around them, they have a better probability of remaining capable, independent, and physically and mentally functional.

Nursing Diagnosis Highlight: Impaired Physical Mobility describes additional interventions for promoting mobility. Gerontological nurses can make a difference by identifying patients at high risk for developing musculoskeletal problems, implementing interventions to prevent them, and implementing a reconditioning program for persons with chronic deconditioning.

Consider This Case

Since retiring 6 years ago from his job as a delivery man, 74-year-old Mr. E has become progressively more inactive. His wife, who is the same age and considerably more active, urges him to exercise more, but Mr. E responds that he worked hard all his life and now that he is retired he deserves to “kick back and take it easy.” Mr. E’s increasingly stiff joints and reduced respiratory capacity cause him to have difficulty walking more than a city block and climbing stairs. He frequently nods off and has few interests other than television. His wife is unhappy because they do not participate in activities together.

THINK CRITICALLY

- What can be done to affect a change in Mr. E’s behavior?
- How could you assist both Mr. and Mrs. E?

NURSING DIAGNOSIS HIGHLIGHT

IMPAIRED PHYSICAL MOBILITY

Overview

Impaired physical mobility is a state in which movement is limited. Some degree of mobility limitation is observed, ranging from the use of special equipment for movement to total dependency on others for movement. Other signs associated with this diagnosis could include decreased muscle strength or control, restricted range of motion, impaired coordination, altered gait, decreased level of consciousness, pain, paralysis, and imposed restrictions on movement.

Causative or contributing factors

Arthritis, malnutrition, neuromuscular disease, sensory deficits, edema, missing limb, cardiovascular disease, pulmonary disease, obesity, side effects of medications, altered mood or cognition.

Goals

The patient will increase mobility to optimal level. The patient will be free from complications associated with impaired mobility.

Interventions

- Assess muscle strength and tone, active and passive range of motion, and mental status.
- Review history for conditions that can limit mobility or require alteration in level of mobility. Consult with

physician as to restrictions on mobility and any necessary modifications for exercises.

- Develop an individualized exercise program, which could include passive or active range-of-motion exercises, structured exercise classes, walking programs (see Box 24-2).
- Assist patient in maintaining good body alignment and hourly position changes.
- Promote a good nutritional status. Consult with nutritionists as needed.
- If necessary, refer for canes, walkers, wheelchairs, braces, traction devices, and other aids to increase mobility. Provide related health teaching as needed.
- Collaborate with physical therapist, occupational therapist, recreational therapist, and other health team members to develop a program to increase the patient's mobility.
- Encourage family and significant others to assist in efforts to increase the patient's mobility.
- Provide diversional activities based on the patient's interests and level of function.
- Observe for complications associated with immobility and seek prompt correction. Instruct patient in recognition of complications.

Nutrition

Finally, although potentially overlooked, good nutrition is an important factor in preventing and managing musculoskeletal problems. A well-balanced diet rich in proteins and minerals will help maintain the structure of the bones and muscles. A minimum of 1500 mg calcium should be included in the diet daily for older men and women who are not taking estrogen (1000 mg for women taking estrogen). Table 24-2 details good sources of calcium. If dietary intake of calcium does not meet the daily requirement, supplements should be taken to compensate for the deficient amount (i.e., if a person who should consume 1500 mg daily only derives an average of 1000 mg from his or her diet, a 500-mg supplement is appropriate).

In addition to quality of the diet, quantity is also important. Obesity places strain on the joints, which aggravates conditions such as arthritis. Weight reduction frequently will ease musculoskeletal discomforts and reduce limitations and should be promoted as a sound health practice for persons of all ages.

Selected Musculoskeletal Conditions

It is the rare older individual who does not experience some degree of discomfort, disability, or deformity from musculoskeletal disorders. In fact, musculoskeletal diseases are the leading cause of functional impairment in older adults. Because activity and mobility are vital to the total health of older adults, musculoskeletal problems that limit functional capacity can have devastating effects (Nursing Diagnosis Table 24-3). Assessment for musculoskeletal problems should consider not only the presence of these conditions but also the effect they have on the older adult's function (Assessment Guide 24-1). Prevention of these problems and aggressive intervention to minimize their impact if they are present should be integral parts of gerontological nursing care.

Fractures

Trauma, cancer metastasis to the bone, osteoporosis, and other skeletal diseases contribute to fractures in older persons. The neck of the femur is a common

TABLE 24-2 Good Sources of Calcium

Source	Portion	Calcium (mg)
Plain low-fat yogurt	1 cup	250–400
Sardines	½ cup	375
Fruit juice, calcium fortified	1 glass	300
Skim milk	1 cup	302
Buttermilk	1 cup	300
Instant, enriched cooked farina	1 cup	200
Swiss cheese	1 ounce	272
Ice cream	1 cup	175
Low-fat (2%) cottage cheese	1 cup	155
Cooked turnip greens	½ cup	150
Tofu	½ cup	150
Broccoli	1 cup	136

site for fractures in older people, especially in older women, and most of these fractures result from falls. Colles’ fracture (break at the distal radius) is one of the most frequent upper extremity fractures and often occurs when attempting to stop a fall with an outstretched hand. Older adults also are at risk for compression fractures of the vertebrae, resulting from falls or lifting heavy objects. The more brittle bones of older persons not only fracture more easily, but also heal at a slower rate than in younger persons, potentially predisposing older adults to the many complications associated with immobility.

Knowing that the risk of fracture and its multiple complications is high among older adults, the gerontological nurse must aim toward prevention, drawing on the effectiveness of basic common sense measures. Because their coordination and equilibrium are poorer, older people should be advised to avoid risky activities (e.g., climbing on ladders or chairs to reach high places). To prevent dizziness and falls resulting from postural hypotension, older individuals should rise from a kneeling or sitting position slowly. Safe, properly fitting shoes with a low, broad heel can prevent stumbling and loss of balance, and hand rails for climbing stairs or rising from the bath tub provide support and balance. Placing both feet near the edge of a curb or bus before stepping up or down is safer than a poorly balanced stretch of the legs (Fig. 24-4). Older persons should be careful where they are walking to avoid tripping in holes and on damaged sidewalks or slipping on pieces of ice. Older eyes are more sensitive to glare, so sunglasses may be helpful for improving vision outdoors. A nightlight is extremely valuable in preventing falls during night visits to the bathroom. Other fall prevention measures are discussed in Chapter 17.

Because of the high prevalence and ease of fractures in older adults, fracture should be suspected whenever older adults fall or otherwise subject their bones to trauma. Symptoms include pain, change in the shape or length of a limb, abnormal or restricted motion of a limb, edema, spasm of surrounding tissue, discoloration of tissue, and bone protruding through the tissue. The absence of these

NURSING DIAGNOSIS

TABLE 24-3 Nursing Diagnoses Related to Musculoskeletal Problems

Causes or Contributing Factors	Nursing Diagnosis
Muscle fatigue, pain, deformity	Activity Intolerance
Pain, fear of injury	Anxiety
Inactivity or immobility from pain or disability	Constipation
Fracture, contracture, spasms, arthritis	Pain (Acute, Chronic)
Change or loss of function or appearance	Fear
Arthritis, contracture, pain, impaired range of motion	Impaired Home Maintenance
Unsteady gait, pain, improper use of heat	Risk for Injury
Spasms, atrophy, pain, deformity	Impaired Physical Mobility
Impaired self-care capacity	Powerlessness
Immobility, pain, deformity	Self-Care Deficit
Change in body structure or function, pain, immobility, increased dependency	Disturbed Body Image
Pain, fatigue, positioning difficulties, altered body image	Sexual Dysfunction
Pain, spasms, cramps	Disturbed Sleep Pattern
Change in body structure or function, altered self-concept, pain	Impaired Social Interaction
Immobility, pain, disfigurement	Social Isolation



ASSESSMENT GUIDE 24-1 Musculoskeletal Function

GENERAL OBSERVATION

Assessment of the musculoskeletal system can begin even before the formal examination by noting the patient's actions, such as transfer activities, ambulation, and use of hands. Note observations regarding the following:

- abnormal gait (Table 24-4)
- abnormality of structure
- dysfunction of a limb
- favoring of one side
- tremor
- paralysis
- weakness
- atrophy of a limb
- redness, swelling of a joint
- use of cane, walker, wheelchair

INTERVIEW

Although it may seem tedious, it is best to go from head to toe and question the patient about limited function or discomfort in specific parts of the body. Examples of questions could include the following:

- "Does your jaw ever get stiff or hurt when you chew?"
- "Do you get a stiff neck?"
- "Does your shoulder ever tighten?"
- "Do your hips hurt after you have walked for a while?"
- "Are your joints stiff in the morning?"
- "Do you have muscle cramps?"
- "How far are you able to walk?"
- "Are you able to take care of your home, get in and out of a bathtub, and climb stairs?"

Also make specific inquiry into how the patient manages musculoskeletal pain, particularly in reference to the use of analgesics, heat, and topical preparations.

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

Examine the active and passive range of motion of all joints. Note the degree of movement with and without assistance. Specific areas to review include the following:

- *Shoulder.* The patient should be able to lift both arms straight above the head. With arms straight at the sides, the patient should be able to lift them laterally above the head (i.e., 180°) with hands supine and

110° with hands prone. The patient should be able to extend the arms 30° behind the body from the sides.

- *Neck.* The patient should be able to turn the head laterally and to flex and extend the head approximately 30° in all directions.
- *Elbow.* The patient should be able to open the arms fully and flex the joint enough to allow the hand to touch the shoulder.
- *Wrist.* The patient should be able to bend the wrist 80° in the palmar direction and 70° in the dorsal direction. With a hand-waving motion, the patient should be able to bend the wrist laterally 10° toward the radial or thumb side and 60° in the direction of the ulnar side. The patient should be able to move the hand to 90° in the prone and supine positions.
- *Finger.* The patient should be able to bend the distal joint of the finger approximately 45° and the proximal joint 90°. Hyperextension of 30° should be possible.
- *Hip.* While lying down, the patient should be able to abduct and adduct the leg 45°. With the patient lying on his back, the leg should be able to be lifted 90° with the knee straight and 125° with the knee bent.
- *Knee.* While lying on the stomach, the patient should be able to flex the knee approximately 100°.
- *Ankle.* The patient should be able to point the toes 10° toward the head and 40° toward the foot of the bed or examining table. There should be a 35° inversion and a 25° eversion.
- *Toe.* The patient should be able to flex and hyperextend the toes approximately 30°. Note the patient's active and passive range of motion, as well as any weakness, tightness, spasm, tremor, or contracture that may be evident.

Some muscle weakness can be anticipated, although the exact degree will vary among individuals. The upper extremity usually shows greater strength on the side of the dominant hand; there should be equal strength in the lower extremities. To test muscle strength in holding its shortest position, have the patient hold the muscle in its shortest position and apply force to cause the muscle to extend. Normally, a muscle will be able to hold its shortest position under moderate resistance. Palpate all muscles for tenderness, contractures, and masses.

TABLE 24-4 Gait Disturbances

Gait Pattern	Associated Disorder
Ataxic	
Unsteady, uncoordinated, feet raised high while stepping and then dropped flat on floor	Cerebellum disease Intoxication
Foot slapping	
Wide based, feet raised high while stepping and then slapped down against floor; no staggering or weaving	Lower motor neuron disease Paralysis of pretibial and peroneal muscles
Hemiplegic	
Unilateral foot drop and foot dragging, leg circumducted, arm flexed and held close to side	Unilateral upper motor neuron disease
Parkinsonian	
Trunk leans forward, slight flexion of hip and knees, no arm swing while stepping, short and shuffling steps, starts slowly and then increases in speed	Parkinsonism
Scissors	
Slow, short steps; legs cross while stepping	Spastic paraplegia Dementia Cerebral palsy
Spastic	
Uncoordinated, jerking gait; legs stiff; toes drag	Spastic paraplegia Spinal cord tumor Multiple sclerosis

symptoms does not negate the possibility of a fracture. Overt signs and symptoms can be absent; in addition, the position of the fracture can prevent it from being apparent on the initial roentgenogram.

As the patient is transported for evaluation, immobility of the injured site and control of bleeding are essential.

KEY CONCEPT

The absence of typical signs of fracture does not guarantee that a bone is not broken; therefore, close nursing observation is essential whenever a bone has been subjected to trauma.

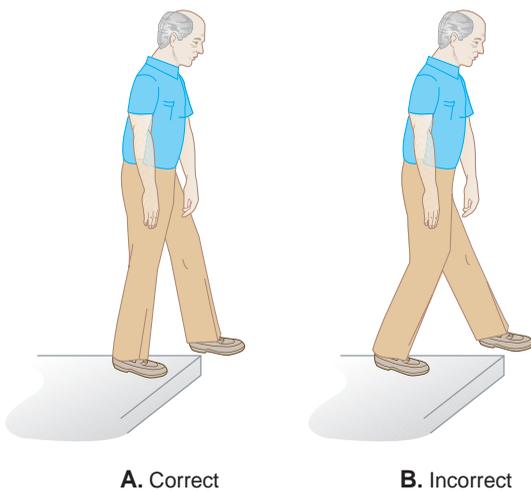


FIGURE 24-4 • (A) The correct method for stepping to or from a curb is to place both feet near the edge of the curb before stepping up or down. (B) The incorrect method is to stretch the legs apart before stepping.

Fractures heal more slowly in older adults, and the risk of complications is greater. Pneumonia, thrombus formation, pressure ulcers, renal calculi, fecal impaction, and contractures are among the complications that special nursing attention can help prevent. Activity within the limits determined by the physician should be promoted, including deep-breathing and coughing exercises, isometric and range-of-motion exercises, and frequent turning and position changes. Fluids should be encouraged, and the characteristics of urine output noted. Good nutrition will facilitate healing, increase resistance to infection, and decrease the likelihood of other complications. Joint exercise and proper positioning can prevent contractures. Correct body alignment can be

maintained with the use of foot boards, trochanter rolls, and sandbags. Keeping the skin dry and clean, preventing pressure, stimulating circulation through massage, and frequently turning the patient may reduce the risk of decubiti. Sheepskin, water beds, and alternating-pressure mattresses are beneficial, but they are not substitutes for good skin care and frequent position changes.

The patient should be mobilized as early as possible. Because the patient may fear using the fractured limb and avoid doing so, explanations and reassurance are required to help the individual understand that the healed limb is safe to use. Progress in small steps may be easier for the patient to tolerate physically and psychologically; the first attempt at ambulation may be to stand at the bedside, the next to walk to a nearby chair, and the next to walk to the bathroom. Initially, it may be helpful for two people to assist the patient with ambulation, especially because weakness and dizziness are common. The principles of nursing management for specific types of fractures are available in medical-surgical nursing textbooks, and the nurse is advised to explore that literature for more detailed information.

Osteoarthritis

Osteoarthritis is the deterioration and abrasion of joint cartilage, with the formation of new bone at the joint surfaces. This problem occurs increasingly with advanced age and affects most persons over age 55 to some extent. It occurs in women more than men and is the leading cause of physical disability in older adults. Unlike rheumatoid arthritis, osteoarthritis does not cause inflammation, deformity, and crippling—a fact that is reassuring to the affected individual who fears the severe disability often seen in persons with rheumatoid arthritis. For many years, it was believed that the wear and tear of the joints as an individual ages were responsible for the development of osteoarthritis; however, greater insights into the pathophysiology of the condition have afforded a new understanding. Disequilibrium between destructive (matrix metalloprotease enzymes) and synthetic (tissue inhibitors of matrix metalloprotease) elements lead to a lack of homeostasis necessary to maintain cartilage, causing the joint changes. Excessive use of the joint, trauma, obesity, low vitamin D and C levels, and genetic factors may also predispose an individual to this problem. Patients with acromegaly have a high incidence of osteoarthritis. Usually, osteoarthritis affects several joints rather than a single one. Weight-bearing joints are most affected, the common sites being the knees, hips, vertebrae, and fingers.



KEY CONCEPT

Osteoarthritis is the leading cause of physical disability in older people.

Systemic symptoms do not accompany osteoarthritis. Crepitation on joint motion may be noted, and the distal joints may develop bony nodules (i.e., Heberden nodes). The patient may notice that the joints are more uncomfortable during damp weather and periods of extended use. Although isometrics and mild exercises are beneficial, excessive exercise will cause more pain and degeneration.

Analgesics may be prescribed to control pain. Acetaminophen is the first drug of choice because of its safety over nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs). Because individual response to analgesics varies, nurses should assess the effectiveness of various analgesics for the patient. Rest, heat or ice, ultrasound, and gentle massage help relieve joint aches. Acupuncture has been shown to bring about short-term relief. Splints, braces, and canes provide support and rest to the joints. Some research suggests that oral calcitonin may effectively protect postmenopausal women from the ongoing pain and ultimate disability of joint destruction associated with osteoarthritis and may provide some hope (Sondergaard et al., 2007). The nurse should emphasize the importance of maintaining proper body alignment and using good body mechanics when educating the patient. Cold water fish and other foods high in the essential fatty acids have anti-inflammatory effects and should be abundant in the diet. Vitamins A, B, B6, C, and E and zinc, selenium, niacinamide, calcium, and magnesium are among the nutritional supplements that could prove useful in controlling symptoms. The over-the-counter supplements glucosamine and chondroitin have proved helpful for some people. Weight reduction may improve the obese patient's status and should be encouraged. It is beneficial if a homemaker service or other household assistance relieves the patient of strenuous activities that cause the joints to bear weight. Occupational and physical therapists can be consulted for assistive devices to promote independence in self-care activities. Nursing Care Plan 24-1 presents a sample care plan for the patient with osteoarthritis.

If other treatments fail to improve the condition or the person suffers severe functional limitation or pain, arthroplasty may be indicated. Arthroplasty, or joint replacement, can be done to restore joint motion, improve function, and reduce pain. At one time, older people were not considered good candidates for arthroplasty; however, that thinking has changed and increasing numbers of people over the

NURSING CARE PLAN 24-1

The Older Adult With Osteoarthritis

Nursing Diagnosis: Chronic Pain related to joint inflammation, stiffness, and fluid accumulation

Goals

The patient expresses relief or control of pain; is unrestricted by pain to engage in activities of daily living; is free from adverse effects of analgesics.

Nursing Actions

- Ask patient to self-evaluate pain on a scale of 0 to 10 (0 = no pain, 10 = most severe); monitor daily.
- Review with patient factors that precipitate, worsen, or relieve pain; incorporate this information into care to prevent and control pain.
- Apply heat as ordered to relieve discomfort and promote mobility. Encourage patient to use socks, blankets, and adequate clothing to keep muscles and joints warm.
- Administer analgesics as ordered or instruct patient in proper self-administration. Monitor effectiveness, tolerance, side effects.
- Assist patient in maintaining good body alignment and posture.
- Assess impact of pain on ability to fulfill activities of daily living (ADL). Consult with physical and occupational therapists regarding exercises and assistive devices that can promote independence.
- Instruct patient in ways to minimize stress to joints and muscles.
- Instruct patient in use of guided imagery, biofeedback, and relaxation techniques; offer massages and other forms of therapeutic touch.

Nursing Diagnosis: Impaired Physical Mobility related to pain and limited joint movement

Goals

The patient maintains or achieves functional positions of joints; maintains or achieves optimal joint mobility; is free from flexion contractures.

Nursing Actions

- Assess range of joint motion on admission or at first visit and regularly thereafter; note for each joint: swelling, warmth, tenderness, and structural or functional abnormalities.
- Instruct or assist patient in maintaining proper body alignment, good posture, correct use of joints.
- Advise patient to avoid stressing joints (e.g., by heavy lifting, running, hammering).
- Schedule analgesic administration and other pain relief measures before activities.
- During exacerbation of pain, provide adequate rest for joints and assist patient in positioning joints in functional alignment.
- Consult with rehabilitation specialists regarding appropriate exercise to improve muscle strength, tone, and mobility, and possible use of assistive devices and mobility aids (e.g., canes, walkers, customized eating utensils, dressing aids).
- Encourage or assist patient to perform range-of-motion exercises at least twice daily.
- Provide warm-up of muscles and joints prior to activities and exercises and a cool-down period afterwards.

Nursing Diagnosis: Potential Self-care Deficit related to pain or joint immobility

Goals

The patient is able to eat, bathe, dress, transfer, ambulate, and toilet independently; uses assistive aids properly and effectively.

Nursing Actions

- Assess the patient's ability to eat, bathe, dress, transfer, ambulate, and toilet independently. Identify deficits in independently meeting ADL and plan measures to compensate for deficits; identify risks and potential deficits and plan measures to prevent loss of independent function.

(continued)

NURSING CARE PLAN 24-1 (Continued)

- Allow patient maximum independence and participation in care activities.
- Educate patient as to proper management of condition and measures that can reduce risk of losing independence (e.g., exercise to maintain mobility, use of assistive devices).
- Encourage patient to express feelings about actual or potential dependency; provide realistic explanations and emotional support.

Nursing Diagnoses: (1) Body Image Disturbance related to joint abnormality, immobility, altered self-care ability; (2) Self-esteem Disturbance related to changes in body appearance and function

Goals

The patient expresses acceptance of and realities associated with chronic condition; expresses feelings regarding body changes; develops effective mechanisms to cope with body changes; identifies constructive ways to function with body changes; is free from complications associated with body image and self-esteem disturbances.

Nursing Actions

- Assess impact of altered function and appearance on patient.
- Encourage patient to express concerns, fears, and feelings.
- Help patient identify effective coping measures (e.g., effective measures used to cope with problems in the past, counseling, development of new interests).
- Help patient identify and focus on capabilities rather than limitations.

age of 65 are having joint replacements. Hip and knee joint replacements are the most common, although arthroplasty can be performed on any joint. This procedure is not advised for patients with neutrotrophic joints, joint sepsis, or persons who are obese or have dementias or other conditions that would interfere with their ability to cooperate with rehabilitation therapy. Conditions such as peripheral vascular disease and diabetes mellitus increase the risk for infection and interfere with wound healing. As moderate to severe pain often is present post-operatively, analgesics are administered around the clock. While assuring that pain is controlled adequately to support early rehabilitation efforts, consideration must be given to the high risk for adverse effects from analgesics that also can hamper rehabilitation; it is important to closely observe patients' reactions. Arthroplasty is associated with a high risk of deep venous thrombosis (DVT) and pulmonary embolism for older patients; warfarin may be used prophylactically. Patients and their caregivers need to be advised of precautions related to anticoagulant therapy. Patients receive specific instructions pertaining to their exercise, weight-bearing, and activity restrictions. Nurses must see that patients and their caregivers understand instructions and adhere to the plan of care to ensure a successful outcome for the surgery.

Rheumatoid Arthritis

Rheumatoid arthritis affects many persons, particularly those 20 to 40 years old; it is a major cause of arthritic disability in later life as a result. Fortunately, the incidence decreases after 65 years of age; most older patients with this disease developed it earlier in life. Specifically, the deformities and disability associated with this disease primarily begin during early adulthood and peak during middle age; in old age, greater systemic involvement occurs. This disease occurs more frequently in women and in persons with a family history of the problem.

In rheumatoid arthritis, the synovium becomes hypertrophied and edematous with projections of synovial tissue protruding into the joint cavity. The affected joints are extremely painful, stiff, swollen, red, and warm to the touch. Joint pain is present during rest and activity. Subcutaneous nodules over bony prominences and bursae may be present, as may deforming flexion contractures. Systemic symptoms include fatigue, malaise, weakness, weight loss, wasting, fever, and anemia.

Encouraging patients to rest and providing support to the affected limbs are helpful measures. Limb support should be such that pressure ulcers and contractures are prevented. Splints are commonly made for the patient in an effort to prevent deformities.

BOX 24-4 Risk Factors for Osteoporosis

- Advanced age (women over 65 years, men over 80 years)
- Ethnicity
 - white women with a northwestern European or British Isles background
 - Asian women
- Calcium deficiency
- Small-framed, thin women
- History of early menopause
- Estrogen deficiency
- History of multiple pregnancies
- Cigarette smoking
- High alcohol consumption
- Prolonged immobility
- Diseases or chronic use of drugs that increase bone loss (e.g., corticosteroids, thyroid hormones, anti-convulsants)
- Family history of osteoporosis

Range-of-motion exercises are vital to maintain musculoskeletal function; the nurse may have to assist the patient with active exercises. Physical and occupational therapists can provide assistive devices to promote independence in self-care activities, and heat, gentle massage, and analgesics can help control pain. Patients with rheumatoid arthritis may be prescribed anti-inflammatory agents (particularly prostaglandins), corticosteroids, antimalarial agents, gold salts, and immunosuppressive drugs. The nurse should be familiar with the many toxic effects of these drugs and detect them early if they occur.

Some patients with rheumatic heart disease are sensitive to the “nightshade” foods: potatoes, peppers, eggplant, tomatoes, and other solanines; eliminating these from the diet could prove beneficial. Herbs that could improve symptoms include turmeric, ginger, skullcap, and ginseng.

Patients with rheumatoid arthritis and their families need considerable education to be able to manage this condition. Patient education should include information about the disease, treatments, administration of medications, identification of side effects, exercise regimens, use of assistive devices, methods to avoid and reduce pain, and an understanding of the need for continued medical supervision. Accepting this chronic disease is not an easy task for either the patient or the family. Finally, the patient may be a prime target for salespeople offering a quick cure or relief for arthritis and should be advised to consult a nurse or physician before investing many dollars on useless fads.

Osteoporosis

Osteoporosis is the most prevalent metabolic disease of the bone; it primarily affects adults in middle to later life, with some groups being at higher risk than others (Box 24-4). Demineralization of the bone occurs, evidenced by a decrease in the mass and density of the skeleton. Any health prob-

lem associated with inadequate calcium intake, excessive calcium loss, or poor calcium absorption can cause osteoporosis. Many of the following potential causes are problems commonly found among older persons.

- *Inactivity or immobility.* A lack of muscle pull on the bone can lead to a loss of minerals, especially calcium and phosphorus. This particularly may be a problem for limbs in a cast.
- *Diseases.* Cushing syndrome, an excessive production of glucocorticosteroids by the adrenal gland, is believed to inhibit the formation of bone matrix. The increased metabolic activity of hyperthyroidism causes more rapid bone turnover and the faster rate of bone resorption to bone formation causes osteoporosis. Excessive diverticulitis can interfere with the absorption of sufficient amounts of calcium. Although the direct relationship is uncertain at this time, diabetes mellitus can contribute to the development of osteoporosis. The percentage of cases of osteoporosis that result secondary to other diseases is relatively small.
- *Reduction in anabolic sex hormones.* Decreased production or loss of estrogens and androgens may be responsible for insufficient bone calcium; therefore, postmenopausal women are at high risk.
- *Diet.* An insufficient amount of calcium, vitamin D, vitamin C, protein, and other nutrients in the diet can cause osteoporosis. Excessive consumption of caffeine or alcohol decreases the body's absorption and retention of calcium.
- *Drugs.* Heparin, furosemide, thyroid supplements, corticosteroids, tetracycline, and magnesium- and aluminum-based antacids can lead to osteoporosis.

POINT TO PONDER

To what risk factors for osteoporosis are you subject, and what can you do to reduce them? ●

Osteoporosis may cause kyphosis and a reduction in height. The person may experience spinal pain, especially in the lumbar region. The bones may tend to fracture more easily. However, patients are often asymptomatic and unaware of the problem until it is detected by radiography. Bone mass can be assessed through several different types of noninvasive techniques including single-photon absorptiometry (SPA); dual-photon absorptiometry (DPA); quantitative computed tomography (CT); and dual-energy x-ray absorptiometry (DEXA), which is the most widely used and recommended method (Anders, Turner, & Wallace, 2007).

Treatment depends on the underlying cause of the disease and may include calcium supplements, vitamin D supplements, progesterone, estrogen, anabolic agents, fluoride, or phosphate. A relatively recent drug that has been shown beneficial in producing modest increases in bone mass is a synthetic form of calcitonin, a hormone produced in the thyroid that is a powerful inhibitor of osteoclastic activity (the cells that continuously reabsorb bone). Bisphosphonates are another beneficial new category of drugs that are primarily antiresorptive (i.e., they prevent or significantly slow the normal osteoclastic activity responsible for the resorption of bone). A diet rich in protein and calcium is encouraged. Braces may be used to provide support and reduce spasms. A bed board is also beneficial and should be recommended.

The nurse must advise the patient to avoid heavy lifting, jumping, and other activities that could result in a fracture. Persons providing care for these patients must remember to be gentle when moving, exercising, or lifting them because fractures can occur easily. Compression fractures of the vertebrae are a potential complication of osteoporosis. Range-of-motion exercises and ambulation are important to maintain function and prevent greater damage.



KEY CONCEPT

The bodies of persons with osteoporosis must be handled gently to avoid fractures.

Gout

Gout is a metabolic disorder in which excess uric acid accumulates in the blood. As a result, uric acid crystals are deposited in and around the joints, causing severe pain and tenderness of the joint and warmth, redness, and swelling of the surrounding tissue. Attacks can last from weeks to months, with long remissions between attacks possible.

Treatment aims to reduce sodium urate through a low-purine diet (e.g., avoidance of bacon, turkey, veal, liver, kidney, brain, anchovies, sardines, herring, smelt, mackerel, salmon, and legumes) and the administra-

tion of drugs. Alcohol should also be avoided because it increases uric acid production and reduces uric acid excretion. Colchicine or phenylbutazone can be used to manage acute attacks; long-term management could include colchicine, allopurinol, probenecid, or indomethacin. Gout attacks can be precipitated by the administration of thiazide diuretics, which raise the uric acid level of the blood. Vitamin E, folic acid, and eicosapentaenoic acid (EPA) can be useful dietary supplements. Herbs such as yucca and devil's claw reduce symptoms in some persons.

Podiatric Conditions

By age 65, nearly 90% of all people have some type of foot problem that causes some degree of discomfort or dysfunction. Not surprisingly then, the foot problems of old age have commanded a specialty of their own: podogeriatrics. Lifelong foot problems, changes in gait, diseases that affect the feet (e.g., gout, diabetes, and peripheral vascular disease), and age-related loss of fat padding of the foot contribute to foot conditions.

The older person's own shaving, cutting, and chemical treatment of podiatric conditions can result in serious complications; therefore, patients should be referred to podiatrists for treatment of foot conditions. Nurses should teach older adults about proper foot care (e.g., keeping feet clean and dry, wearing safe and proper-fitting shoes, exercising feet, and cutting nails straight across and even with the top of the toe) and the importance of seeking professional podiatric care for problems. Nurses can offer foot massages because they can aid in stimulating circulation, reducing edema, and promoting comfort. (Foot massages may be contraindicated in patients with peripheral vascular disease or lesions, so it is important to consult with the physician first.)

Because of the impact of podiatric problems on mobility and independence, these conditions need to be effectively identified and treated. Some of the common conditions are discussed below.

Calluses

Calluses are caused by friction and irritation on the feet that create layers of thickened skin. The dryness of the skin and poor fitting shoes contribute to callus formation. They usually appear on the heels and soles and, although not painful, can be unsightly. Furthermore, there is the risk that people will attempt to shave or cut off calluses from their feet and risk injuring their skin. Massaging the feet with lotions and oils can aid in preventing calluses.

Corns

Corns are cone-shaped layers of thick, dry skin that form over a bony prominence. Pressure on the area



FIGURE 24-5 • Foot disorders can cause pain and dysfunction. **(A)** Bunion. **(B)** Hammer toe.

causes discomfort as the tip of the cone presses into the tissue. Additional pressure increases the size of the corn and, consequently, the pain. U-shaped corn pads and loosely wrapping the toe in lamb's wool are superior to oval or round corn pads, which can restrict circulation. As with calluses, patients should be advised not to attempt to remove corns on their own.

Bunions (*Hallux valgus*)

A bunion or bursa is a bony prominence over the first metatarsal head (Fig. 24-5A). There is a medial deviation of the first metatarsal with abduction of the great toe in relation to that metatarsal. Bunions occur more often in women—not surprising considering women's shoe styles that commonly have tight toe fit and the tight hosiery that pull toes together. Some bunions are hereditary in nature. The increased width of the foot caused by the bunion can cause difficulty in finding properly fitting shoes. Shoe repair shops can stretch shoes to accommodate bunions; custom-made shoes are beneficial, also. Surgery may be indicated for some cases.

Hammer Toe (*Digitus Flexus*)

Hammer toe is a hyperextension at the metatarsophalangeal joint with flexion and often corn formation at the proximal interphalangeal joint. The toe begins to resemble the shape of the hammers inside a piano, thus its name (Fig. 24-5B). Although the joint itself is not painful, pressure to the area results in discomfort. Orthotics can provide symptomatic relief, but surgery is necessary for correction.

Plantar Fasciitis

A common cause of heel pain, often mistaken for a spur, is plantar fasciitis. The plantar fascia is a thick ligamentous band in the bottom of the foot that runs from the ball of the foot to the heel, where it is attached. Poor alignment of the foot that causes pronation or supination of the foot during walk, results in stretching and stress of the plantar fascia. Plantar fasciitis is an inflammation of this band at its heel attachment. Pain is the primary symptom and occurs in the center or the inner side of the heel. Pain is worse after a period of rest; most people experience the most pain in the morning. After walking, the pain may subside but tends to increase as pressure is put on the heel from walking or standing. Pain can radiate to the ankle or arch of the foot if nerves become irritated secondary to the swollen plantar fascia.

Symptomatic treatment can include stretching exercises of the foot (pulling up on the ball of the foot), applying ice to the heel for 30-minute periods, and wearing cushions in the heel and shoes with heels elevated about 2 inches. The most effective means of relieving pain and preventing inflammation is to have the foot realigned through the use of custom-made orthotics. Patients need to be advised that they may not note improvement until several months after beginning treatment.

Infections

Housing of the foot in shoes, particularly ones made from synthetic materials, creates a warm, moist environment that facilitates fungus and bacterial growth. *Onychomycosis* is a fungal infection of the nail or nail bed in which the toenail appears enlarged, thick, brittle, and flaky. As the fungus forms under the nail and displaces it up, the sides of the nail are pushed into the skin and cause pain. Antifungal preparations assist in eliminating the infection, but these infections are stubborn to treat.

Tinea pedis, better known as athlete's foot, is a fungal infection of the foot that can cause burning and itching; the skin surface will peel, crack, and be red, often with vesicle eruptions. The breaks in the skin surface provide easy entry for bacteria.

Ingrown Nails (*Onychocryptosis*)

Ingrown nails can occur due to tight fitting shoes or cutting the nail excessively short. As the nail grows its edge cuts into the tissue, leading to inflammation. Soaks and topical antibiotics may be prescribed; usually, a podiatrist can correct this problem by removing the ingrown portion and cleaning the area.

General Nursing Considerations for Musculoskeletal Conditions

Managing Pain

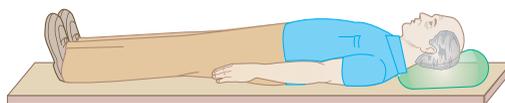
Pain often accompanies musculoskeletal problems. Degenerative changes in the tendons and arthritis often are responsible for painful shoulders, elbows, hands, hips, knees, and spines. Cramps, especially during the night, are common in calves, feet, hands, hips, and thighs. Joint strain and damp weather more frequently cause musculoskeletal pain in the old than in the young.

Pain relief is essential in promoting optimal physical, mental, and social function. Unrelieved pain can interfere with older persons' abilities to engage in self-care, manage their households, and maintain social contact. To enrich the quality of life, every effort should be made to minimize or eliminate pain. Often, heat relieves muscle spasms; a warm bath at bedtime and keeping the extremities warm with blankets and clothing can reduce spasms and cramps throughout the night and promote uninterrupted sleep. Because older adults are at high risk for burns, care must be taken to avoid injury if heat applications or soaks are used. Passive stretching of the extremity can be helpful in controlling muscle cramps. Excessive exercise and musculoskeletal stress should be avoided, as well as situations known to cause pain, such as heavy lifting or damp weather. Back rubs using slow, long, rhythmic strokes can promote relaxation and comfort. Pain in the weight-bearing joints can be alleviated by resting those joints, supporting painful joints during transfers, and using a walker or cane (Fig. 24-6). Correct positioning, whereby all body parts are in proper alignment, can help prevent and manage pain. Accidental bumping against the patient's bed or chair and rough handling of the patient during care activities must be prevented. Nurses may also need to emphasize to other caregivers the need for extra gentleness in turning and lifting older patients.

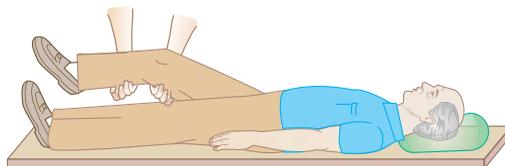


KEY CONCEPT

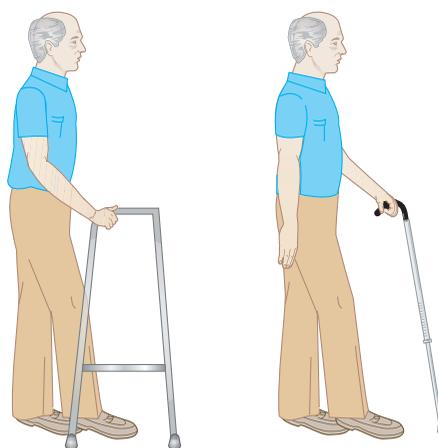
Unrelieved pain can significantly affect an older person's independence and quality of life.



A



B



C

FIGURE 24-6 • Methods for reducing musculoskeletal pain. **(A)** Good body alignment. **(B)** Support of parts of the limb adjacent to the painful joint when moving or lifting. **(C)** Use of a walker or cane.

Diversional activities are useful in preventing the patient's preoccupation with pain. Acupuncture, acupressure, and chiropractic therapy are among the alternative therapies that may help some patients control pain. Guided imagery and therapeutic touch may also prove helpful. The goal is to aid the patient in achieving the maximum level of activity with the least degree of pain.

Preventing Injury

Safety considerations are essential for all older persons because of their high incidence of accidents and musculoskeletal injuries and the prolonged time required for healing. Prevention includes paying attention to the area where one is walking; climbing stairs and curbs slowly; using both feet for support as much as possible; using railings and canes for added balance; wearing properly fitting, safe shoes for good

support; and avoiding long trousers, nightgowns, or robes. The importance of the safe use of heat has already been mentioned; it is useful for patients to learn how to measure water temperature and use hot-water bottles and heating pads safely. Patients with peripheral vascular disease must be warned that the local application of heat can cause circulatory demands that their body will be unable to meet; other means of pain relief may be more beneficial to them. Warm baths can reduce muscle spasm and provide pain relief, but they also can cause hypotensive episodes leading to dizziness, fainting, and serious injury.

Carelessly turning patients so that legs hit the bed rail, dropping them into a chair during a transfer, restraining them in an unaligned position, roughly handling a limb, or attempting to use force to straighten a contracture can lead to muscle strain

and fractures. Gentle handling will prevent unnecessary musculoskeletal discomfort and injury.

Promoting Independence

Any loss of independence associated with the limitations imposed by musculoskeletal problems has a serious impact on physical, emotional, and social well-being. Therefore, nurses must explore all avenues to help patients minimize limitations and strengthen capacities, thereby promoting the highest possible level of independence. Canes, walkers, and other assistive devices can often provide significant aid in compensating for handicaps and should be used when feasible (Fig. 24-7). Physical and occupational therapists can be valuable resources in determining appropriate assistive devices for use with specific deficits. Chapter 35 discusses mobility aids in more detail.



A



B



C

FIGURE 24-7 • Self-care devices can help the client with musculoskeletal problems to achieve the maximum independence possible. **(A)** Assistive feeding devices help the client to grasp and get food on the utensils. **(B)** A reacher is a handy device for the client with mobility restrictions. **(C)** A raised toilet seat makes it easier for a person who has trouble lowering him- or herself to the toilet seat to safely use the toilet at home.

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. What obstacles do older adults face when trying to maintain an active state? What aspects of society at large discourage physical activity in older adults?
2. Outline the contents of an exercise education program for a group of healthy senior citizens.
3. List special problems the following older individuals may experience in achieving adequate exercise: a resident of a long-term care facility who has dementia, a depressed widow who lives alone in the community, and a man who must seek re-employment after retiring.
4. Describe how a nurse's attitude toward older adults can affect his or her participation in activities that promote movement.
5. What situations could an older adult encounter during an acute hospitalization that could increase the risk for sustaining a fracture?

Resources

Arthritis Foundation

<http://www.arthritis.org>

International Association of Yoga Therapists

<http://www.iayt.org>

National Arthritis and Musculoskeletal and Skin Diseases Information Clearinghouse

<http://www.nih.gov/niams/>

National Institute of Arthritis and Musculoskeletal and Skin Diseases (NIAMS)

<http://www.niams.nih.gov>

National Osteoporosis Foundation

<http://www.nof.org>

Tai Chi Network

<http://www.taichinetwork.org>

Tai Chi Tao Center

<http://www.taichitaocenter.com>

References

- Adler, P. A., & Roberts, B. L. (2006). The use of Tai Chi to improve health in older adults. *Orthopedic Nursing, 25*(2), 122–126.
- Anders, M., Turner, L., & Wallace, L. S. (2007). Use of decision rules for osteoporosis prevention and treatment: Implications for nurse practitioners. *Journal of American Academy of Nurse Practitioners, 19*(6), 299–305.
- Di Iorio, A., Abate, M., DiRenzo, D., Russolillo, A., Battaglini, C., et al. (2006). Sarcopenia: Age-related skeletal muscle changes from determinants to physical disability. *International Journal of Immunopathology and Pharmacology, 19*(4), 703–719.
- Greenspan, A. I., Wolf, S. L., Kelly, M. E., & O'Grady, M. (2007). Tai chi and perceived health status in older adults

who are transitionally frail: A randomized controlled trial. *Physical Therapy, 87*(5), 525–535.

- Heyward, V. H. (1998). *Advanced fitness assessment & exercise prescription*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.
- Province, M. A., et al. (1995). The effects of exercise on falls in elderly patients. *Journal of the American Medical Association, 273*(17), 1341–1347.
- Sondergaard, B. C., Oestergaard, S., Christiansen, C., Tankó, L. B., & Karsdal, M. A. (2007). The effect of oral calcitonin on cartilage turnover and surface erosion in an ovariectomized rat model. *Arthritis & Rheumatism, 56*(8), 2674–2678.

Recommended Readings

- Alexander, N. B., Galecki, A. T., Grenier, M. L., Nyquist, L. V., Hofmeyer, M. R., et al. (2001). Bed and toilet height as potential environmental risk factors. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society, 49*(11), 1418–1427.
- Allison, M. J., & Keller, C. (2000). Physical activity maintenance in elders with cardiac problems. *Geriatric Nursing, 21*(4), 200–203.
- Borst, S. E. (2004). Interventions for sarcopenia and muscle weakness in older people. *Age and Ageing, 33*(6), 548–555.
- Brach, J. S., Berthold, R., Craik, R., VanSwearingen, J. M., & Newman, A. B. (2001). *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society, 49*(12), 1646–1650.
- Clark, J. P., Hudak, P. L., Hawker, G. A., Coyte, P. C., Mahomed, N. N., et al. (2004). The moving target: A qualitative study of elderly patients' decision-making regarding total joint replacement surgery. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery, 86*(7), 1366–1374.
- Cooper, K. M., Bilbrew, D., Dubbert, P. M., Kerr, K., & Kirchner, K. (2001). Health barriers to walking for exercise in primary care. *Geriatric Nursing, 22*(5), 258–262.
- Cromwell, S. L., & Berg, J. A. (2006). Lifelong physical activity patterns of sedentary Mexican American women. *Geriatric Nursing, 27*(4), 209–213.
- Davis, G. C., & White, T. L. (2000). Planning an osteoporosis education program for older adults in a residential setting. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 26*(1), 16–23.
- Dharmarajan, T. S., Ahmed, S., & Russell, R. O. (2001). Recurrent falls from severe hypocalcemia resulting in nursing home placement: A preventable geriatric problem. *Annals of Long-Term Care, 9*(7), 65–68.
- Edström, E., & Ulfhake, B. (2005). Sarcopenia is not due to lack of regenerative drive in senescent skeletal muscle. *Aging Cell, 4*(2), 65–77.
- Feldt, K. S., & Finch, M. (2002). Older patients with hip fractures: Treatment of pain following hospitalization. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 28*(8), 27–35.
- Field-Munves, E. (2001). Evidence-based decisions for the treatment of osteoporosis. *Annals of Long-Term Care, 9*(3), 70–79.
- Fujita, S., & Volpi, E. (2006). Branched-chain amino acids: Metabolism, physiological function, and application: Session III. Amino acids and muscle loss with aging. *Journal of Nutrition, 136*, 277–280.
- Gaines, J. M., Talbot, L. A., & Metter, E. J. (2002). The relationship of arthritis self-efficacy to functional performance in older men and women with osteoarthritis of the knee. *Geriatric Nursing, 23*(1), 167–170.

- Gates, R., & Whipple, B. (2003). *Outwitting osteoporosis: The smart woman's guide to bone health*. New York: Beyond Words Publication.
- Gielen, S., Schuler, G., & Hambrecht, R. (2001). Benefits of exercise training for patients with chronic heart failure. *Clinical Geriatrics, 9*(4), 32–45.
- Hagberg, J. M., Zmuda, J. M., McCole, S. D., Rodgers, K. S., Ferrell, R. E., et al. (2001). Moderate physical activity is associated with higher bone mineral density in postmenopausal women. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society, 49*(11), 1411–1417.
- Howell, B. (2007). Joint surgery: Paving the way for a smooth recovery. *RN, 70*(1), 32–34, 36–37.
- Jitramontree, N., Tang, J. H., & Titler, M. G. (2001). Evidence-based protocol: Exercise promotion—encouraging older adults to walk. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 27*(10), 7–18.
- Judge, J. O. (2001). Physical activity. *Clinical Geriatrics, 9*(13), 17–18.
- Judge, J. O. (2001). Promoting physical activity in assisted living and long-term care facilities. *Annals of Long-Term Care, 9*(10), 29–37.
- Katzel, L. I., Sorkin, J. D., & Fleg, J. L. (2001). *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society, 49*(12), 1657–1664.
- Kessenich, C. R. (2000). Update on osteoporosis in elderly men. *Geriatric Nursing, 21*(5), 242–244.
- Kobziff, L. (2006). Traumatic pelvic fractures. *Orthopedic Nursing, 25*(4), 235–241.
- Konradi, D. B., & Anglin, L. T. (2003). Walking for exercise self-efficacy appraisal process: Use of a focus group methodology. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 29*(5), 29–37.
- Lin, J. T., & Lane, J. M. (2006). Rehabilitation of the older adult with an osteoporosis-related fracture. *Clinical Geriatric Medicine, 22*(2), 435–437.
- Luskin, F. M., Newell, K. A., Griffith, M., Holmes, M., Telles, S., et al. (2000). A review of mind/body therapies in the treatment of musculoskeletal disorders with implications for the elderly. *Alternative Therapies in Health and Medicine, 6*(2), 46–56.
- Maki, B. E. (1997). Gait changes in older adults: Predictors of falls or indicators of fears? *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society, 45*, 313–320.
- McCaffrey, R., & Locsin, R. (2006). The effect of music on pain and acute confusion in older adults undergoing hip and knee surgery. *Holistic Nursing Practice, 20*(5), 218–224.
- McCarry, K. A., & Cyr, M. G. (2001). Prevention of bone loss and fractures in postmenopausal osteoporosis. *Clinical Geriatrics, 9*(13), 47–56.
- Meyer, G., Warnke, A., Bender, R., et al. (2003). Effect on hip fractures of increased use of hip protectors in nursing homes. *British Medical Journal, 326*(1), 76–80.
- Placide, J., & Martens, M. G. (2003). Comparing screening methods for osteoporosis. *Current Women's Health Report, 3*(3), 207–210.
- Polzien, G. (2006). Care after hip replacement. *Home Healthcare Nurse, 24*(7), 420–422.
- Ramsburg, K. L. (2000). Rheumatoid arthritis. *American Journal of Nursing, 100*(11), 40–43.
- Resnick, B. (2000). Functional performance and exercise of older adults in long-term care settings. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 26*(3), 7–16.
- Rosenberg, H., & Resnick, B. (2003). Exercise intervention in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Geriatric Nursing, 24*(2), 90–98.
- Roth, S. M., Ivey, F. M., Martel, G. F., Lenner, J. T., Hurlbut, D. E., et al. (2001). *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society, 49*(11), 1428–1433.
- Saufl, N., Owens, A., Kelly, I., Merrill, B., & Freyaldenhoeue, L. L. (2007). A multidisciplinary approach to total joint replacement. *Journal of Perianesthesia Nursing, 22*(3), 195–220.
- Sears, J. R., & Ganger, P. M. (2000). Antibiotics to treat RA. *RN, 63*(1), 41–42.
- Swift, C. G. (2006). The role of medical assessment and intervention in the prevention of falls. *Age and Ageing, 35*(9 Supplement 2), ii65–68.
- Thomas, E., Richardson, J. C., Irvine, A., Hassel, A. B., & Hay, E. M. (2003). Osteoporosis: What are the implications of DEXA scanning 'high risk' women in primary care? *Family Practice, 20*(3), 289–293.
- Trivedi, D. P., Doll, R., & Khaw, K. T. (2003). Effect of four monthly oral Vitamin D3 (Cholecalciferol) supplementation on fractures and mortality in men and women living in the community. *British Medical Journal, 2003*(2), 469–474.
- Tsai, P., & Tak, S. (2003). Disease-specific pain measures for osteoarthritis of the knee or hip. *Geriatric Nursing, 24*(2), 106–109.
- Vincent, K., & Braith, R. (2002). Resistance exercise and bone turnover in elderly men and women. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise, 34*(1), 17–23.
- Wolf, L. (2006). Triage and early recognition of significant head injury in the geriatric trauma patient. *Journal of Emergency Nursing, 32*(4), 357–359.
- Zarowitz, B.J. (2006). Management of osteoporosis in older persons. *Geriatric Nursing, 27*(1), 16–18.

CHAPTER 25

Neurologic Function

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Effects of Aging on the Nervous System Neurologic Health Promotion Selected Neurologic Conditions

- Parkinson's Disease
- Transient Ischemic Attacks
- Cerebrovascular Accidents

General Nursing Considerations for Neurologic Conditions

- Promoting Independence
- Preventing Injury

The nervous system has a profound influence on our interaction with the world. A healthy system enables us to sense the pleasures around us, protect ourselves from harm, solve problems, derive intellectual stimulation, interact socially, and communicate our needs, thoughts, and desires. Every aspect of our basic activities of daily living depends on a good neurologic status. Dysfunction of this system has a ripple effect on other systems and can profoundly affect health, safety, normalcy, and general well-being.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 Describe the effects of aging on the nervous system.
- 2 List risk factors for neurologic problems in older adults.
- 3 Describe measures to promote neurologic health in older adults.
- 4 Identify signs and symptoms of neurologic disorders in older adults.
- 5 Describe the symptoms, unique features, and related nursing care for Parkinson's disease, transient ischemic attacks, and cerebrovascular accidents in older adults.
- 6 Discuss actions that promote independence in older persons with neurologic problems.
- 7 Describe measures to reduce the risk of injury in older persons with neurologic problems.

Effects of Aging on the Nervous System

With age, loss of nerve cell mass causes some atrophy of the brain and spinal cord, and brain weight decreases. The number of nerve cells declines, each cell has fewer dendrites, and some demyelination of the cells occurs. These changes slow nerve conduction. Response and reaction times are slower; reflexes become weaker.

Plaques, tangles, and atrophy occur in the brain to varying degrees; there is not always a relationship between these changes and cognitive function. Free radicals accumulate with age and may have a toxic effect on certain nerve cells. Cerebral blood flow decreases about 20% as fatty deposits gradually accumulate in the blood vessels, and decreases are even greater in persons with small-vessel cerebrovascular disease due to diabetes and hypertension; this contributes to an increased risk for strokes. The brain has a greater ability to compensate after injury than does the spinal cord, but this ability to compensate declines with age.

Intellectual performance tends to be maintained until at least age 80, although a slowing in central processing delays the time required to perform tasks. Verbal skills are well maintained until age 70, after which there is a gradual reduction in vocabulary, a tendency to make semantic errors, and abnormal prosody (rhythm and intonation). Other age-related changes in intellectual function are subtle but can be detected as difficulty learning, especially languages, and forgetfulness in noncritical areas.

The general lack of replacement of neurons affects the sensory organs' function, which becomes less acute with age. The number and sensitivity of sensory receptors, dermatomes, and neurons decrease, resulting in dulling of tactile sensation. There is also some decline in the function of cranial nerves mediating taste and smell. Increased levels of taste, sound, scents, touch, and lighting are required for perception by older persons as compared to younger adults.

Neurologic Health Promotion

Many neurologic disorders occur for reasons beyond one's control, but some can be prevented or minimized. For instance, cigarette smoking, obesity, ineffective stress management, elevated cholesterol, and hypertension are significant risk factors for neurovascular disease. The risk of injury to the head and spinal column is increased with unsafe actions, such as failure to use seatbelts, incompetent driving skills, alcohol and drug abuse, and falls. Infections of the ear or sinuses and sexually transmitted infections can lead to neurologic dysfunction. Most of these factors are within an individual's control to prevent. Nurses can educate persons of all ages in preventive measures that promote neurologic health in late life.



KEY CONCEPT

Maintaining weight and cholesterol levels within their ideal range, avoiding cigarette smoking, effectively managing stress, driving safely, and controlling infections can prevent some neurologic conditions.

The close relationship and regular contact nursing staff have with patients puts them in an ideal position to detect new or subtle symptoms of neurologic diseases that otherwise may be missed (Box 25-1). Recognizing symptoms and taking prompt action to ensure that patients are evaluated in a timely manner can help prevent irreversible or serious dysfunction.

In addition, nursing assessment of neurologic function (Assessment Guide 25-1) can help reveal specific problems that warrant intervention. Nursing Diagnosis Table 25-1 lists nursing diagnoses the nurse may identify through assessment.



POINT TO PONDER

Review your health status and lifestyle for risk factors for neurologic disorders. If risks are present, how can you reduce them? ●

BOX 25-1

Subtle Indications of Neurologic Problems

- New headaches that occur in early morning or interrupt sleep
- Change in vision (e.g., sudden decreased acuity, double vision, blindness in portion of visual field)
- Sudden deafness, ringing in ears
- Mood, personality changes
- Altered cognition or level of consciousness
- Clumsiness, unsteady gait
- Numbness, tingling of extremity
- Unusual sensation or pain over nerve



ASSESSMENT GUIDE 25-1

Neurologic Function

GENERAL OBSERVATIONS AND INTERVIEW

Keen observation while interviewing the patient can aid in detecting a variety of neurologic problems:

- On initial inspection of the patient, observe for asymmetry, deformity, weakness, paralysis, and other abnormalities.
- Explore the presence of symptoms of neurologic disorders, such as pain, tingling sensations, numbness, blackouts, headaches, twitching, seizures, dizziness, distortions of reality, weakness, and changes in mental status.
- If clinical abnormalities or symptoms are identified, inquire into their origin, length of time present, and resulting limitations or problems.

SPEECH ASSESSMENT

During something as basic as simple introductions, speech disorders can become evident. If speech problems exist, it is important to differentiate problems with articulation (i.e., dysarthria) and problems with the use of symbols (i.e., dysphagia):

- With dysarthria, the symbols (in this case, words) are used correctly, but speech may be slurred or distorted as a result of poor motor control. Subtle dysarthrias can be disclosed by asking the patient to pronounce the following syllables:

me, me, me (to test the lips)

la, la, la (to test the tongue)

ga, ga, ga (to test the pharynx).

- Dysphasias can be receptive, expressive, or a combination of both:
 - To test for a receptive aphasia, ask the patient to follow a command (e.g., pick up the pencil); the patient's inability to understand what these symbols mean will prevent the command from being followed.
 - The patient with expressive aphasia will be able to understand commands but will not be able to put symbols together into an intelligent speech form. Point to several objects and ask the patient to name them; mild dysphasias (i.e., paraphasia) may be noted if the patient substitutes a close, although inaccurate, word for the right one, such as calling a shoe a boot or a watch a clock.
 - The ability to understand and express oneself through the written word is important to evaluate

also. Ask the patient to write a short sentence that you dictate and to read a sentence from a newspaper. Ensure that the patient has the educational and visual abilities to fulfill these demands.

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

Sensation

Ask the patient to close his or her eyes and to describe the sensations felt. To help document areas where problems are identified, a figure drawing may prove useful.

- Touch various parts of the body (e.g., forehead, cheeks, arms, hands, legs, feet) lightly with your finger or a cotton wisp and note if the patient is able to feel the sensations. Compare analogous areas on both sides of the body and distal and proximal areas on the same extremity.
- If these primary sensations are intact, test the patient's ability to identify two simultaneous stimuli (e.g., touch the right cheek and the left forearm).
- To test cortical sensation (i.e., stereognosis), have the patient, again with closed eyes, identify various objects placed in each hand (e.g., key, marble, coin). The inability to sense these objects is known as astereognosis.

Coordination and Cerebellar Function

- Hold up your finger and ask the patient to touch it and then touch his nose; have the patient continue this action as you move your fingers to different areas. Do this point-to-point testing with both the patient's arms, and note uneven, jerking movements and the inability to touch your finger or his nose.
- To test coordination in the lower extremity, have the patient lie down and run the heel of one foot against the shin of the other leg.
- Test the ability to make rapid alternating movements by having the patient rapidly tap his or her index finger on the thigh or a table surface.
- Tandem walking, in which the patient walks heel to toe as though walking a tightrope, also tests coordination; patients with arthritic deformities may not be able to perform this test. Have weak or poorly coordinated patients hold your hand during the tandem walking test.

Reflexes

Nurses can perform some tests of reflexes:

- To test the corneal reflex, gently touch the cornea with a wisp of clean cotton. Tissue and gauze are too



ASSESSMENT GUIDE 25-1 (Continued)

Neurologic Function

rough and can cause corneal abrasions. Normally, the eye should blink.

- Test the Babinski reflex (i.e., plantar response) by stroking the sole of the patient's foot. Normally the toes should flex; an abnormal response is extension and fanning of the toes.

Additional Tests

Each of the cranial nerves can be tested to identify further problems. Lumbar puncture, cerebral angiography,

pneumoencephalography, and computed tomography scans are among other screening devices used to evaluate neurologic problems. A review of mental status is included in the assessment of the nervous system. (For information on mental status examination, refer to Chapter 32.)

NURSING DIAGNOSIS

TABLE 25-1 Nursing Diagnoses Related to Neurologic Problems

Causes or Contributing Factors	Nursing Diagnosis
Impaired sensory or motor function, fatigue, pain, depression, need for equipment or aids that use energy	Activity Intolerance
Altered self-concept, inability to communicate, dependency	Anxiety
Inability to sense signal, lack of motor control, immobility	Constipation
Poor positioning, pressure on brain, neuritis	Pain
Dysphasia, dysarthria, altered mental status	Impaired Verbal Communication
Altered body structure or function, dependency	Ineffective Coping
Barriers from disabilities	Deficient Diversional Activity
Demands, dependency, and role changes due to patient's illness	Interrupted Family Processes
Altered body structure and function, dependency	Fear
Loss of function, lifestyle change	Anticipatory Grieving
Dependency, disability, altered self-concept	Ineffective Health Maintenance
Disability, dependency, pain, impaired mental status	Impaired Home Maintenance
Immobility, lack of sensation	Risk for Infection
Impaired sensory function, fatigue, altered mental status, improper use of aids, altered mobility or coordination	Risk for Injury
Paralysis, weakness, vertigo, poor coordination	Impaired Physical Mobility
Swallowing disorder, inability to feed self or express desires, depression, altered taste, anorexia	Imbalanced Nutrition: Less Than Body Requirements
Inability to provide adequate oral hygiene	Impaired Oral Mucous Membrane
Dependency, disability, impaired communication, role change	Powerlessness
Weakness, paralysis, poor coordination, visual disorders	Self-Care Deficit
Altered body structure or function, dependency, role change	Chronic Low Self-Esteem
Decreased or lost sensory function, cerebral vascular accident, sensory deprivation	Disturbed Sensory Perception
Impaired nerve supply, disability, altered self-image, depression	Ineffective Sexual Patterns
Altered ability to feel pressure or pain, immobility	Impaired Skin Integrity
Altered body structure or function, dysphasia, dysarthria, visual or hearing deficits, depression, altered self-concept	Impaired Social Interaction
Inability to communicate, disability, impaired mobility	Social Isolation
Cerebrovascular accident, depression, anxiety, fear, altered cerebral function	Disturbed Thought Processes
Lack of sensory awareness to void or ability to control bladder emptying, inability to communicate needs or toilet self	Impaired Urinary Elimination

Selected Neurologic Conditions

Selected neurologic conditions that nurses may see in older adults are discussed in the following sections. A discussion of Alzheimer's disease, a neurodegenerative condition, is provided in Chapter 33, Delirium and Dementia.

Parkinson's Disease

Parkinson's disease affects the ability of the central nervous system (CNS) to control body movements. It occurs when neurons that produce dopamine in the substantia nigra die or become impaired. With the damage of a significant number of these dopamine-producing cells, the symptoms of Parkinson's disease appear.

Parkinson's disease is more common in men and occurs most frequently after the fifth decade of life. The incidence rises with age, although most cases have been diagnosed by the time people reach their seventh decade of life. Although its exact cause is unknown, this disease is thought to be associated with a history of exposure to toxins, encephalitis, and cerebrovascular disease, especially arteriosclerosis. A finding in people with Parkinson's disease compared with individuals who have other causes of tremors is the presence of the Lewy body, an intracellular inclusion body, in the brain. The death of substantia nigra cells within the basal ganglia leads to a significant reduction in dopamine, which is responsible for the symptoms.

A faint tremor in the hands or feet that progresses over a long time may be the first clue of Parkinson's disease (Fig. 25-1). The tremor is reduced when the patient attempts a purposeful movement. Muscle rigidity and weakness develop, evidenced by drooling, difficulty in swallowing, slow speech, and a monotone voice. The patient's face assumes a mask-like appearance, and the skin is moist. Bradykinesia (slow movement) and poor balance occur. Appetite frequently increases, and the person may demonstrate emotional instability. A characteristic sign is a shuffling gait while leaning forward at the trunk. The rate of movement increases as the patient walks, and the patient may not be able to voluntarily stop walking. As the disease progresses, the patient may become entirely unable to ambulate. Secondary symptoms include depression, sleep disturbances, dementia, forced eyelid closure, drooling, dysphagia, constipation, shortness of breath, urinary hesitancy, urgency, and reduced interest in sex.

A variety of measures are used to control the tremors and maintain the highest possible level of independence. Anticholinergics may be prescribed to decrease the patient's symptoms. Nurses need to be aware that anticholinergics can exacerbate glaucoma, warranting close monitoring of the condition

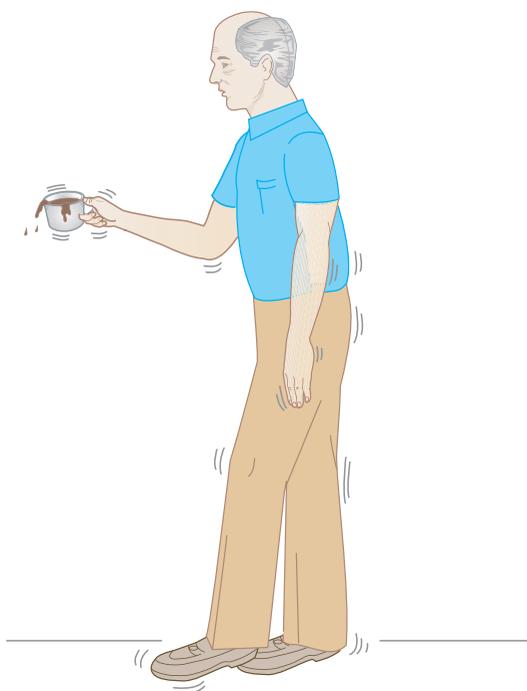


FIGURE 25-1 • Tremors and shuffling gait are characteristic of Parkinson's disease.

when it is present. Also, anticholinergics can cause temporary anuria. Close monitoring during drug therapy is important. While they are taking levodopa, patients should avoid foods that are high in vitamin B6, such as avocados, lentils, and lima beans, because they will counteract the drug; dietary restrictions are not necessary if the patient is taking carbidopa-levodopa (Sinemet). Technology to control symptoms, such as pulse generators that send electrical impulses that block tremor-causing brain signals, drug infusion systems, and gene therapy, may benefit some people who have Parkinson's disease (Senatus et al., 2004; Aebischer & Pralag, 2003); the neurologist should be consulted regarding the potential usefulness to the patient.

Active and passive range-of-motion exercises maintain and improve joint mobility; warm baths and massage may facilitate these exercises and relieve muscle spasms caused by rigidity. Contractures are a particular risk of older persons with Parkinson's disease. Physical and occupational therapists should be actively involved in the exercise program to help the patient find devices that increase self-care ability. Surgical intervention is rare for older patients because they do not tend to respond well.

Tension and frustration will aggravate the patient's symptoms; therefore, it is important for the nurse to offer psychological support and minimize emotional upsets. Teaching helps patients and their families gain realistic insight into the disease. The

nurse should emphasize that the disease progresses slowly and that therapy can minimize disability. Although intellectual functioning may be impaired as the disease progresses, the person with Parkinson's disease cannot be assumed to be cognitively impaired; it is important that others not underestimate the mental abilities of the patient due to the speech problems and helpless appearance, as this can be extremely frustrating and degrading to the patient, who may react by becoming depressed or irritable. Continuing support by the nurse can help the family maximize the patient's mental capacity and understand personality changes that may occur. Communication and mental stimulation should be encouraged on a level that the patient always enjoyed.

As the disease progresses, the patient requires increased assistance. Skillful nursing assessment is essential to ensure that the demands for assistance are met while the maximum level of patient independence is preserved. The nurse should also assess family caregivers for stress and fatigue.

Transient Ischemic Attacks

Transient ischemic attacks (TIAs) are temporary or intermittent neurological events that can result from any situation that reduces cerebral circulation. Hyperextension and flexion of the head, such as when an individual falls asleep in a chair, can impair cerebral blood flow. Reduced blood pressure resulting from anemia and certain drugs (e.g., diuretics and antihypertensives) and cigarette smoking, due to its vasoconstrictive effect, will also decrease cerebral circulation, as will sudden standing from a prone position. Hemiparesis, hemianesthesia, aphasia, unilateral loss of vision, diplopia, vertigo, nausea, vomiting, and dysphagia are among the manifestations of a TIA, depending on the location of the ischemic area. These signs can last from minutes to hours, and complete recovery is usual within a day. Treatment may consist of correction of the underlying cause, anticoagulant therapy, or vascular reconstruction. A significant concern regarding TIAs is that they increase the patient's risk of sustaining a cerebrovascular accident (CVA).



KEY CONCEPT

Good alignment and support of the head and neck can prevent hyperextension and flexion of the head that can lead to impaired cerebral blood flow.

Cerebrovascular Accidents

CVAs are the third leading cause of death in older adults. Older persons with hypertension, severe arteriosclerosis, diabetes, gout, anemia, hypothy-

roidism, silent myocardial infarction, TIAs, and dehydration and those who smoke are among the high-risk candidates for a CVA. Although a ruptured cerebral blood vessel could be responsible for this problem, most CVAs in older individuals are caused by partial or complete cerebral thrombosis. Light-headedness, dizziness, headache, drop attack (feeling of being strongly and suddenly pulled to the ground), and memory and behavioral changes are some of the warning signs of a CVA. A drop attack is a fall caused by a complete muscular flaccidity in the legs but with no alteration in consciousness. Patients describing or demonstrating these symptoms should be referred for prompt medical evaluation. Because nurses are in a key position to first learn of these signs, they can be instrumental in helping the patient avoid disability or death from a stroke. CVAs can occur without warning, however, and show highly variable signs and symptoms, depending on the area of the brain affected. Major signs tend to include hemiplegia, aphasia, and hemianopsia.

Although older adults have a higher mortality rate from CVAs than the young, those who do survive have a good chance of recovery. Good nursing care can improve the patient's chance of survival and minimize the limitations that impair a full recovery. In the acute phase, nursing efforts have the following aims:

- Maintain a patent airway.
- Provide adequate nutrition and hydration.
- Monitor neurologic and vital signs.
- Prevent complications associated with immobility.

In addition, unconscious patients need good skin care and frequent turning because they are more susceptible to pressure ulcer formation. If an indwelling catheter is not being used, it is important for the nurse to examine the patient for indications of an overdistended bladder and promptly remedy the situation if it occurs. The eyes of the unconscious patient may remain open for a long time, risking drying, irritation, and ulceration of the cornea. Corneal damage can be prevented by eye irrigations with a sterile saline solution followed by the use of sterile mineral oil eye drops. Eye pads may be used to help keep the eyelids closed; these are changed daily and frequently checked to make sure the lids are actually closed. Regular mouth care and range-of-motion exercises are also standard measures.



POINT TO PONDER

How would your life and the lives of your family members be affected if you suffered a stroke? ●

When the patient regains consciousness and stabilizes, more active nursing efforts can focus on rehabilitation. It may be extremely difficult for patients to understand and participate in their rehabilitation because of speech, behavior, and memory problems. Although these problems vary depending on the side of the brain affected, some general observations can be noted. Attention span is reduced, and long, complicated directions may be confusing. Memory for old events may be intact, whereas recent events or explanations are forgotten, a characteristic demonstrated by many older persons without a history of CVA. Patients may have difficulty transferring information from one situation to another. For example, they may be able to remember the steps in lifting from the bed to the wheelchair but be unable to apply the same principles in moving from the wheelchair to an armchair. Confusion, restlessness, and irritability may arise from sensory deprivation. Emotional lability may also be a problem. To minimize the limitations imposed by these problems, the nurse may find the following actions helpful:

- Talk to the patient during routine activities.
- Briefly explain the basics of what has occurred, the procedures being performed, and the activities to expect.
- Speak distinctly but do not shout.
- Devise an easy means of communication, such as a picture chart to which one can point.
- Minimize environmental noise, traffic, and clutter.
- Aim for consistency of those providing care and of care activities.
- Use objects familiar to patients (e.g., their own clothing, clock, etc.).
- Keep a calendar or sign in the room showing the day and date.
- Supply sensory stimulation through conversation, radio, television, wall decorations, and objects for patients to handle.
- Provide frequent positive feedback; even a minor task may be a major achievement for the patient.
- Expect and accept errors and failures.

General medical-surgical textbooks provide more detailed guidance in the care of patients who have suffered a stroke. Local chapters of the American Heart Association also provide much useful material for the nurse, the patient, and the family on the topic of stroke. Nursing Care Plan 25-1 outlines care plan considerations for the patient who is recovering from a stroke.

Nurses should also promote activities that reduce patients' risk of stroke. Managing hypertension is important in decreasing fatal and non-fatal strokes in older adults. Likewise, smoking cessation is helpful. Older persons who stop

smoking could improve cerebral perfusion levels, which is an important measure in preventing strokes.



KEY CONCEPT

Controlling hypertension is important in reducing stroke risk in older adults.

General Nursing Considerations for Neurologic Conditions

Promoting Independence

Older patients with neurologic conditions face limitations imposed both by the disease and the aging process. Skillful and creative nursing assistance can help patients achieve maximum levels of independence. Some assistive devices—such as rails in the hallways, grab bars in bathrooms, and numerous other household modifications—can extend the time that patients can live independently in the community. Periodic home visits by a nurse, regular contact with a family member or friend, and a daily call from a local telephone reassurance program can help the patient feel confident and protected, which promotes independence. Although these individuals may perform tasks awkwardly and slowly, family members need to understand that allowing independent function is physically and psychologically more beneficial than doing tasks for them. Continuing patience, reassurance, and encouragement are essential to maximize patients' capacities for independence.

Personality changes often accompany neurologic problems. Patients may become depressed as they realize their limitations and become frustrated by their need to be dependent on others. They may grieve loss of former roles and identities. Their reactions may be displaced and evidenced by irritability toward others, often their loved ones or immediate caregivers. Family members and caregivers may need help in understanding the reasons for this behavior and in learning effective ways of dealing with it. Getting offended or angry at such patients may only anger or frustrate them further. Understanding, patience, and tolerance are needed.



KEY CONCEPT

Caregivers should be prepared for the personality changes that often occur in individuals who have neurologic disorders; caregivers may benefit from nursing support also.

NURSING CARE PLAN 25-1

The Older Adult With a Cerebrovascular Accident: Convalescence Period

Nursing Diagnoses: (1) Self-care Deficits related to sensory or motor impairment, visual deficits, fatigue, aphasia; (2) Activity Intolerance related to depression, poor motivation, prolonged immobility, fatigue

Goal

The patient progressively increases independence in activities of daily living (ADL).

Nursing Actions

- Assess patient's independence-dependence in each of the ADL.
- Assess cognition and emotional status; repeat monthly or whenever there is a change in physical or mental status.
- Consult with physical therapist (PT) and develop plans for exercises, transfer techniques, and mobility aids.
- Consult with occupational therapist (OT) and develop plans for measures to improve independence in ADL and adaptive or assistive equipment.
- Ensure that patient properly uses mobility aids and adaptive or assistive equipment.
- Encourage patient to use existing capabilities and recognize efforts to be independent.
- Offer assistance with ADL as needed; ensure that caregivers provide adequate time for tasks to be performed by patient when possible.
- Monitor nutritional status, intake, and output.
- Review patient's progress regularly with multidisciplinary team, patient, and family.

Nursing Diagnosis: Impaired Physical Mobility related to altered sensory and motor function

Goals

The patient is free from complications related to immobility; progressively increases independent mobility.

Nursing Actions

- Determine active and passive range of motion of every joint; reassess at least monthly.
- Guide patient through range-of-motion exercises at least three times each day; provide assistance as needed.
- Use isometric, resistance, muscle-setting exercises if possible.
- Ensure that patient is properly positioned and maintained in proper alignment.
- Establish the amount of time patient can remain in one position before showing indications of pressure. To do this, check the patient's skin after he or she has been in the same position for half an hour; if no redness is noted, increase amount of time patient remains in position by half hour increments up to 2 hours. Develop a repositioning schedule based on the amount of time the patient has been assessed to be able to remain in a position without redness of tissues.
- Instruct patient to cough and deep breathe at least every 2 hours.
- Encourage adequate fluid intake and a high-fiber intake, unless contraindicated.
- Use massage, lotion, or protective padding as needed to protect skin integrity.
- Assist patient with proper use of mobility aids.
- Consult with PT regarding ways to increase mobility.
- Monitor progress and give feedback to patient.

Nursing Diagnoses: (1) Ineffective Role Performance related to loss of body function, physical changes, role changes; (2) Interrupted Family Process related to changes in function, dependency on family for caregiving, ineffective coping

NURSING CARE PLAN 25-1 (CONTINUED)

Goals

The patient expresses acceptance of altered lifestyle and functions; develops or maintains satisfying interactions with family.

Nursing Actions

- Interview patient and family to identify patient's previous interests, roles, and functions; assess patient's ability or readiness to resume activities.
- Identify and implement measures to enable patient to engage in previous interests, roles, and functions with modifications.
- Acknowledge patient's frustrations with altered capabilities; encourage expression of feelings.
- Encourage patient to participate in family and social functions in community; assist patient and family in identifying measures and aids to facilitate activities.
- Monitor patient's mood; intervene if problems are noted.
- Confer with family regarding their feelings and needs; plan accordingly.

Consider This Case

Mr. J, age 68 years, experienced a cerebrovascular accident one week ago that left him with right-sided weakness, aphasia, and incontinence. His wife is eager to have him discharged from the hospital and to care for him at home. You have heard her state to Mr. J that he “needn’t worry about a thing because she’ll do everything that needs to be done and all he has to do is stay in bed and take it easy.”

THINK CRITICALLY

- Based on the information provided, what problems face Mr. and Mrs. J?
- What goals for the care plan will help them address their needs?

Preventing Injury

Protecting older adults with a neurologic disorder from hazards is particularly important. Uncoordinated movements, weakness, and dizziness are among the problems that cause these patients to be at high risk for accidents. Whether in a health facility setting or the patient's own home in the community, the nurse should scrutinize the environment for potential sources of mishaps, such as loose carpeting, poorly lit stairwells, clutter, and ill-functioning appliances, as well as the lack of fire warning systems, fire escapes, tub rails, nonslip tub surfaces, or other safeguards. Safety considerations also include the prevention of contractures, pressure ulcers, and other risks to health and well-being. Allowing preventable complications to hamper progress and compound disability is an injustice to the patient.

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. Outline the content of a health education program to instruct older adults on practices that could reduce their risks of neurologic problems.
2. What factors will worsen the symptoms of the patient with Parkinson's disease? What sugges-

tions could you give caregivers to promote maximum function of this patient?

3. What resources exist in your community to assist patients with Parkinson's disease, stroke, or other neurologic disorders?

Resources

American Heart Association Stroke Connection

<http://www.strokeassociation.org>

American Parkinson Disease Association

<http://www.apdaparkinson.org>

Epilepsy Foundation of America

<http://www.efa.org>

Michael J. Fox Foundation for Parkinson's Research

<http://www.michaeljfox.org>

National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke

<http://www.ninds.nih.gov>

National Multiple Sclerosis Society

<http://www.nmss.org>

National Parkinson Foundation

<http://www.parkinson.org>

National Stroke Association

<http://www.stroke.org>

Paralyzed Veterans of America

<http://www.pva.org>

Parkinson Alliance

<http://www.parkinsonalliance.org>

Parkinson's Action Network (PAN)

<http://www.parkinsonsaction.org>

Parkinson's Disease Foundation (PDF)

<http://www.pdf.org>

Parkinson's Institute

<http://www.thepi.org>

Parkinson's Resource Organization

<http://www.parkinsonsresource.org>

WE MOVE (Worldwide Education & Awareness for Movement Disorders)

<http://www.wemove.org>

References

- Aebischer, P., & Pralag, W. (2003). Gene therapy approaches for Parkinson's disease. *Journal of Neurochemistry*, 85(6 Suppl 2), 8.
- Senatus, P. B., McClelland, S. 3rd, Ferris, A. D., Ford, B., Winfield, L. M., et al. (2004). Implantation of bilateral deep brain stimulators in patients with Parkinson disease and preexisting cardiac pacemakers. Report of two cases. *Journal of Neurology*, 101(6), 1073–1077.

Recommended Readings

- Alverzo, J. P. (2005). Predictors of disorientation among brain injury and stroke patients during rehabilitation. *Rehabilitation Nursing*, 30(6), 230–238.
- Appel, S. J., Moore, T. M., & Giger, J. N. (2006). An overview and update on the metabolic syndrome: Implications for identifying cardiometabolic risk among African-American women. *Journal of the National Black Nurses Association*, 17(2), 47–62.
- Boysen, G. (2001). Prevention of recurrent stroke in the elderly. *Annals of Long-Term Care*, 9(9), 21–26.
- Bunting-Perry, L. K. (2006). Palliative care in Parkinson's disease: Implications for neuroscience nursing. *Journal of Neuroscience Nursing*, 38(2), 106–113.

- Coombs, U. E. (2007). Spousal caregiving for stroke survivors. *Journal of Neuroscience Nursing*, 39(2):112–119.
- Habermann, B., & Davis, L. L. (2006). Lessons learned from a Parkinson's disease caregiver intervention pilot study. *Applied Nursing Research*, 19(4), 212–215.
- Harper, J. P. (2007). Emergency nurses' knowledge of evidence-based ischemic stroke care: A pilot study. *Journal of Emergency Nursing*, 33(3), 202–207.
- Hilton, E. L. (2002). The meaning of stroke in elderly women: A phenomenological investigation. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 28(7), 19–26.
- Hinkle, J. (2005). An update on transient ischemic attacks. *Journal of Neuroscience Nursing*, 37(5), 243–248.
- Kalra, L. (2001). Approaches to organization of stroke care: A review. *Clinical Geriatrics*, 9(13), 33–42.
- Kautz, D. D. (2007). Hope for love: Practical advice for intimacy and sex after stroke. *Rehabilitation Nursing*, 32(3), 95–103.
- Libster, M. (2002). *Delmar's integrative herb guide for nurses* (p. 590). Albany, NY: Delmar.
- Mathiesen, C., Taviani, H. D., & Palladino, K. (2006). Best practices in stroke rapid response: A case study. *Med-Surg Nursing*, 15(6), 364–369.
- Miller, J. L. (2002). Parkinson's disease primer. *Geriatric Nursing*, 23(1), 69–73.
- Peiffer, K. M. (2007). Brain death and organ procurement. *American Journal of Nursing*, 107(3), 58–67.
- Phillips, L. J. (2006). Dropping the bomb: The experience of being diagnosed with Parkinson's disease. *Geriatric Nursing*, 27(6), 362–369.
- Shastry, B. S. (2002). Therapeutic options for Parkinson's disease. *Drugs Today*, 38(6), 445–451.
- Snyder, C. H., & Adler, C. H. (2007). The patient with Parkinson's disease: Part I-Treating the motor symptoms; Part II-Treating the nonmotor symptoms. *Journal of the American Academy of Nurse Practitioners*, 19(4), 179–197.
- Thomure, A. (2006). Helping your patient manage Parkinson's disease. *Nursing 2006*, 36(8), 20–21.
- Tinter, R., & Jankovic, J. (2001). Assessment and treatment of Parkinson's disease in the elderly. *Clinical Geriatrics*, 9(1), 62–74.
- Vacca, V. M. (2007). Acute paraplegia. *Nursing 2007*, 37(6), 64.
- Verghese, J., LeValley, A., Hall, C. B., Katz, M.J., Ambrose, A. F. & Lipton, R. B. (2006). Epidemiology of gait disorders in community-residing older adults. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*, 54(2), 255–261.

CHAPTER 26

Sensation

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Effects of Aging on Sensory Function Sensory Health Promotion

- Promoting Vision
- Promoting Hearing
- Assessing Problems

Selected Sensory Conditions and Related Nursing Interventions

- Visual Deficits
- Hearing Deficits

General Nursing Considerations for Sensory Deficits

Good sensory function is an extremely valuable asset that often is taken for granted. For instance, people are better able to protect themselves from harm when they can see, hear, smell, touch, and communicate. The reduced ability to protect oneself from hazards because of sensory deficits can result in serious falls from unseen obstacles, missed alarms and warnings, ingestion of hazardous substances from not recognizing bad tastes, an inability to detect the odor of smoke or gas, and burns and skin breakdown because of decreased cutaneous sensation of excessive temperature and pressure.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 Explain the importance of sensory function and the impact of sensory deficits on older adults.
- 2 Describe the effects of aging on sensory function.
- 3 List measures to promote healthy sensory function in older adults.
- 4 Identify signs of and nursing interventions for older adults with cataracts, glaucoma, macular degeneration, detached retina, corneal ulcers, and hearing impairment.

Intact senses also facilitate accurate perception of the environment. When sensory function is impaired, perception of the environment is distorted (e.g., people might suspect they are being talked about if they are unable to hear the conversation of those around them). Impaired sensory function affects everyday experiences. For example, poor eyesight can hamper reading the newspaper and recognizing a familiar face on the street. Food tastes bland without properly functioning taste buds. The pleasant experience of smelling freshly cut flowers is lost when olfactory functioning is poor.

Finally, sensory function is essential to communication. Social interaction, the sharing of experiences, and the exchange of feelings are more complete when all the senses can participate. Through communication, people share joys and burdens, derive feelings of normalcy, validate perceptions, and maintain a link with reality.



POINT TO PONDER

How would being blind or deaf affect your daily life? What reactions do you think you would experience? ●

A variety of intrinsic and extrinsic factors, including alterations during the aging process, excessive use and abuse of certain medications, and the disease processes that affect all age groups, contribute to the sensory problems of older adults. Sensory deficits compound other problems that threaten the health, well-being, and independence of older persons—their increased vulnerability to accidents, their social isolation and declining physical function, and many other limitations regarding self-care activities. Gerontological nurses must be aware of the factors that influence sensory function in older adults and help to ensure that sensory problems are properly evaluated and corrected when possible.

Effects of Aging on Sensory Function

One of the most significant areas of changes that occur with age are those affecting vision. The reduced elasticity of the lens that begins in the fourth decade of life interferes with the ability to adequately focus and is the factor responsible for most older people's requiring some form of corrective lenses; this condition is known as *presbyopia*. Visual acuity progressively declines due to reduced pupil size, opacification of the lens and vitreous, and loss of photoreceptor cells in the retina. The light perception threshold decreases causing difficulty with vision at night and in dimly lit areas.

Dark and light adaptation takes longer. Sensitivity to glare increases due to cataract formation. Visual changes cause depth perception to become distorted, making the ability to judge the height of walking surfaces more challenging.

Approximately half of all individuals who are identified as legally blind each year are 65 years of age or older. Visual limitations can make communication problematic because facial expressions and gestures, which are as important as the words themselves, may be missed or misinterpreted. Lip reading to compensate for hearing deficits may be difficult, and written correspondence may be limited because independent reading and writing become almost impossible tasks. Remaining aware of current events through newspapers and socialization through playing cards and other games may be hampered.

Hearing changes are also common and may negatively impact communication. Presbycusis (age-related sensorineural hearing loss) may cause speech to be inaudible or distorted, as can impacted cerumen, which is a common problem in older adults. Older people may be self-conscious of this limitation and avoid situations in which they must interact. In turn, others may avoid them because of this difficulty. Telephone conversations can be affected by this problem, limiting social contact even further for the individual who may be socially isolated for other reasons. Approximately 10% of the older population has some difficulty hearing telephone conversations. Assessing the underlying cause of a hearing problem through professional evaluation, including an audiometric examination, is the first step in management or correction of the problem.



POINT TO PONDER

Cellular phones have widespread use. In what ways do you believe these have both facilitated and impaired communication? ●

In addition to the changes affecting vision and hearing, other sensations are also reduced with age. The number of functioning taste buds may be significantly decreased, especially those responsible for sweet and salty flavors. Pressure is not sensed as easily in late life. Age-related effects on tactile sensation may also be noted by the difficulty some older persons have in discriminating between temperatures. Some loss of olfactory function may be noted as well.

Sensory Health Promotion

Promoting Vision

Despite age-related changes, the majority of older persons have sufficient visual capacity to meet

BOX 26-1 Nutrients Beneficial to Vision

Zinc: Promotes normal visual capacity and adaptation to dark; supplementation can reduce visual loss in macular degeneration; deficiency can facilitate cataract development.

Selenium: May aid in preventing cataracts; supplementation with vitamin E can reduce visual loss in macular degeneration.

Vitamin C: Promotes normal vision; supplementation may improve vision in persons with cataracts.

Vitamin A: Maintains healthy rods and cones in retina.

Vitamin E: May aid in preventing cataracts; supplementation in large doses can prevent macular degeneration.

Riboflavin: Aids in preventing cataracts.

Ginkgo biloba: May prevent degenerative changes in eye.

Flavonoid: Improves night vision and adaptation to dark; promotes visual acuity; improves capillary integrity to reduce hemorrhage risk in diabetic retinopathy.

normal self-care demands with the assistance of corrective lenses. Serious visual problems can develop, however, and should be recognized early to prevent significant visual damage. Routine and thorough eye examinations, including tonometry, by an ophthalmologist are important in detecting and treating eye problems early in older individuals. The nurse should stress the importance of an annual eye examination, not only to detect vision changes and needs for alterations in corrective lenses but also for early discovery of problems, such as cataracts, glaucoma, and other disease processes. The nurse must also evaluate the older adult's financial ability to afford an eye examination and glasses because health insurance seldom covers this important service; community resources or the negotiation of special payment plans may help older adults to acquire the necessary aid. Medicare may cover eye examinations for people who have or are at risk for certain conditions.

In addition to annual eye examinations, prompt evaluation is required for any symptom that could indicate a visual problem, including burning or pain in the eye, blurred or double vision, redness of the conjunctiva, spots, headaches, and any other change in vision. The nurse should review the diet to ensure an adequate intake of nutrients that promote good vision (Box 26-1). A variety of disorders can threaten the older individual's vision. For instance, arteriosclerosis and diabetes can cause damage to the retina, and nutritional deficiencies and hypertension can result in visual impairment. Refer to the sections of this book that describe these diseases to understand the pathophysiology involved.

Promoting Hearing

Gerontological nurses have a responsibility to help aging persons protect and preserve their hearing as well. Some hearing deficits in old age can be avoided by good care of the ears throughout life. Such care

should include prompt and complete treatment of ear infections, prevention of trauma to the ear (e.g., from a severe blow or a foreign object in the ear), and regular audiometric examinations.

The nurse should examine an older adult's ears frequently for cerumen accumulation. Cerumen removal can be aided by gentle irrigation of the external auditory canal with warm water or a hydrogen peroxide and water solution; commercial preparations also are available. A forceful stream of solution should not be used during this procedure because it can cause perforation of the eardrum. It is wise for older persons to have assistance when irrigating ears because dizziness often occurs during the procedure. Even allowing water to run in the ears during showers or shampoos can aid in loosening cerumen. Avoid the use of cotton-tipped applicators for cerumen removal, because they can push the cerumen back into the ear canal and cause an impaction. Hairpins or similar devices should never be used.

KEY CONCEPT

Ear irrigations can help to remove cerumen accumulations; however, care must be taken to protect the older person from the potential dizziness associated with this procedure.

In addition, it is beneficial for nurses to provide health education about the effects of environmental noise on hearing and general health. Protection from exposure to loud noises, such as those associated with factory and construction work, vehicles, loud music or drums, and explosions is important throughout life; earplugs or other sound-reducing devices should be used when exposure is unavoidable. Nurses can take an active role in advocating legislation to control noise pollution and the enforcement of that legislation.

Assessing Problems

Because it is the rare older individual who does not suffer from some sensory deficit, it behooves the nurse working with older adults to be skilled in assessing sensory function (Assessment Guide 26-1); to ensure that sensory problems are properly evaluated; and to implement associated assistive techniques to promote maximum sensory functioning. Nursing Diagnosis Table 26-1 lists some of the nursing diagnoses associated with sensory deficits.

Selected Sensory Conditions and Related Nursing Interventions

Visual Deficits

Cataracts

A cataract is a clouding of the lens or its capsule that causes the lens to lose its transparency. Cataracts are common in older people because everyone develops some degree of lens opacity as they age. In fact,

cataracts are the leading cause of low vision in older adults. Exposure to ultraviolet B increases the risk of developing cataracts, emphasizing the importance of wearing proper sunglasses to protect the eyes. Most older adults do have some degree of lens opacity with or without the presence of other eye disorders.



KEY CONCEPT

Everyone develops some degree of lens opacity with age, although it is more severe in persons who have had significant exposure to sunlight.

Symptoms No discomfort or pain is associated with cataracts. At first, visual acuity is not affected, but as opacification continues, vision is distorted, night vision is decreased, and objects appear blurred. People may have trouble seeing street signs while driving and feel that there is a film over the eye. Eventually, lens opacity and vision loss are complete. Glare from sunlight and bright lights is extremely bothersome to the affected person; this is due to the



ASSESSMENT GUIDE 26-1 Sensory Function

GENERAL OBSERVATIONS

During interactions with the patient, note signs of hearing deficits such as missed communication, requests to have words repeated, reliance on lip reading, and cocking of the head to one side in an effort to hear better. Identify eye problems by noticing if the patient uses eyeglasses, demonstrates difficulty seeing (e.g., bumping into objects, unable to see small print), or possesses eye abnormalities such as drooping eyelids, discolored sclera, excess tearing, discharge, and unusual movements of the eyes. Foul odors (e.g., associated with incontinence or vaginitis) that do not seem to bother the patient could reflect diminished olfactory function; cigarette burns on finger or unrecognized pressure ulcers may indicate that the patient has reduced ability to sense pressure and pain.

INTERVIEW

- Ask the patient about the date and type of the last ophthalmic and audiometric examinations (e.g., Where was the examination done? Was an ophthalmologist or optometrist seen? Did the eye examination include tonometry? Was a full audiometric evaluation or basic hearing screening done?).
- If eyeglasses or hearing aids are used, ask questions about where, when, and how these appliances were obtained (e.g., reading glasses purchased from the local pharmacy versus prescription glasses; hearing aid obtained via television advertisement).
- Ask questions such as the following to disclose the presence of sensory problems:
 - “Has there been any change in your vision? Please describe.”
 - “Are your glasses as useful to you as they were when you first obtained them?”
 - “Do you experience pain, burning, or itching in the eyes?”
 - “Do you ever see spots floating across your eyes? How often does this happen and how large and numerous are the spots?”
 - “Do you ever see flashes of light or halos?”
 - “Are your eyes ever unusually dry or watery?”
 - “Do you have difficulty with vision at night, in dimly lit areas, or in bright areas?”
 - “Does anyone in your family have glaucoma or other eye problems?”
 - “Have you noticed any change in your ability to hear? Please describe.”
 - “Are certain sounds more difficult for you to hear than others?”
 - “Do you ever experience pain, itching, ringing, or a sense of fullness in your ears?”



ASSESSMENT GUIDE 26-1 (Continued)

Sensory Function

- “Do your ears accumulate a lot of wax? How do you manage this?”
- “Is there ever drainage from your ears?”
- “Is your sense of smell as keen as it was in earlier years? Describe any differences.”
- “Do you have any problems or have you noticed changes in your ability to feel pain, pressure, or different temperatures?”

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

Eyes

- Inspect the eyes for unusual structure, drooping eyelids, discoloration, and abnormal movement. Loss of elasticity around the eyes, indicated by bags, is a common finding. Black-skinned persons may normally have a slight yellow discoloration of the sclera. Note any lesions on the eyelids.
- Palpation of the eyeballs with the eyelids closed can reveal hard-feeling eyes with extremely elevated intraocular pressure and spongy-feeling eyes with fluid volume deficits.
- Perform a gross evaluation of visual acuity by having the patient read a Snellen chart or various-sized lettering on a newspaper. If the patient is unable to see letters on the chart or newspaper, estimate the extent of the visual limitation by determining if the patient is able to see fingers held up before him or can merely make out figures.
- If the patient has restrictions in seeing all portions of the visual field, review the exact nature of this problem. A blind spot in the visual field (i.e., scotoma) can occur with macular degeneration, a narrowing of the peripheral field may be associated with glaucoma, and blindness in the same half of both eyes

(i.e., homonymous hemianopia) can be present in persons who have experienced a cerebrovascular accident.

- Test extraocular movements by having the patient follow your finger as you move it to various points, horizontally and vertically. Irregular, jerking eye movements can result from disturbances in cranial nerves III, IV, or VI.

Ears

- Inspection of the ears usually shows cerumen accumulation, increased hair growth, and atrophy of the tympanic membrane, which causes it to appear white or gray.
- Cerumen impactions should be noted and removed.
- A small, crusted, ulcerated lesion on the pinna can be a sign of basal or squamous cell carcinoma.
- Perform a gross evaluation of hearing by determining the patient’s ability to hear a watch ticking. Check both ears.
- Weber and Rinne tests can be performed to assess sounds at different frequencies. These tests involve placing a vibrating tuning fork next to the ear or against the skull; this will stimulate the inner ear to vibrate. The Rinne tuning fork test helps evaluate a patient’s hearing ability by air conduction compared to that of bone conduction. The Weber tuning fork test helps determine a patient’s hearing ability by bone conduction only, and is useful when hearing loss is asymmetrical.
- In addition to presbycusis and conductive hearing losses, ear or upper respiratory infections, ototoxic drugs, and diabetes can be responsible for diminishing hearing.

cloudy lens causing light to scatter more than it would in a clear lens. Nuclear sclerosis develops, causing the lens of the eye to become yellow or yellow-brown; eventually the color of the pupil changes from black to a cloudy white. Some individuals may report an improvement in the ability to see small print and objects (“second sight”), which is due to changes in the lens that increase nearsightedness.

Treatment and Cataract Surgery Although surgery to remove the lens is the only cure for a cataract, cataracts affect people differently. Therefore, the need for surgery must be assessed based on an individual’s unique situation. Patients with a single cataract may not necessarily undergo surgery if vision in the other eye is good, and these individu-

als should concentrate on strengthening their existing visual capacity, reducing their limitations, and using the safety measures applicable to any visually impaired person (Box 26-2). Sunglasses, sheer curtains over windows, furniture placed away from bright light, and several soft lights instead of a single bright light source minimize annoyance from glare. It is beneficial to place items within the visual field of the unaffected eye, a consideration when preparing a food tray and arranging furniture and frequently used objects. Regular evaluations of the patient by an ophthalmologist are essential to detect changes or a new problem in the unaffected eye.

For most patients, surgery improves vision. Cataract surgery is an outpatient procedure and older

NURSING DIAGNOSIS

TABLE 26-1 Nursing Diagnoses Associated with Sensory Deficits

Causes or Contributing Factors	Nursing Diagnosis
Sensory deprivation or overload, impaired communication	Activity Intolerance
Impaired communication, altered self-concept, reduced ability to protect self	Anxiety
Acute glaucoma, corneal ulcer, detached retina	Acute Pain
Hearing deficit	Impaired Verbal Communication
Impaired vision or hearing	Diversional Activity Deficit
Visual deficits, inability to protect self	Impaired Home Maintenance
Reduced tactile sensations	Risk for Infection
Inability to see, hear, smell, or feel hazards	Risk for Injury
Inability to protect self, care for self, communicate	Powerlessness
Visual disorders	Self-Care Deficit
Dependency, impaired interactions, altered self-concept	Disturbed Body Image
Impairment of any of the sensory organs	Sensory-Perceptual Alterations
Reduced tactile sensations	Impaired Skin Integrity
Misperception of environment	Disturbed Sleep Pattern
Visual or hearing deficits	Impaired Social Interaction
Visual or hearing deficits, frustration of patient or others in attempting to communicate	Social Isolation
Misperceptions or sensory deprivation due to altered sensory function	Disturbed Thought Processes

people usually withstand it well. Gerontological nurses are in a position to reassure older patients and their families that age is no deterrent to cataract surgery. Patients typically can resume nonstrenuous activities within a day. The simple surgical procedure and several weeks of rehabilitation can result in years of improved vision and, consequently, a life of higher quality. Two types of surgical procedures are used for removing the lens. Intracapsular extraction is the surgical procedure of choice for the older patient with cataracts and consists of removing the lens and the capsule. Extracapsular extraction is a simple surgical procedure in which the lens is removed and the posterior capsule is left in place. A common problem

with extracapsular extraction is that a secondary membrane may form, requiring an additional procedure for discission of the membrane.

The most common method of replacing the surgically removed lens is the insertion of an intraocular lens at the time of cataract surgery. For older patients, this method has been more successful than adjusting to a contact lens or special cataract glasses. The intraocular lens tends to distort vision less than cataract glasses do and does not require the care of a contact lens. Some patients do develop complications with a lens implant, such as eye infection, loss of vitreous humor, and slipping of the implant.

BOX 26-2 Measures to Compensate for Visual Deficits in Older Adults

- Face the person when speaking.
- Use several soft indirect lights instead of a single glaring one.
- Avoid glare from windows by using sheer curtains or stained windows.
- Use large-print reading material.
- Place frequently used items within the visual field.
- Avoid the use of low-tone colors and attempt to use bright ones.
- Use contrasting colors on doorways and stairs and for changes in levels.
- Identify personal belongings and differentiate the room and wheelchair with a unique design rather than by letters or numbers.

Glaucoma

Glaucoma is a degenerative eye disease in which the optic nerve is damaged from an above-normal intraocular pressure (IOP). It ranks after cataracts as a major eye problem in older persons and is the second leading cause of blindness in this population, accounting for 10% of all blindness in the United States. Glaucoma tends to occur in people over age 40 and increases in prevalence with age. Black individuals tend to develop glaucoma at earlier ages than whites and have a significantly higher incidence. Although the exact cause is unknown, glaucoma can be associated with increased size of the lens, iritis, allergy, endocrine imbalance, emotional instability, and a family history of this disorder. Drugs with anticholinergic properties can exacerbate glaucoma due to their effects of dilating the pupil. An increase in IOP occurs rapidly in acute glaucoma and gradually in chronic glaucoma.

Acute Glaucoma With acute glaucoma, also called angle-closure or narrow-angle, glaucoma, the patient experiences severe eye pain, headache, nausea, and vomiting. In addition to the rapid increased tension within the eyeball, edema of the ciliary body and dilation of the pupil occur. Vision becomes blurred, and blindness will result if this problem is not corrected within a day. The ophthalmologist will examine the eye with an ophthalmoscope and conduct a visual field test (perimetry). Diagnosis is confirmed by placing a tonometer on the anesthetized cornea to measure IOP (Fig. 26-1). The normal pressure is within 20 mm Hg. A reading between 20 to 25 mm Hg is considered potential glaucoma. Another diagnostic test (i.e., gonioscopy) uses a contact lens and a binocular microscope to allow direct examination of the anterior chamber and differentiate closed-angle from open-angle glaucoma. In the past, if IOP did not decline within 24 hours, surgical intervention would be necessary. However, medications are now effective in treating the acute attack (e.g., carbonic anhydrase inhibitors, which reduce the formation of aqueous solution; mannitol, urea, or glycerin, which reduce fluid because of their ability to increase osmotic tension in the circulating blood). An iridectomy may be performed after the acute attack to prevent future episodes of acute glaucoma.

Chronic Glaucoma Chronic, or open-angle, glaucoma is more common than acute glaucoma. It often occurs so gradually that affected individuals are unaware that they have a visual problem. Peripheral vision becomes slowly but increasingly impaired so that people may not realize for a long time why they bump or knock over items at their side. They may need to change eyeglasses frequently. As the impairment progresses, central vision is affected.

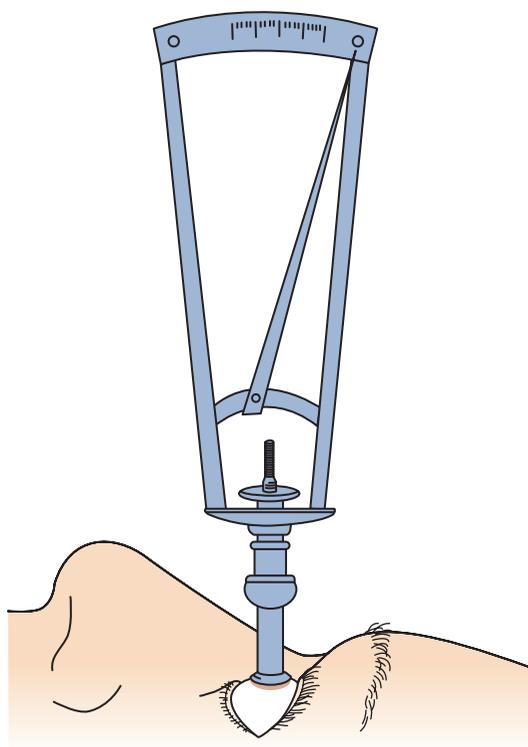


FIGURE 26-1 • Measuring intraocular pressure by use of a tonometer.

People may complain of a tired feeling in their eyes, headaches, misty vision, or seeing halos around lights—symptoms that tend to be more pronounced in the morning. The cornea may have a cloudy appearance, and the iris may be fixed and dilated. Although this condition usually involves one eye, both eyes can become affected if treatment is not sought. The same procedures as mentioned with acute glaucoma are used to diagnose this problem. Treatment, aimed toward reducing the IOP, may consist of a combination of a miotic and a carbonic anhydrase inhibitor or of surgery to establish a channel to filter the aqueous fluid (e.g., iridectomy, iridencleisis, cyclodialysis, corneoscleral trephining).

KEY CONCEPT

Open-angle glaucoma, the most common form of the disease, can be asymptomatic until an advanced stage; therefore, glaucoma screening is important.

Care and Prevention of Complications Vision lost due to glaucoma cannot be restored. However, additional damage can be prevented by avoiding any situation or activity that increases IOP. Physical straining and emotional stress should be prevented.

BOX 26-3 Administering Eye Medication Using Tear Duct Occlusion Technique

1. Wash your hands.
2. Tilt head back.
3. Apply pressure to inside corner of eye with your middle finger.
4. Use index finger to pull lower eyelid down and form a pouch.
5. Look up.
6. Release a drop into pouch area without blinking.
7. Close eye gently and keep closed for about 2 minutes, keeping constant pressure on inside corner of eye.
8. Blot away excess fluid that has accumulated on closed lid.
9. Wait 5 minutes before administering additional drop of same or different medication.
10. Wash hands.

(From Johns Hopkins Medical Institutions. [2000]. Hitting the mark with eye drops. *Health After 50*, 11 [11], 7.)

Miotics may be instilled into the eye; acetazolamide may be used. Because many individuals have difficulty getting all of the eye drops into the eye, an administration technique called tear duct occlusion (Box 26-3) is recommended. This technique can increase the amount of medication the eye absorbs by 50% (Johns Hopkins Medical Institutions, 2000). Mydriatics, stimulants, and agents that elevate the blood pressure must not be administered. It may benefit patients to carry a card or wear a bracelet indicating their problem to prevent administration of these medications in situations in which they may be unconscious or otherwise unable to communicate. Abuse and overuse of the eyes must also be prevented. Periodic evaluation by an ophthalmologist is an essential part of the continued care of the patient with glaucoma.

Patient compliance with treatment for glaucoma can be challenging. The silent nature of this condition, difficulties with instilling eyedrops, and the cost of medications contribute to a lack of adherence to the plan of care. Nurses need to teach patients about the disease and its care and counsel them about the importance of compliance. The care plan for these patients needs to include ongoing reinforcement of self-care measures for disease management. Nursing Care Plan 26-1 presents a sample care plan for the patient with open-angle glaucoma.

Macular Degeneration

Macular degeneration, the most common cause of blindness in people over age 65, involves damage or breakdown of the macula, which results in a loss of central vision. The most common form is involuntional macular degeneration, which is associated with the aging process, although macular degeneration can also result from injury, infection, or exudative macular degeneration. Figure 26-2 compares vision loss experienced with cataracts, glaucoma, and macular degeneration.



KEY CONCEPT

A loss of central vision accompanies macular degeneration.

Routine ophthalmic examinations can identify macular degeneration and promote treatment that can prevent additional vision loss. Laser therapy has been used for the treatment of some forms of macular degeneration, but the involuntional type does not respond well to this procedure. Magnifying glasses, high-intensity reading lamps, and other aids can prove helpful to patients with this condition.

Detached Retina

Older persons may experience detachment of the retina, a forward displacement of the retina from its normal position against the choroid. The symptoms, which can be gradual or sudden, include the perception of spots moving across the eye, blurred vision, flashes of light, and the feeling that a coating is developing over the eye. Blank areas of vision progress to complete loss of vision. The severity of the symptoms depends on the degree of retinal detachment. There does not tend to be pain.

Prompt treatment is required to prevent continued damage and eventual blindness. Initial measures most likely to be prescribed, bed rest and the use of bilateral eye patches, can be frightening to the older patient, who may react with confusion and unusual behavior. The nurse should help the patient feel as secure as possible; frequent checks and communication, easy access to a call light or other means of assistance, and full, honest explanations will help provide a sense of well-being. After time has been allowed for the maximum amount of “reattachment” of the retina to occur, surgery may be planned. Several surgical techniques are used in the treatment of detached retinas. Electrodiathermy

NURSING CARE PLAN 26-1

The Older Adult With Open-Angle Glaucoma

Nursing Diagnosis: Deficient knowledge related to management of disease

Goals

The patient expresses knowledge of facts about glaucoma and related care; administers eye drops correctly.

Nursing Actions

- Assess patient's knowledge about disease in relation to what it is, the care required, symptoms to note and report, and precautions.
- Clarify misunderstandings and provide instruction as necessary.
- Ensure that the patient understands importance of regular administration of eye drops.
- Evaluate patient's ability to manipulate dropper and instill drops (particularly in cases of arthritic hands). Instruct as necessary. If patient is unable to independently use dropper and instill drops, determine ability of family member to assist and provide instruction to family member.
- Instruct patient to discuss any asthma condition with physician as pilocarpine hydrochloride should be used with caution in persons with asthma.
- Reinforce importance of patient sharing complete medical history with every health care provider with whom he has contact.
- Prepare patient for side effects from pilocarpine hydrochloride, such as blurring of vision for 1 to 2 hours after administration; review related safety considerations.
- Teach patient to avoid situations that can increase intraocular pressure, such as aggressive coughing, sneezing, and straining during defecation.
- Advise patient to avoid self-medication for treatment of colds because cold remedies can contain mydriatic agents that can increase intraocular pressure.
- Discuss chronic nature of glaucoma and need for lifetime administration of medications and attention to precautions and recognition of symptoms that should be reported. Reinforce that although lost vision cannot be restored, additional loss usually can be avoided with control of the disease.

Nursing Diagnosis: Risk for injury related to impaired vision and risks associated with glaucoma

Goals

The patient is free from injury related to impaired vision; uses preventive measures to avoid complications associated with glaucoma.

Nursing Actions

- Explain impact of reduced peripheral vision and related safety precautions, such as placing frequently used objects in visual field, keeping clutter off floor, turning head to fully see objects to the side, avoiding driving.
- Instruct patient to avoid situations that could damage vision by increasing intraocular pressure, such as aggressive coughing, sneezing, straining to have a bowel movement, strenuous exercise, emotional stress.
- Encourage patient to keep bathroom and hallways well lit because vision may be impaired at night or in dimly lit areas as a result of pilocarpine hydrochloride use.
- Advise patient to avoid activities for several hours following administration of eye drops to accommodate blurred vision that could occur during this time.
- Assist patient in obtaining medical identification bracelet to assure others are informed of his condition in the event he is unable to communicate.

NURSING CARE PLAN 26-1 (CONTINUED)

Nursing Diagnosis: Anxiety and fear related to loss of vision

Goal

The patient lives a satisfying lifestyle with effective management of disease; is free from anxiety and fear.

Nursing Actions

- Encourage patient to express feelings regarding loss of vision and impact on function. Listen and offer support.
- Clarify misconceptions; offer realistic explanations.
- Determine activities that are important to patient and those that are at risk of being threatened by condition. Develop strategies to preserve and promote these activities.
- Assist patient in locating resources that can promote function, independence, and enjoyment. Contact local offices of agencies for the visually impaired for assistance.

Nursing Diagnosis: Constipation

Goal

The patient eliminates feces without straining at least every 2 to 3 days.

Nursing Actions

- Assess bowel elimination pattern; if no problem exists, reinforce current practices; if constipation is a problem, initiate measures to promote regular bowel elimination, such as increasing fiber in diet, establishing regular time for bowel elimination, and using stool softener to avoid increases in intraocular pressure that can occur when straining with a bowel movement.



Normal vision



Cataracts



Macular degeneration



Glaucoma

FIGURE 26-2 ● Examples of normal vision, vision with cataracts, vision with age-related macular degeneration, and vision with glaucoma. (Images courtesy of the National Eye Institute, National Institutes of Health.)

and cryosurgery cause the retina to adhere to its original attachment; scleral buckling and photocoagulation decrease the size of the vitreous space. Eye patches remain on the patient for several days after surgery. Specific routines vary according to the type of surgery performed. The patient needs frequent verbal stimuli to minimize anxiety and enhance psychological comfort. Physical and emotional stress must be avoided. Approximately two weeks after surgery, the success of the operation can be evaluated. A minority of patients must undergo a second procedure. It is important for the patient to understand that periodic examination is important, especially because some patients later suffer a detached retina in the other eye.

Corneal Ulcer

Inflammation of the cornea, accompanied by a loss of substance, causes the development of a corneal ulcer. Febrile states, irritation, dietary deficiencies, lowered resistance, and cerebrovascular accident tend to predispose the individual to this problem. Corneal ulcers, which are extremely difficult to treat in older persons, may scar or perforate, leading to destruction of the cornea and blindness. The affected eye may appear bloodshot and show increased lacrimation. Pain and photophobia are also present.

Nurses should advise patients to seek prompt assistance for any irritation, suspected infection, or other difficulty with the cornea as soon as it is identified. Early care is often effective in preventing the development of a corneal ulcer and preserving visual capacity. Cycloplegics, sedatives, antibiotics, and heat may be prescribed to treat a corneal ulcer. Sunglasses will ease the discomfort associated with photophobia. It is important that the underlying cause be treated—an infection, abrasion, or presence of a foreign body. Corneal transplants are occasionally done for more advanced corneal ulcers.

Hearing Deficits

A significant number of older people, including a majority of those residing in nursing homes, have

some degree of hearing loss, resulting from a variety of factors in addition to aging. Exposure to noise from loud music, jets, traffic, heavy machinery, and guns cause cell injury and loss. The higher incidence of hearing loss in men may be associated with their more frequent employment in occupations that subject them to loud noises (e.g., truck driving, construction work, heavy factory work, military service). Recurrent otitis media and trauma can damage hearing. Certain drugs may be ototoxic, including aspirin, bumetanide, ethacrynic acid, furosemide, indomethacin, erythromycin, streptomycin, neomycin, karomycin, and Rauwolfia derivatives; the delayed excretion of these drugs in many older persons may promote this effect. Diabetes, tumors of the nasopharynx, hypothyroidism, syphilis, other disease processes, and psychogenic factors also can contribute to hearing impairment.

Particular problems affect the ears of the older person (Fig. 26-3). Vascular problems, viral infections, and presbycusis are often causes of inner ear damage. In otosclerosis, an osseous growth causes fixation of the foot plate of the stapes in the oval window of the cochlea. This may be a middle ear problem; it is more common among women and can progress to complete deafness. Tinnitus, a ringing or other sound in the ear, can be associated with age-related hearing loss, ear injury, medications, or cardiovascular disease. If correcting the underlying problem does not eliminate the tinnitus, medications may be prescribed (e.g., tricyclic antidepressants, gabapentin, acamprosate); patients may be taught coping strategies or offered alternative therapies (e.g., acupuncture, hypnosis, supplements) also. Infections of the middle ear are less common in older individuals; they usually accompany more serious disorders, such as tumors and diabetes. The external ear can be affected by dermatoses, furunculosis, cerumen, cysts, neoplasms, and otitis media.

Patient Care

The first action in caring for someone with a hearing deficit should be to encourage audiometric

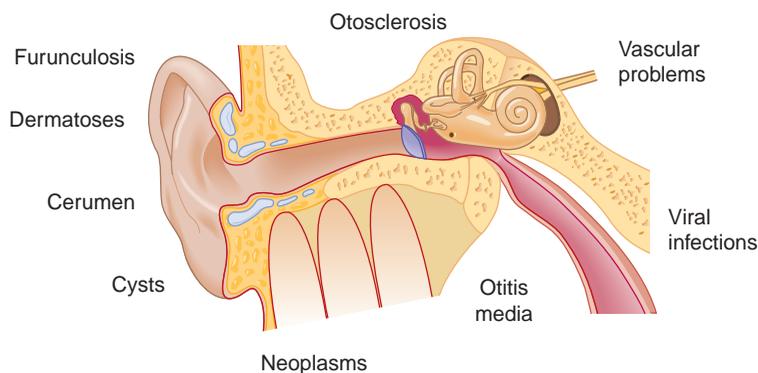


FIGURE 26-3 • Problems affecting the ears of older adults.

examination. Hearing impairment should not be assumed to be a normal consequence of aging and ignored. It would be most sad and negligent if the cause of the hearing problem was easily correctable (e.g., removal of cerumen or a cyst) but was allowed to limit the life of the affected individual.

Although sometimes the underlying cause of the hearing problem can be corrected, frequently, older persons must learn to live with varying degrees of hearing deficits. It is not unusual for individuals with a hearing impairment to demonstrate emotional reactions to their hearing deficits. Unable to hear conversation, patients may become suspicious of those around them and accuse people of talking about them. Anger, impatience, and frustration can result from repeatedly unsuccessful attempts to understand conversation. Patients may feel confused or react inappropriately on receiving distorted verbal communications. Limited ability to hear danger and protect themselves may make them feel insecure. Being self-conscious of their limitation may make them avoid social contact to escape embarrassment and frustration. Social isolation can be a serious threat; people sometimes avoid an older person with a hearing deficit because of the difficulty in communication. Physical, emotional, and social health can be seriously affected by this deficit. Helping older adults live with hearing deficits is a challenge but an important responsibility in gerontological care.

A neighbor should be alerted to the individual's hearing problem so that he or she can be protected in an emergency. In an institutional setting, such patients should be located near the nurse's station. People with hearing loss should be advised to request explanations and instructions in writing so that they receive the full content.

Hearing Aids

Hearing aids can benefit persons with some hearing disorders, but they may not solve all hearing problems. The otologist can determine if the specific hearing problem can be improved by using a hearing aid and



A



B

FIGURE 26-4 • Types of hearing aids. **(A)** In-the-ear model. **(B)** Behind-the-ear model.

can recommend the particular aid best suited to the patient's needs (Fig. 26-4). A hearing aid should never be purchased without being specifically prescribed. Sometimes older persons will attempt to improve hearing by purchasing an aid through a private party or a mail-order catalog, which often results in disappointment and a waste of money from an already limited budget. The nurse is in a key position to educate the older individual on the importance of consulting an otologist before purchasing a hearing aid.

Consider This Case

You meet Mr. and Mrs. R as you are providing influenza vaccines at a local senior center. When Mr. R doesn't respond to your questions, his wife, in an impatient manner, tells you that her husband isn't responding because "he can't hear you and is too stubborn to get a hearing aid." Mr. R, sensing his wife's annoyance with him and hearing a little of what she is saying comments, "I can hear; she just talks too low sometimes."

THINK CRITICALLY

- Although the time you can spend with the couple during this encounter is limited, you do want to help. What actions can you take? What referrals could you make?
- What quick facts about the importance of hearing screening and safety issues related to the inability to hear could you share?

**KEY CONCEPT**

Nurses should advise patients to avoid purchasing a hearing aid without a complete audiometric examination.

Patients must understand that, even with a hearing aid, their problems will not be solved. Although hearing will improve, it will not return to normal. Speech may sound distorted through the aid because when speech is amplified, so are all environmental noises, which can be most uncomfortable and disturbing to the individual. Sounds may be particularly annoying in areas where reverberation can easily occur (e.g., a church or large hall). Some persons never make the adjustment to a hearing aid and choose not to wear the appliance rather than to tolerate these disturbances and distortions. New hearing aid users need support during the adjustment phase and should be advised to wear the aid for progressively longer periods each day until comfort is gained and to avoid its use in noisy environments, such as airports, train stations, and stadiums. The aid must be checked regularly to ensure that the earpiece is not blocked with cerumen and that the battery is working.

When used appropriately, hearing aids may correct hearing problems and allow older individuals to maintain communication and social relationships. Local chapters of hearing and speech associations and organizations serving the deaf can provide assistance and educational materials to those affected by and interested in hearing problems.

General Nursing Considerations for Sensory Deficits

To compensate for the multiple sensory deficits older persons may experience, special attention must be paid to stimulation of all the senses during routine daily activities. The diet can be planned to include a variety of flavors and colors. Perfumes, fresh flowers, and scented candles, safely used, can provide interesting fragrances. In an institutional setting, having a pot of fresh coffee brewing in the patients' area can provide a pleasant and familiar aroma during the early morning hours; likewise, a tabletop oven can allow for cookie baking and other cooking activities in the patients' area, providing a variety of stimuli. Different textures can be used in upholstery and clothing fabrics. Clocks that chime, music boxes, and wind chimes can vary environmental sounds. The design of facilities for older people should take into consideration the use of different shapes and colors. Intellectual stimulation, through conversation, music, and books, for instance, also is vital.

To compensate for visual limitations, one should face the individual and exaggerate gestures and facial expressions when speaking. To compensate for poor peripheral vision, which is common in older people, one should approach these individuals from the front rather than the side where their vision is limited and ensure that seating allows for full sight of persons or objects with which they are interacting. Ample lighting is important and should be provided by several soft indirect lights rather than a single, bright, glaring source. Using large-print games and playing cards and telephone dials with enlarged numbers that glow in the dark can promote interaction. Books and magazines with large print and recordings of current events and popular literature can provide a source of recreation and a means of keeping informed.

To compensate for a hearing problem that is not corrected by a hearing aid, efforts should be made to minimize the limitations caused by the deficit. When talking with individuals with high-frequency hearing loss, the speaker should talk slowly, distinctly, and in a low-frequency voice. Raising the voice or shouting will only raise the sounds to a higher frequency and compound the deficit. Methods for promoting more accurate and complete communication include talking into the less impaired ear, facing the individual when talking, using visual speech (e.g., sign language, gestures, and facial expressions), allowing the person to lip read, using a stethoscope to amplify sounds (speaking into the diaphragm while the earpieces are in the patient's ears), and using flash cards, work lists, and similar aids and devices. Cupping the hands over the less deficient ear and talking directly into the ear may also be helpful.

**KEY CONCEPT**

Shouting raises the frequency of the voice, potentially reducing what the older ear can hear.

Finally, touch is not only a means of sensory stimulation but also an expression of warmth and caring. Too frequently, the nurse may touch the patient only during specified procedures. It is easy for patients to begin to feel that others perceive them only in terms of tasks rather than as total human beings. How often are patients referred to as "a complete bath," "a dressing change," or "a feed?" How often are these labels nonverbally communicated when the nurse's only encounters with the patient are for the sake of these activities? Holding a hand, rubbing a cheek, and patting a shoulder, basic as they may seem, can convey a message to patients that they are still valued as unique human beings. Acceptance of the patient's efforts to touch is also important. The universal language of touch can often communicate a friendship, warmth, and caring that overcomes the most severe sensory deficit.

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. What can be done to prevent vision and hearing losses with aging?
2. Why are older adults unaware of the signs of glaucoma?
3. Outline a teaching plan for a patient with newly diagnosed glaucoma.
4. Outline modifications to the average home that could benefit a person with impaired vision.
5. List assistive devices to promote the independent function of persons with impaired vision or hearing.
6. Locate resources in your community to assist persons with visual and hearing impairments.

Resources

Alexander Graham Bell Association for the Deaf
<http://www.agbell.org>

American Council of the Blind
<http://www.acb.org>

American Humane Association Hearing Dog Program
<http://www.americanhumane.org>

American Speech-Language-Hearing Association
<http://www.asha.org>

Blinded Veterans Association
<http://www.bva.org>

Guide Dogs for the Blind
<http://www.guidedogs.com>

Guiding Eyes for the Blind
<http://www.guiding-eyes.org>

Leader Dogs for the Blind
<http://www.leaderdog.org>

Lighthouse National Center for Vision and Aging
<http://www.lighthouse.org>

National Association for the Deaf
<http://www.nad.org>

National Association for the Visually Handicapped
<http://www.navh.org>

National Braille Association
<http://www.nationalbraille.org>

National Federation of the Blind
<http://www.nfb.org/>

National Library Service for the Blind and Physically Handicapped
<http://www.lcweb.loc.gov/nls>

Recordings for the Blind and Dyslexic
<http://www.rfbd.org>

Reference

Johns Hopkins Medical Institutions. (2000). Hitting the mark with eye drops. *Health After 50*, 11(11), 7.

Recommended Readings

- Bailey, L., Jonathan Jackson, A., & Wolffsohn, J. S. (2007). *Low vision manual*. Burlington, MA: Butterworth-Heinemann.
- Brody, B. L., Roch-Levecq, A. C., Kaplan, R. M., Moutier, C. Y., & Brown, S. I. (2006). Age-related macular degeneration: Self-management and reduction of depressive symptoms in a randomized, controlled study. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*, 54(10), 1557–1562.
- Demers, K. (2001). Hearing screening. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 27(11), 8–9.
- Dowling, J. S., & Bright, M. A. (1999). A collaborative research project on therapeutic touch. *Journal of Holistic Nursing*, 17(3), 296–307.
- Evans, J. R., Fletcher, A. E., & Worman, R. P. (2007). Depression and anxiety in visually impaired older people. *Ophthalmology*, 114(2), 283–288.
- Gates, G. A., & Mills, J. H. (2005). Presbycusis. *Lancet*, 366(9491), 1111–1120.
- Haas, L. (2007). Functional decline in older adults with diabetes. *American Journal of Nursing*, 107(6 Supplement), 50–54.
- Houde, S. C., & Huff, M. A. (2003). Age-related vision loss in older adults: A challenge for gerontological nurses. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 29(4), 25–33.
- Jung, S., Colman, A., & Weintraub, A. B. (2007). Vision screening in the elderly. *Journal of the American Medical Directors Association*, 8(6), 355–362.
- Kerr, M. (2003). Silent strokes spurt cognitive decline, dementia. *Caring for the Ages*, 4(5), 56.
- Kerr, M. (2003). Stroke deaths to double in next 30 years. *Caring for the Ages*, 4(5), 56.
- Kessler, S. (2000). A kiss. *RN*, 63(2), 43–45.
- Luggen, A. S. (2006). GNP care guidelines: Update on macular degeneration. *Geriatric Nursing*, 27(1), 159.
- McCarter, D. F., Courtney, A. U., & Pollart, S. M. (2007). Cerumen impaction. *American Family Physician*, 75(10), 1523–1528.
- Moore, L. W., & Miller, M. (2005). Driving strategies used by older adults with macular degeneration: Assessing the risks. *Applied Nursing Research*, 18(2), 110–116.
- O'Brien, B. (1997). Experiences with aromatherapy in the elderly. *Journal of Alternative and Complementary Medicine*, 3(3), 211.
- Rushing, J. (2007). Administering eyedrops. *Nursing 2007*, 37(5), 18.
- Singh, R. P., & Lewis, H. (2007). Innovations in eye surgery. *Clinical Geriatric Medicine*, 22(3), 659–675.
- Sloan, F. A., Picone, G., Brown, D. S., & Lee, P. P. (2005). Longitudinal analysis of the relationship between regular eye examinations and changes in visual and functional status. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*, 53(11), 1867–1874.
- Wallhagen, M. I., Pettengill, E., & Whiteside, M. M. (2006). Sensory impairment in older adults: Part 1: Hearing loss. *American Journal of Nursing*, 106(10), 40–48.
- Whiteside, M. M., Wallhagen, M. I., & Pettengill, E. (2006). Sensory impairment in older adults: Part 2: Vision loss. *American Journal of Nursing*, 106(11), 52–61.

Endocrine Function

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Effects of Aging on Endocrine Function Selected Endocrine Conditions and Related Nursing Considerations

Diabetes Mellitus
Hypothyroidism
Hyperthyroidism
Hyperlipidemia

The endocrine system enables the body to grow and develop, reproduce, metabolize energy, maintain homeostasis, and respond to stress and injury. This complex system consists of glands that synthesize and secrete hormones—substances that are transported from glands through the blood to targeted tissues where they exert specific effects either directly or indirectly by interacting with specific cell receptors. There are two major classes of hormones: steroids and thyronines, which are lipid soluble, and polypeptides and catecholamines, which are water soluble. With aging, the endocrine system experiences changes that can be diverse and interrelated in that some changes are compensatory responses for others. Knowledge of these changes and their effects is beneficial in interpreting symptoms and advising older adults regarding practices to promote optimal health.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 Summarize the effects of aging on endocrine function.
- 2 Describe unique manifestations of diabetes in older adults.
- 3 Outline a teaching plan for the older person with diabetes.
- 4 List symptoms of hypothyroidism and hyperthyroidism in older adults.
- 5 Describe risks for and symptoms of hyperlipidemia in older adults.
- 6 Describe lifestyle changes helpful in reducing elevated cholesterol levels in older adults.

Effects of Aging on Endocrine Function

With age, the thyroid gland progressively atrophies and thyroid gland activity decreases, resulting in a lower basal metabolic rate, reduced radioactive iodine uptake, and less secretion and release of thyrotropin. Thyroid activity can be further reduced by diminished adrenal function. Despite these changes, thyroid function remains adequate to meet daily needs. Adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH) secretion decreases with age, which in turn reduces the secretory activity of the adrenal gland which reduces the secretion of estrogen, progesterone, androgen, 17-ketosteroids, and glucocorticoids. The volume of the pituitary gland decreases with age; somatotrophic growth hormone blood levels may be reduced. Insulin secretion is also affected by age; there is insufficient release of insulin by the beta cells in the pancreas and reduced tissue sensitivity to circulating insulin. Many older adults have reduced ability to metabolize glucose, particularly when a sudden high concentration of glucose is consumed.

Endocrine health promotion includes giving attention to these effects of aging and any symptoms of endocrine dysfunction in older adults in order to facilitate intervention and treatment.

Selected Endocrine Conditions and Related Nursing Considerations

Diabetes Mellitus

A blend of various knowledge and skills is required when caring for older adults who have diabetes. Type 2 diabetes, the seventh leading cause of death among older adults, affects 20% of the older population and has a particularly high prevalence among black people and people 65 to 74 years of age. Consequently, nurses must be adequately informed of how the detection and management of diabetes in older adults differs from that in other age groups.

Glucose intolerance is a common occurrence among older adults; several explanations are offered for this. At one time it was thought that a physiologic deterioration of glucose tolerance occurred with increasing age; however, the increased prevalence of glucose intolerance with age now is attributed to increased amounts of fat tissue present in older persons who are obese and inactive. This may be a factor in the high incidence of diabetes throughout the general population. Also, diagnostic techniques have been improved, enabling more persons with the condition to be detected. Regardless of the reason, it is agreed that different standards must be applied in evaluating glucose tolerance in older adults.



KEY CONCEPT

Obesity and inactivity contribute to the high prevalence of diabetes mellitus.

Diagnosis

Early diagnosis of diabetes in older persons often is difficult. The classic symptoms of diabetes may be absent, leaving nonspecific symptoms as the only clues. Some indications of diabetes in older adults include orthostatic hypotension, periodontal disease, stroke, gastric hypotony, impotence, neuropathy, confusion, glaucoma, Dupuytren contracture, and infection. Laboratory tests, as well as symptoms, may be misleading. Because the renal threshold for glucose increases with age, older individuals can be hyperglycemic without evidence of glycosuria, thus limiting the validity of urine testing for glucose.

Among all the diagnostic measures, the glucose tolerance test is the most effective. To avoid a false-positive diagnosis, more than one test should be performed. The American Diabetes Association recommends that a minimum of 150 grams (g) of carbohydrates be ingested daily for several days before the test; older, malnourished individuals may be prescribed 300 g. Recent periods of inactivity, stressful illness, and inadequate dietary intake should be communicated to the physician because these situations can contribute to glucose intolerance. In such circumstances, more accurate results can be obtained if the test is postponed for a month after the episode. Nicotinic acid, ethacrynic acid, estrogen, furosemide, and diuretics can decrease glucose tolerance and should not be administered before testing. Monoamine oxidase inhibitors, propranolol, and high dosages of salicylates may lower blood sugar levels and also interfere with testing. Standard nursing measures are applied during glucose tolerance testing of older adults. If unusual symptoms such as confusion develop during the test, it is important to tell the physician.

The diagnosis of diabetes usually is established if one of three criteria exists:

1. Symptoms of diabetes and a random blood glucose concentration ≥ 200 mg/dL (11.1 mmol/L).
2. Fasting blood glucose concentration ≥ 126 mg/dL (7.0 mmol/L).
3. Blood glucose concentrations 2 hours after an oral glucose intake ≥ 200 mg/dL (11.1 mmol/L) during an oral glucose tolerance test (OGTT). The test should be performed as described by the World Health Organization, using a glucose load containing the equivalent of 75-g anhydrous glucose dissolved in water.

BOX 27-1 Content for Diabetic Patient Education**GENERAL OVERVIEW**

Definition and description of diabetes mellitus
 Basic anatomy and physiology
 Basic metabolism of nutrients
 Impact of advanced age on glucose metabolism, presentation of symptoms, complications

NUTRITION

Food groups, food exchange system
 Dietary requirements
 Consistent pattern of food intake
 Menu plans
 Understanding food labels
 Flexibility of diet

ACTIVITY AND EXERCISE

Coordination and goal setting with healthcare provider
 Planning exercise in relation to glucose levels
 Precautions
 Monitoring glucose, vital signs
 Recognizing complications
 Importance of good fluid intake

MEDICATIONS

Actions
 Dosage

Proper administration
 Precautions
 Adverse effects
 Interactions

MONITORING

Purpose, goals
 Types
 Procedure

RECOGNIZING HYPOGLYCEMIA AND HYPERGLYCEMIA

Description and definition of hypoglycemia and hyperglycemia
 Prevention

RECOGNITION OF SYMPTOMS

Actions to take for each
 Signs that warrant contacting healthcare provider

PREVENTION OF COMPLICATIONS

Foot care
 Eye examinations
 Adjustments for diabetes care during illnesses
 Recognition of complications (e.g., infections, neuropathies)

These results usually are confirmed by repeat testing on a different day.

Management of the Illness

As drug therapy to control hyperglycemia is used with most older persons with diabetes, careful attention to patient education, compliance with the prescribed plan, and monitoring is essential.

Patient Education Once the diagnosis has been confirmed, the nurse should establish a teaching plan (Box 27-1). Diabetes is known as a serious and chronic problem to most lay individuals, and being diagnosed with this disease can be frightening. Fear and anxiety can interfere with the learning process for older people with newly diagnosed diabetes, who may have witnessed the crippling or fatal effects of diabetes in others and anticipate such occurrences in themselves. Having lived through a period in which diabetes was not successfully managed and was often severely disabling or fatal, the older individual may not be aware of the advances in diabetes management.

Older people may be depressed or angry that this disease threatens to reduce the quality of the remainder of their lives; they may question the value of exchanging an unrestricted lifestyle for a potentially longer but restricted one. Concerns may arise about how a special diet and medications will be afforded on an already limited budget. Social isolation may develop from fear of becoming ill in public or facing restrictions that make them different from their peers. They may question their ability to manage their diabetes independently and worry that institutionalization will be necessary. Such concerns must be recognized and dealt with by the nurse to reduce the risk of other limitations and promote the individual's self-care capacities (Nursing Diagnosis Table 27-1). Reassurance, support, and information can reduce barriers to learning about and managing diabetes. The information in Box 27-2, helpful in any patient education situation, offers guidance in teaching the older diabetic patient.

NURSING DIAGNOSIS

TABLE 27-1 Nursing Diagnoses Related to Diabetes Mellitus

Causes or Contributing Factors	Nursing Diagnosis
Fear of disease's impact	Anxiety
High risk for loss of body part or function	Fear
Hyperglycemia	Risk for Infection
Decreased sensations, confusion, or dizziness from hypoglycemia	Risk for Injury
Diagnostic tests, care demands, denial	Deficient Knowledge
Lack of knowledge, self-care limitation	Noncompliance
Insufficient calories to meet energy, insulin demands	Imbalanced Nutrition: Less Than Body Requirements
Caloric intake in excess of energy, insulin coverage	Imbalanced Nutrition: More Than Body Requirements
Inability to meet therapeutic demands, feeling that disease is controlling life	Powerlessness
Peripheral neuropathies, retinopathy	Disturbed Sensory Perception
Peripheral neuropathy, vaginitis	Sexual Dysfunction
Susceptibility to fungal infections, pruritus from hyperglycemia	Impaired Skin Integrity
Urinary frequency	Disturbed Sleep Pattern
Altered neurovascular function secondary to neuropathies	Ineffective Tissue Perfusion

BOX 27-2 General Guidelines for Patient Education**ASSESS READINESS TO LEARN**

Discomfort, anxiety, and depression may block learning and the retention of knowledge. Relieving these symptoms, and allowing time for patients to develop to the point where they desire and can cope with information, may be necessary.

ASSESS LEARNING CAPACITIES AND LIMITATIONS

Consider the patient's educational level, language problems, literacy, present knowledge, willingness to learn, cultural background, previous experience with the illness, memory, vision, hearing, speech, and mental status.

OUTLINE CONTENT OF PRESENTATION

Your outline should not only be specific and clear but should also consider learning priorities. Nurses sometimes feel obligated to teach every detail about an illness, condensing a multitude of new facts and procedures into a short time frame. Most people need time to receive, absorb, sort, and translate new information into behavioral changes; older adults are no different. Altered cerebral function or slower

responses may further interfere with learning in the aged. Patients and their families should have a role in setting teaching priorities; the most vital information should be given first, followed by other relevant material. Visiting nurses and other resources should be used after hospital discharge to continue the teaching plan if the proposed outline is not completed during the hospitalization.

ALTER THE TEACHING PLAN IN VIEW OF CAPACITIES AND LIMITATIONS

The nurse may feel that an explanation of the physiologic effects of diabetes is significant for new diabetics. However, the older person who tends to be confused or has a poor memory may not have long-range benefit from this type of information.

It may be better to use that time to reinforce diet information or to make sure the most significant information required for self-care is retained.

PREPARE THE PATIENT FOR THE TEACHING-LEARNING SESSION

Patients should understand that education is an integral part of care. Whenever possible, arrange a specific

(continued)

BOX 27-2 General Guidelines for Patient Education (Continued)

time in advance to avoid conflict with other activities and to allow the family to be present if desired.

PROVIDE ENVIRONMENT CONDUCTIVE TO LEARNING

An area that is quiet, clean, relaxing, and free from odors and interference will help to create a good atmosphere for learning. Distraction should be minimal, especially in view of the aged's reduced capacity to manage multiple stimuli.

USE THE MOST EFFECTIVE INDIVIDUALIZED EDUCATIONAL MATERIAL

It is important to recognize the limitations of standard teaching aids and the importance of individualized methods. An aid that was successful for one person may not be effective for another. The variety of sophisticated audiovisual aids that are commercially prepared and available in many agencies as resources for nurses are impressive, but they may not necessarily be effective for the given patient. The quality of an audio recording may be excellent, but it is of little benefit to the older person with a hearing problem. A slide presentation, even slowly paced, may present facts more rapidly than can be absorbed by an older person with delayed response time. The print on a commercial pamphlet may appear minute to older eyes. The language used in many commercial materials may not be one to which the person is accustomed. Original handmade aids suited for the individual's unique needs may have a value equal to or greater than commercially prepared ones. Selectivity in methodology is essential.

USE SEVERAL APPROACHES TO THE SAME BODY OF KNOWLEDGE

The greater the number of different exposures to new material, the higher the probability that the material will be learned. Combine verbal explanation with charts,

diagrams, pamphlets, demonstrations, discussions with other patients, and audiovisual resources.

LEAVE MATERIAL WITH THE PATIENT FOR LATER REVIEW

Often, it is helpful to summarize the teaching session in writing, using language familiar to the patient. This provides concrete material that the patient can review independently later and share with the family.

REINFORCE KEY POINTS

Reinforcement should be regular and consistent, with all staff members supporting the teaching plan. For example, if the objective of the nurse caring for the patient has been to increase competency in self-injection of insulin, then the person substituting on the nurse's day off should comply with the established objectives rather than administering the insulin for the individual. Informal reinforcement of information during other daily activities should also be planned.

OBTAIN FEEDBACK

Evaluate whether the patient and family have received and understood accurately the information communicated. This can be done by observing return demonstrations, asking questions, and listening to discussions among patients.

REEVALUATE PERIODICALLY

To ascertain retention and effectiveness of the teaching sessions, informally reevaluate at a later time. Remember that retention of information may be especially difficult for the older individual.

DOCUMENT

Describe specifically what was taught, when, who was involved, what methodology was used, the patient's reaction and understanding, and future plans for remaining learning needs. This assists the staff caring for patients during their hospitalization and serves as a guide for those providing continued care after discharge.



KEY CONCEPT

As diabetes impacts and is impacted by many facets of a person's life, patient education must be comprehensive and individualized.

Drug Therapy A variety of medications may be used to control hyperglycemia. Sulfonylurea drugs, such as glibenclamide, stimulate insulin secretion by

blocking adenosine triphosphate (ATP)-sensitive potassium channels on pancreatic beta cells. However, glibenclamide use in older persons carries a risk for severe hypoglycemia, believed to be related to delayed clearance of the active metabolites of this drug. Also, research suggests that glibenclamide is associated with significantly higher annual mortality when combined with metformin than other insulin secreting medications (Monami et al., 2007). Due to these risks, glipizide and gliclazide, which have shorter half-lives and

few or no active metabolites, are preferred sulfonylurea agents in older persons with diabetes. The latest generation sulfonylurea, glimepiride, appears to be more selective than the earlier agents and carries a lower risk for causing vasoconstriction of small vessels. Besides exhibiting less hypoglycemia compared to glibenclamide, this drug appears to be more specific for islet cell potassium channels and is less likely to produce coronary artery vasoconstriction. Sulfonylurea tablets should be taken a half-hour before meals. It is recommended that the drug be started at a low dose, about half of the usual adult dosage, and gradually increased if required.

In overweight and obese people with diabetes who have no abnormality in renal, cardiac, or respiratory functions, biguanides (e.g., metformin) can be used if diet alone is not sufficient or as an add-on therapy with sulfonylureas. When used alone, they do not produce hypoglycemia. Metformin should not be used when there is renal insufficiency, hepatic disease, alcoholism, severe congestive cardiac failure, severe peripheral vascular disease, and severe chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Metformin should be administered immediately after meals to avoid gastrointestinal disturbances; starting with a smaller dose can reduce this side effect.

Acarbose, an α -glucosidase inhibitor, reduces postprandial hyperglycemia with lesser effect on fasting glucose levels and is safe for older adults. Gastrointestinal disturbance, particularly flatulence, is the major side effect of acarbose, which can be minimized by starting with a smaller dose and gradually increasing the dosage if required. Repaglinide is a short-acting insulinotropic antidiabetic agent that has similar effectiveness and safety in older and younger adults. It acts principally by augmenting endogenous insulin secretion from the pancreas in response to a meal. This drug can be taken with meals.

Rosiglitazone and pioglitazone are thiazolidinediones that can be used alone or in combination with sulfonylureas, metformin, or insulin for the management of type 2 diabetes mellitus. They act principally by increasing insulin sensitivity in target tissues, as well as decreasing hepatic gluconeogenesis; they do this without stimulating insulin release from pancreatic beta cells, thereby reducing the risk of hypoglycemia. The reduced risk of hypoglycemia makes them well suited for use in older adults. Cardiac function must be assessed in all patients before starting these drugs as they can precipitate cardiac failure in patients with cardiac dysfunction. Caution is needed with patients with liver disease; liver enzymes should be monitored closely for all patients using these drugs.

Some individuals require only oral hypoglycemic agents to control their diabetes. Those on insulin therapy who have lost weight or have not been ketoacidotic may have their insulin substituted by oral hypoglycemic agents. Still others will need periodic changes in their insulin dosages to meet changing demands. These factors, combined with other management difficulties in the older diabetic person, necessitate frequent reevaluation of the patient's status. The continuation of health supervision is an essential part of diabetic management.

Patient Self-Care and Monitoring If an older person with diabetes must self-inject insulin, one factor that must be considered is the patient's ability to handle a syringe and vial of insulin. Several repeat demonstrations of this skill should be performed during the hospitalization, especially on days when arthritis discomfort is present. Also, because most older persons have some degree of visual impairment, the nurse must evaluate their ability to read the calibrations on an insulin syringe. Some of the new insulin pens that are available can assist older adults in delivering the correct amount of insulin easily.

The older individual can be hyperglycemic without being glycosuric. On the other hand, higher blood glucose levels are common in older adults, and minimal or mild glycosuria usually is not treated with insulin. Although nurses are not responsible for prescribing insulin coverage, they need to be aware that the insulin requirements of older patients are individualized. Responses to various insulin levels should be carefully observed and communicated to the physician.

Many diabetic patients must perform blood glucose level testing using a finger-prick method. Patients must be instructed in this technique and demonstrate competence in its performance. The finger-prick technique will most likely be replaced in the near future by an infrared device that determines the blood glucose level by measuring how light is absorbed by the body. The patient sticks a finger into a small meter that shines an infrared light through the skin. The infrared method should make glucose testing more convenient and pain free for diabetic persons.

The hemoglobin A1c test (also called HbA1c, glycated hemoglobin test, or glycohemoglobin) measures the amount of glycosylated hemoglobin in the blood and is used to monitor the effectiveness of disease control. Glycosylated hemoglobin is a molecule in red blood cells that attaches to glucose. Hemoglobin A1c provides an average of the patient's blood glucose control over a six- to 12-week period; the normal range is between 4% and 6%. For persons with diabetes, the goal is a HbA1c below 7%. This test usually is performed quarterly.

Triglyceride monitoring also is important. People with diabetes are at risk for metabolic syndrome, characterized by the combination of high triglycerides, low high-density lipoprotein (HDL), and central obesity. The risk for premature death from cardiovascular disease is increased in persons with these factors. The American Diabetes Association recommends that people with diabetes maintain their triglyceride levels below 150 mg/dL.

Exercise and Nutrition Regular exercise is important for older diabetic patients and provides multiple health benefits, including improved glucose tolerance, increased muscle strength, decreased body fat, improved maximal oxygen consumption, and improved lipid profile (Fig. 27-1). Physical activity can improve the patient's response to insulin during the period in which the exercise regimen is done, if the exercise is sufficient to lower the resting heart rate. In the diabetic individual, however, a vigorous exercise program or changes in an exercise program must be reviewed with the physician to prevent adverse consequences. For example, moderate-to-vigorous exercise increases the absorption of insulin and heightens the use of glucose by the exercising muscles, potentially leading to hypoglycemia.

Attempts should be made to maintain a consistent daily food intake because an insulin dosage is



FIGURE 27-1 • Regular exercise provides multiple health benefits for older diabetic patients.

prescribed to cover a specific amount of food. This may be difficult if the older person has a minimal food intake during the week when alone but an increased intake when visiting with family on weekends or if the patient skimps on meals when financial resources are low. Older people may also be limited in their ability to purchase and prepare adequate meals because of financial, energy, or social limitations. This can interfere with management of the illness. Meals on Wheels, food stamps, the assistance of a neighbor, and other appropriate resources should be used to assist the individual. Psychosocial factors can influence consistent food intake as much as physical factors. The nurse and physician must carefully assess, plan, and manage insulin needs in view of the individual's unique problems and lifestyle. Older adults in a hospital or nursing home setting require special attention to ensure that food intake is regular and adequate.



KEY CONCEPT

Psychosocial factors can alter food intake from day to day and affect insulin requirements.

A diet high in complex carbohydrates and fibers controls the release of glucose into the bloodstream and can reduce insulin requirements. Nutritional supplements can reduce the risk of complications; such supplements include vitamin B6, folic acid, riboflavin (B2), magnesium, zinc, and chromium. Herbs with hypoglycemic properties include bilberry, fenugreek, garlic, ginseng, and mulberry leaves.



POINT TO PONDER

Consider your schedule of eating, exercise, sleep, and rest. How consistent a pattern do you have from day to day, and what adjustments would you need to make if you had to live with a condition such as diabetes? ●

Complications

Older people are subject to a long list of complications from diabetes and have a greater risk of developing these complications than younger adults. Hypoglycemia seems to be a greater threat to older patients than ketoacidosis, and this is especially problematic because of the possible presentation of a different set of symptoms. Classic symptoms such as tachycardia, restlessness, perspiration, and anxiety may be totally absent in the older individual with hypoglycemia. Instead, any of the following may be the first indication of the problem: behavior disorders, convulsions, somnolence, confusion,

disorientation, poor sleep patterns, nocturnal headache, slurred speech, and unconsciousness. Uncorrected hypoglycemia can cause tachycardia, arrhythmias, myocardial infarctions, cerebrovascular accident, and death.



KEY CONCEPT

Rather than the classic symptoms of hypoglycemia that one would anticipate in younger adults, older individuals instead may experience confusion, abnormal behavior, altered sleep patterns, nocturnal headache, and slurred speech.

Peripheral vascular disease is a common complication in the older individual who has diabetes and is influenced by the poorer circulation and atherosclerosis often associated with increased age. Symptoms may range from numbness and weak pulses to infection and gangrene. The nurse should identify and promptly communicate to the physician symptoms of peripheral vascular disease. Educating the patient in proper foot care and in the early detection of foot problems can help reduce the risk of this problem; referral to a podiatrist also can prove beneficial. (See Chapter 20 for a discussion of foot care.)

Another significant vascular problem of older patients with diabetes is retinopathy with consequent blindness. Individuals who are hypertensive or who have had diabetes for a long time have a greater risk of developing this complication. Hemorrhage, pigment disturbances, edema, and visual disorders are manifested with this problem.

Many older patients taking sulfonylureas experience hypoglycemia. There are many age-related factors that increase the risk of hypoglycemia, including the age-related changes in hepatic and renal functions that alter drug metabolism and excretion. Aging also is associated with impairments in the autonomic nervous system and reductions in

adrenergic receptor function, suggesting decreased response to hypoglycemia in older adults. This can be dangerous as older people may not display warning symptoms such as tremors, sweating, or palpitation; before it is recognized, their hypoglycemia can progress to convulsions or coma.

Drug interactions can be a major source of complications for older diabetic patients. Older adults are frequent users of drugs that are known to increase the risk for hypoglycemia, including beta-blockers, salicylates, warfarin, sulfonamides, tricyclic anti-depressants, and alcohol. Nurses should review all medications the patient is taking to identify those drugs that may interact with antidiabetic medications. Nurses also must consider asking about the use of herbal remedies that could affect blood glucose levels.

A variety of additional complications can affect older individuals who are living with diabetes. Cognitive impairment can be a complication. Older persons may develop neuropathies, demonstrated through tingling sensations progressing to stinging or stabbing pain; carpal tunnel syndrome; paresthesias; nocturnal diarrhea; tachycardia; and postural hypotension. They have twice the mortality rate from coronary artery disease and cerebral arteriosclerosis and a higher incidence of urinary tract infections. They also have a higher risk of problems developing in virtually every body system. Early detection of complications is essential and can be facilitated by nursing intervention and patient education. Competent management of the older patient with diabetes is a vital activity that requires considerable skill and poses a great challenge and responsibility to the practice of nursing. The recognition of differences in symptomatology, diagnosis, management, and complications is crucial. Box 27-3 lists some potential care plan goals. Resources of benefit to patients with diabetes are listed at the end of this chapter.

BOX 27-3

Care Plan Goals for the Patient With Diabetes

- To verbalize understanding of diabetes and its management
- To demonstrate proper technique for administration of antidiabetic medication
- To demonstrate correct method of blood glucose testing
- To be free from signs of hypoglycemia and hyperglycemia
- To describe signs and symptoms of hypoglycemia and insulin shock

- To adapt management of diabetes to lifestyle
- To maintain weight at appropriate level or to lose specified amount
- To engage in a regular exercise program
- To be free from injury
- To be free from infection
- To be free from impairments in skin integrity
- To be free from complications associated with diabetes

Hypothyroidism

Thyroxine (T₄) and triiodothyronine (T₃) are essential hormones produced by the thyroid gland. Aging affects the thyroid gland in several ways, including moderate atrophy, fibrosis, increasing colloid nodules, and some lymphocytic infiltration. Although production of T₄ declines with age, this is believed to be a compensatory process related to decreased tissue use of the hormone; serum levels of thyroid hormones do not significantly change.

A subnormal concentration of thyroid hormone in the tissues is known as hypothyroidism. This condition increases in prevalence with age and is more common in women than men. Hypothyroidism can be either primary, resulting from a disease process that destroys the thyroid gland, or secondary, caused by insufficient pituitary secretion of thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH). Primary hypothyroidism is characterized by low free T₄ or free T₄ index with an elevated TSH level; secondary hypothyroidism displays low free T₄ or free T₄ index and low TSH. A subclinical hypothyroidism can exist in which the person is asymptomatic but has an elevated TSH level and normal T₄. If symptoms are present but TSH, T₃, and T₄ levels are normal, checking the thyrotropin-releasing hormone (TRH) level may benefit the patient; the TRH level is more sensitive than the other thyroid levels and could help reveal subnormal thyroid function.

Symptoms

Symptoms of hypothyroidism can be easily missed or attributed to other conditions and include:

- fatigue, weakness, and lethargy
- depression and disinterest in activities
- anorexia
- weight gain
- impaired hearing
- periorbital or peripheral edema
- constipation
- cold intolerance
- myalgia, paresthesia, and ataxia
- dry skin and coarse hair

Treatment

Treatment includes replacement of thyroid hormone using a synthetic T₄ (e.g., Synthroid, thyroxine). Initially, a low dose is recommended to avoid exacerbation of asymptomatic coronary artery disease that could occur from rapid replacement. Desiccated thyroid preparations are avoided. Regular monitoring provides feedback for the need for dosage adjustments.



KEY CONCEPT

Initially, thyroid replacement is prescribed at a low dose and gradually increased under close supervision to prevent cardiac complications.

Nursing measures should support the treatment plan and assist patients with the management of symptoms (e.g., prevention of constipation and provision of extra clothing to compensate for cold intolerance). It is important that patients understand that thyroid replacement will most likely be a lifelong requirement.

Hyperthyroidism

At the other extreme from hypothyroidism is a condition known as hyperthyroidism. In this disorder, the thyroid gland secretes excess amounts of thyroid hormones. Hyperthyroidism is less prevalent than hypothyroidism in older adults; it affects women more than men. A potential cause of hyperthyroidism in older patients that should be considered is iodine-induced hyperthyroidism, often related to the use of amiodarone, a cardiac drug containing iodine that deposits in tissue and delivers iodine to the circulation over very long periods of time. Amiodarone may also interfere with thyroid hormone transport into cells and with pathways of intracellular thyroid hormone metabolism (Reed & Wheeler, 2005).

Diagnostic testing can be challenging because blood tests do not always reflect hyperthyroidism. This is particularly true in malnourished older people, whose T₃ levels are reduced due to their nutritional status; thus, the excess secretion will cause the T₃ to fall within a normal range. Diagnosis relies on evaluation of T₄ and free T₄, TSH, and increased uptake of radionuclide thyroid scans.

Symptoms

Classic symptoms of hyperthyroidism include diaphoresis, tachycardia, palpitations, hypertension, tremor, diarrhea, stare, lid lag, insomnia, nervousness, confusion, heat intolerance, increased hunger, proximal muscle weakness, and hyperreflexia. However, as with hypothyroidism, hyperthyroidism can present with atypical symptoms in older adults. For example, increased perspiration may not occur, and for the person with a history of chronic constipation, diarrhea may be displayed by now having regular bowel movements.

Treatment

Treatment of hyperthyroidism depends on the cause. In Graves' disease, an autoimmune disorder that leads to the production of an antibody to the

TSH receptor that stimulates thyroid growth and overproduction of thyroid hormone, or when there is a single autonomous nodule, treatment typically includes antithyroid medications or radioactive iodine. If toxic multinodular goiter is the underlying cause, surgery may be preferred due to the delayed and incomplete response to medications. Hypothyroidism can develop as a complication in persons who have had surgery or radioactive iodine therapy.

Patients with a history of thyroid disease need special monitoring when experiencing an acute illness, surgery, or trauma because this can precipitate extreme thyrotoxicosis (thyroid storm). Hospitalization may be required to return their thyroid level to a normal range.

Hyperlipidemia

The risk of coronary artery disease associated with elevated total cholesterol increases with age, primarily because of increases in low-density lipoprotein (LDL). In addition to age, older persons may have conditions that can cause lipoprotein disorders, such as uncontrolled diabetes, hypothyroidism, uremia, and nephrotic syndrome, or be using corticosteroids, thiazide diuretics, and other drugs that increase the risk.

Diagnosis

Patient evaluation should include obtaining a full lipid profile rather than just a plasma total cholesterol level. Because cholesterol values can change from day to day, no single laboratory value should be used to classify a patient. Triglyceride levels are sensitive to food; therefore, a definitive screening test requires that the patient fast for 12 hours prior to testing. A HDL level greater than 60 mg/dL is desirable; triglycerides greater than 200 mg/dL are borderline and greater than 240 mg/dL are high. An LDL less than 100 mg/dL is recommended for people with coronary heart disease or diabetes; a level less than 130 mg/dL is advised for persons without coronary heart disease or diabetes who have two or more coronary risk factors and less; LDL less than 160 mg/dL is desirable for persons without coronary heart disease or diabetes who have one or no risk factors.



FIGURE 27-2 • Weight reduction, along with dietary changes and exercise, is a lifestyle modification older adults can make to help manage hyperlipidemia.

If secondary causes of lipoprotein disorders (e.g., diet high in saturated fat or cholesterol, excessive alcohol intake, exogenous estrogen supplementation, poorly controlled diabetes, uremia, use of β -blockers or corticosteroids) can be ruled out, a primary or familial lipoprotein disorder may be present. The most common familial lipoproteinemias are transmitted as autosomal dominant traits, so children of older adults affected by this condition need screening and counseling regarding lifestyle practices that can prevent hypercholesterolemia.

Treatment

Dietary changes and exercise are the initial approaches to treating this condition. The American Heart Association's (AHA) step 1 diet is recommended for initial treatment. If the patient is following a diet similar to the step 1 diet already, a step 2 diet will be prescribed. The gerontological nurse should refer patients to a nutritionist for guidance on these diets. As mentioned in Chapter 20, the Dean Ornish diet is more restrictive than the AHA diet and has been shown to improve LDL levels. Box 27-4 lists some general dietary guidelines. Other lifestyle practices that can assist include reducing weight and limiting alcohol intake (Fig. 27-2).

A variety of medications can be used if diet and lifestyle modifications alone do not bring about

BOX 27-4 General Dietary Guidelines for Persons With Hyperlipoprotein Conditions

Reduce intake of egg yolks and organ meats
 Increase consumption of soluble fibers (e.g., barley, oats)
 Reduce red meat intake and substitute with fish, chicken, and turkey

Substitute olive oil for vegetable oils
 Use skim milk and nonfat cottage cheese
 Substitute buttermilk for cream toppings
 Eat plenty of fresh fruits and vegetables

results. The drugs of first choice for elevated LDL cholesterol are the HMG CoA reductase inhibitors (e.g., atorvastatin, fluvastatin, lovastatin, pravastatin, rosuvastatin, and simvastatin). Statin drugs are very effective for lowering LDL cholesterol levels and have few immediate short-term side effects. Bile acid sequestrants (cholestyramine, colestipol), nicotinic acid (niacin [Nicolar]), 3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl-coenzyme, fibric acid derivatives (gemfibrozil, clofibrate), and omega-3 fatty acids (fish oils) also can be used.

Some alternative and complementary therapies have also proven beneficial in reducing cholesterol levels, such as water-soluble fiber (oats, guar gum, pectin, mixed fibers), garlic supplements, green tea, and antioxidant vitamins A, C, and E, and β -carotene.

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. Discuss reasons for different norms to be used to interpret the outcomes of glucose tolerance tests in older adults.
2. Describe the challenges to physical and psychosocial well-being faced by the older diabetic patient.
3. In what ways do age-related changes affect the presentation of symptoms and risks associated with diabetes and thyroid disease?
4. Outline a teaching plan for the person with hyperlipidemia that includes natural and alternative/complementary therapies.

Resources

American Diabetes Association
<http://www.diabetes.org>

American Heart Association
<http://www.americanheart.org>

National Diabetes Education Program
<http://www.ndep.nih.gov>

National Diabetes Information Clearinghouse
<http://www.diabetes.niddk.nih.gov>

References

Monami, M., Luzzi, C., Lamana, C., Chiaserrini, V., Adante, F., et al. (2007). Three-year mortality in diabetic patients treated with different combinations of insulin secretagogues and metformin. *Diabetes/Metabolism Research Review*, 22(6), 477–482.

Reed, J. R., & Wheeler, S. F. (2005). Hyperthyroidism: Diagnosis and treatment. *American Family Physician*, August 15, 2005. Accessed 5/12/08, <http://www.aafp.org/aafp/20050815/623.html>.

Recommended Readings

American Diabetes Association. (2007). Standards of medical care in diabetes—2007. *Diabetes Care*, 30, S4–S41.

Astle, F. (2007). Diabetes and depression: A review of the literature. *Nursing Clinics of North America*, 42(1), 67–78.

Bass, A., Will, T., Todd, M., & Weatherford, D. (2007). The latest tools for patients with diabetes. *RN* 2007, 70(6), 39–43.

Behr, M. (2007). Diabetes. *Medical Surgical Nursing*, 16(2), 122–123.

Bolen, S., Feldman, L., Vassy, J., Wilson, L., Yeh, H. C., et al. (2007). Systematic review: Comparative effectiveness and safety of oral medications for type 2 diabetes mellitus. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 147(6), 178–180.

Brownstein, D. (2002). *Overcoming thyroid disorders*. New York: Medical Alternatives Press.

Cameron, B. L. (2002). Making diabetes management routine. *American Journal of Nursing*, 102(2), 26–33.

Cuchel, M., & Rader, D. J. (2003). The value of raising HDL cholesterol in the elderly. *University of Pennsylvania Institute on Aging*, Winter 2003, pp. 8–10.

Duvoisen, R. (2003). *Diabetes sourcebook: Basic consumer health information about type 1 diabetes, type 2 diabetes, gestational diabetes, and related disorders* (3rd ed.). Detroit: Omnigraphics.

Funnell, M. M., Brown, T. L., Childs, B. P., Haas, L. B., Hoseney, G. M., et al. (2007). National standards for diabetes self-management education. *Diabetes Care*, 30(6), 1630–1637.

Harris, C. (2007). Recognizing thyroid storm in the neurologically impaired patient. *Journal of Neuroscience Nursing*, 39(1), 40–42, 57.

Johns Hopkins Medical Institutions. (2000). Diabetes complications: More than skin deep. *Health After 50*, 11(11), 6.

Liles, A. M., & Harrell, K. (2006). Common thyroid disorders. A review of therapies. *Advances for Nurse Practitioners*, 14(1), 29–32.

Lindeman, R. D., Yau, C. L., Baumgartner, R. N., Morley, J. E., & Garry, P. J. (2003). Longitudinal study of fasting serum glucose concentrations in healthy elderly: The New Mexico aging process study. *Journal of Nutrition, Health, and Aging*, 7(3), 172–177.

Mealey, B. L., & Rethman, M. P. (2003). Periodontal disease and diabetes mellitus. Bidirectional relationship. *Dentistry Today*, 22(4), 107–113.

Miller, J. (2007). Diabetes and thyroid disease: Nursing care to improve outcomes for patients living in poverty. *Nursing Clinics of North America*, 42(1), 113–125.

Mount Sinai School of Medicine. (2000). Exercise lowers diabetes risk. *Focus on Health Aging*, 3(2), 2.

Rahman, K. (2001). Historical perspective on garlic and cardiovascular disease. *Journal of Nutrition*, 131(3s), 977S–979S.

Raterink, G. (2007). Diabetes update: Injectable therapies for type 2 diabetes: Practical applications for older adults with pancreatic failure. *Nursing Clinics of North America*, 42(1):43–57.

Seley, J. A., & Weinger, K. (2007). Executive summary. The state of the science on nursing best practices for diabetes self-management. *American Journal of Nursing*, 107 (6, Supplement), 6–11.

- Sinha, B., & Natrass, M. (2001). Efficacy of new drug therapies for diabetes in the elderly. *Annals of Long-Term Care*, 9(6), 23–29.
- Tkacs, N. C. (2002). Hypoglycemia unawareness. *American Journal of Nursing*, 102(2), 34–40.
- Umeh, L. (2006). Preventing amputation in older adults with diabetes. *Advanced Nursing Practice*, 14(7), 41–43, 70.
- Whittemore, R. (2006). Behavioral interventions for diabetes self-management. *Nursing Clinics of North America*, 41(4), 641–654.
- Whittemore, R. (2007). Culturally competent interventions for Hispanic adults with type 2 diabetes. *Journal of Transcultural Nursing*, 18(2), 15–66.
- Yen, P. (2002). Treating diabetes with diet. *Geriatric Nursing*, 23(5), 175–176.
- Zarowitz, B. (2006). Management of diabetes mellitus in older persons. *Geriatric Nursing*, 27(1), 77–82.

Integumentary Function

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Effects of Aging on the Integument Integumentary Health Promotion Selected Integumentary Conditions

- Pruritus
- Keratosis
- Seborrheic Keratosis
- Skin Cancer
- Vascular Lesions
- Pressure Ulcers

General Nursing Considerations for Integumentary Conditions

- Promoting Normalcy
- Using Alternative Therapies

Perhaps the most obvious effects of growing old are the changes involving the integumentary system. In addition to the effects of aging, past health practices largely influence the status of the integument in old age; its status in old age, in turn, influences older persons' general health. In other words, problems involving other body systems can result from an unhealthy integumentary system. Because gerontological nurses often have more direct contact with older adults than other health care professionals, they play an important role in promoting healthy skin and identifying signs of problems.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 Summarize the effects of aging on the skin.
- 2 List practices that promote good skin health in older adults.
- 3 Describe signs of and nursing care for pruritus, keratosis, seborrheic keratosis, skin cancer, stasis dermatitis, and pressure ulcer in older adults.
- 4 Discuss measures that help older patients cope with skin problems and feel normal.
- 5 Identify alternative therapies that promote good skin health in older adults.

Effects of Aging on the Integument

Lines and wrinkles, thicker nails, and graying hair are constant reminders of the aging process. These result from common aging changes to the integumentary system that include flattening of the dermal-epidermal junction, reduced thickness and vascularity of the dermis, degeneration of elastic fibers, increased coarseness of collagen, loss of pigment cells that gives hair its color, atrophy of hair bulbs, and decline in rate of hair growth. The increased fragility of the skin poses challenges to older adults and their caregivers in that there are heightened risks for skin tears, bruising, ulcer formation, and skin infections. In addition, the effects of this system's aging on appearance are highly visible signs of the aging process, potentially affecting body image, self-concept, reactions from others, socialization, and other psychosocial factors.

Integumentary Health Promotion

Some general measures can help to prevent and manage dermatologic problems in older persons. It is important to avoid drying agents, rough clothing, highly starched linens, and other items irritating to the skin. Good skin nutrition and hydration can be promoted by activity, bath oils, lotions, and massages. Although skin cleanliness is important, excessive bathing may be hazardous to the skin; daily partial sponge baths and complete baths every third or fourth day are sufficient for the average older person. Early attention to and treatment of pruritus and skin lesions are advisable for preventing irritation, infection, and other problems.

Exposure to ultraviolet rays damages the skin, causing a condition known as *solar elastosis*, or photoaging. Loss of elasticity and wrinkling of the skin characterize this sun-induced premature aging of the skin. Fair-skinned individuals who easily burn when in the sun are at particularly high risk of this condition. Sun-screening lotions are beneficial in protecting the skin; the sun protection factor (SPF) required will depend on the ease with which the skin burns and could range from a SPF of 15 or more in highly sensitive persons to a SPF of 4–6 in people who seldom burn and tan dark brown easily. Nurses can remind patients that skin damage can occur on overcast days because ultraviolet rays can penetrate clouds.

With the increased prevalence of skin cancer in late life, educating older adults in skin inspection for abnormalities is a beneficial action. Nurses should encourage older adults to examine their entire bodies with special attention to moles that could indicate

possible carcinomas. To help them remember signs to bring to their health providers' attention, nurses can instruct older adults in the A, B, C, and Ds for detecting unhealthy moles:

- **A—Asymmetry:** If a mole is not round or symmetrical, or one half of the mole is not similar to the other half, it could be a sign of melanoma.
- **B—Border Irregularity:** Cancerous moles have irregular borders that may be uneven, ragged, notched, or blurred.
- **C—Color:** The typical color of a mole is consistently brown throughout. A mole that has changed color over time or is varied in a shade of brown, tan, and black may be cancerous. If melanoma has progressed, the mole may become red, blue, or white.
- **D—Diameter:** Cancerous moles can be more than six millimeters in diameter (about $\frac{1}{4}$ inch or the size of a pencil eraser).

Other mole variations that may indicate melanoma include: elevation in height from the skin surface both horizontally or vertically; a change in feeling, such as itchiness, tenderness, or pain; and the tendency to bleed if scratched. Knowing these signs can enable older individuals in being proactive in their health care and obtaining evaluations and treatment while problems are in an early stage.

Although less serious than the possibility of skin cancer, integument issues affecting the appearance are another area for health promotion. All individuals should be encouraged to look their best and make the most of their appearance. However, efforts to avoid the normal outcomes of the aging process can be fruitless and frustrating. Money that could be applied to more basic needs is sometimes invested in attempts to defy reality. The nurse should emphasize to persons young and old that no cream, lotion, or miracle drug will remove wrinkles and lines or return youthful skin. While clarifying misconceptions regarding rejuvenating products, the nurse can encourage the use of cosmetics to protect the skin and maintain an attractive appearance; many benefits may be derived from this practice.

Because increasing numbers of aging individuals are seeking cosmetic surgery, gerontological nurses will find it beneficial to be informed of the various types of surgical interventions. Nurses can also help patients locate competent cosmetic surgeons. Patients need to be aware that not all surgeons are skilled in cosmetic surgery, and some unfortunate complications have resulted from unskilled physicians performing cosmetic surgery or injecting patients with collagen or silicone. Nurses should also explore patients' reasons for seeking cosmetic surgery to ensure that it is a rational decision rather than a symptom of an underlying problem, such as depression or

Consider This Case

Seventy-year-old Mrs. J is a well-dressed, attractive woman who appears younger than her actual age. She mentions to you that she was widowed earlier this year and has begun to date. “I tend to be attracted to younger men, and many of them like being with a mature woman,” she comments. “I had a facelift when I was 55 and looked great, so I’m thinking about having another one so that I can look young again.”

THINK CRITICALLY

- How would you respond to Mrs. J?
- What advice could you give her?

a neurotic disorder; counseling and therapy may be a more pressing need than surgical intervention in some circumstances. Perhaps as society achieves a greater acceptance and understanding of the aging process, the masking of the effects of aging with cosmetics and surgery will be replaced by an appreciation of the natural beauty of age.



POINT TO PONDER

How much of your self-concept is based on your physical appearance? How do you anticipate reacting to the physical manifestations of aging? ●

Direct contact with patients allows nursing staff to detect skin problems that may not be apparent to other health care professionals. It is important for nurses to regularly assess patients’ skin status (Assessment Guide 28-1) and identify nursing diagnoses (Nursing Diagnosis Table 28-1) and problems in need of referral for medical attention. Because serious complications, such as new pressure ulcers, can result from undetected skin problems, astute attention to skin status is crucial.

Selected Integumentary Conditions

Pruritus

The most common dermatologic problem among older adults is pruritus. Although atrophic changes alone may be responsible for this problem, pruritus can be precipitated by any circumstance that dries the person’s skin, such as excessive bathing and dry heat. Diabetes, arteriosclerosis, hyperthyroidism, uremia, liver disease, cancer, pernicious anemia, and certain psychiatric problems can also contribute to pruritus. If not corrected, the itching may cause traumatizing scratching, leading to breakage and infection of the skin. Prompt recognition of this problem and implementation of corrective measures are, therefore, essential. If possible, the underlying cause should be corrected. Careful assessment is required to assure

conditions, such as scabies, that demand special precautions are not present. Bath oils, moisturizing lotions, and massage are beneficial in treating and preventing pruritus. Vitamin supplements and a high-quality, vitamin-rich diet may be recommended. Topical application of zinc oxide is effective in controlling itching in some individuals. Antihistamines and topical steroids may also be prescribed for relief.



KEY CONCEPT

Excessive bathing and dry heat dry the skin and can promote pruritus.

Keratosis

Keratosis, also referred to as actinic or solar keratosis, are small, light-colored lesions, usually gray or brown, on exposed areas of the skin. Keratin may be accumulated in these lesions, causing the formation of a cutaneous horn with a slightly reddened and swollen base. Freezing agents and acids can be used to destroy the keratotic lesions, but electrodesiccation or surgical excision ensures a more thorough removal. Close nursing observation for changes in keratotic lesions is vital because they are precancerous.

Seborrheic Keratosis

Seborrheic keratosis are dark, wartlike projections on the skin (Fig. 28-1). Older adults commonly have these lesions on various parts of their bodies. The lesions may be as small as a pinhead or as large as a quarter. They tend to increase in size and number with age. In the sebaceous areas of the trunk, face, and neck and in persons with oily skin, these lesions appear dark and oily; in less sebaceous areas, they are dry in appearance and of a light color. Normally, seborrheic keratosis will not have swelling or redness around their base. Sometimes abrasive activity with a gauze pad containing oil will remove small seborrheic keratosis. Larger, raised lesions can be removed by freezing agents or by a curettage and cauterization procedure. Although these lesions are benign, medical evaluation is important to



ASSESSMENT GUIDE 28-1

Skin Status

GENERAL OBSERVATIONS

Much of the status of the integumentary system is evident to the naked eye. A quick observation can assist in evaluating skin color, moisture, and cleanliness; the presence of lesions; hair condition and grooming; and the condition of the nails. Signs such as pallor or flush can provide clues to health problems.

INTERVIEW

Ask the patient about itching, burning sensations on the skin surface, hair loss, increased fragility of nails, and other symptoms associated with integumentary system problems. Also use this opportunity to review bathing and shampooing practices.

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

- **Skin surface.** Examine the entire skin surface from head to toe, including behind the ears, within skin folds, under the breasts, and between the toes. Bathing and massages are good opportunities to inspect the skin in the course of patient care.
- **Lesions.** Describe any lesions as specifically as possible in regard to their color (e.g., purple, black, hypopigmented), configuration (e.g., linear, separate, confluent, annular), size (e.g., measurement of depth and diameter), drainage, and type. Terms used to describe types of lesions include the following:

Macule: a small nonpalpable spot or discoloration

Papule: a discoloration <1/2 cm in diameter with palpable elevation

Plaque: a group of papules

Nodule: a lesion 1/2 to 1 cm in diameter with palpable elevation; the skin may or may not be discolored

Tumor: a lesion >1 cm with palpable elevation; the skin may or may not be discolored

Wheal: a red or white palpable elevation that may occur in variable sizes

Vesicle: a lesion <1/2 cm in diameter that contains fluid and has a palpable elevation

Bulla: a lesion >1/2 cm in diameter that contains fluid and has a palpable elevation

Pustule: a lesion containing purulent fluid; of variable size and palpable elevation

Fissure: a groove in the skin

Ulcer: an open depression in the skin that may occur in variable sizes.

- **Mongolian spots.** Consider that many persons of African, Asian, or Native American backgrounds have Mongolian spots. These are irregular, dark areas (resembling bruises) that may be found on the buttocks, lower back, and to a lesser extent on the arms, abdomen, and thighs.
- **Skin turgor.** Test skin turgor by gently pinching various areas of the skin. Skin turgor tends to be poor in most older adults; however, the areas over the sternum and forehead do experience less of an age-related reduction in turgor and are good areas for turgor assessment.
- **Pressure tolerance.** Assess pressure tolerance by inspecting a pressure point after the patient has been in the same position for half an hour; if redness is present, the patient must be on a turning schedule of every half an hour. If redness is not present, allow the patient to remain in the same position for 1 hour and inspect; if redness is not apparent increase increments by half an hour up to 2 hours.
- **Temperature.** Obtain a gross assessment of skin temperature by using the back of the hands and touching various areas. Note coldness or temperature inequalities between the extremities.

differentiate them from precancerous lesions. In addition, the cosmetic benefit of removal should not be overlooked for the older patient.

Skin Cancer

There are three major skin cancers that are common in late life: basal cell carcinoma, squamous cell carcinoma, and melanoma. Basal cell carcinoma, the most common form of skin cancer, grows slowly and rarely metastasizes. Risk factors for its development include advanced age, and exposure to the sun, ultraviolet radiation, and therapeutic radiation. It commonly occurs on the face, although it can erupt

anywhere on the body. The growths tend to be small, dome-shaped elevations covered by small blood vessels that often resembles benign, flesh-colored moles with a “pearly” surface (Fig. 28-2A). The surface sometimes is dark, rather than shiny, if the growth contains melanin pigments.

As the name implies, squamous cell carcinoma arises in the squamous cells that are on the surface of the skin, the lining of the hollow organs of the body, and the passages of the respiratory and digestive tracts. Sun exposure is the most prevalent factor contributing to the development of this cancer, although some less common factors (e.g., exposure

NURSING DIAGNOSIS

TABLE 28-1 Nursing Diagnoses Related to Dermatologic Problems

Causes or Contributing Factors	Nursing Diagnosis
Altered body appearance	Anxiety
Pruritus, infection, ulcer	Pain
Ulcer; fragile skin	Risk for Infection
More fragile skin	Risk for Injury
Age-related changes to skin, hair, and nails; pain	Disturbed Body Image
Altered self-concept due to age-related changes, more fragile vaginal epithelium	Sexual Dysfunction
Fragile skin, immobility	Impaired Skin Integrity
Altered self-concept due to age-related changes to integument	Impaired Social Interaction
Pressure sites, ulcers	Ineffective Tissue Perfusion

to hydrocarbons, arsenic, radiation) can facilitate its growth. Squamous cell carcinoma can develop in scar tissue and also is associated with suppression of the immune system. These cancers typically appear as firm, skin-colored or red nodules. Squamous cell carcinoma usually stays in the epidermis but can metastasize; the lower lip is a common site of metastasis.

Melanoma tends to metastasize, or spread, more easily than the other forms of skin cancer, making it more deadly if not caught early. The incidence of melanomas has been rising in the United States, probably due to sun exposure. Fair-skinned individuals are at higher risk for melanomas than the general population, and the incidence increases with age.

Melanomas can be classified as follows:

- *Lentigo maligna melanoma.* This black, brown, white, or red pigmented flat lesion occurs predominantly on sun-exposed areas of the body. With time it enlarges and becomes progressively irregularly pigmented. The mean age at diagnosis is 67.



FIGURE 28-1 • Seborrheic keratosis. (From Rosenthal, T. C., Williams, M. E., & Naughton, B. J. [2007]. *Office care geriatrics*. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.)

- *Superficial spreading melanoma.* Most melanomas are of this type. The lesion appears as variable-pigmented plaque with an irregular border. It can occur on any area of the body. Its incidence peaks in middle age and continues to be high through the eighth decade.
- *Nodular melanoma.* This melanoma can be found on any body surface and presents as a darkly pigmented papule that increases in size over time.

Suspicious lesions should be evaluated and biopsied (Fig. 28-2B). Usually, melanomas are excised



FIGURE 28-2 • Common types of skin cancer: **(A)** Basal cell carcinoma. **(B)** Melanoma. (From Rosenthal, T. C., Williams, M. E., & Naughton, B. J. [2007]. *Office care geriatrics*. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.)

with removal of some of the surrounding tissue and subcutaneous fat. Some physicians recommend removal of all palpably enlarged lymph nodes. The prognosis depends on the depth of the melanoma rather than the type.

Nurses should teach older adults to inspect themselves for melanomas, identify moles that demonstrate changes in pigmentation or size, and seek evaluation of suspicious lesions. Early detection improves the prognosis.

Vascular Lesions

Age-related changes can weaken the walls of the veins and reduce the veins' ability to respond to increased venous pressure. Obesity and hereditary factors compound this problem. Weakened vessel walls cause varicose veins. The poor venous return and congestion that result lead to edema of the lower extremities, which leads to poor tissue nutrition. As the poorly nourished legs accumulate debris, inadequately carried away with the venous return, the legs gain a pigmented, cracked, and exudative appearance. Stasis dermatitis, an inflammatory condition associated with chronic venous insufficiency, can result. Subsequent scratching, irritation, or other trauma (which can result from tight elastic-band stockings) that occurs with stasis dermatitis can then easily lead to the formation of leg ulcers. These ulcers, known as *stasis ulcers*, often appear on the medial aspect of the tibia above the malleolus and, prior to skin breakdown, present as a dark discoloration of the skin.

Stasis ulcers need special attention to facilitate healing. Infection must be controlled and necrotic tissue removed before healing will occur. Good nutrition is an important component of the therapy, and a diet high in vitamins and protein is recommended. Once healing has occurred, concern should be given to avoiding situations that promote stasis dermatitis. The patient may need instruction regarding a diet for weight reduction or the planning of high-quality meals. Venous return can be enhanced by elevating the legs several times a day and by preventing interferences to circulation, such as standing for long periods, sitting with legs crossed, and wearing garters. Elastic support stockings may be prescribed and, although effective, can be a challenge for some older adults to apply. The nurse needs to assess the older adult's ability to properly put on these stockings and provide instruction as needed. Some patients may require ligation and stripping of the veins to prevent further episodes of stasis dermatitis.

Pressure Ulcers

Tissue anoxia and ischemia resulting from pressure can cause the necrosis, sloughing, and ulceration

of tissue. This is commonly known as a pressure ulcer, or decubitus ulcer. Box 28-1 describes the recommended system for describing the stages of ulcers. This staging system is used in the Minimum Data Set tool for assessing nursing home residents.

Any part of the body can develop a pressure ulcer, but the most common sites are the sacrum, greater trochanter, and ischial tuberosities (Fig. 28-3). Older adults are at high risk for pressure ulcers because they:

- have skin that is fragile and damages easily
- are often in a poor nutritional state
- have reduced sensation of pressure and pain
- are more frequently affected by immobile and edematous conditions, which contribute to skin breakdown.

In addition to developing more easily in older persons, pressure ulcers require a longer period to heal than in younger people. Therefore, the most important nursing measure is to prevent their formation; to do this, it is essential to avoid unrelieved pressure. Encouraging activity or turning the patient who cannot move independently is necessary. The patient's individual pressure tolerance (see Assessment Guide 28-1) determines the frequency of turning; a turning schedule of every 2 hours may not be sufficient for every patient, and pressure ulcers can develop under that turning schedule. Shearing forces that cause two layers of tissue to move across each other should be prevented by not elevating the head of the bed more than 30°, not allowing patients to slide in bed, and lifting instead of pulling patients when moving them. Use of pillows, flotation pads, alternating-pressure mattresses, and water beds can disperse pressure from bony prominences. However, it must be emphasized that these devices do not eliminate the need for frequent position changes. When sitting in a chair, patients should be urged to move and should be assisted with shifting their weight at certain intervals. Lamb's wool and heel protectors are useful in preventing irritation to bony prominences. The nurse should make sure sheets are kept wrinkle free and check the bed frequently for foreign objects, such as syringes and utensils, which the patient may be lying on unknowingly.



KEY CONCEPT

Some older patients may develop signs of pressure ulcers, even with a turning schedule of every 2 hours, and require more frequent repositioning.

BOX 28-1 Stages of Pressure Ulcers**STAGE I**

A persistent area of skin redness (without a break in the skin) that does not disappear when pressure is relieved

**STAGE II**

A partial thickness loss of skin layers involving the epidermis that presents clinically as an abrasion, blister, or shallow crater

**STAGE III**

A full thickness of skin is lost extending through the epidermis and exposing the subcutaneous tissues; presents as a deep crater with or without undermining adjacent tissue

**STAGE IV**

A full thickness of skin and subcutaneous tissue is lost, exposing muscle, bone, or both; presents as a deep crater that may include necrotic tissue, exudate, sinus tract formation, and infection



A high-protein, vitamin-rich diet to maintain and improve tissue health is also essential to avoid formation of pressure ulcers. Good skin care is another essential ingredient in prevention. Skin should be kept clean and dry; blotting the patient dry will avoid irritation from rubbing the skin with a towel. Bath oils and lotions, used prophylactically, help keep the skin soft and intact. Massage of bony prominences and range-of-motion exercises promote circulation and help keep the tissues well nourished. The person who is incontinent should be thoroughly cleansed with soap and water and dried after each episode to avoid skin breakdown from irritating excreta.

Once evidence of an ulcer is noted, aggressive intervention is necessary to avoid the multiple risks associated with this impairment of skin integrity. Treatment measures depend on the state of the pressure ulcer as identified by the following signs:

- *Hyperemia.* Redness of the skin appears quickly and can disappear quickly if pressure is removed. There is no break in the skin and the underlying tissues remain soft. Relieving the pressure by the use of a square of adhesive foam is useful; it is advisable to protect the skin with a product such as DuoDerm (Squibb) or Tegisorb (3M) before applying the adhesive.
- *Ischemia.* Redness of the skin develops from up to 6 hours of unrelieved pressure and is often accompanied by edema and induration. It can take several days for this area to return to its normal color, during which the epidermis may blister. Skin should be protected with Vigilon, which contains water and is soothing to the area. If the skin surface is broken, it should be cleansed daily with normal saline or the product suggested by your agency.

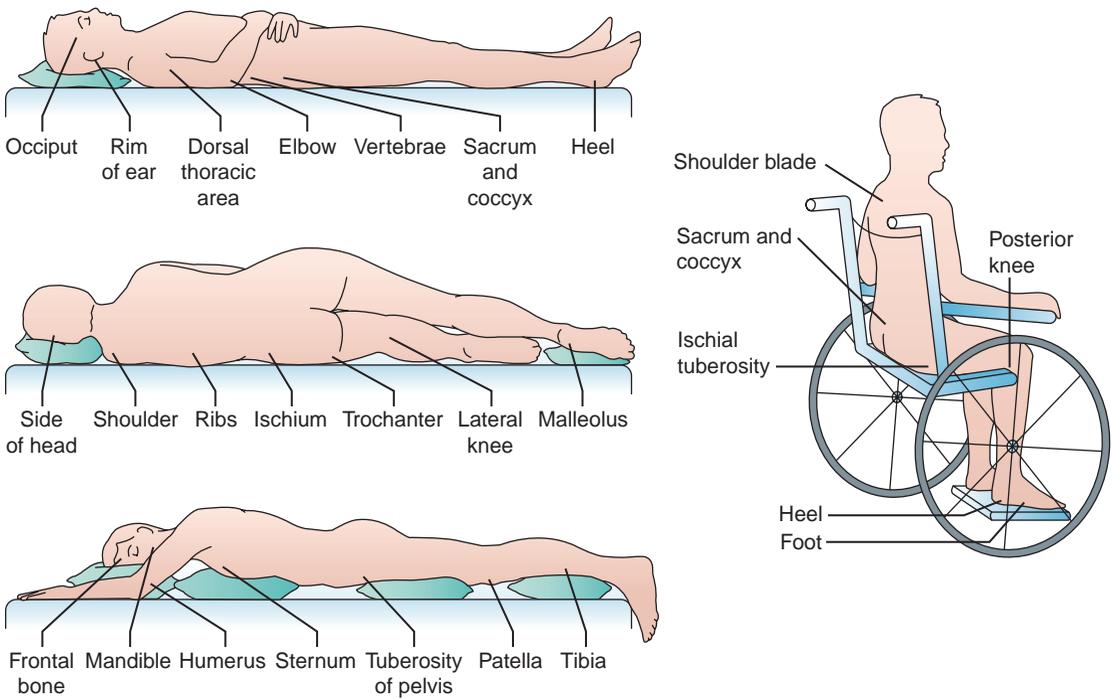


FIGURE 28-3 • Common locations for pressure sores when supine and sitting. (From Miller, C. [2009]. *Nursing for wellness in older adults* [5th ed.]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.)

- **Necrosis.** Unremitting pressure extending over 6 hours can cause ulceration with a necrotic base. This type of sore requires a transparent dressing that protects from bacteria but is permeable to oxygen and water vapor. Thorough irrigation is essential during dressing changes. Sometimes topical antibiotics are used. It may take weeks to months for full healing to occur.
- **Ulceration.** If pressure is not relieved, necrosis will extend through the fascia and potentially to the bone. Eschar, a thick, coagulated crust, is frequently present, and bone destruction and infection may occur. Unless eschar is removed, the underlying tissue will continue to break down, so debridement is essential.

Because the risk of pressure ulcer formation is high among older patients, it is wise for gerontological nurses to assess patients' risk for pressure ulcers upon admission or first contact. Several tools that have been used for several decades can assist in objective assessment of pressure ulcer risk, such as the Braden Scale (Bergstrom, Allman, & Carlson, 1994) and the Norton scale (Norton, McLaren, & Exton-Smith, 1962). The Pressure Sore Status Tool (PSST) (Bates-Jensen, 1996) is an instrument that offers a means for assessing and monitoring existing pressure ulcers using 13 indexes (e.g., size, exudate, necrotic tissue, edema, and granulation). Depending on the patient population served and types of clinical set-

ting, agencies and facilities may develop their own tools to assess risk and monitor pressure ulcers.

General Nursing Considerations for Integumentary Conditions

Promoting Normalcy

Psychological support can be especially important to the patient with a dermatologic problem. Unlike respiratory, cardiac, and other disorders, dermatologic problems are often visibly unpleasant to the patient and others. Visitors and staff may unnecessarily avoid touching and being with the patient in reaction to his or her skin problems. The nurse can reassure visitors regarding the safety of contact with the patient and provide instruction for any special precautions that must be followed. The most important fact to emphasize is that the patient is still normal, with normal needs and feelings, and will appreciate normal interactions and contact.

Using Alternative Therapies

For centuries, various herbs have been used to treat skin problems. Today the use continues, as evidenced by creams, lotions, and shampoos containing aloe, chamomile, and other plant products. Aloe vera has emollient properties when used externally, and many people find it useful for treating

minor cuts and burns. The external application of chamomile extract is used for skin inflammation. Witch hazel has long been used for its astringent effects and is applied externally for the treatment of bruises and swelling.

Essential oils are also increasingly used for the prevention and treatment of skin problems, including thyme oil as an antiseptic, thyme-linalol and rosewood oil for topical acne, rosemary oil for cell regeneration, and the oils of basil, cinnamon, garlic, lavender, lemon, sage, savory, and thyme for insect bites or stings. Topical application of peppermint oil can have an anti-inflammatory effect and speed the healing of wounds and mild burns.

Some homeopathic and naturopathic remedies are being used to treat skin eruptions, as is acupuncture. Biofeedback, guided imagery, and relaxation exercises can help control the symptoms of some dermatologic disorders.

There is belief that nutritional supplements can also be beneficial for skin disorders; those most commonly recommended are zinc, magnesium, essential fatty acids, and vitamins A, B complex, B6, and E. Nurses should urge patients to discuss the use of alternative therapies with their physicians.

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. Discuss the psychosocial implications of pressure ulcers and malignant melanoma.
2. Describe the method for determining an individualized turning schedule.
3. Develop a protocol for the prevention of pressure ulcers.

Resources

American Academy of Facial and Reconstructive Plastic Surgery

<http://www.aafprs.org/patient/procedures/proctypes.html>

American Cancer Society

<http://www.cancer.org>

National Arthritis and Musculoskeletal and Skin Diseases Information Clearinghouse

<http://www.nih.gov/niams>

Skin Cancer Foundation

<http://www.skincancer.org>

References

- Bates-Jensen, B. M. (1996). Why and how to assess pressure ulcers. Presented at the Ninth Annual Symposium on Advanced Wound Care, Atlanta, April 20, 1996.
- Bergstrom, M., Allman, R. M., & Carlson, E. D. (1994). Treatment of Pressure Ulcers. Clinical Practice Guideline No. 15, AHCPR Pub No 95-0652. Rockville, MD: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, Agency for Health Care Policy and Research.
- Norton, D., McLaren, R., & Exton-Smith, A. N. (1962). *An investigation of geriatric nursing problems in the hospital*. London: National Corporation for the Care of Old People.

Recommended Readings

- Ayello, E. A., & Braden, B. (2001). Why is pressure ulcer risk assessment so important? *Nursing* 2001, 31(11), 75–79.
- Black, J., Baharestani, M., Cuddigan, J., Dormer, B., Edsberg, L., et al. (2007). National Pressure Ulcer Advisory Panel's updated pressure ulcer staging system. *Dermatology Nursing*, 19(4), 343–349.
- Bryant, R. A. (Ed). (2000). *Acute and chronic wounds: Nursing management* (2d ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Consortium for Spinal Cord Medicine. (2007). Pressure ulcer prevention and treatment following spinal cord injury: A clinical practice guideline for health care professionals. Guideline available at <http://www.pva.org>. Washington, DC: Paralyzed Veterans of America.
- Hess, C. T. (2000). *Nurse's clinical guide to wound care* (3rd ed.). Springhouse, PA: Springhouse.
- Johns Hopkins Medical Institutions. (2000). Diabetes complications: More than skin deep. *Health After* 50, 11(11), 6.
- Krasner, D. L., Rodeheaver, G. T., & Sibbald, R. G. (Eds.). (2001). *Chronic wound care: A clinical source book for healthcare professionals* (3rd ed.). Wayne, PA: HMP Communications.
- Maklebust, J., & Sieggreen, M. (2001). *Pressure ulcers: Guidelines for prevention and nursing management* (3rd ed.). Springhouse, PA: Springhouse.
- Montalvo, I. (2007). Pressure ulcer prevention. *American Journal of Nursing*, 107(7), 15.
- Morison, M. J. (Ed). (2001). *The prevention and treatment of pressure ulcers*. St. Louis: Mosby.
- Norman, R. A. (2001). Causes and management of xerosis and pruritus in the elderly. *Annals of Long-Term Care*, 9(12), 35–40.
- Rosenberg, C. J. (2002). New checklist for pressure ulcer prevention. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 28(8), 7–12.
- Scaif, L. A., & Shenefeld, P. D., (2007). Contact dermatitis: Diagnosing and treating skin conditions in the elderly. *Geriatrics*, 62(6), 14–19.
- Sprigle, S., Linden, M., McKenna, D., Davis, K., & Riordan, B. (2001). Clinical skin temperature measurement to predict incipient pressure ulcers. *Advances in Skin and Wound Care*, 14(3), 133–137.
- Sussman, C., & Bates-Jensen, B. M. (2001). *Wound care: A collaborative practice manual for physical therapists and nurses* (2nd ed.). Gaithersburg, MD: Aspen Publishers.
- Thompson, J. (2000). A practical guide to wound care. *RN*, 63(1), 48–49.
- Vap, P. W., & Dunaye, T. (2000). Pressure ulcer risk assessment in long-term care nursing. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 26(6), 37–45.
- Worley, C.A. (2007). Skin failure: The permissible pressure ulcer? *Dermatology Nursing*, 19(4), 384–385.

CHAPTER 29

Immune Function

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Effects of Aging on Immune Function Immunologic Health Promotion

- Diet
- Exercise
- Immunization
- Stress Management
- Mind–Body Connection
- Careful Use of Antibiotics

Our bodies are exposed to many bacteria over the course of the average day, yet we do not develop infectious diseases from each exposure. Our ability to protect ourselves is the result of the effectiveness of the immune system. However, *immune senescence*, an age-related decline in the immune system's function, increases the body's susceptibility to infections and diminishes the strength of the immune response. In addition, the high prevalence of chronic conditions in late life enables infectious agents to invade easily, and the high rate of hospitalization and institutionalization increases the exposure to pathogens. The result is that older adults experience infectious diseases that usually are more severe than those of younger adults. Strengthening the older adult's immune system and protecting against factors that promote infection are essential to gerontological nursing care.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 List major changes in immunologic function as the result of aging.
- 2 Discuss natural approaches to promoting immunologic health.
- 3 Describe the risks associated with overuse and misuse of antibiotics.

**KEY CONCEPT**

An age-related decline in the immune system's function, known as *immune senescence*, increases susceptibility to infections.

Effects of Aging on Immune Function

Simply put, the immune system works in the following manner:

1. An antigen (invading bacteria) enters the body.
2. A macrophage attacks the antigen and retains some of the antigen's protein on its surface.
3. The macrophage carries the protein markers to lymphoid tissue where T lymphocytes interpret them as foreign.
4. Stimulated by this activity, antibodies are produced by a white blood cell called a B cell and attack the antigens.

This process is called the antigen–antibody reaction. Once the body has been exposed to an antigen, it stores information about the antigen in its memory system to use in the future for protection of the body. (This is the principle on which vaccination works.) When functioning optimally, the immune system offers resistance to infection that maintains health.

There are changes within the immune system and some differences in the way in which it responds in late life. The thymus gland progressively declines in size with age, although the number of T and B cells in circulation does not significantly decrease; however, there is an increased number of immature T cells in the thymus and blood. T-cell function declines, resulting in a reduced response to foreign antigens because of decreases in cell-mediated immunity and humoral immunity. Cell-mediated immunity is deficient. The inability of many older adults to raise a delayed cutaneous hypersensitivity response (e.g., with a tuberculin test) is related to this. The total concentration of immunoglobulins in the blood is not significantly altered with age, although there are changes in the serum distribution of IgA and IgG, which increase, and IgM and IgD, which decrease. A reduced antibody response to pneumococcus, influenza, and tetanus vaccines is noted (although these are recommended for older people). The skin loses macrophages (Langerhans cells), and when this is combined with reduced thickness and circulation to the skin, local defenses against infections are weakened.

**KEY CONCEPT**

The inability of many older adults to raise a delayed cutaneous hypersensitivity response can alter the results of skin tests.

Immunologic Health Promotion

To compensate for older adults' compromised immune function and high prevalence of health conditions that increases the risk for infections, health practices that stimulate immunity are essential nursing interventions in gerontological care. Some interventions that could prove useful are discussed in the following sections and outlined in the Nursing Diagnosis Highlight: Risk for Infection.

Diet

In addition to maintaining a good nutritional state, older people can include foods in their diet that positively affect immunity; some of these include milk, yogurt, nonfat cottage cheese, eggs, fresh fruits and vegetables, nuts, garlic, onion, sprouts, pure honey, and unsulfured molasses. A daily multivitamin and mineral supplement is also helpful; specific nutrients that have immune-boosting effects are listed in Box 29-1. Intake of refined carbohydrates, saturated and polyunsaturated fats, caffeine, and alcohol should be limited.

Fasting, the abstinence of solid foods for 1 to 2 days, is becoming increasingly popular as a means to promote health and healing. The effects of fasting on the immune system include (Steinman, Conlin, Maki & Foster, 2003; Muller, 2001):

- increased macrophage activity, immunoglobulin levels, and neutrophil antibacterial activity
- improvement of cell-mediated immunity, ability of monocytes to kill bacteria, and natural killer cell activity
- reductions in free radicals and antioxidant damage

For most persons, a day or two without food is safe; however, an assessment of health status is essential before beginning a fast because fasting can alter some health conditions and medication needs. Also, maintaining good fluid intake during a fast is essential.

**POINT TO PONDER**

In what types of practices do you engage that boost your immune system and offer you protection from infection? What can you do to improve on this? ●

NURSING DIAGNOSIS HIGHLIGHT

RISK FOR INFECTION

Overview

Risk for infection implies that an individual has a potential to develop an infection resulting from factors such as age, residence, lifestyle, or health conditions.

Causative or contributing factors

Age-related decline in immune system's function, high prevalence of chronic conditions, high rate of hospitalization and institutionalization, and age-related changes to body systems (e.g., enlarged prostate, weaker bladder muscles, increased residual capacity of lungs, increased fragility of skin).

Goal

The patient will be free from infection.

Interventions

- Promote good general health.
- Ensure patient is current for all immunizations.

- Encourage dietary intake of foods that have positive effect on immunity, such as nonfat dairy products, fresh fish, fruits, vegetables, garlic, grains, pure honey, unsulfured molasses.
- Assist patient in maintaining skin integrity.
- Instruct in stress management techniques.
- Encourage and assist with regular exercise.
- Counsel patient against overuse of antibiotics. Consider use of immune-boosting herbs, such as echinacea, garlic, ginseng, and goldenseal.
- Instruct patient in infection control measures and early recognition of infection.
- Ensure all caregivers adhere to strict infection prevention and control measures.

Exercise

Any type of regular physical activity can enhance immune function. Exercises such as yoga and t'ai chi are low impact and have a positive effect on immunity. There are exercises that can benefit persons with various levels of physical function, and nurses can assist patients in developing a regular exercise program that is tailored to their unique needs (see Chapter 24 for more information on physical activity and exercise).

Immunization

General immunizations that are recommended for older persons, unless contraindicated, include:

- pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine: once in a lifetime unless vaccinated before age 65
- influenza vaccine: annually
- tetanus and diphtheria toxoids: every 10 years

If there is significant risk of exposure and immunity does not exist as a result of having the

disease or being vaccinated, older adults should be immunized against:

- measles, mumps, and rubella: once
- varicella: once

Special circumstances demand immunization against hepatitis:

- hepatitis A: for individuals who are IV drug users, engage in homosexual sexual activity, or who reside or travel in areas with high rates of infection
- hepatitis B: for persons who are IV drug users, engage in homosexual sexual activity, receive hemodialysis, or have received blood transfusions

**KEY CONCEPT**

Vaccinations for older adults should include pneumococcal vaccination once in a lifetime, influenza vaccination annually, and tetanus and diphtheria vaccinations every 10 years. Other vaccines may be administered under special conditions.

BOX 29-1 Nutrients With Immune-Boosting Effects

Protein
Vitamins A, E, B₁, B₂, B₆, B₁₂, C
Folic acid
Pantothenic acid
Iron

Magnesium
Manganese
Selenium
Zinc



FIGURE 29-1 • Managing stress and developing an optimistic attitude can promote good immunologic health.

Stress Management

The thymus, spleen, and lymph nodes are involved in the stress response; therefore, stress can affect the function of the immune system. Some stress-related diseases, including arthritis, depression, hypertension, and diabetes mellitus, cause a rise in serum cortisol, a powerful immunosuppressant. Elevated cortisol levels can lead to a breakdown in lymphoid tissue, inhibition of the production of natural killer cells, increases in T-suppressor cells, and reductions in the levels of T-helper cells and virus-fighting interferon. Some stress reduction measures that nurses can encourage older adults to use include progressive relaxation, meditation, prayer, yoga, imagery, exercise, diversional activity, and replacement of caffeine and “junk” foods with juices and nutritious snacks (Fig. 29-1).

Mind–Body Connection

It is recognized that a person’s psychological state can affect physical health; in fact, the specialty of psychoneuroimmunology has emerged in recognition that thoughts and emotions affect the immune system. Studies have identified traits consistent with strong immune systems to include the following (Cohen, 2002; Cohen & Miller, 2001):

- assertiveness
- faith in God or a higher power
- ability to trust and offer unconditional love
- willingness to be open and confide in others
- purposeful activity
- control over one’s life
- acceptance of stress as a challenge rather than a threat
- altruism
- development and exercise of multiple facets of personality

POINT TO PONDER

Do your psychological traits positively support your immunity? ●

Nursing interventions that assist older adults with the developmental tasks of aging (see Chapter 2) and maintaining satisfying relationships with others are useful in promoting an immune-enhancing psychological state.

In addition to releasing endorphins and increasing the body’s oxygenation and heart rate, laughter and humor can stimulate immunologic function. Nurses can use therapeutic humor by sharing jokes, providing comedy videos or audiotaped comedy programs, and finding laughter and levity among the occurrences in the average day.

Careful Use of Antibiotics

More than 133 million courses of antibiotics are prescribed annually to community-based persons and 190 million daily doses of antibiotics are administered in hospitals in the United States (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2003). Serious consequences have resulted from the overuse and misuse of antibiotics. Some strains of bacteria are resistant to penicillin and ampicillin, and many are resistant to all antibiotics except highly potent and toxic form. Furthermore, antibiotics can produce side effects and adverse reactions that can cause serious consequences (Table 29-1). A trend has been

TABLE 29-1 Adverse Effects of Antibiotics

Antibiotic	Adverse Effect
Cephalosporin, penicillin, fluoroquinolones, macrolides, erythromycin	Nausea, gastrointestinal upset
Vancomycin, cotrimoxazole	Kidney toxicity
Isoniazid, penicillin, cephalosporin, erythromycin, cotrimoxazole	Liver toxicity
Penicillin-like antibiotics	Neutropenia
Nalidixic acid, methronidazole	Convulsions
Aminoglycosides	Hearing impairments
Tetracyclines	Photophobia
Penicillin	Muscle inflammation

BOX 29-2 Alternatives to Antibiotics

Some herbs have gained popularity for their effectiveness in preventing and treating infections:

- *Echinacea*, long used by Native Americans, has been shown to increase the number and activity of white blood cells, promote phagocytosis, and stimulate the reproduction of T-helper cells and cytokines (Libster, 2002). Because echinacea can activate autoimmune

aggressions and other overreactive immune responses, it is contraindicated in persons with AIDS, multiple sclerosis, or tuberculosis.

- *Garlic* is known for its antibiotic, antifungal, and antiviral properties.
- *Siberian ginseng* is a general tonic that can boost the immune system.

noted in long-term care facilities in which multiple antibiotic-resistant *Klebsiella* and *Escherichia coli* are being observed, attributable to the use of broad-spectrum oral antibiotics and poor infection control techniques (El Solh, Pietrantonio, Bhat, Bhora, & Berbary, 2004; Wick, 2006).

**KEY CONCEPT**

Overuse and misuse of antibiotics have resulted in many strains of bacteria becoming resistant to antibiotics.

Nurses play a significant role in promoting safety in antibiotic use. Some suggestions include:

- assist patients in health promotion efforts to increase their resistance to infections
- adhere to strict infection control practices
- use alternatives to antibiotics whenever possible (Box 29-2)
- educate consumers about the realities and risks of antibiotics
- advise patients not to save and use antibiotics for future illnesses

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. What major points would you discuss if you were presenting a health education class at a senior citizen center on the topic of “Boosting Your Immunity?”
2. What are the differences between your generation and that of your grandparents in regard to lifestyle and environmental factors that could influence immunity to infection and disease?
3. What factors have contributed to the overuse of antibiotics? How were these factors related to society’s attitude and priorities?
4. How did conventional medical care in the United States contribute to antibiotic overuse? What can be done to change this?

Resources**National Center for Preparedness, Detection, and Control of Infectious Diseases**

<http://www.cdc.gov/ncpcid/>

Norman Cousins Center for Psychoneuroimmunology

<http://www.cousinspni.org>

References

- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2003). Promoting appropriate antibiotic use in the community. Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases Website. Retrieved 5/25/03, from <http://www.cdc.gov/drugresistance/community/>.
- Cohen, S. (2002). Psychosocial stress, social networks, and susceptibility to infection. In H. G. Koenig, & H. J. Cohen (Eds.). *The link between religion and health: Psychoneuroimmunology and the faith factor*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Cohen, S., & Miller, G. E. (2001). Stress, immunity, and susceptibility to upper respiratory infections. In R. Ader, D. Felten, & N. Cohen (Eds.). *Psychoneuroimmunology* (3rd ed.). New York: Academic Press.
- El Solh, A. A., Pietrantonio, C., Bhat, A., Bhora, M., & Berbary, E. (2004). Indicators of potentially drug-resistant bacteria in severe nursing home-acquired pneumonia. *Clinical Infectious Diseases*, 39(4), 474–480.
- Libster, M. (2002). *Delmar’s integrative herb guide for nurses* (pp. 263–272). Florence, KY: Delmar/Thompson Learning.
- Muller, H. (2001). Fasting followed by vegetarian diet in patients with rheumatoid arthritis: A systematic review. *Scandinavian Journal of Rheumatology*, 30(1), 1–10.
- Saputo, L., & Faass, N. (Eds.) (2002). *Boosting immunity. Creating wellness naturally*. Novato, CA: New World Library.
- Steinman, L., Conlin, P., Maki, R., & Foster, A. (2003). The intricate interplay among body weight, stress, and the immune response to friend or foe? *Journal of Clinical Investigation*, 111, 183–185.
- Wick, J.Y. (2006). Infection control and the long-term care facility. *Consultant Pharmacist*, 21(6), 467–480.

Recommended Readings

- Ader, R., Felten, D., & Cohen, N. (Eds.). (2001). *Psychoneuroimmunology* (3rd ed.). New York: Academic Press.
- Barbacane, J. L. (2004). Back to basics: Handwashing. *Geriatric Nursing*, 25(2), 90–92.
- Coleman, P. R. (2004). Pneumonia in the long-term care setting: Etiology, management, and prevention. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 30(4), 14–23.
- Fletcher, K. R., & Cinalli, M. (2007). Identification, optimal management, and infection control measures for *Clostridium difficile*-associated disease in long term care. *Geriatric Nursing*, 28(3), 171–181.
- Fraser, M. (2007). Community-acquired pneumonia in the elderly. *ElderCare*, 7(1), 6–8.
- Lashley, F. R., & Durham, J. D. (2007). *Emerging infectious diseases: Trends and issues*. New York: Springer Publishing.
- Meydani, S. N., Meydani, M., Blumberg, J. B., et al. (1997). Vitamin E supplementation and in vivo immune response in healthy elderly subjects. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 277, 1380–1386.
- Moldawer, N., & Carr, E. (2000). The promise of recombinant interleukin-2. *American Journal of Nursing*, 100(5), 35–40.
- Resnick, B. (2006). Research review: Influenza vaccinations: Where are we and where do we need to go? *Geriatric Nursing*, 27(1), 31–32.
- Wilson, W. R. (2007). *Current diagnosis and treatment in infectious diseases*. New York: McGraw-Hill.



UNIT 6

Multisystemic Disorders

- 30 INFECTIONS
- 31 CANCER
- 32 MENTAL HEALTH DISORDERS
- 33 DELIRIUM AND DEMENTIA

CHAPTER 30

Infections

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Unique Manifestations of Infection in Older Adults

Common Infections

- Urinary Tract Infection
- Prostatitis
- Pneumonia
- Influenza
- Tuberculosis
- Vaginitis
- Herpes Zoster
- Scabies
- HIV and AIDS
- Clostridium difficile* Infection
- Antibiotic-Resistant Microorganisms

As described in Chapter 29, age-related changes in the immune system and the high prevalence of diseases in the older population heighten the risk for infections. Infections tend to have more profound effects in older adults, causing them significant consequences. Since the mid-1980s, the rates of hospitalization for septicemia among older adults have more than doubled, with the primary sources being urinary tract infections, cystitis, pneumonia, pressure ulcer, cellulitis, and renal infections (DeFrances & Paul, 2006). Older adults have a high rate of iatrogenic infections associated with their increased exposure to health care settings (i.e., hospitalizations and nursing home residence). Understanding the predisposing

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 Describe unique aspects of infection in older adults.
- 2 Describe features of common infections in older adults and related nursing interventions.

BOX 30-1 Possible Signs of Infection in Older Adults

- Delirium
- Fever
- Chills
- Hypotension
- Increased pulse
- Increased respiration
- Flank pain
- Hematuria, pyuria
- Dysuria, burning
- Urinary frequency
- Incontinence
- Cough
- Chest discomfort
- Purulent sputum
- Rhinorrhea
- Nasal congestion
- Headache
- Malaise
- Anorexia
- Weight loss
- Vomiting
- Diarrhea
- Mucus or blood in stool
- Purulent drainage
- Pain or swelling over joint
- >10,000 white blood cells in blood
- >100,000 bacteria/mL in urine
- Decreased arterial blood gases
- Positive blood, sputum, cerebrospinal fluid, or wound culture

factors and related interventions to prevent the development of infections are basic to gerontological nursing practice.

Unique Manifestations of Infection in Older Adults

The challenges presented by the increased risk and incidence of infections in older adults are compounded by the fact that infections often do not present in the typical manner that is seen in adults of younger ages (Box 30-1). Fever, the primary clinical sign of an infection, can be undetected in older persons because their lower baseline temperatures can cause them to be febrile at temperatures of 99°F; consequently, caregivers accustomed to the fevers of 101°F in other age groups may miss the presentation of fever in older individuals. Often, older adults manifest infections through lethargy, weakness, and anorexia; these symptoms may be attributed to advanced age or other health conditions rather than an infection. Changes in mental status, incontinence, and increased incidence of falls may be related to the presence of infections in older adults, but could be erroneously attributed to other causes. The failure to interpret the atypical symptoms can result in delayed diagnosis of infections.

Common Infections

Urinary Tract Infection

Infections of the urinary tract are the most common infection of the aged, affecting as many as 1 in 10 older adults annually (Graves et al., 2007). Furthermore, urinary tract infections (UTIs) increase in prevalence with age. Although UTIs occur more

frequently in women than men at younger ages, the gap between the sexes narrows in late life, which is attributable to reduced sexual intercourse in women and a higher incidence of bladder outlet obstruction secondary to benign prostatic hyperplasia in men. Organisms primarily responsible for UTIs are *Escherichia coli* in women and *Proteus* species in men. The presence of any foreign body in the urinary tract or anything that slows or obstructs the flow of urine (e.g., immobilization, urethral strictures, neoplasms, or a clogged indwelling catheter) predisposes the individual to these infections. UTIs can result from poor hygienic practices, improper cleansing after bowel elimination, a predisposition created by low fluid intake and excessive fluid loss, and hormonal changes, which reduce the body's resistance. Persons in a debilitated state or who have neurogenic bladders, arteriosclerosis, or diabetes also have a high risk of developing UTIs.



KEY CONCEPT

Urinary tract infections can result from poor hygienic practices, prostate problems, catheterization, dehydration, diabetes, arteriosclerosis, neurogenic bladders, and general debilitated states.

The gerontological nurse should be alert to the signs and symptoms of UTIs. Early indicators include burning, urgency, and fever. Some older adults develop incontinence and delirium with UTIs. Awareness of the patient's normal body temperature helps the nurse recognize the presence of fever, for instance, 99°F (37°C) in a patient whose normal temperature is 96.8°F (35°C). Some

urologists believe that many UTIs in older adults seem asymptomatic due to lack of awareness of elevations in normal temperature from the baseline norm. The nurse can significantly facilitate diagnosis by informing the physician of temperature increases from the patient's normal level. Bacteriuria greater than 105 CFU/mL confirms the diagnosis of UTI. As a UTI progresses, retention, incontinence, and hematuria may occur.

Treatment aims to establish adequate urinary drainage and control the infection through antibiotic therapy. The nurse should carefully note the patient's fluid intake and output. Forcing fluids is advisable, provided that the patient's cardiac status does not contraindicate this action. Observation for new symptoms, bladder distention, skin irritation, and other unusual signs should continue as the patient recovers.

Severe UTIs leading to septicemia occur more frequently among older persons than the young, as do recurrent UTIs. Urosepsis (septicemia secondary to UTI) is a common complication of persons with indwelling catheters, so selective use of catheters is important.

Asymptomatic bacteriuria is a common finding in older adults and usually is not treated, although it is important to assess underlying factors that could contribute to this condition.

Cranberry juice has long been promoted as a means to reduce UTIs; research now supports this belief. A study conducted at the Harvard Medical School demonstrated a reduction in the frequency of bacteria and white blood cells in the urine of women who regularly consumed cranberry juice (Jepson & Craig, 2007). The gerontological nurse may want to promote the daily inclusion of cranberry juice in the diet of older adults. (It may be best to use forms such as capsules that have no sugar added to avoid the high sugar content of some commercial brands; these capsules and other freeze-dried forms of cranberry juice are available at most health food stores.)

Prostatitis

Prostatitis is the most common UTI among older men. Although nonbacterial prostatitis is responsible for some cases, most infections are bacterial in origin. Acute bacterial prostatitis is characterized by the systemic symptoms of fever, chills, and malaise, whereas these symptoms are uncommon with chronic bacterial prostatitis. Both types will present urinary symptoms of frequency, nocturia, dysuria, and varying degrees of bladder obstruction secondary to an edematous, enlarged prostate, as well as lower back and perineal pain. A simple urinalysis usually can identify the pathogen responsible for acute bacterial prostatitis; with the chronic form, a special process may be used to collect a clean-catch

TABLE 30-1 Deaths From Pneumonia in the Older Population

Age Group	Death Rate/100,000 Population
55–64 years	10.7
65–74 years	34.0
75–84 years	137.0
85+ years	571.2

Source: National Center for Health Statistics. Trends in health and aging. (2004). *Death rates by age, sex, race, and underlying cause, 1981–2004*. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, accessed 9/25/07, <http://209.217.72.34/aging/TableViewer/tableView.aspx?ReportId=427>.

urine sample, with prostatic secretions obtained by massaging the prostate during the procedure. Acute prostatitis usually responds well to antibiotic therapy; chronic prostatitis responds less well to antibiotics and is more difficult to treat.

Pneumonia

Pneumonia, especially bronchopneumonia, is common in older adults and is one of the leading causes of death in this age group (Table 30-1). Several factors contribute to its high incidence:

- poor chest expansion and more shallow breathing due to age-related changes to the respiratory system
- high prevalence of respiratory diseases that promote mucus formation and bronchial obstruction
- lowered resistance to infection
- reduced sensitivity of pharyngeal reflexes that promotes aspiration of foreign material
- high incidence of conditions that cause reduced mobility and debilitation (Fig. 30-1)
- greater likelihood for older adults to be hospitalized or institutionalized and develop nosocomial pneumonia than younger persons

Pneumococcal pneumonia caused by *Streptococcus pneumoniae* is the most common type of pneumonia in older adults. Other pneumonias are caused by gram-negative bacilli (*Klebsiella pneumoniae*), *Legionella pneumophila*, anaerobic bacteria, and influenza (*Haemophilus influenzae*).

The signs and symptoms of pneumonia may be altered in older persons, and serious pneumonia may exist without symptoms being evident. Pleuritic pain, for instance, may not be as severe as that described by younger patients. Differences in body temperature may cause minimal or no fever.



FIGURE 30-1 • Immobile states increase the risk for pneumonia in older adults.

Symptoms may include a slight cough, fatigue, and rapid respiration. Confusion, restlessness, and behavioral changes may occur as a result of cerebral hypoxia. Nursing care for the older patient with pneumonia is similar to that used for the younger patient. Close observation for subtle changes is especially important. The aged patient also can develop the complication of paralytic ileus, which can be prevented by mobility.

KEY CONCEPT

Productive cough, fever, and chest pain may be atypical in older adults because of age-related changes and cause a delayed diagnosis of pneumonia.

Although their effectiveness continues to be debated, pneumococcal vaccines are recommended for persons over 65 years of age. The vaccine should not be administered during a febrile illness. Concurrent administration with influenza and some other vaccines is acceptable, providing that different injection sites are used. Common side effects are local redness, fever, myalgia, and malaise. Some individuals may experience arthritic flare-ups and, more rarely, paresthesias and other neuropathies. Despite the fact that the duration of protection from the

vaccine is currently uncertain, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recommend a single vaccination. Nurses should be sure to document the administration of the vaccine, along with the name of the manufacturer, lot number, and expiration date. The CDC also advises that if there is doubt whether the vaccine has already been given, it is best to administer the vaccine rather than risk pneumonia. The revaccination of older adults with pneumococcal vaccines has been shown to cause local site reactions lasting several days but no life-threatening effects (High, 2007; Jackson et al., 2003).

Influenza

Most deaths from influenza occur in the older population, emphasizing the seriousness of this infection to older adults. Of the two subtypes of influenza, influenza A is the most frequent cause of serious illness and death in older adults; influenza B is less severe, although it can produce serious problems for older adults. Age-related changes, including an impaired immune response to the virus, cause older persons to be highly susceptible to influenza. Typically, influenza causes fever (although not as high as in younger adults), myalgia, sore throat, and nonproductive cough. Once it attacks, influenza destroys ciliated epithelial cells of the respiratory tract and depresses mucociliary clearance. Secondary bacterial infections and other complications increase the risk of older adults dying as a result of influenza. Patients with chronic respiratory, cardiac, or metabolic disease are at particularly high risk of developing secondary bacteria pneumonia. Nonpulmonary complications can include myositis, pericarditis, Guillain-Barré syndrome, encephalitis, and a temporary loss of smell or taste.

The serious consequences of influenza for older adults necessitate preventive measures. Because influenza is acquired through inhalation of infected droplets, reducing contact with persons with known or suspected influenza is important. Prevention also can be achieved by annual influenza vaccination, which is recommended for persons over age 65 years. Although older persons have lower antibody titers after vaccination than younger adults, vaccination can prevent severe complications associated with influenza, even if it does not prevent the disease itself. Approximately 2 weeks are needed for an antibody response to the vaccine; therefore, administration of the vaccine in October is recommended. Because the flu season can last through February, vaccinations for older adults can be administered after October. Daily vitamin and mineral supplements with enhanced antioxidants have been shown to increase antibody titers in older people after influenza vaccines have been administered (Wouters-Wesseling et al., 2002),

suggesting that the relatively safe practice of administering supplements be considered in gerontological care. Immunity gradually declines in the months following vaccination, so annual revaccination is needed. The vaccine is contraindicated in persons with febrile conditions and egg allergy and those with a history of Guillain-Barré syndrome. The blood level of carbamazepine, phenobarbital, phenytoin, theophylline, and warfarin can rise within 1 to 4 weeks after vaccination; therefore, patients using these drugs need to be closely monitored for toxic reactions. It is advisable for persons who work with older adults to be immunized.



KEY CONCEPT

Although older adults have lower antibody titers than younger persons after vaccination, influenza vaccines can prevent severe complications associated with the disease, even if they do not prevent the disease itself.

Tuberculosis

The incidence of tuberculosis has been decreasing. A reactivation of an earlier asymptomatic or improperly treated infection is more common than new infection in older adults, and older adults in institutional settings are at higher risk of contracting this infection than community-based older persons. Diagnosis may be delayed, either because the classic symptoms are not demonstrated or because symptoms resemble changes associated with many other geriatric conditions. For instance, anorexia, weight loss, and weakness may be the primary symptoms. Night sweats may not occur because of reduced diaphoresis with advanced age. Likewise, fever may not be detected because of alterations in body temperature in late life. These factors emphasize the importance of periodic evaluation for this disease.

Screening for tuberculosis should be performed for all patients entering a hospital or facility for geriatric care, and groups of older persons, such as senior citizen organizations, should be checked periodically. A two-step Mantoux test is recommended for older adults because of the high incidence of false-negative results (i.e., if the result is negative after the first test, the test should be repeated in 1 week, which could cause a conversion if the infection is present, owing to the booster phenomenon associated with a waned response).



KEY CONCEPT

Because of the risk of false-negative results, a two-step Mantoux test is recommended for tuberculosis screening in older adults.

Treatment for tuberculosis follows the same principles as for any age group, basically consisting of rest, good nutrition, and medications. Some of the side effects of medications commonly prescribed for tuberculosis have special implications for older persons. Streptomycin can cause damage to the peripheral and central nervous systems, demonstrated through hearing limitations and disequilibrium, which create safety risks. Para-aminosalicylic acid can cause irritation to the gastrointestinal tract, anorexia, nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea, which can predispose older adults to the risk of malnutrition. Changes in gastric secretions can cause these tablets to pass through the gastrointestinal system without being dissolved, thereby preventing a therapeutic benefit; stools should be examined for undissolved tablets. Isoniazid, although not as toxic as the other drugs mentioned, can have toxic effects on the peripheral and central nervous systems. The nurse must assess the patient regularly for the presence of adverse reactions to such medications.

A diagnosis of tuberculosis can be extremely difficult for some older persons to accept. Having lived through an era when people with tuberculosis were sent to sanitariums for long periods of time, older adults may be unaware of new approaches to treatment and fear institutionalization. Believing they could infect family and friends, they may avoid contact with others, promoting social isolation. Other people may fear contracting the disease and be reluctant to maintain social contact. Educating patients, their families, and friends is essential to clarify these misconceptions and promote a normal lifestyle.

Nurses must teach patients their responsibilities in managing this disease. Medication is essential for the treatment of tuberculosis, and because the older person may have a problem remembering to take it, nurses should devise a system for helping the patient remember how to administer the medication. For example, medications and denture cream could be placed in the same box, so that during daily denture care, medications would be remembered. The patient, a family member, or a visiting nurse could fill seven envelopes with medications, labeling them for each day of the week, and devise a chart for recording when medication is taken. A family member or friend could call the patient daily to ask whether medication was taken. With prompt and proper therapy, the older person can recover from tuberculosis with minimal residual effects.

Vaginitis

With advancing age, the vaginal epithelium thins, which is accompanied by a loss of tissue elasticity. Secretions become alkaline and of lesser quantity. The flora changes, affecting the natural protection that the

vagina normally provides. These changes predispose the older woman to the common infection, senile vaginitis. Soreness, pruritus, burning, and a reddened vagina are symptoms, and the accompanying vaginal discharge is clear, brown, or white. As it progresses, vaginitis can cause bleeding and adhesions.

Local estrogens in suppository or cream form are usually effective in treating senile vaginitis. Nurses should ensure that patients understand the proper use of these topical medications and do not attempt to administer them orally. Boric acid, zinc, lysine, or gentian violet douches may also be prescribed. Some herbal medicine practitioners recommend a douche of antiseptic herbs, such as St. John's wort, goldenseal, echinacea, garlic, self-heal, and calendula. If the patient is to administer a douche at home, it is important to emphasize the need to measure the solution's temperature. Altered receptors for hot and cold temperatures and reduced pain sensation predispose the patient to burns from solutions excessively hot for fragile vaginal tissue. Good hygienic practices help treat and prevent vaginitis.

KEY CONCEPT

Older women should be advised to measure the temperature of douche solutions because altered receptors for temperatures and reduced pain sensations predispose them to burns.

Women can be advised to use a variety of natural approaches to the treatment of vaginitis. Vaginal infections have responded well to vitamins A, B complex, C, E, and β -carotene. An increased intake of acidophilus yogurt and garlic can help fight fungal infections, as can the avoidance of fermented foods and refined sugars.

Herpes Zoster

Herpes zoster, or shingles, is an acute viral infection usually caused in older adults by a reactivation of the latent varicella virus (the same virus that causes chickenpox) in the dorsal root ganglia. The weakening of immunity associated with aging is believed to contribute to the increased incidence of this problem with age; radiation, chemotherapy, or other factors that disturb immune mechanisms also can cause shingles.

The disease begins with pain and itching of the skin, followed in several days by the formation of vesicles. The eruption follows the path of a sensory nerve and can occur anywhere on the body, although the thoracic and abdominal areas are the most common sites. Treatment is symptomatic, consisting of analgesics, corticosteroids, and topical preparations to dry the lesions. Older adults are more likely than

other age groups to experience postherpetic neuralgia. If herpes zoster is recurrent or if dissemination is widespread, the patient should be evaluated for the possibility of an underlying lymphoma or other immune deficiency.

KEY CONCEPT

Older adults are more likely than younger persons to experience postherpetic neuralgia.

Scabies

Scabies is a highly contagious, pruritic skin eruption caused by a mite, the *Sarcoptes scabiei*. On contact, the female itch mite burrows under the skin and lays eggs. In 8 to 17 days, the larvae mature and travel to the skin surface to mate. After mating, the male dies on the skin surface while the female burrows back under the skin to lay eggs.

Intense pruritus, caused by an allergic reaction to the mites and their waste products, is characteristic of scabies. Pruritus worsens at night. On inspection, the skin appears excoriated. The rash typically is present in the interdigital webs, hands, wrists, elbows, abdominal folds, around the nipples, and on the genitalia, although older adults also can have a rash on the face, scalp, back, buttocks, and knees. Close examination of the rash can detect the burrow (a linear ridge with a vesicle on one end) where the mite is found. Without careful examination, the rash can be incorrectly attributed to other dermatologic conditions, such as eczema; therefore, astute assessment is essential.

KEY CONCEPT

On inspection of the scabies rash, a burrow can be detected where the mite is located.

Diagnosis is made by scraping the lesions with a scalpel and having the material examined under a microscope for evidence of mites, eggs, or their wastes. A burrow ink test or application of mineral oil on the lesions can be done to enhance visualization of the burrows. Even with a negative finding on the scrapings, the patient may be treated if symptoms are consistent with scabies.

The case study in Box 30-2 describes the treatment and nursing care of patients with scabies.

HIV and AIDS

Although HIV and AIDS are thought of as younger persons' diseases, a little more than 10% of all cases occur in people over age 65—a number that has been consistent since the beginning of the AIDS

BOX 30-2 Control of a Scabies Outbreak in a Long-Term-Care Facility

For the past 2 weeks, a growing number of residents of Great Oaks Nursing Home have been complaining of severe itching and presenting with a skin rash. The skin rash showed no consistent pattern among residents: some experienced a rash on the hands, wrists, and between the fingers, and others had a rash on the back and buttocks. Nursing staff initially applied moisturizing lotions, but residents obtained no relief. Observation revealed that itching worsened when residents were in bed, giving rise to the suspicion that perhaps the laundry was using an irritating detergent to wash linens; however, a review of the laundry's practice demonstrated no change in their procedures or chemicals used. When some nursing staff began to develop similar symptoms, it was suspected that the rash was contagious rather than a contact dermatitis. Close inspection of the rashes revealed thin, wavy, brown lines, characteristic of scabies. The diagnosis was confirmed through microscopic examination of scraped lesions.

Residents and staff with evidence of the infection were prescribed Lindane to kill the scabies and oral antihistamines and mild topical corticosteroid agents to control pruritus (a rash and pruritus could persist for as long as 1 month after treatment is initiated). Other staff and visitors who had had close contact with infected residents were encouraged to be treated

also. In addition, the following measures were taken to control the infection from spreading:

- Wearing of gowns and gloves for staff and visitors who have close contact with infected persons for the initial 24-hour period after treatment has begun
- Meticulous handwashing
- Laundry isolation during entire period of treatment. Laundering of all linens and previously worn clothing in hot water or dry cleaned. Sealing items that cannot be laundered (e.g., shoes, coats) in plastic bags and not used for 2 weeks
- Disinfection of surfaces of mattresses; turning of mattresses on side that was not in contact with residents
- Disinfection of furniture surfaces (mites are able to live up to 3 days on a surface off the body)
- Notification of the health department (although it is usually not required to report isolated cases, the health department may want to investigate and provide consultation for outbreaks of this scope)
- Education of residents, visitors, and staff about cause and nature of infection, treatment, precautions, and prognosis
- Ongoing monitoring by the facility's infection control nurse

epidemic (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2007). Unfortunately, HIV and AIDS can be misdiagnosed due to the low index of suspicion in this age group. Health care professionals may not consider that older adults could be practicing unprotected sex (although without pregnancy to worry about, the probability of this is high) or be homosexual. Also, this infection can be overlooked due to the similarity of symptoms to common conditions in older adults. For example, cognitive impairment may be attributed to Alzheimer's disease rather than HIV-related dementia.

Risk factors for HIV are the same for older people as younger adults and include vaginal or anal sex without using a condom; sharing needles or syringes; receiving transfusions, blood products, or organ transplants between 1978 and 1985; and getting tattoos or body piercings with a contaminated needle.

Initial symptoms appear within the first few weeks of being infected with the virus and resemble those of the flu, such as low-grade fever, headache, sore throat, fatigue, nausea, and a rash. These symptoms can last for several months, and then the

infected person can be asymptomatic for several years. Blood will test positive for the HIV antibody about 2 months after the infection is contracted. Years after HIV has invaded the body, symptoms may appear again (Box 30-3). Infection with HIV needs to be considered when these symptoms are present. AIDS is diagnosed when people who are HIV positive develop decreased CD4+ lymphocyte count, an opportunistic infection (e.g., pneumonia or septicemia), an opportunistic cancer (e.g., Kaposi's sarcoma or invasive cervical cancer), wasting syndrome (loss of at least 10% of body weight), or dementia.

The high risk for infection of older adults is compounded when they have HIV/AIDS. Infection prevention measures need to be strictly adhered to, and signs of infection need to be identified early. Promotion of good nutrition can offer protection from infection and improve general health status. As these patients may become easily fatigued, mealtime assistance can spare their energy and facilitate good intake.

Emotional support is a crucial part of the care of any person with HIV/AIDS, and this may be

BOX 30-3 Symptoms That Can Develop Years After HIV Has Invaded the Body

Persistent fever
Drenching night sweats
Headaches
Fatigue
Chronic diarrhea
Thrush
Persistent vaginitis

Herpes zoster
Lymph node swelling
Meningitis
Palsies
Pain
Dementia

even more significant for older adults, particularly if their infection is associated with unprotected sex. Many people still feel uncomfortable with the notion of older adults being sexually active or engaging in homosexual relationships; therefore, older adults may have difficulty admitting their infection to close friends and family. In addition, the infected older adult may be rejected or treated with disdain by family and friends. A nonjudgmental attitude, listening ear, and emotional support are crucial components of the care of these patients.

POINT TO PONDER

What values and attitudes do you hold that influence your feelings about people who have contracted HIV/AIDS in extramarital or homosexual relationships? How could this influence your care of these patients? ●

Clostridium difficile Infection

Clostridium difficile has become the most common cause of nosocomial infectious diarrhea in nursing home settings. The consequences of *C. difficile* in causing a wide range of clinical illnesses, as well as severe and life threatening disease, has led to it being renamed *C. difficile*-associated disease (Bartlett & Makris, 2007).

Age-related changes and the compromised health status of nursing home residents contribute to the high risk for *C. difficile* infections; other risk factors include overuse of antibiotics, immunosuppressant therapy, gastrointubation, and gastric feeding tubes. Oral-fecal transmission of *C. difficile*, from the hands of caregivers or contaminated surfaces, causes the spread of this infection.

Diarrhea and abdominal cramps are common symptoms associated with *C. difficile* infections. Other symptoms can include delirium, low-grade fever, nausea, anorexia, and general malaise. Diagnosis is confirmed through laboratory tests of stool, including antigen detection assays and toxin testing.

The first line of treatment for mild cases of *C. difficile* is metronidazole. Vancomycin is recommended for serious cases or when patients do not respond to metronidazole within a few days of treatment. For some patients with recurrent *C. difficile*-associated disease, probiotics or biotherapy with *Saccharomyces boulardii* or *Lactobacillus* GG can be effective. Correction of fluid and electrolyte imbalances is crucial.

Because this infection can spread from infected fecal matter being transported by contaminated objects or hands, the use of gloves, strict handwashing techniques, cleaning of environmental surfaces (usually with a bleach solution), and use of enteric

Consider This Case

You are having a clinical experience in a nursing home and observe several of the nursing caregivers not washing their hands between the care of different residents or after emptying bedpans. You know this violates basic infection prevention principles but want to be tactful, as the staff does not look positively at having students present. You nicely ask one of the caregivers, “How often am I supposed to wash my hands?” in the hopes that this may drop a hint to improve their handwashing practices. “Wash them before you eat and before you leave,” the caregiver responds. “If you do it more, you’ll just make your hands raw.”

THINK CRITICALLY

- How can you help to correct this practice?

or contact precautions are crucial. Monitoring hydration status is important due to the risk of dehydration secondary to diarrhea.



KEY CONCEPT

The spores of pathogens like *C. difficile* can persist on the surfaces of furniture and equipment for months and contaminate the hands of caregivers; strict adherence to handwashing procedures is crucial to protect both patients and caregivers from developing infections.

Antibiotic-Resistant Microorganisms

Methicillin-Resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA)

A serious situation has evolved in recent years with the inability to control certain infections due to the resistance of pathogens to antibiotics. *Staphylococcus aureus*, a bacterium commonly found on the skin of healthy people, can enter the body and cause infections. The infections can range from minor (e.g., boils or pimples) to quite serious (e.g., pneumonia or septicemia). Until the introduction of penicillin, the fatality rate for bacteremia caused by *S. aureus* was 90%, but the use of the antibiotic significantly improved survival. However, within a short period, a strain of *S. aureus* grew that was resistant to penicillin. Methicillin was introduced in the 1960s as an effective new means of treating these infections, but in the 1980s, the pathogen grew resistant to this antibiotic, and health care settings began to see epidemics of methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* (MRSA) infections.

MRSA infection typically develops in hospitalized or institutionalized people who are old, are debilitated, or have an open wound or catheter that allows the bacteria to enter the body. It spreads through nasopharyngeal secretions and hands. For a time, vancomycin was effective against MRSA, but resistance to this antibiotic led to the need for new drugs. Linezolid (Zyvox) and the combination of quinupristin with dalbopristin (Synercid) have since offered treatment options.

Vancomycin-Resistant *Enterococcus* (VRE)

In the 1990s, strains of vancomycin-resistant *Enterococcus* (VRE) began to appear, which have now become significant sources of nosocomial infection. VRE infections tend to be resistant to most of the drugs previously used to treat such infections; furthermore, it is believed that genes present in VRE can be transferred to other gram-positive microorganisms, such as *Staphylococcus aureus*. Persons who are severely ill, debilitated, or immunosuppressed or who have had major surgical procedures, an indwelling urinary or central venous catheter, or antibiotic therapy are at

risk for VRE infection. At present, Zyvox and Synercid are the only drugs effective against VRE.

It is important to promote immunologic health as part of infection prevention and control. Chapter 29 provides specific measures that can prove beneficial.



POINT TO PONDER

What self-care practices do you follow to strengthen your defenses against infection? In what ways could you improve this? ●

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. What would you include in a health education session to teach older adults about prevention, recognition, and care of influenza and pneumonia?
2. What are some of the reasons for HIV/AIDS not being identified in older adults?
3. Describe potential implications for your community if the residents of a local senior citizen housing complex developed an acute respiratory infection that was resistant to all currently available antibiotics. What actions could be taken to protect the community?

References

- Bartlett, J. G., & Makris, A. T. (2007). *Clostridium difficile*-associated disease in the long-term care setting: Strategies for identification, management, and infection control. *Caring for the Ages, supplement*, Elsevier Society News Group.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2007). Epidemiology of HIV/AIDS—United States, 1981–2005. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 55(21), 589–592.
- DeFrances, M. J., & Paul, C. J. (2006). 2005 National Hospital Discharge Survey. *Advance Data*, 12(385), 1–19.
- Graves, N., Tong, E., Mortaon, A. P., Holton, K., Curtis, M., et al. (2007). Factors associated with health care-acquired urinary tract infection. *American Journal of Infection Control*, 35(6), 387–392.
- High, K. (2007). Immunizations in older adults. *Clinical Geriatric Medicine*, 23(3), 669–685.
- Jackson, L. A., Neuzil, K. M., Yu, O., Benson, P., Barlow, W. E., Adams, A. L., et al. (2003). Effectiveness of pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine in older adults. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 348(18), 1747–1755.
- Jepson, R. G., & Craig, J. C. (2007). A systematic review of the evidence for cranberries and blueberries in UTI prevention. *Molecular Nutrition and Food Research*, 51(6), 738–745.
- Wouters-Wesseling, W., Rozendaal, M., Snijder, M., et al. (2002). Effect of a complete nutritional supplement on antibody response to influenza vaccine in older people. *Journals of Gerontology Series A: Biological Sciences and Medical Sciences*, 57(9), M563.

Recommended Readings

- Applebaum, P. C. (2007). Microbiology of antibiotic resistance in *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Clinical Infectious Diseases*, 45 (Suppl 3), S165–170.
- Arden, N. H. (2001). Prevention and treatment of influenza in the long-term care facility. *Annals of Long-Term Care*, 9(12), 45–52.
- Ball, S. C. (2006). The older patient with HIV infection. *AIDS Read*, 16(4), 187–188, 191–192.
- Blais, D. (2004). Urinary tract infections among the institutionalized older adult. *Perspectives*, 28(2), 23–27, 29–34.
- Bockhold, K. M. (2000). Who's afraid of hepatitis C? *American Journal of Nursing*, 100(5), 26–32.
- Chan Carusoni, S. B., Walter, S. D., Brazil, K., & Loeb, M. B. (2007). Pneumonia and lower respiratory infections in nursing home residents: Predictors of hospitalization and mortality. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*, 55(3), 414–419.
- Coyne, P. J., Lyne, M. E., & Watson, A. C. (2002). Symptom management in people with AIDS. *American Journal of Nursing*, 102(9), 48–64.
- Crogan, N. L., & Evans, B. C. (2007). *Clostridium difficile*: An emerging epidemic in nursing homes. *Geriatric Nursing*, 28(3), 161–164.
- Emler, C. A. (2006). A comparison of HIV stigma and disclosure patterns between older and younger adults living with HIV/AIDS. *AIDS Patient Care STDS* 20(5), 350–358.
- Fletcher, K. R., & Cinalli, M. (2007). Identification, optimal management, and infection control measures for *Clostridium difficile* associated disease in long-term care. *Geriatric Nursing*, 28(3), 171–181.
- Fraser, M. (2007). Community-acquired pneumonia in the elderly. *ElderCare*, 7(1), 6–8.
- Gonzales, R., Sauaia, A., & Corbett, K. K. (2004). Antibiotic treatment of acute respiratory tract infections in the elderly: Effect of a multidimensional educational intervention. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society* 52(1), 39–45.
- Kirksey, K. M., Goodroad, B. K., Kempainen, J. K., et al. (2002). Complementary therapy use in persons with HIV/AIDS. *Journal of Holistic Nursing*, 20(3), 250–263.
- Kostka, P., & Prackzo, K. (2007). Interrelationship between physical activity, symptomatology of upper respiratory tract infections, and depression in elderly people. *Gerontology*, 53(4), 187–193.
- Lieberman, D., & Lieberman, D. (2001). Treating community-acquired pneumonia in the elderly. *Clinical Geriatrics*, 9(3), 66–74.
- Maloney, C. (2002). Estrogen and recurrent UTI in postmenopausal women. *American Journal of Nursing*, 102(8), 44–60.
- Midthun, S. C., Paur, R. Bruce, A. W., & Midthun, P. (2005). Urinary tract infections in the elderly: A survey of physicians and nurses. *Geriatric Nursing*, 26(4), 245–251.
- Mody, L. (2007). Infection control issues in older adults. *Clinical Geriatric Medicine*, 23(3), 499–514.
- Peters, P. H. (2001). Influenza and its impact on the elderly. *Clinical Geriatrics*, 9(2), 30–43.
- Regan, S. E., & Fowler, C. (2002). Influenza: Past, present, and future. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 28(11), 30–37.
- Resnick, B. (2006). Research review: Influenza vaccinations: Where are we and where do we need to go? *Geriatric Nursing*, 27(1), 31–32.
- Richards, C.L. (2007). Infection control in long-term care facilities. *Journal of the American Medical Directors Association*, 8(3 supplement), S18–S25.
- Richards, C., Osterweil, D., & Stratton, C. W. (2001). From macrolides to ketolides: Meeting the antimicrobial needs in the current age of resistance. *Annals of Long-Term Care*, 9(8), 47–51.
- Trzcianowska, H., & Mortensen, E. (2001). HIV and AIDS: Separating fact from fiction. *American Journal of Nursing*, 101(6), 53–63.
- Ungvarski, P. J. (2001). The past 20 years of AIDS. *American Journal of Nursing*, 101(6), 26–36.
- Vance, D.E., & Burrage, J.W. (2006). Promoting successful cognitive aging in adults with HIV: Strategies for intervention. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 32(11), 34–41.
- Williams, A. B. (2001). Adherence to HIV regimens: Ten vital lessons. *American Journal of Nursing*, 101(6), 37–44.
- Williams, J. R., & Luggen, A. S. (2004). Gerontologic nurse practitioner care guidelines: Cellulitis in the elderly person. *Geriatric Nursing*, 25(6), 373–374.
- Wisnivesky, J. P., Carnavali, F. C., & McGinn, T. G. (2001). Diagnosis and management of pulmonary tuberculosis in the elderly patient. *Clinical Geriatrics*, 9(8), 58–63.
- Woolery, W.A., & Franco, F.R. (2004). Fever of unknown origin: Keys to determining the etiology in older patients. *Geriatrics*, 59(10), 1–45.

CHAPTER 3 I

Cancer

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Aging and Cancer

Unique Challenges for Older Persons With Cancer
Explanations for Increased Incidence in Old Age

Cancer Risk Factors

Heredity
Diet
Drinking Water
Tobacco
Alcohol
Radiation
Ultraviolet Radiation
Occupational Exposure to Carcinogens
Radon
Special Risks for Women
Other Contributing Factors

Prevention and Screening

Treatment

Conventional Treatment
Complementary and Alternative Medicine

Nursing Considerations for Older Adults With Cancer

Providing Patient Education
Promoting Optimum Care
Providing Support to Patients and Families

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 Discuss the prevalence and risks of cancer in the older population.
- 2 Describe reasons for cancer being more complex in older adults.
- 3 List factors that increase the risk of cancer.
- 4 Outline preventive measures that can reduce the risk of cancer in older adults.
- 5 Describe increased risks for older adults receiving conventional cancer treatment.
- 6 Discuss reasons for patients' choice to use complementary and alternative medicine (CAM).
- 7 List issues to evaluate in the selection of CAM for patients with cancer.
- 8 Discuss nursing considerations in caring for older patients with cancer.

Caring for older adults with cancer is a nearly inescapable aspect of gerontological nursing. Cancer is a disease of older people, being the second leading cause of death in persons age 65 years and older (National Center for Health Statistics, 2004). Most new cases are diagnosed in older adults, and the probability of developing this disease dramatically increases with advancing age. The National Cancer Institute acknowledges that age is the single most important risk factor for cancer. Cancer rates increase from childhood on, with the most dramatic increases being in late life (Table 31-1). The rates peak at age 80–84 years for males and at age 85 and above for females; the rates for white and black females do not increase as rapidly as those for their male counterparts. The rates for white females are similar to those for black females until age 70 and older, when they are slightly higher. Even if there were no increase in cancer rates, the prevalence of cancer in older adults will

rise in the future as the older population continues to grow.



KEY CONCEPT

More than half of the persons diagnosed with cancer are over age 65.

Gerontological nurses have a significant role to play in the prevention, diagnosis, and treatment of cancer. Encouraging healthy lifestyle habits in persons of all ages can help reduce the risk factors for developing cancer. Educating patients about cancer screening and facilitating their efforts to obtain tests can enable cancers to be detected in early stages, thereby increasing survival rates. Creative, holistic, and skillful nursing interventions that offer support—physical, emotional, and spiritual—to individuals diagnosed with cancer and their significant others promote the best possible quality of life in the presence of the disease.

TABLE 31-1 Age Distribution (%) of Cancer Incidence Cases by Site, 2000–2004

Site	Percentage of Cases by Age								# Cases
	<20	20–34	35–44	45–54	55–64	65–74	75–84	85+	
All sites	1.1	2.7	5.9	13.6	20.9	25.8	22.6	7.4	1,671,579
Oral cavity & pharynx	0.5	2.4	7.1	20.6	24.7	22.3	16.7	5.7	37,724
Digestive system	0.2	1.0	3.7	11.8	18.5	25.9	27.6	11.4	315,879
Respiratory system	0.1	0.4	2.2	9.3	21.4	32.1	27.7	6.9	241,947
Bones & joints	28.7	16.5	11.5	13.0	10.1	8.6	7.8	3.8	3,368
Soft tissue	10.4	10.8	11.5	15.1	15.1	15.4	15.8	5.9	11,229
Skin	1.0	8.2	13.1	18.4	18.3	18.2	16.9	6.0	73,577
Breast (female)	0.0	1.9	10.6	22.2	22.9	20.2	16.7	5.4	249,269
Breast (female – <i>in situ</i>)	0.0	0.8	11.5	27.9	25.1	19.9	12.5	2.3	56,858
Female genital system	0.4	4.6	10.4	19.3	23.1	19.9	16.4	5.7	95,736
Male genital system	0.2	1.8	1.7	8.6	26.3	35.3	21.6	4.6	270,722
Urinary system	0.6	0.9	3.7	10.9	19.5	27.2	27.7	9.4	122,645
Eye & orbit	14.1	3.4	7.6	14.6	18.2	19.2	17.3	5.7	2,948
Brain & nervous system	13.6	9.4	10.6	15.1	16.6	16.5	14.3	3.9	23,509
Endocrine system	3.7	17.4	22.1	22.4	15.5	11.2	6.3	1.4	34,012
Lymphoma	3.1	7.8	9.0	13.9	16.9	20.8	21.3	7.4	79,164
Myeloma	0.0	0.6	3.4	11.6	19.6	27.3	28.1	9.3	19,652
Leukemia	10.9	4.8	5.7	9.9	14.5	20.4	23.7	10.2	44,047
Kaposi sarcoma	0.1	19.5	36.3	17.5	6.0	6.4	8.5	5.6	2,529
Mesothelioma	0.1	0.7	2.2	6.6	16.2	28.2	37.2	8.9	3,830
Ill-defined & unspecified	0.5	1.0	3.0	9.9	16.3	23.5	29.9	15.9	38,021

Data includes all races, both sexes. Source: National Cancer Institute. *SEER Cancer Statistics Review 1975–2004*. http://www.seer.cancer.gov/cgi-bin/csr/1975_2004/search.pl.

Aging and Cancer

Unique Challenges for Older Persons With Cancer

Cancer in any age group presents many clinical challenges; however, in older adults, the complexities are even greater. Despite having the highest rate of most cancers, older adults have the lowest rate of receiving early detection tests; thus, their disease may be in an advanced stage when diagnosed (Walker & Covinsky, 2001; Bradley, Given, Dahman, Luo & Virnig, 2007). In addition, it is the rare older adult who does not have another health condition (e.g., heart disease, diabetes mellitus, arthritis, or chronic obstructive pulmonary disease [COPD]) present when diagnosed with cancer. The presence of multiple health conditions elevates the risk of complications, disability, and death for older patients diagnosed with cancer. Further, concern regarding how the older patient's already compromised organs will tolerate chemotherapy and other cancer therapies could impact treatment decisions. Survival rates for older adults are lower than in younger persons for most types of cancer, even if they are diagnosed at the same stage.

Explanations for Increased Incidence in Old Age

As mentioned, cancer primarily is a disease of old age, but why is that so? There are two major theories that attempt to explain the increased incidence of cancer with age. The first has to do with biological, age-related changes that impair the ability to resist diseases. This theory is supported by decreases in the mitochondrial activity of the cell that reduce its ability to resist cancer. Changes in the immune system (reduced T-cell activity, interleukin-2 levels, and mitogen responsiveness) impair the body's ability to recognize cancerous cells and destroy them.

Prolonged exposure to carcinogens over the years is another explanation for the rising incidence of cancer with age. This is demonstrated by the growth of melanomas on the skin of persons who have had chronic exposure to damaging ultraviolet rays and the development of lung cancer in industrial workers who regularly breathed toxic substances.

Although the extent of responsibility that either age-related changes or exposure has in the development of cancer cannot be clearly stated at this time, it is evident that aging adults face an increased risk of developing cancer; therefore, the reduction of risk factors is beneficial.



KEY CONCEPT

The increased incidence of cancer with age could result from age-related changes that reduce the ability to resist the disease or prolonged exposure to carcinogens.

Cancer Risk Factors

Heredity

Heredity is known to play a role in the development of certain types of cancer. For example, inherited alterations in the genes called BRCA1 and BRCA2 (short for *breast cancer 1* and *breast cancer 2*) are involved in many cases of hereditary breast and ovarian cancer. The risk that BRCA1 or BRCA2 is associated with these cancers is highest in women with a family history of multiple cases of breast cancer; with at least one family member having two primary cancers at different sites, or who are of Eastern European (Ashkenazi) Jewish background (American Cancer Society, 2007; Brekelmans et al., 2001).



KEY CONCEPT

As many as 10% of women carry the gene for the hereditary form of breast cancer.

Diet

There is a link between a high-fat diet and certain cancers, such as cancer of the breast, colon, uterus, and prostate. Obesity increases the rates of cancer of the prostate, pancreas, uterus, colon, and ovary and to breast cancer in older women. Conversely, a diet rich in fiber and antioxidants can offer protection against some types of cancer.

Research has shown that cooking certain meats at high temperatures creates chemicals that are not present in uncooked meats, and a few of these chemicals may increase cancer risk. In addition, researchers have discovered that people who ate diets high in animal fat had higher rates of stomach and colorectal cancer than those who ate low animal fat diets (Doyle, 2007; Palli et al., 2000). Additional studies have shown that an increased risk of developing pancreatic and breast cancer is associated with high intakes of well-done, fried, or barbecued meats. Microwaving meats at least 2 minutes before cooking can reduce the risk (Thomas, 2003).



KEY CONCEPT

Eating foods as close to their natural form as possible is a good health habit and could have benefits in reducing the risk of cancer.

Many people fear that food additives, which now number in the thousands, are causing a variety of conditions, ranging from attention deficit disorder to cancer. However, there is no clear evidence that food additives are risk factors for cancer. The government claims that the careful laboratory screening of these substances before they are introduced to the market assures safety. (Information about food additives is available from the U.S. Food and Drug Administration's Center for Food Safety and Applied Nutrition, <http://www.cfsan.fda.gov>).

Although the correlation between higher rates of brain cancer and the use of aspartame gave rise to suspicion that artificial sweeteners are a risk factor in the development of cancer, the link between artificial sweeteners and cancer has not been proven (Samuels, 2007).

Coffee was believed to contribute to cancer, but the National Cancer Institute has not proved any link. Solvents (e.g., ethylene chloride [dichloromethane], ethyl acetate, and trichloroethylene) once used in the process of decaffeinating coffee were suspected as having a role in cancer development; however, coffee makers now use alternative solvents that are considered without risk.

Drinking Water

The contamination of drinking water from nitrate, a chemical used in fertilizers, has been associated with an increased risk of non-Hodgkin's lymphoma (Ward et al., 2006). The risk is directly correlated to the level of nitrates consumed and is particularly high in rural areas. Interestingly, vegetables high in nitrate content, such as spinach, beets, and lettuce, did not carry the same risk.

There has also been considerable debate regarding the role of fluoridated water in the development of cancer. However, numerous studies have not shown that fluoride increases the risk of cancer, and the National Cancer Institute (2003) supports this position.

Tobacco

Cigarette smoking is the most significant cause of lung cancer and the leading cause of lung cancer death in both men and women. Smoking is also responsible for one-third of all cancer deaths and for most cancers of the larynx, oral cavity, and esophagus. It is highly associated with the development of, and deaths from, bladder, kidney, pancreatic, and cervical cancers (National Cancer Institute, 2007a).



KEY CONCEPT

Environmental exposure to secondhand smoke increases the risk of lung cancer to nonsmokers.

Alcohol

Heavy alcohol consumption increases the risk of cancer of the mouth, throat, esophagus, larynx, and liver. It is wise to limit alcoholic beverages to no more than two drinks per day.

Radiation

Periodically, through the media or questions from consumers, nurses may hear concern that the radiation emitted from handheld cellular phones can increase the risk of cancer. Although no studies to date have shown a definite relationship, the long-term health effects of cellular phone use is yet to be known (Inskip et al., 2001; Trichopoulos & Adami, 2001; Warren, Prevatt, Daly, & Antonelli, 2003; National Cancer Institute, 2005).

Before the 1950s, x-rays were used to treat acne, ringworm of the scalp, and enlarged thymus, tonsils, and adenoids. This exposure to radiation increased the risk for thyroid cancer. It is important to ask about these treatments in the health assessment of older adults so that special attention can be given to examination of their thyroid gland.

Ultraviolet Radiation

Repeated exposure to ultraviolet rays from the sun, sunlamps, and tanning beds can increase the risk of skin cancer, particularly in persons with fair skin. Blocking the sun's rays with hats and long-sleeved clothing and using sunscreens rated between 15 and 30 sun protection factor (SPF) are useful protective measures.



KEY CONCEPT

It is important to advise younger people that the tanning they subject their skin to today could cost them in an increased risk of cancer as they grow older.

Occupational Exposure to Carcinogens

Exposure to asbestos, nickel, cadmium, uranium, radon, vinyl chloride, benzene, and other substances can increase the risk of cancer. This reinforces the importance of obtaining a full occupational history during the assessment to identify potential health risks.

Radon

Radon is an invisible, odorless, and tasteless gas that seeps up through the ground and diffuses into the air. It can enter homes through cracks in the foundation. Outdoors, radon gas exists at harmless levels, but in areas without adequate ventilation, radon can accumulate to levels that substantially increase

the risk of lung cancer (Boffetta, 2006; Duckworth, Frank-Stromborg, Oleckno, Duffy, & Burns, 2002). This happens because when radon decays, it emits tiny radioactive particles that damage the lungs when inhaled. Inexpensive testing kits are available to determine the radon level in a home. If high radon levels are detected, special measures can be taken to reduce them. (More information can be obtained through state and local government agencies and from the National Safety Council's radon hotline at 1-800-SOS-RADON [1-800-767-7236]; <http://www.epa.gov/radon/rnlines.html>).

Special Risks for Women

A variety of factors have been associated with increased breast and ovarian cancer risk (National Cancer Institute, 2007b; Martin & Weber, 2000). Because most of these cancers occur in women over age 50 years (except those cancers related to an altered BRCA1 or BRCA2 gene in women who often develop breast or ovarian cancer before age 50), increased age is a factor (Turchetti, Cortesi, Federico, Romagnoli, & Silingardi, 2002). Women who had their first menstrual period before the age of 12 or experienced menopause after age 55 have a slightly increased risk of breast cancer, as do women who had their first child after age 30. Women who have a first-degree relative (mother, sister, or daughter) or other close relative with breast and/or ovarian cancer may be at increased risk for developing these cancers. Women whose mothers took diethylstilbestrol (DES) during pregnancy have an increased risk of vaginal cancer (Li et al., 2003). In addition, women with relatives who have had colon cancer are at increased risk of developing ovarian cancer. Excess estrogen is suspected to contribute to breast cancer because of its natural role in stimulating breast cell growth. Long-term hormonal replacement therapy may increase a woman's risk of breast and ovarian cancer, although research is inconclusive at this time. Exercise could decrease the risk of breast cancer.

Other Contributing Factors

A variety of additional factors have been speculated to have a role in cancer. For instance, some people think that because stress and other “toxic” emotions can depress immune function, they also can contribute to cancer. Evidence currently does not conclusively support this relationship. Some people have theorized that dental conditions could influence the development of breast cancer because they block the flow of energy through the acupuncture meridian on which the breast lies. The theories continue to grow. Gerontological nurses need discretion to sort through these theories and while promoting positive health habits, not alarm patients with unsupported claims.

Prevention and Screening

A review of the risk factors for cancer offers insights into some of the preventive measures that could prove useful in avoiding this disease. Box 31-1 outlines some preventive measures that nurses can incorporate into health education and counseling. Many cancers can be prevented by these healthy lifestyle practices that minimize risks.



POINT TO PONDER

What are your risks for developing cancer? What can you do to reduce them? ●

In addition, screening is an important measure to improve outcomes in patients who develop cancer. Early detection can improve prognosis of cancer and should be encouraged for persons of all ages. Medicare provides reimbursement for screening tests for breast, cervical, colorectal, and prostate cancers. Some of the recommended tests are outlined in Box 31-2.

BOX 31-1 Actions to Reduce Cancer Risks

- Avoid the use of and exposure to tobacco products.
- Limit exposure to the sun. Use sunscreens (rated between 15 and 30 SPF [sun protection factor]) and avoid sunbathing.
- Eat a diet rich in fiber, fruits, and vegetables; limit intake of red meats, fats, fried foods, and pickled, smoked, or cured foods.
- Maintain weight within an ideal range.
- Protect against occupational or other exposure to asbestos, coal tar, pitch, creosote, arsenic, and radium.
- Limit alcohol consumption.
- Exercise and be physically active.
- Practice safe sex and limit the number of sexual partners.
- Discuss chemoprevention with your physician if family history increases risk of breast cancer.

BOX 31-2 Recommended Cancer Screening for Older Adults

- Annual check-up that examines oral cavity, thyroid, breasts, ovaries, testicles, and skin
- Annual mammogram
- Annual fecal occult blood test
- Flexible sigmoidoscopy every 5 years
- Double contrast barium enema every 5 years
- Colonoscopy every 10 years
- Pap test every 2–3 years if there have been three consecutive normal tests; the American Cancer Society suggests that women 70 years of age or older who have had three consecutive normal Pap tests and no abnormal Pap tests in the last 10 years may choose to discontinue cervical screening
- Annual endometrial biopsy for women at high risk for hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer
- Annual prostate-specific antigen (PSA) and digital rectal examination beginning at age 50 (African-American men or those who have a first-degree relative diagnosed with prostate cancer at an early age should begin annual testing at age 45)

Based on recommendations of the American Cancer Society.

Treatment

Conventional Treatment

The plan of treatment depends on the specific cancer; however, most conventional forms of treatment include surgery, radiation, chemotherapy, and biologic therapy. Although the same basic care measures apply to older patients undergoing these treatments as to adults of any age, there are some unique risks. Persons over age 70 have a higher risk of mortality and complications from all surgeries, and this risk is heightened with emergency or unplanned surgeries, as can occur with an unexpected detection of a mass. Advanced age can affect the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of cytotoxic drugs and increase the risk of complications (e.g., cardiotoxicity, neurotoxicity, and myelodepression). Doses need to be adjusted carefully to account for altered glomerular filtration rates and other differences. Fortunately, there is no significant difference between the older persons and adults of other ages in the ability to tolerate radiation therapy.

POINT TO PONDER

What would be your primary concerns if you faced treatment for cancer? ●

Complementary and Alternative Medicine

Complementary and alternative medicine (CAM) therapies are used by nearly half of all Americans and by more than 80% of people with cancer (Hlubocky, Ratain, Web, & Daughtery, 2007). These therapies include special diets, psychotherapy, spiritual practices, vitamin supplements, and herbal remedies (Box 31-3).

CAM therapies often are attractive to patients with cancer because of the healing philosophies and approaches used. CAM practitioners tend to have a holistic orientation. They are concerned with treating the disease but also likely to be equally, if not more, concerned with caring for the whole person. CAM practitioners offer:

- *Relationship-centered care*: They invest the time in learning about the unique characteristics of

BOX 31-3 Categories of Complementary and Alternative Therapies

The National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM) classifies CAM therapies into five groups or domains:

- alternative medical systems (e.g., homeopathic medicine and traditional Chinese medicine)
- mind–body interventions (e.g., visualizations and relaxation)
- manipulative and body-based methods (e.g., chiropractic and massage)
- biologically based therapies (e.g., vitamins and herbal products)
- energy therapies (e.g., qi gong and therapeutic touch)

BOX 31-4 Questions to Ask When Evaluating a Complementary and Alternative Therapy

- What is the purpose or expected outcome of the therapy?
- Is the therapy compatible with other treatments being used?
- Will serious delays in seeking or using conventional treatment result from using CAM?
- Is special training, licensure, or certification required by practitioners of the therapy, and if so, is the practitioner being considered to provide the therapy qualified?
- What risks are associated with the therapy? Do the risks outweigh the benefits?
- What are the expected side effects?
- What is the cost?
- How many treatments will be needed; how long will the product need to be used?
- Is the therapy covered by any health insurance?
- What research exists supporting the therapy? How large have the studies been, what were their quality, and who has conducted them?
- Is the therapist willing to offer the names of other patients who have used his or her service?
- Are there any “red flags” (e.g., secretive nature of treatment, unwillingness to disclose ingredients of product, necessity to travel to a foreign country to obtain treatment, requirement that all other treatments be discontinued)?

patients and enter a unique journey with each patient.

- **Support:** Learning to live with cancer is challenging and demanding. Even if the malignant cells are eliminated, emotional and spiritual pain may be present. CAM practitioners provide unconditional acceptance and understanding of patients “where they are.”
- **Healing partnerships:** CAM practitioners honor patients’ rights to control their care and their lives, seeing their role as empowering, facilitating, and supporting patients in the healing process.
- **Comfort:** Many CAM therapies are high touch and relieve stress and discomfort. Practitioners provide psychological comfort as they take the time to listen, to reassure, and to be emotionally available.
- **Hope:** Particularly when conventional medicine has exhausted its treatments, CAM practitioners provide options that can offer hope and encouragement through knowing that something is being attempted. Patients can heal—that is, feel a sense of wholeness and live the best possible quality of life—despite having an incurable disease.

POINT TO PONDER

Why might you seek complementary and alternative therapies if you or a loved one were diagnosed with cancer? ●

Although CAM can contribute to a patient’s care, it is unwise for patients to use these therapies without carefully weighing risks and benefits. The labels *natural* or *holistic* do not ensure that the

therapy is safe or the best option for the patient for his or her given circumstances. Box 31-4 offers some questions that nurses can use in assisting patients in evaluating CAM. Nurses can provide a useful service to patients in helping them to research claims made by promoters of therapies and products to treat cancer. The National Cancer Institute and National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (see Resource listings) can offer assistance in evaluating CAM claims.

Knowledge about CAM is rapidly growing, and today’s hypotheses could be proved or disproved tomorrow. Nurses are challenged to stay current of this expanding field so that they can integrate CAM into their practice safely and effectively.



KEY CONCEPT

Ask about the use of CAM during every assessment and encourage patients to inform their physicians of all therapies and products being used.

Nursing Considerations for Older Adults With Cancer

Providing Patient Education

Gerontological nurses have a commitment to promoting healthy aging. One means of demonstrating this is to increase awareness of measures that can prevent cancer (see Box 31-1). Opportunities for educating individuals can range from teaching formal group classes to discussing options for change when risk factors are identified during individual assessments. This education need not be limited to

older adults. Cancer prevention to younger people can promote a healthier senior population in the future.

Nurses play an important role in ensuring that patients understand the warning signs of cancer. The American Cancer Society's (2006) use of the word CAUTION, in which each letter represents the first letter of a warning sign, provides a useful way to remember them:

- Change in bowel or bladder habits
- A sore that does not heal
- Unusual bleeding or drainage
- Thickening or lump in the breast or elsewhere
- Indigestion or swallowing difficulty
- Obvious change in a wart or mole
- Nagging persistent cough or hoarseness

In addition, nurses assess patients' knowledge of self-examination for cancer (e.g., breast examination, testicular examination, skin inspection) and provide instruction as needed. For the patient who is unable to perform self-examinations, the nurse develops a plan for caregivers to perform these examinations for the patient on a regular schedule. It is important to inquire about dates of last cancer screening tests and refer for testing as needed.

Promoting Optimum Care

When the diagnosis of cancer is made, the nurse can help the patient to obtain the best possible care. Some oncology centers may specialize in a particular cancer and be able to offer more options to patients than other facilities. Also, as appropriate, the nurse assists patients in contacting the National Cancer Institute to learn about clinical trials that may be beneficial.

Older adults receiving radiation and chemotherapy require the same basic care and face the same general risks as adults of any age who undergo these

treatments; oncology nursing literature should be consulted for guidance. However, the challenges with older adults may be increased because of common age-related factors that contribute to increased risks for malnutrition, dehydration, constipation, immobility, impaired skin integrity, and infection. Close monitoring and taking actions to prevent complications (e.g., reporting changes in vital signs or increased fatigue) are essential.

A significant fear associated with cancer is pain. Patients need to be assured that pain can be managed. The nurse should regularly assess for pain and assist in developing a plan to prevent and manage pain. (See Chapter 16 for discussion of comfort measures.)

Further information about specific types of cancers appears in other chapters, e.g., cancer of the colon (Chapter 21); prostate (Chapter 23); lung (Chapter 19); stomach (Chapter 21); testes (Chapter 23); and pancreas (Chapter 21).

Providing Support to Patients and Families

The diagnosis of cancer can be considerably overwhelming and stressful to many patients. Older adults may recall the grim experiences of people with cancer they have known throughout their lives—people who were diagnosed years ago when treatment options were considerably more limited than today—and fear that their outlook will be similar. They may fear that they will experience pain, deformity, and lost independence. The cost of treatment could present significant burdens to patients and their families. Plans and pursuits may have to be forfeited as treatment of the disease takes center stage. Patients will need strong support during this time. It is important to consult with the physician to learn about the patient's diagnosis, treatment plan, and prognosis. The nurse assesses the patient's understanding, clarifies misconceptions, and offers explanations where needed. Providing ample

Consider This Case

Sixty-two year-old Carrie S has been diagnosed with breast cancer and after having a lumpectomy, has begun chemotherapy. She has been optimistic and eager to progress with her treatment. During one of her treatments she is accompanied by her 55-year-old sister. The sister appears quite anxious. She shares that her mother had breast cancer at age 65 and lived until age 82, when she died of lung cancer. "Now," she says, "Carrie has the disease, and I know I'm next in line." She tells you that she is "thinking of having bilateral mastectomies to avoid the fate of my mother and sister."

THINK CRITICALLY

- How would you react to the sister's concerns?
- How could her sister's feelings potentially affect Carrie S?
- What support can you offer Ms. S?

BOX 31-5 Possible Nursing Diagnoses of Patients with Terminal Cancer

EXCHANGING

- Imbalanced Nutrition: Less Than Body Requirements
- Risk for Infection
- Constipation
- Impaired Urinary Elimination
- Deficient Fluid Volume
- Impaired Gas Exchange
- Ineffective Airway Clearance
- Ineffective Breathing Pattern
- Risk for Injury
- Risk for Aspiration
- Impaired Tissue Integrity

COMMUNICATING

- Impaired Verbal Communication

RELATING

- Impaired Social Interaction
- Social Isolation
- Ineffective Role Performance
- Caregiver Role Strain

VALUING

- Spiritual Distress

CHOOSING

- Ineffective Coping
- Ineffective Denial
- Decisional Conflict

MOVING

- Impaired Physical Mobility
- Activity Intolerance
- Fatigue
- Disturbed Sleep Pattern
- Feeding/Bathing/Dressing/Grooming/Toileting Self-Care Deficit
- Impaired Swallowing

PERCEIVING

- Disturbed Body Image
- Hopelessness
- Powerlessness

KNOWING

- Deficient Knowledge
- Acute Confusion

FEELING

- Acute Pain
- Chronic Pain
- Nausea
- Anticipatory Grieving
- Anxiety
- Fear
- Risk for Suicide

opportunity for the patient to express feelings is important.

Family and significant others may share the patient's concerns and have additional concerns of their own. For example, a wife may worry that the cost of her husband's treatment or his death will place her in a financially vulnerable position. Or a daughter may grieve that her parent may not survive to see her marry. They, too, need support. (Local chapters of the American Cancer Society can provide information on support groups for people with cancer and their loved ones.)



KEY CONCEPT

Remember that the diagnosis of cancer touches lives beyond the patient's.

Patients may experience a variety of reactions as they cope with their disease, including depression, grief, guilt, anger, bargaining, and acceptance. Similar to the grief experienced with the dying process, they may float in and out of various stages at different times. Sensitivity to the patient's emotional and spiritual status during each encounter is essential. The nurse must remember that family members may experience these same fluctuations in emotions.

Physical, emotional, and spiritual support are required by patients with terminal cancer as they cope with potentially many challenges (Box 31-5). The needs of these patients and their families can change and demand regular reassessment and adjustment to the plan of care. Chapter 39 offers guidelines for end-of-life care that are applicable to patients with terminal cancer.

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. Develop an outline of the content for a health education program for a senior citizen group on “Cancer Prevention, Risks, and Diagnosis.”
2. Describe current lifestyle factors that may affect the risk of cancer in future generations of older persons.
3. Develop a plan of care for an older adult diagnosed with lung cancer that integrates conventional and CAM therapies.
4. What actions could nurses take in their communities to reduce cancer risks?

Resources

American Cancer Society

<http://www.cancer.org>

National Cancer Institute

<http://www.cancer.gov>

1-800-4-CANCER (1-800-422-6237)

TTY (for deaf and hard of hearing callers): 1-800-332-8615

National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine

<http://www.nccam.nih.gov>

1-888-644-6226 (toll free)

References

American Cancer Society. (2006). *Cancer facts and figures 2002*. Atlanta, GA: American Cancer Society.

American Cancer Society. (2007). *Detailed guide: Breast cancer. What are the risk factors for breast cancer?* http://www.cancer.org/docroot/CRI/content/CRI_2_4_2_X_What_are_the_risk_factors_for_breast_cancer_5.asp.

Boffetta, P. (2006). Human cancer from environmental pollutants: The epidemiological evidence. *Mutation Research, 608*(2), 157–162.

Bradley, C. J., Given, C. W., Dahman, B., Luo, Z., & Virnig, B. A. (2007). Diagnosis of advanced cancer among elderly Medicare and Medicaid patients. *Medical Care, 45*(5), 410–419.

Brekelmans, C. T. M., Seynaeve, C., Bartels, C. C. M., et al. (2001). Effectiveness of breast cancer surveillance in BRCA1/2 gene mutation carriers and women with high familial risk. *Journal of Clinical Oncology, 19*(4), 924–930.

Doyle, V. C. (2007). Nutrition and colorectal cancer risk: A literature review. *Gastroenterology Nursing, 30*(3), 178–182.

Duckworth, L. T., Frank-Stromborg, M., Oleckno, W. A., Duffy, P., & Burns, K. (2002). Relationship of perception of radon as a health risk and willingness to engage in radon testing and mitigation. *Oncology Nursing Forum, 29*(7), 1099–1107.

Hlubocky, F. J., Ratain, M. J., Web, M., & Daughtery, C. K. (2007). Complementary and alternative medicine among advanced cancer patients enrolled on phase I trials: A study of prognosis, quality of life, and preferences for decision making. *Journal of Clinical Oncology, 25*(5), 548–554.

Inskip, P. D., Tarone, R. E., Hatch, E. E., et al. (2001). Cellular-telephone use and brain tumors. *New England Journal of Medicine, 344*(2), 79–86.

Li, S., Hursting, S. D., Davis, B. J., et al. (2003). Environmental exposure, DNA methylation, and gene regulation: Lessons from diethylstilbestrol-induced cancers [review]. *Annals of New York Academy of Science, 983*(1), 161–169.

Martin, A. M., & Weber, B. L. (2000). Genetic and hormonal risk factors in breast cancer. *Journal of the National Cancer Institute, 92*(14), 1126–1135.

National Cancer Institute. (2003). *Fluoridated water*. National Cancer Institute's Cancer Facts website. Retrieved 4/2/04, from http://www.cis.nci.nih.gov/fact/3_15.htm.

National Cancer Institute. (2005). *Cellular telephone use and cancer*. National Cancer Institute Fact Sheet, accessed 9/24/07, <http://www.cancer.gov/cancertopics/factsheet/Risk/cellphones>.

National Cancer Institute. (2007a). *Cigarette smoking and cancer*. Accessed 9/22/07, <http://www.cancer.gov/cancertopics/factsheet/Tobacco/cancer>.

National Cancer Institute. (2007b). *Genetics of breast and ovarian cancer*. Accessed 9/28/07, <http://www.cancer.gov/cancertopics/pdq/genetics/breast-and-ovarian>.

National Center for Health Statistics. (2004). *Leading causes of death*. Retrieved 9/22/07, from <http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/fastats/lcod.htm>.

Palli, D., Russo, A., Sajeve, C., et al. (2000). Dietary and familial determinants of 10-year survival among patients with gastric carcinoma. *Cancer, 89*, 1205–1213.

Samuels, A. (2007). Aspartame consumption and incidence of hematopoietic and brain cancers. *Cancer Epidemiology, Biomarkers, and Prevention, 16*(7), 527–528.

Thomas, C. (2003). Common sense about food and cancer. *Cancerpage.com*. Retrieved 5/27/03, from <http://www.cancerpage.com/cancernews/cancernews2081.htm>.

Trichopoulos, D., & Adami, H. O. (2001). Cellular telephones and brain tumors. *New England Journal of Medicine, 344*(2), 133–134.

Turchetti, D., Cortesi, L., Federico, M., Romagnoli, R., & Silingardi, V. (2002). Hereditary risk of breast cancer: Not only BRCA. *Journal of Experimental Clinical Cancer Research, 21*(3 Suppl), 17–21.

Walker, L., & Covinsky, K. E. (2001). Cancer screening in elderly patients: A framework for individualized decision making. *Journal of the American Medical Association, 285*, 2750–2765.

Ward, M. H., Cerhan, J. R., Colt, J. S., & Hartge, P. (2006). Risk of non-Hodgkin lymphoma and nitrate and nitrite from drinking water and diet. *Epidemiology, 17*(4), 375–382.

Warren, H. G., Prevatt, A. A., Daly, K. A., & Antonelli, P. J. (2003). Cellular telephone use and risk of intratemporal facial nerve tumor. *Laryngoscope, 113*(4), 663–667.

Recommended Readings

American Cancer Society. (2000). *American Cancer Society's guide to complementary and alternative cancer methods*. Atlanta, GA: American Cancer Society.

Crivellari, D., Aapro, M., Leonard R., von Minckwitz, G., Brain, E., et al., (2007). Breast cancer in the elderly. *Journal of Clinical Oncology, 25*(14), 1882–1890.

Devita, V. T., Hellman, S., & Rosenberg, S. A. (2001). *Cancer: Principles and practices of oncology* (6th ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

- Eisenberg, D. M., Davis, R. B., Ettner, S. L., et al. (2000). Trends in alternative medicine use in the United States, 1990–1997. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 280(18), 1569–1675.
- Erci, B. (2007). Psychometric Evaluation of Self-Assessed Support Needs of Women with Breast Cancer Scale. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, 16(10), 1927–1935.
- Gates, R. A., & Fink, R. M. (2001). *Oncology nursing secrets*. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Kao, G. D., & Devine, P. (2000). Use of complementary health practices by prostate carcinoma patients undergoing radiation therapy. *Cancer*, 88(3), 615–619.
- Langhorne, M., Fulton, J., & Otto, S.E. (2007). *Oncology nursing* (5th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Love, S. M., & Lindsey, K. (2000). *Dr. Susan Love's breast book*. New York: Perseus Publishing.
- McGinn, K. A., & Haylock, P. J. (2003). *Women's cancers: How to prevent them, how to treat them, how to beat them*. Alameda, CA: Hunter House.
- Moore, S. (2007). Facilitating oral chemotherapy treatment and compliance through patient/family-focused education. *Cancer Nursing*, 30(2), 112–122.
- Oncology Nursing Society and Geriatric Oncology Consortium, (2007). Oncology Nursing Society and Geriatric Oncology Consortium joint position on cancer care for older adults. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, 34(3), 623–624.
- Otto, S. E. (2001). *Oncology nursing*. St. Louis: Mosby.
- Overcash, J. (2007). Prediction of falls in older adults with cancer: A preliminary study. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, 34(2), 341–346.
- Prescher-Hughes, D. S., & Alkhoudairy, C. J. (2006). *Clinical practice protocols in oncology nursing*. Sudbury, MA: Jones & Bartlett.
- Rodin, M. B., & Mohile, S.G. (2007). A practical approach to geriatric assessment in oncology. *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 25(14), 1936–1944.
- Silver, J. K. (2006). *After cancer treatment. Health faster, better, stronger*. Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press.
- Simmons, L. S. (2007). Self-perceived burden in cancer patients: Validation of the Self-perceived Burden Scale. *Cancer Nursing*, 30(5), 405–411.
- Sparber, A., Bauer, L., Curt, G., et al. (2000). Use of complementary medicine by adult patients participating in cancer clinical trials. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, 27(4), 623–630.
- Walsh, P. C., & Worthington, J. F. (2002). *Dr. Patrick Walsh's guide to surviving prostate cancer*. New York: Warner Books.
- Wilkes, G. M., Ingwersen, K., & Barton-Burke, M. (2003). *Oncology nursing drug handbook*. New York: Jones and Bartlett Publishers.

Mental Health Disorders

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Aging and Mental Health Promoting Mental Health in Older Adults Selected Mental Health Conditions

- Depression
- Anxiety
- Alcohol Abuse
- Paranoia
- Hypochondriasis

Nursing Considerations for Mental Health Conditions

- Monitoring Medications
- Promoting a Positive Self-Concept
- Managing Behavioral Problems

Mental health indicates a capacity to cope effectively with and manage life's stresses in an effort to achieve a state of emotional homeostasis. Older people have an advantage over other age groups in that they probably have had more experience with coping, problem solving, and managing crises by virtue of the years they have lived. Most older persons have few delusions regarding what they are or what they are going to be. They know where they have been, what they have accomplished, and who they really are. Immigrating to a new country, watching loved ones die from epidemics, fighting in world wars, and surviving the Great Depression may be among the numerous stresses that today's older adults have faced and overcome. Such experiences have provided them with unique strength that should not be underestimated.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 Describe the realities of mental health and illness in older adulthood.
- 2 List measures that promote mental health for older adults.
- 3 Describe the symptoms and care of the older person with depression.
- 4 Identify indications of suicidal thoughts in older adults.
- 5 Describe interventions to reduce anxiety in older adults.
- 6 Discuss the scope and signs of alcohol abuse in the older population.
- 7 List reasons for hypochondriasis in older adults.
- 8 Identify factors to consider in monitoring psychotropic medications in older adults.
- 9 Describe factors that promote a positive self-concept in older adults.
- 10 Identify nursing actions to manage disruptive behavior associated with mental health conditions in older adults.

However, acknowledging this strength does not imply that psychiatric illness is not a problem among the older population. More people than ever are surviving to old age, and many bring to their later years the mental health problems they have possessed throughout their lifetimes. In addition, the many losses and challenges of late life may exceed the physical, emotional, and social resources of some persons and promote mental illness. By promoting mental health, detecting problems early, and minimizing the impact of existing psychiatric problems, nurses can help older people achieve optimal satisfaction and function.



POINT TO PONDER

What does mental health mean to you? ●

Aging and Mental Health

Many myths prevail regarding mental health and older people. For instance, many people still believe that loss of mental functioning, “senility,” or mental incompetence is a natural part of old age. Descriptions of older adults being childlike, rigid, or cantankerous propagate stereotypes about personality in later life. Frequently, these misconceptions are so widely accepted that when an older person demonstrates pathological signs, it is considered normal and no attempt is made to intervene. Nurses can play a significant role in ensuring that the myths and realities of mental health in old age are understood.

Cognitive function in later life is highly individualized, based on personal resources, health status, and the unique experiences of the individual’s life. The incidence of mental illness is higher among the old than among the young. A significant number of older adults in the community and in nursing homes have symptoms of serious mental health problems. Nearly 10% of the older population has a problem with alcoholism, and the rate of completed suicide among older persons continues to be the highest of any age group in the United States, with nearly one-fourth of all suicides committed by persons aged 65 years and older (Loebel, 2005). Depression increases in prevalence and intensity with age (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2005). Multiple losses, altered sensory function, and alterations, discomforts, and demands associated with illnesses that older adults frequently encounter set the stage for a variety of mental health problems.



KEY CONCEPT

Cognitive function among older adults is highly individualized based on their health status, experiences, and personal resources.

Promoting Mental Health in Older Adults

Mental health in old age implies a satisfaction and interest in life. This can be displayed in a variety of ways, ranging from silent reflection to zealous activity. The quiet individual who stays at home does not necessarily have less mental capacity or mental health than the person who is actively involved in every possible community program. There is no single profile for mental health; thus, attempts to assess an older individual’s mental status based on any given stereotype must be avoided.

Good mental health practices throughout an individual’s lifetime promote good mental health in later life. To preserve mental health, people need to maintain the activities and interests that they find satisfying. They need opportunities to sense their value as a member of society and to have their self-worth reinforced. Security through the provision of adequate income, safe housing, the means to meet basic human needs, and support and assistance through stressful situations will promote mental health. Connection with others is also an aspect of mental health. Finally, a basic ingredient in the preservation and promotion of mental health that cannot be overstated is the importance of optimum physical health.



KEY CONCEPT

Good mental health practices throughout the life span promote good mental health in old age.

Nurses must recognize that there are times in everyone’s life when disturbances occur and alter the capacity to manage stress. The same principles guiding the care of physical health problems can be applied to the care of persons with mental health problems. The following are actions related to those principles that can be used in care:

- *Strengthen the individual’s capacity to manage the condition:* fostering improvement of physical health, good nutrition, increased knowledge, meaningful activity, income supplements, and socialization.
- *Eliminate or minimize the limitations imposed by the condition:* providing consistency in care, not fostering hallucinations, reality orientation, correction of physical problems, and modifying the environment to compensate for deficits.
- *Act for or do for the individual only when absolutely necessary:* selecting an adequate diet, assisting with bathing, administering medications, managing finances, and coordinating activities for the patient.

Mental health conditions must be seen in the perspective of the patient's total world. Older adults confront many problems that challenge their emotional homeostasis, such as the following:

- *Illness*: coping, related self-care demands, pain, altered function or body image
- *Death*: friends, family, significant support person
- *Retirement*: loss of status, role, income, sense of purpose
- *Increased vulnerability*: crime, illness, disability, abuse
- *Social isolation*: lack of transportation, funds, health, friends
- *Sensory deficits*: decrease in or loss of function of hearing, vision, taste, smell, and touch
- *Greater awareness of own mortality*: increased number of deaths among peers
- *Increased risk of institutionalization, dependency*: loss of self-care capabilities to varying degrees

With these factors in mind, some of the symptoms displayed may be normal reactions to the circumstances at hand (Fig. 32-1). Before labeling the patient with a psychiatric diagnosis, the nurse should explore such factors in the patient's behavior and address the cause of the problem rather than its effects alone.

Astute assessment can help to distinguish normal reactions to life events from mental health conditions (Assessment Guide 32-1). Nursing Diagnosis Table 32-1 outlines potential diagnoses that assessment may reveal.

Selected Mental Health Conditions

Depression

Depression is the most frequent problem that psychiatrists treat in older adults, and although major



FIGURE 32-1 • Astute assessment of behavior and cognitive function aids in differentiating symptoms of psychiatric illness from normal reactions to life events.

depression declines with age, minor depression increases in incidence with age. Various estimates have placed the prevalence of depression at 15% to 25% in community-based older persons and as many as 25% in older adults who are residents of long-term care facilities; another 20% to 30% of institutional residents display symptoms of depression although they are not diagnosed with clinical depression (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2005).

Although depressive episodes may have been a lifelong problem for some individuals, it is not uncommon for depression to be a new problem in old age. This is not surprising when one considers the adjustments and losses older persons face, such as the independence of one's children; the reality of retirement; significant changes or losses of roles; reduced income restricting the pursuit of satisfying leisure activities and limiting the ability to meet basic needs; decreasing efficiency of the body; a changing self-image; the death of family members and friends, reinforcing the reality of one's own shrinking life span; and overt and covert messages from society that one's worth is inversely proportional to one's age. In addition, drugs can cause or aggravate depression (Box 32-1).

Signs and Symptoms

Depression is a complex syndrome and is demonstrated in a variety of ways in older persons. The most common manifestations of this problem are the vegetative symptoms, which include insomnia, fatigue, anorexia, weight loss, constipation, and decreased interest in sex. Depressed persons may express self-deprecation, guilt, apathy, remorse, hopelessness, helplessness, and feelings of being a burden. They may have problems with their personal relationships and social interactions and lose interest in people. Changes in sleep and psychomotor activity patterns can be evident. Hygienic practices may be neglected. Physical complaints of headache, indigestion, and other problems often surface. Altered cognition may be present, caused by malnutrition or other effects of the depression. The symptoms of depression can mimic those of dementia; thus, careful assessment is crucial to avoid misdiagnosis. However, a decline in intellect and personality is usually indicative of dementia (see Chapter 33), not depression. Depression can occur in the early stage of dementia as the patient becomes aware of declining intellectual abilities.

KEY CONCEPT

Some older adults who are depressed demonstrate cognitive deficits secondary to the effects of depression. This pseudodementia can delay or prevent the underlying depression from being recognized and treated.



ASSESSMENT GUIDE 32-1

Mental Health

Every comprehensive assessment includes an evaluation of mental status. Because patients may be anxious, embarrassed, or insulted by having their mental status reviewed, explain the importance of and the reasons for the examination. Approach the evaluation in a matter-of-fact manner, not in an apologetic or intimidating one, with reassurance that this evaluation is part of every patient's assessment. Making the patient comfortable and establishing rapport before the assessment can reduce some of the barriers to an effective examination.

GENERAL OBSERVATIONS

Assessment of mental status actually begins the moment the nurse meets the patient. Upon initial observation, pay attention to the following indicators of mental health:

- *Grooming and dress:* Is clothing appropriate for the season, clean and presentable, appropriately worn? Is the patient clean? Is the hair clean and combed? Are makeup and accessories excessive or bizarre?
- *Posture:* Does the patient appear stooped and fearful? Is body alignment normal?
- *Movement:* Are tongue rolling, twitching, tremors, or hand wringing present? Are movements hyperactive or hypoactive?
- *Facial expression:* Is it masklike or overly dramatic? Are there indications of pain, fear, or anger?
- *Level of consciousness:* Does the patient drift into sleep and need to be aroused (i.e., lethargic)? Does the patient offer only incomplete or slow responses and need repeated arousal (i.e., stuporous)? Are painful stimuli the only thing the patient responds to (i.e., semiconscious)? Is there no response, even to painful stimuli (i.e., unconscious)?

While observing the patient, general conversation can aid in evaluating mental status. Note the tone of voice, rate of speech, ability to articulate, use of unusual words or combinations of words, and appropriateness of speech. Also evaluate mood during this time.

INTERVIEW

Effective questioning can reveal much about the patient's mental health. Ask direct questions to unveil specific problems, such as the following:

- "How do you feel about yourself? Would you say others would say you are a good or bad person?"
- "Do you have many friends? How do you get along with people?"

- "Do you feel that anyone is trying to harm you? Who? Why?"
- "Are you moody? Do you quickly go from laughing to crying or from being happy to sad?"
- "Do you have trouble falling asleep or staying asleep? How much sleep do you get? Do you use any drug or alcohol to become sleepy?"
- "How is your appetite? How does your appetite and eating pattern change when you are sad or worried?"
- "Do you ever have feelings of being nervous, such as palpitations, hyperventilating, or restlessness?"
- "Are there any particular problems in your life or anything you are concerned about now?"
- "Do you see or hear things that other people do not? Have you ever heard voices? If so, how do you feel about them?"
- "Does life bring you pleasure? Do you look forward to each day?"
- "Have you ever thought about suicide? If so, what were those ideas like? How would you do it?"
- "Do you feel you are losing any of your mental abilities? If so, describe how."
- "Have you ever been hospitalized or had treatment for mental problems? Has any member of your family?"

Listen carefully to the answers and how they are given. It is important to pick up nonverbal clues.

COGNITIVE TESTING

A variety of reliable, validated tools can be used in assessing mental function, such as the Short Portable Mental Status Questionnaire (Pfeiffer, 1975), the Philadelphia Geriatric Center Mental Status Questionnaire (Fishback, 1977), Mini-Mental Status (Folstein et al. 1975), Symptoms Check List 90 (Derogatis et al., 1974), General Health Questionnaire (Goldberg, 1972), OARS (Duke University, 1978), and, specifically for depression, the Zung Self-Rating Depression Scale (Zung, 1965). Most mental status evaluation tools test orientation, memory and retention, the ability to follow commands, judgment, and basic calculation and reasoning.

Even without the use of a tool, the nurse can assess basic cognitive function in the following ways:

- *Orientation:* Ask the patient his or her name, where he or she is, the date, time, and season.
- *Memory and retention:* At the beginning of the assessment, ask the patient to remember three



ASSESSMENT GUIDE 32-1 (Continued)

Mental Health

objects (e.g., watch, telephone, boat). First ask the patient to recall the items immediately after being told; then, after asking several other questions, ask for recall of the three items again; near the end of the assessment, ask what the three items were one last time.

- *Three-stage command:* Ask the patient to perform three simple tasks (e.g., "Pick up the pencil, touch it to your head, and hand it to me.>").
- *Judgment:* Present a situation that requires basic problem solving and reasoning (e.g., "What is meant by the statement 'A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush?'").
- *Calculation:* Ask the patient to count backwards from 100 by increments of 5; if this is difficult, ask the patient to count backward from 20 by increments of 2. Simple arithmetic problems may be asked also, if they are within the realm of the patient's educational experience.

Whenever cognitive function is tested, consider the unique experiences, educational level, and cultural background of the patient, as well as the role of sensory deficits, health problems, and the stress associated with being examined.

Persons with Alzheimer's disease or other cognitive deficits may become overwhelmed by the assessment and react with anger, tears, or withdrawal. This is referred to as a *catastrophic reaction*. The assessment may need to be discontinued temporarily and the patient reassured and comforted.

The prevalence and risk for depression in older adults reinforces the importance of assessing for this problem during routine health visits. Short assessment tools such as the Geriatric Depression Scale, Short Form, can assist in this process (Box 32-2).

The relationship of life events to the depression is essential to explore during the assessment; the approach for a person depressed from the effects of a drug obviously will differ from that for a person who has just become widowed. The underlying problem should be addressed. Although depressions do tend to last longer in older adults, prompt treatment can hasten recovery. Treatment should not be withheld for depression associated with a serious or terminal illness; alleviating the depression may help the individual cope more effectively and be in a better position to manage other health problems.

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

Physical health problems are often at the root of many cognitive disturbances; as such, it is essential that a complete physical examination supplement the mental status evaluation. A complete review of medications being used is crucial. In addition, a variety of laboratory tests may be conducted, including the following:

- complete blood count
- serum electrolytes
- serologic test for syphilis
- blood urea nitrogen
- blood glucose
- bilirubin
- blood vitamin level
- sedimentation rate
- urinalysis

Depending on the problem suspected, cerebrospinal fluid may be tested and a variety of diagnostic procedures performed, including electroencephalography, computed tomography, magnetic resonance imaging, and positron emission tomography scan. The mental status evaluation often presents only a snapshot of the individual. Cerebral blood flow, body temperature, blood glucose, fluid and electrolyte balance, and the stress to which the patient is subjected can change from one day to the next and cause different levels of mental function to occur. Repeated assessments may be necessary to obtain an accurate evaluation of the patient's mental status.

Treatment

Psychotherapy and antidepressants (Box 32-3) can alleviate many depressions to varying degrees. Electroconvulsive therapy has been shown to be effective in patients who have serious depressions that have been unresponsive to other therapies. Some herbs have been known to have antidepressant effects; these include St. John's wort (this herb can cause photosensitivity and should not be used with an antidepressant medication), gotu kola, ginseng, and lavender; these herbs require close monitoring when used due to the possibility of adverse effects (Pilkington, Rampes, & Richardson, 2006; National Health Information, 2003). Acupressure, acupuncture, guided imagery, and light therapy, in conjunction with psychotherapy, can also prove helpful. Good basic health practices, including proper nutrition and regular exercise, can also have

NURSING DIAGNOSIS

TABLE 32-1 Nursing Diagnoses Related to Mental Health Problems

Causes or Contributing Factors	Nursing Diagnosis
Depression, lack of motivation, sensory overload, fatigue, medications	Activity Intolerance
Threat to self-concept, losses	Anxiety
Psychomotor slowing, medications, inactivity, lack of recognition of need to defecate	Constipation
Anxiety, medications, stress	Diarrhea
Hyperactivity, sensory overload, suicidal attempt	Pain
Impaired cerebral function, anxiety, suspiciousness	Impaired Verbal Communication
Stress, altered body function, low self-esteem, dependency, sensory overload, loss of significant other	Ineffective Coping
Patient dependency; history of poor family relationships	Disabled Family Coping
Physical, mental, or social limitations	Deficient Diversional Activity
New or misperceived environment, losses	Fear
Loss of body part, function, role, significant other	Anticipatory Grieving
Cognitive impairment, lack of motivation, misperceptions	Ineffective Health Maintenance
Cognitive impairment, misperceptions, lack of motivation	Impaired Home Maintenance
Medications, inactivity, inability to protect self	Risk for Infection
Cognitive impairment, fatigue, medications, suicidal attempt	Risk for Injury
Medications, fatigue	Impaired Physical Mobility
Cognitive impairment, lack of motivation or capacity, suicidal desires	Noncompliance
Depression, anxiety, stress, paranoia, cognitive impairment, suicidal attempt	Impaired Nutrition: Less Than Body Requirements
Depression, anxiety, cognitive impairment, inactivity, suicidal attempt	Impaired Nutrition: More Than Body Requirements
Paranoia, depression, disability, stress	Powerlessness
Cognitive impairment, lack of motivation, knowledge, skill	Self-Care Deficit
Altered body image or function, losses, ageism	Body Image Disturbance
Cognitive impairment, medications, paranoia, sensory deficits, isolation, stress	Sensory–Perceptual Alterations
Depression, anxiety, paranoia, guilt, stress, altered self-concept, medications	Sexual Dysfunction
Cognitive impairment (inability to protect self), malnutrition	Impaired Skin Integrity
Anxiety, paranoia, depression, confusion, medications	Disturbed Sleep Pattern
Altered body part or function, cognitive impairment, anxiety, depression, misperceptions, paranoia, hypochondriasis	Impaired Social Interaction
Anxiety, depression, paranoia, cognitive impairment	Social Isolation
Cognitive impairment, fear, depression, anxiety, stress, isolation	Disturbed Thought Processes
Cognitive impairment, anxiety, depression, medications	Impaired Urinary Elimination
Cognitive impairment, paranoia, stress, misperceptions, fear, suicidal attempt	Risk for Other-Directed Violence

a positive effect on mood. Box 32-4 describes other helpful nursing measures.

Suicide Risk

Suicide is a real and serious risk among depressed persons. The suicide rate increases with age and is highest among older white men. Twenty-five percent of all suicides are older individuals. All suicide threats from older adults should be taken seriously.

In addition to recognizing obvious suicide attempts, nurses must learn to recognize those that are more subtle but equally destructive.



KEY CONCEPT

All suicide threats from older persons should be taken seriously.

BOX 32-1 Drugs That Can Cause Depression

Antihypertensives and cardiac drugs: β -blockers, digoxin, procainamide, guanethidine, clonidine, reserpine, methyldopa, spironolactone
Hormones: corticotropin, corticosteroids, estrogens
Central nervous system (CNS) depressants, anti-anxiety agents, psychotropics: alcohol, haloperidol, flurazepam, barbiturates, benzodiazepines
Others: cimetidine, L-dopa, ranitidine, asparaginase, tamoxifen

Medication misuse, either in the form of overdoses or omission of dosages, may be a suicidal gesture. Self-starvation is another sign and can occur even in an institutional setting if staff members are not attentive to monitoring intake and nutritional status. Engaging in activities that oppose a therapeutic need or threaten a medical problem (e.g., ignoring dietary restrictions or refusing a particular therapy) may indicate a desire to die. Walking through a dangerous area, driving while intoxicated, and subjecting oneself to other risks can also be signals of suicidal desires. Suicidal risk can further be assessed by asking the patient about recent losses, lifestyle changes, new or worsening health problems, new symptoms of depression, changes in

or a limited support system, and a family history of suicide.

Suicidal older persons need close observation, careful protection, and prompt therapy. Treatment of the underlying depression should be supported. The environment should be made safe by removing items that could be used for self-harm. Nurses need to convey a willingness to listen to and discuss thoughts and feelings about suicide. Being able to reach out for help by expressing their suicidal thoughts to nursing staff may prevent patients from taking actions to end their lives.

Anxiety

Adjustments to physical, emotional, and socioeconomic limitations in old age and the new problems that frequently are encountered due to aging add to the variety of causes for anxiety. Anxiety reactions, not uncommon in older persons, can be manifested in various ways, including somatic complaints, rigidity in thinking and behavior, insomnia, fatigue, hostility, restlessness, chain smoking, pacing, fantasizing, confusion, and increased dependency. An increase in blood pressure, pulse, respirations, psychomotor activity, and frequency of voiding may occur. Appetite may increase or decrease. Anxious individuals often handle their clothing, jewelry, or utensils excessively, become intensely involved with a minor task (e.g., folding a piece of linen), and have difficulty concentrating on the activity at hand.

BOX 32-2 Geriatric Depression Scale: Short Form

Choose the best answer for how you have felt over the past week:

1. Are you basically satisfied with your life? YES / **NO**
2. Have you dropped many of your activities and interests? **YES** / NO
3. Do you feel that your life is empty? **YES** / NO
4. Do you often get bored? **YES** / NO
5. Are you in good spirits most of the time? YES / **NO**
6. Are you afraid that something bad is going to happen to you? **YES** / NO
7. Do you feel happy most of the time? YES / **NO**
8. Do you often feel helpless? **YES** / NO
9. Do you prefer to stay at home, rather than going out and doing new things? **YES** / NO
10. Do you feel you have more problems with memory than most? **YES** / NO
11. Do you think it is wonderful to be alive now? YES / **NO**
12. Do you feel pretty worthless the way you are now? **YES** / NO
13. Do you feel full of energy? YES / **NO**
14. Do you feel that your situation is hopeless? **YES** / NO
15. Do you think that most people are better off than you are? **YES** / NO

Answers in **bold** indicate depression. Score 1 point for each bolded answer:

A score > 5 points is suggestive of depression.

A score > 10 points is almost always indicative of depression.

A score > 5 points should warrant a follow-up comprehensive assessment.

BOX 32-3 Antidepressants**SELECTIVE SEROTONIN REUPTAKE INHIBITORS (SSRIs)**

Fluvoxamine (Luvox)
 Fluoxetine (Prozac)
 Paroxetine (Paxil)
 Sertraline (Zoloft)

CYCLIC COMPOUNDS

Amitriptyline HCl (Elavil, Amitril)
 Amoxapine (Ascendin)
 Desipramine HCl (Norpramine, Pertofrane)
 Doxepin HCl (Adapin, Sinequan)
 Imipramine pamoate (Tofranil)
 Maprotiline (Ludiomil)
 Nortriptyline HCl (Aventyl, Pamelor)

MONOAMINE OXIDASE INHIBITORS (MAOIS)

Phenelzine (Nardil)
 Tranylcypromine (Pamate)

LITHIUM CARBONATE

Lithium (Eskalith, Lithonate)

NURSING GUIDELINES

- Dosages for older adults should begin at about one-half that recommended for the general adult population.

- Sedation commonly occurs during the initial few days of treatment; take precautions to reduce the risk for falls.
- At least 1 month of therapy is needed before therapeutic effects will be noted; advise and support the patient during this period.
- Bedtime administration is preferable with antidepressants that produce a sedative effect.
- Prepare patients for side effects, including dry mouth, diaphoresis, urinary retention, indigestion, constipation, hypotension, blurred vision, drowsiness, increased appetite, weight gain, photosensitivity, fluctuating blood glucose levels. Assist patient in preventing complications secondary to side effects.
- Be alert to anticholinergic symptoms, particularly when cyclic compounds are used.
- Ensure that older adults and their caregivers understand dosage, intended effects, and adverse reactions to the drugs. Instruct about drug–drug, and drug–food interactions, e.g.: antidepressants can increase the effects of anticoagulants, atropine-like drugs, antihistamines, sedatives, tranquilizers, narcotics, and levodopa; antidepressants can decrease the effects of clonidine, phenytoin, and some antihypertensives; alcohol and thiazide diuretics can increase the effects of antidepressants.

BOX 32-4 Nursing Considerations in Caring for Depressed Patients

- *Help the patient develop a positive self-concept.* It must be emphasized that, although the situation may be bad, the person is not. Opportunities for success, regardless of how minor, should be provided, and new goals should be formed.
- *Encourage the expression of feelings.* Anger, guilt, frustration, and other feelings should be vented. Nurses should afford time to listen and guide patients through these feelings. In addition to verbalization, feelings can be expressed through writing.
- *Avoid minimizing feelings.* Statements such as “Don’t worry, things will get better” or “Don’t talk that way; you have a lot to be thankful for” offer little benefit to depressed persons.
- *Ensure that physical needs are met.* Good nutrition, activity, sleep, and regular bowel movements are among the factors that enhance a healthy physical state, which in turn strengthen the patient’s capacities to work through depression. Physical-care problems must be aggressively addressed.
- *Offer hope.* While being realistic regarding the individual situation, nurses can, by words and deeds, convey their belief that the future will have meaning and that the patient’s life is of value.

Treatment of anxiety depends on its cause. Nurses should probe into the patient's history for recent changes or new stresses (e.g., rent increase, increased neighborhood crime, divorce of child). The consumption of caffeine, alcohol, nicotine, and over-the-counter drugs should be reviewed for possible causes. In addition to drugs, interventions such as biofeedback, guided imagery, and relaxation therapy can prove helpful. Anxious persons need their lives to be simplified and stable, with few unpredictable occurrences. Environmental stimuli must be controlled. Nurses should plan interventions specific to the underlying cause. Basic nursing interventions that could prove beneficial include the following:

- allow adequate time for conversations, procedures, and other activities
- prepare the individual for all anticipated activities
- provide thorough, honest, and basic explanations
- control the number and variety of persons with whom the patient must interact
- adhere to routines
- keep and use familiar objects
- prevent overstimulation of the senses by reducing noise, using soft lights, and maintaining a stable room temperature



POINT TO PONDER

What types of situations cause you to become depressed or anxious? What implications does this have for your senior years? ●

Alcohol Abuse

Abuse of, dependency on, or addiction to alcohol affects older adults but often is a problem that goes unnoticed, sometimes because it is unexpected and sometimes because it mimics symptoms of common geriatric conditions. Alcohol abuse can seriously threaten the physical, emotional, and social health of older persons. Older adults who drink alcohol and who take medications increase their

risk for adverse drug consequences. It is important that gerontological nurses recognize this problem and help patients seek appropriate treatment.

A majority of older adults who are alcoholic are chronic alcohol abusers who have used it heavily throughout their lives. A significant number of chronic abusers die before reaching old age, contributing to a decreased incidence of alcoholism with age. The other type of older alcoholic is the one who begins abusing alcohol in late life because of situational factors (e.g., retirement, widowhood, or poor health status).

Health care professionals may possess the same stereotype of alcoholics as some people in the general public, believing alcoholics to be sloppy, “skid row” types of people. Consequently, even professionals may fail to detect alcohol abuse in the retired professional who drinks at the country club daily or the frail widow who begins sipping brandy at midmorning. Nurses must keep an open mind and recognize that alcoholics come in many forms.



KEY CONCEPT

Alcoholics come in many forms and often do not fit the stereotypical profile.

Alcohol abuse can be manifested in a variety of ways, some of which may be subtle or easy to confuse with other disorders (Box 32-5). Symptoms can develop secondary to complications from alcoholism, such as cirrhosis, hepatitis, and chronic infections (related to suppressed immune system). These signs should be noted during an assessment and trigger questions regarding the patient's drinking pattern. Box 32-6 describes the criteria for a definitive diagnosis of alcoholism.

Ongoing supervision of the older alcoholic's health status can help identify and, in some cases, correct complications early. Chronic alcoholism can cause magnesium deficiencies, gastritis, pan-

BOX 32-5

Possible Indications of Alcohol Abuse

Drinking alcohol to calm nerves or improve mood
Gulping or rapidly consuming alcoholic beverages
Memory blackouts
Malnutrition
Confusion
Social isolation and withdrawal
Disrupted relationships
Arrests for minor offenses
Anxiety

Irritability
Depression
Mood swings
Lack of motivation or energy
Injuries, falls
Insomnia
GI distress
Clumsiness

BOX 32-6 Criteria for Diagnosing Alcoholism

- Drinks a fifth of whiskey a day or its equivalent in wine or beer (for a 180-pound person)
- Alcoholic blackouts
- Blood alcohol level greater than 150 mg/100 mL
- Withdrawal syndrome: hallucinations, convulsions, gross tremors, delirium tremens (DTs)
- Continued drinking despite medical advice or problems caused by drinking

Source: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism.

creatitis, and polyneuropathy. Cardiac disorders can result from alcoholism and can be displayed by hypertension, irregular heart beat, and heart failure due to cardiomyopathy. Cognition can be impaired by a loss of brain cells and enlargement of the ventricles.

In caring for the patient who has an alcohol problem, the long-term goal is sobriety; this can be achieved only if the patient acknowledges the problem and takes responsibility for doing something about it. Family involvement can be significant to the success of the treatment plan because outcomes can be negatively affected by loved ones denying or enabling the drinking problem.

Alcoholism treatment programs designed specifically for older adults are rare, and it is likely that traditional program staff are unfamiliar with the unique characteristics and needs of the older alcoholic. Gerontological nurses must ensure that the needs of the older alcoholic are competently addressed. For example, benzodiazepines, commonly used for detoxification, can cause toxicity in older people at the same dosage levels that are prescribed for younger adults. Dosage adjustments are necessary, as is close monitoring for complications.

Alcoholics Anonymous (see the Resources at the end of the chapter) is a free program for recov-

ery, available in most communities, which provides counseling and opportunities for alcohol-free socialization for the older alcoholic. Supplying patients with locations, meeting times, and encouragement to attend meetings can be significant to helping them get on the treatment path.

Paranoia

Paranoid states frequently occur in older persons, which is not surprising considering the following:

- sensory losses, so common in later life, easily cause the environment to be misperceived
- illness, disability, living alone, and a limited budget promote insecurity
- ageism within society sends a message of the undesirability of the old
- older people are frequent victims of crime and unscrupulous practices

Conditions affecting physical health can contribute to paranoia. Endocrine disorders, such as hyperparathyroidism can cause paranoia as a symptom (Chiba et al., 2007). Paranoia also can be an adverse response to some drugs. This reinforces the importance of a good physical evaluation and history when psychiatric symptoms present.

Consider This Case

Seventy-nine-year-old Mrs. B has recently moved into an in-law apartment in the home of her son and daughter-in-law. She shares meals and social time with her son and daughter-in-law, but otherwise, lives independently in her apartment. During the day Mrs. B entertains friends who share alcoholic beverages with her. By the time her son and daughter-in-law come home from work in the evening, Mrs. B is intoxicated. Although she is able to walk and engage in most normal activities, her speech is slurred and her gait unsteady. There have been occasions when she forgot something was on the stove, setting off the fire alarm, and left doors open and unlocked when she left the house.

THINK CRITICALLY

- What risks does Mrs. B impose for herself and her family?
- What approaches can the family use to address the problem with Mrs. B?
- What resources may be of help?

The initial consideration in working with paranoid older individuals is to explore mechanisms that could reduce insecurity and misperception. Corrective lenses, hearing aids, supplemental income, new housing, and a stable environment are potential interventions. Psychotherapy and medications can be used when improvement is not achieved through other interventions. Nurses should ensure that these patients do not become withdrawn from the rest of the world because of self-imposed isolation.

Not to be overlooked is the impact of the paranoid state on general health and well-being. Nutritional status can be threatened if the patient refuses to eat, believing his or her food to be poisoned; sleep deprivation can result if there is suspicion that a stranger is in the house; and health problems may not be diagnosed if the person believes the doctor is an enemy. Honest, basic explanations and approaches to dealing with paranoid misperceptions are beneficial; at no time should delusions be supported.

Hypochondriasis

Hypochondriasis may be a problem of older individuals. Although it is commonly associated with depression, for some older adults it may be an attention-getting mechanism. Often, health professionals reinforce this behavior by reacting to physical complaints promptly but not reinforcing periods of good function and health. Staff members may not respond to a request to sit down and talk with a patient, but they give undivided attention when that same person expresses physical discomfort. Some older people find hypochondriasis an effective means of controlling a spouse or children. Older people may use it as a means of socialization; if they do not have travels, professions, or interests they can share with others, they can count on their peers having similar ailments, which can serve as the common ground for conversation.



KEY CONCEPT

Health care professionals may promote hypochondriac behavior by investing more time and interest reviewing the complaints of the older person than in discussing interests and normal life activities.

Regardless of how unfounded they seem, complaints must be evaluated for their validity before assuming that they are part of hypochondriasis. Even the complaints of a known hypochondriac deserve evaluation, particularly if a new set of complaints emerges. It is beneficial to help these people find alternatives to their obsession with their bodily functions. Spending time in non-illness-related

conversation can demonstrate that one can receive attention without resorting to physical complaints. Family members need to understand the dynamics of this problem so that they can reinforce positive behaviors and not be manipulated. Telling these patients that nothing is wrong is of little help; the underlying reason for this reaction must be addressed.

Nursing Considerations for Mental Health Conditions

Monitoring Medications

Medications used to treat psychiatric disorders can bring significant improvement to patients, but they can also have profound adverse effects on older adults. Some of the adverse effects of these medications can lead to anorexia, constipation, falls, incontinence, anemia, lethargy, sleep disturbances, and confusion. The lowest possible dosage should be used, and any reactions should be observed closely. A checklist for problem identification, as shown in Table 32-2, may be useful to track the impact of medications on behavior and function. Of course, drugs complement and do not substitute for other forms of treatment.



KEY CONCEPT

Drugs should be viewed as an adjunct to rather than as a substitute for other forms of treatment.

Promoting a Positive Self-Concept

The importance of promoting a positive self-concept in all older adults cannot be overemphasized. All people need to feel that their lives have had meaning and that there is hope. A sense of meaninglessness and hopelessness threatens mental health and minimizes the pleasures that the last segment of life can bring. Nurses should take a sincere interest in the lives and accomplishments of their older patients. It must be remembered that the disabled or frail person who now presents to the nurse may once have demonstrated the courage to venture from a native country to America, risked his life to save fellow soldiers in a war, scrubbed floors at night to support a family during the Great Depression, or developed a successful business from scratch. Struggles and accomplishments exist in every life and can be recognized to help promote self-esteem. Activities such as life-review discussions, taping oral histories, and compiling a scrapbook of life events not only help older adults feel a sense of worth about the lives they have lived, but also provide a sense of history and legacy for younger generations (see Chapter 4). In addition to

TABLE 32-2 Checklist for Documenting Drugs and Behavior

Date	AM											PM												
	12	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
Medications:																								
Disoriented regarding:																								
Self																								
Others																								
Place																								
Day																								
Time																								
Forgetful of:																								
Today's events																								
Past events																								
Inappropriate:																								
Speech																								
Behavior																								
Hallucinations																								
Wandering																								
ADL deficits:																								
Feeding																								
Bathing																								
Dressing																								
Toileting																								
Mobility																								
Incontinence, urinary																								
Pulse																								
Blood pressure																								
Bowel movement																								
Sleeping/napping																								
Other symptoms:																								
Food Intake	100%	75%	50%	25%	0%	Comments																		
Breakfast																								
Lunch																								
Dinner																								
Snacks																								

Use back to describe specific problems or changes

the past, the present and future should hold meaning for older adults, and this can be promoted by helping patients participate in relevant activities, engage in meaningful social interactions, have opportunities to do for others, exercise the maximum amount of control possible over their lives, maintain religious and cultural practices, and be respected as individuals.

Managing Behavioral Problems

Behavioral problems are actions that are annoying, disruptive, harmful, or generally deviate from the norm and that tend to be recurrent in nature, such as physical or verbal abuse, resistance to care,

repetitive actions, wandering, restlessness, suspiciousness, and inappropriate sexual behavior and undressing. These problems can occur in persons with altered cognitive status who are incapable of thinking rationally and making good judgments. Any type of illness that lowers the patient's ability to cope with changes and stress can also contribute to these problems. Medications, environmental factors, a loss of independence, and insufficient activity can cause problematic behaviors as well.

Assessing the cause of the behavior is the first step in assisting the patient who displays behavioral problems. Factors associated with the behavior

TABLE 32-3 Understanding and Managing Common Behavioral Problems

Behavior	Possible Causes	Nursing Actions
Violent/physically abusive (e.g., hitting, kicking, biting others)	Dementia Paranoia Misinterpretation of actions of others Anger Feeling powerless Anxiety Fatigue	Avoid putting person in situations that trigger behaviors Recognize warning signs (e.g., cursing, pacing) Get help to protect self and others Address in calm, quiet manner Distract Move person to area away from others
Verbally abusive (e.g., insulting, accusing, threatening)	Dementia Feeling powerless Anger	Avoid arguing, reasoning, reacting to comments Distract with activities Reinforce positive behaviors Allow maximum decision-making and participation
Resisting care	Dementia Misinterpretation of actions, objects, environment Depression	Prepare for activities Break activities into single, simple steps Use alternatives if possible (e.g., sponge bath instead of tub bath) Monitor hygiene, nutritional status, intake and output, elimination
Undressing inappropriately	Dementia Soiled clothing Irritation from clothing Feeling too warm	Ensure clothing is clean, dry; replace as necessary Examine clothing for irritation, poor fit Inspect skin for irritation Redress Use clothing that is difficult to unfasten Offer positive reinforcement when person remains dressed
Repetitive actions	Dementia Agitation Anxiety Boredom	Ignore Distract with other activities Replace with a more acceptable repetitive activity (e.g., folding laundry, stacking papers)
Wandering	Dementia Boredom Restlessness Anxiety	Schedule times for supervised walking Provide activities Safeguard environment (e.g., alarm doors, install door locks that require punching in code to open, ensure window screens cannot be removed) Ensure person is wearing some form of identification Familiarize person with environment; orient Provide daytime activities Provide late day exercise
Night wandering, restlessness	Dementia Excess daytime sleeping Misinterpretation of environment Sundowner syndrome Medications (e.g., sedatives, hypnotics, diuretics, laxatives)	Toilet before bed time Keep night light on in bedroom and bathroom Reassure and orient when person awakens Safeguard environment
Inappropriate sexual behavior	Dementia, leading to poor judgment, loss of inhibition Misinterpretation of actions and messages from others	Relocate person to private area Distract with other activities Set limits and remind of acceptable behaviors Review medications for those that can cause reduced inhibitions (e.g., anti-anxiety agents) or that increase libido (e.g., L-dopa)
Suspiciousness	Paranoid state Dementia Suspicious personality Medications (e.g., anticholinergics, L-dopa, tolbutamide)	Provide acceptable means of touch, human contact Assess cause Don't react to behavior; depersonalize Protect from harm Provide explanations; prepare for activities, changes Afford maximum decision-making Do not try to explain to person that suspicions are unfounded or wrong; this will not be helpful

should be closely observed and documented and include the following information:

- time of onset
- where it occurred
- environmental conditions
- persons present
- activities that preceded
- pattern of behavior
- signs and symptoms present
- outcome
- measures that helped or worsened behavior

It is beneficial to correct the underlying cause of the problem whenever possible. Likewise, factors that precipitate the behavioral problem should be avoided (e.g., if it is identified that the patient becomes agitated when seated in a busy hallway, try to avoid seating the patient in this area). Staff or caregivers can prevent behavioral problems by identifying signs and symptoms that precipitate the behaviors and intervening in a timely manner. Environmental considerations that can decrease behavioral problems include maintaining a room temperature between 70°F (21°C) and 75°F (24°C), avoiding wall coverings and linens that have busy patterns, limiting traffic flow, controlling noise, preventing dramatic transitions from daylight to nighttime darkness, and installing safety devices for monitoring, such as alarms on doors and video cameras. Table 32-3 reviews some of the major behavioral problems, their causes, and related nursing interventions.

A full discussion of delirium and dementia is provided in Chapter 33.

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. Discuss factors associated with aging in America that contribute to mental illness in late life.
2. Why is alcoholism sometimes missed in older adults?
3. Describe questions and observations that could be used in an interview to uncover mental health problems.
4. Describe reasons other than a paranoid disorder for an older adult being suspicious.
5. As the baby boomers enter old age, what type of mental health conditions could be more prevalent than with previous generations of older adults?

Resources

Al-Anon Family Group Headquarters (local chapters available)

<http://www.al-anon-alateen.org>

Alcoholics Anonymous (local chapters available)

<http://www.alcoholics-anonymous.org>

Anxiety Disorders Association of America

<http://www.adaa.org>

Mental Health America

<http://www.nmha.org>

National Clearinghouse for Alcohol and Drug Information

<http://www.ncadi.samhsa.gov/>

National Depressive and Manic-Depressive Association

<http://www.ndmda.org>

References

- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Injury Prevention and Control. (2005). *Web-based injury statistics query and reporting system (WISQARS)* [online]. Accessed 10/1/07, <http://www.cdc.gov/ncipc/wisqars>.
- Chiba, Y., Satoh, K., Ueda, S., Kanazawa, N., Tamura, Y., & Horiuchi, T. (2007). Marked improvement of psychiatric symptoms after parathyroidectomy in elderly primary hyperparathyroidism. *Endocrine Journal*, *54*(3), 379–383.
- Derogatis, R. S., Lipma, K., Rickels, E. H., Uhlenbath, E. H., & Covi, L. (1974). The Hopkins symptom checklist: A measure of primary symptom dimensions. *Pharmacopsychiatry*, *7*, 79.
- Duke University Center for the Study of Aging. (1978). *Multidimensional functional assessment: The OARS methodology*. Durham, NC: Duke University.
- Fishback, D. B. (1977). Mental status questionnaire for organic brain syndrome, with a new visual counting test. *Journal of the American Geriatric Society*, *25*, 167.
- Folstein, M. F., Folstein, S., & McHugh, P. R. (1975). "Mini-mental state": A practical method for grading the clinician. *Journal of Psychiatric Research*, *12*, 189.
- Goldberg, D. (1972). *The detection of psychiatric illness by questionnaire*. London: Oxford University Press.
- Loebel, J. P. (2005). Practical geriatrics: Completed suicides in late life. *Psychiatric Services*, *56*(3), 260–262.
- National Health Information. (2003). St. John's wort in depression: A new meta-analysis. *Alternative Medicine Research Report*, *2*(1), 1–5.
- Pfeiffer, E. (1975). A short portable mental status questionnaire for the assessment of organic brain deficit in elderly patients. *Journal of the American Geriatric Society*, *23*(10), 433.
- Pilkington, K., Rampes, H., & Richardson, J. (2006). Complementary medicine for depression. *Expert Review of Neurotheapeutics*, *6*(11), 1741–1751.
- Zung, W. W. K. (1965). A self-rating depression scale. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, *12*, 63.

Recommended Readings

- Antai-Otang, D. (2003). Suicide: Life span considerations. *Nursing Clinics of North America*, *38*(1), 137–150.
- Blixen, C. E. (1998). Aging and mental health care. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, *14*(11), 11.
- Bowman, P.T., & Gerber, S. (2006). Alcohol in the older population, Part 2: MAST you speak the truth in an AUDIT or are you too CAGE-y? *Case Manager*, *17*(6), 48–53, 59.

- Buffum, J. C., & Buffum, M. D. (2005). Treating depression in the elderly: An update on antidepressants. *Geriatric Nursing, 26*(3), 138–142.
- Cacchione, P. Z., Culp, K., Laing, J., & Tripp-Reimer, T. (2003). Clinical profile of acute confusion in the long-term care setting. *Clinical Nursing Research, 12*(2), 145–158.
- Ebersole, P. (2005). The normality of depression. *Geriatric Nursing, 26*(3), 133.
- Fisher, K. M., & Copenhaver, V. (2006). Assessing the mental health of rural older adults in public housing facilities: A comparison of screening tools. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 32*(9), 26–33.
- Greenberg, S. A. (2007). How to try this: The Geriatric Depression Scale: Short Form. *American Journal of Nursing, 107*(10), 60–69.
- Guse, L., Inglis, J., Chicoine, J., Leche, G., Stadnyk, L., & Whitbread, L. (2000). Life albums in long-term care: Residents, family, and staff perceptions. *Geriatric Nursing, 21*(1), 34–37.
- Kaempf, G., O'Donnell, C., & Oslin, D. W. (1999). The BRENDA model: A psychosocial addiction model to identify and treat alcohol disorders in elders. *Geriatric Nursing, 20*(6), 302–304.
- Krishnan, K. R. (2007). Concept of disease in geriatric psychiatry. *American Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry, 15*(1), 1–11.
- Kristnamurthy, M. N., & Telles, M. S. (2007). Assessing depression following two ancient Indian interventions: Effects of yoga and ayurveda on older adults in a residential home. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 33*(2), 17–23.
- Kurlowicz, L., & Wallace, M. (1999). Mini-mental state examination: Try this. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 25*(5), 8–9.
- Luggen, A. S. (2005). Bipolar disorder: an uncommon illness? Recognizing and caring for the elderly person with bipolar disorder. *Geriatric Nursing, 26*(5), 326–329.
- Luggen, A. S. (2006). Alcohol and the older adult. *Advance for Nurse Practitioners, 14*(1), 47–52.
- Mathiasen, P., & LaVert, S. (1998). *Late life depression*. New York: Dell Publishers.
- McGee, E. M. (2000). Alcoholics Anonymous and nursing: Lessons in holism and spiritual care. *Journal of Holistic Nursing, 18*(1), 11–26.
- McKhann, G., & Albert, M. (2002). *Keeping your brain young: The complete guide to physical and emotional health and longevity*. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley and Sons.
- Moore, A. A., Whitman, E. J., & Ward, K. T. (2007). Risks of combined alcohol/medication use in older adults. *American Journal of Geriatric Pharmacotherapeutics, 5*(1), 64–74.
- Moore, S. L., Metcalf, B., & Schow, E. (2000). Aging and meaning in life: Examining the concept. *Geriatric Nursing, 21*(1), 27–29.
- Onega, L. L., & Abraham, I. L. (1998). Differentiated nursing assessment of depressive symptoms in community-dwelling elders. *Nursing Clinics of North America, 33*(3), 407–416.
- Palmer, H. D. (2006). The view from 1946: Mental disorders of old age, part I. *Geriatrics, 61*(6), 23–26.
- Plastow, N. A. (2006). Libraries of life: Using life history books with depressed care home residents. *Geriatric Nursing, 27*(4), 217–221.
- Resnick, B. (2003). Dementia, delirium, and depression in older adults. *Advance for Providers of Post-Acute Care, January/February*, 49–52.
- Restak, R. (2001). *The secret life of the brain*. Washington, DC: Joseph Henry Press.
- Rinaldi, P., Mecocci, P., Benedetti, C., et al. (2003). Validation of the five-item geriatric depression scale in elderly subjects in three different settings. *Journal of the American Geriatric Society, 51*(5), 694–698.
- Robie, D., Edgemon-Hill, E. J., Phelps, B., Schmitz, C., & Laughlin, J. A. (1999). Suicide prevention protocol. *American Journal of Nursing, 99*(12), 53–63.
- Ryden, M. B., Pearson, V., Kaas, M. J., Hanscom, J., Lee, H., Krichbaum, K., Wang, J. J., & Snyder, M. (1999). Nursing interventions for depression in newly admitted nursing home residents. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 25*(3), 20–29.
- Salvatore, T. (2000). Elder suicide: A preventable tragedy. *CARING Magazine, 19*(3), 34–37.
- Smyer, M. A. (2007). *Aging and mental health*. Malden, MA: Blackwell Publishers.
- Snowden, D. (2001). *Aging with grace: What the nun study teaches us about leading longer, healthier, and more meaningful lives*. New York: Random House.
- Stewart, D. E. (2003). Physical symptoms of depression: Unmet needs in special populations. *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry, 64*(Suppl 7), 12–16.
- Tanner, E. K. (2005). Recognizing late-life depression: Why is this important for nurses in the home setting? *Geriatric Nursing, 26*(3), 145–149.
- Thatchel, A. E., Mohan, R., & Bhugra, D. (2007). The evidence base of complementary and alternative therapies in depression. *Journal of Affective Disorders, 97*(1), 23–35.
- Tsang, H. W., Mok, C. K., Au Yeung, Y. T., & Chan, S. Y. (2003). The effect of Qigong on general and psychosocial health of elderly with chronic physical illnesses: A randomized clinical trial. *International Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry, 18*(5), 441–449.
- U.S. Preventive Services Task Force. (2002). Screening for depression: Recommendations and rationale. *American Journal of Nursing, 102*(7), 77–80.
- Whall, A. L., & Hoes-Gurevich, M. L. (1999). Missed depression in elderly individuals: Why is this a problem? *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 25*(6), 44–46.
- Wolf, T. P. (2003). Building a caring client relationship and creating a quilt. A parallel and metaphorical process. *Journal of Holistic Nursing, 21*(1), 81–87.
- Yen, P. K. (2003). Maintaining cognitive function with diet. *Geriatric Nursing, 24*(1), 62–63.
- Zarit, S. H., & Zarit, J. M. (2006). *Mental disorders in older adults: Fundamentals of assessment and treatment*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Zarowitz, B.J. (2007). Antidepressant tapering: Avoiding adverse consequences of gradual dose reduction. *Geriatric Nursing, 28*(2), 75–79.

CHAPTER 33

Delirium and Dementia

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Delirium Dementia

- Alzheimer's Disease
- Other Dementias
- Caring for Persons With Dementia

Although arthritis, heart disease, and other physical diseases are not welcomed by older adults, these conditions tend to be dreaded less than the loss of normal cognition. Impaired cognition threatens the ability to communicate, function independently, make decisions, and comprehend events. With advancing years, there is increased risk for delirium, the reversible alteration in cognition caused by acute conditions, and dementia, the irreversible impairment in cognition caused by disease or injury to the brain. Although both conditions cause cognitive impairment, there are significant differences (Table 33-1). Assisting with the prevention, diagnosis, and treatment of these cognitive impairments are important responsibilities of the gerontological nurse.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 Differentiate delirium from dementia.
- 2 Identify factors that cause delirium in older adults.
- 3 Describe the progression of symptoms of dementia.
- 4 List causes of dementia in older adults.
- 5 Outline nursing considerations for the older adult with dementia.

TABLE 33-1 Delirium vs. Dementia

	Delirium	Dementia
Cause	Disruption in brain function due to medication side effect, circulatory disturbance, dehydration, low or high blood pressure, low or high thyroid activity, low or high blood glucose, surgery, stress, etc.	Damage to brain tissue due to Alzheimer's or other degenerative diseases, circulatory problems, lack of oxygen, infection, trauma, hydrocephalus, tumor; alcoholism, etc.
Onset	Rapid; change noted within day or days	Slow; months to years before symptoms are evident
Mental Status	Short-term memory impaired more than long-term, disoriented, confused, distorted thinking, incoherent speech, may be suspicious of others, see or hear things that are not there (illusions, hallucinations), exaggeration of personality features	Poor short- and long-term memory, disoriented, confused, difficulty finding proper word to use, impaired judgment, problems with arithmetic and problem-solving, personality changes
Level of Consciousness (Alertness)	Changed, can be highly agitated or very dull	Normal
Behavior	Can be hyperactive, less active than normal, or fluctuate between both extremes	Inappropriate, may be unsteady on feet, have difficulty with coordinated movements
Recovery	Disease can be reversed and normal mental status restored if cause is treated promptly	Progression of disease may be slowed but disease cannot be reversed; usually continues to worsen

Delirium

A variety of conditions can impair cerebral circulation and cause disturbances in cognitive function (Box 33-1). Sometimes the history, physical examination, or laboratory tests will indicate the presence of an organic factor that has caused the disturbance; however, without such evidence, the diagnosis of delirium can be established by the symptoms and lack of any non-organic mental disorder that could cause them.

The onset of symptoms with delirium tends to be rapid and can include disturbed intellectual function; disorientation of time and place but usually not of identity; altered attention span; worsened memory; labile mood; meaningless chatter; poor judgment; and altered level of consciousness, including hypervigilance, mild drowsiness, and semicomatose status. Significant perceptual changes can occur, such as hallucinations (usually visual) and illusions (e.g., misinterpreting caregivers as police guards). Disturbances in sleep–wake cycles can

BOX 33-1 Potential Causes of Impaired Cognition

Fluid and electrolyte imbalances	Pain
Medications	Malnutrition
Congestive heart failure	Dehydration
Hyperglycemia and hypoglycemia	Anemias
Hyperthermia and hypothermia	Infection
Hypercalcemia and hypocalcemia	Hypotension
Hypothyroidism	Trauma
Decreased cardiac function	Malignancy
Decreased respiratory function	Alcoholism
Decreased renal function	Hypoxia
CNS disturbances	Toxic substances
Emotional stress	

occur; in fact, restlessness and sleep disturbances may be early clues. The patient may be suspicious, have personality changes, and experience illusions more often than delusions. Physical signs, such as shortness of breath, fatigue, and slower psychomotor activities, may accompany behavioral changes.



KEY CONCEPT

Delirium alters level of consciousness, whereas dementia does not.

Nurses can play a significant role by detecting signs of confusion promptly. A good history and assessment of mental status on initial contact can provide the baseline data with which changes can be compared (see Assessment Guide 32-1 in Chapter 32). Any change in behavior or cognitive pattern warrants an evaluation. There is the risk that delirium may not be recognized if persons unfamiliar with the patient assume that poor cognition is normal for him or her. Likewise, persons with dementia can develop delirium as a response to an acute condition but be undiagnosed because changes are not understood or identified.

Delirium is reversible in most circumstances, and prompt care, treating this condition as a medical emergency, can prevent permanent damage. Treatment depends on the cause (e.g., stabilizing blood glucose, correcting dehydration, or discontinuing a medication). Treating the symptoms rather than the cause or accepting the symptoms as normal and failing to obtain treatment can result not only in worsened mental status, but also in the continuation of a physical condition that could be life threatening.



KEY CONCEPT

As older adults often have multiple health conditions, it is important to remember that several coexisting factors can be responsible for a delirium.

During the initial acute stage, establishing medical stability and minimizing stimulation are primary goals. Consistency in care is important; thus, the patient benefits from interaction with only a limited number of people. Controlling environmental temperature, noise, and traffic flow is important. Placing this patient in a quiet area away from the mainstream activity is beneficial. Bright lights should be avoided, but ample lighting is needed to enable the patient to adequately visualize the environment. The nurse should ensure that the patient does not harm himself or herself or others and that physical care needs are met. Regardless of

the level of intellectual function or consciousness, it is important to speak to the patient and offer explanations of activities or procedures being done. Families may need considerable support and realistic explanations to alleviate their anxieties (e.g., “No, he does not have Alzheimer’s disease. His confusion occurred because the level of glucose, or sugar, in his blood dropped too low. He’ll be better as soon as the level is brought back to normal.”).

Dementia

Dementia is an irreversible, progressive impairment in cognitive function affecting memory, orientation, judgment, reasoning, attention, language, and problem solving. It is caused by damage or injury to the brain. An estimated 4.5 million older adults suffer some form of dementia.

Alzheimer’s Disease

Between 4% and 5% of older adults are victims of Alzheimer’s disease, the most common form of dementia; in fact, the likelihood of developing Alzheimer’s disease doubles every 5 years after the age of 65 (Alzheimer’s Association, 2007). Scientists project a dramatic increase in prevalence unless new ways to prevent and treat the disease are discovered (National Institute on Aging, 2006).

Alzheimer’s disease is characterized by two changes in the brain. The first is the presence of neuritic plaques, which contain deposits of beta-amyloid protein (excess amounts of this are found in persons with Alzheimer’s disease and Down syndrome). Beta-amyloid protein is a fragment of amyloid precursor protein that helps the neurons grow and repair. The beta-amyloid fragments clump together into plaques that impair the function of nerve cells in the brain. It is unclear at this point if the plaques are a cause or by-product of the disease.

The second characteristic brain change is neurofibrillary tangles in the cortex. Microtubules, structures within healthy neurons, normally are stabilized by a special protein called tau. In Alzheimer’s disease, tau is changed and begins to pair with other threads of tau that become tangled. This causes the microtubules to disintegrate and collapse the neuron’s transport system.

These brain changes lead to a loss or degeneration of neurons and synapses, especially within the neocortex and hippocampus. Interestingly, the cause-and-effect relationship between these brain changes and Alzheimer’s disease is unclear at present.

There are also changes in neurotransmitter systems associated with Alzheimer’s disease, including reductions in serotonin receptors, serotonin uptake into platelets, production of acetylcholine in the

areas of the brain in which plaque and tangles are found, acetylcholinesterase (which breaks down acetylcholine), and choline acetyltransferase. (Cholinesterase inhibitors and nicotinic, muscarinic, and cholinergic agonists are among the neurotransmitter-affecting drugs used in the treatment of Alzheimer's to compensate for the neurotransmitter changes.)

Possible Causes

Although environmental factors play a role, genetic factors do increase the risk for Alzheimer's disease. Studies have revealed several generations of Alzheimer's disease patients occurring in the same family. Chromosomal abnormalities have been identified. A strong argument for the genetic formulation of the disease stems from its connection with Down syndrome. An extra chromosome 21 exists in persons with Down syndrome; not only do people with Down syndrome begin to develop symptoms of dementia after age 35, but also the prevalence of Alzheimer's disease is higher in families with Down syndrome, and vice versa (Dykens, 2007; Prasher et al., 2003). An altered chromosome 21 in people with Alzheimer's disease causes production of an abnormal amyloid precursor protein. Chromosomes 14 and 1 also have been found to have mutations within families who have a high prevalence of Alzheimer's disease; these mutations cause abnormal proteins to be produced. If only one of these mutated genes is inherited from a parent with Alzheimer's disease, a person has a 50/50 chance of developing the disease (Robakis, 2007).



POINT TO PONDER

Would you want to know if you had a genetic predisposition toward Alzheimer's disease? What difference could this make in your life? ●

There is some investigation into the role of free radicals in the development of Alzheimer's disease. Free radicals are molecules that can build up in neurons, resulting in damage (called oxidative damage). The damage blocks substances from flowing in and out of the cell, leading to brain damage. Some studies suggest that a diet rich in antioxidants may offer protection (Ancelin et al., 2007).

Higher than normal levels of aluminum and mercury have been found in the brain cells of Alzheimer's disease patients, causing some speculation regarding the role of environmental toxins in the disease. However, the results are inconclusive as to their role in the development of Alzheimer's disease. Low zinc levels are present in persons with Alzheimer's disease, although it is not certain if this is a cause or result of the disease.

There has been some speculation about a slow-acting virus causing the neurofibrillary tangles in the brain, but no conclusive evidence exists at present to support this theory. At present, no one theory can explain this complex disease.

Symptoms

The symptoms of this progressive, degenerative disease develop gradually and progress at different rates among affected individuals. The Global Deterioration Scale/Functional Assessment Staging (GDS/FASST) offers a means of staging Alzheimer's disease (Fig. 33-1) (Auer & Reisberg, 1997). Although staging of the disease can help predict its general course and anticipate plans for care, it must be appreciated that many factors affect the progression of the disease and that there will be individual variation.

Early in the disease, the patient may be aware of changes in intellectual ability and become depressed or anxious or attempt to compensate by writing down information, structuring routines, and simplifying responsibilities. It may take some time for symptoms to be detected, even by those close to the patient.



KEY CONCEPT

The greatest risk for suicide for a person with dementia is in the early stage of the disease when the individual is aware of the changes experienced.

In addition to the history of symptoms from the patient and family members or significant others, diagnosis is aided by brain scans that can reveal changes in the brain's structure that are consistent with the disease, neuropsychological testing that evaluates cognitive functioning, and laboratory tests and neurological examinations.

Treatment

Although currently there is no treatment to prevent or cure Alzheimer's disease, clinical trials are being conducted by the National Institutes of Health and private industry in hopes of finding a means to improve function and slow the progress of the disease. There has been interest in estrogen's role in enhancing cognitive function, with speculation that estrogen has a role in protecting postmenopausal women from developing Alzheimer's disease or other age-related cognitive decline; however, research has produced conflicting results as the women's Health Initiative Memory Study demonstrated an increased risk for dementia in postmenopausal women in women taking estrogen with progestin (Henderson, 2006). Antioxidants; anti-inflammatory agents; supplements (folic acid and vitamins B6 and B12); gene therapy that adds a nerve growth factor to the aging

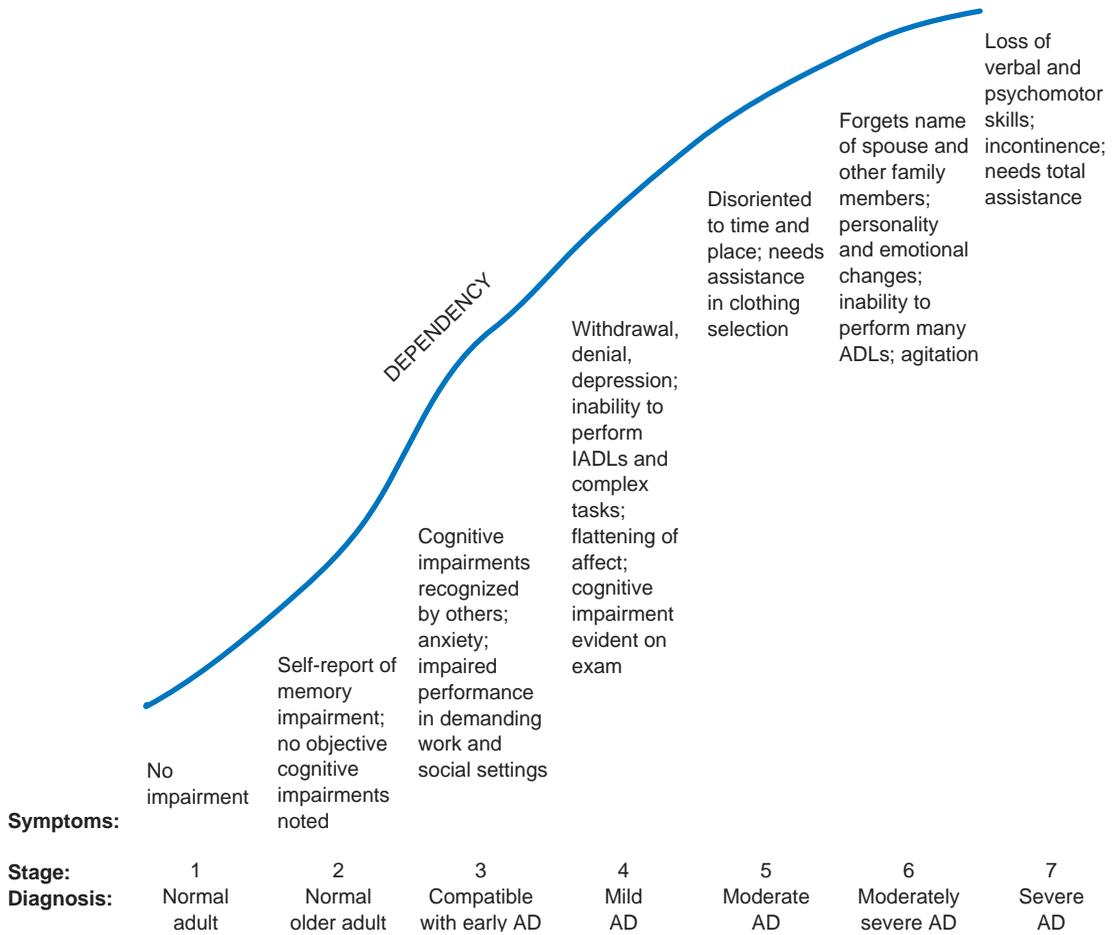


FIGURE 33-1 • Stages of Alzheimer's disease. (Based on Reisberg, B., Ferris, S. H., & de Leon, M. J. [1982]. The global deterioration scale for assessment of primary dementia. *American Journal of Psychiatry*, 139, 1136–1139; and Auer, S., & Reisberg, B. [1997]. The GDS/FAST Staging System. *International Psychogeriatrics*, 9 [Suppl. 1], 167–171.)

brain; and the development of a vaccine are among the other areas being investigated in clinical trials (National Institute on Aging, 2006).

Because acetylcholine falls sharply in people with Alzheimer's disease, medications that stop or slow the enzyme (acetylcholinesterase) that breaks down acetylcholine have been developed to help people with Alzheimer's disease; these drugs include donepezil (Aricept), rivastigmine (Exelon), and galanthamine (Reminyl).

Other Dementias

In addition to Alzheimer's disease, a variety of other pathologies can cause dementia:

- *Vascular dementia* results from small cerebral infarctions. Damage to brain tissue can be diffuse or localized, the onset is more rapid, and the disease progresses more predictably than Alzheimer's disease. It is associated with risk factors such as

smoking, hypertension, hyperlipidemia, inactivity, and a history of stroke or cardiovascular disease.

- *Frontotemporal dementia* is characterized by neuronal atrophy affecting the frontal lobes of the brain rather than by neurofibrillary tangles and plaques as in Alzheimer's disease. A unique characteristic of this dementia is the appearance of behavioral rather than cognitive abnormalities in the early stage. Also, rather than poor memory, early cognitive changes can include impairments in abstract thinking and speech and language skills. Pick's disease is the most common form of frontotemporal dementia.
- *Lewy body dementia*, also known as cortical *Lewy body disease*, is associated with subcortical pathology and the presence of Lewy body substance in the cerebral cortex. The similarity in the brain matter of both Alzheimer's and Lewy body dementias causes some gerontologists to view Lewy body dementia as a type of Alzheimer's disease.

- *Creutzfeldt-Jacob disease* is an extremely rare brain disorder that causes dementia. It has a rapid onset and progression and is characterized by severe neurological impairment that accompanies the dementia. It is believed that this disease can be transmitted through a slow virus; a familial tendency toward the disease is possible. The pathological process displays destruction of neurons in the cerebral cortex, overgrowth of glia, abnormal cellular structure of the cortex, hypertrophy and proliferation of astrocytes, and a spongelike appearance of the cerebral cortex. Symptoms are more varied than with Alzheimer's disease and include psychotic behavior, heightened emotional lability, memory impairment, loss of muscular function, muscle spasms, seizures, and visual disturbances. The disease progresses rapidly, and death typically occurs within 1 year of diagnosis.
- *Wernicke encephalopathy* and *Parkinson's disease* are responsible for a small percentage of dementias.
- *AIDS* may lead to the development of dementia in the final phase of the disease.
- *Trauma* and *toxins* are among the other causes of dementia.

These other forms of dementia can present with symptoms similar to those commonly associated with Alzheimer's disease. Without a comprehensive evaluation to identify or exclude other causes of dementia, the label of Alzheimer's disease cannot be accurately given to a dementia.

KEY CONCEPT

Other diseases can mimic Alzheimer's disease; therefore, a comprehensive evaluation is essential to rule out other possible causes of dementia before the diagnosis of Alzheimer's disease is made.

Caring for Persons With Dementia

The irreversible nature of dementia and its progressive deteriorating course can have devastating effects on affected individuals and their families. A majority of the care required by persons with dementia falls within the scope of nursing practice.

Ensuring Patient Safety

One of the foremost care considerations is the safety of patients with dementia. Their poor judgment and misperceptions can lead to serious behavioral problems and mishaps. A safe, structured environment is essential. The persons and components of the environment should be consistent (Fig. 33-2). Items to trigger memory are useful to include, such as photographs of the patient or a consistently used symbol (e.g., flower or triangle) on the bedroom door or personal possessions. Noise, activity, and



FIGURE 33-2 • Familiar objects, a stable environment, and consistency of caregivers can reduce some of the safety risks and behavioral problems associated with dementias.

lighting levels can overstimulate the patient and further decrease function; thus, they need to be controlled. This is particularly useful in preventing and managing sundowner syndrome (Box 33-2). Cleaning solutions, pesticides, medications, and inedible items that could be ingested accidentally must be stored in locked cabinets. Coverings should be applied to unused sockets, electrical outlets, fans, motors, and other items into which fingers may be poked. Matches and lighters should not be accessible; if the patient smokes, it must be under close supervision. Windows and doors can be protected with Plexiglas, and non-removable screens can be installed to avoid falls from windows. Wandering is common among patients with dementia; rather than restrain or restrict them, it is more advantageous to provide a safe area in which they can wander. Protective gates can be installed to prevent patients from wandering away; alarms and bells on doors can signal when they are attempting to exit. With the great risk of patients wandering away and not being able to give their names or residence when found, it is beneficial for them to wear identification bracelets at all times and to have a recent photograph available.

Promoting Therapy and Activity

Various therapies and activities can be offered to the patient with dementia, depending on the patient's level of function. Occupational therapy and expressive therapies can benefit those with early dementia. Various degrees of reality orientation, ranging from daily groups to reminding the patient who he or she is during every interaction, can be used. Even the most regressed patient can maintain contact and derive stimulation through activities, such as listening to music and touching various objects. Being touched is also a pleasurable and stimulating experience.

BOX 33-2 Sundowner Syndrome

Individuals with cognitive impairments may experience a nocturnal confusion, named sundowner syndrome due to its presentation “after the sun goes down.” Some of the factors that increase the risk of this condition include unfamiliar environment (e.g., recent admission to a facility), disturbed sleep patterns (e.g., from sleep apnea), use of restraints, excess sensory stimulation, sensory deprivation, or change in circadian rhythms.

Nurses can prevent and manage sundowner syndrome by:

- placing familiar objects in the person's room
- providing physical activity in the afternoon to help the person expend energy
- adjusting lighting in the environment to prevent the room from becoming dark in the evening
- keeping a nightlight on throughout the night
- having frequent contact with the person to offer reassurance and orientation
- using touch to provide human contact and calm the person
- ensuring the environmental temperature is within a comfortable range for the person
- controlling noise and traffic flow in the evening
- ensuring the person's basic needs are met (e.g., adequate fluids, toileting, dry clothing)

Providing Physical Care

The physical care needs of patients with dementia must not be overlooked. These individuals may not complain that they are hungry, so no one may notice that they have consumed less than one quarter of the food served; they may not remember to drink water, so they can become dehydrated; they may fight their bath so strongly that they are left unbathed; and pressure ulcers on their buttocks may go unnoticed. These patients need close observation and careful attention to their physical needs. Consideration must be given to their potential inability to communicate their needs and discomforts; a subtle change in behavior or function, a facial grimace, or repeated touching of a body part may give clues that a problem exists. Consistency in caregivers allows the caregivers to become familiar with a patient's unique behaviors and more quickly recognize a deviation from that individual's norm.

Using Complementary and Alternative Therapies

A variety of alternative medical therapies are being used to treat dementias. Nutritional supplements that have been used include vitamins B6, B12, C, and E; folic acid; zinc; and selenium. The herb ginkgo biloba has been shown to improve circulation and mental function in several clinical trials (Rassamy, Longpre, & Christen, 2007; Dos Santos-Neto, de Vilhena Toledo, Medeiros-Souza, & de Souza, 2006); caution is needed, however, because ginkgo biloba can increase the risk of intraocular hemorrhage and subdural hematoma when taken for an extended period of time or when an anticoagulant drug is being taken concurrently. Chinese medicine, in addition to herbs and nutrition, uses a form of therapeutic exercise called qigong; it is believed that oxygenation to the brain improves by

the breathing exercises and visualization used in qigong exercises.

Respecting the Individual

As patients regress, their dignity, personal worth, freedom, and individuality may be jeopardized. Loved ones may view the demented family member as a stranger living inside the body that once housed the person they knew. Staff may see another dependent or total-care patient and have no sense of that person's unique life history. Viewed less and less as a normal human being or as the same person that has been known, the person with dementia may be treated in a dehumanizing manner. Special attention must be paid to maintaining and promoting the following qualities:

- *Individuality.* The nurse should learn the personal history and uniqueness of the patient and incorporate this into caregiving activities.
- *Independence.* Even if it takes three times longer to guide patients through dressing than it would take to dress them, they should be afforded every opportunity for self-care.
- *Freedom.* As major freedoms become limited, minor choices and control become especially important. Nurses must be careful that, in the name of efficiency and safety, such severe restrictions to freedom are not imposed that the quality of life becomes minimal.
- *Dignity.* To become angry or laugh at the behaviors of a demented person is no less cruel than reacting in a similar fashion to a stroke victim who falls during ambulation. These patients should be afforded the respect given to any adult, including attractive clothing, good grooming, adult hairstyles, use of their names, privacy, and confidentiality.

Consider This Case

A home health nurse is making an initial home visit to evaluate 69-year-old Mr. S, who has Alzheimer's disease, and to assist his wife in developing effective caregiving plans. Mr. S was diagnosed approximately one year earlier as a result of an evaluation initiated by the university where he taught. University sources stated that Mr. S was behaving inappropriately: entering other professors' classrooms and beginning to lecture, forgetting to be present for classes and meetings, failing to bathe or change his clothes for days, addressing his class in an incoherent manner, and asking coworkers for assistance in operating office equipment that he had used for years without difficulty. After observing Mr. S's condition progressively worsen over time, the dean of the university telephoned Mrs. S to discuss the situation. Mrs. S claims that she noticed that her husband was acting unusually (forgetting names and appointments, bouncing checks, arguing for no reason, making unkind comments to friends, confusing days off with work days) but thought this could be related to "getting older" and job stress. When the dean spoke with her, Mrs. S realized that a serious problem might exist and accompanied her husband for an evaluation, the result of which was the establishment of a diagnosis of Alzheimer's disease. Mr. S retired immediately from the university and has been with his wife for 24 hours each day since. Mrs. S offered no complaints until this past month, when she repeatedly called the physician to discuss the new problems of incontinence, eating difficulties, and wandering that Mr. S was exhibiting. These new problems have devastated Mrs. S; she looks fatigued and claims to be eating and sleeping poorly. She firmly states that she "will never consider placing her husband in an institution" and that she'll take care of him at home "if it kills her."

THINK CRITICALLY

- What needs do both Mr. and Mrs. S have at this time?
- What resources could be helpful to Mrs. S to assist her in coping with the demands of caregiving?

- *Connection.* Persons with dementia continue to be valued human beings who are members of families, communities, and the universe. Interaction and connection with other people and nature show recognition and respect for the spiritual beings that live within the altered bodies and minds.

Supporting the Patient's Family

Assistance and support to the families of patients are integral parts of nursing care for persons with dementia. The physical, emotional, and socioeconomic burden of caring for a cognitively impaired relative can be immense. It should not be assumed that family members understand basic care techniques. The nurse needs to review basic, specific care techniques, including lifting, bathing, and managing inappropriate behaviors. The nurse can also help

prepare families for the guilt, frustration, anger, depression, and other feelings that normally accompany this responsibility. Helping families plan respite, network with support groups, and obtain counseling may be beneficial. Most states now have chapters of the Alzheimer's Association to which nurses can refer families (see Resources listing).



KEY CONCEPT

It cannot be assumed that family members understand feeding, bathing, lifting, and other basic caregiving skills.

Nursing Care Plan 33-1 describes a care plan for a person with Alzheimer's disease.

NURSING CARE PLAN 33-1

The Older Adult With Alzheimer's Disease

Nursing Diagnosis: Self-care Deficit: Feeding related to altered cognition

Goals

The patient maintains weight within ideal range; is free from signs of malnutrition.

Nursing Actions

- Weigh patient to establish baseline weight and advise wife to weigh patient weekly and report weight loss of 5 pounds or more.
- Review with patient and family patient's food likes and dislikes; assist family in planning meals that incorporate patient's preferences; consult with dietitian as necessary.
- Advise family to provide nutritious snacks, finger foods and soft/pureed foods for patient.
- Discourage patient's eating of nuts, hard candy, popcorn, or other foods that could easily be aspirated.
- Suggest that patient eat in the same location (preferably a room with minimal distractions) at consistent times daily.
- Instruct family to guide patient through meals by placing appropriate utensil in his hand, giving him one-stage instructions, and praising good eating habits.
- Discuss with family referral to Meals on Wheels or similar service in community.

Nursing Diagnosis: Self-care Deficit: Toileting and Altered Urinary Elimination: Incontinence related to altered cognition

Goals

The patient establishes toileting routine to prevent incontinence (if possible); is free from complications associated with incontinence.

Nursing Actions

- Assess urinary elimination pattern and attempt to determine whether incontinence is result of altered cognition or another problem; refer for evaluation if indicated.
- Assist family in identifying length of time between voiding episodes and develop plan to toilet patient half an hour prior to anticipated voiding time.
- Ensure that bathroom is easily accessible; arrange to obtain commode chair and urinal if necessary.
- Reinforce proper cleansing technique and skin care to prevent irritation.
- Suggest clothing that is easy for patient to remove for toileting; replacement of pants' buttons and zippers with Velcro.
- Supply with information regarding urine containment products and availability in community.

Nursing Diagnosis: Risk for Injury Due to Wandering, Poor Judgment secondary to altered cognition

Goal

The patient is free from injury.

Nursing Actions

- Inspect home with family for potential safety hazards and make appropriate recommendations.
- Ensure that home is equipped with smoke alarm and fire extinguisher.
- Recommend preventive measures, such as storing chemicals, medications, and other potentially hazardous substances in locked cabinet, setting hot water heater temperature below 120°F, alarming doors to signal patient's wandering from home, keeping environment well lighted and clutter free, capping electrical outlets, locking and securing windows, keeping spare key with neighbor. Assist in locating stores to purchase safety equipment.
- Instruct family to administer medications for patient.

(continued)

NURSING CARE PLAN 33-1 (CONTINUED)

Goal

Nursing Actions

- Ensure patient wears stable shoes, safe clothing.
- Advise family to have current photograph of patient readily available in the event he becomes lost and must be located by persons unfamiliar with him.
- Supply with information on obtaining identification bracelet for patient.

Nursing Diagnosis: Disturbed Sleep Pattern related to dementia

Goals

Nursing Actions

The patient sleeps 5 to 7 hours at night; takes one nap during the day; is free from fatigue, insomnia, and other sleep/rest disturbances.

- Recommend that family maintain a record of patient's sleep and nap times to assess patterns.
- Advise family to adhere to simple, consistent bed-time routine; provide soft lighting and music as this facilitates sleep; prevent patient from excess daytime napping; encourage early evening exercise.

Nursing Diagnosis: Impaired Verbal Communication and Disturbed Thought Processes related to Alzheimer's disease

Goals

Nursing Actions

The patient is oriented to person, place, and time (to maximum extent possible); effectively communicates needs.

- Instruct family in helpful communication techniques, such as:
 - using calm relaxed manner of communication
 - approaching patient from the front and getting his attention before speaking
 - using basic language
 - giving one instruction or comment at a time
 - avoiding overstimulating or overloading patient
 - allowing ample time for patient to respond
 - identifying terms used by patient to describe needs or items
 - using distractions when patient becomes upset
- Encourage family to keep patient oriented, place clocks and calendars in rooms used by patient.
- Help family to identify and avoid aspects of environment that could promote misperceptions, such as shadows cast by light, radios playing in empty rooms.

Nursing Diagnosis: Interrupted Family Processes and Caregiver Role Strain related to altered roles and function of patient and demands of caregiving

Goals

Nursing Actions

The family is free from adverse effects from patient's illness; develops effective means of coping with patient's condition.

- Assess family's reactions to patient's condition, impact on roles and functions; identify family members' risks and needs.
- Discuss realities of disease and patient's prognosis with family.
- Identify other family resources or significant others who can offer support and assistance to family caregiver.
- Refer family to local chapter of Alzheimer's Disease and Related Disorders Association, counseling services, and other support services.
- Assist in locating respite care; recommend adult day care program for patient.
- Discuss potential for nursing home admission; listen to family's concerns; clarify misconceptions and offer facts.
- Assist family in identifying their own needs and developing plans for their own lives as patient's condition declines.
- Allow and encourage expression of feelings; offer support.

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. Describe situations that an older patient could experience during a hospitalization for surgery that could cause delirium.
2. Discuss the impact of an older person's diagnosis of Alzheimer's disease on the spouse, adult children, and grandchildren.
3. In what ways could a person show denial of a spouse's signs of dementia? What behaviors by the well spouse could delay the diagnosis of the affected spouse?
4. What risks would an older adult with a mild dementia face if he or she lived alone in the community?

Resources

Alzheimer's Association

<http://www.alz.org>

National Institute on Aging, Alzheimer's Disease Education and Referral Center

<http://www.nia.nih.gov/alzheimers>

References

- Alzheimer's Association. (2007). *Alzheimer's disease: Causes and risk factors*. Retrieved 10/10/07, http://www.alz.org/alzheimers_disease_causes_risk_factors.asp.
- Ancelin, M. L., Christen, Y., & Ritchie, K. (2007). Is antioxidant therapy a viable alternative for mild cognitive impairment? Examination of the evidence. *Dementia and Geriatric Cognitive Disorders*, *24*(1), 1–19.
- Auer, S., & Reisberg, B. (1997). The GDS/FAST staging system. *International Psychogeriatrics*, *9*(Suppl 1), 167–171.
- Dos Santos-Neto, L. L., de Vilhena Toledo, M. A., Medeiros-Souza, P., & de Souza, G.A. (2006). The use of herbal medicine in Alzheimer's disease—a systematic review. *Evidence Based Complementary and Alternative Medicine*, *3*(4), 441–445.
- Dykens, E. M. (2007). Psychiatric and behavioral disorders in persons with Down syndrome. *Mental Retardation and Developmental Disability Research Review*, *13*(3), 272–278.
- Fishback, D. B. (1977). Mental status questionnaire for organic brain syndrome, with a new visual counting test. *Journal of the American Geriatric Society*, *25*, 167.
- Folstein, M. F., Folstein, S., & McHugh, P. R. (1975). "Mini-mental state": A practical method for grading the cognitive state of patients for the clinician. *Journal of Psychiatry Research*, *12*, 189.
- Henderson, V. W. (2006). Estrogen-containing hormone therapy and Alzheimer's disease risk: Understanding discrepant inferences from observational and experimental research. *Neuroscience*, *138*(3), 1031–1039.
- National Institute on Aging. (2006). *Alzheimer's disease: Unraveling the mystery*. Publication No. 02-3782, Rockville, MD: National Institutes of Health.
- Pfeiffer, E. (1975). A short portable mental status questionnaire for the assessment of organic brain deficit in elderly patients. *Journal of the American Geriatric Society*, *23*(10), 433.
- Rassamy, C., Longpre, F., & Christen, Y. (2007). Ginkgo biloba extract (EGb 761) in Alzheimer's disease: Is there any evidence? *Current Alzheimer Research*, *4*(3), 253–262.
- Robakis, N. K. (2007). The discovery and mapping to chromosome 21 of the Alzheimer's amyloid gene: History revised. *Journal of Alzheimer's Disease*, *10*(4), 453–455.

Recommended Readings

- Aronson, S. M. (2007). Managing residents with Alzheimer's disease. *ElderCare*, *7*(1), 13–16.
- Buettner, L., & Kolanowski, A. (2003). Practice guidelines for recreation therapy in the care of people with dementia. *Geriatric Nursing*, *24*(1), 18–25.
- Buffam, M. D., & Buffum, J. C. (2005). Dementia treatment update. *Geriatric Nursing*, *26*(2), 74–78.
- Cacchione, P. Z., Culp, K., Laing, J., & Tripp-Reimer, T. (2003). Clinical profile of acute confusion in the long-term care setting. *Clinical Nursing Research*, *12*(2), 145–158.
- Carey, M. (2003). Entering Donald's world. Creative interventions in Alzheimer's. *Journal of Christian Nursing*, *20*(1), 9–12.
- Cole, C. S., & Tak, S. H. (2006). Assessment of attention in Alzheimer's disease. *Geriatric Nursing*, *27*(4), 238–243.
- Donovan, C., & Dupuis, M. (2000). Specialized care unit: Family and staff's perceptions of significant elements. *Geriatric Nursing*, *21*(1), 30–33.
- Fick, D., & Foreman, M. (2000). Consequences of not recognizing delirium superimposed on dementia in hospitalized elderly individuals. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, *26*(1), 30–39.
- Futrell, M., Melillo, K. D., & Tang, J. H. (2002). Evidence-based protocol: Wandering. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, *28*(11), 14–22.
- Gray-Vickrey, P. (2002). Advances in Alzheimer's disease. *Nursing*, *32*(11 Pt 1), 64.
- Guse, L., Inglis, J., Chicoine, J., Leche, G., Stadnyk, L., & Whitbread, L. (2000). Life albums in long-term care: Residents, family, and staff perceptions. *Geriatric Nursing*, *21*(1), 34–37.
- Horttana, B. M., Ahlstrom, G., & Fahlstrom, G. (2007). Patterns of and reasons for relocation in dementia care. *Geriatric Nursing*, *28*(3), 193–200.
- Kelley, L. S., Specht, J. K. P., & Maas, M. L. (2000). Family involvement in care for individuals with dementia protocol. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, *26*(2), 13–21.
- Larrimore, K. L. (2003). Alzheimer disease support group characteristics: A comparison of caregivers. *Geriatric Nursing*, *24*(1), 32–35.
- Lilly, M. L., Richards, B. S., & Buckwalter, K. C. (2003). Friends and social support in dementia caregiving: Assessment and intervention. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, *29*(1), 29–36.
- Lim, Y. M. (2003). Nursing intervention for grooming of elders with mild cognitive impairments in Korea. *Geriatric Nursing*, *24*(1), 11–17.
- Long, C. O., & Dougherty, J. (2003). What's new in Alzheimer's disease? *Home Healthcare Nurse*, *21*(1), 8–14.
- McKhann, G., & Albert, M. (2002). *Keeping your brain young: The complete guide to physical and emotional health and longevity*. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley and Sons.

- Moore, S. L., Metcalf, B., & Schow, E. (2000). Aging and meaning in life: Examining the concept. *Geriatric Nursing, 21*(1), 27–29.
- Ostwald, S. K., Hepburn, K. W., & Burns, T. (2003). Training family caregivers of patients with dementia: A structured workshop approach. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 29*(1), 37–44.
- Petersen, R. (Ed.). (2002). *Mayo Clinic on Alzheimer's disease*. Rochester, MN: Mayo Clinic Health Information.
- Poveda, A. M. (2003). An anthropological perspective of Alzheimer disease. *Geriatric Nursing, 24*(1), 26–31.
- Resnick, B. (2003). Dementia, delirium, and depression in older adults. *Advance for Providers of Post-Acute Care, January/February*, 49–52.
- Restak, R. (2001). *The secret life of the brain*. Washington, DC: Joseph Henry Press.
- Rigney, T. S. (2006). Delirium in the hospitalized elder and recommendations for practice. *Geriatric Nursing, 27*(3), 151–157.
- Snowden, D. (2001). *Aging with grace: What the nun study teaches us about leading longer, healthier, and more meaningful lives*. New York: Random House.
- Thimis, A. (1995). An alternative for Alzheimer's residents. *Provider, 21*(6), 41–43.
- Tracey, M. (2007). Key points in caring for older adults with intellectual/developmental disabilities. *Geriatric Nursing, 28*(1), 43–44.
- Wang, K. L., & Hermann, C. (2006). Pilot study to test the effectiveness of healing touch on agitation in people with dementia. *Geriatric Nursing, 27*(1), 34–40.
- Winters, S. (2003). Alzheimer disease from a child's perspective. *Geriatric Nursing, 24*(1), 36–39.
- Yen, P. K. (2003). Maintaining cognitive function with diet. *Geriatric Nursing, 24*(1), 62–63.

UNIT 7



Gerontological Care Issues

- 34** LIVING IN HARMONY WITH CHRONIC CONDITIONS
- 35** REHABILITATIVE CARE
- 36** ACUTE CARE
- 37** LONG-TERM CARE
- 38** FAMILY CAREGIVING
- 39** END-OF-LIFE CARE

Living in Harmony With Chronic Conditions

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Chronic Conditions and Older Adults

Goals for Chronic Care

Assessment of Chronic Care Needs

Maximizing the Benefits of Chronic Care

- Selecting an Appropriate Physician
- Using a Chronic Care Coach
- Increasing Knowledge
- Locating a Support Group
- Making Smart Lifestyle Choices
- Using Complementary and Alternative Therapies

Factors Affecting the Course of Chronic Care

- Defense Mechanisms and Implications
- Impact of Ongoing Care on the Family
- The Need for Institutional Care

Chronic Care: A Nursing Challenge

Illness is not an easy situation to accept. Even a common cold disrupts our lives and makes us uncomfortable, irritable, and unmotivated to work and play. When sick, the basic activities of daily living can become a chore; our appearance may be the least of our worries; and our lives may revolve around the medications, treatments, and doctor's visits that will make us feel better. Fortunately, for most people, illness is an unusual and temporary event; they recover and return to life as usual.

Some illnesses, however, will accompany people for the remainder of their lives—chronic conditions. Potentially every aspect of one's life can be affected by chronic

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 Discuss the scope of chronic conditions among the older population.
- 2 Differentiate between healing and curing.
- 3 List chronic care goals.
- 4 Outline components of assessment of older adults' chronic care needs.
- 5 Discuss approaches to maximize the benefits of conventional treatments for older adults with chronic conditions.
- 6 Identify alternative therapies that could benefit older adults with chronic conditions.
- 7 Discuss factors affecting the course of chronic care for older adults.

conditions. Because chronic conditions are highly prevalent in the older population, gerontological nurses often are involved in assisting patients with the demands imposed by these conditions. It is important for gerontological nurses to understand the unique challenges and goals for older patients living with chronic conditions. The success with which a chronic condition is managed can make the difference between a satisfying lifestyle in which control of the disease is but one routine component, and a life controlled by the demands of the disease.



KEY CONCEPT

The manner in which a chronic condition is managed can make the difference between a high-quality, satisfying life and one in which the person is prisoner to a disease.

Chronic Conditions and Older Adults

Medical technology has helped many people survive illnesses that once would have killed them; greater numbers of people are reaching old age, in which the incidence of chronic disease is higher. Thus, it should be no surprise that more than 80% of older adults possess at least one chronic disease. There is a profound increase in the rate of most chronic conditions with age (Box 34-1), with the following impact:

- Nearly half of older adults suffer from arthritis.
- More than one third have hypertension.
- Nearly one third have a hearing impairment.
- More than one fourth have a heart condition.
- More than one eighth have a visual impairment.
- Nearly another one eighth have a deformity or orthopedic impairment.
- Almost 10% have diabetes.
- Approximately 1 in 12 is affected by hemorrhoids and varicose veins.

These are profound numbers, particularly considering the impact of these diseases on the individ-

ual older person who is affected. The potential nursing diagnoses associated with these chronic conditions (Table 34-1) highlight the disruption to physical, emotional, and social well-being.



KEY CONCEPT

Most of the chronic conditions that are common in older adults can significantly affect the quality of daily life.

Goals for Chronic Care

Most health professionals were educated in the acute care model, in which care activities focus on diagnosis, treatment, and cure of illness. Within this model, nursing actions are based on interventions that cure patients, and success tends to be judged on how quickly and totally patients are able to recover. Chronic conditions are an entirely different situation. Because chronic diseases cannot be cured, it would be inappropriate to direct care activities in a curative direction. Rather, healing is of the utmost importance.

Healing implies the mobilization of the body, mind, and spirit to control symptoms, promote a sense of well-being, and enhance the quality of life. The person with a chronic condition can learn to live effectively with the disease and develop a sense of inner peace and harmony through the recognition that he or she is defined by more than the physical body. The nurse serves a healing role in facilitating this process and guiding individuals with chronic conditions to achieve their maximum potential and highest attainable quality of life. Rather than administer care and treatments for or to patients, the nurse stimulates patients' self-healing capabilities by:

- creating a therapeutic human and physical environment
- educating
- empowering
- reinforcing, affirming, and validating
- removing barriers to self-care and self-awareness

BOX 34-1

Major Chronic Conditions of Older Adults

Arthritis
Hearing impairment
Cataracts
Visual impairment
Hernia (abdominal cavity)
Varicose veins

Hypertension
Heart condition
Chronic sinusitis
Deformity or orthopedic impairment
Diabetes
Hemorrhoids

TABLE 34-1 Potential Nursing Diagnoses Associated With Twelve Major Chronic Problems of the Elderly

	Arthritis	Hypertension	Hearing Impairment	Heart Condition	Cataracts	Chronic Sinusitis	Visual Impairment	Deformities, Orthopedic Impairment	Hernia	Diabetes	Varicose Veins	Hemorrhoids
Activity Intolerance	✓	✓		✓	✓			✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Anxiety	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Constipation									✓		✓	
Decreased Cardiac Output												
Impaired Verbal Communication			✓									
Ineffective Coping	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Disabled Family Coping	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓
Deficient Diversional Activity	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Interrupted Family Processes	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓
Fear	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓
Deficient Fluid Volume								✓				
Excess Fluid Volume					✓							
Grieving												
Ineffective Health Maintenance	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓
Impaired Home Maintenance	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓
Risk for Infection				✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓
Risk for Injury	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓				✓	✓
Knowledge Deficit	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Impaired Physical Mobility	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓			✓	✓	✓	✓	
Noncompliance	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Imbalanced Nutrition: Less Than Body Requirements	✓				✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
Imbalanced Nutrition: More Than Body Requirements	✓	✓		✓	✓					✓		
Impaired Oral Mucous Membrane										✓		
Pain	✓	✓		✓		✓		✓	✓		✓	✓
Powerlessness	✓		✓	✓	✓		✓	✓				
Ineffective Breathing Pattern				✓		✓		✓				
Self-Care Deficit	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓
Disturbed Body Image	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓
Disturbed Sensory Perception	✓		✓				✓	✓				
Ineffective Sexuality Patterns	✓	✓		✓				✓		✓		
Impaired Skin Integrity				✓				✓		✓	✓	✓
Disturbed Sleep Pattern	✓	✓		✓		✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Impaired Social Interaction	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓		
Social Isolation	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓				
Spiritual Distress												
Disturbed Thought Processes		✓	✓	✓			✓			✓		
Ineffective Tissue Perfusion				✓								
Impaired Urinary Elimination				✓						✓		

BOX 34-2 Goals of Chronic Care

Maintain or improve self-care capacity
 Manage the disease effectively
 Boost the body's healing abilities
 Prevent complications

Delay deterioration and decline
 Achieve the highest possible quality of life
 Die with comfort and dignity

**KEY CONCEPT**

Healing implies the mobilization of the body, mind, and spirit to control symptoms, promote a sense of well-being, and enhance the quality of life.

Because patients cannot eliminate their disease; care measures focus on helping patients effectively live in harmony with, rather than cure, the condition. Professionals who seek success through the number of patients who recover will be frustrated and disappointed when working with persons who have chronic conditions; they must reorient themselves to a new set of care goals (Box 34-2). The following goals are appropriate to chronic care:

- *Maintain or improve self-care capacity.* Chronic conditions often place additional demands on people. They may need to eat special diets, modify their activities, administer medications, perform treatments, or learn to use assistive devices or equipment. Nurses may need to assist patients in increasing their abilities to meet these needs. Actions toward achieving this goal include education about the disease and its management, stabilization and improvement of health status, promotion of interest and motivation for self-care, use of assistive devices, and provision of periodic assistance with care.
- *Manage the condition effectively.* Individuals need to be knowledgeable about their conditions and related care. Skills may need to be mastered, such as injecting medications, changing dressings, or applying prostheses. However, motivation is essential to mobilize knowledge and skills in effective self-care, so assessing motivational factors and planning and implementing strategies to enhance motivation are crucial aspects.
- *Boost the body's healing abilities.* The body's tremendous potential to fight disease and heal naturally is often underestimated. Helping patients mobilize natural resources is an important nursing function. Stress management, guided imagery, exercise, immune-boosting nutrients, and biofeedback are among the strategies that can promote self-healing.
- *Prevent complications.* Chronic diseases and conventional treatments used to manage them can increase the risk for infections, injuries, and other complications. Potential risks should be identified and actively prevented, recognizing that risks change over time. Complications must be prevented because they risk weakening self-care capacity, increasing disability, and hastening decline. Whether a patient with diabetes lives an active life or becomes a blind amputee is largely determined by the extent to which treatment plans are followed and complications are actively prevented.
- *Delay deterioration and decline.* By their nature, chronic conditions often progressively worsen. For example, a person with Alzheimer's disease will demonstrate a progressive decline in status even if highly effective care is provided. However, preventive practices can influence whether that individual is ambulatory or bed bound at the end of a period. A conscious effort must be made to reinforce the importance of preventive care measures and identify problems early.
- *Achieve the highest possible quality of life.* Sitting in bed attached to an oxygen tank may keep the body functioning but offers little stimulation to the mind and spirit. Consideration should be given to helping patients participate in activities that bring pleasure, stimulation, and reward. The nurse should assess the extent to which recreational, social, spiritual, emotional, sexual, and family needs are met and provide assistance to fulfill those needs (e.g., introduction to new hobbies, counseling for alternate positions for intercourse, provision of transportation by specially equipped vehicles, arrangements for home visits by clergy). A positive self-concept needs to be promoted. It is important for health professionals to periodically evaluate the extent to which treatment of the condition promotes or prohibits a satisfying lifestyle.
- *Die with comfort and dignity.* As health status declines and patients face their final days of life, they will need increasing physical and psychosocial support. Pain relief, preservation of energy, provision of comfort, and assistance in meeting

basic needs become crucial. Nurses also must be sensitive to the importance of listening and talking to dying persons, anticipating their needs, assuring spiritual support, and, most importantly, instilling a feeling that the nurse can be depended on for support through this period.

The success and progress of goals of chronic care must be measured differently from acute care. A deterioration of a patient from ambulatory to wheelchair status can be judged a success if, without nursing intervention, that patient may have become bedridden or died. Likewise, a physically and emotionally comfortable death that left positive memories for the patient's family can be a significant accomplishment. These determinants of success are different from those of acute care but are no less important.



KEY CONCEPT

Successes in chronic care are measured differently from those in acute care.

Assessment of Chronic Care Needs

Self-care capacities can vary considerably among persons who have chronic conditions. The self-care capacity of the same individual will also vary at different times throughout the course of the illness. Keen assessment and reassessment are thus necessary. The nurse should review the individual's capacity to fulfill each of the health-related requirements, as well as the person's capacity to meet the demands imposed by illness (e.g., medication administration, dressings, and special exercises). From this, the nurse can determine deficits in fulfilling care needs.

A majority of people with chronic conditions manage their conditions in a community setting, most likely with family support or involvement; therefore, assessment must consider not only the capacity of the individual to fulfill the care demands, but also the capacity of the family to assist and cope with caregiving. For example, a man with diabetes and severe arthritis in his hands may not be able to manipulate a syringe for his insulin injections, but his wife may be able to give him injections; thus, he does not have a deficit in this area. Likewise, a victim of Alzheimer's disease may not be able to protect herself from safety hazards, but if she lives with a daughter who supervises her activities, this patient may not have a deficit in her ability to protect herself. Within this framework, *the family is the patient*, and the capacities and limitations of the total family unit must be evaluated. Remember that family is not limited

to relatives but can include a variety of significant others.

The nurse cannot assume, however, that the presence of family members guarantees compensation for the patient's care deficits. Sometimes the caregivers may not have the physical, mental, or emotional abilities to meet the patient's care needs. For instance, the patient's caregiver daughter may be a frail older adult herself. Likewise, the family may not want to provide care because of the imposition on their lifestyle or their feelings toward the patient. These factors must be considered before care is delegated to family members.

Once identified, care needs should be reviewed with the patient and family members. This not only helps to validate data, but also promotes understanding by all parties involved as to what the actual care needs are. Methods of meeting care needs should be identified jointly (e.g., the daughter will assist with bathing, the son will provide transportation to the clinic for monthly visits, the daughter-in-law will call twice daily to remind the patient to take medications). The nurse should inform the family of the services available in their community to supplement their efforts. In fairness to the family, the costs and limitations of community services must be included in this discussion.



KEY CONCEPT

The patient and family caregivers should validate care plan priorities and goals.

Identified care needs direct goals and plans for care. Setting goals is important in helping patients and their families understand the realistic direction of the condition. For instance, a long-term goal of restoring ambulation sets a different tone from a goal of preventing complications as function deteriorates. Acceptance of long-term goals may require acceptance of the realities of the condition, which is not an easy task for patients and their families. It may take time and considerable nursing support for families to come to the understanding that the patient's physical or mental status will decline over time. This is not to suggest that hope should be destroyed, but rather that it be tempered with a realistic sense of what the future may hold. Short-term goals offer a means of evaluating ongoing efforts and serve as benchmarks in care; these goals can be set on a daily, weekly, or monthly basis, depending on the situation.

Finally, written care plans are beneficial to patients and their families. Having the plans in writing avoids discrepancies between perceptions and reality. It also prevents directions from being forgotten and ensures that anyone who participates in the patient's care will have the same understanding.

POINT TO PONDER

How would your life change if you learned that you had a chronic condition that would progressively worsen? What would you do differently? From where and whom would you draw emotional and spiritual support? ●

Maximizing the Benefits of Chronic Care

With similar diagnoses and care requirements, one individual may remain an active participant in society, enjoying a high quality of life, whereas another may become a homebound prisoner to the disease. The difference can depend on how the person approaches and manages care activities.

Selecting an Appropriate Physician

Because chronic conditions demand long-term medical supervision, selection of a physician becomes a significant issue for the patient. The patient should have contact with a specialist who is knowledgeable about state-of-the-art practices related to the condition. The nurse may assist the patient by providing the names of specialists for the patient to consider. In addition to qualifications and expertise in the field, the patient should feel at ease with the physician; a good chemistry between physician and patient will allow the patient to ask questions freely, discuss concerns, and report problems. Some factors that promote a positive physician–patient relationship include:

- accessibility of the physician
- sufficient time allocation for office visits and telephone consultations
- comfortable and patient-appropriate communication style
- respect for patient’s involvement and decision-making
- consideration of needs of entire family unit
- openness to alternative and complementary therapies
- attitude of hope and optimism



KEY CONCEPT

In addition to expertise in treating the specific condition, the physician should have a style with which the patient is comfortable because the relationship will be long-term.

Patients have a responsibility to use their health care provider’s time effectively. Patients can be advised to prepare for office visits by writing down

questions, symptoms, and concerns and to maintain their own records of laboratory tests, vital signs, and other relevant medical data.

Using a Chronic Care Coach

Anyone who has attempted a weight-reduction diet or exercise program appreciates the benefits of having a friend with whom the experience can be shared. Likewise, the person who must face life adjustments every day for the rest of his or her life can benefit from a buddy or coach who can provide support and assistance. The chronic care coach can be a spouse, child, friend, or someone with a similar condition who cares about and has regular contact with the patient (Fig. 34-1). The coach may accompany the patient to diagnostic tests or routine office visits and check on the patient’s status routinely. The coach can provide feedback and positive reinforcement, as well as a listening ear when the patient has “slipped off” the treatment regimen or regressed (Box 34-3). Also, the coach can help the patient stay current about the disease by clipping articles from magazines and sharing information gained through media features. Gerontological nurses can advise and support persons who function as chronic care coaches to older individuals by outlining some of the basic steps of this process (Box 34-4).



FIGURE 34-1 ● A chronic care coach, whether a friend, spouse, or someone with a similar condition, has regular contact with the older person and can provide support and assistance.

BOX 34-3 Functions of a Chronic Care Coach

- Maintain regular contact with the patient.
- Become informed about the chronic condition and its related care requirements; keep abreast of new information, and share this with the patient; gather information as needed.
- Reinforce the care plan.
- Help patient prioritize and organize care activities.
- Assist patient in developing daily, weekly, and monthly goals.
- Remind the patient of appointments, activities.
- Acknowledge the realities of the condition.
- Listen to concerns and accept reaction without judgment.
- Offer feedback.
- Use humor therapeutically. Engage in fun activities with patient.
- Assist patient in locating and using resources.
- Reframe problems into opportunities; challenge patient to consider changes, new approaches.
- Observe changes or signs that could indicate complications or changes in condition; encourage patient to consult with health care provider promptly.
- Accompany patient to health care providers' office visits as needed.
- Recognize patient's efforts at self-care and compliance, and give positive reinforcement.
- Encourage patient to comply with care demands. Provide inspiration and hope.

**KEY CONCEPT**

A chronic care coach provides support, encouragement, reinforcement, assistance, and feedback.

Increasing Knowledge

An informed patient is well equipped to manage the chronic condition successfully and prevent complications. Also, knowledge helps empower the patient. Various organizations for virtually every health condition can provide useful educational materials, often free of charge (see the Resources lists throughout this book). Most newspapers carry regular health columns that provide current information on health conditions and treatments. Local libraries not only possess a wealth of information on their shelves, but also can assist people with literature searches. Also, ever-increasing numbers of individuals use the Internet to learn about new

information and share knowledge. (If patients do not own a computer, they often can use one provided at public libraries.) Nurses should encourage patients to obtain as much information as they can and to maintain a file on their condition.

Locating a Support Group

Support groups can be important for persons with chronic illnesses; they provide the opportunity not only for obtaining valuable information, but also in gaining perspectives from those living with similar situations. Patients may be more willing to ask questions and express concerns with their peers than with health care professionals. Most support groups can be located through local telephone directories or the information and referral services of the local agency on aging; national headquarters of organizations also can direct patients to local chapters.

BOX 34-4 Steps in Chronic Care Coaching

- C**ontact: Schedule regular telephone or face-to-face contact to check on the patient's status.
- O**bserve: Be attentive to comments, mood, body language, energy, general status, presence of symptoms, compliance.
- A**ffirm: Reinforce care plan and actions, recognize patient's efforts and accomplishments.
- C**larify: Ask questions, validate observations, correct misconceptions, reinforce information.
- H**elp: Offer assistance when self-care capacity is diminished; locate and negotiate resources.
- I**nspire: Encourage patient to comply with care plan, build on positive experiences and accomplishments; offer hope.
- N**urture: Provide education, information, support.
- G**uide: Assist in setting realistic goals, developing plans, prioritizing, seeking resources.

Making Smart Lifestyle Choices

Patients with lifelong health conditions need to commit to smart lifestyle choices to maximize their health and quality of life. Such activities include:

- compliance with the prescribed treatment plan
- sound dietary practices
- regular exercise
- stress management
- assertiveness in protecting one's own needs
- development of a healing attitude and mind-set to live positively with the illness

Using Complementary and Alternative Therapies

Growing numbers of Americans use complementary and alternative therapies for health promotion and illness management, and there is increasing evidence of the effectiveness of these measures. Such therapies use the body's capacity to heal itself and place the patient in charge of the healing process. Box 34-5 lists some of the alternative therapies that can be used to complement conventional therapies. In some cases, complementary and alternative therapies can replace conventional treatments, as when an analgesic is replaced by the use of acupuncture or guided imagery. The fact that complementary and alternative therapies have not been widely used in this country in the past does not mean that they are ineffective; people in other countries have used some of these measures successfully for centuries. Furthermore, the scarcity of research supporting the use of some of these therapies does not mean that they are useless. (Consider that researchers stand a better chance of obtaining funds for well-understood conventional therapies than for less familiar alternatives; pharmaceutical companies are not going to invest

large sums of money testing herbal remedies that cannot be patented for their exclusive use; and most medical researchers have been educated in a system that perpetuates the use of conventional practices.)

This is not to say that there are not charlatans eager to take advantage of people who have chronic conditions. The nurse plays a significant role in helping the patient evaluate the validity of complementary and alternative therapies and use only sound, safe practices. Patients should be encouraged to discuss these therapies with their physicians and other health care providers. (In some circumstances, patients may need to provide literature about complementary and alternative therapies to their providers to educate them about these practices!) Ideally, patients should be able to use the best of both complementary/alternative and conventional health care practices.



KEY CONCEPT

Many individuals can benefit from using a combination of conventional and complementary and alternative health practices for the care of their conditions.

Factors Affecting the Course of Chronic Care

Anyone who has dieted can appreciate the difficulty of sustaining the initial weight-loss behaviors (e.g., food restrictions, exercise) on a long-term basis without regular reinforcement and support. The same is true for the new behaviors associated with managing a chronic condition. Persons with chronic conditions cannot be given their instructions for care, discharged, and forgotten. They will need periodic contact and reevaluation of their capacity, resources, and motivation to manage their conditions.

BOX 34-5 Complementary and Alternative Therapies for People With Chronic Conditions

Acupressure
Acupuncture
Aromatherapy
Ayurvedic medicine
Biofeedback
Chiroprathy
Guided imagery
Herbal medicine
Homeopathy
Hydrotherapy
Hypnotherapy

Light therapy
Meditation
Naturopathic medicine
Nutritional supplements
Osteopathy
Progressive relaxation
Qigong
Sound therapy
T'ai chi
Therapeutic touch
Yoga

Consider This Case

Mr. A is a 72-year-old widower with multiple chronic conditions, including hypertension, arthritis, emphysema, and diet-controlled diabetes mellitus. He is employed part-time as a salesman and enjoys his work; however, he is complaining that his antihypertensive medication is making him “tired” and that he is impatient with having to forfeit “all the good food” when joining his clients for lunch in order to comply with his special diet. Furthermore, he has recently established a relationship with a middle-aged woman and is experiencing some erectile dysfunction that he attributes to his antihypertensive medication. He asks, “What is the point of living a long life if you aren’t enjoying it?”

THINK CRITICALLY

- What nursing diagnoses are evident?
- What could be done to assist Mr. A?

A variety of factors can change patients’ abilities to manage their illnesses. The status of the illness may change, placing more or different demands on the patient. The status of the patient may change, reducing self-care ability. The status of the caregiver may change, limiting the degree to which the patient’s deficits can be compensated. All the factors affecting the patient’s ongoing care must be evaluated regularly.

Defense Mechanisms and Implications

The lifestyle changes, frustrations, and losses commonly experienced by persons who must live with chronic conditions may cause certain reactions to emerge that could disrupt the flow of care. These reactions are defense mechanisms, used when the situation at hand may be too much for the patient to cope with, and include:

- *Denial*: making statements or taking actions that are not consistent with the realities of the illness (e.g., abandoning a special diet, discontinuing medications independently, committing to responsibilities that cannot be fulfilled)
- *Anger*: acting in a hostile manner, having violent outbursts
- *Depression*: making statements regarding the hopelessness of a situation, refusing to engage in self-care activities, withdrawing, questioning the purpose of life
- *Regression*: becoming increasingly dependent unnecessarily, abandoning self-care behaviors

These and other reactions are indications that the patient’s ego strength is threatened and that extra support is needed. Rather than reacting to the patient’s behavior, caregivers need to understand its origin and help the patient work through it (e.g., by providing an opportunity to vent frustrations and

offering respite from the routines of care by doing for the patient until he or she feels psychologically able to resume self-care).

Impact of Ongoing Care on the Family

In the home management of a chronic illness, the entire family is the patient; therefore, in evaluating care, the impact on the total family must be considered. The patient with Alzheimer’s disease may be well groomed, well nourished, and free from complications; looking at the patient in isolation, an evaluation could be made that her home care has been successful. However, the patient’s status may have been achieved at great cost to the entire family. For example, her husband may have had to forfeit his job to care for her during the day; her daughter’s family life may have been disrupted because she needs to sleep at her parents’ home to assist her father in controlling her mother’s night wandering; the son’s plans to expand his business may have been postponed because he began subsidizing his parents’ income. Some sacrifices and compromises are common when family members assume caregiver roles, but serious disruption to their health or their lives should not result. Families may be so embroiled in the situation that they are unable to see the full impact that the caregiving situation is having on their own lives. Sometimes they feel that they must be a “bad” spouse or child to feel that the patient’s care is a burden. Nurses can assist by helping family members realistically evaluate their caregiving responsibilities and identify when other caregiving options should be considered. For instance, the family may sense that it is in the patient’s best interest to enter a nursing home, but they need the health care professional to introduce the suggestion and help them through the process of making this difficult decision.

**KEY CONCEPT**

In chronic care, the entire family is the patient.

The Need for Institutional Care

Although only 5% of the older population is in a nursing home or other institutional setting at any given time, nearly one half of all older women and one third of all older men will spend some time in a long-term care facility during their lives (American Association of Homes and Services for the Aging, 2007). Most families seek institutional care after having attempted caregiving of their elder relative at home, not as a first choice. By the time they seek such assistance, their physical, emotional, and socioeconomic resources can be significantly depleted, and they may require special support and assistance from nurses. (Chapter 37 discusses the care of individuals who are in long-term care facilities.)

**POINT TO PONDER**

What would you do if a parent, spouse, or child needed considerable care? How much care could you realistically provide, and what resources would you have available? ●

Chronic Care: A Nursing Challenge

Effective chronic care is not an easy nursing challenge. It requires knowledge and skills related to the management of multiple medical problems, skilled assessment and planning, individualized promotion of self-care capacity, monitoring of family health, and a variety of other demands. The patient's comfort, independence, and quality of life are largely influenced by the type of services rendered; in chronic care, most of those services will fall within the scope of nursing. Perhaps this type of care, more than any other, provides an opportunity for nursing to demonstrate its facets of independent practice and full leadership potential.

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. Discuss the way in which your life would be affected if you developed a chronic disease. What additional issues exist for an older adult faced with this same situation?
2. Review the major chronic illnesses affecting the older population and identify the threats to the quality of life that could be associated with each.
3. Describe factors that cause most nurses and physicians to be ill-informed of or resistant to alternative therapies.

4. Identify measures that could help empower an older adult who has a chronic condition.

Reference

American Association of Homes and Services for the Aging. (2007). *Nursing Home Statistics*. Retrieved 10/15/07, from http://www.aahsa.org/aging_services/default.asp.

Recommended Readings

- Acton, G. J., & Miller, E. W. (2003). Spirituality in caregivers of family members with dementia. *Journal of Holistic Nursing, 21*(2), 117–130.
- Astor, B. (1998). *Baby boomers guide to caring for aging parents*. New York: Macmillan.
- Baird, C. L. (2003). Holding on. Self-caring with osteoarthritis. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 29*(6), 32–39.
- Baldwin, K., & Shaul, M. (2001). When your patient can no longer live independently: A guide to supporting the patient and family. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 27*(11), 10–18.
- Bergman-Evans, B. (2006). AIDES to improving medication adherence in older adults. *Geriatric Nursing, 27*(3), 174–176.
- Clark, C. C. (2003). *American Holistic Nurses' Association guide to common chronic conditions*. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley and Sons.
- Craig, C., Weinert, J. W., & Derwinski-Robinson, B. (2006). Spirituality, chronic illness, and rural life. *Journal of Holistic Nursing, 24*(1), 25–26.
- Curry, L. C., Walker, C., & Hogstel, M. (2006). Educational needs of employed family caregivers of older adults: Evaluation of a workplace project. *Geriatric Nursing, 27*(3), 166–173.
- Dunn, K. S., & Riley-Doucet, C. K. (2007). Self-care activities captured through discussion among community-dwelling older adults. *Journal of Holistic Nursing, 25*(3), 160–169.
- Eason, L. R. (2003). Concepts in health promotion: Perceived self-efficacy and barriers in older adults. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 29*(5), 11–19.
- Eliopoulos, C. (1997). Chronic care coaches. *Home Healthcare Nursing, 15*(3), 185–188.
- Eliopoulos, C. (1999). *Integrating conventional and alternative therapies: Holistic care for chronic conditions*. St. Louis: Mosby.
- Eliopoulos, C. (2006). *Nursing administration manual for long-term care facilities* (6th ed.). Glen Arm, MD: Health Education Network.
- Hagen, B. (2001). Nursing home placement: Factors affecting caregivers' decisions to place family members with dementia. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 27*(2), 44–53.
- Hayes, J. M. (1999). Respite for caregivers: A community-based model in a rural setting. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 25*(1), 22–26.
- Keller, V., & Baker, L. (2000). Communicate with care. *RN, 63*(1), 32–33.
- Kelley, L. S., Specht, J. K., & Maas, M. L. (2000). Family involvement in care for individuals with dementia protocol. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 26*(2), 13–21.
- Larrimore, K. L. (2003). Alzheimer disease support group characteristics: A comparison of caregivers. *Geriatric Nursing, 24*(1), 32–35.

- Levin, N. J. (1997). *How to care for your parents: A practical guide to eldercare*. New York: Norton.
- Lewis, M., Hepburn, K., Corcoran-Perry, S., Narayan, S., & Lally, R. M. (1999). Options, outcomes, values, likelihoods. Decision-making guide for patients and their families. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 25(12), 19–25.
- Lilly, M. L., Richards, B. S., & Buckwalter, K. C. (2003). Friends and social support in dementia caregiving: Assessment and intervention. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 29(1), 29–36.
- Lorig, K., Holman, H., Sobel, D., & Laurent, D. (2006). *Living a healthy life with chronic conditions: Self-management of heart disease, fatigue, arthritis, worry, diabetes, frustration, asthma, pain, emphysema, and others* (3rd ed.). Palo Alto, CA: Bull Publishing.
- Lubkin, I. M. (2005). *Chronic illness: Impact and interventions*. Boston: Jones and Bartlett.
- McCall, J. B. (1999). *Grief education for caregivers of the elderly*. New York: Haworth Pastoral Press.
- Moore, S. L., Metcalf, B., & Schow, E. (2000). Aging and meaning in life: Examining the concept. *Geriatric Nursing*, 21(1), 27–29.
- National Family Caregivers Association. (1996). *The resourceful caregiver: Helping caregivers help themselves*. St. Louis: Mosby Lifeline.
- Pruitt, S. (2005). *Preparing a health care workforce for the 21st century: The challenge of chronic conditions*. Geneva, Switzerland: WHO.
- Resnick, B., & Simpson, M. (2003). Restorative care nursing activities: Pilot testing self-efficacy and outcome expectation measures. *Geriatric Nursing*, 24(2), 82–88.
- Robbins, D. Q., & Morse, S. (2003). *Moving mom and dad!* Berkeley, CA: Barclay Ross Press.
- Ruppert, R. A. (1996). Caring for the lay caregiver. *American Journal of Nursing*, 96(3), 40–45.
- Schomp, V. (1997). *The aging parent handbook*. New York: Harper Paperbacks.
- Stocker, S. (1996). Six tips for caring for aging parents. *American Journal of Nursing*, 96(9), 32–33.
- Williamson, A. T., Fletcher, P. C., & Dawson, K. A. (2003). Complementary and alternative medicine: Use in an older population. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 29(5), 20–28.

Rehabilitative Care

CHAPTER OUTLINE

The Need for Rehabilitation Living With Disability

- Importance of Attitude and Coping Capacity
- Losses Accompanying Disability

Principles of Rehabilitative Nursing Functional Assessment Interventions to Facilitate and Improve Functioning

- Facilitating Proper Positioning
- Assisting With Range-of-Motion Exercises
- Teaching About Mobility Aids
- Teaching About Bowel and Bladder Training
- Maintaining and Promoting Mental Function
- Using Community Resources

The prevalence of chronic conditions, frailty, and disability among older adults is significant. Many older persons must learn to live with limited mobility, pain, impaired communication, and multiple risks to their safety and well-being. As increasing numbers of people achieve advanced years, surviving once-fatal conditions but with residual disabilities, the prevalence of disability among older adults will rise. The emphasis on saving lives must be balanced with an emphasis on preserving the quality of the lives that have been saved. The advantages of modern technology in diagnosing and treating disease and improving

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 Discuss the challenges for older adults living with a disability.
- 2 Describe the principles of rehabilitative nursing.
- 3 List components of the assessment of activities of daily living and instrumental activities of daily living for older adults.
- 4 Identify positions for proper body alignment.
- 5 Describe types of range-of-motion exercises.
- 6 List considerations in older adults' proper use of mobility aids.
- 7 Describe measures to promote mental function in older adults.
- 8 Identify resources to assist in older patients' rehabilitation.

life expectancy may be minimized if older adults must live with disabilities that result in discomfort, dependency, and distress.

 **POINT TO PONDER**

Advances in health care technology have enabled people to be saved from serious illnesses, although in some cases they are left with significantly limited function and discomfort. Would you want every effort made to save your life regardless of the consequences? Why or why not? ●

The Need for Rehabilitation

Rehabilitation must be defined broadly in geriatric care. It may be regarded as those efforts that help individuals improve their functional capacity so that they can better cope, be maximally independent, have a sense of well-being, and enjoy a satisfying life. Older adults may be in need of rehabilitative nursing when their functional capacity is compromised due to disabilities or frailty that result from aging, chronic conditions, or accidents.

Many of older adults’ disabilities cannot be eliminated or, in many cases, significantly improved. Damaged lungs, amputations, diseased heart muscle, partial blindness, presbycusis, and deformed joints may accompany patients for the remainder of their lives. Often these chronic disabilities receive the least intervention; reimbursement and aggressive attention are given to restore the function of someone who has suffered a stroke or fracture, but those with “no rehabilitation potential” often are overlooked in their need to maintain function and prevent further decline.

Frailty is a particular challenge to older persons that must be considered in rehabilitative care. Some

of the frailty is the result of sarcopenia—age-related changes to the skeletal muscle tissues. Immobility and lack of exercise, increased levels of proinflammatory cytokines, increased production of oxygen free radicals or impaired detoxification, low anabolic hormone output, malnutrition, and reduced neurological drive are thought to be responsible for sarcopenia (Di Iorio et al., 2006). There is a vicious cycle in that conditions that contribute to frailty can foster the development of sarcopenia, and in turn, sarcopenia can lead to the development of conditions that further threaten function and quality of life.

A person is considered frail if he or she has at least three of the following symptoms (Fried et al., 2001):

- unplanned weight loss (10 or more pounds in the past year)
- slow walking speed
- low grip strength
- fatigue, poor endurance
- low levels of activity

Older adults who meet the criteria for frailty are at high risk for falls, disability, hospitalization, nursing home admission, and death. Positive health practices and effective management of health conditions, however, are beneficial in helping older adults to avoid becoming frail. Early recognition and intervention for symptoms of frailty (e.g., correcting weight loss, assisting with muscle-strengthening exercises) can prevent or delay some of the frailty older adults experience. For this reason it is especially useful to review symptoms of frailty during nursing assessments of older adults.

Although disability differs from frailty, handicap, and impairment (Table 35-1), the term *disability* will be used throughout this chapter to discuss rehabilitative needs.

TABLE 35-1 Terminology Used to Describe Functional Status

Term*	Definition	Examples
Disability	Inability to perform an activity in a normal manner	Inability to cut food due to arthritic fingers Abnormal gait related to hemiplegia
Frailty	Three or more of the following symptoms: progressive weight loss, slow walking speed, low grip strength, fatigue, low activity levels	Self-care neglect due to weakness, fatigue Frequent falls due to unsteady gait and weakness
Impairment	Psychological, physiologic, or anatomic loss or abnormality	Loss of limb due to amputation Altered thought processes related to dementia
Handicap	Limitation in ability to fulfill role (possible consequence of disability or impairment)	Loss of job related to amputation Forfeiture of participation in family activities due to altered cognition

*Although often used interchangeably, these terms each describe a different status.

Living With Disability

An accident or a stroke may bring sudden disability to a previously independent, functional adult, or perhaps a chronic condition progressively worsens and its disabling impact is more acutely realized. Whatever the circumstances, few of us are prepared to deal with disability. It is difficult to accept in ourselves and our loved ones. Relationships, roles, and responsibilities are disrupted; disfigurement and dysfunction alter body image and self-concept. Losses and limitations cause a new vulnerability to emerge and make death seem more real and close. Concern arises over potential physical and emotional pain, and frustration occurs in wanting to eliminate the cause of the problem and knowing we cannot. Disability can be an extremely difficult and devastating mountain to climb.



POINT TO PONDER

What examples have you seen within your own family of differences in the way people respond to health challenges? ●

Importance of Attitude and Coping Capacity

The severity of the disability can be less important to rehabilitation efforts than the attitude and coping capacity of disabled patients and their families. Someone with a mild cardiac problem may confine himself to his home, become preoccupied with his illness, and demand to be waited on, whereas a patient with hemiplegia could return to independent living in his modified apartment, find a job, and cultivate new friends and interests. Previous attitudes, personality, and lifestyle have a strong influence on reactions to disability. A person who has always felt that life has dealt her a bad hand could view a disability as the last straw and give up all hope. On the other hand, an optimistic person who has approached problems as new challenges to overcome may be determined not to allow a disability to control her life. Individuals who relish independence and refuse to let illness slow their lifestyles will respond to disability differently from those who use real or exaggerated ills for other gains.

The family's response to the disabled person will also influence that person's reactions. Families that reinforce sick role behaviors and insist on doing everything for the disabled person can cripple him physically and psychologically, whereas families that promote self-care and treat the disabled person as a responsible family member can help him to feel like a normal, useful human being.



KEY CONCEPT

Previous attitudes, personality, experiences, and lifestyle influence reactions to a disability.

Losses Accompanying Disability

Many losses may accompany disability, such as the loss of function, role, income, status, independence, or perhaps a body part. Disabled persons mourn these losses, often demonstrating the same reactions experienced during the stages of dying. They may deny their disabilities by making unrealistic plans and not complying with their care plans. They may have angry outbursts and become impatient with those who are trying to help them. They may shop for medical advice that will offer them a more optimistic outlook or invest their hopes in any faith healer they can find. On one day they may optimistically state that their disability has given them a new perspective on life, yet the very next day they tearfully question what they have to live for. These reactions can fluctuate; it is the rare individual who accepts a disability without some periods of regret or resentment.



KEY CONCEPT

Disability can be accompanied by many losses, including function, role, income, status, independence, and anatomic structure.

Principles of Rehabilitative Nursing

The principles guiding gerontological nursing care are of particular significance in rehabilitation and include the following actions:

- increase self-care capacity
- eliminate or minimize self-care limitations
- act for or do for when the person is unable to take action for himself or herself



KEY CONCEPT

Improving the functional capacity of older adults can promote a sense of well-being and a higher quality of life.

Efforts to increase self-care capacity could include building the patient's arm muscles to enable better transfer to and propelling of a wheelchair or teaching the patient how to inject insulin with the use of only one hand. Relieving pain and having a ramp installed for easier wheelchair mobility are efforts that minimize or eliminate limitations.

Obtaining a new prescription from the pharmacy or assisting with range-of-motion exercises are ways in which nurses act for or do for the patient. Whenever nurses act or do for patients, they need to question what could be done to enable patients to perform the action independently. Patients may always be dependent on others for some activities, but for other actions patients can assume responsibility with sufficient education, time allocation, encouragement, and assistive devices.

The following guidelines should be remembered in rehabilitative nursing:

- Know the unique capacities and limitations of the individual. Assess the patient's self-care capacity, mental status, level of motivation, and family support.
- Emphasize function rather than dysfunction, capabilities rather than disabilities.
- Provide time and flexibility. At times, institutional routines (e.g., having all baths completed by 9 a.m., collecting all food trays 45 minutes after delivery) cause caregivers to do tasks for patients so that they may be completed efficiently. Staff desires for efficiency and orderliness should never supersede the patient's need for independence.
- Recognize and praise accomplishments. Seemingly minor acts, such as combing hair or wheeling themselves to the hallway, can be the result of tremendous effort and determination on the part of disabled persons.
- Do not equate physical disability with mental disability. Treat disabled persons as mature, intelligent adults.
- Prevent complications. Recognize potential risks (e.g., skin breakdown, social isolation, depression) and actively prevent them.
- Demonstrate hope, optimism, and a sense of humor. It is difficult for disabled persons to feel positive about rehabilitation if their caregivers appear discouraged or disinterested.
- Keep in mind that rehabilitation is a highly individualized process, requiring a multidisciplinary team effort for optimal results.

Functional Assessment

When a person suffers from a disability, functional status, rather than diagnosis, directs rehabilitative care. Among older individuals, functional status varies widely. Some older adults actively hold down jobs and regularly provide volunteer service, others are able to perform activities of daily living (ADLs) if some assistance is provided, and a portion are so severely impaired that total care is required. Furthermore, functional status can change within an individual from time to time, depending on factors

such as control of symptoms, progression of the disease, and mood.

Assessment of functional status involves determining an individual's level of independence in performing ADLs and instrumental activities of daily living (IADL). This information is essential to understanding the rehabilitation needs of the patient. An assessment of ADLs explores the skills the patient possesses to meet basic requirements such as eating, washing, dressing, toileting, and moving. The nurse can use an assessment tool such as the Katz Index of Independence in ADLs. Assessment of IADL examines the skills beyond the basics that enable the individual to function independently in the community, such as the ability to prepare meals, shop, use a telephone, safely use medications, clean, travel in the community, and manage finances. Persons can be totally independent, partially independent, or dependent in their ability to perform these activities (Table 35-2).



KEY CONCEPT

Assessing a person's functional status involves evaluating his or her ability to perform both ADLs and IADLs.

When a deficit in ADL capacity exists, the underlying cause must be identified so that appropriate interventions can be planned. For example, a person who is partially dependent in bathing because he needs to have a basin of water brought to him will have different nursing requirements than one who forgets what he is doing as he bathes and needs to be reminded of the next action to take.

Interventions to Facilitate and Improve Functioning

When functional assessment reveals disabilities and impairments, nurses should identify areas of functioning that could be improved through interventions. Some examples of these interventions include positioning, range-of-motion exercises, use of mobility aids, bowel and bladder training, and activities to promote mental function.

Facilitating Proper Positioning

Correct body alignment facilitates optimal respiration, circulation, and comfort and prevents complications such as contractures and pressure ulcers. When patients are unable to position their bodies independently, nurses must be attentive to keeping their bodies properly aligned. Figure 35-1 demonstrates proper alignment in various positions.

TABLE 35-2 Assessing Capacity to Perform Activities of Daily Living

Total Independence	Partial Independence	Dependence
Eating		
Uses all utensils Cuts meats Butters bread Drinks from cup or glass	Needs tray set up Cannot cut foods or butter bread Needs encouragement, reminders to eat	Needs to be fed
Hygiene		
Transfers in or out of tub or shower Reaches and bathes all body parts Brushes teeth or dentures Brushes or combs hair Cleanses self after toileting Turns faucets, flushes toilet	Reaches some body parts to cleanse Unable to brush teeth, dentures Unable to turn faucets or flush toilet Needs assistance transferring in or out of tub or shower Needs assistance to comb or brush hair Must have basin brought Needs reminders, encouragement to bathe	Needs complete bathing assistance
Dressing		
Selects appropriate garments Puts on all clothing Slips on shoes, socks, stockings Ties shoelaces Able to manage zippers, buttons, snaps	Needs assistance with some garments, zippers, buttons, snaps Unable to select appropriate garments Needs encouragement, reminders to dress	Needs to be fully dressed
Continence		
Continent of bladder and bowels	Incontinent less than once daily	Total incontinent
Toileting		
Uses bedpan or toilet without assistance Able to reach or transfer to and from bedpan or toilet Manages ostomy or catheter independently	Needs to be taken to toilet or have bedpan brought or taken Needs encouragement or reminders to toilet Needs assistance with ostomy or catheter care	Needs assistance getting on or off bedpan or commode Unable to use bedpan or commode Unable to perform ostomy or catheter care
Mobility		
Ambulates with no assistance Turns corners Climb stairs Sits or lifts from chair and bed Uses wheelchair, cane, walker with no assistance	Ambulates with assistance Climbs stairs with assistance Transfers with assistance Propels wheelchair but needs to be assisted in and out Wanders in limited area	Bedbound Needs to be pushed in wheelchair Unable to transfer Unable to climb stairs Wanders away if not supervised

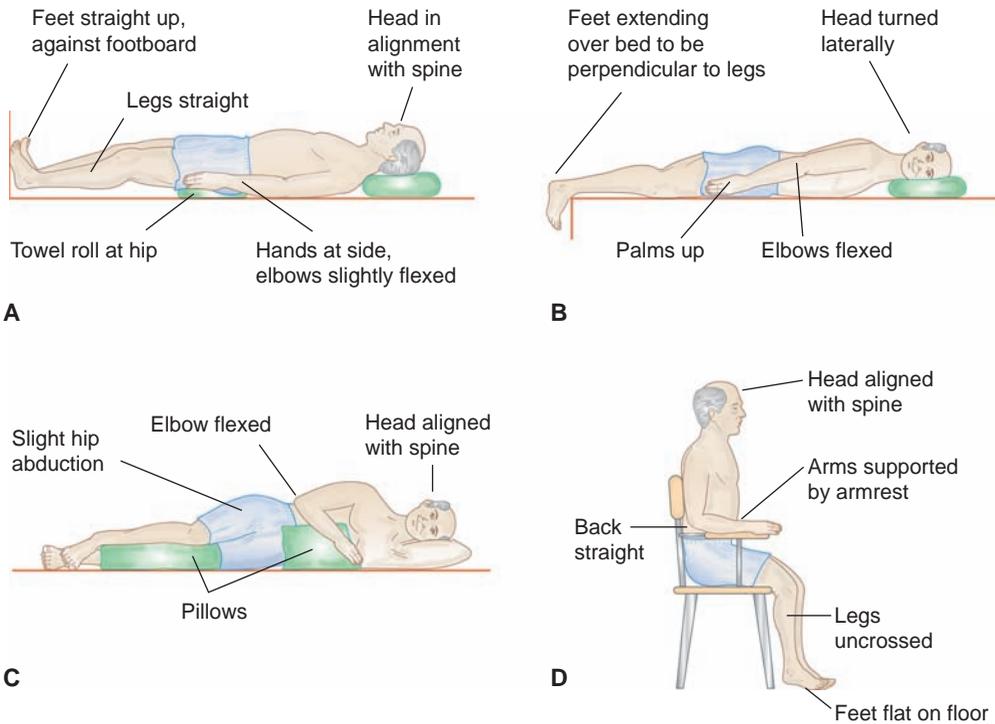


FIGURE 35-1 • (A) Supine position. (B) Prone position. (C) Lateral position. (D) Chair position.



KEY CONCEPT

Correct body alignment facilitates the optimal function of major systems, promotes comfort, and prevents complications.

Assisting With Range-of-Motion Exercises

Exercise is an essential component of the health maintenance and promotion plan of every adult and is particularly significant for older adults. Range-of-motion exercises have many benefits, including the promotion of joint motion and muscle strength, stimulation of circulation, maintenance of functional capacity, and prevention of contractures and other complications. Teaching the older adult how to perform range-of-motion exer-

cises or assisting them with these exercises is an important component of rehabilitative nursing.

Exercises can be done in the following degrees:

- active—independently by patients
- active assistive—with assistance to the patient
- passive—with no active involvement of the patient

During the assessment, all joints should be put through a full range of motion to determine the degree of movement possible actively, with active assistance, and passively. The most significant concern is the degree to which range of motion is sufficient to participate in ADL. Box 35-1 lists some of the terms used in describing joint motion.

Patients should be encouraged to put all joints through a full range of motion at least once daily. Figure 35-2 demonstrates basic range-of-motion

BOX 35-1 Terms Used to Describe Joint Motion

Flexion: bending
Extension: straightening
Hyperextension: extending beyond normal range
Abduction: moving away from body
Adduction: moving toward body
Pronation: rotating down, toward back of body

Supination: rotating up, toward front of body
Internal rotation: turning limb inward, toward center
External rotation: turning limb outward, from center
Inversion: turning joint inward
Eversion: turning joint outward
Circumduction: moving in a circular manner

exercises that should be incorporated into the older adult's daily activities. When nurses need to assist patients with these exercises, they should remember the following points:

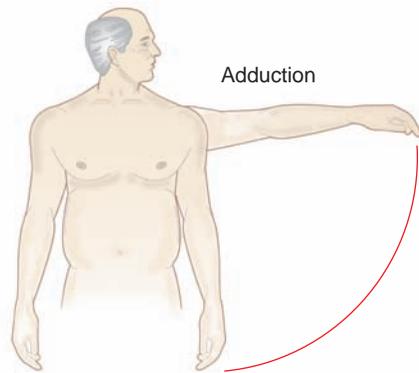
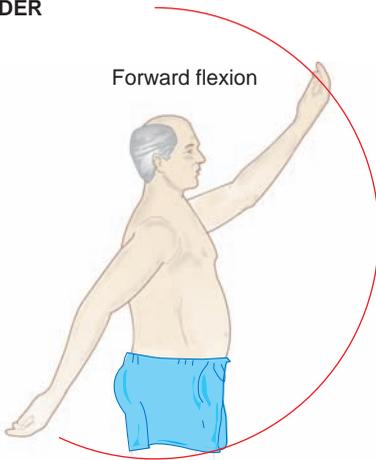
- First, offer support below and above the joint being exercised.
- Next, move the joint slowly and smoothly, exercising it at least three times.
- Third, do not force the joint past the point of resistance or pain.
- Finally, document joint mobility.

Table 35-3 offers a tool that can be used to document the patient's range of motion.

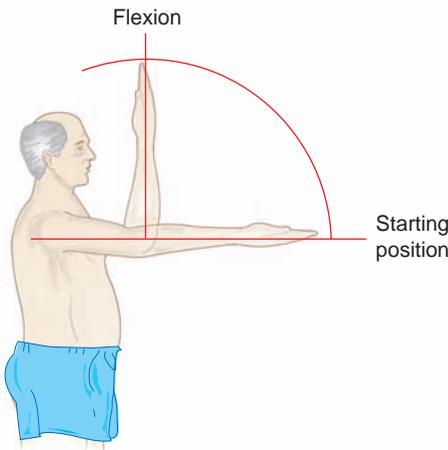
With any exercise program, caution must be taken to ensure that the physical activity does not overexert the older patient. Some of the signs that would warrant stopping an exercise include the development of:

- a resting heart rate greater than or equal to 100 beats/minute
- an exercise heart rate greater than or equal to 35% above the resting heart rate

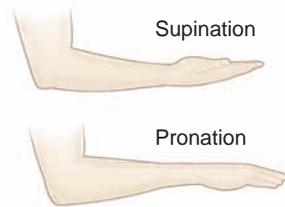
SHOULDER



ELBOW



FOREARM



WRIST

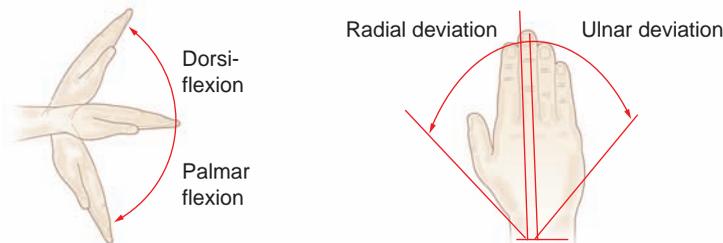
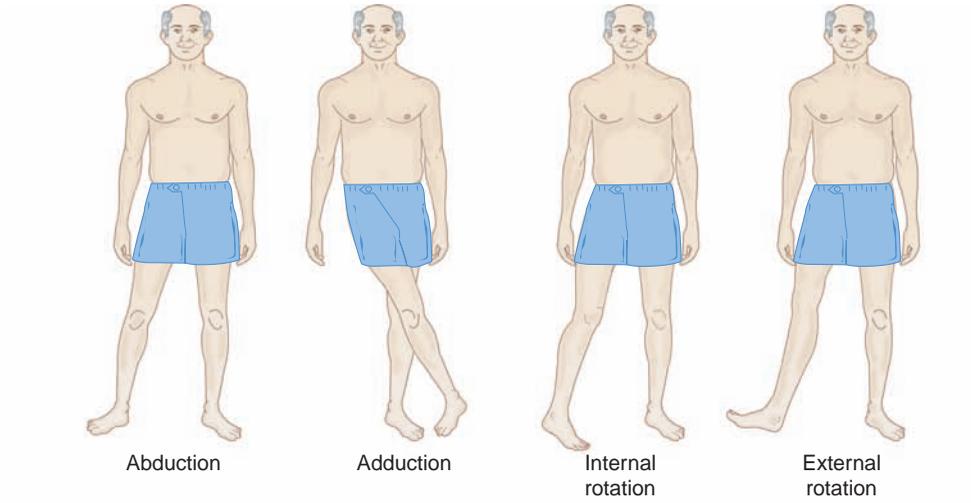
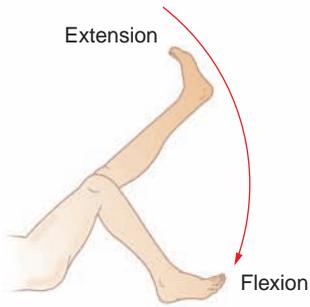


FIGURE 35-2 • Range-of-motion exercises.

HIP



KNEE



CERVICAL SPINE

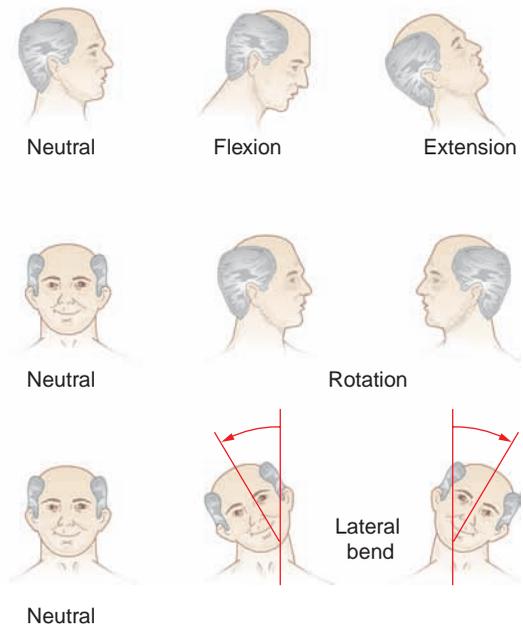
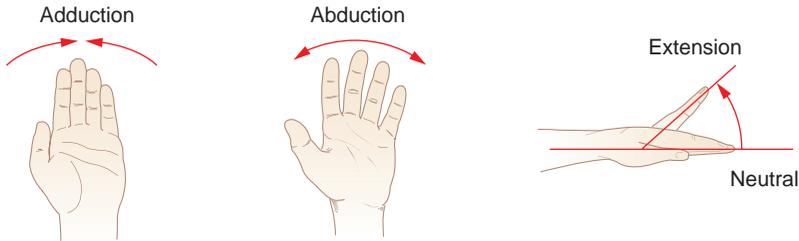


FIGURE 35-2 • (Continued)

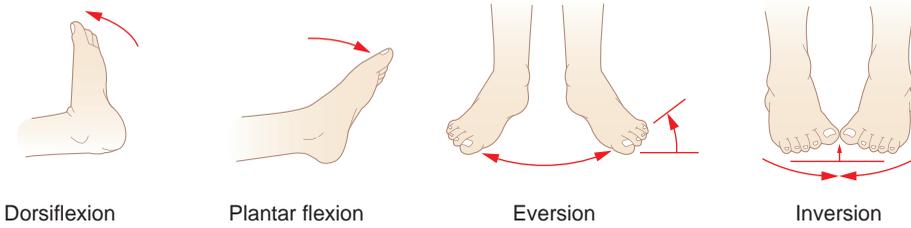
THUMB



FINGERS



ANKLE



TOES

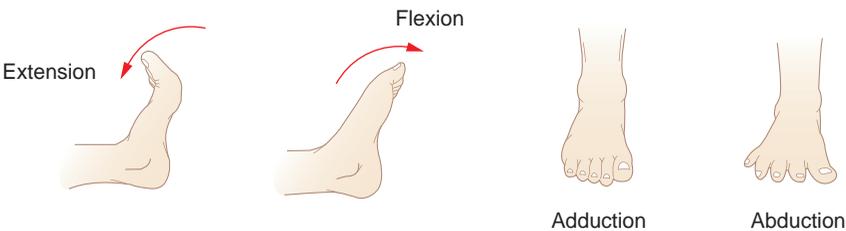


FIGURE 35-2 • (Continued)

- increase or decrease in systolic blood pressure by 20 mm Hg
- angina
- dyspnea, pallor, cyanosis
- dizziness, poor coordination
- diaphoresis
- acute confusion, restlessness

Teaching About Mobility Aids

Wheelchairs, canes, and walkers can make the difference between older persons living full lives or

being confined to their immediate environments. Mobility aids can enable patients to independently fulfill their universal needs and enhance functional capacity. If misused, however, these aids can present significant safety risks; thus, nurses must ensure that these pieces of equipment are used properly.

KEY CONCEPT

Inappropriately used canes, walkers, and wheelchairs can subject the older adult to falls and other injuries.

TABLE 35-3 Tool for Assessing Range of Motion

Joint	Normal Range	Patient's Range
Shoulder	Flexion 160° Extension 50°	
Elbow	Flexion 160° Extension from 160° to 0°	
Wrist	Flexion 90° Extension 70° Abduction 55° Adduction 20°	
Hip	Flexion (bent knee) 120° Flexion (straight knee) 90° Abduction 45° Adduction 45°	
Knee	Flexion 120°	
Neck	Extension 55° Flexion 45° Lateral bending 40° Rotation 70°	
Ankle	Dorsiflexion 20° Plantar flexion 45° Inversion 30° Eversion 20°	
Great toe	Distal phalange: Flexion 50° Proximal phalange: Flexion 35° Extension 80°	
Finger	Proximal phalange: Flexion 90° Extension 30° Middle phalange: Flexion 120° Distal phalange: Flexion 80°	
Thumb	Proximal phalange: Flexion 70° Distal phalange: Flexion 90°	

(Eliopoulos, C. [1991]. Range of motion exercises. *Long-Term Care Educator*, 2[9], 3.)

The first principle in using mobility aids is to use them only when necessary. Using a wheelchair because it is quicker or easier can result in unnecessary dependency and decline of functional capacity. The true need for the aid must be evaluated. If a mobility aid is deemed necessary, it must be individually selected according to the following criteria:

- Canes are used to provide a wider base of support and should not be used for bearing weight.
- Walkers offer a broader base of support than canes and can be used for weight-bearing.

- Wheelchairs provide mobility for persons unable to ambulate because of various disabilities, such as paralysis or severe cardiac disease.

These aids are individually fitted based on the patient's size, need, and capacities. Patients should be fully instructed in their proper use. Physical therapists are excellent resources for sizing and instructing patients for cane, walker, or wheelchair use. Box 35-2 explains some of the considerations involved in using these aids.

BOX 35-2 Proper Use of Mobility Aids

CANES

Depending on the disability, various canes may be recommended. Canes should be individually fitted, usually based on the distance from the greater trochanter to a distance 6 inches from the side of the person's foot.



Adjustable cane with standard handgrip



Wide-base quad cane

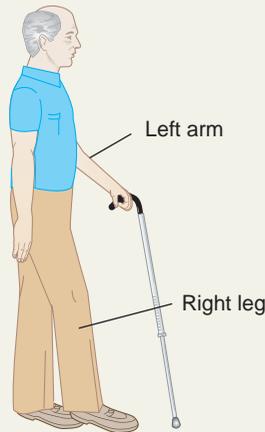


Large-based quad cane



Small-based quad cane

The cane is used on the *unaffected* side of the body and is advanced when the affected limb advances. For example, if the right leg is affected, the person holds the cane in his or her left hand and advances it with the advance of the right leg.



WALKERS

A variety of walkers can provide support and stability during ambulation. Walkers are sized by the measurement from the patient's trochanter to the floor.



Regular walker



Walker with wheels



Walker-cane

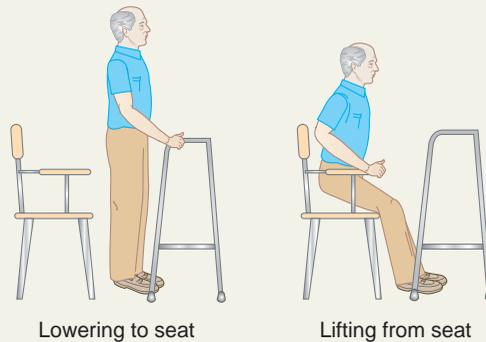


Walker with forearm attachments

The person should place his or her hands on the sides of the walker; with the elbows slightly flexed. During ambulation, the person advances the walker and then steps forward.

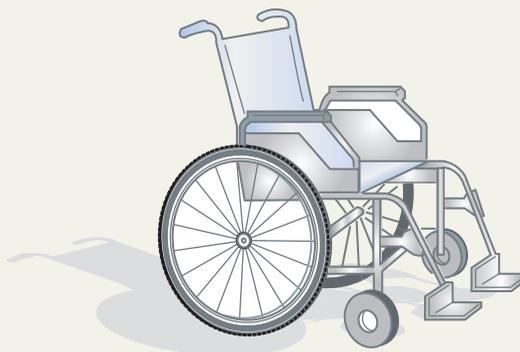


Appropriate use should be followed during transfer activities also. When lowering to a seat, the person should back the walker to the seat. When lifting from a seat, the person's hands should be on the arm of the chair. The person pushes on the arms of the chair to a standing position; the person should not use the walker to pull him- or herself to a standing position.



WHEELCHAIRS

A wheelchair should be individually fitted. The seat should be slightly larger than the person's width to prevent pressure and friction. The person's arm should be able to reach the wheels easily, and footrests should be adjusted to support the patient's foot in a flat position. Removable or fold-down armrests facilitate transfer:



Wheelchairs should be checked routinely for ease of wheeling; function of brakes; and freedom from jagged edges, tears in upholstery, and broken or missing hardware.

Teaching About Bowel and Bladder Training

Bowel and bladder elimination are important ADLs. Incontinence can have a profound impact on a person's general health and well-being. Skin breakdown can result from the moisture and irritation to which the skin is subjected. Urine or feces on the floor can cause falls. Soiled, odorous clothing can lead to embarrassment and social isolation. Infections, fractures, depression, altered self-concept, anorexia, and other problems can stem from poor bladder and bowel control.

Educating older adults with incontinence about bowel and bladder training can help them improve continence. However, the nurse must evaluate the physical and mental capacity of the patient to achieve continence before a training program is begun. Some patients may not have the functional capacity to control their elimination despite good intentions; to initiate a training program with them would be unrealistic and frustrating. If the patient has the capacity to be continent, training should begin as early as possible. Nursing Care Plans 21-2 and 22-1 in Chapters 21 and 22 provide information about bowel and bladder training programs. Consistency is a crucial factor in training programs; the gains of the day shift in keeping the patient continent are lost if the evening and night shifts do not toilet the patient at the appropriate intervals. Success should be recognized and praised; patients should not be chastised for accidents, but the reasons for the incontinent episodes should be discussed with them. Encouraging patients to wear street clothes promotes a positive self-image and normality and often discourages regression. Accurate documentation can assist in determining the effectiveness of the plan.

KEY CONCEPT

Consistency and adherence to the toileting schedule by all caregivers on all shifts is essential to bladder and bowel retraining programs.

Maintaining and Promoting Mental Function

Promoting physical functioning is only one aspect of rehabilitation. Equally important are efforts to restore, maintain, and promote mental function. In institutional settings where the contact patients have with staff mainly revolves around illness-related issues, or in their own homes where they may be socially isolated, healthy mental stimulation may be sorely lacking. Like any other function, mental function can deteriorate if not exercised; thus, all rehabilitative efforts include the promotion of mental activity.

Mental stimulation is a highly individualized process, based on the unique intellectual and

educational level of the patient. Some people enjoy reading the classics; others are barely interested in reading the local newspaper. Some people thrive on large social events, whereas others could spend days alone solving a crossword puzzle. Some people want to make things happen; others derive pleasure from watching them happen. This diversity, present in all age groups, reinforces the need to gear mental activities to the unique capacities and interests of the individual. Patients can take part in a wide range of intellectual, recreational, and social activities.

KEY CONCEPT

Like younger adults, older individuals show variation in activities that bring them intellectual stimulation and enjoyment.

Reminiscence

Reminiscence is one mentally stimulating activity that has a therapeutic aim. Since Butler and Lewis first described reminiscence, or life review (Butler & Lewis, 1982), studies have supported the value of this process as a means of validating existence, resolving past conflicts, and finding meaning in remaining life (Hsieh & Wang, 2003).

Nurses can guide patients in reminiscing through individual or group means (see also discussion of life review in Chapter 4). Often, patients can supply meaningful themes for reminiscence. For example, a patient may comment, “Kids today have it a lot easier than I did when I was young,” which could lead the nurse to explore the patient's youth and feelings associated with that period of his or her life. Knowing something of the patient's personal history can help nurses find relevant topics for reminiscence, such as the patient's immigration to America, development of a business, or efforts to assist the country during war time. Themes can be selected for group reminiscing, including playing old records and asking participants what their lives were like when those records were popular, showing old photographs and asking participants what memories arise, and asking them to describe the important pieces of history they have witnessed. Perhaps the most important skill for nurses to use in reminiscing activities is listening.

As the patient discusses the topic, questions can be asked and comments made to encourage greater exploration. If the patient begins to ramble aimlessly, he or she can be redirected to the topic by comments such as, “Yes, you've mentioned that before . . . I can tell it was important to you. Now tell me what happened after that.”

Reality Orientation

Patients with moderate-to-severe memory loss, confusion, or disorientation require therapeutic

efforts to keep them mentally integrated with the world around them. For these patients, reality orientation is an effective tool. More than just a simple review of day, date, weather, next meal, and next holiday, reality orientation is a total approach to keeping the patient oriented. Every nurse-patient contact can enhance orientation. For example, when passing medications, the nurse can state, “Hello, Mr. Richards. I’m Nurse Jones with your medicine. How are you on this sunny Tuesday? It’s very warm for March 10th, isn’t it?” This simple exchange adds no more time to the act of administering the medications but provides helpful orientation. Misinformation and misperceptions of the patient should be clarified simply, for instance: “No, your son will not be visiting today. He comes on Sunday and today is Wednesday.” Chastising or becoming frustrated with the patient for not remembering serves no therapeutic value. Clocks, calendars, holiday theme decorations, and reality boards enhance, but do not substitute for, staff interactions. Consistency is crucial to promoting orientation; it makes little sense for the day shift to reinforce to the patient that she is in a nursing home while the evening shift agrees with the patient’s claim that she is on her grandfather’s farm.

Using Community Resources

Every community has its unique resources for persons with rehabilitative needs; such resources provide education, support, and various forms of assistance to the disabled and their caregivers. Social workers, physical therapists, occupational therapists, speech and hearing therapists, and rehabilitation and vocational counselors are among the professionals who can offer guidance in locating appropriate resources. Local libraries, health departments, and information and referral services for older people can also provide valuable assistance.

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. Discuss the way in which a disability can impact a person’s body, mind, and spirit.
2. Consider the way in which your average routine would be altered if you possessed a disability. What resources could you use?
3. Describe the way in which prejudices and misinformed attitudes regarding disabilities can affect disabled persons.
4. Identify resources to assist persons in your community who have aphasia, blindness, bilateral amputation, and alcoholism.

Resources

Amputations

National Amputation Foundation
<http://www.nationalamputation.org>

Arthritis

Arthritis Foundation
<http://www.arthritis.org>

General Disability and Rehabilitation

Disabled American Veterans
<http://www.dav.org>

Federal Government Disability Information
<http://www.DisabilityInfo.gov>

National Rehabilitation Information Center
<http://www.naric.com>

Paralyzed Veterans of America
<http://www.pva.org>

Sister Kenny Rehabilitation Institute
<http://www.allina.com/ahs/ski.nsf>

Head Injuries

National Head Injury Foundation
<http://www-nmcp.med.navy.mil/Neurology/dzchi.asp>
 The Brain Injury Association Inc.
<http://www.biausa.org>

Hearing Impairments

Dogs for the Deaf
<http://www.dogsforthe deaf.org>
 Independent Living Aids
<http://www.independentliving.com>
 National Institute of Neurological and Communicative Disorders
<http://www.nidcd.nih.gov>
 National Association for the Deaf
<http://www.nad.org>
 Self-Help for Hard of Hearing People
<http://www.shhh.org>

Neurologic Diseases

American Parkinson’s Disease Association
<http://www.apdaparkinson.org>
 Epilepsy Foundation of America
<http://www.epilepsyfoundation.org>
 Myasthenia Gravis Foundation
<http://www.mysathenia.org>
 National Huntington’s Disease Association
<http://www.hdsa.org>
 National Multiple Sclerosis Society
<http://www.nmss.org>
 National Stroke Association
<http://www.stroke.org>

Ostomies

United Ostomy Association
<http://www.uoa.org>

Spinal Cord Disorders

National Spinal Cord Injury Foundation
<http://www.spinalcord.org>
 Paralyzed Veterans of America
<http://www.pva.org>

Visual Impairments

American Foundation for the Blind
<http://www.afb.org>
 Blinded Veterans Association
<http://www.bva.org>
 Guide Dogs for the Blind
<http://www.guidedogs.com>
 Guiding Eyes for the Blind
<http://www.guiding-eyes.org>
 Leader Dogs for the Blind
<http://www.leaderdog.org>
 National Association for the Visually Handicapped
<http://www.navh.org>
 National Braille Association
<http://www.members.aol.com/nbaoffice>
 National Eye Institute
<http://www.nei.nih.gov>
 National Library Service for the Blind and Physically Handicapped
<http://www.loc.gov/nls>
 Recordings for the Blind
<http://www.rfbd.org>

References

Butler, R. N., & Lewis, M. I. (1982). *Aging and mental health* (p. 58). St. Louis: Mosby.

Di Iorio, A., Abate, M., DiRenzo, D., Russolillo, A., Battaglini, C., et al. (2006). Sarcopenia: Age-related skeletal muscle changes from determinants to physical disability. *Int J Immunopathol Pharmacol*, 2006 Oct-Dec, 19(4), 703–719. Review.

Fried, L. P., Tangen, C. M., Walston, J., Newman, A. B., Hirsch, C., Gottdiener, J., et al. (2001). Frailty of older adults: Evidence for a phenotype. *Journals of Gerontology: Biological Sciences and Medical Sciences*, 56A(3), M146–M156.

Hsieh, H. F., & Wang, J. J. (2003). Effect of reminiscence therapy on depression in older adults: A systematic review. *International Journal of Nursing Studies*, 40(4), 335–345.

Recommended Readings

Baird, C. L. (2003). Holding on: Self-caring with osteoarthritis. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 29(6), 32–39.

Borst, S. E. (2004). Interventions for sarcopenia and muscle weakness in older people. *Age Ageing*, Nov, 33(6), 548–555. Epub 2004 Sep 22.

Cohen, H., Feussner, J., Weinberger, M., Carnes, M., Hamdy, R., Hsieh, E., et al. (2002). A controlled trial of inpatient and outpatient geriatric evaluation and management. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 346(12), 905–912.

Cromwell, S. L., & Berg, J. A. (2006). Lifelong physical activity patterns of sedentary Mexican American women. *Geriatric Nursing*, 27(4), 209–213.

Diwan, S., Ivy, C., Merino, D., & Brower, T. (2001). Assessing the need for intensive case management in long-term care. *The Gerontologist*, 41(5), 680–686.

Edström, E., & Ulfhake, B. (2005). Sarcopenia is not due to lack of regenerative drive in senescent skeletal muscle. *Aging Cell*, 4(2), 65–77.

Eliopoulos, C. (2003). Holistic nursing. In Leskowitz, E. *Complementary and alternative medicine in rehabilitation*. St. Louis, MO: Churchill Livingstone, pp. 275–283.

Fujita, S., & Volpi, E. (2006). Branched-chain amino acids: Metabolism, physiological function, and application: Session III. Amino acids and muscle loss with aging. *Journal of Nutrition*, 136, 277S–280S.

Hart, B., Birkas, J., Lachmann, M., & Saunders, L. (2002). Promoting positive outcomes for elderly persons in the hospital: Prevention and risk factor modification. *AACN Clinical Issues*, 13(1), 22–33.

Hoeman, S. P. (2002). *Rehabilitation nursing: Process and application* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.

Jester, R. (2007). *Advanced rehabilitation nursing*. Malden, MA: Blackwell Publishing.

Lohrmann, C., Dijkstra, A., & Dassel, T. (2003). The care dependency scale: An assessment instrument for elderly patients in German hospitals. *Geriatric Nursing*, 24(1), 40–43.

Lunney, J. R., Lynn, J., Foley, D. J., Lipson, S., & Guralnik, J. M. (2003). Patterns of functional decline at the end of life. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 289(18), 2387–2392.

Moore, S. L., Metcalf, B., & Schow, E. (2000). Aging and meaning in life: Examining the concept. *Geriatric Nursing*, 21(1), 27–28.

Ostwald, S. K., Hepburn, K. W., & Burns, T. (2003). Training family caregivers of patients with dementia: A structured workshop approach. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 29(1), 37–44.

O'Sullivan, S., & Schmitz, T. J. (2006). *Physical rehabilitation*. Philadelphia: F.A. Davis.

O'Sullivan, S. B., & Schmitz, T. J. (2001). *Physical rehabilitation: Assessment and treatment*. Philadelphia: F.A. Davis.

Resnick, B. (2004). *Restorative care nursing for older adults: A guide for all care settings* (Springer Series on Geriatric Nursing). New York: Springer Publishing.

Resnick, B., & Fleishell, A. (2002). Developing a restorative care program. *American Journal of Nursing*, 102(7), 91–97.

Resnick, B., & Simpson, M. (2003). Restorative care nursing activities: Pilot testing self-efficacy and outcome expectation measures. *Geriatric Nursing*, 24(2), 82–89.

Schirm, V., Baumgardner, J., Dowd, T., Gregor, S., & Kolcaba, K. (2004). Development of a healthy bladder education program for older adults. *Geriatric Nursing*, 25(5), 301–306.

Stokes, S. A., & Gordon, S.E. (2003). Common stressors experienced by the well elderly. Clinical implications. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 29(5), 38–46.

Williams, K., & Hummert, M. L. (2004). Enhancing communication with older adults: Overcoming elderspeak. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 30(10), 17–25.

Young, H. (May 31, 2003). Challenges and solutions for care of frail older adults. Online *Journal of Issues in Nursing*, 8(2), manuscript 4. Retrieved 4/2/04, from http://www.nursingworld.org/ojin/topic21/tpc21_4.htm.

Zacher, R. J. (2006). Health-related implications and management of sarcopenia. *JAAPA Oct*, 19(10), 24–29.

Acute Care

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Risks Associated With Hospitalization of Older Adults

Surgical Care

- Special Risks for Older Adults
- Preoperative Care Considerations
- Operative and Postoperative Care Considerations

Emergency Care

Infections

Discharge Planning for Older Adults

Today's acute care hospitals play a significant role in geriatric care. Older adults have a higher rate of hospitalization and longer length of hospital stay as compared with other age groups (National Center for Health Statistics, 2006). Furthermore, older people are significant consumers of outpatient hospital services. Many age-related changes increase the risk for injuries and infections, and can cause complications with the chronic conditions that are common in older adults. Further, technology has opened the door for new diagnostic procedures, enabled malfunctioning older organs to be repaired and replaced, and made new treatment options available. Acute care settings definitely are in the geriatric care business, and nurses in these settings must be familiar with the unique care needs of older adults.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 List measures to minimize risks faced by acutely ill older adults.
- 2 Describe risks and precautions for older patients undergoing surgery.
- 3 Discuss common geriatric emergencies and related nursing actions.
- 4 Identify measures to reduce the risk of infection in older adults.
- 5 Discuss the importance of early discharge planning for hospitalized older adults.
- 6 Describe factors that influence postdischarge outcomes for older adults.

Risks Associated With Hospitalization of Older Adults

Many older adults who have lived independently in their homes prior to admission to the hospital are not discharged with the same level of function; some are transferred to a long-term care facility. The decline in status can sometimes be attributed to the effects of aging on the older adult's ability to withstand the stress of an acute condition; however, during hospitalization older individuals are at high risk for nosocomial infections (hospital-acquired infections) and iatrogenic complications (complications inadvertently caused by practitioners or by medical treatments or procedures). Examples of complications include delirium, falls, pressure ulcers, dehydration, incontinence, constipation, and loss of functional dependence (Table 36-1).

Nurses should anticipate and minimize the common risks faced by acutely ill older persons in an effort to promote optimal functional independence. Some useful measures include:

- careful assessment to identify problems and risks
- early discharge planning
- encouragement of independence
- close monitoring of medications and assurance that age-adjusted dosages are used
- reminders and assistance to patient with frequent repositioning, coughing, deep breathing, toileting
- early identification and correction of complications, recognizing that atypical signs and symptoms may be present
- avoidance of urinary catheterization if possible
- strict adherence to aseptic techniques and infection control practices
- close monitoring of intake and output, vital signs, mental status, and skin status
- environmental modifications to accommodate older patients' needs (e.g., room temperature of 75°F, noise control, use of nightlights, avoidance of glare)
- use of bed rails
- assistance, as necessary, with activities of daily living
- patient and family education
- reality orientation as necessary
- referral to resources to promote self-care ability and independence



POINT TO PONDER

What do you perceive to be the rewards and challenges of caring for older adults during an acute hospitalization? ●

Surgical Care

Because of improved surgical procedures and the increasing number of persons living to old age, nurses today are caring for many more surgical patients of advanced age. Also, people are no longer denied the benefit of surgery based on their age alone. Surgical intervention has provided many older people not only with more years to their lives but also with more functional years. Successful surgical management of an older person's health problems depends on the nurse's understanding of the age-related factors that alter normal surgical procedures.



KEY CONCEPT

Surgical intervention not only can add years to an older adult's life but also can improve the quality and functional independence of those added years.

Special Risks for Older Adults

In general, older adults have a smaller margin of physiologic reserve and are less able to compensate for and adapt to physiologic changes. Infection, hemorrhage, anemia, blood pressure changes, and fluid and electrolyte imbalances are more problematic in older people. Unfortunately, inelasticity of blood vessels, malnourishment, increased susceptibility to infection, and reduced cardiac, respiratory, and renal reserves cause complications to occur more frequently in older persons, especially during emergency or complicated surgical procedures. By strengthening older adults' capacities preoperatively, maintaining these capacities postoperatively, and being alert to early signs of complications, the nurse can help reduce the risk of surgical complications (Fig. 36-1). Nursing Diagnosis Table 36-2 lists diagnoses that may be identified in older adults who have undergone surgery.

Preoperative Care Considerations

The gerontological nurse must be sensitive to the fears that many older patients have concerning surgery. Throughout their lifetimes, today's older adults may have witnessed severe disability or death in older persons having surgery, and they may worry about similar outcomes from their operation. Patients need to understand the increased success of surgical procedures through the following advances:

- better diagnostic tools facilitating earlier diagnosis and treatment
- improved therapeutic measures, including surgical techniques and antibiotics
- increased knowledge concerning the unique characteristics of older adults

TABLE 36-1 Potential Risks for Older Adults During Hospitalization

Risk	Contributing/Causative Factors
Delirium	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> New environment Sensory deprivation Inaccessible eyeglasses, hearing aid Altered cognition or level of consciousness Excess stimuli Adverse drug reactions Physiologic disturbance
Falls	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Dizziness Orthostatic hypotension Weakness, fatigue Unfamiliar environment Altered cognition or level of consciousness Presence of equipment, supplies Chemical or physical restraints Failure to use bed rails Effects of medications Lack of assistance
Pressure ulcers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Age-related changes to skin Immobilization Shearing forces Sedation Pain Weakness Debilitating condition Lack of assistance
Dehydration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Age-related decrease in thirst sensation Sedation Nausea, vomiting Altered cognition or level of consciousness Inaccessible fluids Lack of assistance
Incontinence	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Diuresis Sedation Weakness Inaccessible commode, bedpan Indwelling catheterization Lack of assistance
Constipation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Age-related changes to gastrointestinal system Effects of medications Effects of surgery Dietary modifications Reduced activity Poor positioning during defecation Inaccessible commode, bedpan Lack of toileting assistance
Loss of functional independence	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stereotypical expectations by staff Unnecessary restrictions Insufficient time for self-care Knowledge deficit Immobility Development of complications Failure to ambulate, mobilize early



FIGURE 36-1 • The hospitalized older adult requires nursing interventions to prevent complications and to promote a return to wellness.

In addition to offering reassurance, the nurse teaches patients and their families what to expect before, during, and after the operative procedure, including the following information:

- preoperative preparation—scrubs, medications, nothing to eat by mouth (NPO)
- types of reactions to anesthesia
- length of the surgery and a brief description of it
- routine recovery room procedures
- expected pain and its management
- turning, coughing, and deep-breathing exercises
- rationale for and frequency of dressing changes, suctioning, oxygen, catheters, and other anticipated procedures

The nurse documents any patient education in the patient's record so that this information is available to other health care providers. During assessment and preoperative preparation, the nurse identifies concerns, questions, and fears and makes the physician aware of these findings.

NURSING DIAGNOSIS

TABLE 36-2 Nursing Diagnoses Related to Surgery

Causes or Contributing Factors

Altered oxygen transport, pain
 Fear of death or disability, pain, lack of knowledge
 Anesthesia, immobility, actual or perceived pain, analgesics
 Shock, fluid and electrolyte imbalances, sepsis, anesthesia
 Diagnostic tests, positioning, tissue trauma, immobility
 Decreased cerebral blood flow, endotracheal intubation, pain, anesthesia, central nervous system depressants
 Concern about loss of body function or part, death, outcome of surgery
 Shock, infection, excessive wound drainage, NPO status, electrolyte imbalance, blood loss
 Excessive or rapid IV infusion, venous pooling/stasis
 IV therapy, intubation, break in aseptic technique, catheterization
 Altered cerebral function, pain
 Lack of knowledge of surgical procedure, expected outcome, risks, postoperative care
 Pain, weakness, altered cognition, restrictions
 Anorexia, nausea, vomiting, pain, inability to feed self
 Trauma from endotracheal tube, NPO status, mouth breathing, inadequate oral hygiene
 Inability to help self, lack of knowledge
 Anesthesia, narcotics, immobility, pain, secretions
 Immobility, weakness, restrictions from IV apparatus
 Change in body function or part, pain, dependency
 Immobility, pressure from operating table, edema, dehydration
 Immobility, anxiety, pain, new environment, drugs
 Anesthesia, drugs, confusion, dehydration, indwelling catheter

Nursing Diagnosis

Activity Intolerance
 Anxiety
 Constipation
 Decreased Cardiac Output
 Pain
 Impaired Verbal Communication
 Fear
 Deficient Fluid Volume
 Excess Fluid Volume
 Risk for Infection
 Risk for Injury
 Deficient Knowledge
 Impaired Physical Mobility
 Imbalanced Nutrition: Less Than Body Requirements
 Impaired Oral Mucous Membrane
 Powerlessness
 Impaired Gas Exchange
 Self-Care Deficit
 Body Image Disturbance
 Impaired Skin Integrity
 Disturbed Sleep Pattern
 Impaired Urinary Elimination

The nurse also reviews with the physician the medications the patient is receiving to determine those that must be continued throughout the hospitalization. The patient's routine medications may need to be administered despite NPO restrictions. For instance, sudden interruption of steroid therapy can cause cardiovascular collapse. The nurse may learn that the patient has been taking antihypertensive, tranquilizing, or other medications before hospitalization. Occasionally, patients forget or are reluctant to tell the physician about these drugs. Because cardiac and pulmonary functions can be altered by certain drugs, it is important to make sure this information is communicated to the physician. Likewise, the physician needs to know about herbal medications that the patient may be using because some (such as ginseng and ginkgo biloba) can affect clotting.

Nurses should ensure that basic preoperative screening has been completed, including the following:

- analysis of blood samples: creatinine clearance, glucose, electrolytes, complete blood counts, total plasma proteins, arterial blood gases, cardiac enzymes, lymphocyte count, serum albumin, hemoglobin, hematocrit, total iron-binding capacity, transferrin
- chest x-ray
- electrocardiogram (ECG)
- pulmonary function testing: for obese individuals and those with a history of smoking or pulmonary disease
- nutritional assessment: height, weight, midarm circumference, triceps skin-fold, diet history
- mental status

Because of the direct nature of the care they provide, nurses may be the only health care professionals to recognize certain problems. For example, they may discover loose teeth, which can become dislodged and aspirated during the surgical procedure, causing unnecessary complications. Such a problem should be brought to the physician's attention to ensure preoperative dental correction.

If prolonged surgery is anticipated, another precaution during surgery preparation is to pad the bony prominences of older patients. Because they will be lying on a hard operating room table, padding will help prevent pressure ulcers or muscle and bone discomfort following surgery.



KEY CONCEPT

Careful positioning of the patient and padding of bony prominences can reduce some of the postoperative muscle and bone soreness that older adults may experience with prolonged surgery.

Infection control must be at the forefront of the nurse's mind during the entire hospitalization and begins early during the preoperative preparation. Promoting a good nutritional state and correcting existing infections are important preoperative considerations. To further reduce the risk of infection, three preoperative bathings—in the morning and at bedtime on the day before surgery and on the morning of surgery, using an antiseptic—are recommended, as is performing preoperative shaving as close to the time of surgery as possible.

Finally, although it is the physician's legal responsibility, nurses can ensure that the patient's informed consent has been obtained preoperatively (see Chapter 8 for discussion of informed consent).

Operative and Postoperative Care Considerations

Anesthesia use must be considered carefully in older adults. Because anesthesia produces depression of the already compromised functions of the cardiovascular and respiratory systems of the older patient, it must be carefully selected. Close monitoring by the anesthesiologist during surgery can detect and prevent difficulties in the patient's vital functions. Prolonged surgery for the older patient is discouraged. Rough, frequent handling of the tissue during surgery usually is avoided because this stimulates reflex activity, increasing the demand for anesthesia. If inhaled agents are used for anesthesia, the nurse should be aware that the patient may remain anesthetized for a longer time because of the older body's slower elimination of these agents; turning and deep breathing will facilitate faster elimination of inhaled agents.

Hypothermia is one of the major complications older adults face intraoperatively and postoperatively. Factors that contribute to this problem include the lower normal body temperatures of many older persons, the cool temperature of operating rooms, and the use of medications that slow metabolism. The cool environment and shivering that may result can increase cardiac output and ventilation and deprive the heart and brain of necessary oxygen; however, shivering occurs less frequently in older individuals. Furthermore, the slowing of metabolism that occurs with hypothermia delays awakening and the return of reflexes. Close monitoring of body temperature is essential. Some hypothermia may be preventable with proper warming measures; research has demonstrated that forced-air warming during the intraoperative and early postoperative periods resulted in higher core temperatures and a lower incidence of hypothermia (Grossman, Bautista, & Sullivan, 2002).

**KEY CONCEPT**

Hypothermia is a major intraoperative and postoperative risk to older patients.

Frequent, close postoperative observation and monitoring are extremely important. The decreased ability of older people to manage stress reinforces the need to detect and treat symptoms of shock and hemorrhage promptly. Although not fully conscious after surgery, the older person may demonstrate restlessness as the primary symptom of hypoxia. It is important that this restlessness not be mistaken for pain; administration of a narcotic could deplete the body's oxygen supply even more. Prophylactic administration of oxygen may be a beneficial component of the postoperative therapy. Blood loss should be accurately measured and, if excessive, promptly corrected. Frequent checking of urinary output can help reveal the onset of serious complications. Finally, fluid and electrolyte imbalances can be avoided and detected through strict recording of intake and output. Output should include drainage, bleeding, vomitus, and all other sources of fluid loss.

**KEY CONCEPT**

Postoperative restlessness could indicate hypoxia, not pain; inappropriate administration of a narcotic analgesic could further deplete the body's oxygen supply.

Because the older patient has a greater risk of developing infections, strict attention must be paid to caring for wounds and changing dressings. A good nutritional status is beneficial to tissue healing and should be encouraged. To conserve the patient's energy and provide comfort, relief of pain is essential. Maintaining regular bowel and bladder elimination, keeping joints mobile, and helping the patient achieve a comfortable position can aid in pain control. If medications are used for pain relief, nurses should pay attention to the reduced activity that may result and to the prevention of the ill effects of such immobilization. The nurse should also be aware that positioning on the hard operating room table and pulling and moving of the unconscious patient may cause muscle and bone soreness for several days postoperatively. Finally, it is vital to observe the patient for respiratory depression if narcotic analgesics are administered.

Older patients are particularly subject to several postoperative complications. Respiratory complications include pneumonia, pulmonary emboli, and atelectasis. With atelectasis there may be decreased lung sounds and a low-grade fever, but the chest

x-ray may not show the condition. Atelectasis increases the risk for the development of pneumonia. If pneumonia develops in an older individual, it is more problematic than it would be for a younger adult and requires a longer recovery period. Cardiovascular complications include embolus, thrombus, myocardial infarction, and arrhythmias. Cerebrovascular accident and coronary occlusion occur, but they are less common than other complications. Reduced activity and lowered resistance can cause pressure ulcers to develop easily. Drug-induced renal failure is common; drugs that commonly cause this complication include cimetidine, digoxin, aminoglycosides, cephalosporins, ampicillin, and neuromuscular-blocking agents. Older postoperative patients, particularly those with hip repair, tend to have a higher incidence of delirium than the general adult population. Paralytic ileus, accompanied by fever, dehydration, abdominal tenderness, and distention, is an additional postoperative complication that the aged may experience. Table 36-3 lists other complications.

The nurse is in a key position to help the older patient achieve the maximal benefit from surgery. The most sophisticated surgical procedure in the world performed by the most skillful surgeon is of little value if poor rehabilitative care causes disability or death from avoidable complications. To combine the principles and practices of surgical nursing with the unique characteristic of the older patient is an immense challenge to the gerontological nurse. However, to see the increased capacity and more meaningful life many older adults derive from the benefits of surgery is an immense satisfaction.

Emergency Care

Emergencies in older persons are particularly problematic. First, they occur frequently because of the age-related changes that lower resistance and make the body more susceptible to injury and illness. Second, they often present an atypical picture that complicates diagnosis. Next, they can be more difficult to treat or stabilize because of older persons' altered response to treatment. Finally, they carry a greater risk of causing serious complications and death. By recognizing emergency situations and intervening promptly, nurses can spare considerable discomfort and disability to older patients and, in many situations, save their lives.

Regardless of the type of emergency, the following basic goals guide nursing actions:

- maintain life functions
- prevent and treat shock
- control bleeding
- prevent complications
- keep the patient physically and psychologically comfortable

TABLE 36-3 Common Complicating Conditions in Older Surgical Patients

Complicating Condition	Medical-Surgical Factors	Aging Processes	Nursing Interventions
Fluid and electrolyte imbalance	Blood, fluid losses during surgery, cool operating room, fluids evaporate from tissues, surgery and anesthesia stimulate ADH and aldosterone, overhydration with IV infusion	Decreased renal function—nephron loss, GFR, decreased renal blood flow and creatinine clearance; decreased cardiopulmonary function	Careful monitoring of intake and output, assessment of skin turgor—over sternum or forehead, assess for signs of hypervolemia and hypovolemia, determine urinary status, note nonmeasured fluid losses such as diaphoresis, assess for sacral edema, correct imbalances with isotonic IV infusions and electrolytes
Malnutrition	NPO for test preparations, decreased intake post-operatively, psychosocial influences, operative site, stress of surgery increases nutritional needs	Decreased secretion, motility, and absorption; decreased basal metabolic rate; loss of taste buds; loss of appetite; reduced absorption of iron, B ₁₂ , calcium; sensory losses	Preoperative nutritional assessment, monitor weight, fluid balance, food intake and laboratory values, preoperative nutritional preparation, calorie and protein increases postoperatively, hyperalimentation if indicated, use of nutritional support team, maintain positive nitrogen balance postoperatively; vitamin/mineral supplements
Pneumonia, atelectasis	Heavy smokers with cough, obesity, bronchitis, chronic pulmonary disease, thoracic or upper abdominal surgery, anesthesia and pain medication reduce functional residual capacity, lung expansion and gas exchange	Reduced bronchopulmonary movement, decreased pulmonary function—tidal volume, loss of protective airway reflexes	<i>Preoperatively</i> —cease smoking for 1 week, weight reduction, pulmonary function testing; if bronchitis present, give antibiotics, expectorants and bronchodilators, teach pulmonary maneuvers; cough (tongue extended to loosen secretions), deep breathing, incentive spirometer <i>Postoperatively</i> —position change hourly, monitor blood gases, off ventilator as soon as possible, continue pulmonary maneuver; O ₂ to ensure adequate oxygenation, early ambulation, chest physiotherapy
Pressure ulcers	Malnutrition; chronic disease (e.g., diabetes, CHF, PVD); length of time on OR table	Moisture loss, thinning epidermis, capillary loss in dermis, loss of sensory receptors, loss of subcutaneous fat	Frequent turning, correct positioning, pressure relieving devices, avoidance of shearing forces, early movement and ambulation, good skin hygiene, lotions, gentle massage, nutritional supplements, increase fluid intake, high-protein, high-calorie diet

(continued)

TABLE 36-3 Common Complicating Conditions in Older Surgical Patients (Continued)

Complicating Condition	Medical-Surgical Factors	Aging Processes	Nursing Interventions
Wound dehiscence, wound evisceration	Malnutrition; large, sudden weight loss	Delayed immune response, delayed wound healing—slowing of inflammatory response, mitosis, cell proliferation, abnormal collagen formation causing poor tensile strength in wound, decreased muscle strength	1–3 weeks preoperative nutritional preparation, hyperalimentation, vitamin supplements, strict aseptic wound care, encourage rest—slow-wave sleep aids wound healing, inspiratory breathing exercises, coughing only if secretions present, prevent/reduce vomiting; discharge teaching, proper wound care and observation for complications, diet instructions
Incidental hypothermia	Cold operating rooms, room temperature infusions, exposure of skin for draping and preparation, exposure of peritoneum/pleura during surgery, peripheral vasodilation	Impaired thermoregulatory mechanisms, decreased cardiopulmonary reserves, impaired ability to increase basal metabolic rate	Temperature monitoring in OR, careful cardiac monitoring, hyperthermia blanket, warm top blankets after incision closure, warm IV fluids, transfer from OR quickly, thermal top blankets in RR, transfer blankets with patient to surgical unit
Joint stiffness, contractures	Presence of degenerative joint disease, osteoporosis, reduced mobility during preoperative preparation, immobility during surgery, pain limiting motion in postoperative period	Decreased muscle strength and wasting, decreased bone mass, ossification of cartilage in joints, flexion of joints, stooped posture, slowed movement, gait changes	Assess prior functioning level, leg exercises preoperatively, early ambulation, proper positioning and movement in bed, active/passive range of motion, encourage active movement by patient
Acute confusional states, delirium	Type of anesthesia, penetration of blood-brain barrier by certain drugs, presence of preexisting depression or dementia, environmental factors, number of medications taken, hypoxemia, psychosocial factors	Loss of neurons, brain atrophy, decreased cerebral blood flow and oxygen consumption, decreased renal function, slowed clearance of drugs from system, sensory losses, decreased cardiopulmonary reserves	<i>Preoperatively</i> —baseline assessment of mental status and emotional state, psychological support, allow time for questions and verbalization of fears, provide pastoral care if desired, correct electrolyte imbalances, anemia <i>Postoperatively</i> —monitor level of consciousness, avoid restraints, provide calm environment, avoid use of indwelling catheters, orient to environment, progressive mobility, small doses of haloperidol (Haldol) if organic causes, reassurance from all staff, need special attention if have hearing loss, monitor electrolytes and fluid balance, ensure adequate oxygenation

TABLE 36-3 Common Complicating Conditions in Older Surgical Patients (*Continued*)

Complicating Condition	Medical-Surgical Factors	Aging Processes	Nursing Interventions
Cardiac failure	Existing cardiac disease, hypertension, anesthesia effects on blood pressure, stress of surgery increases metabolic needs and increases workload on heart	Decreased cardiac output, altered O ₂ transport, fatty accumulations in heart valves, atherosclerosis of vessels, widening pulse pressure	<i>Preoperatively</i> —risk assessment, correct, treat existing conditions; low dosage heparinization; improved nutritional status will improve cardiac function <i>Postoperatively</i> —continuous CVP monitoring; assess JVD and breath sounds hourly; continuous ECG monitoring; close observation of vital signs, level of consciousness and urinary output, maintain infusion rates; check intake and output; observe peripheral circulation, color; maintain cardiovascular functions; careful, early mobilization, rest periods

ADH, antidiuretic hormone; CHF, congestive heart failure; CVP, central venous pressure; ECG, electrocardiogram; GFR, glomerular-filtration rate; IV, intravenous; JVD, jugular vein distention; NPO, nothing by mouth; OR, operating room; PVD, pulmonary vascular disease; RR, recovery room. (From Palmer, M. A. [1990]. *Care of the older surgical patient*. In Eliopoulos, C. [Ed.], *Caring for the elderly in diverse care settings*. Philadelphia: J.B. Lippincott.)

- observe and record signs, treatments, and responses
- assess for causative factors

Whenever there is a question regarding whether a true emergency exists, nurses should err on the side of safety. It is far better to obtain an x-ray or ECG that results in a negative finding than to believe it would be an unnecessary bother or expense and have the patient suffer from a delayed diagnosis.

 **KEY CONCEPT**

When an emergency condition is suspected, it is better to err on the safe side and obtain diagnostic tests rather than risk delaying the diagnosis.

Box 36-1 highlights some of the emergency conditions that may be encountered with older adults and related nursing measures.

Infections

Infections are common acute conditions that demand prompt attention. A variety of factors can be responsible for the high risk for infection in older adults (Box 36-2).

As discussed in Chapter 30, not only do infections develop more easily in older people, but they also are more difficult to identify early because of altered symptomatology. That is, the atypical presentation of symptoms can complicate early identification and correction. For example, lower body temperature can cause fever to appear atypically; reduced cough efficiency can prohibit the productive cough that can give a clue to a respiratory infection; and anorexia, fatigue, and altered cognition can be ascribed to other health problems or “old age.”

 **KEY CONCEPT**

Gerontological nurses should suspect an infection when there is any abrupt, unexplained change in physical or mental function in the older adult.

The most common infection in the older population is urinary tract infection (UTI). In older adults, signs of UTI could include confusion, incontinence, vague abdominal pain, anorexia, nausea, and vomiting. Patients with diabetes may experience

BOX 36-1 Selected Emergencies for Older Adults**ACUTE CONFUSION/DELIRIUM**

Clinical manifestations: rapid decline in cognitive function, disturbed intellectual function, disorientation to time and place, diminished attention span, poorer memory, labile mood, meaningless chatter, poor judgment, altered level of consciousness, restlessness, insomnia, personality changes, suspiciousness.

Goal: identify and correct causative factor.

Nursing Actions:

- Assess for changes in physical health, stresses, lifestyle changes, medications taken, dietary intake, or other problems.
- Obtain blood samples for evaluation.
- Monitor vital signs, intake and output, and behaviors.
- Support treatment plan, for example, electrolyte replacement, medication change, and fever control.

Goal: protect from injury and complications.

Nursing Actions:

- Supervise activities closely.
- Remove hazardous substances, medications, and machinery from patient's immediate environment.
- Ensure adequate nutritional intake, toileting, and hygiene.

Goal: reduce confusion.

Nursing Actions:

- Limit number of staff who provide care. Offer consistency of approach.
- Maintain stable, calm environment. Avoid bright lights, excessive noise, and extreme room temperatures.
- Offer orienting statements, such as "Mr. Jones, you are in the hospital. It is Tuesday evening. Your wife is at your side."
- Clarify misconceptions.

Note: A thorough evaluation is crucial when confusion exists. This problem can result from a wide range of disturbances such as hypoglycemia, hypercalcemia, malnutrition, infection, trauma, and drug reactions.

DEHYDRATION

Clinical manifestations: concentrated urine, decreased or excessive urine output, weight loss, output exceeds intake, increased pulse rate, increased temperature, decreased skin turgor; dry-coated tongue, dry skin and mucous membrane, weakness, lethargy, confusion, nausea, anorexia; thirst may or may not be present.

Goal: restore lost fluids.

Nursing Actions:

- Obtain blood sample for analysis of electrolytes.
- Force fluids unless contraindicated. Administer intravenous solutions as ordered.

- Monitor and record intake and output, weight, and vital signs.

Goal: minimize or eliminate causative factors.

Nursing Actions:

- Assess for possible causes (e.g., insufficient intake, fever, vomiting, diarrhea, wound drainage).
- Correct underlying cause.
- Monitor and encourage good fluid intake.

Note: The reduction in intracellular fluid that occurs with age contributes to less total body fluids; thus, any fluid loss is more significant in older adults. Unless there is a medical need for restriction, fluid intake should range between 2,000 and 3,000 mL daily. Assess for special factors that can lead to dehydration, such as diminished thirst sensations, disabilities that restrict independent fluid intake, altered mental status, and desires to minimize urinary frequency and nocturia.

FALLS

Clinical manifestations: patient found on floor or reports falling.

Goal: evaluate and treat injury sustained from fall.

Nursing Actions:

- Do not move patient until status is evaluated.
- Request x-ray if fracture is suspected.
- Control bleeding.
- Relieve patient's anxiety.
- Assess vital signs, mental status, and functional capacity. Note signs and symptoms (e.g., incontinence, tremors, weakness).
- Review events preceding fall (e.g., position change, medication administration, pain, dizziness).
- Observe and monitor patient's status for the next 24 hours.

Goal: prevent future falls.

Nursing Actions:

- Assess and correct factors contributing to falls (e.g., gait disturbances, poor vision, confusion, improper use of assistive device, medications, environmental hazards).
- Teach patient how to fall safely (e.g., protect head and face, do not move until checked).
- Teach patient how to reduce risk of falls.
- Teach patient to wear safe shoes; avoid long robes.
- Teach patient to sit on edge of bed for a few minutes before rising.
- Teach patient to use rails, particularly in tubs and stairways.
- Teach patient to walk only in well-lighted areas.
- Eliminate clutter and loose rugs from environment.

Note: An older person who falls once is at greater risk of falling again; thus, active prevention is necessary. Falls are the second leading cause of accidental death; the morbidity and mortality associated with falls increase with age.

MYOCARDIAL INFARCTION

Clinical manifestations: acute confusion/delirium, dyspnea, reduced blood pressure, pale skin, weakness; chest pain may or may not be present.

Goal: aid in prompt diagnosis.

Nursing Actions:

- Identify signs early. Signs may be missed or attributed to other problems.
- Even with the slightest suspicion that a myocardial infarction exists, proceed with a diagnostic evaluation.
- Obtain an ECG and blood specimen—sedimentation rate will be elevated.
- Monitor vital signs.

Goal: reduce cardiovascular stress.

Nursing Actions:

- Support prescribed treatment. Administer antiarrhythmics as ordered.

- Provide oxygen. Monitor blood gases. Observe for signs of carbon dioxide retention.
- Support limbs.
- Control stress.
- Relieve pain and anxiety.

Goal: prevent and promptly identify complications.

Nursing Actions:

- Perform range-of-motion exercises. Ensure frequent change of position.
- Monitor intake and output. Anuria can develop; straining due to constipation can produce strain on heart.
- Evaluate response to medications. Note adverse reactions (e.g., bleeding, bradycardia, hypokalemia).
- Observe for signs of congestive heart failure (e.g., dyspnea, cough, rhonchi, rales).
- Observe for signs of shock (e.g., drop in blood pressure, increased pulse, cool moist skin, decreased urine output, restlessness).

a loss of glycemic control. Diagnosis can be confirmed by laboratory tests.

Bacterial pneumonia is the leading cause of infection-related death in older adults. As with other infectious processes, symptoms can be atypical and include confusion, lethargy, and anorexia, in addition to the typical signs associated with pneumonia in any age group. Serum and blood testing are done to confirm the diagnosis.

Careful attention must be paid to infection prevention in older adults. Measures that assist in this effort include:

- promoting good hydration and nutritional status
- monitoring vital signs, mental status, and general health status
- maintaining intact skin and mucous membrane
- avoiding immobility
- ensuring pneumococcal and influenza vaccines have been administered (unless contraindicated)
- maintaining a clean environment
- restricting contact with persons who have infections or suspected infections
- storing foods properly
- preventing injuries
- adhering to infection-control practices

A variety of vitamins and herbs have been promoted for the prevention and management of infections. Vitamin C and vitamin A supplements are recommended, as is the elimination of refined sugar from the diet. The herbs echinacea, goldenseal, and

BOX 36-2 Factors Contributing to the High Risk for Infection in Older Adults

- Age-related changes
 - altered antigen–antibody response
 - decreased respiratory activity
 - reduced ability to expel secretions from lungs
 - weaker bladder muscles facilitating urinary retention
 - prostatic hypertrophy
 - increased alkalinity of vaginal secretions
 - increased fragility of skin and mucous membrane
- High prevalence of chronic disease
- Immobility
- Greater likelihood of malnutrition, urinary catheter use, invasive procedures, hospitalization, institutionalization

Consider This Case

Eighty-two-year-old Mrs. H is brought to the emergency department by her daughter, with whom she lives. Mrs. H had been ambulatory and able to perform all self-care activities until 6 days ago, when she became increasingly confused and weak; she has also lost weight and begun to experience urinary incontinence. She is diagnosed with bacterial pneumonia, and is admitted to the hospital.

THINK CRITICALLY

- What risks does Mrs. H face during her hospitalization?
- What can be done to minimize these risks?
- What plans would you make to assist her daughter in caregiving activities after Mrs. H's discharge?

garlic can prevent and treat infections; in small doses, they are believed to boost resistance to infection, and in larger doses, they may fight pathogens. Siberian ginseng can protect the body from the hazardous effects of stress and boost resistance to infection. Patients should be advised to consult with their health care providers before using an alternative therapy.

Chapter 30 provides a more complete discussion of infections.

Discharge Planning for Older Adults

Hospitalized older adults require early and competent discharge planning to prevent complications, reduce the risk of re-hospitalization, and minimize stress to themselves and their caregivers. Effective discharge planning is particularly significant in this era of abbreviated hospital stays that cause patients to leave the hospital in sicker, more debilitated states.



KEY CONCEPT

In this era of patients being discharged sooner and sicker, early discharge planning is essential.



FIGURE 36-2 • In discharge planning for the older adult, the nurse must also consider the needs of family members who may provide care at home.

Many factors can influence postdischarge outcomes of hospitalized older people, such as:

- patients' perceptions of health status and prognosis
- number and complexity of medical conditions
- prior history of self-care practices
- family or social supports and resources

The nurse should assess and anticipate the patient's post-discharge needs as early as possible in order to have time before discharge to adequately educate the patient and caregivers, make referrals, and suggest home preparation. Some acute care settings use an interdisciplinary geriatric team that consults with staff and develops discharge plans. A gerontological nurse specialist in the acute care setting may also perform this activity.

Discharge plans must take into account the needs of the family or significant others who provide support and caregiving assistance (Fig. 36-2). The plan must be one that works for all parties involved, not just the patient, to be fully successful. (A more complete discussion of family caregiving is provided in Chapter 38.)

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. A new gerontological nurse specialist on an inpatient surgical unit has been given the task of implementing nursing interventions to help reduce the older person's risk of complications during hospitalization. What protocols, staff development activities, and other actions could this nursing specialist consider?
2. Develop an outline of concepts you would review in teaching community-based older adults measures to prevent infection.
3. What prejudices or misinformed views could jeopardize the health and well-being of acutely ill older people?

References

- Grossman, S., Bautista, C., & Sullivan, L. (2002). Using evidence-based practice to develop a protocol for postoperative surgical intensive care unit patients. *Dimensions of Critical Care Nursing, 21*(5), 206–214.
- National Center for Health Statistics. (2006). Discharges, days of care, and average length of stay in non-federal short stay hospitals by selected characteristics. Hyattsville, MD: Health, United States 2006, Table No. 96.
- ## Recommended Readings
- deMorton, N. A., Keating, J. L., & Jeffs, K. (2007). Exercise for acutely hospitalized older medical patients. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev, Jan, 24*(1), CD005955. Review.
- Fick, D., & Foreman, M. (2000). Consequences of not recognizing delirium superimposed on dementia in hospitalized elderly individuals. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 26*(1), 30–39.
- Fleming, A. W. (2001). Trauma in the elderly. *Clinical Geriatrics, 9*(3), 52–54.
- Fulmer, T. T., Foreman, M. D., Walker, M., & Montgomery, K. S. (Eds.). (2001). *Critical care nursing of the elderly* (2nd ed.). New York: Springer Publishing.
- Huckstadt, A. A. (2002). The experience of hospitalized elderly patients. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 28*(9), 24–29.
- Inouye, S. K., Baker, D. I., Fugal, P., & Bradley, E. H. (2006). Dissemination of the hospital elder life program: Implementation, adaptation, and successes. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society Oct, 54*(10), 1492–1499.
- McCloskey, R. M. (2004). Caring for patients with dementia in an acute care environment. *Geriatric Nursing, 25*(3), 139–144.
- McMahon, M. M. (2003). Emergency: ED triage. *American Journal of Nursing, 103*(3), 61–68.
- Milisen, K., Foreman, M., Wouters, B., et al. (2002). Documentation of delirium in elderly patients with hip fracture. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 28*(11), 23–29.
- Netting, F. E., & Williams, F. G. (1999). *Enhancing primary care of elderly people*. New York: Barland Publishers.
- Rapp, C. G., Mentes, J. C., & Titler, M. G. (2001). Acute confusion/delirium protocol. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 25*(4), 21–33.
- Sullivan-Marx, E. M. (2001). Achieving restraint-free care of acutely confused older adults. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 27*(4), 56–61.

Long-Term Care

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Development of Long-Term Institutional Care

- Before the 20th Century
- During the 20th Century
- Lessons to Be Learned From History

Long-Term Institutional Care Today

- Nursing Facility Standards
- Facility Residents
- Nursing Roles and Responsibilities
- Assisted Living Facilities

Looking Forward: A New Model of Long-Term Care

The long-term care facility is becoming a complex and dynamic clinical setting for nursing practice. Increasingly, such facilities are caring for a more medically complex population than ever before; many of these facilities are establishing subacute care units that provide ventilator care, hyperalimentation, and other services that were once confined to hospital settings. Consumers are more informed of the standards of good care and have higher expectations of providers than previously. Also, for many nurses who have become frustrated with the caregiving limitations of abbreviated hospital stays and fragmented care, such facilities offer an opportunity to establish long-term relationships and practice nursing's healing arts.

Although the number of facilities providing long-term care has declined since the implementation of tougher standards, the number of residents who are served in long-term

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 Describe the development of long-term institutional care.
- 2 Discuss the problems resulting from the lack of a unique model for long-term care.
- 3 Identify major categories of standards described in long-term care facility regulations.
- 4 List various roles of nurses in long-term care facilities.
- 5 Describe the hygiene, holism, and healing needs of long-term care facility residents.

TABLE 37-1 Numbers of Nursing Facilities and Nursing Facility Residents

Year	Nursing Facilities	Residents (in thousands)
1940	1,200	25
1960	9,582	290
1970	22,004	1,076
1980	30,111	1,396
1990	14,744	1,558
2004	16,081	1,492

Source: U.S. Census Bureau. (2004). *Nursing homes: Selected characteristics, Table No. 161*. Washington, DC: Statistical Abstract of the U.S.

care facilities has grown along with the growth of the older population (Table 37-1). Among the current generation of people entering their senior years, 69% will need some type of institutional or community long-term care, and about half of all older women and one-third of all older men will spend some time in a long-term care facility during their lives (American Association of Homes and Services for the Aging, 2007).

Development of Long-Term Institutional Care

The many positive aspects of geriatric nursing in long-term care facilities are often overshadowed by an uncomplimentary image of this care setting, influenced by a history laden with scandals and the media's readiness to highlight the abuses and substandard conditions demonstrated by a small minority. This negative image is compounded by reimbursement policies that significantly limit the ability to provide high-quality care. Reviewing the manner in which nursing home care developed helps to clarify some of the reasons for the current challenges nurses face in working in this setting and to avoid similar problems in the future.

Before the 20th Century

Institutions to care for persons who were mentally ill, developmentally disabled, aged, orphaned, poor, or suffering from a contagious disease were common in most European countries by the end of the 17th century. Typically, all of these individuals were housed together, often with criminals. With limited funds and low public interest in these populations, care was custodial at best.

In the United States, any type of inpatient care, acute or long-term, was scarce until the 19th

century because it was expected that respectable people would be cared for at home by private help or family. Philadelphia's Pennsylvania Hospital and the New York Hospital were the only hospitals in existence at the beginning of the 1800s.

The number of hospitals soon began to increase, but they discouraged long-term stays by poor persons with chronic conditions. Communities responded to the growing need for long-term institutional care by developing almshouses, which became the primary source of institutional care in the 19th century. In small communities, the local almshouse placed all patients in a single building, sometimes segregating the very ill ones on separate wards so that they could receive some medical attention. The larger communities that had more people in need of institutional care were more likely to house people by category in separate wards; there were wards for "the destitute, the orphaned, the marginally criminal, and the permanently incapacitated . . ." (Rosenberg, 1987). During this period, a variety of terms were used to describe institutions that provided long-term care, including almshouse, hospital, asylum, home for the incurable, and chronic disease hospital. Typically, these facilities were located outside the main community to minimize the contact average citizens would have with these persons who were "different."

In this era, before the time of government reimbursement for long-term care, funding for these institutions came from limited public funds and charities. With limited resources, care was basic at best. Supplies were grossly inadequate, nurses tore up threadbare sheets to serve as bandages, some residents slept on the floor because of overcrowded conditions, and food was so inadequate that many residents developed recurrent cases of scurvy. Furthermore, theft, drunkenness, and sexual relationships between residents and their caregivers were common occurrences (Lawrence, 1905). Residents who were able were expected to work in the institution. Many recovered residents with no better option in the community remained in the institution and received room, board, and a very small salary in exchange for caring for residents, cooking, and cleaning. Physicians (who at that time usually were of society's elite) found these institutions unappealing and not stimulating, attitudes that most likely had a ripple effect on other caregiving professionals.

The promotion of high quality of care, residents' rights, and rehabilitation were foreign concepts to these early long-term care facilities. The primary concern of the managers of these early institutions was running an efficient operation; this was done through the establishment of rules and routines that offered residents minimal autonomy and individuality

of care. During this era, sociologist Erving Goffman offered a profile of these facilities, which he labeled “total institutions,” when he characterized them as follows (Goffman, 1961):

- all activities conducted in the same manner, in the same place
- all individuals treated in the same manner and required to comply with the same activities and schedules
- strict, inflexible schedule of activities
- numerous and heavily enforced rules
- activities that furthered the aims of the institution more than serving the needs of its residents

This approach to care casts residents as inmates rather than as unique individuals in need of assistance. This approach, in combination with the isolation of residents from mainstream society, led to an erosion of their identities, development of apathy, inactivity, and maladaptive and stereotypical behaviors—in other words, institutionalized behaviors.



KEY CONCEPT

The many rules and routines that were implemented to keep the poorly funded early institutions operating efficiently resulted in residents developing abnormal behaviors.

During the 20th Century

By the early 1900s, public and charitable institutions began to replace almshouses. Residents lived in institutions dedicated to their specific population, for example, orphanages, homes for the aged, mental hospitals, prisons, and chronic disease hospitals. However, funding was scarce, so care improved little. The public viewed long-term care institutions as a dreaded last resort.

It is significant to note that there was no careful assessment of the special needs of persons requiring long-term institutional care. There was no strategic planning and no thought given to the differences between facilities housing frail, dependent individuals for an extended period and other types of institutions. There was neither a model of long-term care nor a set of standards describing the unique care expectations for this special population. Instead, facilities providing long-term care modeled themselves after hospitals, prisons, and other institutions of the period. Patterning themselves after institutions that served very different populations for very different purposes was like trying to fit a square peg into a round hole; the absence of a clear model of long-term institutional care laid a weak foundation that affected the growth of this clinical setting.



KEY CONCEPT

Long-term care facilities were fashioned after prisons, hospitals, and other institutions rather than on a model based on the unique needs of the population served.

In 1935, the enactment of Social Security provided a means for many older people to seek alternatives to the public and charitable institutions that carried a highly negative public image. Older adults now had private funds to purchase services. In response, small facilities began to develop, offering room, board, and some personal care. Some of these facilities were operated by nurses or persons who called themselves nurses; thus the term “nursing home” became popularized. As the public’s demand for nursing homes grew, entrepreneurs and health and social service agencies became interested in constructing facilities. In 1946, the government contributed to nursing home growth by granting funds to help construct these facilities through the Hill-Burton Hospital Survey and Construction Act. As the name implies, the act’s original intent was to assist in the construction of hospitals; therefore, the physical plant standards attached to the funding reflected characteristics desirable in an acute hospital setting. Indeed, despite the significant difference between hospitals and nursing homes, there were no separate standards for nursing homes. Consequently, nursing homes constructed during this time were replicas of hospitals and, unfortunately, hospitals provided the model for nursing home design for many years thereafter. Nursing homes modeled hospitals not only in their architectural features, but also in their style of operation. Starved white linens and uniforms, rigid schedules, passive residents, strict visitation policies, and restriction of pets were among the similarities.

The infusion of government funds through the Hill-Burton Act stimulated nursing home growth, but not nearly as much as the availability of reimbursement through Medicaid and Medicare. In the 1960s, the impact of the growing older population was being realized. This population began to exercise its political power by requesting increased and improved health care services. Hospitals were frustrated with the growing numbers of older patients filling their beds for extended periods of time who needed nursing home care but lacked the ability to pay privately for this service. Nursing homes were eager for government reimbursement. These pressures resulted in provisions for nursing home reimbursement through Medicare and Medicaid.

As a result of the enactment of Medicare and Medicaid, between 1960 and 1970 the number of

nursing homes more than doubled and the number of residents served in this setting more than tripled (see Table 37-1). Unfortunately, instead of being owned and operated by clinicians like nurses who understood the unique needs of a geriatric population, most nursing home owners and operators were business-oriented individuals with minimal experience and understanding of nursing care. Federal standards (regulations) were minimal, and monitoring and enforcement systems were lax. This situation led to deplorable conditions in some nursing homes. The media's investigation and exposure of these conditions led to a public outcry for stricter government regulation and a stigma that continues to cloud long-term care facilities.



POINT TO PONDER

What perceptions of nursing homes have you heard family, friends, and other health care professionals express? How has this affected your thoughts about employment in this setting? ●

Because of the seriousness of nursing home conditions and resulting public outrage, the Department of Health and Human Services commissioned the Institute of Medicine (IOM) to study long-term care facilities and recommend changes. The IOM study reported widespread problems with the quality of care and recommended strengthening nursing home regulations (Institute of Medicine, 1986). In response, highly stringent nursing home regulations were developed under legislation known as the Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1987 (OBRA '87). OBRA required the following:

- use of a standardized assessment tool called the Minimum Data Set (MDS)
- timely development of a written care plan
- reduction in the use of restraints and psychotropic drugs
- increase in staffing
- protection of residents' rights
- training for nursing assistants

Furthermore, enforcement provisions were tougher; deficient nursing homes could receive sanctions that included termination of Medicare and Medicaid reimbursement. Interestingly, as regulations became more stringent, the number of nursing homes declined.



KEY CONCEPT

OBRA '87 brought about the most profound changes in nursing home care ever witnessed.

Lessons to Be Learned From History

As this history demonstrates, a vision and a clear model are important foundations for nursing care. The lack of a vision and a clear model for long-term care contributed to disorganization and confusion regarding the purpose, function, and standards for nursing homes. Early facilities replicated the style of hospitals and other institutions rather than design systems and operations tailored to their unique populations and services.

When nursing fails to exercise leadership, non-nurses will determine nursing practice. The essence of long-term care is nursing care; therefore, who better than nurses to define nursing facility care? Unfortunately, nurses took a reactive, passive role and allowed persons with minimal understanding of caregiving to dictate nursing practice.

When nurses does not attempt to correct problems in the health care system, others will, and public perception will be that nurses are part of the problem. When conditions in long-term care facilities reached scandalous proportions, it was not the nursing community that was outraged and demanded change, but the public. Nurses who worked in nursing homes witnessed and complained of substandard conditions but took no organized public action to effect change. Nurses who did not work in nursing homes often were critical of the conditions that caused them to stay away from this practice setting, yet they did nothing to improve the situation. When they are not part of the solution, nurses create the perception that they are part of the problem.

Entrepreneurial thinking can benefit nursing and patients. In the era of rapid nursing home growth, many entrepreneurs saw the opportunity to reap considerable financial gains by owning and operating long-term care facilities; many did become millionaires as a result. These businesspeople were not necessarily brighter, richer, or harder working than nurses, but they were more apt to see opportunities and take risks. By not being entrepreneurs and owning and operating nursing homes themselves, nurses not only missed the opportunity to benefit financially but also—and more importantly—were not in positions of power from which they could influence the quality of care, staffing levels, salaries, and other critical aspects of nursing home care.

These lessons should have meaning for nurses and students today, as they observe financial professionals making decisions that determine clinical practice, work in settings in which staffing and services are below acceptable standards, and see new services and agencies develop in response to income potential rather than need.


POINT TO PONDER

What would you do if you worked in a setting in which care was substandard? ●

Long-Term Institutional Care Today

Conditions in nursing homes, now commonly referred to as long-term care facilities, have improved, largely due to federal regulations and increased professional interest in this care setting. Licensed staff must be on duty around the clock, nursing assistants must complete a certification process, the use of chemical and physical restraints has declined, and documentation has improved. However, problems do remain. Issues such as insufficient and inconsistent staffing and high staff turnover and conditions such as pressure ulcers, dehydration, and malnutrition continue to plague this care setting.

Nursing Facility Standards

Most long-term care facilities are concerned with complying with regulations. Regulations describe minimal standards that a long-term care facility must meet in order to comply with the law and qualify for reimbursement (Box 37-1). It must be emphasized that these standards are the minimum ones that must be fulfilled for facilities to comply with the law and be licensed and certified.

States can add to the basic federal regulations and create higher standards that facilities are obliged to meet. Also, the Joint Commission publishes higher standards that facilities can voluntarily choose to follow (standards are published in accreditation manuals that are available for purchase). It is crucial for nurses working in this setting to be familiar with the regulations pertaining to nursing facilities in their specific states.

Facility Residents

People who seek long-term institutional care are those who are functionally dependent on a long-

term basis as a result of physical or mental impairment. It is the level of function, therefore, not the medical diagnosis, that influences the need for long-term care. Typically, residents of nursing facilities have dependencies in their ability to fulfill activities of daily living; many are incontinent and many are cognitively impaired. A majority of long-term care facilities' residents are older adults, with the average age being 85 years (National Center for Health Statistics, 2007). Fifty-five percent of nursing facility residents are over age 65, 42% are adults under age 65, and 3% are children. At any given time, only 5% of the older adult population resides in a long-term care facility, although as mentioned, a higher percentage will need nursing facility care at some point in their lives (National Center for Health Statistics, 2007).

For most of these residents, admission to a nursing facility was not the first or most desirable choice. In many situations, family members tried to assist in caregiving but found that caregiving needs exceeded the family's capacities. By the time the decision to seek nursing facility care is made, many families are physically, emotionally, and financially drained, adding to whatever guilt, depression, and frustration they feel about the situation. Often, a crisis triggers the need for placement in a long-term care facility, placing families in the position of having to seek and decide on a facility under less than ideal circumstances. An important function of the gerontological nurse is to help residents and their families as they face the challenges of selecting and adjusting to a nursing facility (Boxes 37-2 and 37-3).

Nursing Roles and Responsibilities

As mentioned earlier, regulatory changes since OBRA '87 placed new demands on nursing facilities for competent resident assessment, care planning, quality assurance, and protection of residents' rights. The increased demands and complexities of long-term care facilities necessitate that highly competent nurses be employed in this setting.

Unlicensed nursing personnel currently deliver most care in the nursing facility setting. This

BOX 37-1 Regulations Related to Nursing Facilities

- Resident rights
- Admission, transfer, and discharge rights
- Resident behavior and facility practices
- Quality of life
- Nursing services
- Dietary services
- Physician services
- Specialized rehabilitation services
- Dental services
- Pharmacy services
- Infection control
- Physical environment
- Administration

BOX 37-2 Factors to Consider When Selecting a Nursing Facility

COST

- daily rate
- type of health insurance accepted
- out-of-pocket costs necessary to supplement health insurance
- services covered and excluded in daily rate
- charge for services not covered in daily rate
- policy regarding care of resident when reimbursement limits are reached

PHILOSOPHY OF CARE

- custodial versus restorative/rehabilitative
- promotion of independence and individuality
- encouragement of residents and families to be active participants in care

ADMINISTRATION

- organizational structure
- ownership
- accessibility and availability of administrator, director of nursing, medical director, department heads
- existence of regularly scheduled meetings between administration and residents and families

SPECIAL SERVICES

- availability of podiatry, speech therapy, occupational therapy, physical therapy, transportation, beauty/barber shop
- cost for special services
- conditions and arrangements for transfer to hospital

STAFF

- number of caregivers available on typical shift
- ratio of RNs, LPNs, nursing assistants to residents
- number of supervisory staff on duty on typical shift
- frequency and type of inservice education offered to staff
- appearance, image portrayed by staff
- quality of staff–resident interactions
- courtesy, helpfulness of staff

RESIDENTS

- cleanliness, grooming, general appearance
- type of clothing worn (pajamas, street clothes, clean, wrinkled)
- activity level
- ease of interaction with staff and other residents

PHYSICAL FACILITY

- cleanliness, attractiveness, fresh-smelling
- ease of use for disabled and frail
- lighting
- noise control
- safe areas for walking
- general fire and safety precautions
- proximity of bathrooms, dining rooms, activity rooms, nursing stations, and exits to residents' rooms
- visibility of residents to staff
- outdoor areas for residents' use

MEALS

- meal schedule
- type of food served
- attractiveness, temperature of food served
- availability of staff to assist residents at mealtime
- location where residents dine (e.g., bedroom, communal dining hall)
- availability of dietitian or nutritionist for consultation
- range of special diets
- ability to have meal substitutions, ethnic preferences

ACTIVITIES

- posted activity schedule
- range and frequency of activities
- ability of families and visitors to participate in activities with residents
- existence of resident council
- mechanisms for residents to have input into planning and evaluation of activities
- opportunity of residents to engage in activities off facility grounds
- range of bedside activities

CARE

- basic daily care provided
- frequency of contact with licensed staff
- management of special problems; incontinence, confusion, wandering, immobility
- efforts to increase mobility and function
- dignity, privacy, individuality afforded residents
- frequency at which complications develop (e.g., pressure ulcers, dehydration, infections)
- management of unusual incidents, emergencies
- evaluations by regulatory agencies

(continued)

BOX 37-2 Factors to Consider When Selecting a Nursing Facility (Continued)

FAMILY INVOLVEMENT

- preadmission preparation offered to families
- orientation and ongoing support to families
- frequency of family conferences
- mechanisms for communicating with families, involving families in care
- visitation policies

SPIRITUAL NEEDS

- religious affiliation of facility, if any
- availability of chapel, synagogue, meditation room
- visitations from clergy
- measures to assist residents in meeting spiritual needs

BOX 37-3 Measures to Help Families With Nursing Facility Admission of a Relative

PRIOR TO ADMISSION

- Encourage the family to visit the facility and allocate a block of uninterrupted time to spend with them. Review basic information about the facility and its routines without overloading. Introduce the family to the director of nursing, medical director, administrator and other key personnel.
- Ask for information about the resident that will enable staff to understand the resident's unique history, needs, and preferences. Demonstrate an interest in the resident as an individual.
- Accompany the family to a private area and offer them an opportunity to express their concerns and feelings. Communicate to them that it is normal for families to feel guilty, angry, and depressed at having a loved one enter a long-term care facility; assure them that these feelings will improve in time. Advise them that it is not unusual for the resident initially to be angry at them, beg to go home, or reject them; assure them that as the resident adjusts to the facility, these reactions usually diminish.
- Describe the rights and responsibilities of families within the facility.
- Provide written description of facts communicated verbally.

AT ADMISSION

- Attempt to have a staff member who has met the family prior to admission meet the family and accompany them through the admission process.
- Inform family members of the location of cafeteria, vending machines, and rest rooms. If possible, order a snack or lunch tray for family members so that they may share the resident's first meal time in the facility.

- Arrange for staff who will be caring for the resident to introduce themselves to the family. It is beneficial for staff to write their names on a paper that the family can consult for future reference.
- Introduce the family to another resident's family member, and encourage them to develop a "buddy system." Often families can provide significant support to each other and make visitations more pleasurable.
- Advise the family of the anticipated sequence of events for the resident (e.g., the resident will be examined by the physician this afternoon, attend a group activity this evening, visit physical therapy tomorrow morning). Inform the family of the dates and times for care planning conferences and other events in which they are invited to participate.
- Encourage the family to go home at a reasonable time. Reinforce to them that the admission process is tiring to both them and the resident and that both could benefit from some rest. Express understanding that they and the resident may have many uncomfortable feelings at this time, but that these feelings normally improve with time.

DURING VISITATIONS

- Encourage the family to be actively involved in care planning and care activities. Instruct family members on care activities that they can perform, such as feeding, back rubs, range-of-motion exercises, and grooming.
- Suggest activities that the family can share with the resident during visits (e.g., card games, bringing in a pet, compiling a photo album, reading, puzzles, decorating a bulletin board). If possible, take the resident to an activity room or outdoors for the visit, and encourage the family to take the resident off the premises for short periods.

BOX 37-3 Measures to Help Families With Nursing Facility Admission of a Relative (Continued)

- Encourage touch between the family and the resident.
- Offer and respect privacy during visits.
- Call the family when there is a change in status or an incident involving the resident.
- Listen to and investigate complaints. Encourage families to discuss problems and concerns with unit-level staff.
- Invite the family's participation in care planning and delivery to the fullest extent possible.

IN GENERAL

- Be courteous and patient. Remember that having a relative in a health care facility is difficult and can cause various reactions that can be displaced to staff.

(Eliopoulos, C. [1990]. Understanding and supporting families. *Long-Term Care Educator*, 1[5], 6.)

imposes greater demands on licensed staff; not only must nurses oversee the status of residents, but they also must monitor the competency and performance of unlicensed caregivers (Fig. 37-1). Staff education, role modeling, good supervision, coaching, performance evaluation, and correction of performance problems are responsibilities of most long-term care nurses in addition to their major clinical and administrative duties.

Gerontological nurses have increasing opportunities for role variety in the nursing facility. They can fill administrative and management roles as director of nursing, supervisor, unit nurse coordinator, or charge nurse. They can fill specialized roles, such as staff development director, quality assurance coordinator, infection control coordinator, geropsychiatric nurse specialist, or rehabilitative nurse. Of course, nurses can also be direct care providers to residents.

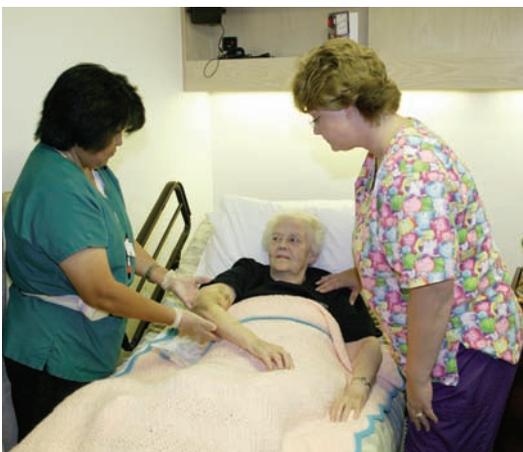


FIGURE 37-1 • Nurses work with other members of the health care team to ensure quality of care for residents in long-term care facilities.

Nurses influence the quality of care provided to residents in a variety of ways. Admission assessments and the completion of the MDS assessment tool are coordinated by a registered nurse, and most of the entries on the MDS rely on nursing assessment. Problems identified through the MDS assessment tool direct care planning activity. The written care plan guides nursing actions; staffs are held accountable by regulatory agencies for ensuring that care plans are accurate and followed. Nurses ensure that nursing assistants provide care appropriately and monitor residents to evaluate the effectiveness of care and to recognize changes in status. Box 37-4 lists some of the major responsibilities of nurses in this setting.

KEY CONCEPT

The Minimum Data Set (MDS) is a standardized assessment tool that must be completed on admission, whenever there is a change in the resident's status, and annually.

Unlike many other clinical settings, the average long-term care facility does not have physicians and other professionals on site at all times. Although this places a greater burden on nurses for assessment and management of problems, it does offer the opportunity for nurses to function independently and use a wide range of knowledge and skills. Independent nursing practice and the ability to develop long-term relationships with residents and their families are among the exciting features of nursing in this setting.

Assisted Living Facilities

In recent years there has been a growth in assisted living facilities as an option for individuals who need some assistance with activities of daily living, but

BOX 37-4 Major Responsibilities of Gerontological Nurses in Long-Term Care Facilities

- Assist residents and their families in the selection of and adjustment to the facility.
- Assess and develop an individualized care plan based on assessment data.
- Monitor residents' health status.
- Recommend and use rehabilitative and restorative care techniques when possible.
- Evaluate the effectiveness and appropriateness of care.
- Identify changes in residents' conditions and take appropriate action.
- Communicate and coordinate care with the interdisciplinary team.
- Protect and advocate for residents' rights.
- Promote a high quality of life for residents.
- Ensure and promote the competency of nursing staff.

whose needs are not complex enough to warrant 24/7 nursing attention. Assisted living facilities do not have the stringent regulations that nursing facilities are required to meet and have fewer licensed nurses available. While the number of nursing facility beds has been declining, the number of assisted living beds has increased, supporting a trend toward this type of care. At the present time, most assisted living care is paid for privately. Gerontological nurses are challenged to ensure that appropriate standards of care are developed and practiced in this setting to avoid the scandalous conditions that plagued the early development of nursing homes, and to advocate for payment options for assisted living for those individuals who lack private funds to afford this care.

Looking Forward: A New Model of Long-Term Care

As this chapter's discussion about the development of long-term care reflected, facility-based long-term care emerged without a clearly defined model. Rather than a tapestry of a wide range of therapeutic interventions that enable persons relying on others for long-term assistance to achieve optimum physical, psychosocial, and spiritual health and well-being, long-term care facilities are more like a patchwork quilt of poorly fitted fragments of traditional medical care loosely held together by weak threads of regulations and institutional rules.

Because most resident needs and care activities in long-term care facilities fall within the realm of nursing, nurses are the logical choice of professionals to define the model of long-term care. Recognizing the limitations of the medical model in long-term care facilities, the themes of the new model could be holism and healing. Figure 37-2 offers a hierarchy of residents' needs that can help nurses and nurses-to-be envision this new model and chal-

lenge them to consider a design for long-term care services that exceeds the minimum requirements. The levels of needs shown include hygiene, holism, and healing.

Hygiene encompasses the most basic needs including physiologic needs, assurance of safety of the human and physical environment, treatment of medical conditions, and restoration and/or stabilization of physical and mental health. Basic survival depends on the fulfillment of these needs; however, having these needs met does not ensure a satisfying, fulfilling life.

At the *holism* level, psychological, social, and spiritual aspects are considered. To attain harmony and balance among mind, body, and spirit, individuals need to exercise individual rights, assume responsibility for self-care to the fullest extent possible, prevent avoidable declines and dysfunction, and experience a dynamic relationship with the community inside and outside the facility.

The fulfillment of hygiene and holism needs provides the foundation for *healing* to occur. Healing does not imply cure but, rather, the establishment of a meaningful and purposeful life, using illness as an opportunity for self-discovery, deepening spiritual awareness and growth, and transcending the physical being.

Woven within this model of holism and healing are the following assumptions (Eliopoulos, 2007):

- Psychological, social, and spiritual well-being are of equal and sometimes greater importance than physical well-being.
- Medical supervision and treatment are only one component of the overall needs of residents.
- Many of the needs resulting from chronic conditions can be effectively and safely met with the use of alternative and complementary therapies.

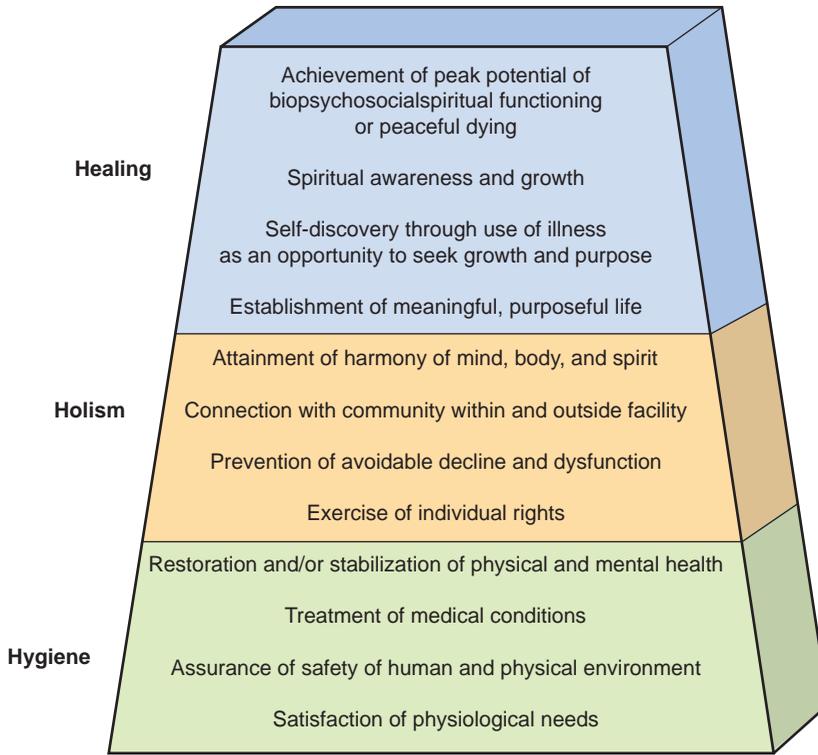


FIGURE 37-2 • Hierarchy of nursing facility residents' needs. (From Eliopoulos, C. [2007]. *Transforming nursing homes into healing centers: A holistic model for long-term care*. Glen Arm, MD: Health Education Network.)

- Caregivers' presence and interactions affect health, healing, and the quality of nursing facility life.
- The physical environment can be used as a therapeutic tool.
- The nursing facility is an integral and active member of the community at large.

The *culture change* movement has been a positive step in the direction of supporting this new model of long-term care. Key elements of culture change typically include creating a physical environment that is more home-like than institutional, providing consistent assignments of staff, individualizing care to meet the specific needs and desires of residents, nurturing positive relationships, and offering educational opportunities for staff. Models developed in the culture change movement that have gained popularity include the Pioneer Network (<http://www.PioneerNetwork.org>); Wellspring (<http://www.Wellspringis.org>); and Eden Alternative (<http://www.edenalt.com/edentols.htm>).

Gerontological nurses must reclaim nursing's healing role and cast a new vision for long-term care that can enable residents of nursing facilities to experience the highest possible quality of life for the remaining time in their lives.

POINT TO PONDER

If you could design a long-term care facility that promoted holism and healing, what would it look like?

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. Consider the expectations baby boomers will have when they use long-term care facilities in the future and outline the environmental features, services, and operations that will accommodate them.
2. Imagine that you are a director of nursing in a long-term care facility and describe:
 - activities that could be planned to encourage the local community to become involved in facility activities
 - services the facility could offer persons living in the neighboring community
 - programs and services that could be provided for families of residents
3. Describe actions nurses can take to improve long-term care facilities.

Resources

American Association of Homes and Services for the Aging

<http://www.aasha.org>

American Association for Long-Term Care Nursing

<http://www.LTCNursing.org>

American Health Care Association

<http://www.ahca.org>

American Nurses Association, Inc., Council on Nursing Home Nurses

<http://www.nursingworld.org>

National Assisted Living Nurses Association (NALNA)

<http://www.NALNA.org>

National Association of Directors of Nursing Administration in Long-Term Care (NADONA)

<http://www.NADONA.org>

National Citizens Coalition for Nursing Home Reform

<http://www.nccnhr.org>

National Gerontological Nursing Association

<http://www.ngna.org>

References

American Association of Homes and Services for the Aging. (2007). *Aging services: The facts*. Accessed 6/1/07, from http://www.aahsa.org/aging_services.

Eliopoulos, C. (2007). *Transforming nursing homes into healing centers: A holistic model for long-term care*. Revised. Glen Arm, MD: Health Education Network.

Goffman, E. (1961). *Asylums*. Garden City, NY: Anchor Books.

Institute of Medicine, Committee on Implications of For-Profit Enterprise in Health Care. (1986). Profits and health care: An introduction to the issues. In B.H. Gray (Ed.), *For-profit enterprise in health care* (pp. 3–18). Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

Lawrence, C. (1905). *History of the Philadelphia almshouses and hospitals*. Privately printed.

National Center for Health Statistics. (2007). *Nursing home residents age 65 and older by age, sex, and race*. Retrieved 4/20/07, from <http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/data/hus/hus06.pdf#102>.

Rosenberg, C. E. (1987). *The care of strangers: The rise of America's hospital system*. New York: Basic Books.

Recommended Readings

Barba, B. E. (2002). Nursing home environments. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 28(3), 5–6.

Barba, B. E., Tesh, A. S., & Courts, N. F. (2002). Promoting thriving in nursing homes: The Eden Alternative. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 28(3), 7–13.

Bergman-Evans, B. (2007). Building a safety network for skilled nursing home residents. *Geriatric Nursing*, 28(2), 100.

Buettner, L. L. Therapeutic recreation in the nursing home: Reinventing a good thing. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 27(5), 8–13.

Cherry, B., Ashcraft, A., & Owen, D. (2007). Perceptions of job satisfaction and the regulatory environment among nurse aides and charge nurses in long-term care. *Geriatric Nursing*, 28(3), 183–192.

Coleman, M., Looney, S., O'Brien, J., et al. (2002). The Eden Alternative: Findings after one year of implementation. *Journal of Gerontology Medical Sciences*, 57A(7), M422–M427.

Curry, L. C., Walker, C., Hogstel, M. O., & Walker, M. B. (2007). A study of family councils in nursing homes. *Geriatric Nursing*, 28(4), 245–253.

Davidson, K. M. (2003). Evidence-based protocol: Family bereavement support before and after the death of a nursing home resident. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 29(1), 10–18.

Dellefield, M. E. (2006). Using the resource utilization groups (RUG-III) system as a staffing tool in nursing homes. *Geriatric Nursing*, 27(1), 160–165.

Donovan, C., & Dupuis, M. (2000). Specialized care unit: Family and staff's perceptions of significant elements. *Geriatric Nursing*, 21(1), 30–33.

Eliopoulos, C. (1999). *Integrating alternative and conventional therapies: Holistic care for chronic conditions*. St. Louis: Mosby.

Eliopoulos, C., (2007). *Nursing administration of long-term care facilities* (7th ed.). Glen Arm, MD: Health Education Network.

Eliopoulos, C., & Seiler, K. (2003). *Staff development handbook for long-term care facilities* (6th ed.). Glen Arm, MD: Health Education Network.

Evans, L., & Scalzi, C. (2004). Culture change in nursing homes. *Penn Nursing*, (7)2, 17–19.

Forbes, S. (2001). This is heaven's waiting room? End of life in one nursing home. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 27(11), 37–45.

Gladstone, J., & Wexler, E. (2000). A family perspective of family/staff interaction in long-term care facilities. *Geriatric Nursing*, 21(1), 16–19.

Guse, L., Inglis, J., Chicoine, J., Leche, G., Stadnyk, L., & Whitbread, L. (2000). Life albums in long-term care: Residents, family, and staff perceptions. *Geriatric Nursing*, 21(1), 34–37.

Hagen, B. (2001). Nursing home placement: Factors affecting caregivers' decisions to place family members with dementia. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 27(2), 44–53.

Henderson, M. L., Hanson, L. C., & Kimberly, S. R. (2003). *Improving nursing home care of the dying. A training manual for nursing home staff*. New York: Springer Publishing Company.

Horgas, A. L., & Dunn, K. (2001). Pain in nursing home residents: Comparison of residents' self-report and nursing assistants' perceptions. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 27(3), 44–53.

Horttana, B. M., Ahlstrom, G., & Fahlstrom, G. (2007). Patterns of and reasons for relocation in dementia care. *Geriatric Nursing*, 28(3), 193–200.

Iwasiw, C., Goldenberg, D., Bol, N., & MacMaster, E. (2003). Resident and family perspectives: The first year in a long-term care facility. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 29(1), 45–54.

Lindgren, C. L., & Murphy, A. M. (2002). Nurses' and family members' perceptions of nursing home residents' needs. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 28(8), 45–53.

- Logue, R. M. (2003). Maintaining family connectedness in long-term care: An advanced practice approach to family-centered nursing homes. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 29*(6), 24–31.
- McGilton, K. S. (2002). Enhancing relationships between care providers and residents in long-term care: Designing a model of care. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 28*(12), 13–21.
- Mitty, E., & Flores, S. (2007). Assisted living nursing practice: Medication management: Part 1 assessing the resident for self-medication ability. *Geriatric Nursing, 28*(2), 83–89.
- Mullins, L. C., & Hartley, T. M. (2002). Residents' autonomy: Nursing home personnel's perceptions. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 28*(2), 35–44.
- National Committee to Preserve Social Security and Medicare. (April 1997). *Nurse staffing in nursing homes: Viewpoint*. Legislative Agenda for the 105th Congress.
- Patillo, M. (2002). Assessing the gifts, talents, and skills of nursing home residents. *Geriatric Nursing, 23*(1), 48–50.
- Pearson, A., Fitzgerald, M., & Nay, R. (2003). Mealtimes in nursing homes: The role of nursing staff. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 29*(6), 40–47.
- Shearer, N. B. C. (2002). Loss of power within the nursing home. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 28*(11), 54–56.
- Thomas, W. H. (1996). *Life worth living: How someone you love can still enjoy life in a nursing home. The Eden Alternative in action*. Acton, MA: VanderWyk & Burham.
- Velasquez, D. (2007). The development and testing of a questionnaire to measure complexity of nursing work performed in nursing homes: NCCQ-NH. *Geriatric Nursing, 28*(2), 90–98.
- Yaffe, K., Fox, P., Newcomer, R., Sands, L., Lindquist, K., et al. (2002). Patient and caregiver characteristics and nursing home placement in patients with dementia. *Journal of the American Medical Association, 287*(16), 2090–2097.
- Yeaworth, R. C. (2002). Long-term care and insurance. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 28*(11), 45–51.

CHAPTER 38

Family Caregiving

CHAPTER OUTLINE

The Older Adult's Family

- Identification of Family Members
- Family Member Roles
- Family Dynamics and Relationships

Scope of Family Caregiving

Protecting the Health of the Older Adult and Caregiver

Family Dysfunction and Abuse

Rewards of Family Caregiving

Aging is a family affair. Whether it is the retiree's concern about living and supporting his family on a pension, a middle-aged daughter's decision to accept her mother into her household, or a sister's attempt to care for her dying brother at home, the impact of one individual's aging process has a ripple effect on the entire family unit. This impact is also felt when older members of the family require assistance with daily needs and care. Families are absorbing more complex responsibilities for caregiving for longer periods of time than ever before. With growing numbers of people reaching the old-old years and the trend toward maintaining very ill older individuals in the community, the burdens faced by family caregivers will likely continue to grow. Nurses need to understand the various family structures, roles, and relationships in order to work most effectively with older adults and their caregivers.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 List the various structures and functions of families.
- 2 Discuss various roles that family members can assume.
- 3 Describe classic family relationships.
- 4 Identify risks to caregivers and ways to reduce them.
- 5 Identify signs of elder abuse.
- 6 Discuss interventions to reduce family dysfunction.

**KEY CONCEPT**

Greater numbers of families are providing more complex care for their older members for longer periods of time than ever before.

The Older Adult's Family

Almost every individual is part of a family unit, although that family may not reflect the stereotypical nuclear family. In fact, one may find among older adults a diversity of family structures, including:

- couples (married, unmarried, heterosexual, homosexual)
- couples with children (heterosexual, homosexual, married, unmarried)
- parent and child or children
- siblings
- groups of unrelated individuals
- multigenerations

When interviewing older adults, it is important to explore all persons who are “significant others” to an individual and fulfill a family role, regardless of whether they are unrelated or reside in different households. For example, a widow can have a friend with whom she shares a close emotional tie or a cousin in a neighboring community who provides assistance and support.

**KEY CONCEPT**

Caregivers can be significant others, not just family members.

Identification of Family Members

One can identify family members by looking for those individuals who fulfill family functions. In aging families, family functions are somewhat modified to address the special needs of older persons and focus on the following:

- ensuring fulfillment of physical needs
- providing emotional support and comfort
- maintaining connections with family and community
- instilling a sense of meaning to life
- managing crises

Asking older adults the following questions can also facilitate the identification of significant persons who perform family functions for them:

- Who checks on them regularly?
- Who shops with or for them?
- Who escorts them to the clinic or physician?
- Who assists with or manages their problems?

- Who takes care of them when they are ill?
- Who helps them make decisions?
- Who do they seek for emotional support?

All persons fulfilling significant family functions should be included in the development and evaluation of the care plans of older adults.

Family Member Roles

Frequently, family members assume certain roles as a result of their socialization process and family needs and expectations. Possible roles include the following:

- *Decision-maker*: the person who is granted or assumes responsibility for making important decisions or is called on in times of crisis; may not be geographically close or involved in daily activities but is consulted for problem solving
- *Caregiver*: the person who provides direct services, looks after, or assists with personal care and home management of another family member
- *Deviant*: the “problem child” who has strayed from family norms; may be the family scapegoat or may provide a sense of purpose for family members who “rescue” or compensate for this individual
- *Dependent*: an individual who depends on the other members of the family for economic or caregiving assistance
- *Victim*: a person who forfeits his or her legitimate rights and may be physically, emotionally, socially, or economically abused by the family.

**POINT TO PONDER**

What are the dynamics within your own extended family? What different roles and functions do various members fulfill? ●

The impact of these roles should be explored when assessing the family unit. Nurses must be sensitive to the fact that certain “negative” roles may not have the adverse effects on the family unit that would be anticipated; likewise, “positive” roles may not be welcomed by the family. For example, the middle-aged son who drifts from town to town, regularly contacting his older parents for funds to pay off his latest indulgences, may not function as a responsible, mature adult, but he may bring excitement and a sense of being needed to his parents’ lives, thereby bringing them some rewards. On the other hand, his financially secure, responsible brother who takes care of his parents’ affairs may be less popular within the family because of his dullness and practicality.

KEY CONCEPT

Even seemingly negative roles can be fostered by and meet certain needs of the family.

Family Dynamics and Relationships

The dynamics among family members can have positive or negative effects on older individuals. In assessing the family unit it is useful to explore the following issues:

- *How family members feel about each other.* Do they love but not like, admire, respect, or enjoy each other? How do they express affection?
- *The manner of communication.* Do they share daily events or have contact only on holidays? Is their style of interaction parent-child or adult-adult?
- *Attitudes, values, and beliefs.* Do they feel that the young should take care of the old or that children owe their parents nothing? What are their expectations of family members, friends, and society? Does their faith imply certain responsibilities?
- *Links with organizations and the community.* How involved are they with persons outside the family unit? Is the family similar to others in the community?

As discussed in Chapter 1, the majority of older people are not abandoned by their children; most do enjoy regular contact with them. Nevertheless, lifestyles, housing, and societal expectations in Western culture are not conducive to parents and their adult children living together. Most older people want to live in their own residences, if possible, and the majority do. The arrangement of generations living under separate roofs but within a 30-minute trip of each other is often the most satisfactory. It is understood that parents and children will provide assistance and share a household if an unusual circumstance arises.

KEY CONCEPT

Most older people and their families prefer to live near but not with each other.

More than 9 of 10 older people are grandparents. Grandparenting can be a positive experience for older adults because they obtain enjoyment, affection, and a sense of purpose from caring for their grandchildren without the 24-hour stress of child-rearing responsibilities. Grandchildren can provide new interests and meaning to life. In turn, grandchildren usually receive the benefit of unconditional love and attention (Fig. 38-1). As grandchildren grow into adulthood, their involvement with grandparents often lessens, but a strong bond continues to exist.



FIGURE 38-1 • Caring family relationships are beneficial for both grandparents and grandchildren.

Next to that between parent and child, the relationship between siblings is stronger than any other relationship. The typical pattern is for siblings to drift apart during young and middle adulthood but then reestablish strong ties in later life. Siblings can provide socialization, emotional support, and financial and household assistance. Usually, earlier conflicts and differences become insignificant as siblings develop mutually supportive relationships in later life.

Older couples have a low rate of divorce, although it is increasing. Rocky marriages often stabilize in later life as the couple faces a new interdependency. Older spouses look to each other for security, support, and safety in an imperfect world. After years of experiencing and reinforcing one another's behaviors, the couple can understand, anticipate, and complement one another's actions. Spouses look after the care and welfare of their mates and derive security in having someone available to care about them.

Relationships in old age are affected by the forms of relationships experienced throughout life. Parents who ignored or abused their children early in life may produce children who want nothing to do with them in adulthood. Siblings who have unresolved anger over favoritism displayed by their parents may refuse to assist when the favored child

BOX 38-1 Types of Assistance Families Provide to Their Older Members

- Maintaining and cleaning the home
- Managing finances
- Shopping
- Transporting
- Providing opportunities for socialization
- Advising
- Explaining
- Troubleshooting
- Reassuring
- Accompanying to physician's office and hospital
- Negotiating services

- Cooking and providing meals
- Reminding to take medications, keep appointments, and take actions
- Monitoring and administering medications
- Performing treatments
- Supervising
- Protecting
- Bathing and dressing
- Feeding
- Toileting

is in need. Couples who never shared intimacy and friendship may exist in separate worlds under the same roof. Nurturing relationships during every stage of life are an investment in having meaningful, supportive relationships in later life.



KEY CONCEPT

Children who feel their parents were insensitive to their needs throughout their lives may be reluctant caregivers to these parents in old age.

Scope of Family Caregiving

Most of the home care of older persons is provided by family members, not formal agencies. It is estimated that more than 10 million people are involved in parent care, approximately half of whom provide care on a regular basis. More than 30% of caregivers are 65 years of age or older themselves. More than half of the caregivers for older adults are wives; the next largest group of caregivers is daughters and daughters-in-law. Indeed, today the average woman will spend more time providing care for her parents than for her children; often, these women are responsible for care of their parents and children concurrently, causing them to be named the “sandwich generation.” One in eight full-time workers are caregivers, and 1 in 12 are potential caregivers (Wagner & Neal, 2002).



KEY CONCEPT

Most of the home care of older adults is provided by family members, not formal agencies.

Families provide many types of assistance to their older members (Box 38-1). Often, the provision of assistance is a subtle, gradual process. For

example, a daughter may begin by telephoning her mother after the mother has returned from a physician's visit and inquiring about medication changes. As time progresses, the daughter may accompany her mother to the physician's office, discuss the medications directly with the physician, and telephone her mother to monitor the response to the drugs. Eventually, the daughter may need to lift her mother in and out of the car, push her into the physician's office in a wheelchair, undress her for the examination, and administer the medications to her on a regular basis.



POINT TO PONDER

If you suddenly faced the situation of having to provide care to a parent or older relative, how would your life change and how would you manage the added responsibilities? ●

Protecting the Health of the Older Adult and Caregiver

A family is a strong chain of human experience that bonds its members through life's challenges and joys; however, that chain is only as strong as its weakest link. Effective gerontological nursing recognizes that the health of all family members must be maintained and promoted.

Maintaining older persons' independence facilitates normality in family relationships. Having to live with or be cared for by family members can threaten the status and roles of older persons and cause anger, resentment, and other feelings to develop (see Nursing Diagnosis Highlight). Sound health practices to prevent disease and disability are crucial to maintaining self-care ability and independence. If illness occurs, aggressive attention should be paid to avoiding

NURSING DIAGNOSIS HIGHLIGHT

ALTERED FAMILY PROCESSES

Overview

An alteration in family processes exists when the family's normal functions are altered. When this problem is present, the family may be unable to meet the physical, emotional, socioeconomic, or spiritual needs of its members, may deal with stress ineffectively, may communicate ineffectively or inappropriately, and may refuse to seek or accept help from others. They may be fearful, guarded, or suspicious when visited or interviewed.

Causative or Contributing Factors

Illness or injury of family member; change in dependency level of member; change in role or function of family member; addition or loss of family member; relocation, reduced income, added expenses, social or sexual deviance by family member; break in religious or cultural practices by family members

Goal

The family will demonstrate support and assistance to members in their fulfillment of physical, emotional, and socioeconomic needs; the family will seek and accept assistance from external sources as appropriate.

Interventions

- Collect a comprehensive family history that includes profile of family (include significant others who fill fam-

ily functions as family members); age, health, and residence of members; roles and responsibilities of each member; typical patterns of communication, problem-solving, and crisis management; recent changes in composition of the family and members' roles, responsibilities, and health statuses; new burdens; and the family's assessment of problem.

- Identify factors related to family dysfunction and plan appropriate interventions such as family therapy, financial aid, family conference, visiting nurse, or clergy visit.
- Facilitate open, honest communication among family members; assist in planning family conferences, promoting discussion by all members, developing realistic goals and plans, and allocating responsibility; provide privacy for family.
- When a member is receiving health services, explain care activities and expected outcomes, prepare for changes, and involve the family in care to the maximum extent possible.
- Provide caregiver education and support; help caregivers identify community resources; and emphasize the importance of respite for caregivers.
- Make the family aware of support and self-help groups that can assist them, such as Alzheimer's Disease and Related Disorders Association, American Cancer Society, Alcoholics Anonymous, and American Diabetes Association.

complications and restoring the affected person to a healthy state. Interventions such as environmental modifications, financial aid, home-delivered meals, assistance with chores, transportation for the physically disabled, telephone reassurance, or a home companion can supplement deficits and strengthen the older person's reserves for independent living.

**KEY CONCEPT**

Caregivers of older persons frequently are senior citizens themselves.

If the caregiver is a spouse or sibling, chances are that he or she is of advanced age as well. Even the children of the older person can be older adults themselves. The physical, emotional, and social health of the caregivers must be evaluated periodically to ensure that they are competent to provide the required services and are not jeopardizing themselves in the process. Provisions must be made for what gerontological nurses refer to as caregivers' TLC:

T—training in care techniques, safe medication use, recognition of abnormalities, and available resources

L—leaving the care situation periodically to obtain respite and relaxation and maintain their normal living needs

C—caring for themselves via adequate sleep, rest, exercise, nutrition, socialization, solitude, support, financial aid, stress reduction, and health management.

Gerontological nurses should review the TLC needs of caregivers during every contact to ensure their continued effectiveness.

**KEY CONCEPT**

Caregivers need TLC: training, leave, and care for self.

A particularly vulnerable group of caregivers is middle-aged daughters who are a likely caregiver

BOX 38-2 Nursing Strategies to Assist Family Caregivers

- *Guide the family to view the situation realistically.* Perhaps a leave of absence rather than resignation from a job is warranted to assist a parent or spouse through convalescence. Perhaps the needs are such that a lay caregiver (e.g., family member) will not be able to care for them adequately. Often an objective outsider can guide the family in viewing the real situation and understanding the extent of care needs.
- *Provide information that can assist in anticipating needs.* Caregivers need to be guided in exploring the various scenarios that can arise and developing plans before a crisis occurs. Encourage the expression of feelings. Raised with an abundance of “shoulds” and “oughts” regarding the treatment of older persons, families need to know that the guilt, anger, resentment, and depression they feel are neither uncommon nor bad.
- *Assess and monitor the impact of the caregiving on the total family unit.* Although caregivers may feel they alone are assuming responsibility for care, they need to examine the effects on the total family unit. How will their children’s tuition be paid if they quit their jobs to care for a parent? Will someone have to forfeit a bedroom if the relative moves in? What is the relationship of the spouse with the in-laws? Who will help lift grandma into the tub? Will the family be able to take vacations and entertain at home? Is someone available to relieve them if they want to go out for a special occasion?
- *Introduce and promote a review of care options.* Often family members believe that care must be one of two extremes: institutionalization or total care provided solely by the caregiver. Although these are options, other possibilities exist within these extremes, including home health aides, live-in companions, geriatric day care, or shared family care in which the elder lives at specific times with various relatives, or relatives spend designated days at the elder’s home. Caregivers also should be aided in identifying their limitations and the need for institutional care when necessary. See Chapter 35 for more information about services for the elderly and their caregivers.

group. After years of sacrificing and struggling with childrearing, they are beginning to taste some freedom as their children gain independence and begin to leave home. They are concerned for their children’s success and well-being and experience ambivalence over the less intense parental role. Ever-increasing numbers of them are in the workforce, perhaps resuming delayed careers. Some may be coping with spouses who are experiencing midlife crises, having mixed feelings about their marriage, or reacting to undesirable changes in their physical appearance. They are clouded with the “superwoman” myth and desperately try to be the supportive parent, understanding wife, exciting lover, interesting friend, and aspiring employee. In short, they are overwhelmed. At this point in life, the final straw may be dependent parents and their demands. These daughters feel that they certainly cannot deprive their parents, trust their care to strangers, or institutionalize them. However, what will this mean to their careers, income, marital relationships, friendships, leisure pursuits, and energy? As a growing number of middle-aged women confront this dilemma, special nursing intervention is warranted. Box 38-2 describes some ways in which nurses can aid family caregivers.

Family Dysfunction and Abuse

Many factors can threaten the healthy functioning of the family unit; the gerontological nurse must be skilled in identifying such problems and providing interventions for them (see the Nursing Diagnosis Highlight). Family dysfunction occurs in many forms, ranging from an older parent’s domination and manipulation of an adult child, to incestuous relationships. A lifelong history of dysfunction may exist, or the dysfunction may be a recent problem, associated with a wide range of factors (e.g., divorce, loss of income, increased dependency of older family member, illness of caregiver). Families experiencing dysfunction may be:

- less able to fulfill the physical, emotional, socioeconomic, and spiritual needs of their members
- rigid in roles, responsibilities, and opinions
- unable or unwilling to obtain and use help from others
- composed of members with psychopathology or behavioral disorders
- inexperienced or ineffective at managing crises
- ineffective or inappropriate with their communication and behavior (including learned violence patterns)

One form of dysfunction that has gained increased visibility in recent years is elder abuse. It is estimated as many as 1.2 million older adults are abused annually in the United States, primarily by a close family member (Fulmer, 2003). The profile of the older adult at greatest risk for abuse is a disabled woman, older than 75 years of age, who lives with a relative and is physically, socially, or financially dependent on others. It is important to remember that abuse occurs in all sorts of families, regardless of social, financial, or ethnic background, and can present in many forms, including:

- infliction of pain or injury
- withholding of food, money, medications, or care
- confinement, physical or chemical (drug) restraint
- theft or intentional mismanagement of assets
- sexual abuse
- verbal or emotional abuse
- neglect



KEY CONCEPT

Both the actual commission of a harmful act and the threat of committing it are considered abuse.

The older adult may be reluctant to report or admit to abuse. Subtle clues of abuse include malnutrition, failure to thrive, injuries, oversedation, and depression. Nurses can assess for abuse using a tool such as the Elder Assessment Instrument (EAI) developed by Fulmer et al. (1984) and currently recommended by the Hartford Institute for Geriatric Nursing. Nurses must manage potentially abusive situations tactfully. Once abuse is detected, the nurse needs to assess the degree of immediate danger and take appropriate actions. Abused persons must be assured that their plight will not be worsened by making the abuse public; they may prefer being verbally threatened or having their money taken to the alternative of living in an institution or foster home. (See Chapter 8 for legal considerations regarding elder abuse.)

The family needs empathy, not judgment, from the nurse. Although some individuals are consciously malicious and abusive for their own gain, most abusers are distressed persons who find themselves in stressful caregiving situations and are coping ineffectively. Abuse can also be associated with a family pattern of violence, emotional or cognitive dysfunction of the abused or the abuser, a history of dependency of the abuser on the

Consider This Case

Mary K is a 45-year-old single parent who is the sole wage earner for herself and her three teenage children. Several years ago, when Ms. K's father was diagnosed with dementia, she arranged to have him move into an apartment in the same apartment complex where she lives. His condition has since deteriorated, and he is now incontinent and unable to eat or dress without assistance; he has also started fires in his apartment and has been found wandering around the complex grounds at all hours of the night. Ms. K has decided to take her father into her own three-bedroom apartment. Ms. K's two daughters share one bedroom, her son has his own room, and she has one bedroom for herself; therefore, she has moved her father into her son's room, much to her son's resentment. In fact, her son states that he cannot stand the urine odor and noise made by his grandfather, so he has begun sleeping on the living room sofa and staying at friends' homes whenever possible. Ms. K's father's pension is not sufficient to pay the additional cost for a larger apartment because of the expense of his medication and incontinence care supplies.

Between the stress and her father's nighttime activity, Ms. K is unable to obtain adequate rest and has been late for work and "nodding off" at work as a result. Her employer knows of her situation but states that Ms. K's job could be in jeopardy if she is unable to perform her duties and be dependable. Although Ms. K's children understand that their grandfather has no one else to care for him, they are angry at how this situation has disrupted their lives: They no longer feel comfortable bringing friends home, they forfeit social activities to help with their grandfather's care, and they have less money to spend. Together, the children confront Ms. K and suggest that their grandfather be placed in a nursing home. Ms. K becomes upset and responds, "How can you even suggest putting your own flesh and blood in a place like that? If it kills me, I'll never put your grandfather in a nursing home."

THINK CRITICALLY

- Describe the actual and potential problems associated with caring for Ms. K's father.
- Discuss the impact of this situation on each family member.
- Describe approaches that could be used to introduce Ms. K to other caregiving options, including nursing home care of her father.
- Develop a care plan to assist this family.

victim, or retaliation for a history of earlier abuse. A good family history can be helpful in gaining insight into the family dynamics that could contribute to abuse.

Abuse may be stopped and family health salvaged by helping the family find effective ways to manage its situation, such as counseling or respite care. The nurse must consider that caregiving burdens often increase over time; therefore, ongoing interventions are necessary to prevent future abuse after the immediate episode has been resolved.

Rewards of Family Caregiving

A caring, interested family is one of the most valuable resources an individual can possess in old age. In turn, the love and richness of experience offered by older persons adds a unique depth and meaning to the family. Caregiving experiences provide opportunities for relatives to learn more about each other as individuals and to obtain gratification in the young giving something back to the aged who may have sacrificed for them. Gerontological nurses must view older adults in the context of their family units and structure care to enhance the functional capacity of all family members.

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. Describe the potential changes the average family would face if they suddenly had to provide care for an older relative.
2. Discuss satisfactions and benefits family members can derive from caring for older relatives.
3. Identify resources in your community to assist families with caregiving.

Resources

Clearinghouse on Abuse and Neglect of the Elderly

<http://www.elderabusecenter.org/clearing>

ElderWeb

<http://www.elderweb.com>

Hartford Institute for Geriatric Nursing

Try This: Best Practices in Nursing Care to Older Adults Issue Number 15 (Revised 2007), Elder Mistreatment and Abuse Assessment
<http://www.hartforddign.org/resources/education/tryThis.html>

National Center on Elder Abuse

<http://www.elderabusecenter.org>

National Council on Family Relations

<http://www.ncfr.com>

National Eldercare Locator

<http://www.eldercare.gov>

National Family Caregivers Association

<http://www.nfcacares.org>

References

- Fulmer, T., Street, S., & Carr, K. (1984). Abuse of the elderly: Screening and detection. *Journal of Emergency Nursing, 10*(3), 131–140.
- Fulmer, T. (2003). Elder abuse and neglect assessment. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 29*(6), 4.
- Wagner, D., & Neal, M. (2002). *Working caregivers: Issues, challenges and opportunities for the aging network*. National Family Caregivers Support Program, Program Development Issues Briefs, Administration on Aging, DHHS.

Recommended Readings

- Acton, G. J., & Miller, E. W. (2003). Spirituality in caregivers of family members with dementia. *Journal of Holistic Nursing, 21*(2), 117–130.
- Courts, N. F., Barba, B. E., & Tesh, A. (2001). Family caregivers' attitudes toward aging, caregiving, and nursing home placement. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 27*(8), 44–52.
- Curry, L. C., Walker, C., & Hogstel, M. O. (2006). Educational needs of employed family caregivers of older adults: Evaluation of a workplace project. *Geriatric Nursing, 27*(2), 166–173.
- Davidhizar, R., Bechtel, G. A., & Woodring, B. C. (2000). The changing role of grandparenthood. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 26*(1), 24–29.
- Farran, C. J. (2001). Family caregiver intervention research: Where have we been? Where are we going? *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 27*(7), 38–45.
- Gladstone, J., & Wexler, E. (2000). A family perspective of family/staff interaction in long-term care facilities. *Geriatric Nursing, 21*(1), 16–19.
- Kelley, L. S., & Specht, J. K. P. (2000). Family involvement in care for individuals with dementia protocol. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 26*(2), 13–21.
- Larrimore, K. L. (2003). Alzheimer disease support group characteristics: A comparison of caregivers. *Geriatric Nursing, 24*(1), 32–35.
- Li, H. (2002). Family caregivers preferences in caring for their hospitalized elderly relatives. *Geriatric Nursing, 23*(2), 204–207.
- Lilly, M. L., Richards, B. S., & Buckwater, K. C. (2003). Friends and social support in dementia caregiving: Assessment and intervention. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 29*(1), 29–36.
- Logue, R. M. (2003). Maintaining family connectedness in long-term care: An advanced practice approach to family-centered nursing homes. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 29*(6), 24–31.
- Moore, S. L., Metcalf, B., & Schow, E. (2000). Aging and meaning in life: Examining the concept. *Geriatric Nursing, 21*(1), 27–29.
- Ostwald, S. K., Hepburn, K. W., & Burns, T. (2003). Training family caregivers of patients with dementia: A structured workshop approach. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 29*(1), 37–44.
- Sollines, H. L. (2007). Handling difficult family situations: Practical approaches. *Geriatric Nursing, 28*(2), 80–82.

- Spurlock, W. R. (2005). Spiritual well-being and caregiver burden in Alzheimer's caregivers, *Geriatric Nursing*, 26(2), 154–161.
- Stokes, S. A., & Gordon, S. E. (2003). Common stressors experienced by the well elderly: Clinical implications. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 29(5), 38–46.
- Wang, J., Lin, J., & Lee, F. (2006). Psychologically abusive behavior by those caring for the elderly in a domestic context. *Geriatric Nursing*, 27(4), 284–291.
- Winters, S. (2003). Alzheimer disease from a child's perspective. *Geriatric Nursing*, 24(1), 36–39.

End-of-Life Care

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Definitions of Death

Family Experience With the Dying Process

Supporting the Dying Individual

- Stages of the Dying Process and Related Nursing Interventions
- Physical Care Needs
- Spiritual Care Needs
- Signs of Imminent Death
- Advance Directives

Supporting Family and Friends

- Supporting Through the Stages of the Dying Process
- Helping Family and Friends After a Death

Supporting Nursing Staff

Death is an inevitable, unequivocal, and universal experience, common to all. Despite the reality that it touches every person's life at one time or another, death is difficult for many individuals to face—perhaps the most difficult and painful reality of all. Although a certainty, the cessation of life is often dealt with in terms of fury and fear. Humans can be very reluctant to accept their mortality.

Gerontological nurses commonly face the reality of death because more than 80% of deaths occur in old age. In addition to facing this reality, gerontological nurses must learn to deal with the entire dying process—the complexity of experiences that dying individuals, their family, their friends, and all others involved with them go through. Working with those who undergo this complicated

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you should be able to:

- 1 Discuss the difficulty people may experience in facing death.
- 2 Describe the stages people commonly go through when facing death and describe related nursing interventions.
- 3 List physical care needs of dying individuals and related nursing interventions.
- 4 Discuss ways in which nurses can support family and friends of dying individuals.
- 5 Discuss ways in which nurses can support other nursing staff dealing with dying patients.

process requires a blend of sensitivity, insight, and knowledge about the complex topic of death in order to diagnose nursing problems and effectively intervene.

Definitions of Death

The final termination of life, the cessation of all vital functions, the act or fact of dying—these are definitions the dictionary offers concerning death—attempts at succinct explanations of this complex experience. But we are often reluctant to accept such simple descriptions. For example, the world of literature contains many eloquent words on the topic of death:

Do not go gentle into that good night,
 Old age should burn and rave at close of day
 Rage, rage against the dying of the light.
Dylan Thomas

Each person is born to one possession which
 outvalues all the others—his last breath.
Mark Twain

Death is fortunate for the child,
 bitter to the youth,
 too late to the old.
Publius Syrus

A man can die but once:
 We owe God a death.
Shakespeare, Henry IV

Dramatic or amusing, the descriptions of death offered in literature have done little to enhance our knowledge of its true meaning.

Current scientific literature does not provide much more in the way of specific definitions of death. The United Nations Vital Statistics Division defines death as the cessation of vital functions with-

out capability of resuscitation. However, terms such as brain death (the death of brain cells determined by a flat electroencephalogram [EEG]); somatic death (determined by the absence of cardiac and pulmonary functions); and molecular death (determined by the cessation of cellular function) confuse the issue. The controversy lies in deciding at which level of death a person is considered dead. In some situations, an individual with a flat EEG still has cardiac and respiratory functions; could this individual be considered dead? In other situations, individuals with flat EEGs and no cardiopulmonary functions still have living cells that permit their organs to be transplanted; are individuals really dead if they possess living cells? The answers to these questions are not simple. Much current thought and investigation are focused on the need for a single criterion in the determination of death.

Family Experience With the Dying Process

In today's Western culture, many people have very limited experiences with death or the dying process, but this was not always the case. This change is due in part to decreases in the mortality rate over the years (Fig. 39-1). In the past, a higher mortality rate made experiences with the dying process more common. Not only were living conditions poor, health care facilities inadequate, disease control techniques limited, and technologies to fight and control nature's elements unheard of, but also there were fewer numbers of hospitals and other institutions in which people could die. Today, however, health and medical care are easily available and accessible, and new medications and therapeutic interventions increase the possibility of surviving an illness. Sophisticated and widespread lifesaving technologies

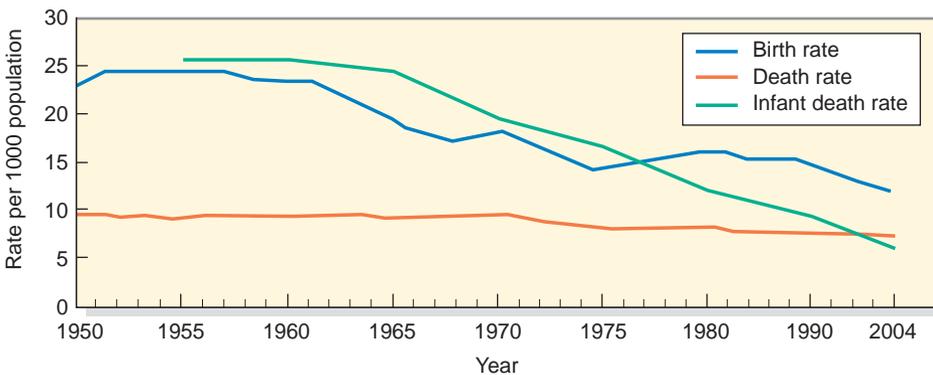


FIGURE 39-1 • Changes in birth and death rates from 1950 to 2004. (Modified from U.S. Bureau of the Census [2007]. Statistical abstract of the United States [126th ed.]. Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office. Available at <http://www.census.gov/statab/www/>.)

and improved standards of living have also lowered the number of deaths in the population.

Perhaps even more significant for limiting exposure to the dying process are changes in the site and circumstances of death. At one time, most births and deaths occurred in the home. In multigenerational family living, older persons were part of the household and could be naturally observed as they aged and died. Personal involvement with births and the dying process was common. Viewed as natural processes, these events were managed by familiar faces in familiar surroundings. Intimate encounters with the beginning and end of life were rich experiences that provided insights and helped foster understanding of these realities. Perhaps the family felt a certain comfort and closeness by being with and doing for the person whose life was about to begin or end. And who can determine the benefit to the infant or the dying individual of being comforted and cared for by close loved ones?

Today, however, multigenerational households are less common. Nuclear families are more mobile and are frequently composed of young members; older parents and grandparents live in different households, often in different parts of the country. Furthermore, the majority of deaths occur in an institutional or hospital setting. Rarely do family and friends remain with the individual or witness the dying process. The funeral of the older family members may be the only part of the dying process shared by younger age groups.



KEY CONCEPT

With fewer people dying at earlier ages than in the past and most deaths occurring in hospitals or nursing homes, most people have minimal direct involvement with dying individuals.

The separation of individuals from their loved ones and familiar surroundings during the dying process seems discomfiting, stressful, and unjust. How inhumane to remove dying persons from intimate involvement with their support systems at the time of their greatest need for support. As direct experiences with dying and death are lessened, death becomes a more impersonal and unusual event. Its reality is difficult to internalize; it is held at arm's distance.

Perhaps this explains why many persons have difficulty accepting their own mortality. Avoiding discussions about death and not making a will or other plans related to one's own death are clues to the lack of internalization of one's mortality. Although the topic of death can be confronted on an intellectual level, it is often this internalization of life's finiteness that remains difficult.



POINT TO PONDER

Do you have a will that outlines your desires for the care of your children, the distribution of your assets, and your funeral arrangements? If not, why not?

To assist the dying and their families effectively, nurses should analyze their own attitudes toward death. Denying their own mortality or feeling angry about it, nurses may tend to avoid dying persons, discourage their efforts to deal realistically with their death, or instill false hope in them and their families. The difficult process of confronting and realizing one's own mortality need not be viewed as depressing by the nurse; it can provide a fuller appreciation of life and the impetus for making the most of every living day. Nurses who understand their own mortality are more comfortable helping individuals through the dying process.



KEY CONCEPT

An examination of one's own feelings and attitudes about death can be therapeutic to the nurse personally, as well as helpful in the care of dying patients.

Supporting the Dying Individual

For a long time, nurses were more prepared to deal with the care of a dead body than with the dynamics involved with the dying process. Not only was open discussion of an individual's impending death rare, but also it was typical for the dying person to be moved to a separate and often isolated location during the last few hours of life. If the family was present, they were frequently left alone with the dying person, without benefit of a professional's support. Rather than planning for additional staff support for the dying person and the family, nurses were concerned with whether a patient would live until their next shift and require postmortem care. When death did occur, the body was removed from the unit in secrecy so that other patients would be unaware of the event. Nurses were discouraged from showing emotion when a patient died. A detached objectivity was promoted as part of nursing the dying patient.

Nursing now offers a more humanistic approach to caring for the dying patient. Emphasis on meeting the total needs of the patient in a holistic manner has stimulated greater concern for the psychosocial and spiritual care of the dying. In addition, there is now recognition that family members and significant

BOX 39-1 Hospice

Hospice is a way of caring for terminally ill individuals and their families. Although most hospice care is provided in the home, these services are required to be provided in nursing home settings also. The first hospice program was St. Christopher's Hospice in London. In the United States, the first hospice began at Hospice, Inc., in New Haven, Connecticut in 1974. The National Hospice Organization has developed standards for hospice care to guide local hospice programs; however, individuality and autonomy of each program are encouraged.

Hospice care aids in adding quality and meaning into the remaining period of life. The care involves

interdisciplinary efforts to address physical, emotional, and spiritual needs, including:

- pain relief
- symptom control
- coordinated home care and institutional care
- bereavement follow-up and counseling

For more information, contact the National Hospice & Palliative Care Organization (NHPCO), 1700 Diagonal Road, Suite 625, Alexandria, VA 22314, 703-837-1500, HelpLine: 800-658-8898, <http://www.nhpco.org>

others play a vital role in the dying process and must be considered by the nurse. Knowledge has increased in the field of thanatology (i.e., the study of death and dying), and more nurses are exposed to this body of knowledge. Hospice care has developed into a specialty (Box 39-1). The nursing profession has come to realize that professionalism does not preclude human emotions in the nurse–patient relationship. These factors have contributed to increased nursing involvement with the dying individual.

Because the dying process is unique for every human being, individualized nursing intervention is required. Patients' previous experiences with death, religious and spiritual beliefs, philosophy of life, age, and health status are among the multitude of complex factors affecting the dying process. Nursing Diagnosis Table 39-1 lists a variety of nursing diagnoses related to death and dying along with contributing factors. The nurse must carefully assess the particular experiences, attitudes, beliefs, and values that each individual brings to his or her dying process. Only through this assessment can the most therapeutic and individualized support be given to the dying person.

**KEY CONCEPT**

Patients' reactions to dying are influenced by previous experiences with death, age, health status, philosophy of life, and religious, spiritual, and cultural beliefs.

Stages of the Dying Process and Related Nursing Interventions

Although the dying process is a unique journey for each individual, common reactions that have been observed to occur provide a basis for understanding the process. After several years of experiences with

dying patients, Elisabeth Kübler-Ross developed a conceptual framework outlining the coping mechanisms of dying in terms of five stages that has now become classic (Kübler-Ross, 1969). It behooves the nurse to be familiar with these stages and to understand the most therapeutic nursing interventions during each stage. Not all dying persons will progress through these stages in an orderly sequence. Neither will every dying person experience all of these stages. However, an awareness of Kübler-Ross' conceptual framework can help the nurse support dying individuals as they demonstrate complex reactions to death. A brief description of these stages, along with pertinent nursing considerations, follows.

Denial

On becoming aware of their impending death, most individuals initially react by denying the reality of the situation. "It isn't true" and "There must be some mistake" are among the comments reflective of this denial. Patients sometimes "shop" for a physician who will suggest a different diagnosis or invest in healers and fads that promise a more favorable outcome. Denial serves several useful purposes for the dying person. It is a shock absorber after learning the difficult news that one has a terminal condition, it provides an opportunity for people to test the certainty of this information, and it allows people time to internalize the information and mobilize their defenses.

Although the need is strongest early on, dying persons may use denial at various times throughout their illness. They may fluctuate between wanting to discuss their impending death and denying its reality. Although such a contradiction may be confusing, the nurse must be sensitive to the person's need for defenses while also being ready to participate in discussions on death when the person needs

NURSING DIAGNOSIS

TABLE 39-1 Nursing Diagnoses Related to Death and Dying

Causes or Contributing Factors	Nursing Diagnosis
Depression, fatigue, pain, treatments, immobility Separation from loved one, loss of body function or part, realization of impending death, concern about treatment prior to and at death	Activity Intolerance Anxiety
Narcotics, immobility, diet, stress Stress, antibiotics, tube feedings, cancer; fecal impaction Congestive heart failure, cardiogenic shock, anemia, fluid and electrolyte imbalances, drugs, stress	Constipation Diarrhea Decreased Cardiac Output
Cancer; diagnostic tests, poor positioning, overactivity Pain, drugs, fatigue Changes in body integrity, separation from loved one, ineffective family coping, helplessness, powerlessness	Pain Impaired Verbal Communication Ineffective Coping
Impending death of loved one, lack of knowledge or support Hospitalization, treatment demands, depression Loss of family member; changes in roles, care costs Treatments, pain, death	Disabled Family Coping Deficit Diversional Activity Interrupted Family Processes Fear
Shock, fever, infection, anorexia, inability to drink independently, depression Loss of body function or part, pain, separation from family Cancer; renal failure, treatments, immobility, lowered resistance, drugs (e.g., antibiotics, steroids), malnutrition Altered ability to protect self, pain, drugs, fatigue Diagnostic tests, treatments, drugs, pain management Weakness, pain, bed rest Denial, lack of knowledge, impaired functional capacity Anorexia, depression, pain, treatments, nausea, vomiting	Deficient Fluid Volume Chronic Sorrow Risk for Infection Risk for Injury Knowledge Deficit Impaired Physical Mobility Noncompliance Imbalanced Nutrition: Less Than Body Requirements Impaired Oral Mucous Membrane
Cancer; infection, drugs, malnutrition, dehydration, mouth breathing, poor hygiene Dependency, disability, institutional constraints, inability to reverse condition	Powerlessness
Thick secretions, pain, anxiety, drugs, immobility, decreased lung elasticity and activity, mouth breathing Pain, weakness, disability	Ineffective Breathing Pattern Self-Care Deficit
Loss of body function or part, institutionalization, pain Metabolic alterations, pain, immobility, isolation, drugs Separation from partner; pain, fatigue, depression, drugs, treatments, hospitalization	Body Image Disturbance Disturbed Sensory Perception Sexual Dysfunction
Immobility, infections, edema, dehydration, emaciation Immobility, pain, anxiety, depression, drugs, new environment Loss of body function or part, depression, anxiety Hospitalization, disability, deformity, discomfort of others Loss of body function or part, barriers imposed by treatments or hospitalization, feelings toward dying process	Impaired Skin Integrity Disturbed Sleep Pattern Impaired Social Interaction Social Isolation Spiritual Distress
Depression, anxiety, fear, isolation	Disturbed Thought Processes

to do so. The nurse should try to accept the dying person's use of defenses rather than focus on the conflicting messages. An individual's life philosophy, unique coping mechanisms, and knowledge of the condition determine when denial will be replaced by less radical defense mechanisms. Perhaps the most important nursing action during this stage is to accept the dying individual's reactions and to provide an open door for honest dialogue.

Anger

The stage of denial and the "No, not me" reaction is gradually replaced by one of "Why me?" This second stage, anger, is often extremely difficult for individuals surrounding the dying person because they are frequently the victims of displaced anger. In this stage, the dying person expresses the feeling that nothing is right. For example, nurses do not answer the call light soon enough; the food tastes awful; the doctors do not know what they are doing; and visitors either stay too long or not long enough. Seen through the eyes of the dying person, such anger is understandable. Why wouldn't people resent not having what they want when they want it when they don't have much time? Why wouldn't they be envious of those who will enjoy a future they will never see? Their unfulfilled desires and the unfinished business of their life may cause outrage. Perhaps their complaints and demands are used to remind those around them that they are still living beings.

During this time, the family may feel guilt, embarrassment, grief, or anger in response to the dying person's anger. They may not understand why their intentions are misunderstood or their actions unappreciated. It is not unusual for them to question whether they are doing things correctly. The nurse should help the family gain insight into the individual's behavior, which can relieve their discomfort and, thus, create a more beneficial environment for the dying person. If the family can come to realize that the person is reacting to impending death and not to them personally, it may facilitate a more supportive relationship.

The nurse should also guard against responding to the dying person's anger as a personal affront. The best nursing efforts may receive criticism for not being good enough; cheerful overtures may be received with scorn; the call light goes on the minute the nurse leaves the room. It is important that the nurse assess such behavior and understand that it may reflect the anger of the second stage of the dying process. Instead of responding to the anger, the nurse should be accepting, implying to the dying person that it is fine to vent these feelings. Anticipating needs, remembering favorite things, and maintaining a pleasant attitude can counterbalance the anticipated losses that are becoming more

apparent to the dying individual. It may be useful for nurses to discuss their feelings about the patient's anger with an objective colleague who can serve as a sounding board so that the nurse–patient relationship continues to be therapeutic.

Bargaining

After recognizing that neither denial nor anger changes the reality of impending death, dying persons may attempt to negotiate a postponement of the inevitable. They may agree to be a better Christian if God lets them live through one more Christmas; they may promise to take better care of themselves if the physician initiates aggressive therapy to prolong life; they may promise anything in return for an extension of life. Most bargains are made with God and usually kept a secret. Sometimes such agreements are shared with members of the clergy. The nurse should be aware that dying persons may feel disappointed at not having their bargain honored or guilty over the fact that, having gained time, they want an additional extension of life even though they agreed that the request would be their last. It is important that these often covert feelings be explored with the dying person.

Depression

When a patient is hospitalized with increasing frequency and experiences declining functional capacity and more symptoms, the reality of the dying process is emphasized. The older patient may already have had many losses and experienced depression. Not only may lifetime savings, pleasurable pastimes, and a normal lifestyle be gone, but also bodily functions and even body parts may be lost. Understandably, all this may lead to depression. Unlike other forms of depression, however, the depression of the dying person may not benefit from encouragement and reassurances. Urging dying persons to cheer up and look at the sunny side of things implies that they should not contemplate their impending death. It is unrealistic to believe that dying people should not be deeply saddened by the most significant loss of all—their life.

The depression of the dying person is usually a silent one. It is important for the nurse to understand that cheerful words may be far less meaningful to dying individuals than holding their hand or silently sitting with them (Fig. 39-2). Being with the dying person who openly or silently contemplates the future is a significant nursing action during this stage. An interest in prayer and a desire for visits from clergy are commonly seen during this stage. The nurse should be particularly sensitive to the dying person's religious needs and facilitate the clergy–patient relationship in every way possible.

The nurse may need to help the family understand this depression, explaining that their efforts



FIGURE 39-2 • Touching, comforting, and being near the dying individual are significant nursing actions.

to cheer the dying person can hinder rather than enhance the patient's emotional preparation. The family may require reassurance for the helplessness they feel at this time. The nurse may emphasize that this type of depression is necessary for the individual to be able to approach death in a stage of acceptance and peace.

Acceptance

For many dying persons, a time comes when the struggling ends and relief ensues. It is as though a final rest is being taken to gain the strength for a long journey. This acceptance should not be mistaken for a happy state; it implies that the individual has come to terms with death and has found a sense of peace. During this stage, patients may benefit more from nonverbal than verbal communication. It is important that their silence and withdrawal not result in isolation from human contact. Touching, comforting, and being near the person are valuable nursing actions. An effort to simplify the environment may be required as the dying person's circle of interests gradually shrinks. It is not unusual for the family to need a great deal of assistance in learning to understand and support their loved one during this stage.

Significantly, hope commonly permeates all stages of the dying process. Hope can be used as a temporary but necessary form of denial, as a rationalization for enduring unpleasant therapies, and as a source of motivation. It may provide a sense of having a special mission to comfort an individual through the last days. A realistic confrontation of impending death does not negate the presence of hope.



KEY CONCEPT

The five stages of the dying process include denial, anger, bargaining, depression, and acceptance.

Physical Care Needs

Pain

Concern regarding the degree of pain that will be experienced and its management may be a considerable source of distress for dying individuals; nurses can reduce distress for patients by supplying them with realistic information regarding pain. Patients with cancer are more likely to experience severe pain than persons dying from other causes, and even among terminally ill cancer patients, pain can be managed effectively.

Gerontological nurses must be aware that patients will perceive and express pain differently based on their medical diagnosis, emotional state, cognitive function, cultural background, and other factors. Complaints of pain or discomfort, nausea, irritability, restlessness, and anxiety are common indicators of pain; however, the absence of such expressions of pain does not mean it does not exist. Some patients may not overtly express their pain; in these individuals, signs such as sleep disturbances, reduced activity, diaphoresis, pallor, poor appetite, grimacing, and withdrawal may provide clues to the presence of pain. In some circumstances, confusion can be associated with pain.

Nurses must regularly assess pain because it can increase or decrease over time. Patients should be encouraged to report their pain in a timely manner and openly discuss their concerns about pain. It can be useful for patients to rate their pain on a scale of 0 to 10 (0 being no pain and 10 the most severe pain); nursing staff can record patients' self-appraisal of pain along with other factors on a flow sheet.

For the dying patient, the goal of pain management is to *prevent* pain from occurring rather than to respond to it after it occurs. Pain prevention not only helps patients avoid discomfort but also ultimately reduces the amount of analgesics they use. After the pattern of pain has been assessed, a schedule for the administration of analgesics can be developed. The type of analgesic used will depend on the intensity of the pain, ranging from aspirin or acetaminophen for mild pain to codeine or oxycodone for moderate pain to morphine or hydromorphone for severe pain. Meperidine and pentazocine are contraindicated for pain control in older adults because of their high incidence of adverse effects, particularly psychosis, at relatively low dosages. Nurses should note and instruct patients to report ineffectiveness of analgesics or their schedule of administration, over-dosage, and adverse reactions (Box 39-2).



KEY CONCEPT

For the dying patient, the goal of pain management is to prevent pain from developing rather than treat it once it occurs.

BOX 39-2 Pain Management for the Dying Patient

Mr. Lugio is a terminally ill nursing facility resident who is suffering from pain secondary to metastasis of his lung cancer to his spine. His pain has been managed with a nonsteroid anti-inflammatory drug that he receives PRN, but nursing staff feel that the drug may be ineffective because Mr. Lugio is seen grimacing with pain periodically throughout the day. A review of his medication administration record reveals that he sometimes asks for his pain medication at 6- to 8-hour intervals, although he is able to have the drug every 4 hours. The nurses observe that he complains of pain more frequently during the week than on weekends when his family visits.

Nursing staff could consider the following in helping to achieve improved pain control for Mr. Lugio:

- Assess the pattern and severity of pain. Provide Mr. Lugio with a chart to record his pain. Instruct him to rate his pain on a scale of 0 to 10, in which 0 indicates no pain and 10 indicates severe pain. Analyze the pattern.
- Recommend that Mr. Lugio take his analgesic on a regular basis rather than sporadically. Rather than change the type or dosage of analgesic at this time, determine if a regular schedule of administration

could improve pain control. Often, regularly scheduled doses can maintain an analgesic level that prevents pain and provides greater relief. If regularly scheduled doses prove ineffective, a change in dosage or the type of analgesic can be considered.

- Assess Mr. Lugio's understanding of analgesic use. He should understand that addiction or "overuse" of the analgesic is not a primary concern and be encouraged to inform nursing staff of the need for pain relief when necessary.
- Consider the impact of psychological factors on his physical pain. The worsening of his pain when his family is not present could be related to anxiety, boredom, or other psychosocial factors. Psychosocial discomfort can intensify or exacerbate physical discomfort. Mr. Lugio may benefit from a listening ear, counseling, diversional activities, or more frequent visits from his family.
- Use nonpharmacologic pain relief measures. Back rubs, therapeutic touch, guided imagery, relaxation exercises, and counseling could prove effective in managing pain. Trained practitioners could provide acupressure, acupuncture, and hypnosis. These measures should be reviewed with the physician.

Alternatives to medications should be included in the pain-control program of dying patients. Such measures include guided imagery, hypnosis, relaxation exercises, massage, acupressure, acupuncture, therapeutic touch, diversion, and the application of heat or cold. Even if these measures cannot substitute for medications, they could reduce the amount of drugs used or potentiate the drugs' effects.

Respiratory Distress

Respiratory distress is a common problem in dying patients. In addition to the physical discomfort resulting from dyspnea, patients can experience tremendous psychological distress associated with the fear, anxiety, and helplessness that results from the thought of suffocating. The causes of respiratory distress can range from pleural effusion to deteriorating blood gas levels. Interventions such as elevating the head of the bed and administering oxygen can prove beneficial. Atropine or furosemide may be administered to reduce bronchial secretions; narcotics may be used for their ability to control respiratory symptoms by blunting the medullary response.

Constipation

Reduced food and fluid intake, inactivity, and the effects of medications cause constipation to be a

problem for most dying patients—a problem that can add to the discomfort these patients already are experiencing. Knowing that the risk for this problem is high, nursing staff should take measures to promote regular bowel elimination in terminally ill patients. Laxatives usually are administered on a regular schedule, and bowel elimination patterns should be recorded and assessed. It must be remembered that what may appear to be diarrhea may actually be seepage of liquid wastes around a fecal impaction.

Poor Nutritional Intake

Many dying patients experience anorexia, nausea, and vomiting that can prevent the ingestion of even the most basic nutrients. Additionally, fatigue and weakness can make the act of eating a monumental task. Serving small-portioned meals that have appealing appearances and aromas can stimulate the appetite, as can providing foods that are patients' favorites. An alcoholic drink before meals can boost the appetite of some persons. Nausea and vomiting can be controlled with the use of antiemetics and antihistamines; ginger has been used successfully by many individuals as a natural antiemetic. Also useful are basic nursing measures, such as assisting with oral hygiene, offering a clean and pleasant environment

for dining, providing pleasant company during mealtime, and assisting with feeding as necessary.



KEY CONCEPT

The herb ginger has been effective in controlling nausea for some individuals without the side effects of antiemetic drugs.

Spiritual Care Needs

Americans hold a diversity of religious beliefs. Each religion has its own practices related to death, and nursing staff must respect these practices to promote the fulfillment of patients’ spiritual needs. Table 39-2 lists some basic differences among religions in beliefs and practices related to death. Nursing staff must be sensitive to differences and ensure that they do not inadvertently disrespect the religious beliefs of patients and their families.

Because it is likely that the importance of religion in patients’ lives as they are dying will be a reflection of the role of religion throughout their lives, assessment should explore not only their religious affiliation but also their individual religious practices. Furthermore, nurses must recognize that religion and spirituality are not synonymous (see Chapter 13). Religion is but one aspect of spirituality; patients can be highly spiritual without religious affiliation. To determine the significance of spirituality and the spiritual needs of patients, nurses can ask questions such as the following:

- What gives you the strength to face life’s challenges?
- Do you feel a connection with a higher being or spirit?
- What gives your life meaning?

Clergy and congregation members of the faith group to which the patient belongs should be invited to be actively involved with the patient and family, according to their wishes. If nursing staff feel comfortable with the practice, they can offer to pray with patients or read to them from religious texts; of course, nursing staff should ensure that prayers offered are consistent with a patient’s belief system.

Signs of Imminent Death

When death is near, bodily functions will slow and certain signs and symptoms will occur, including:

- decline in blood pressure
- rapid, weak pulse
- dyspnea and periods of apnea
- slower or no pupil response to light
- profuse perspiration
- cold extremities
- bladder and bowel incontinence
- pallor and mottling of skin
- loss of hearing and vision

Identifying the approach of death enables nursing staff to assure family is notified and given the opportunity to share the last minutes of the patient’s

TABLE 39-2 Religious Beliefs and Practices Related to Death

Religious Affiliation	Beliefs and Practices Related to Death
Baptist	Prayer, communion
Buddhist	Last rites by Buddhist priest
Catholic	Prayer; last rites by priest
Christian Scientist	Visit from Christian Science reader
Episcopal	Prayer; communion, confession, last rites
Friends (Quakers)	Individual communicates with God directly, no belief in afterlife
Greek Orthodox	Prayer; communion, last rites by priest
Hindu	Visit by priest to perform ritual of tying thread around neck or wrist, water put in mouth, family cleanses body after death, cremation accepted
Jewish	After death, body washed by religious person
Lutheran	Prayer; last rites
Mormon	Baptism and preaching to deceased
Muslim	Confession, family prepares body after death, deceased must face Mecca
Pentecostal	Prayer; communion
Presbyterian	Prayer; last rites
Russian Orthodox	Prayer; communion, last rites by priest
Scientologist	Confession, visit with pastoral counselor
Seventh Day Adventist	Baptism, communion
Unitarian	Prayer; cremation accepted

life. If the family is unavailable, a staff member should remain with the patient. Depending on the wishes of the patient and family, clergy may be called to visit the patient at this time. It is important that the patient not be alone during this period; even if it appears that the patient is unresponsive, he or she should be spoken to and touched.

Advance Directives

A patient can express desires regarding terminal care and life-sustaining measures through the legal document of an advance directive. All health care facilities and agencies that receive Medicare and Medicaid funding must provide information to patients about the Patient Self-Determination Act, which gives individuals the right to express their choice regarding medical and surgical care and to have those preferences honored if they are unable to communicate at a later time. Nurses should review this issue with patients as they are admitted to a hospital or nursing home setting and discuss the importance of the patient expressing his or her desires in a legally sound manner. For many older adults and their families, discussing issues pertaining to dying is uncomfortable; by introducing and guiding the discussion with sensitivity, nurses can assist older adults in confronting these important issues and assuring their wishes are known. If an advance directive exists, the nurse should review it with the patient to assure it continues to reflect the patient's preference and place a copy in the medical record to inform all members of the interdisciplinary team. (Chapter 8 provides more discussion on legal issues pertaining to death and dying.)



KEY CONCEPT

An advance directive protects the patient's right to make decisions about terminal care and eases some of the burden of family members during this difficult time.

Supporting Family and Friends

Thomas Mann's comment that "a man's dying is more the survivors' affair than his own" is a reminder that the family and friends need to be considered in the nursing care of the dying person. They too may have needs requiring therapeutic intervention during the dying process of their loved one. Offering appropriate support throughout this process may prevent unnecessary stress and provide immense comfort to those involved with the dying person.

Supporting Through the Stages of the Dying Process

Just as dying persons experience different reactions as they cope with the reality of their impending

death, so may family and friends pass through the stages of denial, anger, bargaining, and depression before they are ready to accept the fact that a special person in their lives is going to die.

In the denial stage, family and friends may discourage patients from talking or thinking about death; visit patients less frequently; state that patients will be better as soon as they return home, start eating, have their intravenous tube removed, and so forth. They may shop around for a doctor or hospital to find a special cure for the terminal illness.

Reactions during the anger stage may include criticizing staff for the care they are giving, reproaching a family member for not paying attention to the patient's problem earlier, and questioning why someone who has led such a good life should have this happen.

Family and friends may try to bargain to avoid or delay their loved one's death. They may tell the staff that if they could take the patient home they know they could improve his or her condition. Through prayers or open expression they may agree to take better care of the patient if given another chance. They may consent to some particular action (e.g., going to church regularly, volunteering for good causes, giving up drinking) if only the patient could live to a particular time.

When entering the depression stage, family and friends may become more dependent on the staff. They may begin crying and limiting contact with the patient.

In the acceptance stage, people may react by wanting to spend a great deal of time with the dying person and telling the staff of the good experiences they have had with the patient and how they are going to miss the person. They may request the staff to do special things for the patient (e.g., arrange for favorite foods, eliminate certain procedures, provide additional comfort measures). They may frequently remind the staff to be sure to contact them "when the time comes." They may begin making specific arrangements for their own lives without the patient (e.g., change of housing, plans for property, strengthening other relationships for support).

Obviously, the type of nursing support will vary depending on the stage at which a family member or friend is assessed to be. Although the nursing actions described for the dying individual during each stage may be applicable for family and friends, the stages experienced by those involved with the dying person may not coincide with the patient's own timetable for these stages. For instance, patients may already have worked through the different stages, come to accept the reality of death, and be ready to openly discuss the impact of their death and make plans for their survivors. However, family members and friends may be at different

stages and not be able to deal with the patient's acceptance. The nurse must be aware of these discrepancies in states and provide individualized therapeutic interventions. While providing appropriate support to family and friends as they pass through the stages, the nurse can offer opportunities for dying people to discuss their death openly with a receptive party.

Helping Family and Friends After a Death

When patients die, it is useful for the nurse to be available to provide any needed support to family and friends. Some people wish to have several minutes in private with deceased patients to view and touch them. Others want the nurse to accompany them as they visit the deceased. Still others may not want to enter the room at all. Nurses must respect the personal desires of the family and friends and be careful not to make value judgments of the family's reaction based on their own attitudes and beliefs. It is beneficial to encourage the family and friends to express their grief openly. Crying and shouting may help people cope with and work through their feelings about the death more than suppressing their feelings to achieve a calm composure. Unfortunately, some public figures who have reacted to death in a composed and stoic manner have often been presented as role models for the "proper way" of grieving, thereby conveying the message that an open expression of grief is incorrect.

Funeral and burial arrangements may require guidance by a professional. The survivors of the deceased may be experiencing grief, guilt, or other reactions that place them in a vulnerable position. At this time, they are especially susceptible to sales pitches equating their love for the deceased to the cost of the funeral. Funerals may be arranged costing thousands of dollars more than survivors can actually afford, either depleting any existing savings or leaving a debt that will take years to repay. The family may need to have the extravagant plans presented by a funeral director counterbalanced by realistic questions concerning the financial impact of such a funeral. Someone must take the role of reminding the family that life does go on and that their future welfare must be considered. Whether it is the nurse, a member of the clergy, or a neighbor, it is valuable to identify some person who can be an advocate for the family at this difficult time and prevent them from being taken advantage of. Rather than waiting for a death to occur before thinking through reasonable funeral plans, people should be encouraged to learn about the funeral industry and plan in advance for funeral arrangements. In addition to books on the topic, a number of memorial societies can assist individuals in their planning.

In addition to assisting the family through the funeral, someone should be available to check on family members several weeks after the death. After the agitation of the funeral has diminished and fewer visitors are calling to pay their respects, the full impact of the death may first be realized. At the time when the most intense grief occurs, fewer resources may be available to provide support. Several studies have revealed higher mortality rates in widowers, especially during the first year following the death. Because there are potential threats to the mourning individual's well-being, planned interventions may prove valuable. The gerontological nurse can arrange for a visiting nurse, a church member, a social worker, or someone else to contact the family members several weeks after the death to make sure they are not experiencing any crisis. Widow-to-widow and similar groups can support individuals through the grieving process. It may also be beneficial to provide the telephone number of a person whom the family can contact if assistance is required.

Decades ago Edwin Schneidman, who did considerable "postventive" work with survivors, offered the following concise guidance in working with the family and friends of the deceased. His guidance remains relevant today (Schneidman, 1994):

- Total care of a dying person needs to include contact and rapport with the survivors-to-be.
- In working with survivor-victims of dire deaths, it is best to begin as soon as possible after the tragedy, within the first 72 hours if possible.
- Remarkably little resistance is met from survivor-victims; most are willing to talk to a professional person, especially one who has no ax to grind and no pitch to make.
- The role of negative emotions toward the deceased—irritation, anger, envy, guilt—needs to be explored, but not at the beginning.
- The professional plays the important role of reality tester—not so much the echo of conscience as the quiet voice of reason.
- Medical evaluation of the survivors is crucial. One should be alert for possible decline in physical health and in overall mental well-being.

Supporting Nursing Staff

The staff members working with the dying individual have their own set of feelings regarding this significant experience. It may be extremely difficult for staff not only to accept a particular patient's death but also to come to terms with the whole issue of death. Some nursing staff share the difficulty that many persons have in realizing their own mortality. Their experiences with death may be limited, as may their exposure to the subject through formal education. In a health profession in which the emphasis is

primarily on “curing,” death may be viewed as a dissatisfying failure. Nursing staff may feel powerless as they realize that their best efforts can do little to overcome the reality of impending death. It is not unusual for a nursing caregiver who is involved with a dying patient to also experience the stages of the dying process described by Elisabeth Kübler-Ross. Staff members are commonly observed to avoid contact with dying patients, tell a patient to “cheer up” and not think about death, continue to practice “heroic” measures although a patient is nearing death, and grieve at the death of a patient. Nursing staff may be limited in their ability to support patients and their families if they are at a different stage from them. For example, the nurse may be unable to accept that the patient is dying; avoidance of the topic and unrealistic plans for the patient’s future reflect this denial. The patient, however, may be at the point of accepting the reality of the dying process and may want to discuss personal feelings. Recognizing that the nurse is still in denial, the patient may avoid an open discussion of death and be deprived of an important therapeutic activity.

The staff working with a dying patient requires a great deal of support. Colleagues should help coworkers explore their own reactions to dying patients and recognize when those reactions interfere with a therapeutic nurse–patient relationship. The attitude of colleagues and the environment should be such that nursing staff can retreat from a situation that is not therapeutic either for them or for the patient. To encourage the nurse to cry or show emotions in other forms may be extremely beneficial. The use of thanatologists, hospice staff, and other resource people may also be valuable in providing support to nurses as they assist an individual through the dying process.



KEY CONCEPT

Nursing staff should be encouraged to express their own feelings about patients’ deaths.

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1. Discuss factors that cause Americans to have difficulty discussing and planning for death.
2. In addressing a group of older adults at a senior citizen center, what examples could you offer to support the benefits of developing an advance directive?
3. State some examples of behaviors that could demonstrate reactions of nursing staff to the death of a long-term patient.

Resources

American Hospice Foundation
<http://www.americanhospice.org>

Family Hospice and Palliative Care
<http://www.familyhospice.com>

Hospice
<http://www.hospicenet.org>

Hospice Foundation of America
<http://www.hospicefoundation.org>

International Association for Hospice and Palliative Care
<http://www.hospicecare.com>

National Hospice and Palliative Care Organization
<http://www.nhpco.org>

References

- Kübler-Ross, E. (1969). *On death and dying*. New York: Macmillan.
- Schneidman, E. S. (1994). Postvention and the survivor-victim. In E. S. Schneidman (Ed.), *Death: Current perspectives* (4th ed.). New York: Aronson Jason.

Recommended Readings

- Ali, N. S. (1999). Promotion of advance care planning in the nonhospitalized elderly. *Geriatric Nursing*, 20(5), 260–265.
- Blum, C.A. (2006). “Til death do us part?” The nurse’s role in the care of the dead, a historical perspective: 1850–2004. *Geriatric Nursing*, 27(1), 58–69.
- Briggs, L., & Colvin, E. (2002). The nurse’s role in end-of-life decision-making for patients and families. *Geriatric Nursing*, 23(5), 302–310.
- Carr, T. K. (2005). *Introducing death and dying. Readings and exercises*. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall.
- Davidson, K. M., Tang, J. H., & Titler, M. G. (2003). Evidence-based protocol: Family bereavement support before and after the death of a nursing home resident. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 29(1), 10–19.
- Fagan, A. (2004). *Making sense of death and dying*. New York: Rodopi.
- Hartford Geriatric Nursing Initiative. *Try this: Assessing pain in older adults*. John A. Hartford Foundation for Geriatric Nursing, <http://www.hartforddign.org/resources/education/tryThis.html>.
- Hegge, M., & Fischer, C. (2000). Grief responses of senior and elderly widows: Practice implications. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 26(2), 35–43.
- Inman, L. (2002). Advance directives: Why community-based older adults do not discuss their wishes. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 28(9), 40–46.
- Kayser-Jones, J., Chan, J., & Kris, A. (2005). A model long-term care hospice unit: Care, community, and compassion. *Geriatric Nursing*, 26(1), 16–20.

- Kübler-Ross, E., & Kessler, D. (2005). *On grief and grieving. Finding the meaning of grief through the five stages of loss*. New York: Scribner.
- Nelson, J. P. (2006). Being in tune with life: Complementary therapy and well-being in residential hospice residents. *Journal of Holistic Nursing, 24*(3), 152–162.
- Panke, J. T. (2002). Difficulties in managing pain at the end of life. *American Journal of Nursing, 102*(7), 26–34.
- Raudonis, B. M., Kyba, F. C. N., & Kinsey, T. A. (2002). Long-term care nurses' knowledge of end-of-life care. *Geriatric Nursing, 23*(5), 296–299.
- Wurzbach, M. E. (2002). End of life treatment decisions in long-term care. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 28*(6), 14–21.
- Young, D. M., Mentes, J. C., & Titler, M. G. (1999). Acute pain management protocol. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 25*(6), 10–21.

Note: Page numbers followed by *f* indicate figures; *t* indicate tables; and *b* indicate boxes.

- AARP. *See* American Association of Retired Persons
- Abdomen, musculoskeletal problems and, 273*b*
- Abdominal aortic aneurysms, 262
- Abscess, lung, 241
- Absolutism, 108
- Abuse
 - of alcohol, 404–405, 404*b*, 405*b*, 412*b*
 - cancer and, 388
 - sexual dysfunction and, 146*t*
 - elder, 104
 - family, 481–483
- Acarbose, 351
- Acceptance, in death and dying, 491
- Accidental injuries. *See also* Safety
 - death from, 192*t*
 - rates of, 192, 192*t*
- ACE. *See* Angiotensin-converting enzyme
- Acetaminophen, 220
 - food interactions with, 212*t*
- Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, in black Americans, 26
- ACTH. *See* Adrenocorticotropic hormone
- Activities of daily living (ADLs), 439, 440*t*
- Activity and exercise, 300–308. *See also* Exercises
 - cardiovascular endurance, 301
 - cardiovascular system and, 251
 - in coronary artery disease, 260
 - daily schedule of, 178
 - flexibility, 301
 - guidelines for, 301–306, 302–305*f*, 302*b*
 - heart rate during, 260
 - inactivity prevention, 306–307, 306*b*
 - mind-body connection and, 306
 - nutrition, 308
 - promotion of, 300–301
 - rest and, 178
 - in sleep promotion, 178
 - strength training, 301
- Activity theory, 18
- Acupressure, 27*b*, 432*b*
- Acupuncture, 27*b*, 245, 432*b*
 - for angina, 259
- ADLs. *See* Activities of daily living
- Adrenal glands, age-related changes in, 60
- Adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), 60
- Adult day care, 119
- Adult education, 117
- Adult foster care, 118–119
- Advance directives, 103–104, 494
- Advanced practice nursing, 76
- Advocate, nurse as, 76
- African Americans, 25–26
 - life expectancy of, 5–6, 7*t*
- Age-related changes, 50–64. *See also* Sensory deficits
 - in attention span, 62
 - in body fat, 50
 - in cardiovascular system, 51–53, 52*f*
 - in cognitive function, 61–62
 - in endocrine system, 59–60
 - in equilibrium, 59
 - in gastrointestinal system, 53–54, 53*f*
 - general, 50
 - in genitourinary system, 54, 55*f*
 - in hearing, 58–59, 59*f*
 - in height, 51
 - in immune system, 16, 60–61, 368
 - in integumentary system, 60
 - in intelligence, 61
 - in learning, 61–62
 - in memory, 61
 - in musculoskeletal system, 55–56, 57*f*
 - in nervous system, 56, 58*f*
 - nursing implications of, 62, 63–64*t*, 64
 - in personality, 61
 - in reproductive system, 54–55, 56*f*, 292
 - in respiratory system, 51, 51*f*, 236
 - in sensory organs, 56–59, 59*f*
 - in sexual function, 140–141, 142*t*
 - in sleep, 56, 173–180, 174*b*
 - in smell, 59, 59*f*
 - in taste, 59, 59*f*, 204
 - in thermoregulation, 61
 - in touch, 59, 59*f*, 204
 - in vision, 56–58, 59*f*
- Aging. *See also* Age-related changes
 - environmental factors in, 17
 - factors affecting, 72–73
 - genetic factors in, 15

- Aging (*continued*)
 health promotion for, 19–20, 20*b*, 21*b*
 life transitions and, 34–47
 as natural process, 72
 physical changes in, 39–40, 50–61
 resistance to, 40–41
 role changes and, 34–36
 theories of, 14–20
 activity, 18
 biological, 14–17
 continuity, 18–19
 developmental, 19, 19*t*
 disengagement, 18
 gerotranscendence, 19
 nursing implications of, 19, 20*b*
 psychosocial, 17–19
- AIDS, 380–382, 416
 in black Americans, 26
- Alcohol use/abuse, 404–405, 404*b*, 405*b*, 412*b*
 cancer and, 388
 sexual dysfunction and, 146*t*
- Aldosterone, 60
- Allergy, drug, 214–215
- Allopurinol, food interactions with, 212*t*
- Aloe, adverse effects of, 213*t*
- Alpha-adrenoreceptors, 224
- Alpha-blockers, 225
- Alternative and complementary therapies, 218–219.
See also Nutritional supplements
 adverse effects of, 165*b*, 213*t*
 aromatherapy, 197
 cancer, treatment of, 390–391
 for cardiovascular disorders, 266–267
 for constipation, 168
 drug interactions with, 164, 165*b*
 drug-herb interactions in, 164, 165*b*
 for hypertension, 260
 for infection prevention, 205
 for insomnia, 178–179
 for menopausal symptoms, 137–138, 138*b*
 nutritional supplements in, 17, 164–165,
 164*t*, 165*t*
 for pain, 186–187, 187*b*, 189*f*
 for respiratory disorders, 245
 for skin, 365–366
- Alzheimer's disease, 413–415
 causes of, 414
 nursing care plan for, 419–420
 symptoms of, 414
 treatment of, 414–415
- American Association of Retired Persons
 (AARP), 117
- American Heart Association diet, 355
- American Journal of Nursing*, 70
- American Nurses Association (ANA), 70
 code of ethics of, 108, 109*b*
 practice standards of, 72, 73*b*
- Aminoglycosides, adverse effect of, 370*t*
- Amputation, in peripheral vascular disease, 266
- Analgesics, 188, 219–220. *See also* Pain management
 drug interaction with, 211*t*
 food interaction with, 212*t*
- Ancillary services, 115–118
- Anemia
 drug-related, 169*b*
 impaired cognition and, 412*b*
- Aneurysms, 262
- Angelica, adverse effects of, 213*t*
- Anger, 433
 in death and dying, 490
- Angina, 259–260
- Angiotensin II blockers, 225
- Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE), 225
- Ankle
 physical assessment of, 310*b*
 range of motion of
 assessment of, 445*t*
 exercises for, 444*f*
- Anorexia, 168, 273
 drug related, 169*b*
- Antacids, 220–221
 for interactions with, 212*t*
- Anthropometric measurements, 170*b*
- Antianxiety agents, 221–222
 drug interactions with, 211*t*
- Antibiotics, 222
 adverse side effects of, 370*t*
 alternatives to, 371*b*
 immune system and, 370–371
 microorganisms resistant to, 383
- Anticoagulants, drug interactions with, 211*t*, 222–223
- Anticonvulsants, food interactions with, 212*t*, 223–224
- Antidepressants, 224, 403*b*
 drug interactions with, 211*t*
- Antidiabetic agents, 224–225
 drug interactions with, 211*t*
- Antihistamines, food interactions with, 212*t*
- Antihypertensives, 225–226, 260
 drug interactions with, 211*t*
 food interactions with, 212*t*
- Anti-inflammatory agents, 226
 drug interactions with, 211*t*
- Antioxidants, 16
- Antipsychotics, 226–227
 drug interactions with, 211*t*
- Anxiety, 402, 404
- Aortic aneurysms, 262
- Apnea, sleep, 175–176
- Appendicitis, 280
- Appetite
 gastrointestinal function and, 272*b*
 loss of, drug related, 169*b*
- Aromatherapy, 197, 432*b*
- Arrhythmias, 260

- Arterial insufficiency
 in arteriosclerosis, 261
 in diabetes, 261
- Arteries, age-related changes in, 52, 52*f*
- Arteriosclerosis, 261
 sexual dysfunction due to, 146*t*
- Arthritis, 426*b*. *See also* Osteoarthritis; Rheumatoid arthritis
 sexual dysfunction due to, 146*t*
- Asian Americans, 26–28
- Aspirin
 drug interactions with, 211*t*
 food interactions with, 212*t*
- Assault, 97*b*
- Assembly of God, beliefs and practices of, 154*t*
- Assisted living, 119–120
- Assisted living facilities, 471–472
- Assisted suicide, 111*b*
- Asthma, 239–240
- Ataxic gait, 311*t*
- Atelectasis, 457*t*
- Atherosclerosis, 261
 sexual dysfunction due to, 146*t*
- Atrophic vaginitis, 294
- Attention span, age-related changes in, 62
- Attorney general opinions, 96*b*
- Auscultation, of lungs, 237*b*
- Autoimmune reactions, aging and, 16
- Autonomy, 109, 111*b*
- Autopsy, 104
- Ayurvedic medicine, 432*b*
- Baby-sitting, 36
- Balm, adverse effects of, 213*t*
- Banking, 116
- Baptists, beliefs and practices of, 154*b*
 death related, 493*t*
- Barberry, adverse effects of, 213*t*
- Barbiturates, for insomnia, 17*b*
- Bargaining, in death and dying, 490
- Battery, 97*b*
- Bayberry, adverse effects of, 213*t*
- Beds, side rails for, 174, 202
- Behavioral problems. *See* Mental health, disorders of
- Beliefs and practices, death related, 493*t*
- Beneficence, 109, 111*b*
- Benign prostatic hyperplasia, 295
- Benign prostatic hypertrophy, 55
- Biguanides, 351
- Bile-acid resins, 228
- Biliary tract disease, 280
- Biofeedback, 432*b*
- Biogerontology, 17
- Biological clock, 15
- Biology, of again, 14–17. *See also* Age-related changes
- Black Americans, 25–26
 life expectancy of, 5–6, 7*t*
- Black cohosh, adverse effects of, 213*t*
- Bladder cancer, 288–289
- Bladder elimination. *See* Urinary elimination
- Blindness. *See* Visual impairment
- Blood pressure
 age-related changes in, 53
 decreased, 255, 257
 elevated, 53, 252, 255
 in black Americans, 26
- Blood vessels, age-related changes in, 52–53, 52*f*
- Bloodroot, adverse effects of, 213*t*
- Body fat, age-related changes in, 50
- Body fluid. *See under* Fluid
- Body image, 39–40
 sexuality and, 143
- Body temperature
 age-related changes in, 61
 in cardiovascular disorders, 264
- Body weight, measurement of, 170*b*
- Bone. *See also* Musculoskeletal system
 age-related changes in, 55–56
- Bone marrow, age-related changes in, 16
- Botox injections, 14
- Bowel elimination
 age-related changes in, 54
 in cardiovascular disease, 264
- Bowel function, age-related changes in, 54
- Bowel incontinence, 279–280
- Brachial pulse, 254*b*
- Braden Scale, 365
- Breast cancer, 295
 diet and, 165
 hormone replacement therapy and, 137–138
- Breathing. *See also* Respiratory system
 age-related changes in, 236
 assessment of, 237*b*
 in cardiovascular disease, 253*b*
 pattern of, 253*b*
- Breathing exercises, 238
- Bronchitis, chronic, 240
- Bronchodilators, 245
- Buddhist, beliefs and practices of, 154*b*
 death related, 493*t*
- Budgeting, 39, 40*t*
- Buerger-Allen exercises, 261*f*, 265
- Bunions, 317, 317*f*
- Burial, 116
- Caffeine, sleep and, 177*b*
- Calcium, 251*b*
 recommended intake of, 163, 163*t*, 164, 164*t*
 sources of, 309*t*
 supplemental, food interactions with, 212*t*
- Calcium channel blockers, 225
- Caliculi, renal, 289
- Calluses, 316
- Caloric intake, calculation of, 162–163

CAM. *See* Complementary and alternative medicine

Cancer

aging and, 387
 of bladder, 288–289
 breast, 295
 of breast, 295
 diet and, 165
 hormone replacement therapy, 137–138
 of cervix, 294
 of colon, 277
 of endometrium, 294
 of esophagus, 275–276
 gastric, 275–276
 lung, 241
 optimum care promotion, 392
 of ovaries, 295
 of pancreas, 274*b*
 patient and family support, 392–393
 patient education and, 391–392
 of penis, 297
 prevention of, 389, 390*b*
 prostate, 296–297
 risk factors for
 alcohol, 388
 carcinogen occupational exposure, 388
 diet, 387–388
 drinking water, 388
 heredity and, 387
 radiation, 388
 radon, 388–389
 risk factors, 387–389
 tobacco, 388
 ultraviolet radiation, 388
 for women, 389
 screening for, 389, 390*b*
 of scrotum, 297
 of skin, 361–363
 of stomach, 273
 for terminal cancer patients, nursing diagnoses of,
 393*b*
 of testes, 297
 treatment of, 390–391
 complementary and alternative medicine in,
 390–391
 conventional treatment, 390
 of vagina, 294
 of vulva, 293–294

Canes, 446*b*
 Capsules, 217
 Carbohydrates, recommended intake of, 163, 163*t*
 Carcinogen occupational exposure, cancer and, 388
 Cardiac arrhythmias, 260
 Cardiac failure, 459*t*
 Cardiac function, decreased, impaired cognition and,
 412*b*
 Cardiovascular endurance, 301
 Cardiovascular system, 248–268

age-related changes in, 51–53, 52*f*
 assessment of, 253–255*b*
 diet and, 249, 251, 251*b*
 disorders of, 252–263
 alternative and complementary therapies for,
 266–267
 aneurysms, 262
 angina, 259–260
 arrhythmias, 260
 arteriosclerosis, 261
 congestive heart failure, 257, 258–259*b*
 coronary artery disease, 257, 258–260
 C-reactive protein in, 252*b*
 in diabetes, 261–262, 263*b*
 edema in, 262–266
 hyperlipidemia and, 249, 251, 355–356
 hypertension, 252, 255
 hypotension, 255, 257
 mortality in, 11*t*
 myocardial infarction, 260
 nursing considerations in, 263–267
 nursing diagnosis for, 256*t*
 patient education in, 263
 peripheral vascular disease, 261–263, 261*b*
 physical examination in, 254–255*b*
 preventing complications in, 263–265
 prevention of, 249–252, 263
 promoting normalcy in, 266
 pulmonary emboli, 257
 resources for, 267
 risk reduction for, 249–252
 sexual dysfunction in, 146*t*, 266
 signs and symptoms of, 253–254*b*
 skin care in, 263
 varicose veins, 262
 venous thromboembolism, 262–263

exercise and, 251
 health promotion for, 249–252
 proactive interventions for, 252
 risk assessment for, 249*t*
 smoking and, 251
 stress management and, 251–252

Care management, 120
 Caregiver education, 78–79
 Caregiving, 476–484
 family dynamics and relationships, 478–479
 family dysfunction and abuse, 481–483
 family member identification, 477
 family member roles, 477
 health protection and, 479–481
 rewards of, 483
 scope of family, 479

Cascara sagrada, adverse effects of, 213*t*
 Case management, 120
 Cataracts, 335–337, 341*f*, 426*b*
 Catholic, death related beliefs and practices, 493*t*
 Celecoxib, 226

- Celery, adverse effects of, 213*t*
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 378
- Central nervous system disturbances, impaired cognition and, 412*b*
- Cephalosporin, adverse effect of, 370*t*
- Cerebrovascular accidents, 327–328
sexual dysfunction after, 142*t*
- Cervical spine, support of, in cardiovascular disease, 265
- Cervical spine, range of motion of, exercises for, 443*f*
- Cervix
cancer of, 294
problems with, 294
- Chair position, 441*f*
- Chaparral, adverse effects of, 213*t*
- Chest, palpation of, 237*b*
- Chicanos, 24–25
- Child care, by grandparents, 36
- Childrearing, 35
- Children. *See also under* Family relationship with, 35
- Chinese Americans, 26–28
- Chinese medicine, 26, 27*b*. *See also* Alternative and complementary therapies
- Chiroprathy, 432*b*
- Chlorpromazine, food interactions with, 212*t*
- Cholesterol absorption inhibitors, 228
- Cholesterol, elevated, 249, 251*b*, 251
C-reactive protein and, 252*b*
- Cholesterol-lowering drugs, 227–228
- Christian Science, beliefs and practices of, 154*b*
death related, 493*t*
- Christians, beliefs and practices of, 154–155*b*
- Chromium, 251*b*
- Chronic bronchitis, 240
- Chronic care coach, 430, 431*b*
- Chronic illness, 9, 10*b*, 425–435. *See also* Death and dying; Disability
assessment of, 429
chronic care coach, 430, 431*b*
complementary and alternative therapies for, 432
course of, 432–434
goals in, 426–429
increasing knowledge of, 431
length of stay for, 11, 11*t*
mortality in, 11*t*
most common, 10*b*
physician selection for, 430
prevalence of, 11*t*
support group for, 431–432
- Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 176, 241
- Church of Brethren, beliefs and practices of, 154*b*
- Church of the Nazarene, beliefs and practices of, 154*b*
- Cigarette smoking
cardiovascular health and, 251
cessation of, 251
- Cimetidine, food interactions with, 212*t*
- Circadian rhythms, 174
- Circulation. *See also* Cardiovascular system
age-related changes in, 52*f*, 53
- Circulatory overload, 215
- Clostridium difficile*, 382–383
- Clothing, falls and, 201, 205
- Clover, adverse effects of, 212*t*
- Code of ethics, 108, 109*b*
- Cognitive function. *See also* Mental health
age-related changes in, 61–62
in cardiovascular disease, 253*b*, 255*b*
impaired, causes of, 412*b*
- Cognitive impairment. *See also* Mental health, disorders of
risk reduction in, 206–207
- Colchine, food interactions with, 212*t*
- Collagen, cross-linking in, aging and, 15
- Colon, age-related changes in, 54
- Colon cancer, 277
- Colors, environmental, 197, 204
- Coltsfoot, adverse effects of, 213*t*
- Comfort, 182–183. *See also* Pain
- Comforting, for pain, 188–189, 189*f*
- Comfrey, adverse effects of, 213*t*
- Competency, 100–101, 101*b*
- Complementary and alternative medicine (CAM), cancer and, 390–391
- Confusional states, acute, 458*t*
- Congestive heart failure, 257
care plan for, 258–259*b*
impaired cognition and, 412*b*
- Connection
for and by nurses, 128–131
promotion of, 147–148, 148*b*
- Consent, 99–100
- Constipation, 168, 453*t*
chronic, 277
in death and dying, 492
drug-related, 169*b*
- Constitutions, 96*b*
- Consumer affairs, 117
- Continence, activities of daily living assessment and, 440*t*
- Continuity theory, 18–19
- Continuum of care, 115, 115*f*
complete and continuous care services in, 120–121
matching services to needs in, 122
nonconventional services in, 121–122
for older adults, 114–125
partial and intermittent care services in, 118–120
preventive and ancillary services in, 115–118
- Contractures, 458*t*
- Contrimoxazole, adverse effect of, 370*t*
- Coordination, assessment of, 324*b*
- Cornea, age-related changes in, 58
- Corneal ulcer, 342
- Corns, 316–317

- Coronary artery disease, 257–260
 angina in, 259–260
 hyperlipidemia and, 249, 250, 251*b*, 355–356
 hypertension in, 252, 255
 myocardial infarction in, 260
- Cost analysis, 72
- Coughing, productive, 244
- Court decisions, 96*b*
- COX-2. *See* Cyclooxygenase-II
- C-reactive protein, 252*b*
- Creutzfeldt-Jacob disease, 415
- Criminal negligence, 97*b*
- Cross-linking agents, 15
- Cuban Americans, 25
- Cultural aspects, of pain, 185
- Cultural sensitivity, 30–31
- Cushing syndrome, 315
- Cutaneous disorders. *See* Skin, disorders of
- CVAs. *See* Cerebrovascular accidents
- Cyclic compounds, 403*b*
- Cyclooxygenase-II (COX-2), 226
- Cystocele, sexual dysfunction due to, 146*t*
- Dandelion, adverse effects of, 213*t*
- Dopamine-reuptake blocking compounds, 224
- Day care, 119
- Day hospital programs, 119
- Day treatment, 119
- Death and dying. *See also* Mortality
 advance directives in, 103–104, 494
 definitions of, 486
 family experience with, 486–487, 486*f*
 family support, 494–495
 friend support, 494–495
 hospice care in, 120–121
 leading causes of, 11*t*
 legal aspects of, 103–104
 life review in, 42–44, 44*b*
 nursing staff support, 495–496
 patient support and, 487–494
 physical care needs in, 491–493
 constipation, 492
 pain, 491–492
 poor nutritional intake, 492–493
 respiratory distress, 492
 pneumonia and, 377*t*
 postmortem examination and, 104
 pronouncement of death and, 104
 signs of, 493–494
 spiritual care needs in, 493, 493*t*
 of spouse, 36–37
 stages of, 488–491
 acceptance, 491
 anger, 490
 bargaining, 490
 denial, 488, 490
 depression, 490–491
- Deep venous thrombosis, 314
- Deep-breathing exercises, 238
- Defamation of character, 97*b*
- Defecation. *See* Bowel elimination
- Degenerative arthritis, sexual dysfunction
 due to, 146*t*
- Dehydration, 166–167, 453*t*, 460*b*
 impaired cognition and, 412*b*
 nursing diagnoses for, 166*b*
- Delegation, legal aspects of, 101
- Delirium, 412–413, 453*t*, 458*t*, 460*b*
 vs. dementia, 412*t*
- Dementia, 413–418
 AIDS, 416
 Alzheimer's disease, 413–415
 Creutzfeldt-Jacob, 416
 vs. delirium, 412*t*
 family support, 418
 frontotemporal, 415
 HIV and, 382*b*
 Lewy body, 415
 Parkinson's disease, 416
 patient care and, 416–417
 patient respect and, 417–418
 safety in, 207
 vascular, 415
 Wernicke encephalopathy, 416
- Denial, 433
 of aging, 40–41
 in death and dying, 488, 490
- Dental problems, 53. *See also* Oral cavity
 gastrointestinal system and, 271, 273
 nutrition and, 167
- Dentures, 167
 gastrointestinal function and, 272*b*
- Depression, 398–402, 433
 in death and dying, 490–491
 signs and symptoms of, 398, 400
 suicide risk and, 401–402
 treatment of, 400–401
- Dermatologic problems. *See* Skin
- Detached retina, 339, 342
- Developmental tasks, 19, 19*t*
- Diabetes mellitus, 347–353
 cardiovascular complications in, 261–262, 263*b*
 complications of, 352–353
 diagnosis of, 347–348
 foot care in, 265–266
 management of, 348–352
 drug therapy, 350–351
 exercise in, 352
 monitoring, 351–352
 nutrition and, 352
 patient education, 348
 self-care, 351–352
 peripheral vascular disease in, 261–263
 venous ulcers in, 262, 263*b*

- Diarrhea, chronic, HIV and, 382*b*
- Diarrhea, drug-related, 169*b*
- Dicumarol, food interactions with, 212*t*
- Diet. *See also* Nutrition
- cancer and, 387–388
 - gastrointestinal function and, 272*b*
 - guidelines for, 162–166, 164*f*
 - high-fiber, 163, 163*f*
 - immune system and, 368
 - low-fat, 249, 250, 251*b*
 - Ornish, 251
- Dietary supplements. *See* Nutritional supplements
- Digestion, gastrointestinal function and, 272*b*
- Digitalis
- drug interactions with, 211*t*
 - food interactions with, 212*t*
 - toxicity of, 265, 266
- Digiti flexus, 317
- Digoxin, 229
- Disability, 437*t*, 438
- Discharge planning, 462
- Disciples of Christ, beliefs and practices of, 154*b*
- Disengagement theory, 18
- Diuretics, 229
- drug interactions with, 211*t*
- Diversity, 24–31. *See also* Gender; Race/ethnicity
- Diverticular disease, 276–277
- Divorce, 8*f*. *See also* Marital status
- DNA damage, aging and, 16
- DNR orders, 103
- Do not resuscitate (DNR) orders, 103
- Domestic arrangements, 7, 8*f*
- Dorsalis pedis pulse, 254*b*
- Doxazosin, 225
- Drainage, postural, 244
- Dressing, activities of daily living assessment and, 440*t*
- Drinking water, cancer and, 388
- Driving safety, 206
- Drug(s), 17, 165*t*, 169, 169*b*, 209–231
- absorption of, 211
 - adverse reactions to, 214–215
 - alternatives to, 218–219
 - analgesic, 188
 - drug interactions with, 211*t*
 - food interactions with, 212*t*
 - anemia due to, 169*b*
 - anorexia due to, 169*b*
 - in capsule form, 217
 - checklist for, 217
 - commonly used, 210
 - constipation due to, 169*b*
 - detoxification of, 213–214
 - for diabetes mellitus, 350–351
 - diarrhea due to, 169*b*
 - distribution of, 211–212
 - dosage of, 216
 - excretion of, 213–214
 - food interactions with, 169*b*, 210, 212*t*
 - gastrointestinal upset due to, 169*b*
 - herbal remedies and, 164, 165*t*
 - impaired cognition and, 412*b*
 - injection of, 217–218
 - interactions between, 210, 211*t*, 216–217
 - intramuscular administration of, 217–218
 - intravenous administration of, 218
 - legal aspects of, 103–104
 - medication errors and, 218, 218*b*, 219*b*
 - metabolism of, 213–214
 - oral administration of, 217
 - patient education for, 218, 219*b*
 - pharmacodynamics and, 211
 - pharmacokinetics, 210–214
 - in polydrug therapy, 210
 - in restraint, 203
 - routes of administration for, 211, 217–218
 - safe use of, 201, 215–218
 - assessment for, 219*b*
 - self-medication errors and, 218
 - sexual dysfunction due to, 145, 147
 - sleep and, 176, 178
 - subcutaneous administration of, 217–218
 - in tablet form, 217
- Dry mouth, 271
- DVT. *See* Deep venous thrombosis
- Dyspareunia, 295
- Dysphagia, 168, 273–274
- Dysrhythmias, 260
- Ear, age-related changes in, 58–59, 59*f*
- Eastern Orthodoxy, beliefs and practices of, 154*b*
- Eating. *See also* Diet; Nutrition
- activities of daily living assessment and, 440*t*
 - with dysphagia, 168
 - positioning for, 168
- Economic issues
- affecting older adults, 39, 40*t*
 - ethical aspects of, 108
- Edema, in cardiovascular disorders, 253*b*, 263–264
- Education. *See also* Patient education
- adult, 117
 - for caregivers, 78–79
- Educational status, of older adults, 9, 9*f*
- Egoism, 108
- Elbow
- physical assessment of, 310*b*
 - range of motion of
 - assessment of, 445*t*
 - exercises for, 442*f*
- Elder abuse, 104
- Elimination, gastrointestinal function and, 272*b*
- Embolism
- pulmonary, 257
 - venous, 262–263
- Embryonic tissue injections, 14

- Emergency care, 456–459
- Emotional problems. *See* Mental health, disorders of
- Empysema, 240–241, 242–243*b*
- Employment, 7–8, 8*b*
retirement from, 37–39
- Employment counseling, 117
- Endocrine and metabolic disorders
age-related changes in, 347
disorders of, 347–356
diabetes mellitus, 347–353
hyperlipidemia, 355–356
hyperthyroidism, 354–355
hypothyroidism, 354
- Endocrine replacement therapy, 138, 140*b*
- Endocrine system, age-related changes, 59–60
- End-of-life care, 485–497. *See* Death and dying
- Endometrium, of cancer, 294
- Environment, 194–200. *See also* Living situations
air quality in, 239
bathroom hazards in, 199
bedroom hazards in, 178
colors in, 197, 204
floor coverings in, 197–198
furniture in, 198
lighting in, 195–196
macroenvironment, 193
microenvironment, 193
noise control in, 199
personal space in, 199–200
physical limitations and, 195*t*
privacy and, 205
privacy in, 199–200
psychosocial aspects of, 199–200
safety checklist for, 194, 196*b*
scents in, 197
sensory stimulation in, 198
sleep disturbances and, 174
socialization and, 200
temperature in, 196
- Environmental safety checklist, 194, 196*b*. *See also* Risk reduction; Safety
- Ephedra, adverse effects of, 213*t*
- Episcopal, beliefs and practices of, 154*b*
death related to, 493*t*
- Equilibrium, age-related changes in, 59
- Erectile dysfunction, 145, 146*t*, 147
- Erikson's psychosocial theory, developmental tasks in, 19, 19*t*
- Error theory, 15
- Erythromycin, adverse effect of, 370*t*
- Esophageal cancer, 275–276
- Esophagus, age-related changes in, 54
- Essential oils, in aromatherapy, 197
- Estrogen
food interactions with, 212*t*
for menopausal symptoms, 137–138, 140*b*
- Ethical decision-making, 110–113
- Ethical dilemmas, 110, 111*b*
- Ethics, 107–113
codes of, 108, 109*b*
definition of, 107–108
external/internal influences on, 108–109
fiscal constraints and, 110
increasing older adult population and, 111
medical technology and, 110
in nursing, 108–113
nursing roles and, 110
philosophical basis of, 108
principles of, 109
professional, 107
- Ethics committees, 112
- Ethics consultation, 112
- Ethnicity. *See* Race/ethnicity
- Euthanasia, 111*b*
- Evidence-based practice, 72
- Exercises
Buerger-Allen, 261*f*, 265
deep-breathing, 238
to do anytime, 305*f*
to do in bed, 304*f*
to do while sitting, 305*f*
for feet and toes, 265*f*
immune system and, 369
range-of-motion
assessment of, 445*t*
in rehabilitation, 441–444, 441–444*f*
resistance, 301
in strength training, 301
- Extremities, hair distribution on, in cardiovascular disease, 253*b*, 254*b*
- Eyeglasses, 204
- Eyes. *See also under* Vision; Visual
age-related changes in, 56–58, 59*f*
cataracts and, 335–337, 341*f*, 426*b*
examination of, 204
in nutritional assessment, 170*b*
glaucoma and, 338–339, 341*f*
macular degeneration and, 339, 341*f*
- Failure to thrive, 42
- Faith, 152. *See also* Religious beliefs and practice
- Falls, 200–203, 201*b*, 453*t*, 460–461*b*
clothing and, 201, 205
fractures from, 203
safety and, 200–203
shoes and, 201
- False imprisonment, 97*b*
- Family. *See also* Caregiving
Asian American, 26–28
changing roles in, 34–36
death and dying
experience with, 486–487, 486*f*
support and, 494–495
dementia, support and, 418

- dysfunction and abuse, 481–483
 Jewish American, 28–29
 loss of, 42
 Native American, 29–30
 parent-child relationships in, 35
 support of, cancer and, 392–393
- Fat
 body, age-related changes in, 50
 dietary
 cancer and, 165
 heart disease and, 165
 recommended intake of, 163, 164*f*, 165
 restriction of, 250, 251*b*
- Fatigue, HIV and, 382*b*
- Fecal impaction, 279
- Fecal incontinence, 279–280
- Feet. *See* Foot
- Females. *See* Gender; Women
- Femoral pulse, 254*b*
- Ferrous supplements, food interactions with, 212*t*
- Fever, HIV and, 382*b*
- Feverfew, adverse effects of, 213*t*
- Fiber, recommended intake of, 163, 163*f*
- Fibric acid derivatives, 228
- Fidelity, 109
- Filipino Americans, 28
- Financial aid, 116
- Financial status, 39, 40*t*. *See also* Economic issues
- Fingernails
 age-related changes in, 60
 in cardiovascular disease, 253*b*
- Fingers
 physical assessment of, 310*b*
 range of motion of
 assessment of, 445*t*
 exercises for, 444*f*
- Fish oil, 251*b*
- Fitness. *See* Activity and exercise
- Flatulence, 279
- Flexibility, 301
- Floaters, 58
- Floor coverings, 197–198, 199
- Fluid and electrolyte imbalance, 457*t*
 impaired cognition and, 412*b*
- Fluid intake, 166–167. *See also* Dehydration
 excessive, 166–167
 recommended, 203–204
- Fluid management, intravenous therapy in, 218
- Fluid volume deficit, 166
 nursing diagnosis for, 166*b*
- Fluoroquinolones, adverse effect of, 370*t*
- Folic acid, 251*b*, 369*b*
- Food. *See also* Diet; Nutrition
 drug interactions with, 169*b*, 210, 212*t*
- Food delivery services, 118
- Food Guide Pyramid, 163, 164*f*
- Food interactions, 42*t*, 169*b*, 212*t*, 217*t*, 223–224
- Food intolerance, 167
- Foot, 308–321
 disorders of
 bunions, 317, 317*f*
 calluses, 316
 corns, 316–317
 fractures, 308–312
 gout, 316
 hammer toe, 317, 317*f*
 infections, 317
 ingrown nails, 318
 onychomycosis, 317
 osteoarthritis, 312, 313–314*b*, 314
 osteoporosis, 315–316
 plantar fasciitis, 317
 podiatric conditions, 316–318
 rheumatoid arthritis, 314–315, 315*b*
 tinea pedis, 317
 stasis ulcers of, 262, 263*b*
- Foot care, in peripheral vascular disease, 265–266
- Foot slapping gait, 311*t*
- Forgiveness, spirituality and, 151
- Foster care, 118–119
- Fractures
 from falls, 203
 of musculoskeletal system, 308–312
- Frailty, 437*t*
- Fraud, 97*b*
- Free radicals, 16
- Friends (Quakers), beliefs and practices of, 154*b*
 death related, 493*t*
- Friends, loss of, 42
- Frontotemporal dementia, 415
- Functional incontinence, 285
- Funeral services, 116
- Furniture, 198
- Furosemide, food interactions with, 212*t*
- Gait disturbances, 311*t*
- Gallbladder disease, 280
- Gallstones, 280
- Garlic, adverse effects of, 213*t*
- Gastric cancer, 275–276
- Gastric function, age-related changes in, 54
- Gastric reflux, sleep disturbance and, 176
- Gastric ulcers, 276
- Gastroesophageal reflux, hiatal hernia and, 273
- Gastrointestinal system, 269–281
 age-related changes in, 53–54, 53*f*
 assessment of, 272–273*b*
 disorders of
 anorexia, 273
 appendicitis, 280
 biliary tract disease, 280
 chronic constipation, 277
 colon cancer, 277
 dental problems and, 271, 273

- Gastrointestinal system (*continued*)
- diverticular disease, 276–277
 - drug-related, 169*b*
 - dry mouth, 271
 - dysphagia, 273–274
 - esophageal cancer, 275–276
 - fecal impaction, 279
 - fecal incontinence, 279–280
 - hiatal hernia, 274–275, 275*b*
 - impact of, 269–270
 - intestinal obstruction, 279
 - nursing diagnoses for, 274*b*
 - pancreatic cancer, 274*b*
 - peptic ulcer, 276
 - physical examination in, 272–273*b*
 - resources for, 281
 - stomach cancer, 273
 - health promotion for, 270–271
- Gender. *See also* Men; Women
- life expectancy and, 6–7, 7*t*
- Gender ratio, 7*t*
- Gender roles, 35
- sexuality and, 136
- Genetic mutations, aging and, 15
- Genitalis
- age-related changes in, 55, 56*f*
 - disorders of, sexual dysfunction in, 142*t*
- Genitourinary system
- age-related changes in, 54, 55*f*
 - benign prostatic hyperplasia, 55
 - sexual dysfunction due to, 146*t*
- Geriatric care and case management, 120
- Geriatric Nursing Division (ANA), 70
- Gerontological nurse
- as advocate, 76
 - as caregiver, 76
 - as educator, 76
 - as healer, 75–76, 127
 - health promotion for, 128–131, 129*t*
 - as innovator, 76
 - self-care for, 128–131
- Gerontological nurse practitioner, 76
- Gerontological nursing, 70–80
- advanced practice, 76
 - caregiver education in, 78–79
 - changing image of, 80
 - complexity of, 70–71
 - continuum of care in, 114–115, 115*f*
 - development of, 70–71, 71*b*
 - evidence-based practice in, 72
 - future challenges for, 77–80
 - as healing art, 75, 127
 - health care costs and, 79–80
 - holistic, 72, 74*f*
 - increasing interest and opportunities in, 77
 - information systems for, 72, 74*f*
 - integrative care, 78
 - new roles in, 79
 - nursing process and, 73–74
 - past and current problems in, 77
 - patient advocacy in, 80
 - practice settings for, 114–124
 - principles of, 72
 - quality care in, 79–80
 - research in, 77–78
 - roles in, 75–76, 75*f*
 - standards of care in, 72, 73*f*
 - streamlining care in, 79
- Gerontological nursing interventions, 85, 86*f*
- for health promotion, 85, 86*f*
- Gerotranscendence, 19
- Gingival disease, 53
- nutrition and, 167
- Ginkgo biloba, adverse effects of, 213*t*
- Ginseng, adverse effects of, 213*t*
- Glaucoma, 338–339, 341*f*
- Glibenclamide, 350
- Glomerulonephritis, 289
- Goldenseal, adverse effects of, 213*t*
- Gout, 316
- Gratitude. spirituality and, 151
- Great toe, range of motion of, assessment of, 445*t*
- Greek Orthodox, death related beliefs and practices, 493*t*
- Group homes, 118–119
- Guardianship, 100–101, 101*b*
- Guided imagery, 432*b*
- Gum disease, 53
- Hair
- age-related changes in, 60
 - examination of, in nutritional assessment, 170*b*
 - on extremities, 253*b*
- Hallux valgus, 317
- Hammer toe, 317, 317*f*
- Handicap, 437*t*
- Harris-Benedict equation, 162
- Hawthorne, adverse effects of, 213*t*
- HDL. *See* High-density lipoprotein
- Headaches, HIV and, 382*b*
- Healer, nurse as, 75, 127–128
- Healing, 472, 473*f*
- Health care
- scope of, 114–124
 - use of by older adults, 10, 10*f*
- Health care costs, quality care and, 79–80
- Health challenges-related needs, 84
- Health insurance, 5*b*, 8*b*, 9, 11*f*
- Health promotion, 20, 21, 21*b*, 22*b*, 72, 74*f*
- Hearing, 334, 342–343
- age-related changes in, 58–59, 59*f*
- Hearing aids, 204, 343–344, 343*f*
- Hearing impairment, 58–59, 59*f*, 426*b*
- hearing aids for, 204
 - safety and, 207

- Heart, age-related changes in, 51–53, 52*f*
- Heart condition, 426*b*
- Heart disease. *See also* Cardiovascular system, disorders of
 diet and, 165
 in women, 165
- Height
 age-related changes in, 51
 measurement of, 170*b*
- Hemiplegic gait, 311*t*
- Hepatic drug metabolism, 214
- Hepatic function, age-related changes in, 54
- Herbal remedies, 432*b*. *See also* Alternative and
 complementary therapies
 adverse effects of, 213*t*
 drug interactions with, 164, 165*t*
- Heredity, cancer and, 387
- Hernia, 426*b*
 perineal, 295
- Herpes zoster, 380
 HIV and, 382*b*
- Hiatal hernia, 274–275, 275*b*
 gastroesophageal reflux and, 273
- Hierarchy of needs, 194, 194*t*
- High-density lipoprotein, 227, 251*b*
- Hill-Burton Act, 466
- Hindus, beliefs and practices of, 155*b*
 death related, 493*t*
- Hip
 physical assessment of, 310*b*
 range of motion of
 assessment of, 445*t*
 exercises for, 443*f*
- Hispanic Americans, 24–25
- History. *See also* Life review (life story)
 nutritional, 170*b*
 sexual, 136
- HIV infections, in black Americans, 26
- Holism, long-term care facilities and, 472, 473*f*
- Holistic care, 72, 74*f*. *See also* Alternative and comple-
 mentary therapies
 assessment in, 83–85
 case examples of, 86–87, 88–93*b*
 health challenges-related needs and, 84–85
 health promotion-related needs and, 83–84, 84*f*
 information systems in, 74*f*
 self-care as, 127–128
- Home health care, 118. *See also* Caregiving
- Home monitoring, 118
- Home shopping, 117–118
- Home-delivered meals, 118
- Homemaking services, 118
- Homeopathy, 432*b*
- Hope
 fostering of, 156
 spirituality and, 151
- Hops, adverse effects of, 213*t*
- Hormone replacement therapy, 137–138, 140*b*
- Hormones. *See also under* Endocrine
 age-related changes in, 60
- Hospice care, 120–121, 488*b*
- Hospitalization, 120–121
 length of stay in, 121
 quality of care in, 121*b*
 rates of, 11–12, 11*f*, 11*t*
 risks of, 452
- Housekeeping assistance, 118
- Housing. *See also* Living situations
 assistance with, 116
- Human immunodeficiency virus infection, 380–382
 in black Americans, 24
 symptoms of, 382*b*
- Hydralazine, food interactions with, 42*t*
- Hydration, 166–167
 inadequate, 166
 nursing diagnoses for, 166*b*
- Hydrotherapy, 432*b*
- Hygiene
 activities of daily living assessment and, 440*t*
 long-term care facilities and, 472, 473*f*
- Hypercalcemia, impaired cognition and, 412*b*
- Hyperemia, 364
- Hyperglycemia, 348*b*
 impaired cognition and, 412*b*
- Hyperlipidemia, 249, 250, 251*b*, 355–356
 C-reactive protein and, 252*b*
- Hypertension, 53, 252, 255, 426*b*
 in black Americans, 24
- Hyperthermia, impaired cognition and, 412*b*
- Hyperthyroidism, 354–355
- Hypervolemia, 166–167
- Hypnotherapy, 432*b*
- Hypnotics, 230
- Hypocalcemia, impaired cognition and, 412*b*
- Hypochondriasis, 406
- Hypoglycemia, 348*b*
 impaired cognition and, 412*b*
- Hypokalemia, 229
- Hypotension, 255, 257
 impaired cognition and, 412*b*
- Hypothermia, 196
 impaired cognition and, 412*b*
 incidental, 458*t*
- Hypothyroidism, 354
 impaired cognition and, 412*b*
- Hypovolemia. *See* Dehydration
- Hypoxia, 412*b*
 in cardiovascular disease, 264
 in oxygen therapy, 264
 signs and symptoms of, 264
- Ibuprofen, 188
- ICU. *See* Hospitalization
- Illness. *See also* Chronic illness
 acute, rates of, 9, 10*f*

- Immobility. *See also* Inactivity, prevention of
respiratory health and, 238
- Immune senescence, 367
- Immune system
age-related changes in, 16, 60–61, 368
health promotion of, 368–371
antibiotic use, 370–371
diet, 368
exercises, 369
immunization, 369
mind-body connection, 370
stress management, 370
infection and, 205
- Immunizations, 205
immune system and, 369
for pneumococcal pneumonia, 205
- Impaction, fecal, 279
- Impairment, 437*t*
- Impotence, 143, 146*t*, 147
- Inactivity, prevention of, 306–307, 306*b*
- Incarcerated older adults, 30
- Incontinence, 453*t*
of bowel, 279–280
fecal, 279–280
functional, 285
mixed, 285
neurogenic (reflex), 285
overflow, 285
stress, 285
urgency, 285
urinary, 284–288
- Indigestion, 167
drug-related, 169*b*
- Indoor air pollution, 239
- Infection(s), 375–384, 459–462
AIDS, 380–382
antibiotic-resistant microorganisms, 383
Clostridium difficile, 382–383
herpes zoster, 380
HIV, 380–382
immune system and, 205
impaired cognition and, 412*b*
influenza, 378–379
methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*,
383
of musculoskeletal system, 317
pneumonia, 377–378
prevention of, 205
prostatitis, 377
respiratory
immunization for, 205
lung abscess in, 241
pneumonia, 51, 205
scabies, 380
tuberculosis, 379
urinary tract infection, 376–377, 459
vaginitis, 379–380
vancomycin-resistant enterococcus, 383
of vulva, 293–294
- Influenza, 378
- Information resources, for social services, 117
- Informed consent, 99–100
- Ingrown nails, 318
- Injections
Botox, 14
embryonic tissue, 14
intramuscular, 217–218
subcutaneous, 217–218
- Injuries, accidental. *See also* Safety
death from, 192*t*
- Innovator, nurse as, 76
- Insomnia, 174–175
- Institutional care. *See also* Long-term care facilities
chronic illness and, 434
- Insulin, age-related changes in, 60
- Insurance, health, 8*b*, 9, 11*f*
- Integrity *vs.* despair, 19, 19*t*
- Integumentary system. *See* Hair; Nails; Skin
- Intelligence. *See also under* Cognitive
age-related changes in, 61
- Intensive care unit (ICU). *See* Hospitalization
- Intestinal obstruction, 279
- Intestines, age-related changes in, 54
- Intimacy needs, 135–137
- Intramuscular injections, 217–218
- Intravenous drug administration, 218
- Invasion of privacy, 97*b*
- Iron, 369*b*
- Iron supplements, food interactions with, 212*t*
- Ischemia, 364
- Islam, beliefs and practices of, 155*b*
- Isoniazid, adverse effect of, 370*t*
- Japanese Americans, 28
- Jehovah's Witnesses, beliefs and practices of, 154*b*
- Jerking legs, during sleep, 175
- Jews, beliefs and practices of, 28–29, 155*b*
death related, 493*t*
- Job
placement, 116
retirement from, 37–39
- Joint Commission on Accreditation of Healthcare Organizations (JCAHO), 72
- Joint stiffness, 458*t*
- Joints. *See also* Musculoskeletal system
age-related changes in, 55
motion of, 441*b*
- Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 70
- Journaling, by nurse, 130
- Judaism, beliefs and practices of, 28–29, 154*b*
- Justice, 109
- Kegel exercises, 285, 287
- Keratosis, seborrheic, 360–361, 362*f*

- Kidney
 age-related changes in, 54
 drug metabolism in, 214
- Knee
 physical assessment of, 310*b*
 range of motion of
 assessment of, 445*t*
 exercises for, 443*f*
- Korean Americans, 28
- Larceny, 97*b*
- Large intestine, age-related changes in, 54
- Lateral position, 441*f*
- Latinos, 24–25
- Laws. *See also* Legal issues
 sources of, 96, 96*b*
- Laxatives, 168, 230
 drug interactions with, 211*t*
 food interactions with, 212*t*
- Leg jerks, during sleep, 175
- Legal issues, 95–105
 advance directives, 103–104
 assault, 97*b*
 battery, 97*b*
 competency, 100–101, 101*b*
 consent, 99–100
 in death and dying, 103–104
 defamation of character, 97*b*
 elder abuse, 104
 false imprisonment, 97*b*
 fraud, 97*b*
 invasion of privacy, 97*b*
 larceny, 97*b*
 malpractice/negligence, 96, 98–99, 98*b*, 104
 medication-related, 101–102
 no-code orders, 103
 postmortem care, 104
 pronouncement of death, 104
 regulatory laws, 96
 restraints, 102
 sources of law, 96*b*
 staff supervision, 101
 standards of care, 99
 telephone orders, 102–103
 wills, 103
- Legal services, 117
- Length of stay, 121
- Lentigo maligna melanoma, 362
- Levodopa, food interactions with, 212*t*
- Lewy body dementia, 415
- Libido, decreased, 145. *See also* Sexual dysfunction
- Licorice, adverse effects of, 213*t*
- Life expectancy, 5–7, 6*t*, 7*t*
 gender and, 5–7, 7*t*
 race/ethnicity and, 5–7, 7*t*
 ways to increase, 21*b*
- Life review (life story)
 of nurse, 129–130, 130*b*
 of older adults, 42–44, 44*b*
- Light therapy, 432*b*
- Lighting, 195–196, 199, 204
- Lipids, elevated, C-reactive protein and, 252*b*
- Lipofuscin, 16
- Lips, gastrointestinal function and, 272*b*
- Lithium carbonate, 403*b*
- Liver
 age-related changes in, 54
 in drug metabolism, 215
- Living situations, 7, 8*t*. *See also* Environment
 assisted living, 119–120
 foster care, 118–119
 group homes, 118–119
 long-term care, 4
- Living wills, 103–104
- Longevity, 5, 6*f*, 6*t*
 gender and, 6–7, 7*t*
 promotion of, 21*b*
 race/ethnicity and, 5–6, 7*t*
- Long-term care facilities, 4
 assisted living facilities, 471–472
 development of, 4, 465–467
 facility residents, 468
 holism and, 472
 hygiene, 472
 new model of, 472–473
 nursing facility standards, 468
 nursing responsibilities in, 468, 471
 nursing roles in, 468, 471
 privacy in, 199–200
- Loop diuretics, 229
- Loss, of friends and family, 42
- Love, spirituality and, 151
- Low-density lipoprotein, 227, 355
- Low-fat diet, 249, 250, 251*b*
- Lung(s). *See also under* Respiratory
 abscess, 241
 age-related changes in, 51, 51*f*
 auscultation of, 237*b*
 cancer of, 241
- Lutherans, beliefs and practices of, 154*b*
 death related, 493*t*
- Lymph nodes, swelling of, HIV and, 382*b*
- Ma huang, adverse effects of, 213*t*
- Macroenvironment, 193
- Macrolides, adverse effect of, 370*t*
- Macular degeneration, 339, 341*f*
- Magnesium, 251*b*, 369*b*
- Males. *See also* Gender
 life expectancy of, 6–7, 7*t*
- Malfeasance, 97*b*
- Malignancy, 412*b*

- Malnutrition, 457*t*
 impaired cognition and, 412*b*
- Malpractice, 96, 98–99, 98*b*, 104
- Manganese, 369*b*
- MAOIs. *See* Monoamine oxidase inhibitors
- Marital status, 7, 7*t*, 8*t*, 36–37
- Masturbation, 147
- McGill Pain Questionnaire, 185
- MDS. *See* Minimum Data Set
- Meals on Wheels, 118
- Meaning and purpose, spirituality and, 151
- Medical orders
 no-code, 103
 telephone, 102–103
- Medicare/Medicaid, 5*b*, 7–8, 8*b*
- Medications. *See* Drug(s)
- Meditation, 156*b*, 432*b*
 for nurses, 130
 for pain, 188
- Melanoma, 362*f*
 lentigo maligna, 363
 nodular, 363
 superficial spreading, 363
- Memory. *See also* Cognitive function
 age-related changes in, 61
- Men. *See also* Gender
 life expectancy of, 6–7, 7*t*
 reproductive system disorders of
 benign prostatic hyperplasia, 295
 penis tumor, 297
 prostate cancer, 296–297
 scrotum tumor, 297
 testes tumor, 297
- Meningitis, HIV and, 382*b*
- Mennonites, beliefs and practices of, 154*b*
- Menopause, 137–138, 138–140*b*
- Mental health
 age-related changes in, 61–62
 aging and, 397
 assessment in, 399–400*b*
 disorders of, 398–409
 alcohol abuse, 146*t*, 404–405, 404*b*, 405*b*
 anxiety, 402, 404
 depression, 398–402
 hypochondriasis, 406
 management of, 407, 409
 paranoia, 405–406
 health promotion in, 397–398
 positive self-concept promotion, 406–407
- Meta-analysis, 72
- Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA), 383
- Methodists, beliefs and practices of, 154*b*
- Methronidazole, adverse effect of, 370*t*
- Microenvironment, 193
- Midarm circumference, 170*b*
- Mind-body connection, 306
 immune system and, 370
- Mineral oil, food interactions with, 212*t*
- Minerals. *See also* Nutritional supplements
 recommended intake of, 163, 163*t*, 164
- Minimum Data Set (MDS), 467
- Minority groups. *See* Race/ethnicity
- Misfeasance, 97*b*
- Mistletoe, adverse effects of, 213*t*
- Mixed incontinence, 285
- Mobility, activities of daily living assessment and, 440*t*
- Monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs), 224, 403*b*
- Mormons, beliefs and practices of, 154–155*b*
 death related, 493*t*
- Mortality. *See also* Death and dying
 from accidental injuries, 192*t*
 leading causes of, 11*t*
- Mouth, dry, 271
- MRSA. *See* Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*
- Muscle. *See also* Musculoskeletal system
 age-related changes in, 55–56, 57*f*
- Musculoskeletal system, 308–321
 disorders of
 bunions, 317, 317*f*
 calluses, 316
 corns, 316–317
 fractures, 308–312
 gout, 316
 hammer toe, 317, 317*f*
 infections, 317
 ingrown nails, 318
 onychomycosis, 317
 osteoarthritis, 142*t*, 312, 313–314*b*, 314
 osteoporosis, 315–316
 plantar fasciitis, 317
 podiatric conditions, 316–318
 rheumatoid arthritis, 314–315, 315*b*
 tinea pedis, 317
 independence promotion, 319
 injury prevention of, 318–319
 pain management of, 318
- Muslim, death related beliefs and practices, 493*t*
- Muslims, beliefs and practices of, 155*b*
- Mutations, aging and, 15
- Myocardial infarction, 460–461*b*
- Nails
 age-related changes in, 60
 ingrown, 318
- Nalidixic acid, adverse effect of, 370*t*
- Narcotic analgesics, 188. *See also* Pain management
- Nascher, I.L., 4
- Naturopathic medicine, 432*b*
- Nausea and vomiting, drug-related, 169*b*
- Neck
 physical assessment of, 310*b*
 range of motion of, assessment of, 445*t*
- Necrosis, 365
- Negligence, 96, 98–99, 98*b*, 104

- Nervous system, age-related changes in, 56, 58*f*
- Neurogenic (reflex) incontinence, 285
- Neurologic system
- age-related changes in, 323
 - disorders of, 326–328
 - cerebrovascular accidents, 327–328
 - Parkinson's disease, 326–327, 416
 - transient ischemic attacks, 327
 - health promotion in, 323, 323*b*, 324–325*b*
 - independence promotion, 328
 - injury prevention, 330
- Neuropathic pain, 183
- Niacin, 228
- Night sweats, HIV and, 382*b*
- Nightingale, Florence, 75
- Nociceptive pain, 183
- No-code orders, 103
- Nocturnal myoclonus, 175
- Nodular melanoma, 362
- Nonfeasance, 97*b*
- Nonmaleficence, 109
- Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)
- drug interactions with, 211*t*
 - food interactions with, 212*t*
 - for pain, 188
- Norton scale, 365
- Numeric rating scale, 185
- Nurse. *See* Gerontological nurse
- Nurse practitioners, gerontological, 76
- Nursing. *See* Gerontological nursing
- Nursing care plan, for emphysema, 242–243*b*
- Nursing care standards, malpractice, 104
- Nursing diagnoses
- for active state, 300*t*
 - for cardiovascular disorders, 249*t*, 256*t*
 - for chronic illnesses, 427*t*
 - for death and dying, 489*t*
 - for dermatologic problems, 362*t*
 - for diabetes mellitus, 349*t*
 - for gastrointestinal system, 274*b*
 - for mental health problems, 401*t*
 - for movement, 300*t*
 - for musculoskeletal problems, 309*t*
 - for neurologic problems, 325*t*
 - for nutritional problems, 162*b*
 - for reproductive system, 293*t*
 - for respiratory system, 236*t*
 - for rest and sleep, 174*t*
 - for safety, 193*t*
 - for sensory deficits, 337*t*
 - for sexual dysfunction, 142*t*, 143*b*
 - for spiritual distress, 153*b*
 - for surgery, 454*t*
 - for terminal cancer patients, 393*b*
 - for urinary elimination, 285*t*
- Nursing homes, 4. *See also* Long-term care facilities
- Nursing practice standards, 72, 73*b*
- Nursing process, 73–75
- Nutrients, recommended intake of, 164, 164*t*
- Nutrition, 161–172. *See also* Diet
- activity and exercise, 308
 - age-related changes in, 17, 162–163
 - assessment of, 170*b*, 171
 - caloric needs and, 162–163
 - constipation and, 168
 - dietary guidelines and, 162–163, 164*f*
 - drug therapy and, 169*b*, 211, 212*t*
 - dysphagia, 168, 273–274
 - Food Guide Pyramid and, 163, 164*f*
 - food intolerance and, 167
 - food stamps and, 116
 - guidelines for, 162–165, 164*f*
 - heart disease and, 165
 - home-delivered meals and, 118
 - nursing diagnosis for, 162*b*
 - oral health and, 167
 - in pain management, 187–188
 - recommended dietary allowances and, 164, 164*t*
 - resources for, 171
 - in risk reduction, 203–204
 - for women, 165–166
- Nutritional assessment, 170*b*, 171
- Nutritional history, 170*b*
- Nutritional supplements, 17, 164–165, 164*t*, 165*t*, 432*b*. *See also* Alternative and complementary therapies
- drug interactions with, 169, 169*b*
 - for pain, 187–188
- Obstruction, intestinal, 279
- Occupation, retirement from, 37–39
- Occupational assistance, 117
- Occupational exposure, carcinogen and, 388
- Odors
- in aromatherapy, 197
 - environmental, 197
- Older adults. *See also* Continuum of care
- age classification of, 5
 - common needs of, 74–75
 - continuum of care for, 114–125
 - developmental tasks of, 19, 19*t*
 - educational status of, 9, 9*f*
 - employment of, 7–8, 8*b*, 37–39
 - geographic distribution of, 7
 - government programs for, 5*b*, 7–8, 8*b*
 - health care resources consumed by, 10–11, 11*f*
 - health insurance for, 11, 11*f*, 11*t*
 - health promotion for, 20–21, 21*b*, 22*b*
 - health status of, 9, 10*b*, 10*f*
 - increasing population of, 5, 6*t*, 10–11
 - life story of, 42–44, 129–130
 - living situations of, 7, 8*t*
 - marital status of, 7, 7*t*, 8*t*, 36–37
 - needs and demands of, 11

- Older adults (*continued*)
 salient characteristics of, 10–11
 socioeconomic status of, 7–8, 8*b*
 throughout history, 4
- Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1987
 (OBRA '87), 467
- Onychocryptosis, 318
- Onychomycosis, 317
- Opioid analgesics, 188. *See also* Pain management
 short-acting, 220
- Oral cavity
 age-related changes in, 53–54
 examination of, in nutritional assessment,
 170*b*
 gastrointestinal function and, 272*b*
 nutrition and, 167
 respiratory health and, 239
- Ornish diet, 251
- Osteoarthritis, 312, 313–314*b*, 314
 sexual dysfunction due to, 146*t*
- Osteopathy, 432*b*
- Osteoporosis, 315–316
- Ovaries, cancer of, 295
- Overflow incontinence, 285
- Overhydration, 166–167
- Oxygen therapy
 in cardiovascular disorders, 264
 for emphysema, 241
- Pain, 182–190
 age-related changes in, 183
 assessment of, 184–185, 184*b*
 cognitive impairment and, 185, 185*b*
 comforting in, 188–189, 188*f*
 communication of, 185
 cultural aspects of, 185
 in death and dying, 491–492
 definition of, 183
 HIV and, 382*b*
 impaired cognition and, 412*b*
 neuropathic, 183
 nociceptive, 183
 prevalence of, 183
 resources for, 189
 somatic, 183
 types of, 183
 visceral, 183
- Pain management, 185–189
 alternative methods of, 186–187, 187*b*, 189*f*
 integrative approach to, 185–189
 of musculoskeletal system, 318
- Palsies, HIV and, 382*b*
- Pancreatic cancer, 274*b*
- Pantothenic acid, 369*b*
- Paranoia, 405–406
- Parenthood, 35–36
- Parkinsonian gait, 311*t*
- Parkinson's disease, 326–327, 416
 sexual dysfunction in, 146*t*
- Parsley, adverse effects of, 213*t*
- Patient advocacy, 76
- Patient education, 76
 cancer and, 391–392
 of cardiovascular system, 263
 diabetes mellitus and, 348
 for drugs, 218, 219*b*
- Patient positioning. *See* Positioning
- Penicillin, adverse effect of, 370*t*
- Penicillin-like antibiotics, adverse effect of, 370*t*
- Penis tumor, 297
- Pentazocine, for pain, 188
- Pentecostal, death related beliefs and practices, 493*t*
- Pentecostals, beliefs and practices of, 154*b*
- Peptic ulcer, 276
- Perineal herniation, 295
- Periodontal disease, 53
 nutrition and, 167
- Peripheral aneurysms, 262
- Peripheral vascular disease, 261–263, 261*b*
 amputation, 266
 aneurysms in, 262
 arteriosclerotic, 261
 diabetic, 261–262
 foot care in, 265–266
 leg/foot ulcers in, 262, 263*b*
 sexual dysfunction in, 146*t*
 varicose veins in, 262
 venous thromboembolism in, 262–263
- Personal space, 199–200
- Personality, age-related changes in, 61
- Perspiration, age-related changes in, 60
- Peyronie's disease, 142*t*
- Pharmacodynamics, 214
- Pharmacokinetics, 210–214
- Pharynx, musculoskeletal problems and, 273*b*
- Phenobarbital, food interactions with, 217*t*
- Phenytoin, food interactions with, 217*t*
- Phlebitis, 255*b*
- Phone orders, 102–103
- Phone reassurance, 118
- Physical activity. *See* Activity and exercise
- Physician orders
 no-code, 103
 telephone, 102–103
- Pioglitazone, 351
- Pituitary, age-related changes in, 17
- Plantar fasciitis, 317
- Pneumococcal pneumonia, immunization for, 205
- Pneumonia, 51, 205, 377–378, 457*t*. *See also* Respiratory system, disorders of
 immunization for, 205
- Podiatric conditions, 316–318
- Poor nutritional intake, in death and dying, 492–493
- Popliteal pulse, 254*b*

- Positioning, for postural drainage, 244
- Posterior tibial pulse, 254*b*
- Postmortem examination, 104
- Postural drainage, 244
- Potassium, 251*b*
- Potassium supplements, food interactions with, 212*t*
- Potassium-sparing diuretics, 229
- Power of attorney, 100–101, 101*b*
- Practice settings, 114–124
- Practice standards, 72, 73*b*
- Prayer, 156–157. *See also* Religious beliefs and practice; Spirituality
- Prazosin, 225
- Presbycusis, 58
- Presbyesophagus, 54
- Presbyopia, 56
- Presbyterians, beliefs and practices of, 154*t*
death related, 493*t*
- Pressure Sore Status Tool (PSST), 365
- Pressure ulcers, 363–365, 453*t*, 457*t*
- Prevention, levels of, 263
- Preventive services, 115–118
- Primary prevention, 263
- Prisoners, 30
- Privacy
environmental aspects of, 205
invasion of, 97*b*
personal space and, 205
- Private law, 96
- Probenecid, food interactions with, 212*t*
- Professional ethics, 107. *See also* Ethics
- Progressive relaxation, 432*b*
- Prone position, 441*f*
- Propoxyphene, for pain, 188
- Prostate
age-related changes in, 55
enlarged, 55
- Prostate cancer, 296–297
- Prostatitis, 377
sexual dysfunction due to, 146*t*
- Protein, 369*b*
recommended intake of, 163, 163*t*, 164, 164*f*
- Pruritus, 360
- PSST. *See* Pressure Sore Status Tool
- Psychosocial needs, nursing implications of, 19, 20*b*
- Psychosocial theory, developmental tasks in, 19, 19*t*
- Psychotropic drugs
drug interactions with, 211*t*
food interactions with, 212*t*
- Public law, 96
- Puerto Rican Americans, 24–25
- Pulmonary embolism, 257
- Pulmonary function. *See also* Lung(s)
age-related changes in, 51, 51*f*
- Pulmonary secretions, management of, 244
- Pulses
assessment of, 254–255*b*
locations of, 254*b*
- Pupil, age-related changes in, 57
- Qigong, 432*b*
- Quakers, beliefs and practices of, 154*t*
death related, 493*t*
- Quality care, health care costs and, 79–80
- Race/ethnicity. *See also specific racial/ethnic groups*
life expectancy and, 5–6, 7*t*
- Radial pulse, 254*b*
- Radiation
aging and, 17
cancer and, 388
ultraviolet, cancer and, 388
- Radon, cancer and, 388–389
- Range-of-motion exercises
assessment of, 445*t*
in rehabilitation, 441–444, 441–444*f*
- Recreation. *See also* Activity and exercise
opportunities for, 117
- Rectum, musculoskeletal problems and, 273*b*
- Red clover, adverse effects of, 213*t*
- Reflexes, assessment of, 324–325*b*
- Regression, 433
- Regulations, 96*b*
- Rehabilitation, 436–450
functional assessment and, 439
mental function maintenance and promotion, 448–449
mobility aid teaching, 444, 446–447*b*
positioning, 439
range-of-motion exercises, 441–444, 441–444*f*
resources for, 449
- Relativism, 108
- Relaxation, progressive, 432*b*
- Religious beliefs and practice, 117, 129, 152, 156. *See also* Spirituality
of Buddhists, 155*b*
of Christians, 154–155*b*
of Eastern Orthodox, 154*b*
of Hindus, 155*b*
of Jews, 28–29, 155*b*
of Muslims, 155*b*
of Native Americans, 30
of Protestants, 154*b*
of Roman Catholics, 154*b*
- Remarriage, 37
- Reminiscence, 42
- Renal calculi, 289
- Renal drug metabolism, 214
- Renal function, age-related changes in, 54, 55*f*
- Renal function, decreased, impaired cognition and, 412*b*
- Reporting, of abuse, 104

- Reproductive system
- age-related changes in, 54–55, 56*f*, 292
 - assessment in, 293*b*
 - female, disorders of
 - atrophic vaginitis, 294
 - breast cancer, 295
 - cervical problems, 294
 - cervix cancer, 294
 - dyspareunia, 295
 - endometrial cancer, 294
 - ovarian cancer, 295
 - perineal herniation, 295
 - vagina cancer, 294
 - vulva infections, 293–294
 - vulva tumors, 293–294
 - male, disorders of
 - benign prostatic hyperplasia, 295
 - penis tumor, 297
 - prostate cancer, 296–297
 - scrotum tumor, 297
 - testes tumor, 297
- Respiratory distress, in death and dying, 492
- Respiratory function, decreased, impaired cognition and, 412*b*
- Respiratory infections
- immunization for, 205
 - lung abscess in, 241
 - pneumonia, 51, 205
- Respiratory system, 235–247.
- See also* Respiratory infections
 - age-related changes in, 51, 51*f*, 236
 - assessment of, 237*b*
 - disorders of
 - air pollution and, 239
 - assisted coughing in, 244
 - asthma, 239–240
 - breathing exercises for, 238
 - bronchodilators for, 245
 - chronic bronchitis, 240
 - complementary therapies for, 245
 - coughing in, 244
 - emphysema, 240–241, 242–243*b*
 - immobility and, 238
 - lifestyle modifications in, 246
 - lung abscess, 241
 - lung cancer, 241
 - mechanical ventilation in, 246
 - nursing considerations in, 243–246
 - over-the-counter drugs for, 239
 - oxygen therapy for, 243–244, 244*f*
 - patient monitoring for, 243
 - physical examination in, 237*b*
 - postural drainage in, 244
 - preventing complications in, 243
 - resources for, 246
 - risk reduction for, 238–239
 - self-care in, 239, 245–246
 - smoking and, 238, 241
 - drug effects on, 239
 - effective breathing and, 238
- Rest, 174, 178
- aging and, 174*t*
 - nursing diagnoses for, 174*t*
 - pain and, 180
- Resting Energy Expenditure, 162
- Restrains, 102, 203
- Resuscitation, no-code orders and, 103
- Retina
- age-related changes in, 57, 58
 - detachment of, 339, 342
- Retirement, income in, 39, 40*t*
- Retreats, for nurses, 131
- Rheumatoid arthritis, 314–315, 315*b*
- sexual dysfunction due to, 146*t*
- Rhubarb, adverse effects of, 213*t*
- Risk reduction, 203–207. *See also* Safety
- cognitive impairment and, 206–207
 - early detection in, 206
 - environmental checklist for, 194, 196*b*
 - nursing diagnoses for, 193*t*
- Roles
- changes in, 34–36
 - with retirement, 37–39
 - with widowhood, 36–37
 - gender, 34–36
- Roman Catholics, beliefs and practices of, 154*b*
- Rosiglitazone, 351
- Rugs, 197–198
- Russian Orthodox, death related beliefs and practices, 493*t*
- Safety, 191–208
- age-related concerns for, 192
 - bathroom, 199
 - bedroom, 178
 - clothing-related, 205
 - cognitive impairment and, 206–207
 - crime avoidance and, 205–206
 - in dementia, 207
 - driving and, 206
 - in drug therapy, 205
 - environmental checklist for, 194, 196*b*
 - environmental modifications for, 194–200
 - falls and, 200–203, 201*b*
 - hierarchy of needs and, 192–194, 194*t*
 - injury rate and, 192, 192*t*
 - nursing diagnoses for, 193*t*
 - restraints and, 203
 - risk reduction for, 203–207
 - threats to, early detection of, 206
- Salicylates
- drug interactions with, 211*t*
 - food interactions with, 212*t*

- Saliva
 age-related changes in, 54
 decreased, 54
- Salvation Army, beliefs and practices of, 154*b*
- Scabies, 380
- Scents
 in aromatherapy, 197
 environmental, 197
- Scientologist, death related beliefs and practices, 493*t*
- Scissors gait, 311*t*
- Scrotum tumor, 297
- Seborrheic keratosis, 360–361, 362*f*
- Secondary prevention, 263
- Sedatives, 230
 for insomnia, 175
- Selective serotonin norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors, 224
- Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs), 224, 403*b*
- Selenium, 251*b*, 369*b*
- Self-care
 holistic, 127–128
 by nurse, 128–131
 by older adults
 functional assessment for, 120
 promotion of, 75
- Self-reflection, 44–47
- Senna, adverse effects of, 213*t*
- Sensation, assessment of, 324*b*
- Sensory deficits
 cataracts, 335–337
 corneal ulcer, 342
 detached retina, 339, 342
 glaucoma, 338–339
 in hearing, 342–343
 hearing aids, 343–344, 343*f*
 macular degeneration, 339
 nursing considerations in, 344
 in smell, 59, 59*f*
 in touch, 59, 59*f*
- Sensory function. *See also* Sensory deficits
 age-related changes in, 56–59, 59*f*, 333
 health promotion, 333–335
 of hearing, 334
 problem assessment, 335
 of vision, 333–334
- Serotonin antagonists, 224
- Services. *See* Continuum of care
- Seventh-Day Adventists, beliefs and practices of
 death related, 493*t*
- Seventh-Day Adventists, beliefs and practices of, 154*b*
- Sexual dysfunction
 after prostatectomy, 146*t*
 assessment in, 143*b*
 in cardiovascular disease, 146*t*
 cognitive impairment and, 147
 contributory factors in, 141–147
 drug-related, 145, 147
 erectile dysfunction and, 145, 146*t*, 147
 nursing diagnoses for, 142*t*
 physical causes of, 146*t*, 147
 psychological factors in, 141–145
 unavailability of partner and, 141
- Sexual function, age related changes in, 140–141, 142*t*
 in men, 54
 in women, 55
- Sexual history, 136
- Sexual intercourse, 140–141
- Sexual response cycle, 140, 142*t*
- Sexuality, 135–148
 assessment of, 144*b*
 attitudes toward, 135–137
 body image and, 143
 health promotion and, 147–148, 148*b*
 nursing diagnoses for, 142*t*
 resources for, 148
- Sexually transmitted diseases, sexual dysfunction in, 146*t*
- Shoes, falls and, 201, 205
- Shoulder
 physical assessment of, 310*b*
 range of motion of
 assessment of, 445*t*
 exercises for, 442*f*
- Showers, safety precautions for, 199, 199*f*; 202
- Side rails, 174, 202
- Skin
 age-related changes in, 50, 60
 age-related changes of, 359
 alternative therapies for, 365–366
 assessment of, in black Americans, 26
 disorders of, 360–365
 cancer, 361–363
 keratosis, 360
 pressure ulcers, 363–365
 pruritus, 360
 seborrheic keratosis, 360–361
 vascular lesions, 363
 health promotion of, 359–360
 normalcy promotion, 365
- Skin turgor, in nutritional assessment, 170*b*
- Slander, 97*b*
- Sleep, 173–180
 age-related changes in, 56, 173–180, 175*t*
 caffeine and, 177*b*
 circadian rhythms and, 164
 pain and, 180
 promotion of, 174, 176–180
 stages of, 175*t*
- Sleep apnea, 175–176
- Sleep disturbances, 174–176
 environmental causes of, 174
 interventions for, 176–180
 nursing diagnoses for, 174*b*

- Small intestine, age-related changes in, 54
- Smell
 age-related changes in, 59, 59*f*
 safety and, 204
 in aromatherapy, 197
- Smoking
 cancer and, 388
 respiratory health and, 238, 241
- Social interaction, promotion of, 139
- Social isolation, 42
- Social Security, 5*b*, 8, 8*b*, 116
- Social services, 115–122
 preventive and ancillary, 115–118
 resources for, 124
 supportive, 118–120
- Social support, loss of, 44
- Socialization, environmental factors in, 200
- Society of Friends, beliefs and practices of, 154*b*
- Socioeconomic status, 7–8, 8*b*
 decline in, 39, 40*t*
- Solar elastosis, 359
- Solitude
vs. loneliness, 42
 spirituality and, 152, 153
- Somatic pain, 183
- Sound therapy, 432*b*
- Spastic gait, 311*t*
- Speech assessment, 324
- SPE. *See* Sun protection factor
- Spine, cervical, range of motion of, exercises for, 443*f*
- Spiritual distress, 153
 nursing diagnosis for, 153*b*
- Spiritual needs, 151–152
 identification of, 152, 153*b*
- Spirituality, 150–158
 assessment for, 152, 153*b*
 components of, 151–152
 demonstration of, 152
 religion and, 117, 152, 154–155*b*, 156
 support for, 152–157
- Spironolactone, food interactions with, 212*t*
- Spouse. *See also* Marital status
 death of, 7, 8*f*; 36–37
- SSRIs. *See* Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors
- St. John's wort, adverse effects of, 213*t*
- Standards for Geriatric Nursing Practice (ANA)*, 70
- Standards of care, 72, 73*b*
 malpractice and, 96, 98–99
- Stasis ulcers, of foot, 262, 263*b*
- Statins, 228
- Stomach, age-related changes in, 54
- Stomach cancer, 273
- Stool, musculoskeletal problems and, 273*b*
- Strength training, 301
- Stress
 aging and, 16–17
 emotional, impaired cognition and, 412*b*
- Stress incontinence, 285
- Stress management
 immune system and, 370
 for older adults, 179
- Stroke, sexual dysfunction after, 146*t*
- Subcutaneous injections, 217–218
- Suicide, assisted, 111*b*
- Suicide risk, depression and, 401–402
- Sun protection factor, 359
- Superficial spreading melanoma, 362
- Supine position, 441*f*
- Supplemental Security Income (SSI), 8*b*
- Supplements, 164, 164*t*. *See also* Alternative and complementary therapies
- Suppositories, 217
- Surgery. *See also* Hospitalization
 prostate, sexual dysfunction after, 146*t*
 same-day, 121
- Surgical care, 452–456
 operative care considerations, 455–456
 postoperative care considerations, 455–456
 preoperative care considerations, 452–455
 risks in, 452
- T cells, age-related changes in, 60
- T₃ (triiodothyronine), 60, 354
- T₄ (thyroxine), 60, 354
- Tablets, 217
- Tactile sensation, age-related changes in, 59, 59*f*
- T'ai chi, 432*b*
- Taste
 age-related changes in, 59, 59*f*; 204
 gastrointestinal function and, 272*b*
 sensory deficits and, 53–54
- Teeth. *See also* Dental problems; Oral cavity
 age-related changes in, 53
 gastrointestinal function and, 272*b*
- Telephone orders, 102–103
- Telephone reassurance, 118
- Temperature
 body, 205
 age-related changes in, 61
 decreased, 196
 environmental, 196
- Temporal pulse, 254*b*
- Terazosin, 225
- Terminal illness. *See* Death and dying
- Tertiary prevention, 263
- Testes tumor, 297
- Tetracyclines, adverse effect of, 370*t*
- Theophylline, food interactions with, 212*t*
- Therapeutic touch, 432*b*
- Thermoregulation, age-related changes in, 61
- Thiazide diuretics, 229
 drug interactions with, 211*t*
 food interactions with, 212*t*

- Thioridazine, food interactions with, 212*t*
- Thromboembolism
 pulmonary, 257
 venous, 262–263
- Thrush, HIV and, 382*b*
- Thumb, range of motion of
 assessment of, 445*t*
 exercises for, 444*f*
- Thymus, age-related changes in, 16
- Thyroid, age-related changes in, 59–60
- Thyroid-stimulating hormone, 354
- Thyrotropin-releasing hormone, 354
- Thyroxine (T₄), 60
- TIAs. *See* Transient ischemic attacks
- Tinea pedis, 317
- Tobacco, cancer and, 388
- Toenails, age-related changes in, 60
- Toes
 great, range of motion of, assessment of, 445*t*
 physical assessment of, 310*b*
 range of motion of, exercises for, 444*f*
- Toileting
 activities of daily living assessment and, 440*t*
 safety for, 199
- Tongue, gastrointestinal function and, 272*b*
- Touch
 age-related changes in, 59, 59*f*, 204
 sensory deficits in, 59
 therapeutic, 432*b*
- Toxic substances, 412*b*
- Trace minerals. *See also* Nutritional supplements
 recommended intake of, 164, 164*t*
- Traditional healers. *See also* Alternative and complementary therapies
 Asian, 26–27, 27*b*
 Hispanic, 25
- Transcendence, spirituality and, 151–152
- Transcendental meditation, 156*b*
- Transient ischemic attacks, 327
- Transportation services, 117, 118
- Trauma, impaired cognition and, 412*b*
- Tremors, 326, 326*f*
- Triceps skinfold measurement, 170*b*
- Tricyclic antidepressants, 224
- Triiodothyronine (T₃), 60
- Tuberculosis, 379
- Tumor. *See* Cancer
- Tunica adventitia, 53
- Tunica intima, 53
- Tunica media, 53
- Turgor, skin, in nutritional assessment, 170*b*
- Ulcers, 365
 corneal, 342
 gastric, 276
 leg/foot, 262, 263*b*
 peptic, 276
 pressure, 363–365, 453*t*, 457*t*
 stasis, of foot, 262, 263*b*
- Ulnar pulse, 254*b*
- Ultraviolet radiation, cancer and, 388
- Unitarians, beliefs and practices of, 155*b*
 death related, 493*t*
- Urgency incontinence, 285
- Urinary elimination, age-related changes in,
 54, 283
- Urinary incontinence, 284–288
- Urinary tract infections, 376–377, 459
- Uterine prolapse, sexual dysfunction due to, 146*t*
- Utilitarianism, 108
- UTIs. *See* Urinary tract infections
- Vaccination, 205
 for pneumococcal pneumonia, 205, 246
- Vagina, cancer of, 294
- Vagina, age-related changes in, 55, 56*f*
- Vaginitis, 294, 379–380
 HIV and, 382*b*
- Vancomycin, adverse effect of, 370*t*
- Vancomycin-resistant Enterococcus (VRE), 383
- Varicose veins, 262, 426*b*
- Vascular dementia, 415
- Vascular lesions, 363
- Vehicular accidents, 206
- Veins, age-related changes in, 52–53, 52*f*
- Veracity, 109
- Visceral pain, 183
- Vision, 333–334
 age-related changes in, 56–58, 59*f*
- Visual analog pain scale, 185
- Visual impairment, 426*b*
 safety and, 204
- Vitamins, 251*b*, 369*b*. *See also* Nutritional supplements
 recommended intake of, 163*t*, 164, 164*t*
- Vitreous, age-related changes in, 58
- Voiding. *See* Urinary elimination
- Volunteer opportunities, 117
- Vomiting, drug-related, 169*b*
- VRE. *See* Vancomycin-resistant Enterococcus
- Vulva
 infections of, 293–294
 tumors of, 293–294
- Walkers, 446–447*b*
- Warfarin, food and drug interaction in, 212*t*
- Water, drinking, cancer and, 388
- Weight
 gastrointestinal function and, 272*b*
 measurement of, 170*b*
- Wernicke encephalopathy, 416
- Wheelchairs, 447*b*
- Widowhood, 8*f*, 36–37. *See also* Death and dying;
 Marital status

Wills, living, 103–104

Women. *See also* Gender

alcohol use by, 165

cancer and, 389

life expectancy of, 6–7, 7*t*

nutritional needs of, 165

osteoporosis in, 166

reproductive system disorders of

atrophic vaginitis, 294

breast cancer, 295

cervical problems, 294

cervix cancer, 294

dyspareunia, 295

endometrial cancer, 294

ovarian cancer, 295

perineal herniation, 295

vagina cancer, 294

vulva infections, 293–294

vulva tumors, 293–294

Work, retirement from, 37–39

Wound

dehiscence of, 458*t*

evisceration of, 458*t*

Wrist

physical assessment of, 310*b*

range of motion of

assessment of, 445*t*

exercises for, 442*f*

Xerostomia, 271

Yin and yang, 26, 27*b*

Yoga, 432*b*

Zinc, 369*b*